STEVEN G. LAITZ

THE COMPLETE MUSICIAN

AN INTEGRATED APPROACH TO TONAL THEORY, ANALYSIS, AND LISTENING

THIRD EDITION

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

THE COMPLETE MUSICIAN

AN INTEGRATED APPROACH TO TONAL THEORY, ANALYSIS, AND LISTENING

Third Edition

Steven G. Laitz
Eastman School of Music

New York Oxford
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

Oxford University Press, Inc., publishes works that further Oxford University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education.

Oxford New York
Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Copyright © 2012, 2008, 2004 by Oxford University Press, Inc.

For titles covered by Section 112 of the U.S. Higher Education Opportunity Act, please visit www.oup.com/us/he for the latest information about pricing and alternate formats.

Published by Oxford University Press, Inc.
198 Madison Avenue, New York, New York 10016
http://www.oup.com

Oxford is a registered trademark of Oxford University Press

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of Oxford University Press.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Laitz, Steven G. (Steven Geoffrey)
The complete musician: an integrated approach to tonal theory, analysis, and listening/Steven G. Laitz.—3rd ed.
p. cm.
ISBN 978-0-19-974278-3 (hardcover)
1. Music theory—Textbooks. 2. Tonality. 3. Musical analysis. I. Title.
MT6.L136C66 2012
781.2—dc22

2011005659

Printing number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in the United States of America
on acid-free paper

To my family:
Anne-Marie, Madeleine, and, of course, Willow and Winn-Dixie

BRIEF CONTENTS

Preface xii

PART 1 THE FOUNDATION OF TONAL MUSIC 1

1 Musical Space and Time 2
2 Harnessing Space and Time: Introduction to Melody and Two-Voice Counterpoint 41
3 Musical Density: Triads, Seventh Chords, and Texture 64

PART 2 MERGING MELODY AND HARMONY 83

4 When Harmony, Melody, and Rhythm Converge 84
5 Tonic and Dominant as Tonal Pillars and Introduction to Voice Leading 103
6 The Impact of Melody, Rhythm, and Meter on Harmony; Introduction to V^7; and Harmonizing Florid Melodies 120
7 Contrapuntal Expansions of Tonic and Dominant: Six-Three Chords 142
8 More Contrapuntal Expansions: Inversions of V^7, Introduction to Leading-Tone Seventh Chords, and Reduction and Elaboration 160

PART 3 A NEW HARMONIC FUNCTION, THE PHRASE MODEL, AND ADDITIONAL MELODIC AND HARMONIC EMBELLISHMENTS 189

9 The Pre-Dominant Function and the Phrase Model 190
10 Accented and Chromatic Embellishing Tones 206
11 Six-Four Chords, Revisiting the Subdominant, and Summary of Contrapuntal Expansions 227
12 The Pre-Dominant Refines the Phrase Model 246

PART 4 NEW CHORDS AND NEW FORMS 267

13 The Submediant: A New Diatonic Harmony, and Further Extensions of the Phrase Model 268
14 The Mediant, the Back-Relating Dominant, and a Synthesis of Diatonic Harmonic Relationships 286
15 The Period 297
16 Other Small Musical Structures: Sentences, Double Periods, and Modified Periods 310
17 Harmonic Sequences 325

PART 5 FUNCTIONAL CHROMATICISM 347

18 Applied Chords 348
19 Tonicization and Modulation 371
20 Binary Form and Variations 389

PART 6 EXPRESSIVE CHROMATICISM 417

21 Modal Mixture 418
22 Expansion of Modal Mixture Harmonies: Chromatic Modulation and the German *Lied* 437
23 The Neapolitan Chord (♭II) 460
24 The Augmented Sixth Chord 472

PART 7 LARGE FORMS: TERNARY, RONDO, SONATA 493

25 Ternary Form 494
26 Rondo 521
27 Sonata Form 537

PART 8 INTRODUCTION TO NINETEENTH-CENTURY HARMONY: THE SHIFT FROM ASYMMETRY TO SYMMETRY 585

28 New Harmonic Tendencies 586
29 The Rise of Symmetrical Harmony in Tonal Music 606
30 Melodic and Harmonic Symmetry Combine: Chromatic Sequences 624
31 At Tonality's Edge 648

APPENDICES

Appendix 1 Fundamentals
A. The Pitch Realm 681
B. Pulse, Rhythm, and Meter 699
C. Intervals 713
D. Triads, Inversions, Figured Bass, and Harmonic Analysis 726
E. Seventh Chords and Harmonic Analysis 744
Appendix 2 Invertible Counterpoint, Compound Melody, and Implied Harmonies 754
Appendix 3 The Motive 768
Appendix 4 Additional Harmonic-Sequence Topics 804
Appendix 5 Abbreviations and Acronyms 811
Appendix 6 Selected Answers to Textbook Exercises 815

Index of Terms and Concepts 866
Index of Musical Examples and Exercises 872

PREFACE

Music students often suffer through their theory and aural skills courses, viewing them as not particularly relevant—perhaps even painful—sidelines of their musical studies. This is a shame, since an unsatisfying experience early on frequently has a negative effect on students' attitudes in subsequent academic courses. Some students express the concern that much of the theory and aural skills curriculum has little bearing on their music making. Students often view part writing and figured bass as arcane and antiquated activities, and ear training and dictation—activities that should be intimately linked to music making—as scarcely more meaningful. Intervals out of context and chords strung together in disembodied harmonic progressions strip music of its very life. Analysis—arguably the most important component of any music theory curriculum—is sometimes reduced to nothing more than roman numerals and form labeling.

There's little question that reading and comprehending theory texts can be especially daunting, given their encyclopedic nature and the number of details that represent exceptions rather than the norms of tonal music. This third edition of *The Complete Musician* is specifically designed to quell students' fears by making the material more accessible and more immediate to their experience as musicians, resulting in a most engaging, musical, and integrated tonal-theory text for music majors.

Underlying Approach

The Complete Musician is founded on three simple premises. First, I believe students can learn to hear, comprehend, and model the structure and syntax of the music they love. Second, I hold the opinion that the same simple processes underlie all tonal music and that they are fleshed out in wondrously diverse ways. Third, I believe that students will rise to the challenge when all of their senses are stimulated and they are immersed in instrumental and vocal music from the tonal repertoire.

A hierarchical approach that illuminates how the harmony of a given passage emerges from the combination of melodic lines is central to *The Complete Musician*. The book's premise of tonal music as a fusion of melody, counter-

point, and harmony will appeal to single-line players and singers as well as keyboard players. The text presents a multistage writing and aural process through which students consider a passage's outer-voice counterpoint and metrical setting in order to discern its harmonic flow. With a foundation of the tonal norms, students should be able to connect their basic musical instincts with what they hear and see. For example, students will learn to notate the missing cello line of a string quartet when the given score contains only the upper instruments, but the recorded performance includes all four instruments. By integrating an understanding of tonal procedures, analytical strategies, and the ability to read music with singing, playing, and listening, students should emerge from the course as independent and well-rounded musicians.

The book's user-friendly and multitiered analytical approach stresses the distinction between description (i.e., labeling a given sonority according to its scale degree relation to the tonic using roman numerals and figured bass) and interpretive analysis (i.e., exploring the metric–rhythmic placement, spacing, voicing, duration, and possible motivic context of a sonority in order to determine its function). Interpretive analysis, then, draws heavily on the students' musical instincts and experiences. Students should be given significant responsibility in class and, thereby, discover that successfully negotiating an exercise depends more on a series of well-supported musical decisions than on "yes" or "no" answers. The students' roles as active participants—whose opinions matter—are central to the spirit of this text.

Audience

The Complete Musician should appeal to music majors with varied levels of competency. The text assumes that there are as many levels of student experience and background as there are students using the text. To that end, every topic is presented in a graduated fashion and tailored to meet specific student needs. For those with a limited background in music theory, a new fundamentals unit in Appendix 1 presents a basic introduction to important concepts and terminology with numerous straightforward exercises to help reinforce learning. For students with a broader exposure to music theory, Chapters 1–3 provide both a review of fundamentals and an introduction to more-advanced concepts, including rhythmic and metric dissonance, melody, species counterpoint, and musical texture.

Instructors will find that the third edition can be implemented with a variety of curricula. As an integrated text, it can be used for both written theory and aural skills classes. Given the detailed chapters on musical form (periods, binary, ternary, rondo, and sonata), an instructor can choose to incorporate them as the class progresses through harmonic topics or defer them until later in the curriculum. For instructors with students who desire to learn what happens beyond the usual end of the common-practice harmonic spectrum (ca. 1820), the final four chapters of the text introduce nineteenth- and early twentieth-century tonal practices. Indeed, entire chapters on motivic structures, compound melody, and invertible counterpoint appear in the Appendices, and may or may not be broached, depending on the student population and curricular requirements of the institution.

Musical Examples

The driving force behind the book is the music literature, since, obviously, this is what theory illuminates. The included repertoire ranges from Wipo's eleventh-century setting of "Victimae pachali laudes" to John Coltrane's "Giant Steps," from solo vocal and instrumental music to the orchestral repertoire, from Haydn's "London" Symphonies to Scriabin's later piano preludes. The inclusion of music from an entire millennium (focusing on the common-practice repertoire) dramatically underscores the fact that finite and specific contrapuntal and harmonic procedures are a common thread that runs through the stylistic differences of this music. Further, though examples in a purely homophonic texture tidily illustrate common-practice harmonic idioms, they do not develop the students' ability to negotiate the array of textures and styles fundamental to the repertoire they listen to and perform. More than 600 recorded examples and exercises in high-quality mp3 format are included on a CD free with each copy of the textbook; more than 3,900 additional examples are presented in mp3 format on the CDs included free in each of the two workbooks (1,500 examples on the CD in Workbook 1: *Writing and Analysis*, and 2,400 on the CD in Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*). The music is performed by soloists and ensembles from the Eastman School of Music and the Rochester Philharmonic Orchestra.

Integration

The Complete Musician integrates the tasks that comprise a tonal-theory curriculum, explicitly connecting written theory (part writing, composition, and analysis), musicianship skills (singing, playing, improvisation, and dictation), and music making outside of theory class. The text emphasizes tonal harmony and includes an array of musical examples drawn from the literature (both excerpts and complete pieces), as well as detailed treatment of both small and large forms and keyboard application. This new edition includes more than 300 new sight-singing examples.

Introduction and Pacing of Topics

The Complete Musician includes a thorough introduction to fundamentals (which includes discussions of melody writing and analysis, hierarchy, and species counterpoint). In addition to diatonic and chromatic procedures, other dimensions of the tonal tradition receive full treatment, including small formal structures (the motive, phrase, period, and sentence) as well as larger forms (binary, ternary, rondo, and sonata—and, new to this edition, sonata-rondo), and stylistic distinctions between eighteenth- and nineteenth-century tonal practice.

The Complete Musician is neither an overview of the high points of music theory nor a survey of every topic associated with tonal music. Rather, it strives to develop a deep understanding of concepts by devoting one or more chapters to crucial topics related to the tonal tradition, such as sequences, compound melody, the motive, and invertible counterpoint. The materials are presented at a pace that maximizes learning. Concepts are introduced in their most common musical contexts and then are immediately reinforced with a

Steven Harper, Georgia State University
Brian Head, University of Southern California
Áine Heneghan, University of Washington
Roman Ivanovitch, Indiana University
David Marcus, Georgia State University
Jonathan McNair, University of Tennessee at Chattanooga
Jeffrey Miller, California State University, East Bay
Neil Minturn, University of Missouri–Columbia
Rachel Mitchell, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign
Jeff Perry, Louisiana State University
Boyd Pomeroy, University of Arizona
Brian Post, Humboldt State University
Alex Reed, University of Florida
Toby Rush, University of Northern Colorado
Ciro Scotto, University of South Florida
Jim Scully, California State University, Bakersfield
Michael Slayton, Vanderbilt University
Eliyahu Tamar, Duquesne University
Reynold Tharp, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign
Don Traut, University of Arizona
Leigh VanHandel, Michigan State University

I also extend my thanks to the staff at Oxford University Press for their continued faith in this project. Jan Beatty, executive editor, has been dedicated to this project for more than ten years. She regularly provided insightful, creative, and savvy guidance. Barbara Mathieu, production editor, has carefully shepherded this complex project through the many stages of production—thank you. I am especially indebted to Debbie Nichols, musician and copy editor, who painstakingly worked through every word and musical symbol on nearly 2,000 pages of dense, rewritten manuscript with an amazing eye for clarity, consistency, and correctness.

I also wish to express my deep gratitude to the Eastman School of Music, which has supported this project in countless ways. Douglas Lowry, Dean of the Eastman School, and Jamal Rossi, Eastman's Senior Associate Dean, have been sources of inspiration.

I express my deep gratitude to the Eastman faculty and students, who played and sang the 20 recorded hours of musical examples so artfully. Central to the newly recorded examples were Catherine Cowdrick (Soprano), Robert Swensen (Tenor), David Brickman and Patricia Sunwoo (Violin), Melissa Matson (Viola), Margery Hwang (Cello), and Diane Walsh (Piano). Performers for previous editions include:

Antonova, Natalya	*Piano*	Boover, Alta	*Alto*
Arciola, Marissa	*Bass*	Brooks, Liz	*Mezzo Soprano*
Beaudry, Chris	*Bass Trombone*	Cheetham, Andy	*Trumpet*
Berkebile, Jennifer	*Mezzo Soprano*	Chen, Po Yao (Richard)	*Bassoon*
Bezuidenhout, Kristian	*Piano, Harpsichord, Forte-Piano*	Choi, Hyunji	*Cello*
		Dawson, Andrea	*Violin*
Binkley, Jennifer	*Horn*	Franco, Allison	*Oboe*
Block, Christina	*Clarinet*	Fuller, Valerie	*Horn*

broad array of exercises that include singing, writing, analyzing, listening, and playing. Exercises progress from more-passive written, aural, and tactile activities (such as identifying, correcting, and comparing) to those requiring active understanding (such as unfigured basses, melody harmonization, model composition), carefully arranged so that the skills the students develop lead from mere identification to substantive composition.

Topics such as voice-leading norms and harmonic usage are presented in order of importance so that students never feel overwhelmed by endless rules, nor misled that all harmonies occur with equal frequency and are of equal importance. The emphasis on varied styles and genres illuminates the ways in which a small number of consistent contrapuntal and harmonic procedures are immutable throughout the tonal tradition. To counter any misconception that tonal pieces are cut from the same musical cloth with a limited range of compositional possibilities, emphasis is placed on motivic relationships that make a given work unique. Students learn that only through active study of the score can one discover such musical processes.

New to the Third Edition

Greater Accessibility, Flexibility, and Ease of Use

Reorganized, with fewer chapters Instead of the 37 chapters in the previous edition, this edition has 31. The most commonly taught topics are presented in sequence, with less common topics—such as invertible counterpoint (Chapter 15 in the previous edition), compound melody (Chapters 15 and 23 in the previous edition), and motive (Chapter 16 in the previous edition)—moved to the Appendices, where instructors may access them when their curricula permits or omit them altogether.

Streamlined throughout I looked carefully at every sentence in the text with an eye toward simplifying the prose and seeing where I could best highlight important points by utilizing lists. With the new organization and appendices, the body of the text of this third edition is 200 pages shorter than the previous edition.

A new presentation of fundamentals For the student with limited experience with fundamentals there is a 75-page section in Appendix 1 that introduces key concepts and basic terminology. For the student with a broader experience in fundamentals (and for those who worked through the fundamentals section in the Appendix), the first three chapters present a review and synthesis consisting of a concise (and higher-level) overview of fundamentals that is combined with topics not presented in the fundamentals section in the Appendix. These topics include: musical accent, metrical disturbance, consonance and dissonance, sample analyses, melody, two-part counterpoint, voicing, and musical texture.

Additional and shorter introductory writing and listening exercises These introductory writing and listening exercises focus on writing and hearing in the shortest musical contexts. Examples can be seen in Chapters 6, 7, 17, 18, and 19. Longer and more-involved written exercises are now found in Workbook 1: *Writing and Analysis*. Icons in the margin (like the one shown here) refer to specific assignments in Workbook 1, each of which usually contains three or four varied exercises.

WORKBOOK 1

More notational information given for dictation exercises To help students who need more prompts, I've added supplemental information for many of the exercises (including notational templates and guiding pitches).

Solutions to selected exercises available in the Appendix Appendix 6 contains solutions to more than 100 exercises in the text so that students will have immediate feedback on how they are progressing. Exercises that are solved are marked with a marginal notation: Solved/App 6.

New "how to" sections Within chapters of Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*, students will find quick overviews of topics such as conducting patterns, sight-singing, melodic and harmonic dictation, melodic writing, and analysis guidelines and procedures.

Helpful annotations Numerous musical examples include guiding annotations, and I have also provided textural and structural reductions of more-complex musical examples.

An Appendix that provides a list of abbreviations and acronyms

Greater Coverage

More than 250 new musical examples These examples include: sample analyses (e.g, the "Prelude" to Wagner's *Tristan und Isolde*), many new examples (e.g., *Lohengrin*, Coltrane's "Giant Steps," and *Tosca*), and additional large analytical projects (e.g., the last movement of Beethoven's *Pathetique*; Haydn's String Quartet, op. 74, no. 3; and the last movement of Beethoven's D major Violin Sonata).

New exercise offerings include:

- Additional basic and easier exercises, designed to prepare students for the more-involved figured bass and composition exercises.
- Written exercises for specific topics, such as melody completion/composition.
- More synthetic exercises that combine activities (Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*).
- New aural exercises, such as correcting a notated melody, series of chords, or bass line based on what is heard (Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*).
- Much more singing, ranging from simple position-finding scale degree patterns to melodies from the literature (Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*).
- New keyboard exercises, including easy (5-finger) harmonically oriented examples, outer-voice harmonic paradigms, and creative sing-and-play activities (Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship*).

New conceptual topics These include the tonicized half cadence (Chapter 18) and sonata-rondo form (Chapter 27).

New skills component Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship* includes one- and two-voice sight-singing excerpts with more than 300 melodies, 200 of which are taken from the literature. These are organized by harmonic device (for example, in the augmented sixth chapter, 12 examples contain that chord). Emphasis is placed on hearing tunes with harmonic underpinning. To that end, left-hand pitches (including figured bass symbols in some cases) or chords are occasionally included to guide the student in the sing-and-play activities.

More than 400 new recordings of excerpts and complete works These appear on the CDs that accompany the text and workbooks.

New and Improved Ancillaries

Significantly reorganized workbooks While *The Complete Musician* still espouses a highly integrated presentation of theoretical, analytical, compositional, and musicianship activities, I have reorganized the workbooks to give instructors more options to match their curricula.

- Workbook 1: *Writing and Analysis* is now dedicated to written and analytical activities, including figured bass, melody harmonization, model composition, and analysis.
- Workbook 2: *Skills and Musicianship* contains musicianship skills. Exercises within each chapter of Workbook 2 are organized by activity type: both by singing arpeggiations of the chord being studied and then within a tune from the literature, two-part singing, dictation, keyboard, then instrumental application.
- Over 150 new literature excerpts and complete works for analysis and dictation appear in the workbooks. These include new instrumental combinations, as well as more-accessible and wider stylistic examples (e.g., Kreisler's *Preludium and Allegro* and a passage from Faure's Pavane).
- More analytical and notational space is included in both workbooks for students to supply answers.

Recordings included in simplified format About 4,500 musical examples, many from the common-practice repertoire, are included in the text and workbooks. More than 90 percent of these are high-quality mp3 files, which are recorded on the CDs that are furnished with the text and with each workbook. (All music is performed, recorded, and engineered at Eastman.) Having the mp3 files on CD will allow both students and instructors to easily locate the track they want to hear. (An icon appears in the margin of the text next to musical examples that are included on the CD.)

More sample solutions and teaching guidelines in the Instructor's Manual A 500-page Instructor's Manual provides solutions to all of the dictation exercises; sample solutions for more than 250 writing (e.g., figured bass and melody harmonization) and analytical exercises; and supplementary examples, exercises, and teaching guidelines that detail effective strategies for each chapter.

A new companion website—www.oup.com/us/laitz This website contains supplemental analytical and writing exercises that focus on the basics of each newly presented concept. For example, substantial drill on triad identification and roman numerals in varied spacings and textures will help single-line players and singers develop crucial fluency in various musical settings.

Terminology and Scope

The Complete Musician aims to take a neutral, and hopefully ecumenical, path. For example, no particular system is espoused for singing melodies. Students should employ whatever system is used in class, whether it is scale degree numbers, movable or fixed do *solfège*, and so forth. Whenever possible, I use

commonly accepted terminology in the text. On occasion, however, when I felt that currently popular terminology was insufficient or vague, I've departed from and added to what is usually taught. For example, considerable attention is devoted to harmonic sequences, given the ubiquitous presence and crucial role they play in tonal music. In order for students to master hearing (and writing) sequences, I have devised a nomenclature system that captures both the general rise and fall of sequences, and the chord-to-chord root intervals that create these motions.

Another reason to depart occasionally from conventional terminology results from my desire to reveal tonal music's hierarchical processes and to model how we hear various harmonic motions. To that end, the analytical method employed in *The Complete Musician* involves considering a chord's relative importance within a given musical context. For example, a dominant harmony that leads conclusively to tonic as part of a strong authentic cadence is a different type of dominant from one that occurs within a phrase and merely helps to connect tonic and submediant, or one that occurs at the half cadence, but which does not actually move to the following tonic. It might be more logical, then, to view such a dominant as referring back to the initial tonic and therefore not moving the progression ahead. By distinguishing between such functions, students should learn that analysis is a creative enterprise that embraces their instincts and which has implications for their own music making.

Some topics that are commonly found in other theory texts are not included here but are replaced by new pedagogical approaches. For example, there is no discussion of ninth and eleventh chords, since such sonorities are usually more apparent than real in common-practice music. On the other hand, topics such as two-voice counterpoint, invertible counterpoint, compound melody, and late-nineteenth-century intervallic motivic cells receive detailed treatment, since they are crucial compositional procedures in eighteenth- and nineteenth-century music. Knowledge of the application of these concepts will not only affect students' ability to hear harmony in time but will also have a profound impact on their playing and singing.

Acknowledgments

I wish to thank my students and colleagues who provided support and guidance in the creation of this new edition. They include my Eastman colleagues, Jonathan Dunsby and William Marvin, and—for the many arguments for and against the existence of sonata-rondo form—Gordon Sly at Michigan State University. Thanks also to Michael Callahan for his work on the sample solutions. Ann Drinan gracefully edited portions of the text and Jennifer Gliere did a wonderful job designing the Instructor's Manual.

I thank the following reviewers, who made more than one pass through versions of this new manuscript, and provided sage theoretical and pedagogical advice:

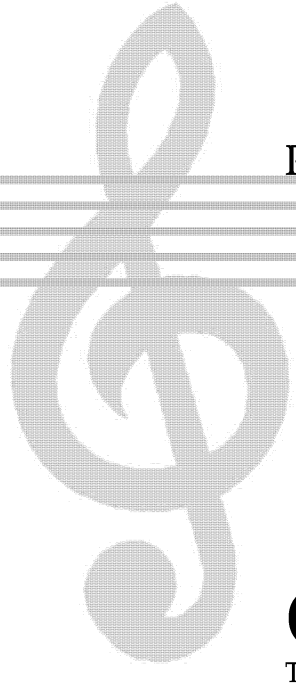
Reginald Bain, University of South Carolina
Vincent Benitez, Pennsylvania State University
Stefan Eckert, University of Northern Colorado
Gretchen Foley, University of Nebraska–Lincoln

Fulton, John	*Baritone*	Nulty, Dennis	*Tuba*
Gliere, Jennifer	*Soprano*	Orlando, Courtney	*Violin*
Grandey, Ali	*Soprano*	OuYang, Angel	*Violin*
Hennings, Dieter	*Guitar*	Penneys, Rebecca	*Piano*
Hermanson, Brian	*Clarinet*	Pritchard, Jillian	*Timpani*
Hileman, Lynn	*Bassoon*	Prosser, Doug	*Trumpet*
Jin, Min	*Tenor*	Qian, Jun	*Clarinet*
Jorgensen, Michael	*Violin*	Salatino, Mark	*Trombone*
Karney, Laura	*Oboe*	Salsbury, Josh	*Trombone*
Kellogg, Mark	*Bass Trombone*	Schneider, Nicolas	*Cello*
Kelly, Mike	*Tenor*	Schumacher, Tom	*Piano*
Kim, Sophia	*Flute*	Shaw, Brian	*Trumpet*
Kohfeld, Cheryl	*Viola*	Sheldrick, Braunwin	*Viola*
Laitz, Madeleine	*Violin*	Shewan, Paul	*Trumpet*
Laitz, Steve	*Piano*	Slominsky, Johnandrew	*Piano*
Lange, Amy	*Bassoon*	Sugitani, Mune	*Baritone*
Leung, Chun Chim (David)	*Violin*	Traficante, Sara	*Flute*
		Wensel, Ben	*Cello*
Liu, Liu	*Piano*	Widmer, John	*Trombone*
Manolov, Emanouil	*Violin*	Wilcox, Kathy	*Oboe*
Marks, Matt	*Horn*	Winchell, Katie	*Flute*
Martin, Rob	*Violin*	Wood, Lindsey	*Horn*
Mayumi Matzen	*Piano*	Zabenova, Ainur	*Violin*

Mike Farrington, recording engineer and supervisory editor for all three editions has, for nearly 10 years, consistently done a magnificent job; he is a true artist. Thanks also go to Helen Smith, Director of Eastman's Recording Services, for her help and support.

I continue to thank Carl Schachter and the late Edward Aldwell for their artistic models of scholarship, musicality, and pedagogy, which play no small role in the philosophic undergirding of this book.

Finally, to my wife of nearly 35 years, Anne-Marie Reynolds, and my extraordinary daughter, Madeleine, I'm indebted to you both for teaching me something every day.



PART 1

THE FOUNDATION OF TONAL MUSIC

Chapters 1–3 present a review and reorientation of important concepts and terminology related to pitch and temporality. These chapters are especially directed toward students who have had some introductory exposure to the fundamentals of music theory. This may include the ability to play various types of scales or understanding such basic concepts as intervals, triads, or even seventh chords. Students with no background in fundamentals and who find the presentation in Chapters 1–3 to be too abridged should follow the icons in the margins that will lead them to specific solutions in Appendix 1, where they will find a comprehensive introduction to each of the basic fundamentals topics along with substantial drill. These students may wish simply to begin with Appendix 1, working through these basic, yet crucial, topics and then return to Chapters 1–3 and explore the topics that were not taken up in Appendix 1. Finally, students who have had some fundamentals but who may be a bit rusty will also benefit from visiting Appendix 1.

In Chapter 1 we consider basic principles of pitch, meter, and rhythm. In Chapter 2 we discuss melody and two-voice counterpoint. In Chapter 3 we explore harmony (triads and seventh chords), basic analysis, and texture.

CHAPTER 1

Musical Space and Time

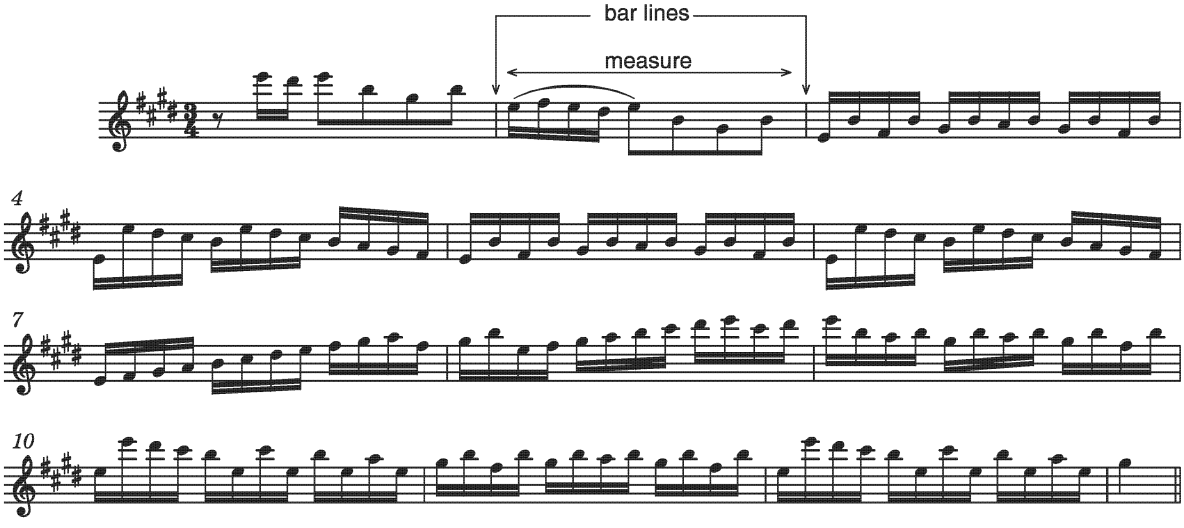
Western music written during the Baroque, Classical, and Romantic periods (ca. 1650–ca. 1900) is called **tonal music**, or music of the **common-practice period**. Compositions written during these three centuries have a point of gravitation, an explicit or implicit center around which all its pitches orbit. This phenomenon is called **tonality**, and the **gravitational center**—a single pitch (labeled using letters of the alphabet from A through G, plus various possible modifiers, including "flat," "sharp," "major," and "minor")—is called the **tonic**. Music with some sort of gravitational center has existed since antiquity and continues to flourish to the present day in film scores, popular and commercial music, folk music, and jazz. Furthermore, music with a tonal center or other such point of reference can be found throughout the world. In our studies here, however, we focus on the repertory that emerged in Europe during the common-practice period.

Tonality in Context: Bach's Violin Partita no. 3, Prelude

We will use the opening passage of the Prelude from Bach's Violin Partita in E Major (Example 1.1) as a springboard to launch our studies. The purpose of this brief discussion is to connect some of the basic musical knowledge you have already acquired in your instrumental and vocal lessons with specific instances of those terms and concepts. Listen to the excerpt and consider the following questions: What is the most aurally important or prominent pitch in the phrase? How did you come to this decision?

The basic criteria for determining the importance of a pitch include how often the pitch appears, the degree to which other pitches are drawn to it, and its prominence as part of musical gestures. You may have selected B as the most important pitch, because it occurred most frequently. Or perhaps you chose E, since it stood out aurally. In fact, E often occurred conspicuously just after the **bar lines**, which indicate the beginning and end of **measures** (mm.); see Example 1.1. Pitches occurring after the bar lines have a special function in tonal music because they are **accented**. Accented musical events stand out because our attention is drawn to them. We will examine a variety of ways in which composers create accents in their music.

EXAMPLE 1.1 Bach, Violin Partita no. 3 in E Major, BWV 1006, Prelude



One reason our attention is drawn to an event is that it heralds something new or different, such as a change in pattern. However, many changes in a short time span can be confusing to the listener, so composers balance the new (contrast and motion) with the familiar (similarity and stability). Bach uses a variety of melodic gestures and contours: Some fall while others rise; some comprise a series of skips, while others have no skips at all, and some gestures seem to go nowhere. When one of these melodic gestures ends and another begins, the change draws our attention. For example, the Prelude begins with a falling gesture. The next gesture, in mm. 3–6, is rhythmically and melodically repetitive. In m. 7, a two-measure rising gesture begins. The pitches that initiate these changes are audibly distinguished from the surrounding pitches and thus are accented.

Pitch prominence and melodic patterning may be only part of what you heard as you listened to Bach's composition. You may have also noticed that some of the pitches occupied more time than others. Longer pitches generally create a musical accent called **agogic**. Also, pitches that occur on beats are generally more accented than those that occur between beats, just as pitches that occur on a strong beat (beat 1 in a measure of $\frac{3}{4}$) are more accented than those that occur on weaker beats (beats 2 and 3). If we compare the pitches that occur between the beats to the pitches that occur on the beat, we notice that E is again emphasized. When an accented duration (i.e., a longer pitch) and metric placement (i.e., a pitch that occurs on a beat) align, they create a particularly strong accent. Such powerful accents help the listener group musical events into intelligible units.

If you relate the rising, falling, or static contours to their temporal placement, you will notice that most measures begin after a large leap in the musical line. Leaps, like longer durations and dynamic accents, attract our attention more when they occur on a downbeat. When two or more different types of accented musical events are coordinated, they create a powerful standard by which to measure pitch prominence. A glance at the score

reveals that E is in fact the most important pitch, since it is a focal point of several types of musical accent. Further, E, unlike any of the other pitches in the passage, is able to invoke a feeling of arrival and stability, a sense of "home" or "rest."

Finally, you might have sensed a deeper, slower-moving type of accent characterized by the completion of longer melodic gestures. Such accents occur over two or more measures (as at the beginning of mm. 3, 5, 7, 9, 10, and 12), and they can project one of the strongest types of musical emphasis. We can musically represent the preceding remarks concerning pitch prominence, accent, and melodic contour in the notated summary in Example 1.2A and B. Example 1.2A shows the pitches that occur on each beat of each of the 12 measures. Phrasing slurs group the two-measure patterns. Example 1.2B reveals the two types of melodic activity: sweeping gestures that fall (mm. 1–2) and rise (mm. 7–8), and more stationary gestures, which themselves are repeated to create longer, four-measure groupings (mm. 3–6 and mm. 9–12).

EXAMPLE 1.2 Bach Prelude, Accented Pitches

Clearly, there is a **hierarchy** of pitch and meter in Bach's piece, and, indeed, hierarchy is a defining feature of tonal music. Since E is the most important pitch in the passage, we call it the **tonic** pitch. The only other prominent—albeit less important—pitches to emerge in the foregoing analysis are G♯ and B. Because the remaining pitches occur only within the melodic gestures and because they function merely as the glue that connects E with its satellites G♯ and B, they are less important in the hierarchy.

Specifics of the Pitch Realm

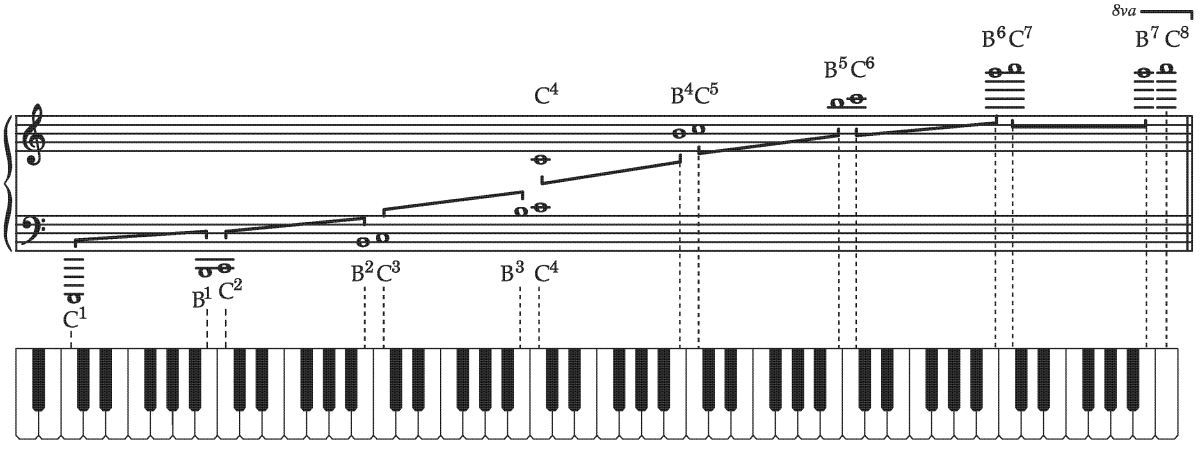
We have seen that important principles of tonal music include pitch prominence, musical accent, melodic contour, and hierarchy. We will now explore the basic elements of the pitch world. In the second half of the chapter, we turn our attention to the components and procedures of the temporal world.

Pitches and Pitch Classes

APPENDIX 1

A **pitch** is a tone that is generated by a vibrating body, whether it be a plucked violin string or the air moving a clarinet reed. The speed of the regularly recurring vibrations—called the *frequency*—determines the pitch. The faster the vibrations, the higher the pitch and the slower the vibrations, the lower the pitch. If a pitch's frequency is twice that of another pitch (or in the ratio of 2:1), then the two pitches are separated by an **octave**. Since pitches that are separated by an octave sound very similar, we give these pitches the same letter name (chosen from A through G) with an octave designation. Example 1.3 shows one common way to describe pitches: Each pitch is assigned an octave number, with new octave numbers beginning on each subsequent C. The lowest C on the piano is "C^1," the next is "C^2," and so on, with each higher octave increased by one numeral.

EXAMPLE 1.3 Pitch and Octave Designations



Pitch class refers to all pitches with the same letter name. Thus, the notes in Example 1.4 are in the pitch class "E," but they are the pitches E^4, E^5, and E^6. In this text, we will generally refer to a pitch by its pitch-class designation, unless it is necessary to distinguish pitches by octave number.

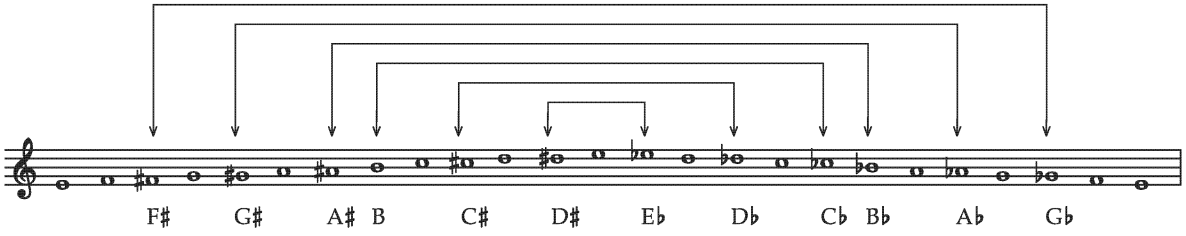
EXAMPLE 1.4 Pitch Versus Pitch Class

APPENDIX 1

Pitches that sound the same but have different names are **enharmonically equivalent**. For example, in Example 1.5, we see that F♯ and G♭ are enharmonically equivalent. F♯ and G♭ are different notes—and, as we will see, they have different functions—but they sound the same on the piano.[1]

[1]See Appendix 1A for more discussion of accidentals.

EXAMPLE 1.5 Enharmonically Equivalent Pitches



APPENDIX 1

Scales

Listen to the opening of Mozart's well-known Piano Sonata in C major (Example 1.6). Taking an inventory of the pitch-class content of the passage, we see in m. 1 Cs, Es, and Gs. In m. 2, Ds, Fs, and Bs enter the picture; in m. 3, A is the single new pitch class. If we list this collection alphabetically, we get A, B, C, D, E, F, G. In fact, a review of the content of the rest of the example reveals that no new pitch classes occur. We refer to such a seven-note collection in which each letter name is used once as a **diatonic collection**. Diatonic, or "through the tones," also means that the all-important octave is divided rather evenly into seven steps (with the first step being repeated to form the octave). We refer to the stepwise ordering of the diatonic collection as a **scale**, from the Italian *scala*, or "ladder." Notice that ascending and descending scales begin in the right hand of m. 5.

EXAMPLE 1.6 Mozart, Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*

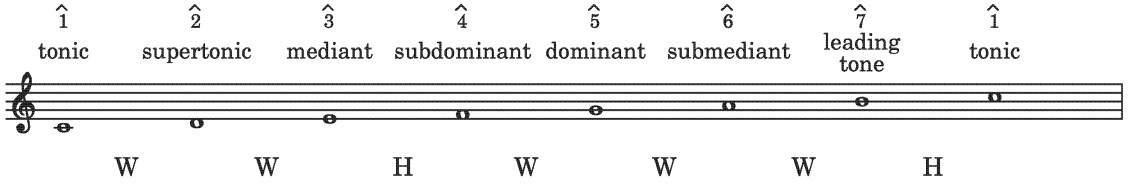
Even though these seven pitches freely circulate throughout the example, Mozart has organized his music in such a way that certain pitches seem more stable than others. The excerpt begins on C, and there are points of repose where C is conspicuously present: at the end of mm. 2 and 4 and in m. 8. It also seems that other pitches are strongly attracted to C, such as the B in m. 2. Finally, still other pitches seem to partner with C, and they too have their own power to attract pitches, such as the Gs and Es in m. 1; A in m. 3 is strongly attracted to the following G, while the F in m. 4 is pulled toward E (see arrows in Example 1.6). As we discovered earlier, when pitches are hierarchically arranged in a diatonic scale and one pitch is stronger and more stable than all

the others, this effect is referred to as **tonality**. Since C is the most important pitch in Example 1.6, we emphasize it by beginning the scale with C and saying that C is the **tonic** of the excerpt.

The seven members of a scale can be numbered in ascending order as **scale degrees** (Example 1.7). Scale degree numbers—distinguished by a caret placed above the number—are also identified by names that reflect their relationship to the central tone of the scale, the tonic. The next most important scale members are the **dominant** (four steps, or a perfect fifth, above the tonic) and the **mediant** (halfway between the tonic and the dominant). The **subdominant** (four steps below the tonic) derives its name from the fact that it is as far below the tonic as the dominant is above the tonic. The **submediant**, two steps below the tonic, is halfway between the tonic and the subdominant. The **supertonic** is one step above the tonic, and the **leading tone** is one step below the tonic.

EXAMPLE 1.7 The Major Scale

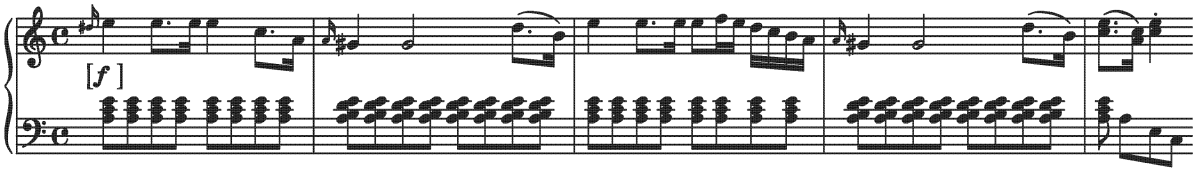
APPENDIX 1



We will focus on two specific types of scales, the **major scale** and the **minor scale**, each of which is distinguished by the way its seven different pitches are distributed within the octave. Major scales contain the same pattern of **half steps** (or "semitones," which are adjacent keys on a piano keyboard) and **whole steps** (or "tones," which consist of two half steps or semitones). The pattern for major scales is W–W–H–W–W–W–H. Example 1.7 is an example of a C-major scale.

Minor scales are differentiated from major scales primarily by scale degree 3, which is one half step lower than in the major scale.

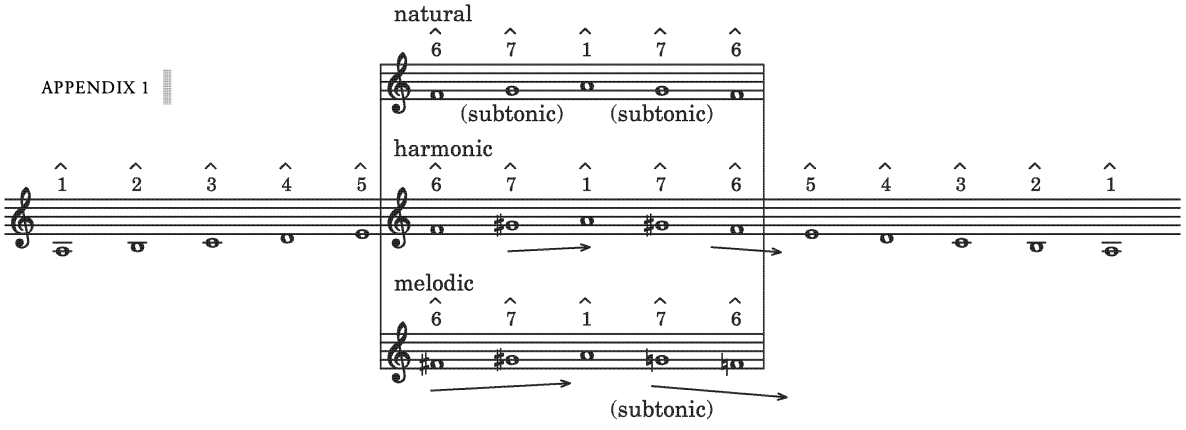
EXAMPLE 1.8 Mozart, Piano Sonata in A minor, K. 310, *Allegro maestoso*



The diatonic collection in Example 1.8 contains the following pitch classes: A, B, C, D, E, F, and G♯. Clearly, A is the tonic, established by the leading tone (G♯), the prominence of A in the texture, and—as in major—the dominant (E) and the mediant (C) as important assistants to A. The difference in the tone color in this scale versus the major scale can be attributed in large measure to the different

ordering of half and whole steps from tonic to dominant: The major scale has the pattern W–W–H–W, while the minor scale has the pattern W–H–W–W (Example 1.9).

EXAMPLE 1.9 The Minor Scale



APPENDIX 1

The other distinguishing characteristic between major and minor scales occurs in the upper portion of the minor scale, namely, scale degrees 6 and 7, which are variable, with three common variations (Example 1.9). In its **natural** form, a minor scale lowers its scale degrees 6 and 7; the lowered scale degree 7 is called the **subtonic**, since it no longer acts as a tone that leads to the tonic. Two other common forms of the minor scale raise scale degrees 6 and/or 7 to produce an ascending line that pulls toward the tonic; however, there is no distinction among the variations in practice—they are all forms of the same minor scale.

In the **harmonic** minor form, scale degree 7 is raised to create a leading tone that is one half step below tonic. Example 1.9 illustrates harmonic minor: Arrows show how the leading tone G♯ pulls toward the tonic and the submediant F is not raised, so it leads down to E.

In the **melodic** minor form, both scale degrees 6 and 7 are raised in an ascending line to pull toward the tonic; the same scale degrees are not raised in a descending line, in order to pull down toward the dominant.

Keys

Key signatures convey the pitch classes of major and natural minor scales. Example 1.10 summarizes the number and names of the sharps and flats for major and minor keys. Adjacent keys (e.g., G major and D major) are separated by a perfect fifth.

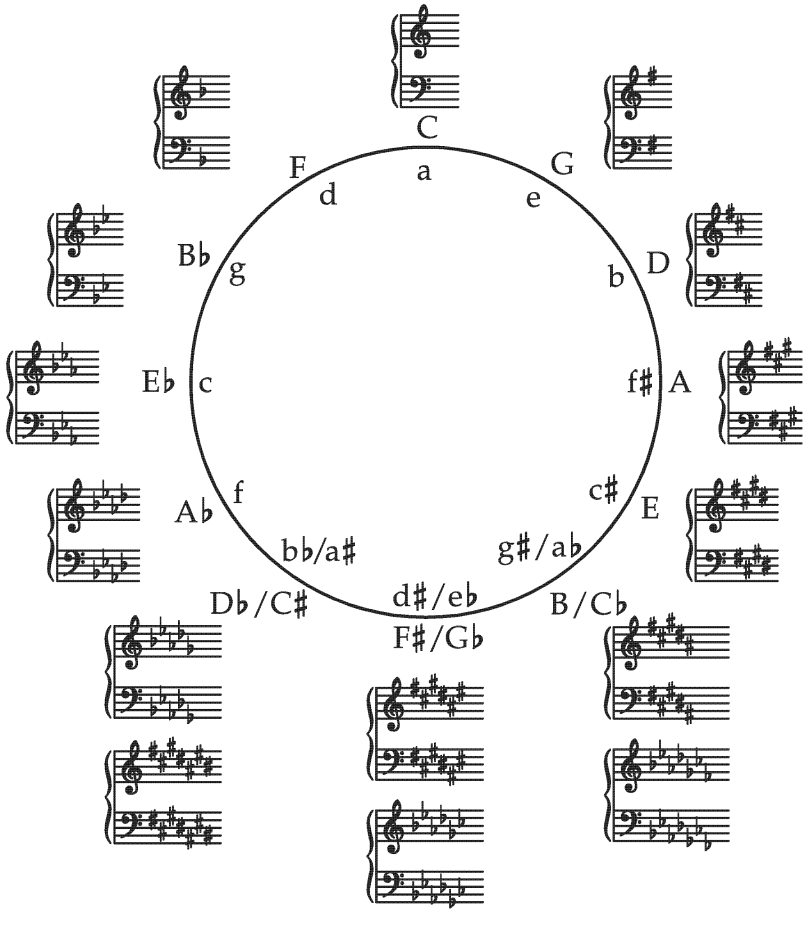
APPENDIX 1

Major and minor keys with the same tonic (e.g., C major and C minor) are **parallel**. Major and minor keys with the same key signatures are **relative**. Example 1.11 illustrates the pairing of relative major and minor keys around the circle of fifths.

EXAMPLE 1.10 Sharps and Flats in Major and Minor Keys

MAJOR KEY	MINOR KEY	NUMBER OF ACCIDENTALS	ACCIDENTALS IN KEY
C♯	a♯	7 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯ E♯ B♯
F♯	d♯	6 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯ E♯
B	g♯	5 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯
E	c♯	4 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯
A	f♯	3 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯
D	b	2 sharps	F♯ C♯
G	e	1 sharp	F♯
→ C	a	0	
F	d	1 flat	B♭
B♭	g	2 flats	B♭ E♭
E♭	c	3 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭
A♭	f	4 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭
D♭	b♭	5 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭
G♭	e♭	6 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭ C♭
C♭	a♭	7 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭ C♭ F♭

EXAMPLE 1.11 Relative Major and Minor Keys



WORKBOOK 1
1.1

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

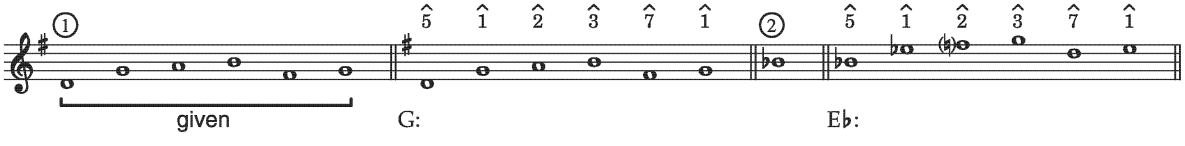
1.1 Transposition

Label the scale degree numbers in each exercise. Then, transpose it to the key implied by the given pitch. *Note:* the given pitch will be the first pitch of the fragment but, like the fragment, may not necessarily be the tonic.

For example, given the fragment D–G–A–B–F♯–G and the first pitch of the transposed version (B♭), you would:

1. Study the melody to determine the key. The sample solution is in G major.
2. Label the scale degrees of the melody ($\hat{5}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$).
3. Transfer the scale degree number of the first pitch of the original melody to the given new pitch, since this will be the first pitch of the transposed version. Given that the first pitch of the original melody is D, which functions as $\hat{5}$ in G, then the given B♭ will also function as $\hat{5}$, but now in the key of E♭ major (B♭–E♭–F–G–D–E♭).

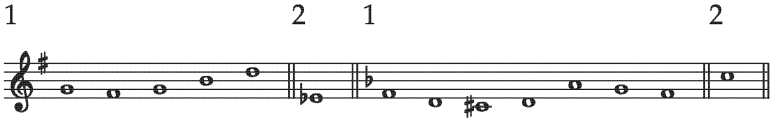
Sample solution:



When transposing by a fifth, use the circle of fifths to guide you.

SOLVED/APP 6

A.



B.

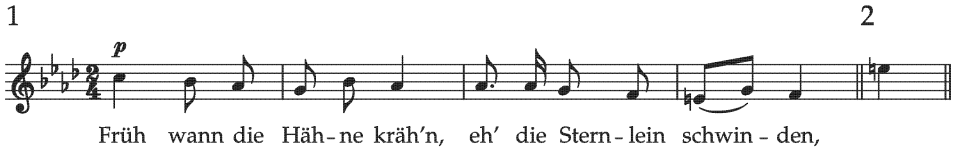
C.

D. Mozart, Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*

SOLVED/APP 6

E. Mozart, Sinfonia Concertante in E♭ major, K. 364, *Andante*

F. Schumann, "Das verlassene Mägdlein," op. 64, no. 2



G. Bach, French Suite in B minor, BWV 814, Sarabande

H. Beethoven, Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, op. 55, *Marcia Funebre*

1.2 Scale Degrees and Transposition

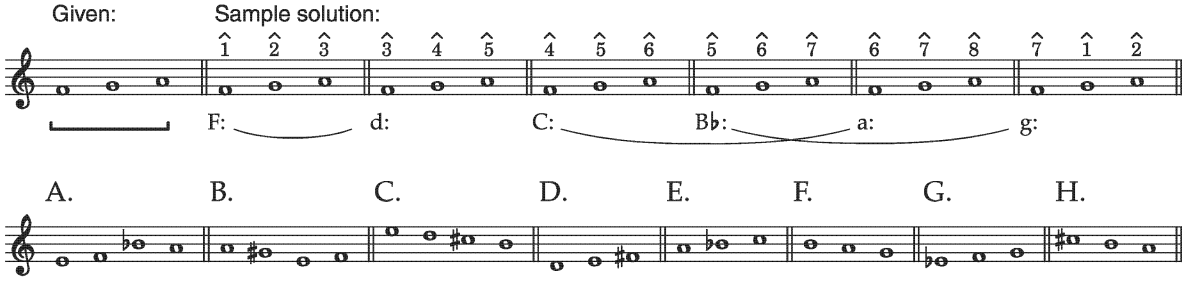
Determine the major or minor key implied by the short melodic fragments, and label each pitch using scale degree numbers. Then, using accidentals (not a key signature), transpose each example to the key implied by the given starting pitch.

SOLVED/APP 6

1.3 Scalar Membership

Determine the major and minor scales that contain the following three- and four-pitch fragments. For example, given the pitches F–G–A, there are at least six keys that contain these pitches (three major and three relative minor, shown by connecting slurs). *Note:* consider all forms of the minor scale.

SOLVED/APP 6



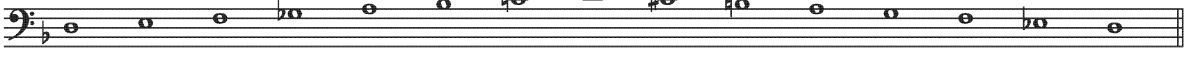
1.4 Error Detection and Correction

The minor scales in Examples A–D contain pitch errors. On a separate sheet of manuscript paper, renotate each scale correctly and then transpose the scale up a whole step.

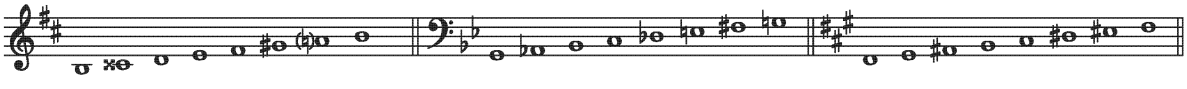
A. melodic minor
B. harmonic minor
C. natural minor
D. harmonic minor

SOLVED/APP 6

A.



B. C. D.

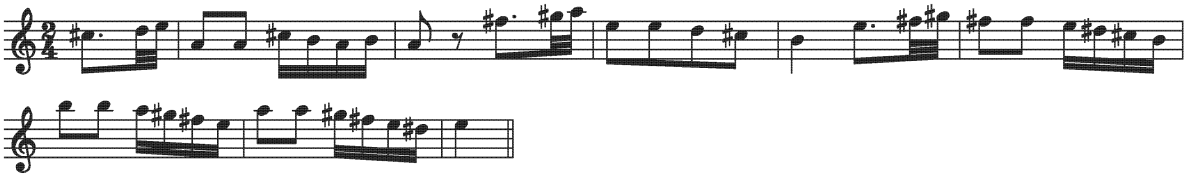


1.5 Scale Analysis from the Literature: Major Keys

Determine the initial key of the excerpt, then bracket new major-key areas as they occur. Begin by looking for accidentals, since they imply a new tonal area. This method will reduce the 12 possible keys to only one, or at the most two. For example, if you encounter two sharps, F♯ and C♯, then you know that the major scale/key is D, since D major contains two sharps (review the circle of fifths, if necessary). Then, on a separate sheet, notate the scales in ascending form and in the order that they appear.

A. Schumann, "Ihre Stimme" ("Your voice"), op. 96, no. 3

B. After Haydn, *Scherzando*, Piano Sonata in C♯ minor, Hob XVI.36 SOLVED/APP 6



C. After Mozart, *Andante*, Violin Sonata in A major, K. 402

D. After Haydn, Symphony no. 38 in C major, Hob I.38 SOLVED/APP 6

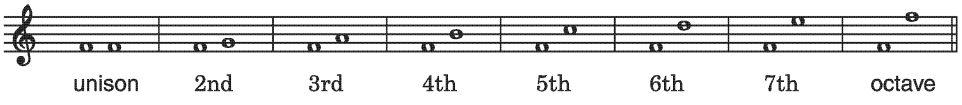
Intervals

APPENDIX 1

The distance between two pitches is an **interval**. Intervals are typically labeled with an ordinal number that represents the number of pitch letter names that span the two notes. For example, the distance from C up to F is a *fourth*, since there are four letter names that span C to F (C, D, E, F). The distance from E down to G is a *sixth* (E, D, C, B, A, G). (Another way to compute intervals is by counting half steps: C up to F is five half steps, and E down to G is nine half steps.)

Intervals up to an octave are **simple** (see Example 1.12). Intervals larger than an octave are **compound**. Compound intervals are often abbreviated to their simple counterparts. Although C^3 to G^5 is a nineteenth, we refer to the interval between their pitch classes: C to G is a fifth.

EXAMPLE 1.12 Simple Intervals



APPENDIX 1

The intervals we've seen thus far are **generic**, since they only label the distance spanned by pitch letters. C to E is a third, but so are C–E♭, C♯–E, C♭–E♯, C♯–E♯, C𝄫–E♯, and so on. In order to distinguish the **quality** of an interval, we use a **specific size**. We group intervals into two basic categories: the unison, fourth, fifth, and octave are **perfect** (P) intervals, and the rest are **major** (M)/**minor** (m) intervals. Each note in a major scale, when measured above the tonic, creates either a perfect or major interval (Example 1.13).

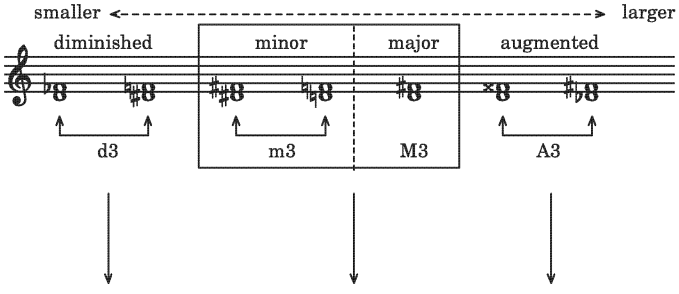
EXAMPLE 1.13 Specific Intervals Above the Tonic in the Major Scale

APPENDIX 1

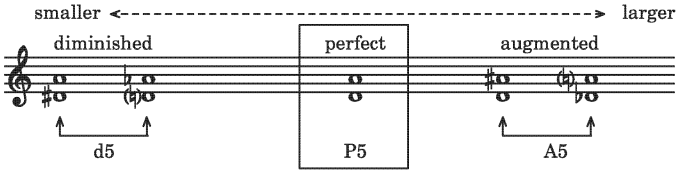
Major intervals can be transformed into other interval qualities by increasing or decreasing the interval size. Increasing a major interval by one half step results in an **augmented** (A) interval. Decreasing a major interval by one half step results in a minor interval; further decreasing the interval by another half step, a **diminished** (d) interval results (Example 1.14A). Perfect intervals can also be transformed into augmented and diminished intervals (Example 1.14B) Thus, major, minor, and perfect intervals can all become augmented or diminished (except for the unison, which can only be augmented). However, major and minor intervals can never become perfect, and perfect intervals can never become major or minor.

EXAMPLE 1.14

A. Transforming Major and Minor Intervals (2, 3, 6, 7)



B. Transforming Perfect Intervals (1, 4, 5, 8)



APPENDIX 1

When we move the lower pitch of a simple interval above the higher pitch—or we move the higher pitch below the lower pitch—we have **inverted** the interval. Example 1.15A shows what happens when we invert generic intervals; Example 1.15B does the same for an interval's quality. Arrows represent the inversion process. Notice the following:

- The inversion process can move in either direction.
- The inversion of *generic* intervals always sums to 9.
- Perfect intervals retain their quality when inverted. However, quality is swapped for augmented/diminished and major/minor intervals.
- The number of *half steps* between inversionally related intervals always sums to 12. Example 1.15C shows the resulting pattern.

EXAMPLE 1.15 Interval Inversion

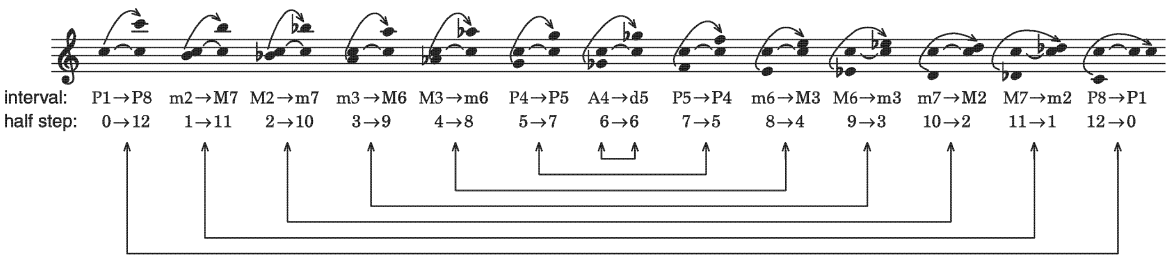
A.

Generic Interval Inversion
unison ⟷ octave (1 + 8 = 9)
second ⟷ seventh (2 + 7 = 9)
third ⟷ sixth (3 + 6 = 9)
fourth ⟷ fifth (4 + 5 = 9)

B.

Quality
perfect ⟷ perfect
augmented ⟷ diminished
major ⟷ minor

C.



Enharmonic Intervals

Just as there are enharmonic pitches, so too are there enharmonic intervals. For example, the minor third from C up to E♭ sounds identical to the augmented second from C up to D♯ (see Example 1.16A; dotted slurs indicate enharmonic pitches). The notation of intervals depends entirely on the musical context. For example, one would expect to find many instances of the minor third C–E♭ in any number of major and minor keys that contain flats because the interval is diatonic in these keys. However, the more unusual augmented second C–D♯ would occur only in the scale of E minor and only if its harmonic form were used (Example 1.16B).

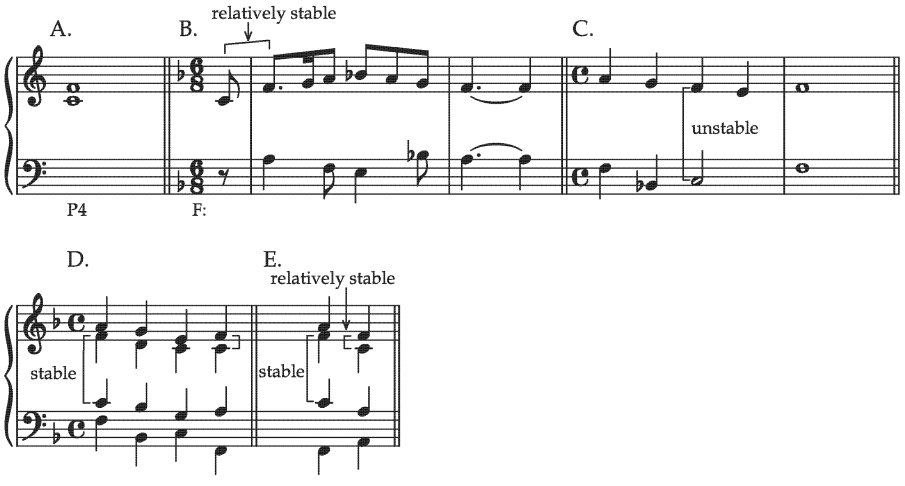
EXAMPLE 1.16

Consonant and Dissonant Intervals

When you compare the sound of an octave with that of a seventh, the octave seems stable and firmly planted, with no need to move on to some other, more stable interval. On the other hand, the seventh seems active, unstable, and even tense, as if it were searching for something to resolve its inherent discontent. At least as early as the ancient Greeks, Western musicians have felt that different-size intervals provoked certain feelings, ranging from a pleasing stability to a restless yearning. These musicians also discovered that the same interval in two different musical contexts could be perceived as either stable or unstable.

For example, Example 1.17 presents the perfect fourth C–F in four different contexts. Listen to each, and order the examples from most stable to least stable. If you heard D and the first chord in E as most stable and C as least stable (with B and the second chord in E somewhere in between), you were sensitive to the fact that intervallic stability and instability is highly determined by musical context.

EXAMPLE 1.17 Intervallic Stability and Context



Although we usually consider intervallic stability and instability to be on a continuum, we can place all intervals into one of two categories. The stable intervals—including the diatonic forms of the unison, the third, the fifth (perfect only), the sixth, and the octave—are called **consonant intervals**; unstable intervals are called **dissonant intervals**. Dissonant intervals include the second, the seventh, and all diminished and augmented intervals. The perfect fourth is usually viewed as a dissonant interval, although as we saw in Example 1.17 it can be stable, depending on the context in which it appears.

The five consonant intervals are further divided into two types. P**erfect consonances** are the most stable and include the perfect unison, the perfect octave, and the perfect fifth. **Imperfect consonances** include major and minor thirds and sixths, which are moderately stable yet more fluid than the perfect consonances. Imperfect consonances are central to moving the music forward. Example 1.18 summarizes the types of intervals. Composers create motion in their music by circulating through the various types of intervals; for example, from perfect consonances and imperfect consonances to dissonances, and back.

EXAMPLE 1.18

WORKBOOK 1
1.2

Consonant Intervals	Dissonant Intervals
perfect: P1, P5, P8	all forms of 2nds, 4ths, and 7ths
imperfect: M3, m3, M6, m6	all augmented and diminished intervals

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

1.6 Generating Diatonic Intervals

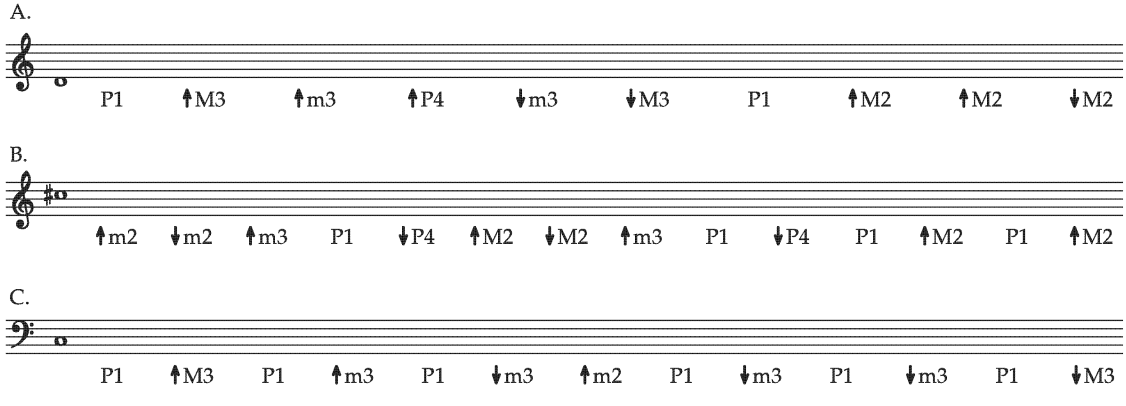
- Notate the required interval above each given pitch.
- Transpose each interval a major third lower and a minor third higher than written.

SOLVED/APP 6

1.7

Given the following series of intervals, notate the pitches, beginning on the given pitch. You will create a melody that you probably know. Arrows indicate the direction of the interval. Once you recognize the tune, add the appropriate key signature. Finally, transpose each tune up a major third using two methods. The first method is by scale degree (e.g., if you are in D major and find yourself on the pitch A, you know that it is $\hat{5}$ in D. If you wish to transpose a line that contains this pitch up a major third, then you would be in the key of F♯, and $\hat{5}$ in F♯ is C♯). The second method is by interval (e.g., given the pitch A in the key of D, the pitch a major third higher than A is C♯).

SOLVED/APP 6



WRITING

SOLVED/APP 6

1.8 Intervallic Transformations

A. Identify the following intervals when you increase their size by one half step without changing their generic name (e.g., a major second would become an augmented second, not a minor third).
1. M3
2. M2
3. P4
4. M6
5. d3
6. m7

B. Identify the following intervals when you decrease their size by one half step without changing their generic name.
1. m2
2. P5
3. A2
4. M6
5. A4
6. A3

C. Identify the following intervals when you increase their size by two half steps without changing their generic name.
1. m2
2. d3
3. d5

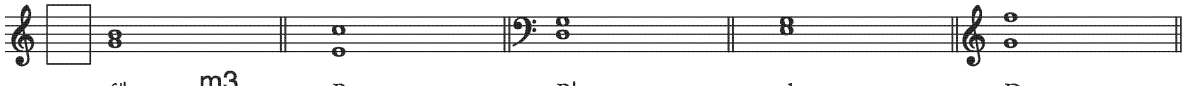
D. Identify the following intervals when you decrease their size by two half steps without changing their generic name.
1. M6
2. A5
3. A2
4. M3

1.9

Label the following intervals as they would occur in the given keys. You will need to consider the key signature of each key. An uppercase key name indicates major mode; a lowercase key name indicates minor mode. The first exercise is solved for you: in f♯ minor, there is a G♯, and G♯ up to B is a minor third.

SOLVED/APP 6

Consider the key signature for each example.

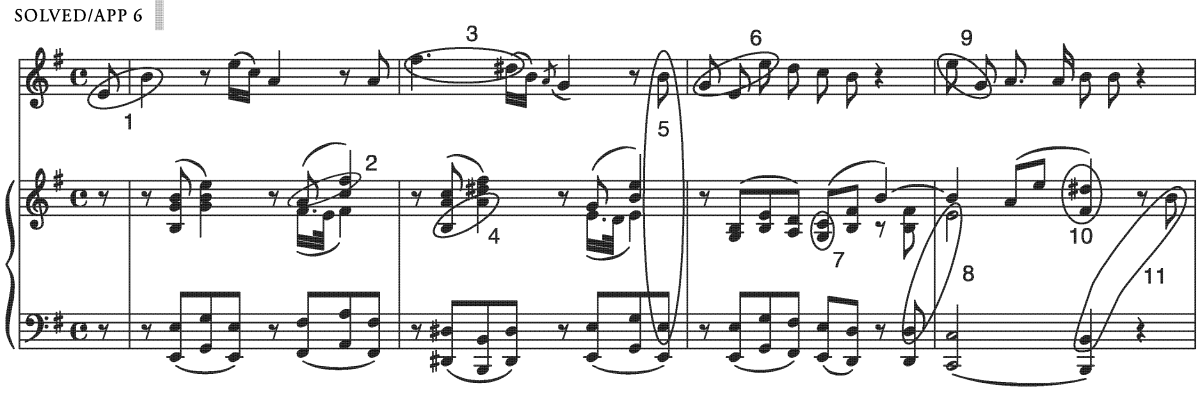


f♯: m3	B: _____	B♭: _____	d: _____	D: _____
A: _____	A♭: _____	d: _____	D: _____	A♭: _____
C♯: _____	D: _____	A: _____	A: _____	F♭: _____
F: _____	F: _____	E♭: _____	f: _____	g♯: _____

1.10 Analysis: Handel, "And He Came to His Disciples," from *Messiah*

Identify the interval of each circled pair of pitches, label its inversion, and specify whether the interval is a perfect consonance (PC), an imperfect consonance (IC), or a dissonance (DISS).

SOLVED/APP 6



	Interval	Inversion	PC/IC/DISS
1.	_____	_____	_____
2.	_____	_____	_____
3.	_____	_____	_____
4.	_____	_____	_____
5.	_____	_____	_____
6.	_____	_____	_____
7.	_____	_____	_____
8.	_____	_____	_____
9.	_____	_____	_____
10.	_____	_____	_____
11.	_____	_____	_____

The Metrical Realm

APPENDIX 1

Undifferentiated and equally spaced clicks or taps are called **pulses**. A series of identical pulses does not group into larger units but remains an undistinguished stream that simply punctuates the passage of time. When pulses are differentiated through accent, they become **accented beats** and **unaccented beats**. **Meter** refers to the grouping of accented and unaccented beats into recurring patterns. There are three basic types of meter:

- **duple** (strong–weak, strong–weak, strong–weak, etc.)
- **triple** (strong–weak–weak, strong–weak–weak, strong–weak–weak, etc.)
- **quadruple** (very strong–weak–strong–weak, very strong–weak–strong–weak, etc.)

Meter Signature

Beat division refers to the equal division of the beat into either two or three parts. **Simple meters** have beats divided into two parts, and **compound meters** have beats divided into three parts.

Composers indicate the number of beats in a measure, the rhythmic value that is assigned the beat, and the beat division in the **meter signature**. For simple meters, the top number of the meter signature indicates the number of beats in a measure, and the bottom number reflects the rhythmic value that equals one beat.

Top number = number of beats per measure	2, 3, or 4
Bottom number = rhythmic value that equals one beat	2 = 𝅗𝅥 4 = ♩ 8 = ♪ 16 = 𝅘𝅥𝅯 *and so on*

Meter signatures do not have numbers that represent dotted note values. Since the beat in compound meters equals a dotted note, meter signatures cannot reflect the beats in a measure. Instead, meter signatures show information about the *beat divisions*: The top number indicates the number of *beat divisions* in one measure, and the bottom number represents the rhythmic value that equals one *beat division*.

Top number = number of beat divisions per measure	6 = 6 beat divisions, or 2 dotted beats per measure 9 = 9 beat divisions, or 3 dotted beats per measure 12 = 12 beat divisions, or 4 dotted beats per measure
Bottom number = rhythmic value that equals one beat division	2 = beat division is 𝅗𝅥, and 𝅝. equals one beat 4 = beat division is ♩, and 𝅗𝅥. equals one beat 8 = beat division is ♪, and ♩. equals one beat 16 = beat division is 𝅘𝅥𝅯, and ♪. equals one beat *and so on*

Asymmetrical Meters

In the vast majority of common-practice tonal music, the number of beats per measure is dependent on multiples of *either* 2 or 3 (e.g., $\frac{2}{4}$, $\frac{12}{8}$, $\frac{4}{2}$, $\frac{6}{4}$, and $\frac{9}{8}$). On occasion, however, composers write in **asymmetrical meters**, which are defined in one of the following two ways:

1. as measures whose number of beats is not divisible by either 2 or 3 (such as $\frac{5}{8}$ and $\frac{7}{4}$)
2. as measures whose number of beats combines both 2's and 3's (such as $\frac{10}{4}$, created from 2 + 3 + 3 + 2).

In moderate-to-fast tempi, such meters are usually performed so that the combination of 2's and 3's create larger beats of different durations. For example, in a fast tempo, $\frac{5}{8}$ would be felt (and conducted) in 2; that is, a combination of one 2 and one 3, either 2 + 3 or 3 + 2. Composers who use such signatures often indicate in their meter signatures the way they wish the large beats to be grouped; for example, the common meter signature of $\frac{9}{8}$ combines the divisions of the dotted quarter note into three equal groups of 3. However, a composer might wish to divide the beats asymmetrically, such as 2 + 3 + 2 + 2.

Folk music of Eastern Europe and the Balkans makes constant use of such asymmetrical meters. The opening of the Greek folk song in Example 1.19 is cast in the asymmetrical meter of $\frac{7}{8}$. Often the meter signature of asymmetrical meters clarifies the recurring patterns within each measure. The repetition pattern in the tune shown in Example 1.19 feels like a combination of $\frac{3}{8}$ and $\frac{4}{8}$ (although one could also hear the pattern as 3 + 2 + 2).

EXAMPLE 1.19 Greek Folk Song

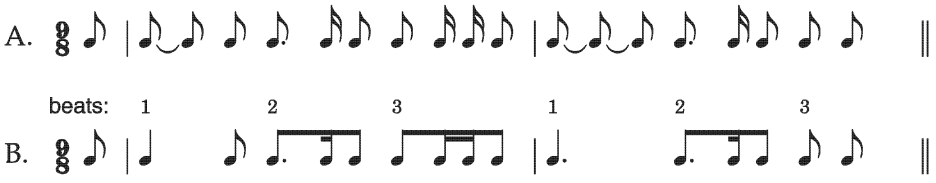
Clarifying Meter

It would be frustrating to identify meter if rhythmic durations were not organized into logical groups that clearly indicate both the number of beats in each measure and their divisions. Rhythmic symbols must visually organize the beat unit for the performer. For example, the three-beat units of the $\frac{3}{4}$ meter in Example 1.20A are not visually clear because there is no grouping of rhythms. In Example 1.20B, however, the grouping becomes clear with the addition of **beams**, which are horizontal lines that connect two or more flagged notes (i.e., eighth notes or any combination of shorter rhythmic values). The number of beams corresponds to the number of flags; therefore, one beam will connect two eighth notes, two beams will connect two sixteenth notes, and so forth.

EXAMPLE 1.20 Beams to Clarify Simple Meter

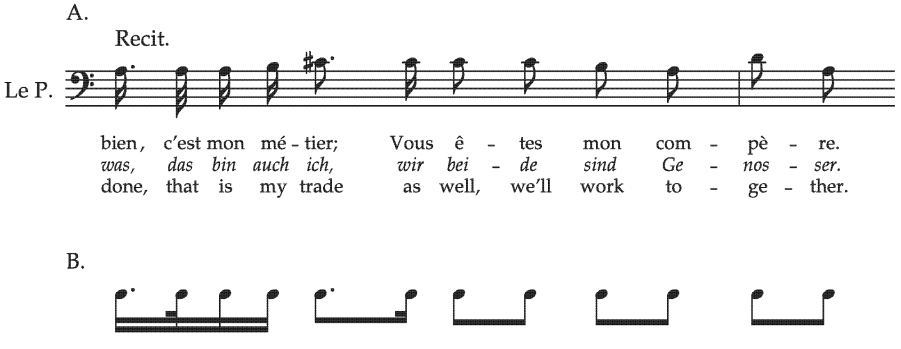
Example 1.21A presents an example of compound $\frac{9}{8}$ meter without grouping beams. Again, the underlying three beats are difficult to discern, but the addition of beams and longer note values in Example 1.21B instantly reveals the three beats within each measure. Beams generally do not connect across beats; each beat starts with a new beam in order to clarify the meter.

EXAMPLE 1.21 Beams to Clarify Compound Meter



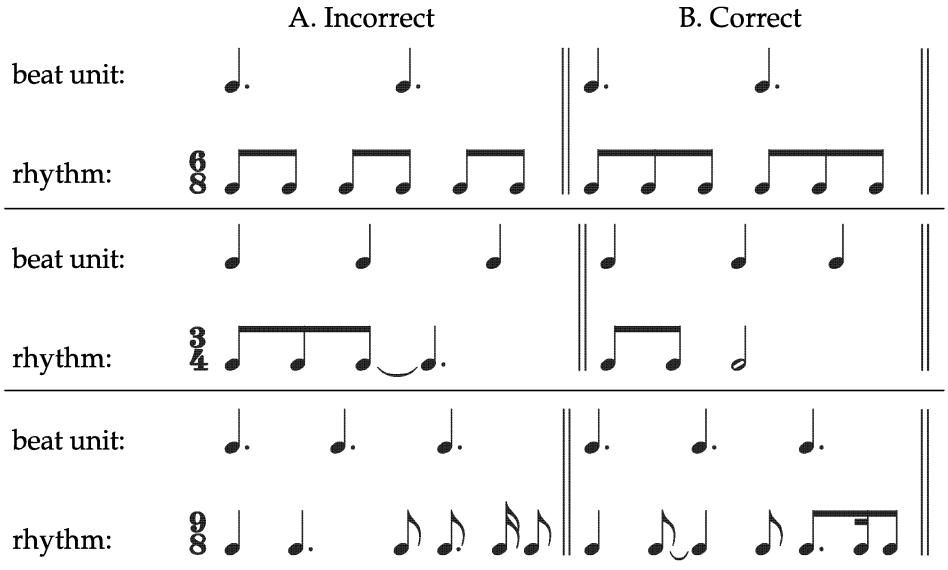
In vocal music, however, beams were often used differently. Rather than highlighting the meter, beams connected two or more pitches that were to be sung on a single syllable. Therefore, pitches and their rhythms were, for the most part, separated from one another. This older convention—which has recently been replaced by the regular beaming tradition found in instrumental music—makes it difficult to perceive rhythmic patterns and their placement within and between beats. Notice in Example 1.22, from Berlioz's *L'Enfance du Christ*, how difficult it is to group beats in a single $\frac{4}{4}$ measure of recitative (Example 1.22A). The renotated version in Example 1.22B makes it much easier to negotiate the rhythms.

EXAMPLE 1.22 Berlioz, *L'Enfance du Christ*, recitative of the Father, scene 2



Always attempt to clarify the location and grouping of each beat within a measure, avoiding long durations or dots that can obscure natural groupings by connecting rhythms across beats. Example 1.23A shows a sampling of incorrectly notated rhythms; Example 1.23B clarifies the notation.

EXAMPLE 1.23 Rhythmic and Metric Correspondence



More Rhythmic Procedures

Typically the division of the beat unit in simple meters is by 2 and in compound meters is by 3. However, composers often import the 3's from compound into simple and the 2's from simple into compound. Such **borrowed divisions** permit considerably more rhythmic flexibility.

Borrowed from compound meter, three-note divisions are called **triplets**. Triplets may occur not only at the primary division of the beat (see Example 1.24A), but also at the subdivision (for example, as triplet sixteenth notes in $\frac{4}{4}$). Triplets also occur over two or more beats. Example 1.24B illustrates several types of triplets in $\frac{4}{4}$. Measure 1 contains an eighth-note triplet, which occurs within one beat unit and therefore is at the level of the beat division. Measure 2, with its sixteenth-note triplet, illustrates triplets at the subdivision (i.e., within an eighth-note division). Triplets are illustrated in mm. 3–4: The triplet occurs first at the half-measure level and then at the measure level.

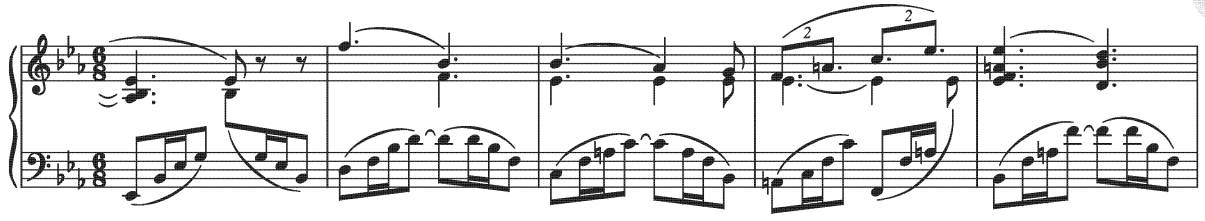
EXAMPLE 1.24 Borrowed Divisions

A. Brahms, "Von ewiger Liebe," op. 43, no. 1

B. Several Types of Triplets

Similarly, though not as common, the two-note divisions found in simple meter are imported into compound meters. Such **duplets**, like triplets, can occur within divisions and subdivisions of the beat as well as encompassing more than one beat unit (Example 1.25).

EXAMPLE 1.25 Schumann, "Schlummerlied," from *Albumblätter*, op. 124



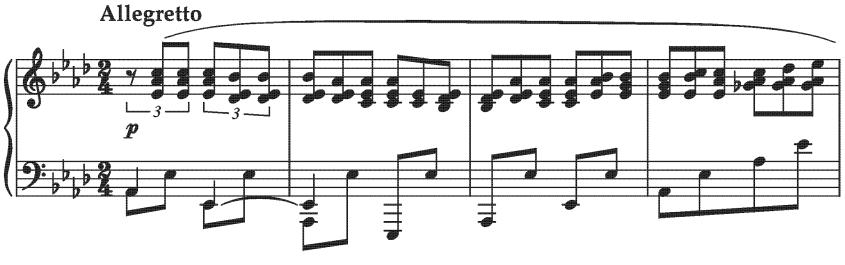
Less common divisions, called **irregular divisions**, include fives (called **quintuplets**) and sevens (**septuplets**). Most borrowed and irregular divisions are shown with a bracket that groups the note values and the appropriate number into which the beat is divided. Example 1.26 illustrates several types of divisions against its unwavering and very clear dotted-eighth-note pattern in the accompaniment of this $\frac{6}{8}$ piece. In m. 138, an eight-pitch right-hand figure (**octuplet**) is juxtaposed with the three-pitch bass figure, followed two measures later with a quintuplet against the bass. In m. 141, septuplets occur, followed by more-standard sixteenth-note triplets. Finally, in m. 145, quadruplets appear against the three pitches in the bass.

EXAMPLE 1.26 Chopin, Nocturne in B major, op. 9, no. 3

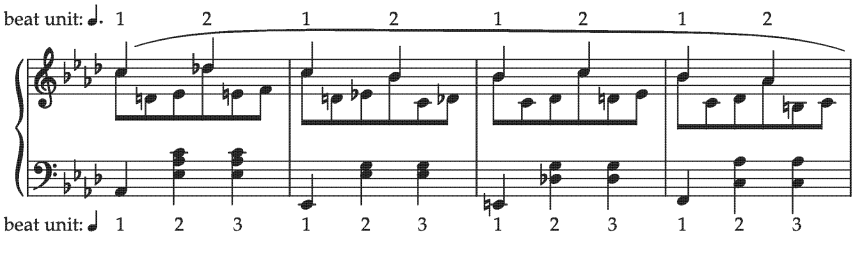
Composers, especially in the nineteenth century, delighted in presenting duple and triple divisions of the beat simultaneously, their juxtaposition lending a remarkable fluidity—if not metrical confusion—to a piece. Chopin, Schumann, and Brahms are three of the many composers who utilized this procedure. In Example 1.27A, Chopin has cast his etude in the simple duple meter of $\frac{2}{4}$, with the natural division of the beat into two parts (notice the eighth notes in the left hand). However, superimposed on this two-part structure are triplets (marked, in the right hand). This play of rhythms is called **two against three**. Finally, composers often go so far as to intentionally write patterns that cut across a meter; therefore, each hand is written in a distinct meter. Chopin's Waltz in A♭ clearly presents a left hand in a simple triple meter, with two eighth notes for every quarter note, as one would expect in a well-behaved waltz (Example 1.27B). However, the right hand is cast in the compound duple meter of $\frac{6}{8}$, whose two beats and division into 3's make very strange bedfellows with the left hand.

EXAMPLE 1.27

A. Chopin, Etude in A♭ major, op. posth.



B. Chopin, Waltz in A♭ major, op. 42



WORKBOOK 1
1.3–1.4

Accent in Music

Our brief exploration of Bach's Prelude (Example 1.1) illustrated several ways to create musical accent, including metric placement and changes of patterning. We now explore this important topic in more detail. We broadly define **musical accent** as a musical event that is **marked for consciousness** so that the listener's attention is drawn to it. The manners in which composers mark events are diverse, but generally they all arise from a single intent: thwarting the listener's expectations. This can be accomplished simply by changing an established pattern. Indeed, pattern changes create an accent, surprising us and commanding our attention. Accents can be produced not only in the domains of time (rhythm and meter) and pitch (melody and harmony) but also in the areas of dynamics, register, and texture.

Temporal Accents

Meter arises when pulses are grouped into recurring patterns of accented and unaccented beats. Such accented beats are called **metrical accents**, since they occur at important points in a metrical unit (e.g., a beat or a measure). An **anacrusis** is an unaccented musical event that leads into an accented musical event. The anacrusis is often called an **upbeat** because a conductor's baton will be on its way up, in anticipation of the upcoming metrical accent. The following **downbeat**—the first and strongest metrically accented beat of a measure—occurs when the conductor's baton is in the lowest position of the conducting pattern. Metrical accents provide the foundation for and standard by which we consider other types of accent, both temporal and nontemporal.

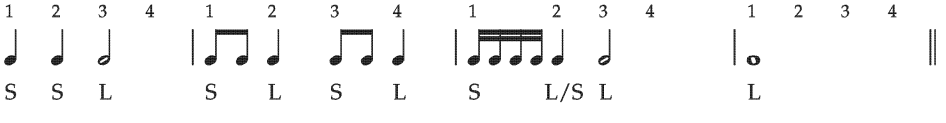
Rhythmic accents occur throughout the surface of a piece of music and take many forms, the most important of which arises from rhythmic duration—a long note tends to sound accented. Such **durational** (or **agogic**) **accents** usually coincide with metrical accents in order to support the prevailing meter. Given that longer notes are accented, they are often followed, rather than preceded, by notes with shorter durations. That is, when a beat (or other metric unit) is divided, a long–short division is more likely to occur than a short–long division.

Example 1.28 illustrates: The first example (A) follows the typical "long–short" durational pattern, while the second (B) reverses the pattern, placing shorter durations before longer durations. Clap each example to see how the first is easier to perform and more natural sounding. Like metrical accents, durational accents occur at different levels. They occur not only on downbeats, but also on other accented beats (e.g., the third beat of m. 2 of Example 1.28A) and even within beats (the dotted eighth–sixteenth rhythm is more common than its reverse).

EXAMPLE 1.28 Durational Accents

A. Long–Short Durations

B. Short–Long Durations



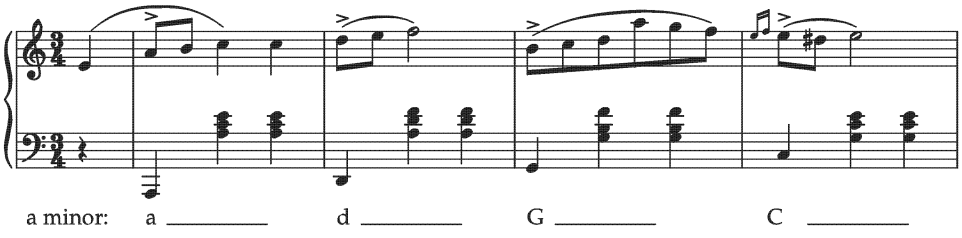
Nontemporal Accents

Every nontemporal element of music has the potential to create accents. We will examine six common types of nontemporal accents, all of which arise from a single source—pattern change: harmonic change and registral, articulative, textural, contour, and pitch accents.

Harmonic change creates a powerful accent. Listen to the opening of Chopin's Waltz in A minor, in which a different chord appears in each measure (Example 1.29). Notice that the metric accent on beat 1 is

accompanied by a different bass note in each measure (A–D–G–C); the chords on beats 2 and 3 fill out harmonies that are implied by the bass pitches. Metric accents are shown by the accent sign (>) above the treble staff.

EXAMPLE 1.29 Chopin, Waltz in A minor, BI 150

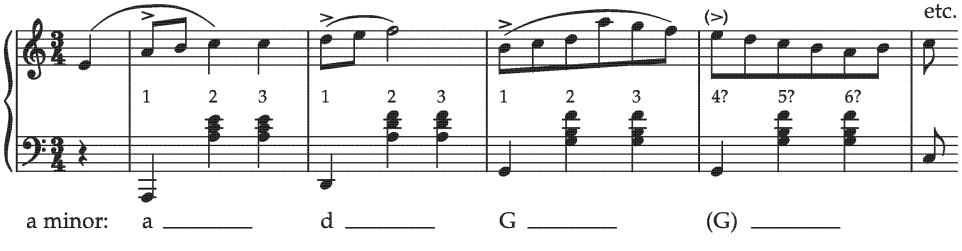


Composers usually balance the accent created by harmonic change with a consistent pattern in the rate of harmonic changes. (The rate at which harmonies change is called **harmonic rhythm**, an important topic that we explore throughout this text.) Once the speed of harmonic change is established, a composer will usually continue this pattern. Further, the changes usually align with the metric accents, as we saw in Chopin's waltz.

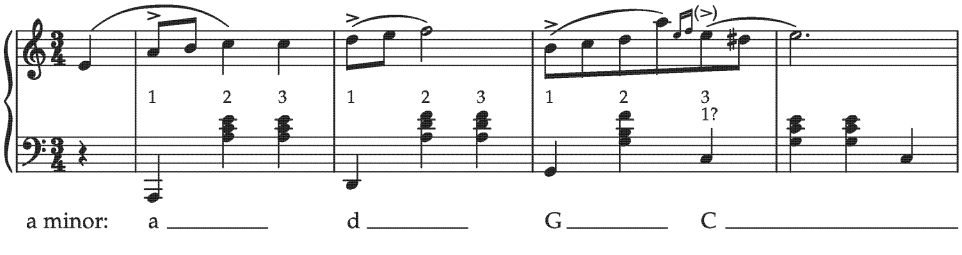
Since a pattern change creates an accent, let's see what happens when we modify Chopin's waltz slightly (Example 1.30 contains two recompositions). Example 1.30A begins like the original, with harmonic changes once per measure. However, here the bass G and its harmony in m. 3 continue through m. 4, disrupting the established pattern of one harmonic change per measure and thereby marking the effect for consciousness and creating an accent. Example 1.30B does the opposite: Rather than extending the G harmony over two measures, it shortens it with the premature appearance of the C harmony. The question marks that accompany the beat patterns indicate the metric confusion that arises with breaking the harmonic rhythm pattern.

EXAMPLE 1.30 Chopin, Waltz in A minor (modified)

A.

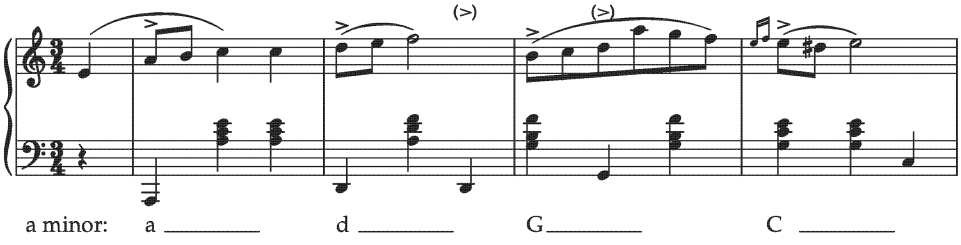


B.



You may have noticed the strong left-hand accent that occurred on beat 1 of each measure and nicely aligned with the metric accent, yet wondered how such an accent is created when beats 2 and 3, which consistently contain three times as many pitches, remain quite unaccented. Such **registral accents** happen because the first-beat low notes occur in a lower register than the rest of the left-hand notes, thus setting them in bold relief. Registral accents are very powerful, and when they do not align with the meter or when there is a pattern change, they are even more noticeable. Example 1.31 establishes the registral accents in mm. 1–2 and then deviates, with accents occurring instead on weak beats. The low pitch followed by a single chord creates two-beat groupings that cut across the triple meter.

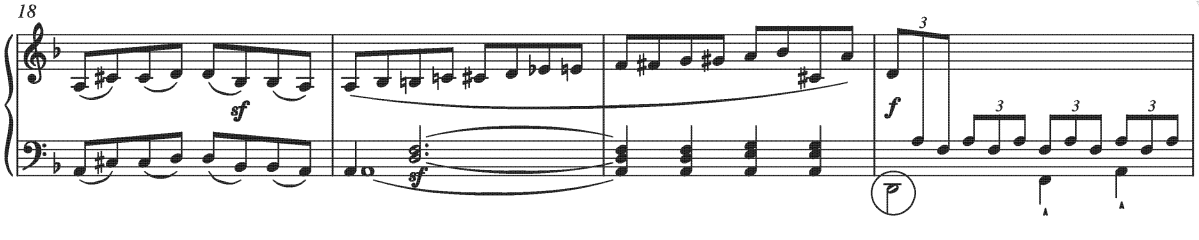
EXAMPLE 1.31 Chopin, Waltz in A minor (modified)



Registral accents can occur in any register. In fact, registral accents in a high register often seem to be more accented than accents in a low register, because their frequency (vibration rate) is faster, and they sound brighter than pitches with slower frequencies. Registral accents are often intensified by **articulative** (or **phenomenal**) **accents**, which include changes in *dynamics* (both gradual and immediate, such as *sforzandi*), and various types of articulations, such as *staccato/legato, pizzicato*, slurring, *tenuto*, and ornamentation (such as trills, turns, and mordents).

Beethoven was fond of such accents, as illustated in his "Tempest" sonata (Example 1.32), where the *sforzandi* (marked *sf* and signifying a strong accent) occur mid-measure and are attacked by the left hand, which dramatically crosses over the right hand. Notice that registral accents actually begin in m. 21, where the left hand's low, sustained D^3 begins the passage. An ascending line is created by the left hand's registral accents: D rises to E (m. 25) and then to F (m. 29). Notice that the articulative accents (that is, the *sforzandi* in the highest register starting at m. 30) are the same pitch classes but are moving at a rate twice as fast as the left hand (encompassing two measures instead of four).

EXAMPLE 1.32 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D minor, op. 31, no. 2, "Tempest"

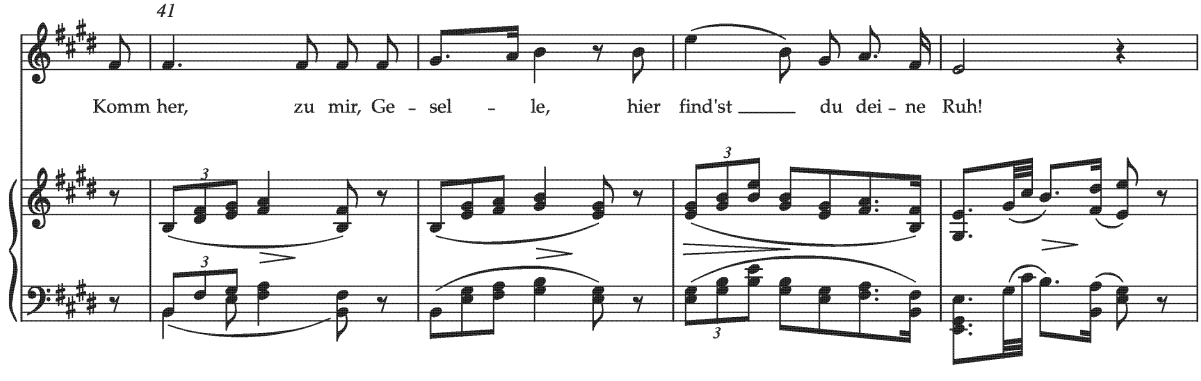


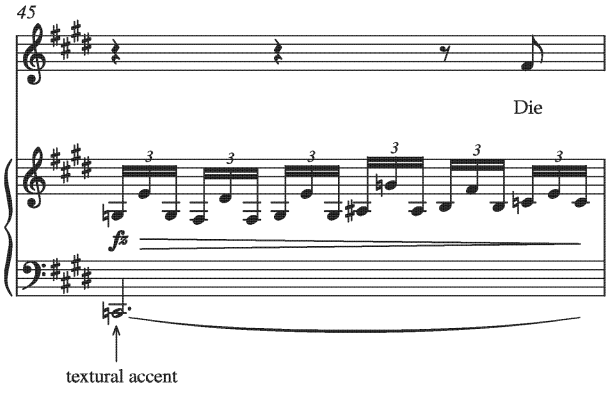
Most often the mood, general tessitura, accompanimental figures, and number and general character of voices (often referred to as *density*) remain consistent throughout long passages of a piece or even throughout an entire piece. We refer to the combination of these elements as **musical texture**. A **textural accent**, then, involves a change in the overall patterning of a piece and can be quite striking. In fact, entire style periods, such as the Baroque, are predicated on creating music that maintains a single mood, or *affect*, which in large measure is created by a consistent and unchanging texture. For example, Bach's C minor Prelude (Example 1.33) is a study in fast sixteenth notes that are relegated to the same register and melodic patterning (Example 1.33A). Thus, when the texture changes drastically to a more improvisatory, single-line, registrally roving *cadenza* near the end of the piece, the accent created certainly draws the listener's attention (Example 1.33B).

EXAMPLE 1.33 Bach, C minor Prelude, from *Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1

From the Classical period forward, composers filled their works with textural accents, often between sections, as in Schubert's song "Der Lindenbaum," where the plaintive major mode, soft dynamic level, and soothing accompaniment give way to the stormy section in the parallel minor (Example 1.34).

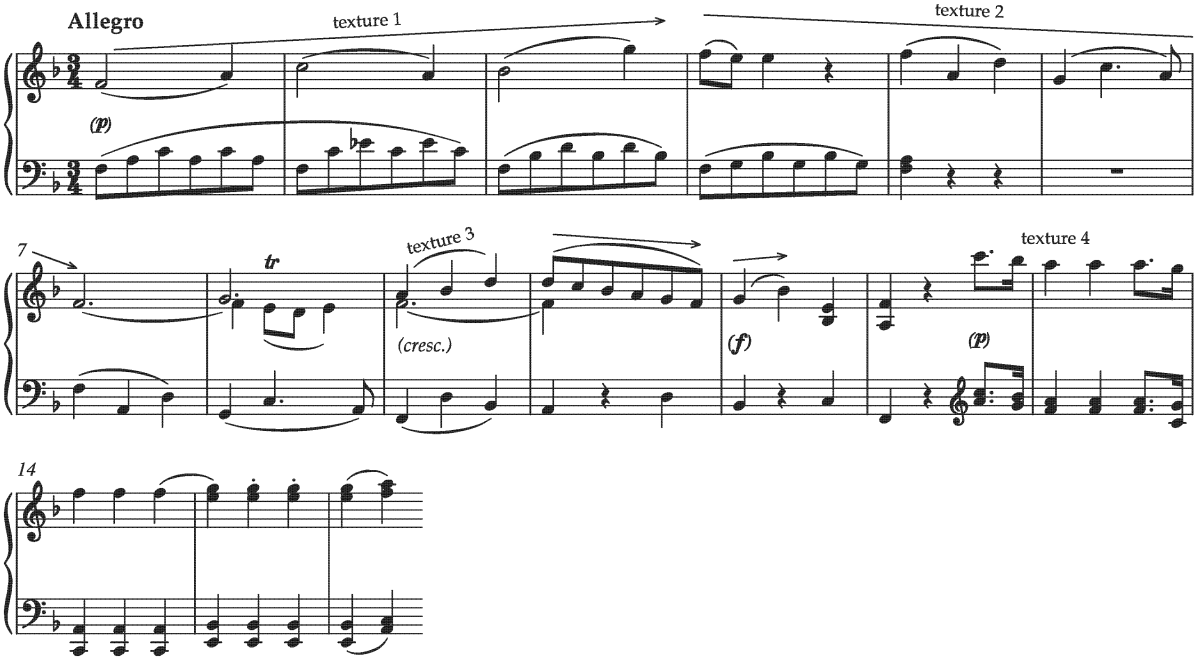
EXAMPLE 1.34 Schubert, "Der Lindenbaum," from *Winterreise*





Finally, textural changes and the accents they create can be very subtle, as in the opening of Mozart's piano sonata in F major (Example 1.35). The gentle rocking accompaniment supports a rising melody, but in m. 5 the melody falls, without any aid from the accompaniment. This textural change is intensified by the left hand's abandoning its accompanimental role and imitating the right hand in the falling gesture in m. 7. In m. 9 both hands are reunited. Finally, in m. 12 yet another new texture appears, as all of the voices participate in the same rhythmic gestures. These textural changes are not capricious but, rather, are carefully planned, occurring every four measures.

EXAMPLE 1.35 Mozart, Piano Sonata in F major, K. 332, *Allegro*

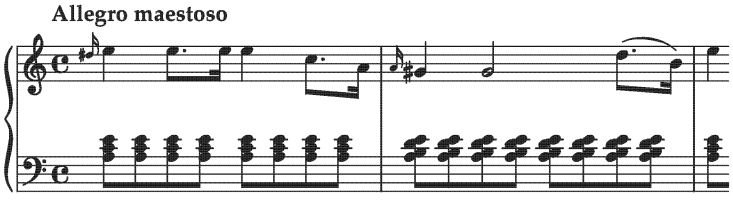


The Mozart excerpt illustrates two additional nontemporal accents. The first type involves melody, specifically its shape, which is created by changes in melodic direction. These shapes are part of a melody's **contour**, and changes in melodic contour create **contour accents**. They can be quite obvious (as in the overall rising line of mm. 1–3 that is followed by the descending contour in mm. 5–8, represented by arrows) or very subtle (as in

the falling scalar line in m. 10, which changes direction on the downbeat of m. 11). Like most accents, contour accents usually align with metric accents.

Finally, when you listened to Example 1.35 for the first time, your attention may have been drawn to the E♭4 in m. 2, even though it occurred as part of the prevailing eighth-note pattern, on a weak beat, and hidden inside the texture. The accent on this single pitch is called a **pitch accent**. Such accents arise when one or more pitches are perceived as unstable. Such **tendency tones** are accented because they are foreign to the immediately surrounding pitch environment; the term **dissonant** refers to musical events that are in one or more ways unstable. Pitch accents can occur in unaccented or accented metrical contexts. Compare the effect of the unaccented E♭4 in Mozart's F-major sonata with the unprepared, strongly accented D♯5 that opens his A-minor sonata (Example 1.36).

EXAMPLE 1.36 Mozart, Piano Sonata in A minor, K. 310, *Allegro maestoso*



Metrical Disturbance

Syncopation

Longer durations—which are inherently accented—usually are coordinated with accented beats or accented parts of beats, and shorter durations usually follow, occurring on weak beats or weak parts of beats. Composers often reverse this pattern, and while the established meter continues, they challenge it with a new, conflicting accent. This phenomenon—in which a musical accent occurs on a metrically unaccented beat or part of a beat—is called **syncopation**. Example 1.37 presents two examples in which a regularly recurring pulse stream or series of accents occurs off the beat.

EXAMPLE 1.37 Syncopation

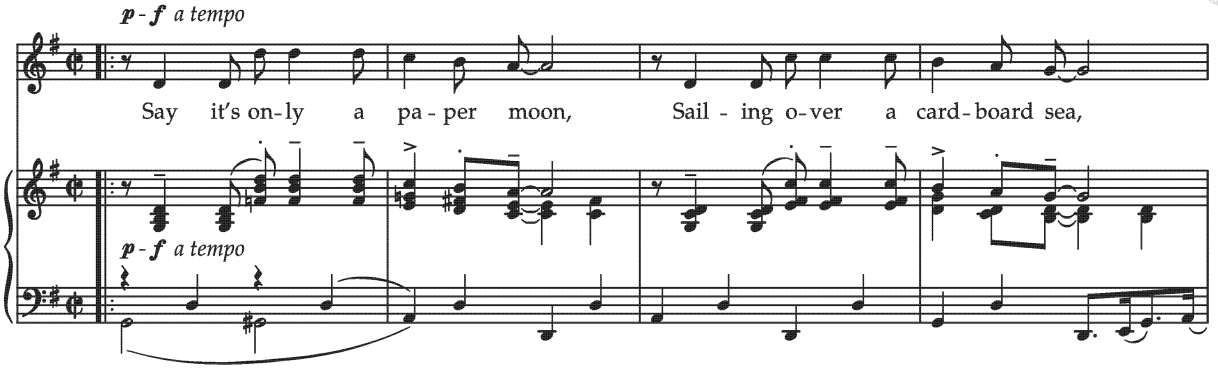
A. Mozart, Symphony in G minor, K. 183, *Allegro con brio*

B. Mozart, Piano Concerto in D minor, K. 466, *Allegro*

Syncopation is a mainstay in popular and commercial music, one example of which appears in Example 1.38, which contains accents not only at the beat unit, but also within the beat unit. Note that the left hand is regular and that it aligns with the natural accentual pattern of $\frac{4}{4}$: The lower of the two notes, marked by a registral accent, occurs on the metrically strong first and third beats. This stable left hand provides the metrical grid above which the right hand and vocal line playfully deviate, highlighting the fanciful lyrics.

Syncopation appears already in the first vocal utterance: "Say" occurs on a weak part of the division of the first beat, and its quarter-note value cuts through the accented part of the second beat. The same situation is heard in the second half of the measure, up one octave. Articulative accents intensify the right hand of the piano part. The horizontal slashes, called *tenuto marks*, indicate that the note beneath should be sustained for its full value and also imply an accent; notice that these accents all occur on weak parts of beats. Similarly, the staccato marks, which shorten notes and thus weaken accents, occur on the accented parts of beats. Finally, notice how the semistrong accented third beat is weakened in mm. 2 and 3, since they occur as tied notes.

EXAMPLE 1.38 Arlen, "It's Only a Paper Moon"



Hemiola

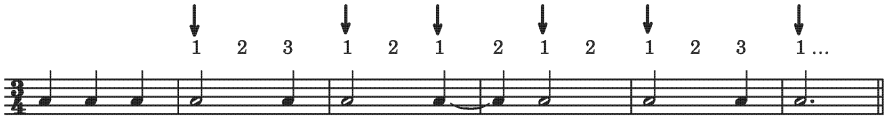
Another important type of metrical disturbance, closely related to syncopation, is the **hemiola**. In a hemiola, the established meter temporarily is displaced by a competing meter. It occurs most often when a duple meter is imposed on a triple meter. To create this effect, accents are placed on every other beat rather than on every third beat, either by literal accent markings, by duple durations, or by one or more of the nontemporal accentual techniques, such as harmonic accent, dynamic accent, or registral accent.

In Example 1.39A, hemiola is created by articulative accents: The regular placement on every other quarter note creates a duple accent pattern, effectively weakening if not overtaking the triple pattern. Only in the penultimate measure is the triple pattern reinstated. In Example 1.39B, hemiola arises through the durational accents.

EXAMPLE 1.39 Hemiola

A. Hemiola by Surface Elements

B. Hemiola by Duple Durations



Let's look briefly at the opening of the Menuetto from Mozart's *Eine kleine Nachtmusik*, which contains a clear example of a hemiola (Example 1.40). The first five measures of Mozart's eight-measure phrase unfold as expected. The downbeat of each measure is well accented, and the following two beats are quite weak. The three-beat groups behave just as the meter signature indicates they will. But in the last three measures, something happens: The surface gesture changes with the trill figure that occurs first on beat 2 and then on beat 1, giving an odd feel to the triple meter. Now we sense groupings in 2's. Instead of **1** 2 3 | **1** 2 3 | **1** . . ., we feel **1** 2 **1** | 2 **1** 2 | **1**. At a deeper level, hemiola usually transforms a notated meter by a factor of two. Below the passage marked $\frac{2}{4}$, a slower moving $\frac{3}{2}$ meter is shown. Hemiola tends to occur in the approach to a final cadence, especially in the Baroque period. As an event marked for consciousness, it heralds the approach to closure, which brings welcome relief from the consistent texture and avoidance of musical articulations.

EXAMPLE 1.40 Mozart, *Eine kleine Nachtmusik*, K. 525, "Menuetto"

WORKBOOK 1
1.5–1.6

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS AND WRITING

1.11 Matching

SOLVED/APP 6

Match a rhythm from column X with one in column Y that has the same total duration. Use all options in column Y (i.e., avoid duplicating any answers). The first example in column X is completed for you.

X		Y
1. ♩	C	A. ♩. ♪
2. 𝅗𝅥	_____	B. 𝅗𝅥.
3. ♪♩	_____	C. ♫
4. ♩ ♩.	_____	D. ♬
5. ♫ ♩ ♬	_____	E. 𝅘𝅥𝅯𝅘𝅥𝅯𝅘𝅥𝅯𝅘𝅥𝅯 ♩ 𝅗𝅥
6. ♫	_____	F. 𝅗𝅥 ♪
7. 𝅘𝅥𝅯𝅘𝅥𝅯	_____	G. ♪
8. 𝅗𝅥 ♪♩	_____	H. ♫♩ ♫♪
9. ♩ 𝅗𝅥 𝅘𝅥𝅯𝅘𝅥𝅯	_____	I. ♩.
10. 𝅗𝅥 ♪♫	_____	J. ♪♫♩ ♩♫

1.12 Pattern Durations

Write a *single duration* that is equivalent to the notes and/or rests in each of the given patterns. *Be aware*: One answer requires the use of double dots.

SOLVED/APP 6

Sample: =

A. =

B. =

C. =

D. =

E. =

F. =

G. =

H. =

I. =

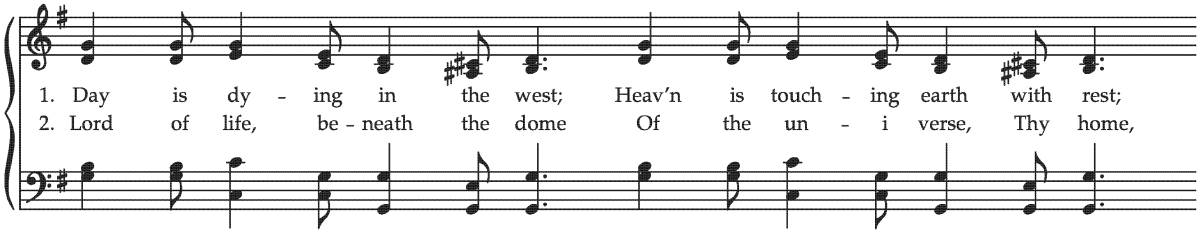
J. =

1.13 Determining Meter and Adding Bar Lines

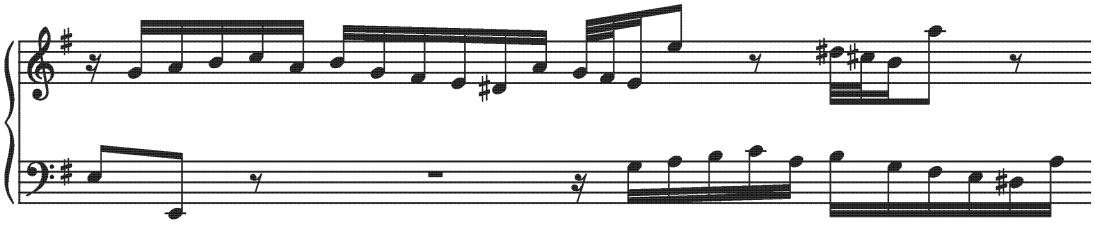
The following examples are unmetered and lack bar lines. However, given the metrical groupings and other various musical hints (melodic repetition, etc.), you should be able to determine the meter and add bar lines.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. William F. Sherwin, Day Is Dying in the West (version 1)



B. Bach, Prelude in E minor, from *Six Little Preludes*, BWV 938



C. Bach, Prelude in A minor, BWV 865, *Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book I

D. Bach, "Erbarme dich," mein Gott ("Have Mercy, Lord, on Me"), *St. Matthew Passion*, no. 39, BWV 244

SOLVED/APP 6

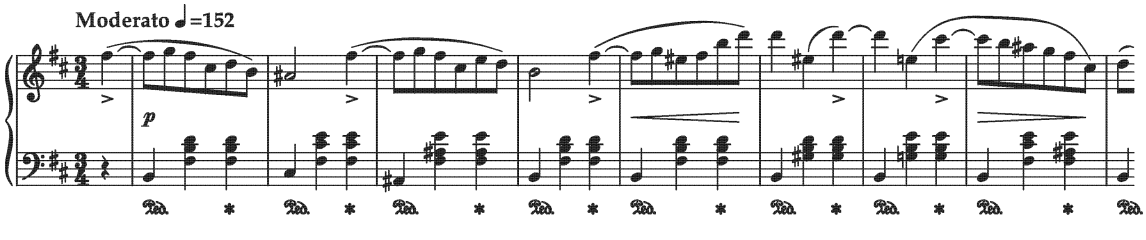
E. William F. Sherwin, Day Is Dying in the West (version 2)

1.14 Analysis of Musical Accent

The examples shown, all taken from Chopin's Waltzes, contain various types of accents. Find and label at least one example of each type of accent. Your choices are: durational, harmonic, registral, articulative, textural, contour, and pitch. Are these accents coordinated with the metrical accents?

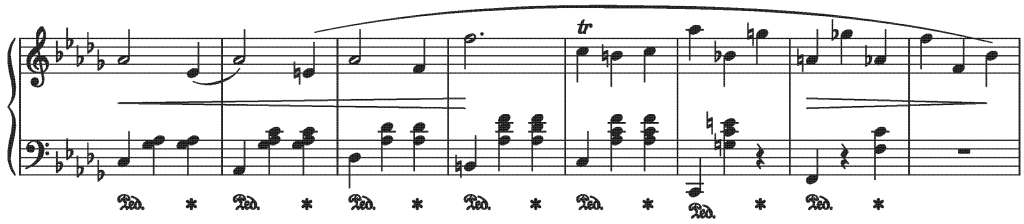
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Waltz in B minor, op. posth. 69, no. 2



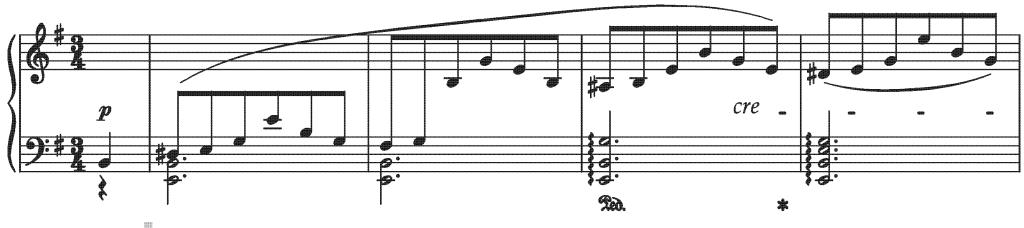
SOLVED/APP 6

B. Waltz in D♭ major, op. 64, no. 1



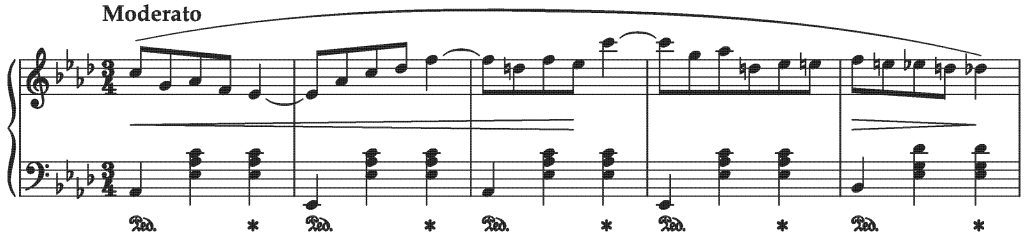
SOLVED/APP 6

C. Waltz in E minor, B1 56



SOLVED/APP 6

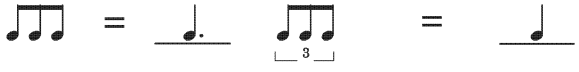
D. Waltz in A♭ major, op. 64, no. 3



WRITING

1.15 Borrowed Divisions

Write a *single duration* that is equivalent to the combined durations of the given patterns.

Sample solutions: 

A. = _____

B. = _____

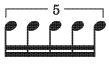
C. = _____

D. = _____

E. = _____

F. = _____

G. = _____

H.  = _____

I. = _____

J. = _____

TERMS AND CONCEPTS FOR PITCH, SCALE, AND KEY

- accidentals
- agogic
- bar line
- chromatic, chromatic system, chromatic scale
- chromatic alteration
- circle of fifths
- common-practice period
- diatonic
- enharmonic equivalence
- frequency
- interval: half step and whole step; diatonic and chromatic half steps
- key
- key signature
- major scale
- minor scales:
  - natural, harmonic, and melodic
- mode, major and minor
- parallel major and parallel minor
- pitch, pitch class
- register
- relative major and relative minor
- scale
- scale degree names and numbers
- staff
- step
- tonal, tonal center, tonality
- tonic
- transposition

TERMS AND CONCEPTS FOR RHYTHM AND METER

- accent
  - durational, metrical, rhythmic
  - nontemporal:
    - articulative, contour, dynamic, harmonic, pitch, registral, textural
- accented versus unaccented
- anacrusis
- bar line
- beam
- beat
- borrowed divisions (duplets, triplets, irregular)
- common time, cut time (*alla breve*)
- downbeat, upbeat
- harmonic rhythm
- hemiola
- measure

- meter:
  - simple versus compound
  - simple duple, simple triple, simple quadruple; compound duple, compound triple, compound quadruple
  - asymmetrical
- meter signature
- musical patterning
- phrasing slur
- pulse
- rhythm
- strong and weak
- syncopation
- tempo
- tie

TERMS AND CONCEPTS FOR INTERVALS

- chromatic and diatonic half steps
- climax, melodic
- compound and simple intervals
- conjunct and disjunct motion
- consonances: perfect versus imperfect
- diatonic intervals
- dissonance, dissonant intervals
- enharmonic intervals
- generic interval versus specific interval; intervallic quality
- harmonic interval versus melodic interval
- interval types: augmented, diminished, major, minor, and perfect intervals
- intervallic consonance versus dissonance
- inversion of intervals
- law of recovery
- tendency tones
- tritone

CHAPTER 2

Harnessing Space and Time: Introduction to Melody and Two-Voice Counterpoint

Melody: Characteristics and Writing

Intervals do not exist in isolation, but rather function as part of larger musical constructs, such as melody. Example 2.1 contains numerous short melodic excerpts from a wide variety of music that spans the last one thousand years. The examples are drawn from vocal music (including both solo song and opera) and instrumental music (ranging from solo piano to full orchestra). Listen to the excerpts with the following questions in mind:

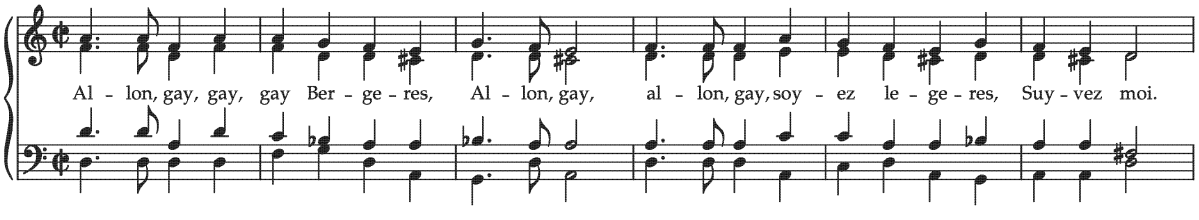
1. Are they in a key? If so how do you know?
2. Do the melodies have a shape or contour? You might want to trace the general flow of each melody, "connecting the dots" with a pencil.
3. What sorts of melodic intervals occur between pitches? Do the composers prefer some intervals more than others?
4. Are there accented events in the melodies, that is, events that draw your attention, such as leaps, chromaticism, and longer durations? If so, are these events isolated, or does the composer prepare them in some way?

EXAMPLE 2.1 Melody Over One Thousand Years

A. Wipo, Victimae paschali laudes (ca. 1020)

B. Byzantine chant (ca. 1200)

C. Guillaume Costeley "Allon, gay, gay" (ca. 1575)



D. Denis Gaultier, piece for lute (ca. 1650)

E. Bach, "Bereite dich, Zion," from *Christmas Oratorio* (1735)

F. Haydn, String Quartet in C major, op. 76, no. 3, "Emperor" (1796)

G. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C major, op. 53, "Waldstein" (1803)

H. Schubert, Symphony no. 9 in C major (ca. 1827)

I. Scriabin, Etude in C♯ minor, op. 2, no. 1 (1887)

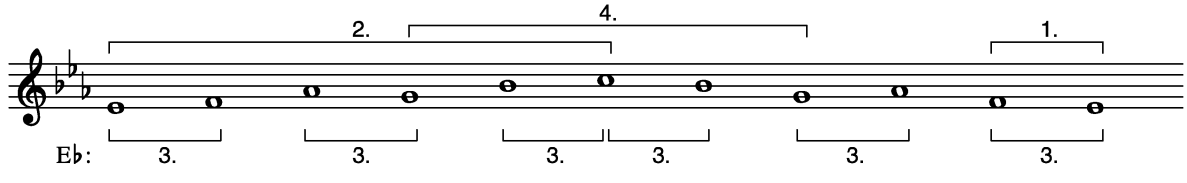
J. Arlen, "Over the Rainbow" (1938)

K. Billy Joel, "Piano Man" (1973)

Each example—whether written for voice or for instrument—is singable. The pitches follow one another in what seems to be a logical and goal-oriented flow. The intervals are mostly steps, and leaps are usually small. Large leaps are followed by a change of direction and often tend to be filled in, in effect retracing and completing a musical space that was left open. Such balance, and the creation and dissipation of energy, are important components of melody. These melodies are almost entirely diatonic, and they begin with a strong sense of key—always a member of the tonic triad and usually on $\hat{1}$. Most of the melodies end on $\hat{1}$; those that end on $\hat{2}$ or $\hat{5}$ will continue and eventually lead to $\hat{1}$. Their contours usually produce arches, often taking the form of an ascent followed by a descent; but sometimes, as in Beethoven's Waldstein Sonata, an ascent follows a descent. Finally, even though all of the melodies share these basic characteristics, each one possesses a distinct character. Melodic uniqueness is achieved via relationships between segments of the melody, most of which are formed from short rhythmic and melodic patterns called *motives*, a topic that we take up in later chapters.

Our first studies in melody writing will explore a few specific attributes shared by many melodies written in the tonal style. For now, we will focus exclusively on the pitch domain, without the stylistic elements of repeated rhythmic and melodic patterns that characterize individual melodies. Initially, our melodies will be very short, about 10–16 pitches. They will also be entirely diatonic (except for raising $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone in minor) and unmetered, with no rhythmic profile. Refer to Example 2.2 for examples of each of the following points.

EXAMPLE 2.2 Melodic Characteristics



Guidelines for Writing Melodies

1. Begin your melody on a member of the tonic triad ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{5}$) and end it with the two-pitch pattern $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$ or $\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$. The approach to the final pitch by step is called a **melodic cadence**. (The cadence is a crucial form-defining event in music.)
2. Limit the **range** of your melody (the total span of pitches) to the interval of a tenth, and set most of your melodic activity within a comfortable interval (**tessitura**) of about a sixth.
3. Move primarily by step, which is called **conjunct motion**. You can also move with occasional skips (of thirds, fourths and fifths) to add interest; this is called **disjunct motion**. However, disjunct motion should:

- be generally confined to small intervals, such as thirds, although you can use one or two larger leaps if they are no larger than a perfect fifth.
- traverse consonant melodic intervals (i.e., no dissonant leaps, such as a diminished fourth).
- resolve tensions. Some scale members have strong melodic pulls toward another member, usually the one lying a half step away. Such tendency tones create an important tension, but you should always resolve their tension.

  The most important tendency tone is the leading tone, which should ascend by step to $\hat{1}$, unless $\hat{7}$ is part of a descending melodic line $\hat{8}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$.
- lead to a change of direction that fills in at least some of the musical space that was created by the leap, called the "law of recovery." This is not essential for skips of a third, but it is mandatory with larger leaps, such as a fifth.
- rarely use multiple skips one after the other. You can use two skips in a row if they are both thirds and if you change direction after the second skip.
- avoid repeated notes and repetitive patterns, or *sequences* (for example, $\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$, $\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$, $\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$)—at least for now. Repeated notes create undesirable rhythmic groupings and rhythmic stagnation.

4. Aim for a logical shape. A melody commonly creates an arch that slowly rises to a single high point, or **melodic climax**, and then returns to the starting point.

Example 2.3 illustrates the basic tenets of a good melody, this time incorporating pitch, rhythm, and meter. The melody opens with a stepwise descent from $\hat{3}$ past $\hat{1}$, to the leading tone, followed by change of direction, which satisfies the need for the leading tone to resolve to a tonic and to balance the falling motion with rising motion. Note that this ascent leads back to $\hat{3}$, but not as an arrival; instead the line falls to $\hat{2}$, a half step below $\hat{3}$, in exactly the same way that the line turned on $\hat{7}$ and rose to $\hat{1}$ in mm. 2–3.

The melody then pushes higher, first to D and then to F, the climax of the melody. Note that after the leap to D, the line changes direction and falls to C, thus balancing the leap with a contour change. Further, the climax on F is followed by a stepwise descent to the melodic cadence on B ($\hat{2}$), which leaves the listener hanging, waiting for a resolution to $\hat{1}$. Mozart repeats the melody from mm. 1–4 in mm. 9–12, but then immediately and dramatically leaps to F without the intermediary skip through B, from which he descends again by step, this time closing strongly on the long-anticipated A ($\hat{1}$).

EXAMPLE 2.3 Mozart, Piano Sonata in A minor, K. 310, *Presto*

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

WORKBOOK 1
2.1

2.1 Melody Comparison

SOLVED/APP 6

Play the following two melodies. Although A and B both contain the same number of pitches and each unfolds a melodic contour that rises toward the middle and then falls at the end, they could hardly be more different from one another. Which one do you like more? Try to sing each one. Which is more singable and memorable? Why? In a page or two, compare and contrast the two melodies by working through the list of melodic attributes given on pages 43–44.

A.

C:

B.

C:

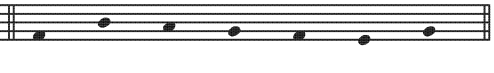
2.2 Melodic Criticism

SOLVED/APP 6

The following melodic contours (tunes without rhythm or meter) contain weaknesses or problems. Melodies A–D are in G major; melodies E–G are in D minor. Be able to explain the problems with each example.

A.

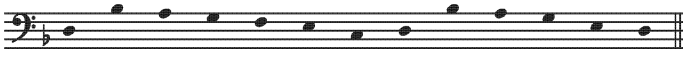
B.



C.

D.

E.



F.

G.

Controlling Consonance and Dissonance: Introduction to Two-Voice Counterpoint

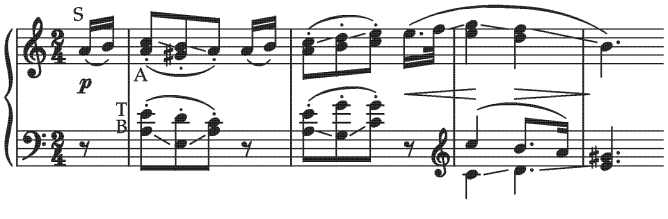
The study of harmony concerns how chords connect to one another and move through time. But chords and their connections are dependent on how individual members, or **voices** (or **parts**), move from one chord tone to the next and how they combine with one another. Listen to the excerpts in Example 2.4, all of which sound very different from one another, but each of which shares many common features, including:

1. At least four simultaneously sounding voices. These voices are labeled "Soprano," "Alto," "Tenor," and "Bass" in Example 2.4A and in their abbreviated forms in Example 2.4B–D ("SATB").
2. Individual voices that are melodic, moving from one pitch to another, usually by steps or small leaps.
3. Voices that combine vertically with one another, forming mostly consonances with the other voices (octaves, fifths, thirds, and sixths).
4. The highest- and lowest-sounding pitches as aurally the most prominent. That our ears are drawn to these **outer voices** is very important. Outer voices provide the structural skeleton in tonal music, and harmony is most easily viewed as the filling in of the musical space between these two melodic voices—the soprano and the bass—with usually two additional voices (alto and tenor).
5. Voices that often move in opposite directions to one another, especially the outer voices; when one voice ascends, the other descends, and vice versa. When voices move in the same direction, it is usually by imperfect harmonic consonances (i.e., thirds and sixths).

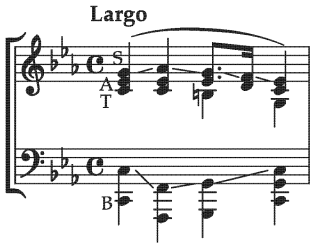
EXAMPLE 2.4 Polyphony and Harmony

A. Bach, *St. Matthew Passion*, "O World, I Now Must Leave Thee"

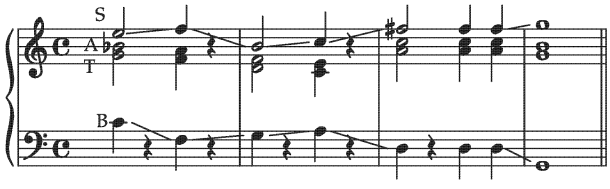
B. Schumann, "Armes Waisenkind," from *Album for the Young*, op. 68, no. 6



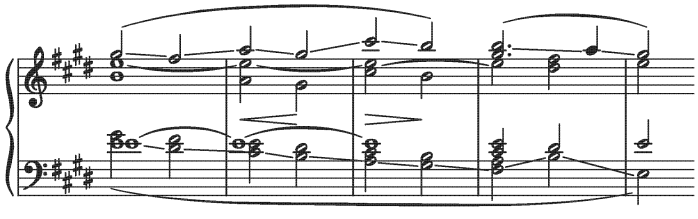
C. Chopin, Prelude in C minor, op. 28



D. Beethoven, Symphony no. 1, op. 21 in C major



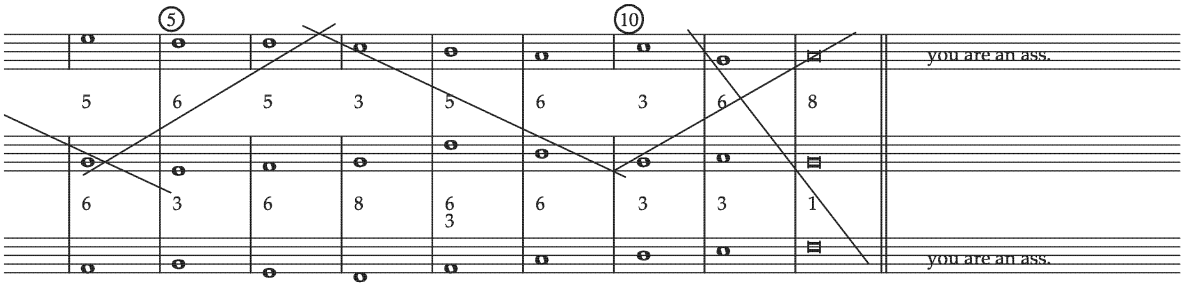
E. Mendelssohn, *Midsummer Night's Dream*, Overture



Clearly, the specific pitches, their combination into sonorities, their individual movement, and their interaction with other voices are not haphazard. Rather, they are part of a well-regulated and thoughtful procedure. The relationship between and movement of two or more voices is called **counterpoint** ("melody against melody") or **polyphony** ("multiple sounds"). Counterpoint has been the focus of Western music study since the tenth century and it continues to serve musicians to this day. Contrapuntal relationships depend on two elements: (1) the behavior of consonant and dissonant intervals, and (2) the harmonies implied by their interaction. Here we examine the first element: how consonance and dissonance create musical motion. Our study of harmony, the second element, begins in Chapter 3.

By the early eighteenth century, musicians had developed user-friendly ways to teach counterpoint. Johann Fux is credited today with a particularly succinct pedagogy. In fact, his book *Gradus ad Parnassum* was closely studied by composers of the late eighteenth century, including Haydn, Mozart, and Beethoven, as well as composers throughout the nineteenth century, including Brahms. Indeed, the book and its concepts continue to this day to be a fundamental part of music theory instruction. Many composers, including Mozart, taught composition using a healthy dose of the ideas presented in *Gradus*. The compositional exercises of some of Mozart's students have been preserved, including several hundred pages from the pen of a wealthy Englishman named Thomas Attwood. Mozart considered Attwood somewhat talented, remarking that he "is a young man for whom I have a sincere affection and esteem. . . . He partakes more of my style than any scholar I ever had." However, Mozart wasn't always complimentary, as we can see in Example 2.5, in which he has crossed out Attwood's entire exercise and, in English, expressed his frustration in no uncertain terms.

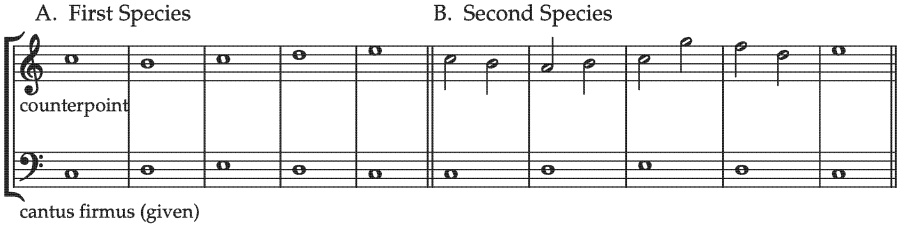
EXAMPLE 2.5 Mozart's Reaction to Attwood's Counterpoint



Fux begins with a study of melody (as we have just done). In subsequent chapters he uses these melodies, called **cantus firmi** ["fixed songs"; singular: **cantus firmus** (**CF**)], as the structural pillars against which he teaches how to add first one voice, then two, and, still later three, creating a total of four parts.

In order to make these studies as pedagogical as possible, Fux presents a series of five steps—or **species**—each of which isolates the way that an added voice would move against the CF. These five species begin, logically enough, with the addition of a single pitch above or below each pitch of the CF, resulting in **note-against-note counterpoint**, or **first-species counterpoint** (also called 1:1 counterpoint). The newly composed voice is called the **contrapuntal voice** (or **counterpoint**). This voice can be written above or below the CF (Example 2.6A). In **second-species counterpoint** (also called 2:1 counterpoint), two pitches are written against a single pitch of the CF (Example 2.6B). Subsequent species add more pitches to the contrapuntal voice as well as new rhythmic procedures. Fifth-species counterpoint combines all of the techniques of the previous four species.

EXAMPLE 2.6 First and Second Species



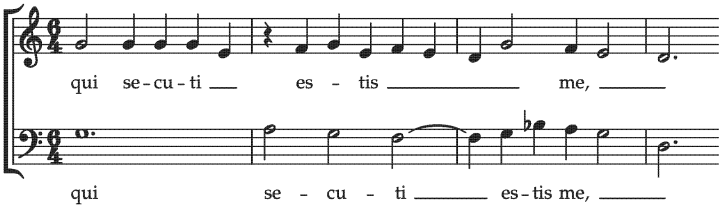
Using this highly controlled environment, the musician can focus on the primary goal of writing counterpoint: to create a melody that simultaneously combines with the CF. Such harnessing of music's horizontal plane (i.e., the linear, temporal domain) and vertical plane (i.e., the spatial, harmonic domain) is actually the goal of your entire theory studies. Our counterpoint studies will focus only on first and second species in two voices and provide a foundation for our future studies, which draw heavily on principles of melody and intervals. The study of species counterpoint will help develop your ear and show you the difference between rules, which must be obeyed, and guidelines, which are more aesthetic options.

To demonstrate briefly how thinking in terms of two-voice counterpoint is central to Western music, the excerpts in Example 2.7 are taken from nearly six hundred years of music; they range from the early Renaissance to the

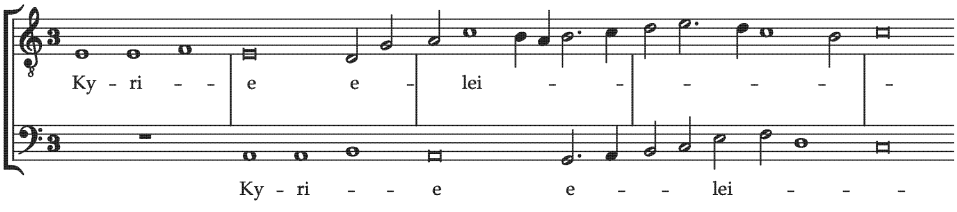
Baroque and Classical periods and span the entire nineteenth century. Each excerpt depends on the relationship between two voices moving in either 1:1 counterpoint, 2:1 counterpoint, or a mixture of the two. If there are more than two voices, the outer voices will be most prominent, like those in Example 2.4. As you listen to these excerpts, notice that each voice is a melody unto itself and that when combined, the voices maintain their independence.

EXAMPLE 2.7 Six Centuries of Counterpoint

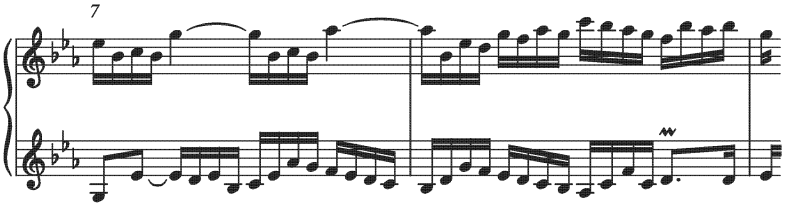
A. Dufay, *Missa Sancti Jacobi*, Communion (ca. 1428)



B. Josquin des Pres, *Missa Pange Lingua*, Kyrie (ca. 1517)



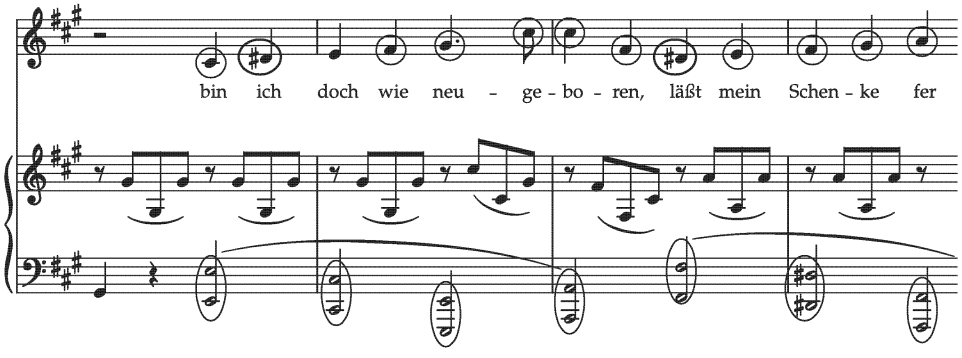
C. Bach, Invention in C minor (ca. 1723)



D. Mozart, Sonata in C minor, K. 475 (ca. 1775)

E. Beethoven, Violin Sonata in A major, op. 23, *Allegro molto* (1800)

F. Brahms, "Unüberwindlich," op. 94, no. 5 (1884)

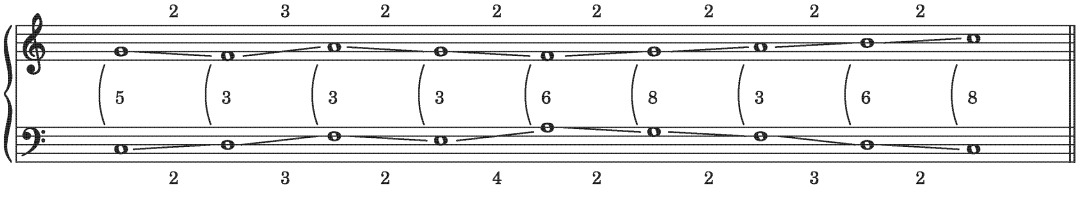


First-Species Counterpoint

We already know that one melodic tone most often moves to another in the smoothest manner: by step or by third. By extension, when we combine two voices, we must consider not only the intervallic movement *within* an individual voice, but also the intervals formed *between* the two voices.

Example 2.8 presents an example of first-species counterpoint. The horizontal (melodic) intervals formed within each line are marked above the upper voice and below the lower voice. The vertical (harmonic) intervals formed between the two lines are labeled between the lines. All compound intervals are reduced to their simple forms (e.g., a tenth is labeled as a third). The direction and resulting shape, or contour, of each voice is traced by straight lines that appear between the pitches.

EXAMPLE 2.8 First-Species Counterpoint: Motion Within and Between Voices



We'll begin our analysis of Example 2.8 by examining individual lines, and then we'll address the ways the lines combine.

1. Each line moves primarily by step (major and minor seconds); leaps are restricted to small consonant intervals (mostly thirds and a single fourth).
2. Each line's contour is varied such that the direction changes after every pitch or two.
3. The combination of lines produces only consonant harmonic intervals, most of which are imperfect (thirds and sixths). The example begins and ends with perfect consonances, and there is only one perfect consonance within the example (an octave). Notice that there are no perfect fourths; they are very unstable in two-voice counterpoint and considered to be a dissonance.

4. The two melodies rarely move in the same direction; rather, each melody maintains its own independence.

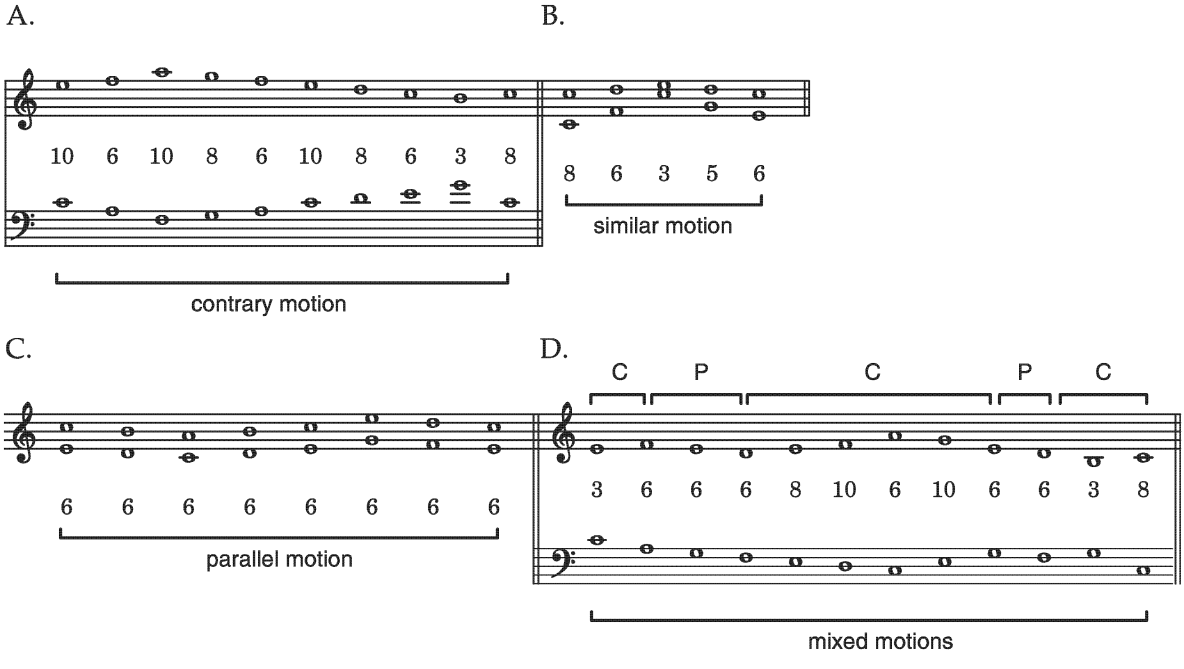
Consonant harmonic intervals (P8, P5, M and m thirds and sixths, and P1) are the only intervals permitted in first-species counterpoint. The perfect fourth may not be used. Melodic lines must be smooth and independent of one another, yet they must work together, using only consonant intervals. The source of successful counterpoint is the contrapuntal motion that results from the combined play of voices.

Contrapuntal Motions

Contrapuntal motion refers to the contours produced between two or more voices. Note-against-note counterpoint involves three types of contrapuntal motion.

Type 1. Voices that move in opposite directions from one another create **contrary motion**. For example, contrary motion is used in all but two cases in Example 2.8. Another example of contrary motion appears in Example 2.9A.

EXAMPLE 2.9 Contrapuntal Motions



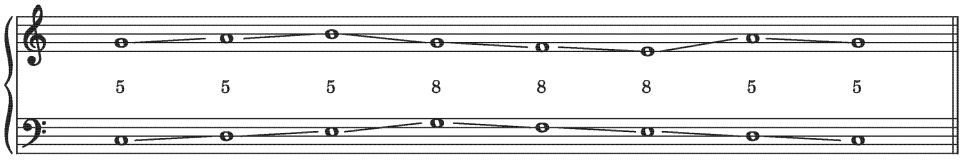
Type 2. Voices that move in the same general direction produce **similar motion**. Example 2.9B shows similar motion.

Type 3. Voices that move in the same direction and maintain the same generic interval create **parallel motion**. For example, parallel thirds and tenths characterize the motion between the second, third, and fourth intervals in Example 2.8. That these intervals are both major and minor does not affect the designation *parallel*; only the generic intervallic size needs to be repeated. Example 2.9C shows a string of parallel sixths.

Contrary motion creates the most independence between voices. You should therefore incorporate it as much as possible. Parallel motion can be very beautiful. But given that the voices are heard as shadowing one another, parallel motion substantially reduces voice independence and general motion. In order to maintain as much independence and momentum as possible in parallel motion, you may use only imperfect intervals (thirds and sixths). Further, parallel motion in thirds or sixths should be limited to a maximum of three consecutive uses (6–6–6, or 3–3–3) in order to avoid monotony. Music should include a mixture of these various motions to create a balanced and pleasing structure (Example 2.9D).

While parallel sixths and thirds are allowed, moving directly from one perfect interval between the CF and the counterpoint voice to another perfect interval of the same size is forbidden. Example 2.10 contains several instances of such **parallel perfect intervals**, each of which is marked with parallel lines. Notice how such parallels ruin line independence and, in the case of parallel octaves, create the unfortunate effect of one voice dropping out of the texture.

EXAMPLE 2.10 Forbidden Parallel Perfect Intervals

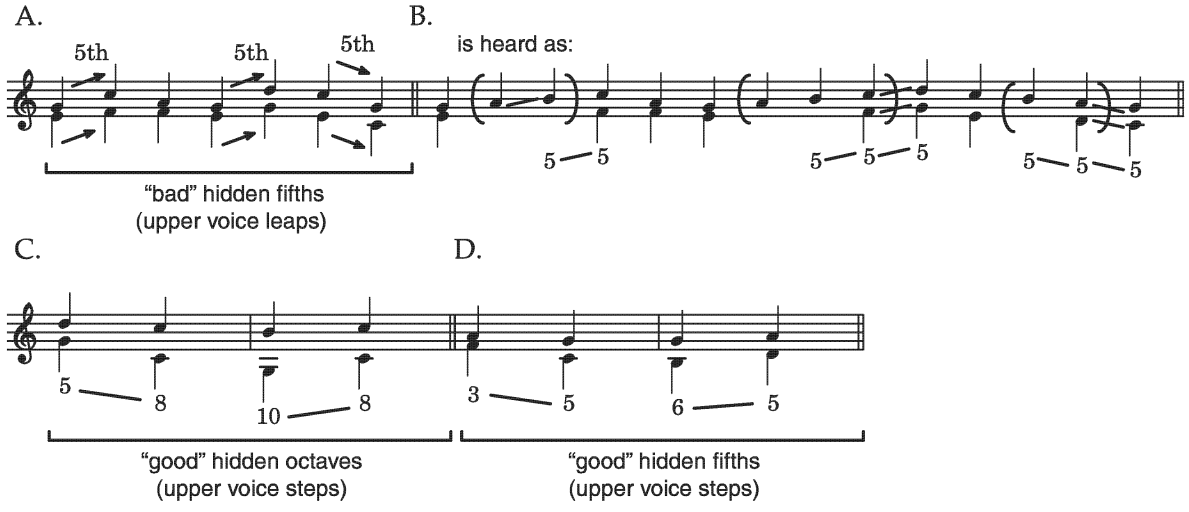


Finally, **similar motion** provides more drama to your counterpoint because both voices ascend or descend but by different-sized intervals. Similar motion (like parallel motion) is most effective when you use imperfect consonances.

You must be careful when approaching perfect consonances. As already stated, you may not move in parallel motion from a perfect consonance to another of the same size, but you also may not approach a perfect consonance by similar motion. Such **direct intervals** (also called **hidden intervals** or **similar intervals**) draw attention to perfect fifths and octaves, emphasizing their hollow sound (see Example 2.11A). Further, direct intervals often give the impression of parallels (hence the synonymous term *hidden*) because the ear tends to fill in the intervening intervals. Example 2.11B shows how the hidden fifths of Example 2.11A can be heard as hidden parallel fifths. To avoid direct intervals, approach perfect intervals by using contrary motion.

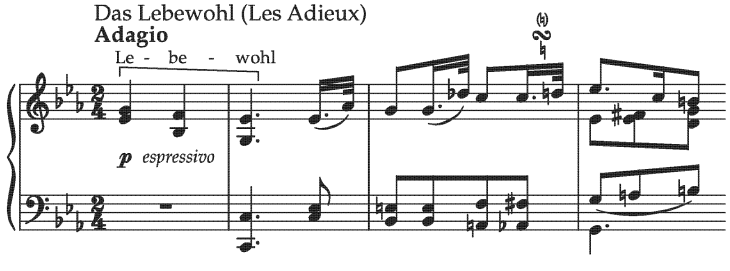
There is one situation in which you may move to an octave or a fifth in similar motion: when the upper voice moves by step to the perfect interval. In Examples 2.11C and 2.11D the direct motion to the octave and the fifth are permissible, given the step motion in the upper voice. Example 2.11E contains several examples of a special setting of legal direct fifths, where the upper voice moves by step and the lower voice leaps. Given their rustic, hollow sound, such *horn fifths* are popular referential devices throughout the common practice. Notice how Scarlatti, Schumann, and Paganini cast their horn fifths in a playful manner, while Beethoven's somber setting evokes the title he gave the sonata ("The Farewell").

EXAMPLE 2.11 Hidden (Direct) Intervals

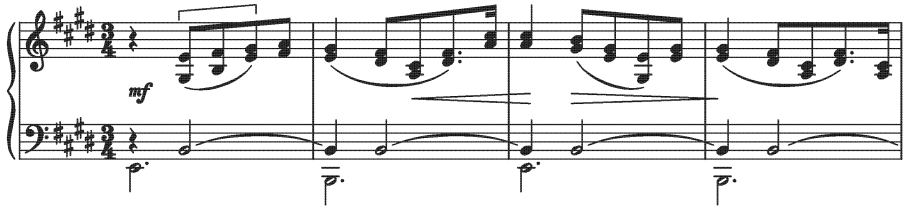


E1. Scarlatti, Sonata in D major, K. 96

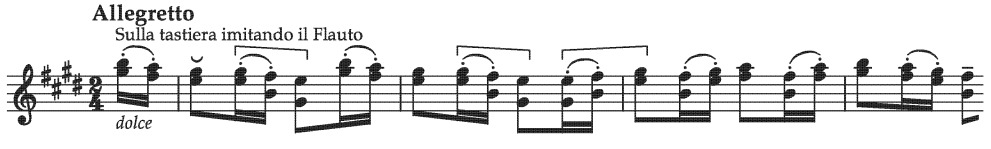
E2. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 81A



E3. Schumann, "Waldesgespräch," from *Liederkreis*, op. 39

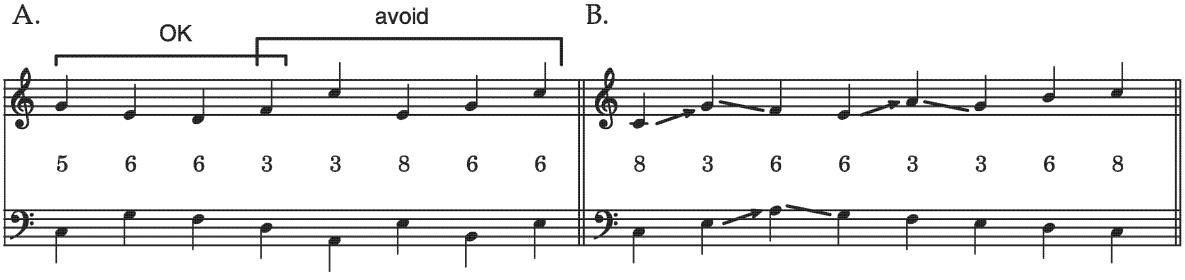


E4. Paganini, Caprice for Violin, op. 1



Finally, aim for smooth lines, and avoid simultaneous leaps (fourths or larger) in both voices (Example 2.12A). When you do leap, change direction, just as you did in your melody writing (Example 2.12B).

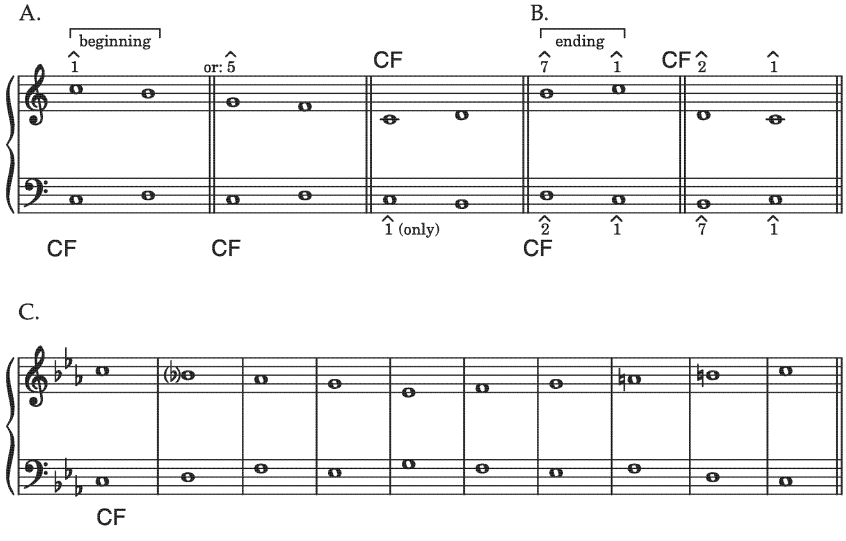
EXAMPLE 2.12 Treatment of Leaps



Beginning and Ending First-Species Counterpoint

Before we begin writing first-species counterpoint, you must know how to begin and end each exercise. The contrapuntal voice must begin on $\hat{1}$. However, if the contrapuntal voice occurs above the CF, you may begin on $\hat{5}$ (Example 2.13A). Your counterpoint must end, or **cadence**, on an octave or unison ($\hat{1}$ in both voices; see Example 2.13B). The penultimate (next-to-last) measure must contain $\hat{2}$ and $\hat{7}$, which move in contrary motion to the octave on $\hat{1}$. In minor, raise $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone; if $\hat{6}$ precedes $\hat{7}$, raise it, too (Example 2.13C). However, use only the lowered form of $\hat{7}$ (and $\hat{6}$) within the exercise. See Example 2.13 for examples of cadences. The CF is marked in each case.

EXAMPLE 2.13 Beginning and Ending First-Species Counterpoint



Rules and Guidelines for First-Species (1:1) Counterpoint

What follows is a summary of the rules and guidelines for first-species counterpoint. Rules are absolute and guidelines are suggestions. Rules create a structural foundation for your piece; guidelines, when followed, create a more aesthetically pleasing musical surface.

Rule 1 Harmonic (vertical) intervals must be consonant (the perfect fourth is a dissonance in two-voice counterpoint).

Rule 2 Parallel perfect intervals (unisons, fifths, and octaves) are forbidden.

Rule 3 Approach perfect consonances using contrary motion; the single context in which similar motion is permitted occurs when the upper voice moves by step to the octave or fifth.

Rule 4 Begin and end your counterpoint on $\hat{1}$ (unless the counterpoint appears above the CF, when it may begin on $\hat{5}$).

Rule 5 In minor, use the lowered form of $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$; raise $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone only in the penultimate measure, and raise $\hat{6}$ when it precedes the leading tone.

Guideline 1 Use step motion as much as possible in the contrapuntal voice, with occasional skips (jumps of a third) or leaps (jumps of a fourth or more) to add interest. Change direction and move by step after a leap.

Guideline 2 Since the goal of counterpoint is voice independence, use contrary motion as much as possible. Parallel motion is restricted to imperfect consonances; limit to three consecutive uses.

WORKBOOK 1
2.2–2.3

Guideline 3 Use imperfect consonances as verticalities when possible. Restrict the use of octaves and fifths to only one or two within the exercise.

Guideline 4 Avoid two perfect consonances in a row since they create a hollow sound (e.g., a fifth to an octave, or vice versa).

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

2.3 Identification of Contrapuntal Motions

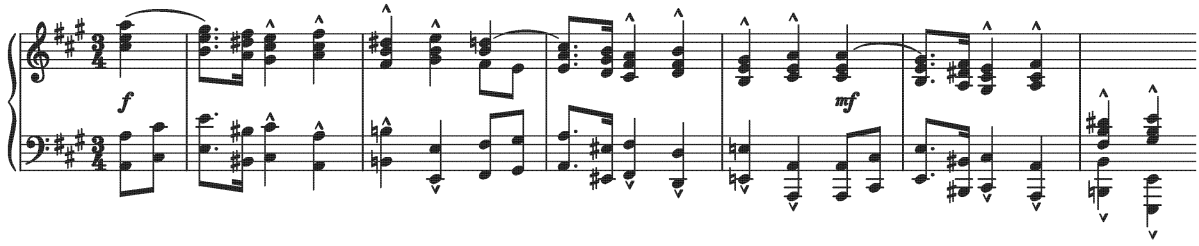
The following literature excerpts demonstrate primarily first-species counterpoint. Label each vertical interval created by the outer voices, and then identify the prevailing type of motion in each example as contrary, parallel, or similar. Ignore pitches in parentheses.

A. Victoria, Kyrie (1592)

B. Quantz, Duet no. 4, from *Six Duets for Two Flutes*

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Schumann, "Wichtige Begebenheit," from *Kinderscenen*, op. 15



D. Beethoven, Violin Sonata in G major, op. 96, *Scherzo*. Consider the lowest voice of the accompaniment and the violin part (i.e., ignore the right hand of the piano).

2.4 Error Detection

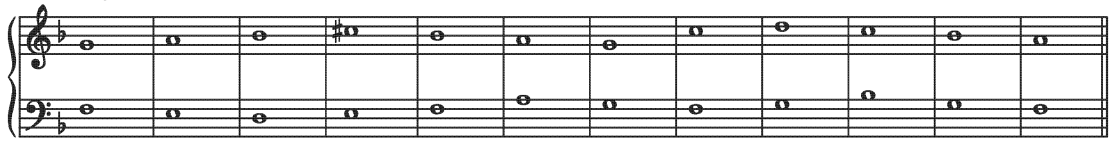
The given first-species counterpoint contains three types of errors:

1. Melodic (e.g., dissonant or multiple leaps)
2. Vertical intervals (e.g., dissonant intervals)
3. Motion from one interval to another (e.g., parallel perfect intervals or direct intervals)

First, label each vertical interval. Then mark each error using the following method: *D* for dissonant vertical interval and *P8* and *P5* for parallel perfect octave and fifth, respectively. Use *Dir* for direct intervals. For melodic errors in the counterpoint voice, use your own system, such as "too many leaps," "too big a leap," or "must change direction after leap."

SOLVED/APP 6

counterpoint



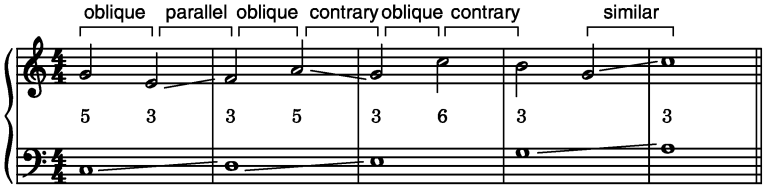
CF

Key:

Second-Species Counterpoint

In second-species counterpoint, the contrapuntal voice uses rhythmic values that are twice as fast as those of the CF, so for every note of the CF, there are two in the contrapuntal voice. The contrapuntal motion of one voice moving while the other voice remains stationary is called **oblique motion**. See Example 2.14, which, in addition to similar and contrary motion, contains oblique motion. Oblique motion, along with parallel, similar, and contrary motion, completes the list of ways that voices may move against one another.

EXAMPLE 2.14 Oblique Motion



Given that there are now strong beats (where both the CF and the added counterpoint move to new pitches) and weak beats (where only the counterpoint moves to a new pitch against the sustained CF), a metric hierarchy arises. In 2:1 counterpoint, we observe the rules and guidelines from 1:1 counterpoint concerning melody writing and the interaction of the two voices. However, we must also attend to the potential problems that may arise given that we now write two pitches in the contrapuntal voice against a single CF pitch.

As with first-species counterpoint, the downbeat must be consonant, and successive downbeats must not contain parallel fifths or octaves. The weak beat, however, may be consonant *or* dissonant.

Weak-Beat Consonance

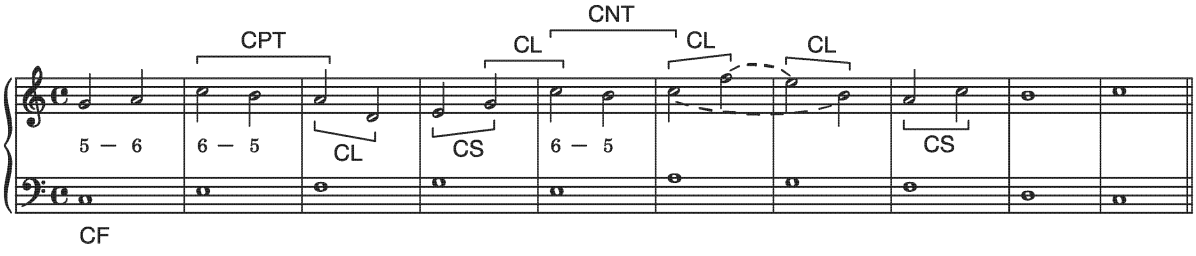
You may move to a weak-beat consonance by step, skip, or leap. However, there is only one way to create a consonant step motion: by moving from a fifth to a sixth or a sixth to a fifth, since only this intervallic combination contains two adjacent consonances. The generic term for such step motion is **5–6 technique** (Example 2.15, mm. 1–2 and m. 5). The consonant second pitch may continue its motion in the same direction, in which case we call it a **consonant passing tone (CPT)**, or it may return to the pitch heard on the downbeat, in which case we call it a **consonant neighbor tone (CNT)**. Example 2.15 presents examples of each.

Consonant skips (CS) are motions by a third. **Consonant leaps (CL)** are motions by intervals larger than a third. To skip or leap, the weak-beat note must be consonant with both the preceding melody note and the CF. Examples of consonant skips and leaps are found in mm. 3–4 and 6–9 of Example 2.15.

Sometimes these skips and leaps occur several times, creating the effect of splitting a single line into two separate voices, a technique which we call **compound melody**. An example of compound melody occurs in mm. 6–7 of Example 2.15; the two registrally separated "voices" are shown by the dotted slurs. Consonant skips and leaps are also possible from the weak beat to the

strong beat, but, again, they must be consonant with the preceding melody note and the CF; see Example 2.15, from mm. 1–2 and mm. 4–5. Notice that the majority of leaps take place *within*, rather than *between*, measures. This is because leaps draw attention to themselves; when they occur on an accented beat, they are particularly noticeable, thus detracting from the flow of the line.

EXAMPLE 2.15 Second-Species Counterpoint Using Intervallic Consonance on All Strong and Weak Beats

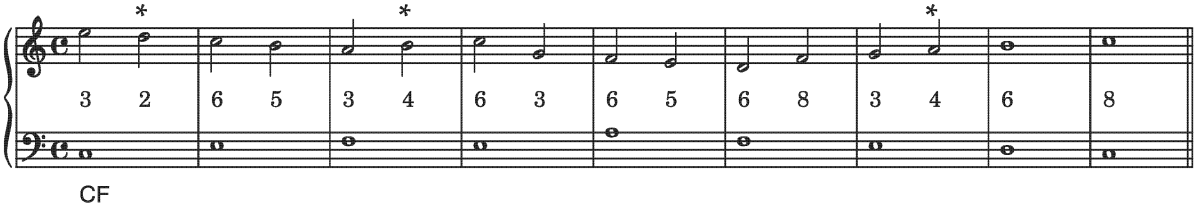


Weak-Beat Dissonance

Dissonance is the most important new feature of second-species counterpoint. Indeed, dissonance is the source of much expression in tonal music and a powerful way to create a dynamic flow. But dissonance, like any great force, must be carefully controlled.

Second-species counterpoint uses a single type of dissonance: the **unaccented passing tone**. Passing tones (PT) occur on a weak beat in 2:1 counterpoint, and they fill the space within the interval of a third, creating a smooth, stepwise motion. (We saw an example of the consonant passing tone using the 5–6 technique in Example 2.15.) The motion into and out of the dissonant passing tone must occur in a single direction, either ascending or descending. Since the PT may only occur on the weak beat, it will lie between two strong-beat consonances that are a third apart. Note in Example 2.16 that there are also consonant passing tones.

EXAMPLE 2.16 Consonant and Dissonant Passing Tones



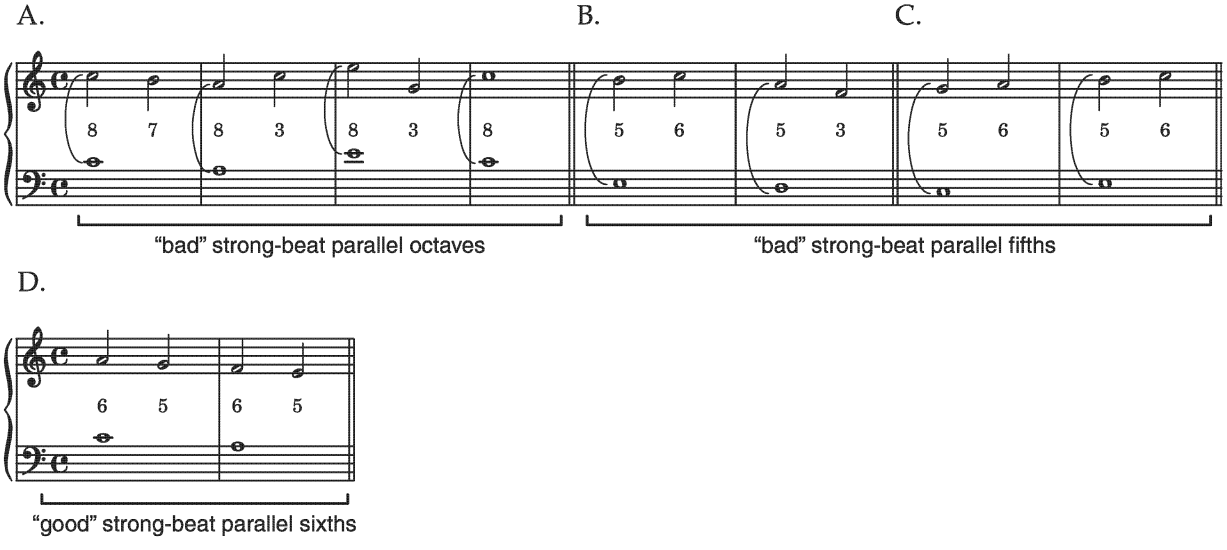
The 2:1 counterpoint in Example 2.16 contains both dissonant and consonant passing tones. Dissonant passing tones are marked with asterisks. Consonant passing tones are not marked, but you can spot them by their telltale intervallic labels "6 5" or "5 6." The first dissonant PT occurs in m. 1. The pitch D fills the third between E and C and creates a strong major-second dissonance that is discharged by the following sixth (m. 2). The next measure contains a consonant passing tone; B fills the third between C and A. Study the

rest of the example, noting how both consonant and dissonant passing tones are used. The goal in second-species counterpoint is to include as many passing tones as possible.

More on Perfect Consonances

In second-species counterpoint, you must be especially vigilant to avoid writing parallel and direct perfect consonances. For example, you might be tempted to think that the intervening weak-beat interval reduces the effects of the strong-beat parallels, but this is not the case, as demonstrated in Example 2.17.

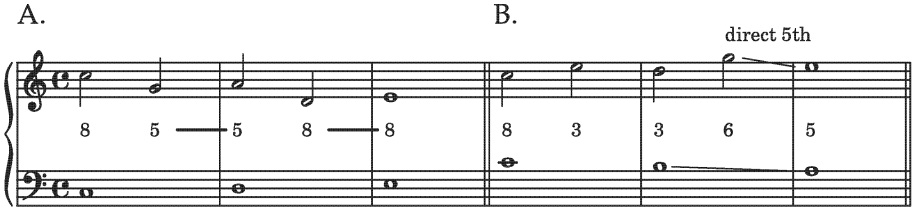
EXAMPLE 2.17 Treatment of Perfect Intervals in Second-Species Counterpoint



Example 2.17A contains four strong-beat octaves, none of which is obscured by the weak-beat pitch. In the first measure, the dissonant PT B is unable to conceal the octave motion between C and A on the downbeats of mm. 1 and 2. Note that a dissonance can never mediate poor voice leading. Nor is the consonant skip in m. 2 able to obscure the octaves A to E between mm. 2 and 3. Even the dramatic consonant leap of a falling sixth from E to G and change of direction cannot diminish the audible octaves on the downbeats; the metric accent from one measure to the next is simply too strong to hide the perfect intervals. Example 2.17B shows a similar situation with the perfect fifth. Example 2.17C illustrates that the important 5–6 technique is not powerful enough to hide downbeat fifths. However, a 6–5 motion is permissible, since the ear hears parallel sixths on the downbeats rather than fifths (Example 2.17D).

Finally, be aware of creating parallel perfect and direct intervals when adding a weak-beat note. In Example 2.18A, parallel fifths and octaves arise because of the added weak-beat note. Similarly, in mm. 2–3 of Example 2.18B, what was a successful strong-beat counterpoint (a third moving to a perfect fifth in contrary motion) is now flawed by the addition of the weak-beat G, which creates a direct fifth with the following downbeat.

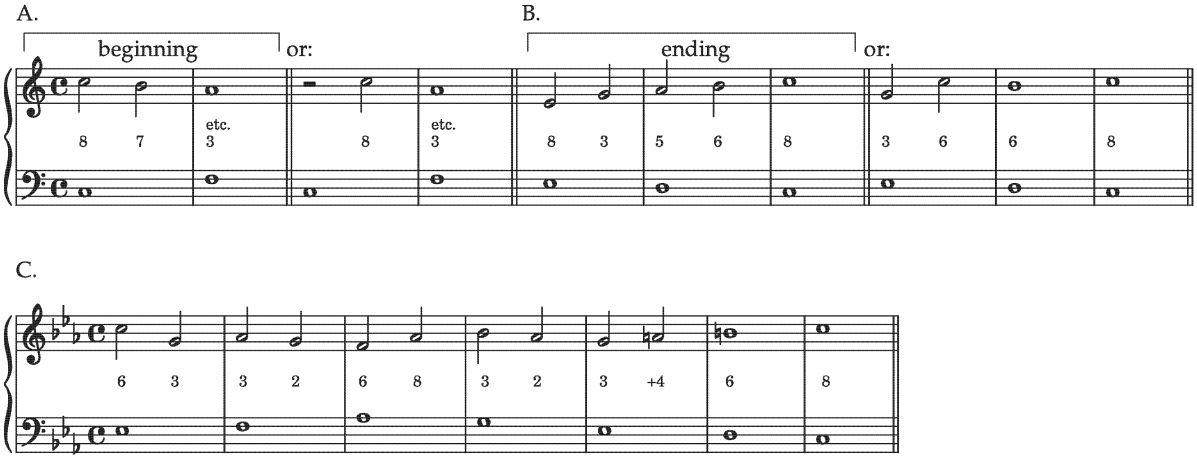
EXAMPLE 2.18 Avoid Parallel and Direct Intervals on Weak Beats



Beginning and Ending Second-Species Counterpoint

Like first species, you must begin on $\hat{1}$ if the contrapuntal voice is below the CF. When the contrapuntal voice is above the CF, you may begin on $\hat{1}$, $\hat{3}$, or $\hat{5}$. In addition, you may begin with either a half note or a half rest. The half rest is particularly effective since it immediately highlights the independence of voices and it creates a strong sense of forward motion. See Example 2.19A. The last measure must be a whole note on $\hat{1}$. However, the penultimate measure may be two half notes or a whole note. As with first-species counterpoint, the move to the final octave must be stepwise and in contrary motion. In the minor mode, use the lowered form of $\hat{7}$ within the exercise, reserving the leading tone for the penultimate measure. See Example 2.18C.

EXAMPLE 2.19 Beginning and Ending Second-Species Counterpoint



Rules and Guidelines for Second-Species Counterpoint

Rule 1 Strong beats must be consonant.

Rule 2 Avoid parallel perfect intervals between:

a. successive strong beats (downbeats).
b. weak beat and strong beat (upbeat and downbeat).

Rule 3 Avoid direct motion to perfect intervals from weak to strong beats.

Rule 4 The only permitted dissonance is the weak-beat passing tone (i.e., the dissonance must fill the space of a melodic third by step between two downbeats).

Rule 5 The added voice must begin on $\hat{1}$ when it appears below the CF, but it may begin on $\hat{1}$, $\hat{3}$, or $\hat{5}$ when it appears above the CF. You may begin with a half rest, and the penultimate measure may contain either one or two pitches. The final measure must contain a whole note.

Rule 6 In minor, use the lowered form of $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$; raise $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone only in the penultimate measure, and raise $\hat{6}$ if it precedes the leading tone.

WORKBOOK 1
2.4–2.5

Guideline 1 Incorporate as many dissonant passing tones as possible.

Guideline 2 Use consonant leaps to balance dissonant passing tones.

Guideline 3 Place leaps within, rather than between, measures.

Guideline 4 Label every interval, and mark each dissonant passing tone with an asterisk.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

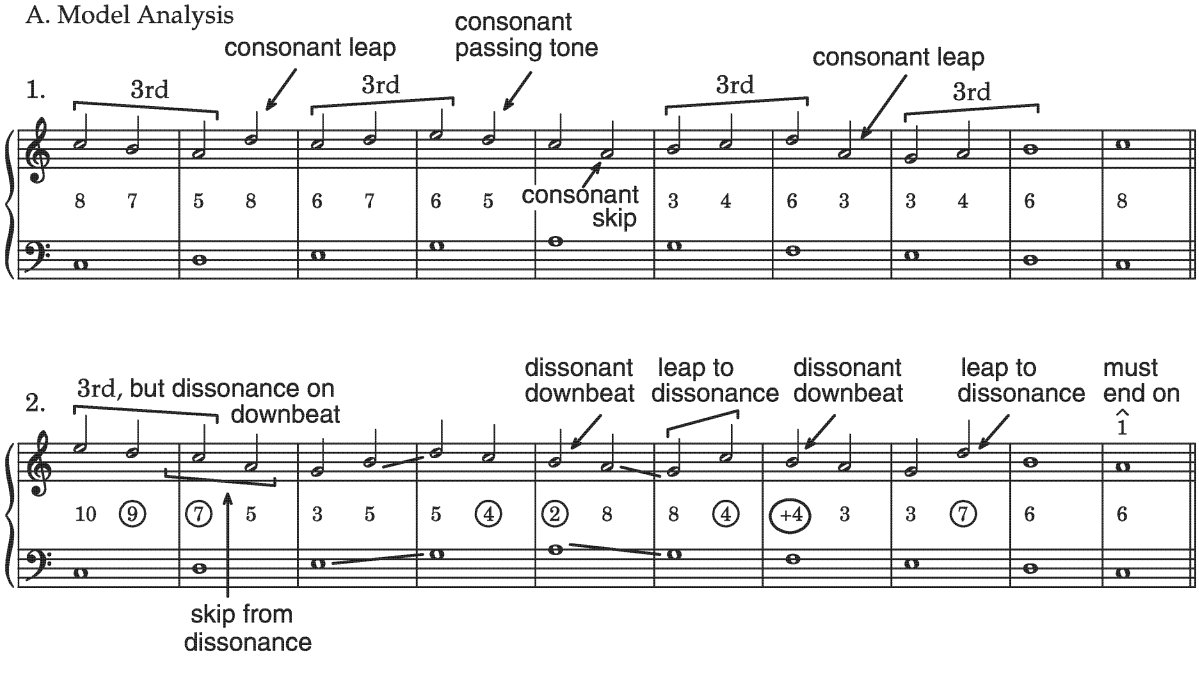
2.5 Analysis of Second-Species Counterpoint

Based on the model analysis of A1 and A2, you can see that the first example is error free, while the second is error ridden. Study these two models carefully; then analyze the following example using the labeling system shown in the models. Make sure you label all musical events, correct or incorrect. You will encounter three basic types of errors:

1. Melodic (e.g., dissonant or multiple leaps).
2. Vertical (e.g., improper use of dissonance).
3. Motion from one interval to another, either successive strong beats or weak beat to strong beat (e.g., improper use of dissonance, parallel perfect intervals, or direct intervals).

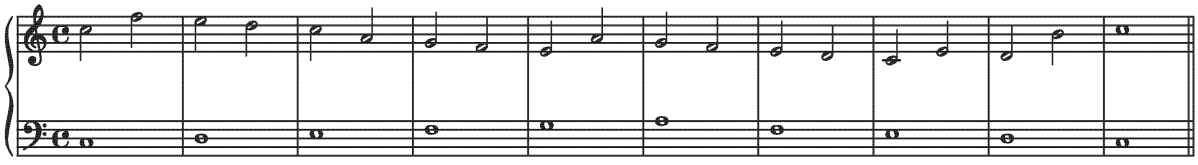
Begin by labeling each vertical interval and marking each dissonance.

A. Model Analysis



SOLVED/APP 6

B.



2.6 Analysis of Outer-Voice Counterpoint

Determine whether the following examples demonstrate primarily first- or second-species counterpoint. Then label each interval. Some examples involve two voices, others three to four voices; examine only the outer voices of examples with three or more voices. Finally, some examples shift the 2:1 relationship between voices.

A. Handel, *Water Music*, Minuet

B. Willaert, "And if out of jealousy you are making me such company"

C. Mozart, Minuet in D major, K. 94

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Brahms, "Und doch bin ich neu geboren"
(Ignore the two pitches in parentheses.)

Review and Synthesis of Terms and Concepts

1. Compare and contrast the following pairs of terms:
   a. direct interval and parallel perfect interval
   b. cantus firmus and contrapuntal voice
   c. first-species and second-species counterpoint
   d. consonant passing tone and dissonant passing tone
   e. part and polyphony
   f. species and contour
2. Arrange the following list of contrapuntal motions in order of independence, from most independent to least: oblique motion, contrary motion, parallel motion, similar motion.
3. Find an example of each of the following procedures in the example given (there may be more than one correct answer).

   a. climax, melodic
   b. conjunct and disjunct motion
   c. consonant skip
   d. direct/hidden interval
   e. dissonant leap
   f. dissonant (forbidden) neighbor
   g. first species, second species
   h. forbidden harmonic interval
   i. forbidden melodic interval
   j. forbidden parallel intervals
   k. law of recovery
   l. neighbor tone
   m. passing dissonance
   n. 5–6 technique

CHAPTER 3

Musical Density: Triads, Seventh Chords, and Texture

Adding Voices: Triads and Seventh Chords

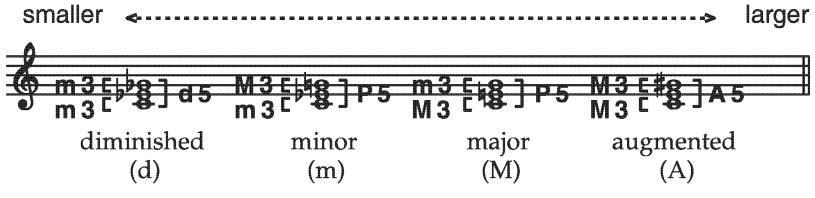
So far, we have studied melody and two-voice counterpoint. We now move into the third and final building block of tonal music: harmony. As stated earlier, harmony is most easily viewed as filling in the musical space provided by the counterpoint of two outer voices. The usual format for discussing harmony is the chorale texture: soprano, alto, tenor, and bass. Thus, the soprano and bass provide the **outer-voice counterpoint**, and the alto and tenor fill in the space between the soprano and bass, creating **chords**.

Triads

APPENDIX 1

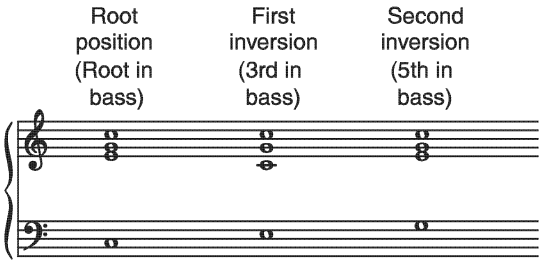
Chords that comprise three distinct pitches stacked in thirds are called **triads**. The lowest pitch is the **root**, the note that is a third above the root is the **third**, and the note that is a fifth above the root is the **fifth**. There are four **qualities** of triads above a given root (Example 3.1). **Major** and **minor** triads are *consonant* triads, since they span a consonant interval (P5). **Augmented** and **diminished** triads are *dissonant* triads: The augmented triad spans an A5, and a diminished triad spans a d5. Only major, minor, and diminished triads are used as harmonic units in common-practice music.

EXAMPLE 3.1 Triad Types



A triad is in **root position** if the root is the lowest-sounding pitch—that is, the root is in the bass. If the third or the fifth of a triad appears in the bass, the triad is in **first inversion** or **second inversion**, respectively (Example 3.2). It doesn't matter how the pitches above the bass are distributed; the pitch in the bass determines whether the chord is in root position or an inversion.

EXAMPLE 3.2 Triad Inversions



In tonal music, the character and behavior of chords depends on the intervals formed among voices, especially between the bass and the voices above it. As we've seen, root-position major and minor triads are consonant (relatively stable) because of the perfect fifth between their root and fifth, whereas diminished triads are dissonant (relatively unstable) because of the diminished fifth between their root and fifth.

When inverted, each type of triad becomes progressively less stable. For example, in first inversion, major and minor triads are less stable than in root position, because they include the intervals of a perfect fourth and a minor or major sixth. This is not true, however, for diminished triads: In root position they are highly dissonant because of the diminished fifth, but in first inversion, only consonant thirds and sixths sound above the bass (the tritone is less audible, because it does not involve the bass).

In second inversion, major and minor triads are regarded as dissonant because the perfect fourth is now formed with the bass, which drives the harmony. (Remember that in two voices, the perfect fourth is considered dissonant.) Even in textures of three or more voices (as in the present case), when a perfect fourth is formed with the bass, we hear it as dissonant. Both root-position and first-inversion triads are common in tonal music; however, second-inversion triads, due to their greater instability, occur only in restricted contexts. Thus while triads in root position and first inversion are more or less interchangeable, second-inversion triads are in a class of their own.

Figured Bass

APPENDIX 1

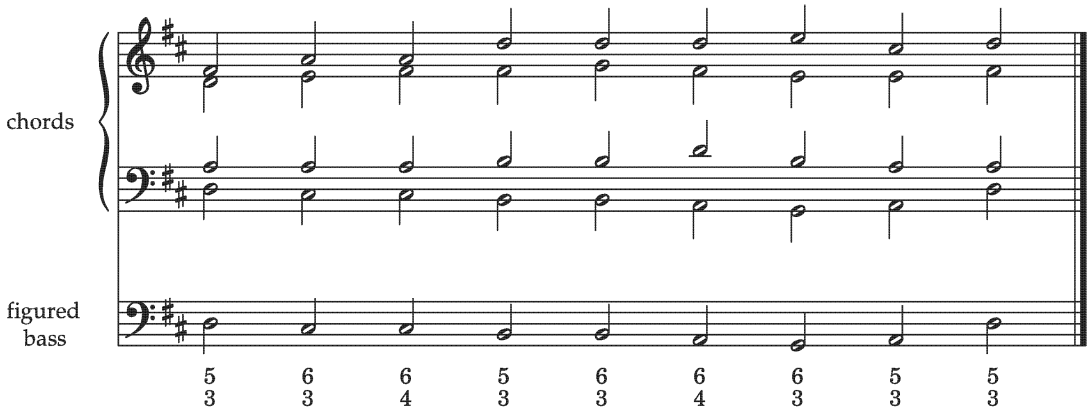
Many composers who were active between 1600 and 1800 used a shorthand notation to describe the intervals created by notes sounding above the bass. This type of shorthand, **figured bass**, is a handy way of understanding chord construction as well as melodic movement between chords. (Today's lead-sheet symbols of jazz and popular music serve a similar purpose.) Figured bass is predicated on the fact that the bass is harmonically the most important voice of any texture. A figured bass has two components:

1. A bass note.
2. Numbers, or "figures"—listed under the bass—that indicate the generic intervals formed by the bass and each of the other voices. The numbers are typically listed one below another, from largest to smallest.

Figured bass does not indicate which voices have which notes above the bass; it is a catalog of the intervals that occur above the bass, regardless of

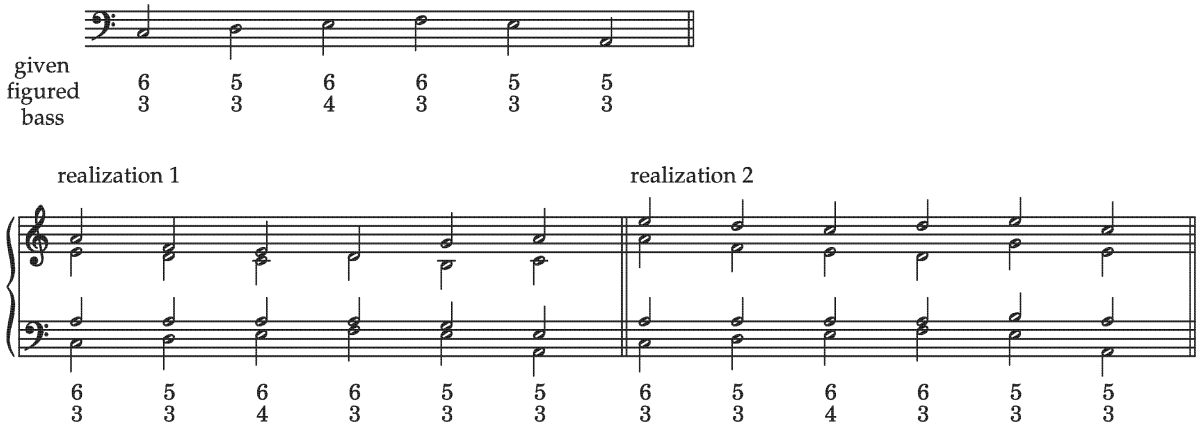
spacing or doubling. Example 3.3 shows how to represent chords using figured bass. Note that the figures tend to have simple intervals, and the figure "8" is not necessary, since a note one octave above the bass simply doubles the given bass note. Root-position triads yield the figure $\frac{5}{3}$, first inversion $\frac{6}{3}$, and second inversion $\frac{6}{4}$.

EXAMPLE 3.3 Figured Bass Analysis



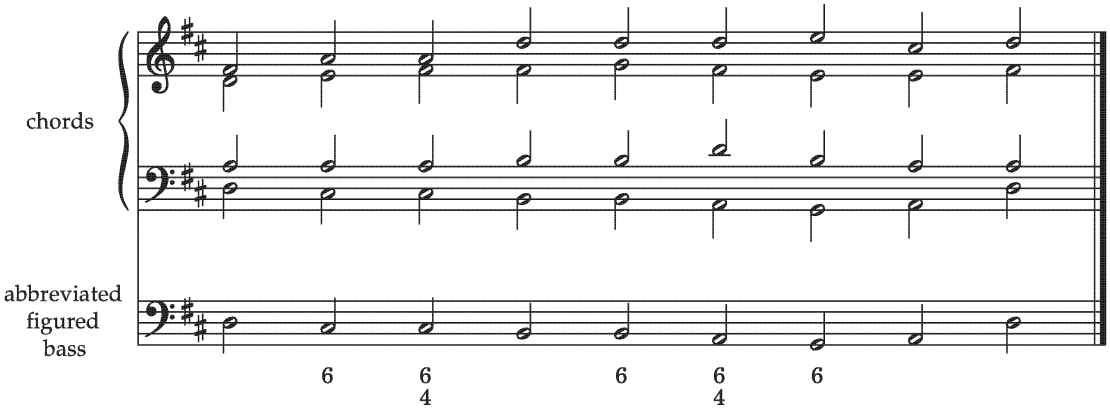
Example 3.4 shows how to fill out, or **realize**, a figured bass to create chords. Performers have a remarkable amount of freedom in the realization of figured bass, deciding the arrangement of the upper voices, as long as the given intervals are sounded with the bass note. For this reason, figured bass works well with improvisatory music. Here we will analyze and realize chords in four-part harmony. Example 3.4 shows two realizations of the same figured bass that result in successions of four-voice chords.

EXAMPLE 3.4 Figured Bass Realization



Root-position and first-inversion triads are common, so their figured bass notation is often abbreviated (Example 3.5). Normally, the figure $\frac{5}{3}$ is omitted entirely; thus, the absence of a figure under a bass note usually indicates a root-position triad. Similarly, 6 by itself is used instead of $\frac{6}{3}$ for first-inversion triads. The figure for a second-inversion triad is not abbreviated and remains $\frac{6}{4}$.

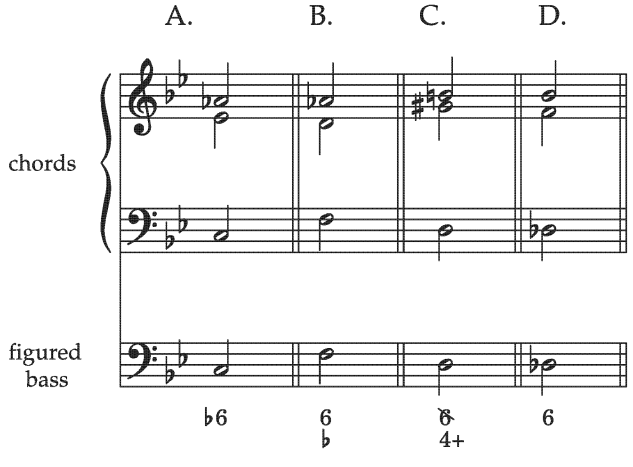
EXAMPLE 3.5 Figured Bass Abbreviations



Figured bass follows the given key signature—that is, the notes above the bass follow the given key signature unless the figure is altered. A few common ways to indicate chromatic alterations to notes above the bass include:

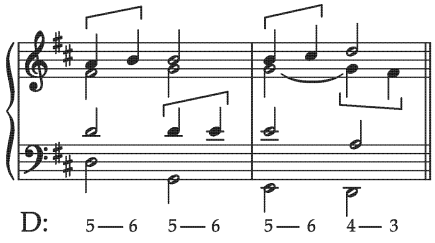
- If there is an accidental on a pitch above the bass, the same accidental is attached to the corresponding interval in the figured bass (Example 3.6A).
- If an accidental occurs on the pitch that is a third above the bass, the number 3 is omitted and only the accidental is written (Example 3.6B).
- A plus sign or a slash through a number raises the pitch by one half step (Example 3.6C).
- If the bass note is chromatically altered, nothing changes in the figure, since the figure indicates only intervals above the bass (Example 3.6D).

EXAMPLE 3.6 Figured Bass Chromaticism



Figured bass can also show the melodic motion of individual voices, especially voices that move by step (Example 3.7). A dash between numbers shows motion in the same voice, as viewed from the bass.

EXAMPLE 3.7 Figured Bass and Melodic Motion

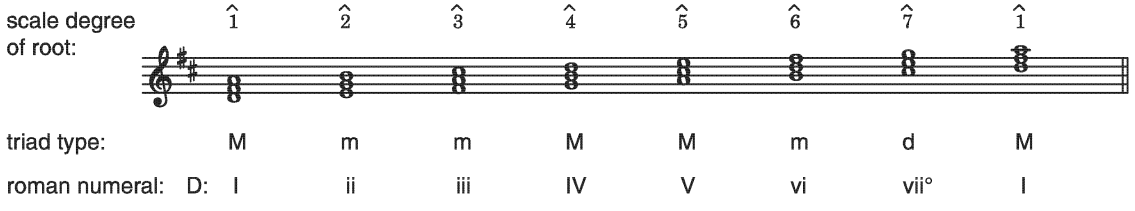


Triads and the Scale: Harmonic Analysis

APPENDIX 1

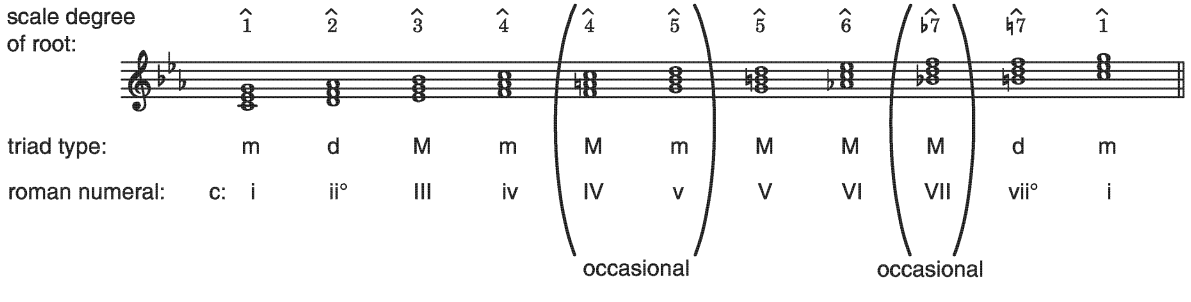
Each scale degree of a major or minor scale can support a triad constructed of pitches from that scale. We use roman numerals to represent triads: The numeral indicates the scale degree on which a triad is built, and the case of the roman numeral reflects a triad's quality. Uppercase roman numerals are used for major triads, lowercase numerals for minor triads, and diminished triads are represented by lowercase roman numerals with the addition of a degree sign. Example 3.8 illustrates which quality of triad occurs on each scale degree in the major mode and shows the corresponding roman numerals.

EXAMPLE 3.8 Scale Degree Triad Types in Major



Since $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ can exist in "natural" or "raised" forms in minor scales, chords that contain these scale degrees can have different qualities. Example 3.9 summarizes the most common triads that occur in minor scales, along with their roman numerals.

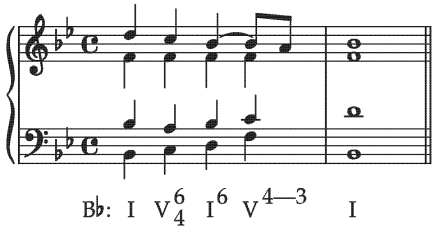
EXAMPLE 3.9 Scale Degree Triad Types in Minor



APPENDIX 1

A complete harmonic analysis combines roman numerals and figured bass. The roman numeral identifies the root (by scale degree) and quality of a triad, and a figure identifies root position or inversion (Example 3.10). Finally, recall that figured bass can also identify melodic motion by individual voices above the bass (such as 5—6 or 4—3).

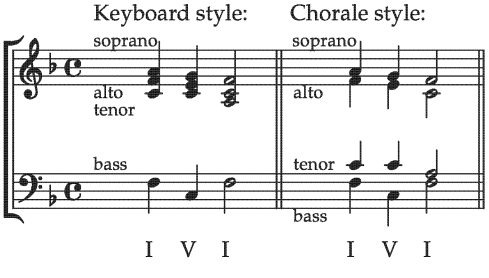
EXAMPLE 3.10 Complete Harmonic Analysis



Harmony and the Keyboard

Keyboard style is a four-voice texture in which three notes (voices) are played in the right hand, within the space of one octave, and one note (voice) is played in the left hand. The notes in the right hand are labeled (from highest to lowest) soprano, alto, and tenor. The bass is played with the left hand. This helps to emphasize the outer voices, and is the most common hand position we will use. Further, on occasion you will be writing in keyboard style, although most of our writing will place the upper two voices (soprano and alto) in the treble clef and the lower two voices (tenor and bass) in the bass clef, a distribution called **chorale style**. Example 3.11 shows the harmonic progression I–V–I in both keyboard style and chorale style.

EXAMPLE 3.11 Four-Voice Styles



WORKBOOK 1
3.1

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

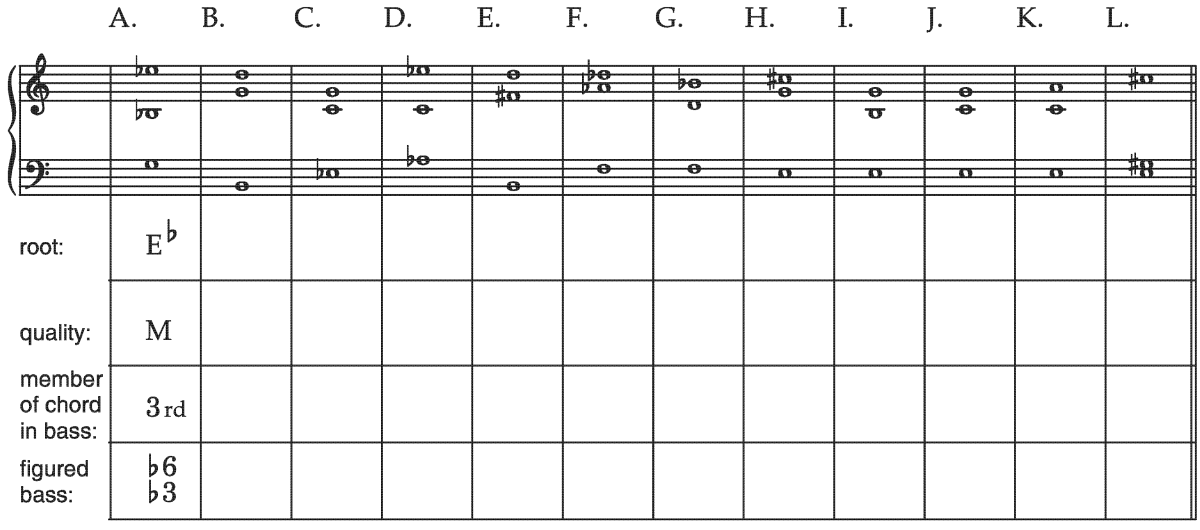
3.1 Triads in Various Spacings

The three voices of the following root-position and inverted triads appear in various registers. For each one, identify:

- the root,
- the quality of each,
- the member of the chord that is in the bass—root (1), third (3), or fifth (5).

Also, provide a complete figured bass analysis that shows any chromatic alterations (consider there to be no key signature).

SOLVED/APP 6

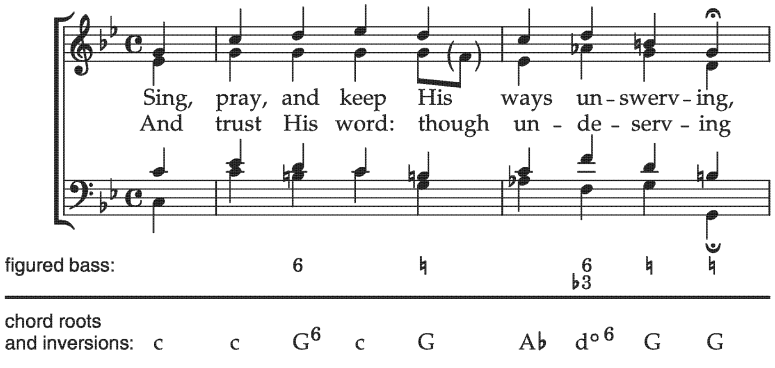


3.2 Analysis

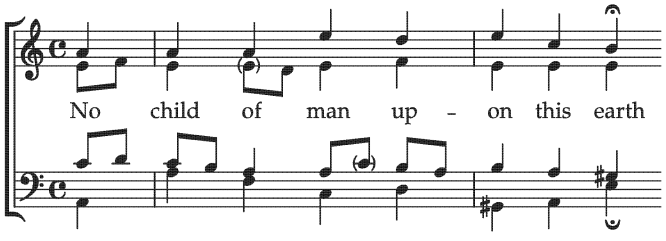
In this exercise, you will provide two pieces of information:

1. a figured bass (chromaticism above the bass must be shown);
2. the root of each chord. If the chord is inverted, include the appropriate inversion. Ignore pitches in parentheses.

Sample solution:

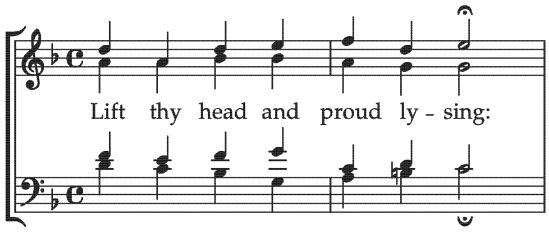


A. Bach, "Kommt her zu mir, spricht Gottes Sohn"



SOLVED/APP 6

B. Bach, "Schwing' dich auf zu deinem Gott"



C. Bach, "Nun lasst uns Gott dem Herren"

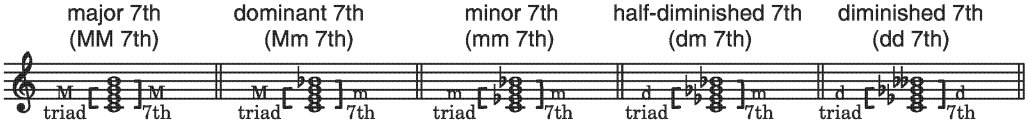
APPENDIX 1

Seventh Chords

Sonorities with four notes that can be stacked in thirds are called **seventh chords**. We identify seventh chords by their two most audible features: the type of triad formed by the root, third, and fifth of the chord; and the type of seventh above the root of the chord. There are five important types of seventh chords—though, like the triad types, they are not used with equal frequency. Example 3.12 shows the following qualities of chords, built on the root C:

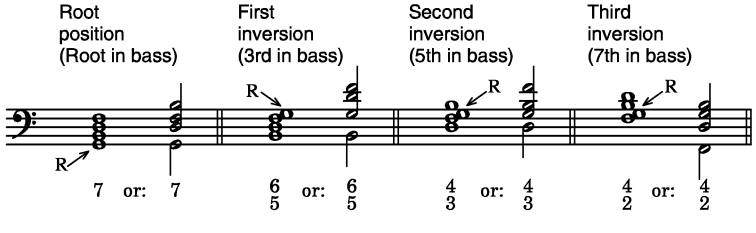
- major seventh chord (MM7)
- dominant seventh chord (Mm7)
- minor seventh chord (mm7)
- half-diminished seventh chord (dm7)
- diminished, or fully diminished, seventh chord (dd7)

EXAMPLE 3.12 Seventh-Chord Types



Seventh chords appear in root position or inversion. Example 3.13 shows the inversions of a Mm7 chord with the root G, along with abbreviated figured bass symbols.

EXAMPLE 3.13 Inversions of Seventh Chords



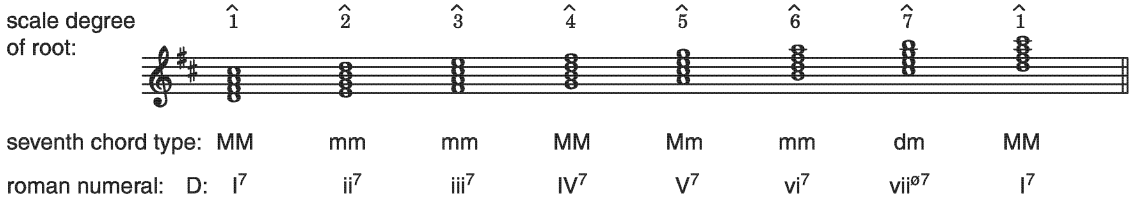
The abbreviated figures from Example 3.13 are combined with roman numerals in Example 3.14 for a complete harmonic analysis of seventh chords. When we analyze seventh chords with roman numerals, we use the following to show the chord qualities:

- MM7 and Mm7 chords use uppercase roman numerals.
- mm7 chords use lowercase roman numerals.
- dm7 chords use lowercase roman numerals, plus a slashed degree sign (ø).
- dd7 chords use lowercase roman numerals, plus a degree sign (°).

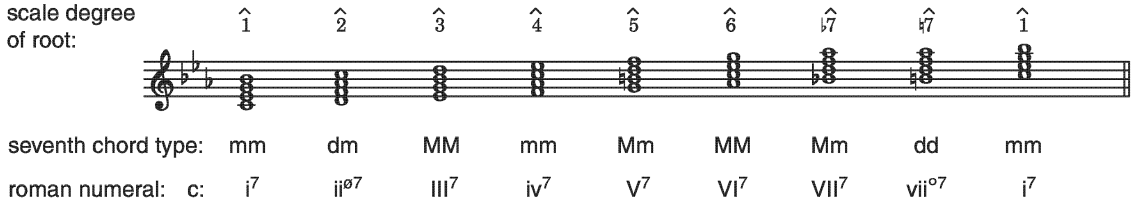
Example 3.14 shows the most common qualities of seventh chords that occur in major and minor keys, with their corresponding roman numerals. Example 3.15 demonstrates the harmonic analysis of seventh chords in root position and inversion.

EXAMPLE 3.14 Scale Degree Seventh-Chord Types in Major and Minor

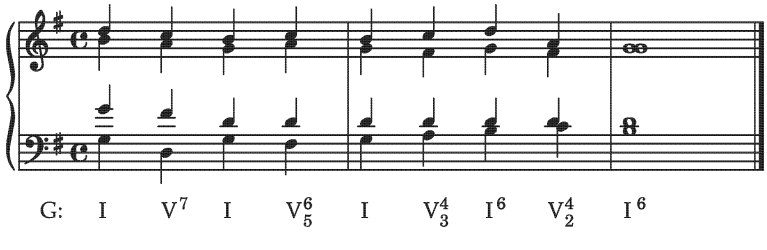
A. Major Keys



B. Minor Keys



EXAMPLE 3.15 A Complete Harmonic Analysis of Triads and Seventh Chords



Musical Texture

So far we have explored triads and seventh chords in their most simple form: as simultaneously sounding vertical sonorities. Vertical alignment is but one of many ways that composers distribute the members of a chord.

Texture refers to many elements of music, including register and timbre of instrumental combinations. But in particular, texture refers to music's density (e.g., the number of voices and their spacing). Tonal music has many types of texture, but we can group them into three basic categories, each of which is distinguished by the way the melody is projected. The following excerpts from the literature illustrate the three basic textures: monophonic, polyphonic, and homophonic.

Monophonic texture is defined as a single-line melody with no accompaniment. Both a cantus firmus and a tune you whistle are monophonic textures. Schubert's last symphony begins monophonically with horns that play the primary melody of the first movement (Example 3.16). Note that a texture can be monophonic even though it might be played (e.g., in octaves) by more than one instrument.

EXAMPLE 3.16 Schubert, Symphony no. 9 in C major, *Andante*

Polyphonic, or **contrapuntal**, **texture** is the combination of two or more melodies so there is no clear distinction between melody and accompaniment. Example 3.17, taken from one of Bach's fugues, illustrates this second texture type. Although polyphonic texture features greater independence of voices, even such transparent textures as the two-voice counterpoint we studied in Chapter 2 are considered polyphonic because two independent melodies were combined.

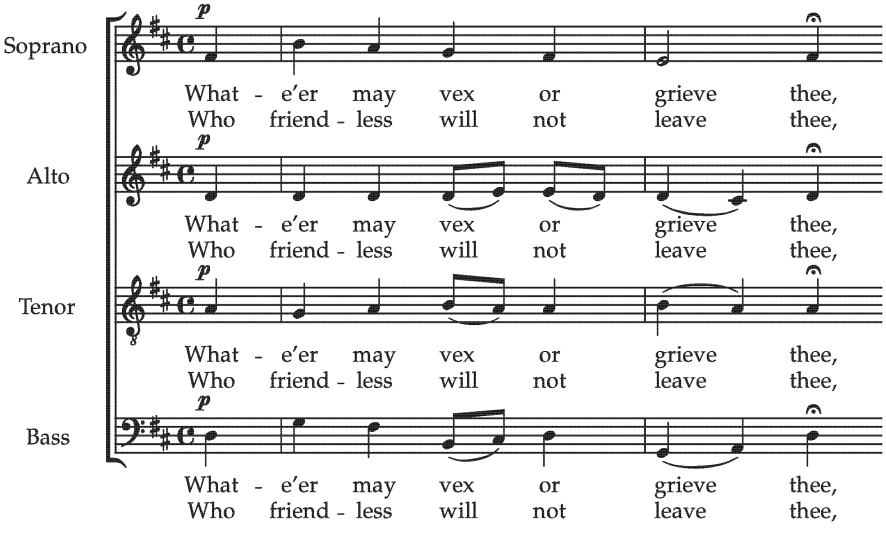
EXAMPLE 3.17 Bach, Fugue in G minor, *Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, BWV 861

Homophonic texture is a cross between monophonic and polyphonic textures, given that there is usually a clear melody accompanied by additional voices. The accompaniments can be highly varied; this richness of possibilities is why homophonic texture is the most widespread of the three texture types in common-practice music. The vertical, block-chord chorale texture we have been studying is one of the simplest types of homophonic

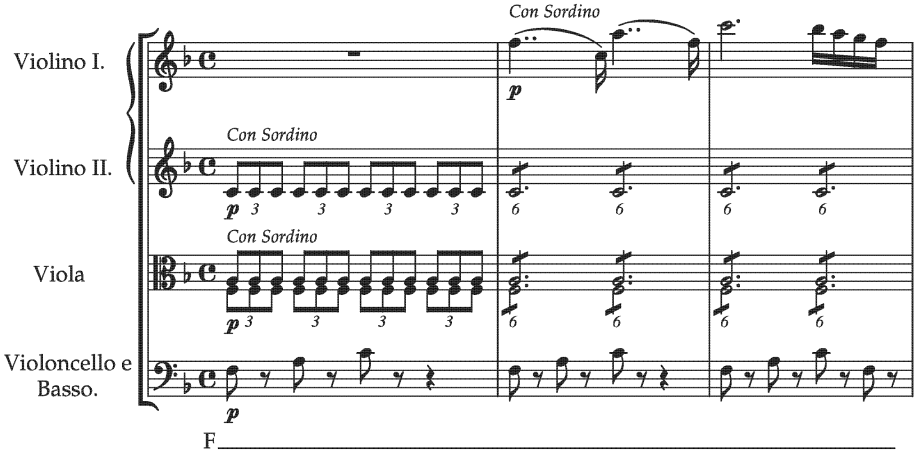
textures, given that the accompanying voices are rhythmically aligned with the primary voice, which usually appears in the highest register (Example 3.18A). In most homophonic textures, however, single harmonies are spread out over time, with their chordal members distributed over one or more beats, measures, or even multiple measures, as shown in Example 3.18B, where the pulsing F-major triad holds forth for three measures.

EXAMPLE 3.18

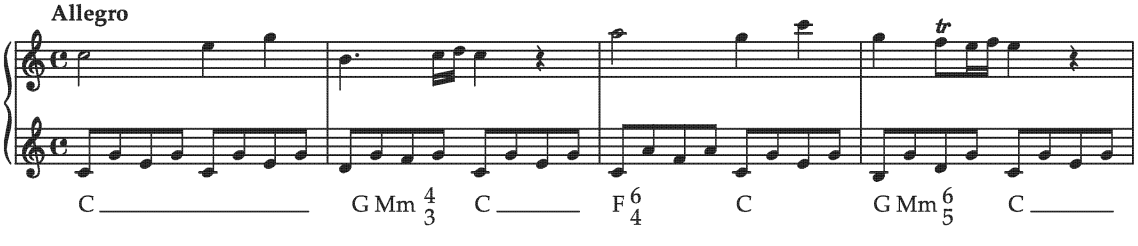
A. Hassler, "O Haupt voll Blut und Wunden"



B. Mozart, Piano Concerto in C major, K. 467, ii

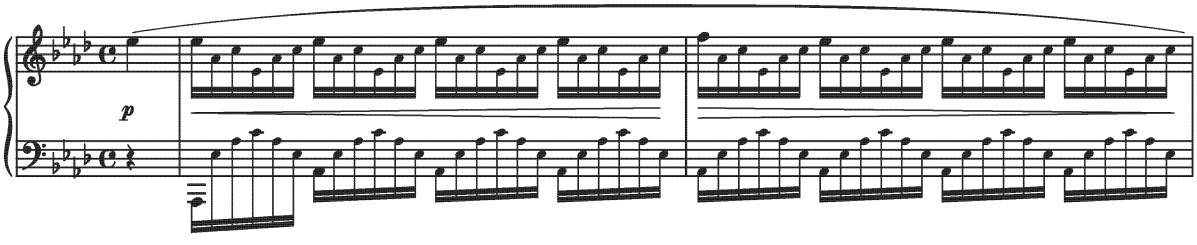


C. Mozart, Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*



D. Schubert, *Impromptu* in G♭ major, op. 90, no. 3, D. 899

E. Chopin, Etude in A♭ major, op. 25, no. 1



Analytical Method

The harmonies in Example 3.18C unfold at a leisurely pace, given that there are only seven chords in four measures. Depending on the composer, style period, and type of piece, chords may change slowly or quickly. The rate of harmonic change is called **harmonic rhythm**.

The preceding clunky analysis is improved by a more concise and informative roman numeral analysis. (Note values that correspond to the duration of each harmony reveal the harmonic rhythm.)

mm:	1	2	3	4
	I	V^4_3 I	IV^6_4 I	V^6_5 I
	(𝅝	𝅗𝅥 𝅗𝅥	𝅗𝅥 𝅗𝅥	𝅗𝅥 𝅗𝅥)

Mozart is able to write such a slow harmonic rhythm because of the rhythmic interest created by the accompanimental figures, which—along with the tune—contain each of the chord members. The broken-chord accompanimental pattern in Example 3.18C, called an **Alberti bass**, is common in the Classical style. The Alberti bass and other such accompanimental patterns are effective because our ears collect the individual pitches of the broken-chord figure into a single harmony.

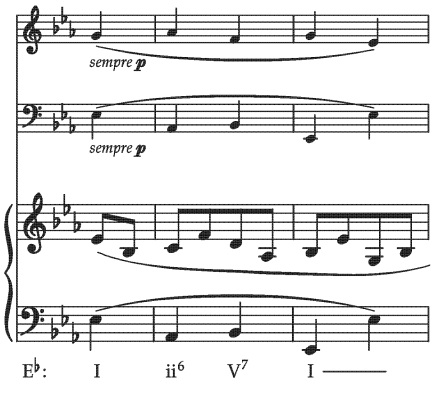
Examples 3.18D and E illustrate some of the variety possible in homophonic textures that involve accompanying a single melody. The Schubert *Impromptu* opens with a harmonic rhythm of one chord per measure, while Chopin's is even slower: a single A♭-major triad extends for both of the excerpt's measures. The larger noteheads differentiate the principal melody from accompanimental voices and registral and metric accents together articulate the bass voice.

Very often the members of a chord in a homophonic texture are distributed between various registers (and therefore clefs) and different instruments. In such cases, we need to examine each part in order to get a complete harmonic picture. Often, however, you will be able to determine the

harmony even if you see only one or two chordal members, because the harmonic implications are clear from the musical context.

Beethoven's Piano Trio provides a simple illustration (Example 3.19). The piano—which moves in a basic 2:1 (second-species) motion—contains most, but not all, of the chord tones for each harmony. The first sonority is the perfect fifth E♭/B♭. However, we have strong suspicions that it implies a root-position E♭-major triad (rather than, say, a C mm seventh chord in $\frac{6}{5}$ position) given that the key is E♭ major and the piece is just starting. Our suspicions are corroborated by a glance at the violin part, which presents the missing third (G). Similarly, the incomplete V^7 harmony in the piano in m. 1 (B♭–D–A♭) is completed by the violin's F, which provides the fifth of the chord. Further, since the violin carries the melody, and melodies move primarily by step, Beethoven must consider voicing, doubling, register, and instrumentation in order to distribute most effectively this opening tonic triad in this homophonic texture.

EXAMPLE 3.19 Beethoven, Piano Trio in C minor, op. 1, no. 3, ii



Harmonic analysis of homophonic textures requires that you group members of a harmony quickly. In order to do so, you must be able to read pitches fluently in both bass and treble clefs and attain a solid working knowledge of both alto and tenor clefs. The ability to scan music quickly and identify patterns and repetitions is a crucial skill.

For example, the thirty-second notes and rests in Example 3.20 certainly look intimidating. However, with a quick scan of the excerpt we discover: (1) a straightforward broken-chord texture (rather than a complicated multivoiced contrapuntal texture), one in which we can easily identify underlying harmonies; (2) that some chords are repeated within a measure or even for an entire measure (e.g., in m. 25 a root-position F-minor triad controls the harmony); (3) if the literal position of the chord (i.e., inversion) is not maintained, there are relations by inversion, such as the D♭ harmony in m. 27, which begins in first inversion, moves to second inversion, and in beat 3 lands on root position; and (4) revoicings of the same chord (such as in m. 24) show us that harmonic motion is not as fast as we might have initially thought.

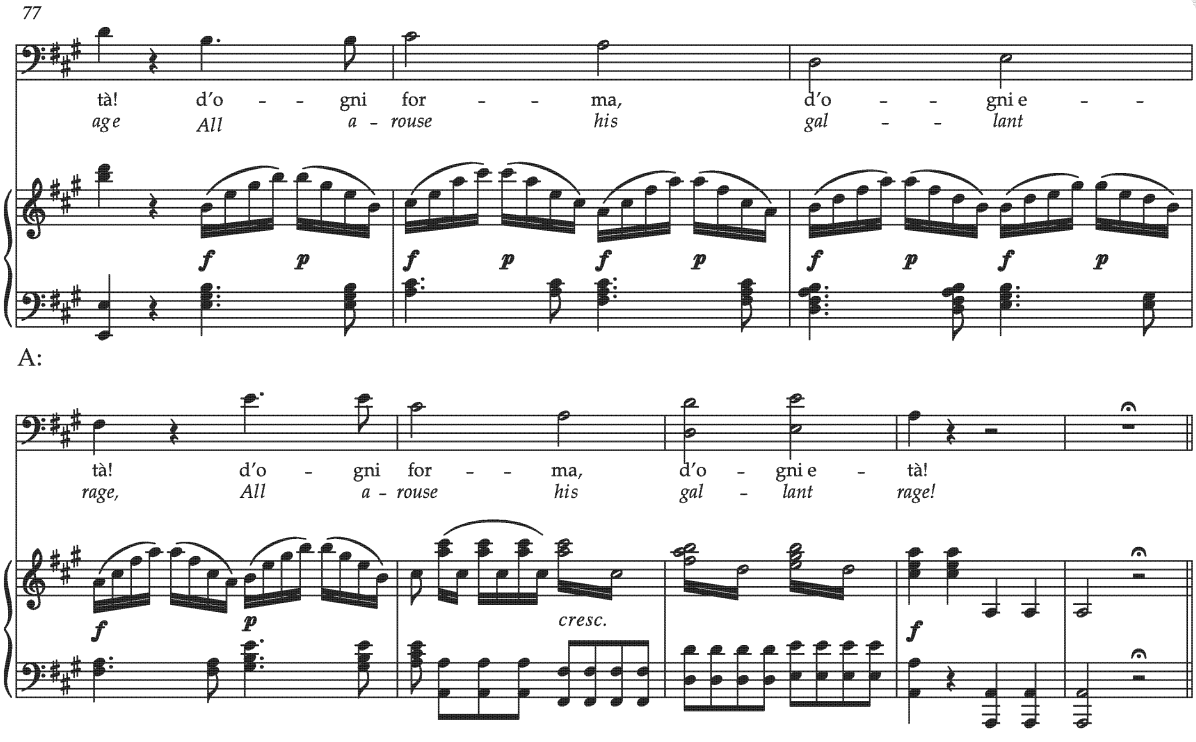
An analysis of the chord types and inversions of the first four measures appears below the score.

EXAMPLE 3.20 **Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 3 in E♭ major, op. 12, no. 3,** ***Adagio con molto espressione***

Often it is helpful to simplify dense homophonic and polyphonic textures by notating the underlying harmony in close position on a piece of manuscript paper. Such "reductions" capture harmonic motions and repeating patterns, and in time you will be able to negotiate these reductions in your head. This ability is invaluable not only in your theory and analysis but also in sight-reading and learning pieces.

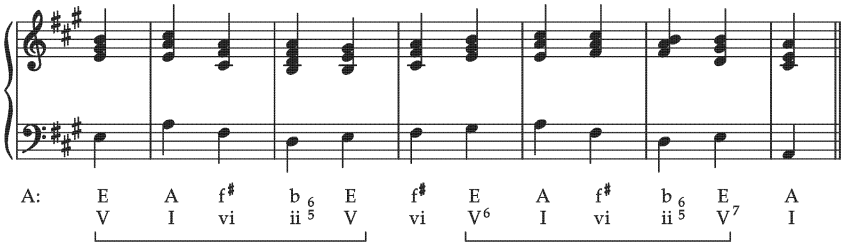
For example, the first section of Mozart's "Catalogue Aria" from *Don Giovanni* contains a sixteenth-note passage, which can be rendered easily if reduced to its harmonic outline (Example 3.21). First, we scan the passage for patterns and repetitions and note that the left hand contains repeating chords (e.g., m. 77 contains two E-major triads) and that the right hand contains an ascending broken-chord figure that outlines the same chords as in the left hand. Further, the right-hand descent is identical to its ascent.

EXAMPLE 3.21 Mozart, "Madamina," *Don Giovanni*, act 1, no. 4



Next, notate the bass notes (there is no need to notate the entire left-hand chord since it is easy to see its structure) and the right-hand chord, omitting pitch repetitions and, if possible, maintaining the highest pitch (the soprano), which is structural. The reduction in Example 3.22 shows this procedure and includes two kinds of analysis: the chord names (with uppercase letters indicating major triads and seventh chords that contain major triads, and lowercase letters indicating minor triads and seventh chords that contain minor triads) and inversions, and roman numerals. The bracket indicates that the progression is grouped into two parts; the first ends on vi, and the repeated second progression closes on the tonic.

EXAMPLE 3.22 Reduction of Mozart



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

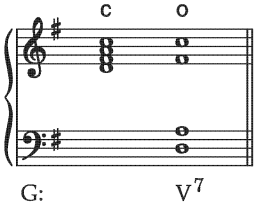
WRITING

3.3 Close and Open Position

Notate the triads and seventh chords that are represented by the roman numerals that follow. Write each chord twice, first in close position and then in an open position. Use complete chords and key signature. Be aware that in minor both V and V^7 require a chromatic alteration in order to create a leading tone.

SOLVED/APP 6

Sample solution: G major: V^7



WORKBOOK 1
3.2–3.4

A. D major: vi
B. c minor: V^7
C. B♭ major: ii^7
D. f minor: iv^7
E. A♭ major: V^7
F. b minor: iv^7
G. E major: iii^7
H. e♭ minor: V^7
I. f♯ minor: $vii^{\circ 7}$

ANALYSIS

3.4 Harmonic Analysis in Various Textures

Given are short excerpts of various homophonic textures. Complete the following tasks:

1. Box each harmony, and label the root, the type of harmony (for triads: Maj, min, dim; for seventh chords: MM, Mm, mm, dm, dd) and the inversion, if any (for triads: $\frac{6}{3}$, $\frac{6}{4}$; for seventh chords $\frac{6}{5}$, $\frac{4}{3}$, $\frac{4}{2}$).
2. Describe the harmonic rhythm in terms of its rate of change (fast or slow) and whether or not it is regular.
3. Using the manuscript paper provided beneath each example, make a reduction that includes the following:
   a. bass note (which may or may not be the root, depending on whether or not the chord is inverted);
   b. two added upper voices to complete triads and three added upper voices to complete seventh chords. Use close position, with the highest note of the texture functioning as the soprano.

An example from Corelli's Concerto Grosso no. 8, is provided.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Corelli, Concerto Grosso in G minor, op. 6, no. 8, *Allegro*

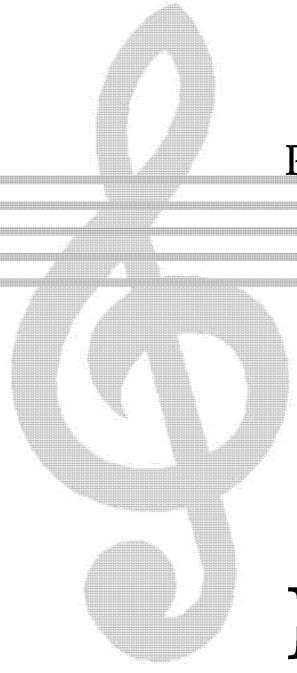
B. Haydn, String Quartet in F minor, op. 50, no. 4, *Andante*

Summary of Part 1

You now possess the basic knowledge that is the foundation of tonal music. The terminology and concepts you have learned are the basis for exploring the rich and varied compositional techniques of the music written over nearly four centuries. Tonal music is a complex art form in which single pitches are combined in a carefully regulated fashion that is dictated by the way humans tend to perceive stimuli.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- chord versus triad
- chromatic alterations
- close position and open position
- consonant triad
- dissonant triad
- doubling
- figured bass, figured bass realization
- harmonic analysis
- harmonic rhythm
- inversion, triadic–root position, first inversion ($^{6}_{3}$); second inversion ($^{6}_{4}$)
- keyboard style versus chorale style
- quality
- roman numerals
- root position ($^{5}_{3}$)
- root, third, fifth
- seventh chords (types, inversions, and analysis)
- spacing, voicing (open position, close position)
- texture
  - homophonic
  - polyphonic (contrapuntal)
  - monophonic
- triad



PART 2

MERGING MELODY AND HARMONY

Now that we have completed our study of fundamentals, we can begin to apply this knowledge to the common-practice repertoire. This part begins to develop new analytical techniques that illuminate the hierarchical nature of music and that will help you develop a basis for making critically informed interpretations about musical structure. We will work with ever-larger musical units and will eventually compose in the common-practice style by combining small harmonic progressions, which are the building blocks of larger musical forms.

We'll discover firsthand how melody, counterpoint, and harmony are interdependent, to the point of being inseparable. And we'll see that not all chords are created equal. Despite the large number of possible triad and seventh chords, composers of common-practice music tend to use some chords more than others. Indeed, the tonic and dominant triad or seventh chord are the most important harmonies. These two chords form the harmonic axis of practically every phrase of tonal music.

However, very little music includes only root-position tonic and dominant chords, and in Part 2 we explore ways in which composers use these and other chords, in both root position and inversion, to create harmonic variety and thus to increase musical interest. Variety, however, does not come at the expense of musical coherence, and so we also learn how these new chords and inversions relate to the underlying tonal axis. What we'll discover is that each of these larger functions can be embellished over time with other chords, which thereby "expand" or "prolong" the axial harmonies. Thus we shall proceed systematically, introducing how melody and harmony are dependent on one another, the role of rhythm and meter, and the resulting hierarchy.

CHAPTER 4

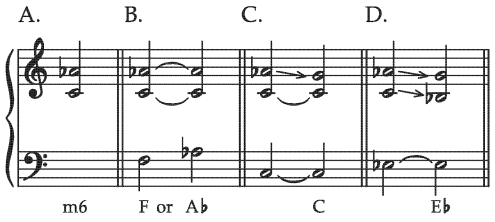
When Harmony, Melody, and Rhythm Converge

This chapter provides a bridge that leads from our study of fundamentals to our exploration of harmony and form. Fundamentals included the terminology and concepts for the basic building blocks of tonal music (including notation, scales, rhythm, intervals, and melody). In our studies of two-voice counterpoint, triads, and seventh chords, we learned the importance of intervallic consonance and dissonance. In this chapter we begin to extend these concepts so that we will comprehend not only the note-to-note behavior of pitches, but also how certain pitches connect to others despite the fact that there are intervening pitches. These steps are crucial because they not only pave the way for subsequent chapters, but also inform our approach to the music we play and sing.

Tonal Hierarchy in Music

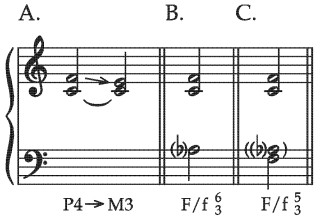
Musicians spend a great deal of their practice time weighing the relative importance of individual musical events and how these events interact with one another. Given that music unfolds in time and that we must fill that time with the most effective and dramatic rendering of a piece, we ask questions like "Is this cadence as important as the next one?" and "Which pitches in this melody carry more structural weight?" In addition to considering general issues such as musical accent (which was discussed in Chapter 1), we are particularly attuned to whether a musical event participates in a motion toward or away from a climactic event. One of the most helpful criteria we use is whether an event is dissonant (unstable, initiates motion toward consonance) or consonant (dissipates the dissonance's instability). Of course, the distinction between consonance and dissonance is not ironclad but depends on the immediate musical context. For example, the minor sixth C–A♭ in Example 4.1A is consonant if either F or A♭ appears below it (creating an F-minor triad or an A♭-major triad; Example 4.1B), but is unstable if C appears in the bass (the sixth yearns for resolution to the perfect fifth; Example 4.1C). With E♭ in the bass, both pitches comprising the sixth require resolution down by step (Example 4.1D).

EXAMPLE 4.1 Intervals in Context: Minor Sixth



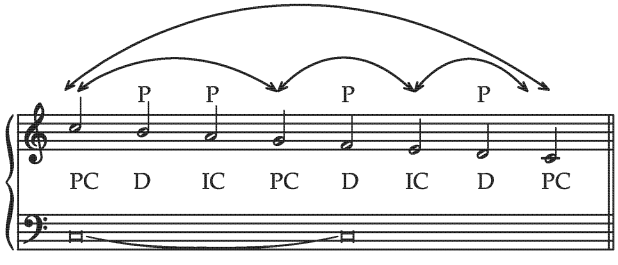
Another example could be drawn from the perfect fourth—which we viewed as a dissonance in our counterpoint studies. Indeed, the F above C in Example 4.2A is dissonant; as an active pitch, the F strives toward resolution to a consonance by falling a step. However, when the bass voice does not participate in the formation of the perfect fourth, the interval becomes consonant, as seen in Example 4.2B, where the addition of either A or A♭ below the fourth creates a first-inversion triad. And by adding another F below the C, the upper F becomes stable, since it is now consonant with the bass, as part of an implied F-major or -minor triad (Example 4.2C).

EXAMPLE 4.2 Intervals in Context: Perfect Fourth



Dissonant intervals—with their harmonic and melodic instability—provide musical tension and energy. Only through resolution can this energy be discharged. Example 4.3 illustrates where perfect consonances (labeled *PC*), imperfect consonances (labeled *IC*), and dissonances (labeled *D*) occur within a descending major scale over a sustained bass note. The label *P* indicates which pitches are passing between, and therefore subordinate to, more important notes.

EXAMPLE 4.3 Consonances and Dissonances



Of course, the interval of the octave is completely stable. The dissonant major seventh (B over C) meanwhile requires resolution. Depending on the direction of the line, $\hat{7}$ will either ascend to $\hat{8}$ or descend to $\hat{6}$ where, in the latter case, it forms a consonant sixth with the bass. Yet is the sixth really an arrival? Yes, but

not a particularly strong one; as an imperfect consonance, it is less stable than the perfect fifth that results when $\hat{6}$ in turn passes to $\hat{5}$. We can see that the dependence between various intervals establishes a hierarchical relationship between consonance and dissonance. The strident sound of the dissonant seventh is only relatively resolved by the sixth, itself an imperfect consonance. It is the fifth, a perfect consonance, which provides stability. As we have already seen, the passing tone $\hat{4}$, forming a dissonant fourth with the bass, also has a strong need to resolve, and it does so to $\hat{3}$, which forms a major third with the bass. However, because this imperfect consonance is not completely stable, $\hat{3}$ descends via the dissonant passing tone $\hat{2}$ to $\hat{1}$, which forms an octave with the bass.

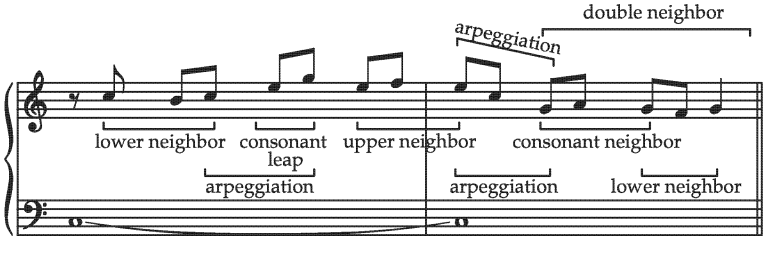
Thus the notes that are consonant with the bass note C in Example 4.3 are C, E, G, and A. If we ranked these consonances, C and G would be the most stable, followed by E. A is the least stable consonance because it has a tendency to fall to G. Therefore, the major tonic triad is a stable entity that is surrounded by unstable forces, as we heard in Bach's Violin Partita in E major in Chapter 1.

Embellishing Tones

If we view this scale as a crude melody, we now see that the passing tones B, A, F, and D ($\hat{7}$, $\hat{6}$, $\hat{4}$, and $\hat{2}$) appear between and therefore connect the stable pitches C, E, G, whose combination results in a triad. Since these passing tones are not members of the underlying C-major triad, which is implied by the sustained C in the bass, we call them **nonchord tones**. Thus passing tones tend to create tension that requires resolution by chord tones.

If we turn the C-major scale into a melody with a more interesting contour, as in Example 4.4, another type of nonchord tone is created: the **neighbor tone** (also called **auxiliary tone**, or simply **neighbor**). Neighbors that lie above a stable pitch are called **upper neighbors** (UN), whereas those that lie below are called **lower neighbors** (LN). Since it modifies a single pitch, a neighbor-tone figure is more static (i.e., less dynamic) than the more fluid passing tone, which moves to a new pitch that lies a third above or below the original pitch.

EXAMPLE 4.4 Neighbor Tones and Arpeggiations



Neighbor tones can be dissonant or consonant. An example of a **dissonant neighbor** occurs between mm. 1 and 2 of Example 4.4; F, which is a fourth above the bass, resolves down to E, a third. A **consonant neighbor** occurs on beats 2 and 3 of m. 2; A, which is a sixth above the bass, resolves down to G, a fifth. The sixth and the fifth are the only adjacent intervals that are consonant above a bass, and this unique, and therefore privileged, relationship has huge compositional ramifications that we first discovered in our studies of second species counterpoint (Example 2.14), but which we will encounter regularly in our later studies. For now we will simply refer to it as the *5–6 technique*. Dissonant neighbors form intervals of a second, fourth, or seventh above the

bass. Finally, a double neighbor results from the combination of the upper neighbor and lower neighbor in m. 2.

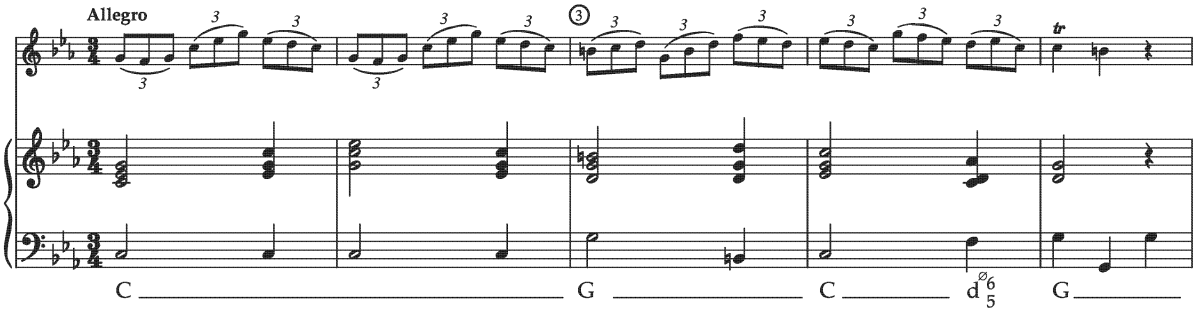
The melody in Example 4.4 also contains leaps that are consonant with the bass note, C. We refer to leaps that are members of the underlying harmony as **consonant leaps** or **chordal leaps**. [In our study of counterpoint in Chapter 2 we distinguished between leaps of thirds (called *skips*) and larger leaps; we will now refer to all nonstepwise motions simply as leaps.] If all tones from the same harmony appear in succession, they form an **arpeggiation** (ARP). We already learned in our counterpoint studies that leaps are permitted only if they are consonant with the cantus. Similarly, triadic skips and leaps are possible as long as they are members of the underlying harmony.

Because we have encountered both consonant embellishments (including the chordal leap and arpeggiation) and dissonant embellishments (the dissonant passing tone and neighbor tone), we will *not* use the term *nonharmonic tone*, given that the consonant embellishments are members of the underlying harmony and therefore are chord tones. Rather, we refer to all melodic embellishments generically as **embellishing tones**, and you may add the prefix *consonant* or *dissonant* depending on their function within the specific musical context.

There is very little tonal music written whose texture is characterized by a single sustained bass note and rambling melody above it, as shown in Example 4.4. In fact, as we learned in Chapter 3, much tonal music is homophonic, and, given the strong harmonic underpinning that is usually characteristic, it is not difficult to separate dissonant embellishing tones from consonant embellishing tones. Indeed, composers are careful to clarify the dissonant and consonant status of melodic pitches.

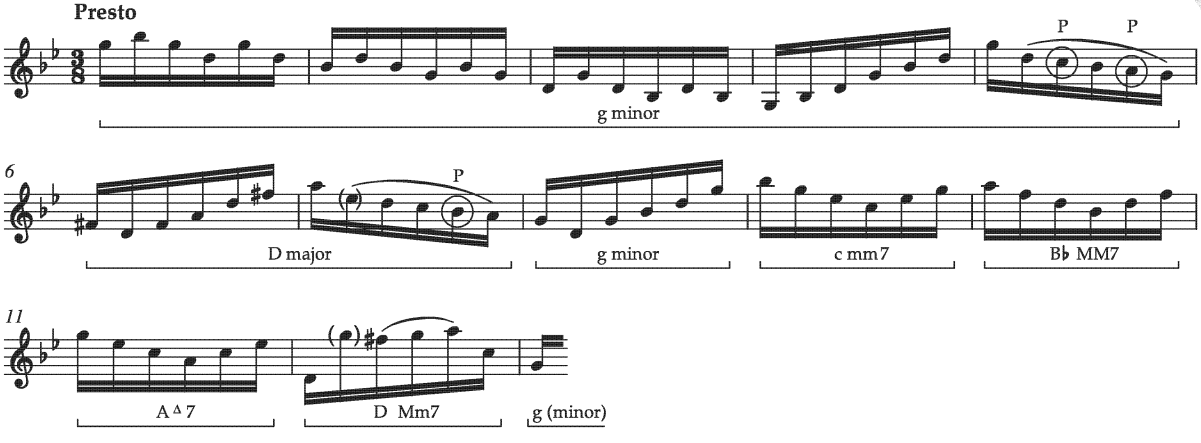
For example, in Vivaldi's Sonata in C minor for oboe (Example 4.5), the Allegro's harmonic structure is made explicit by the underlying chordal accompaniment. Given that C-minor triads control mm. 1–2, we then know that the oboe's second pitch, F^4 (m. 1), is not a member of the chord. Since F descends from G and immediately returns to G, we understand it to be a dissonant neighbor note, just as we understand the D on beat 3 of m. 1 that fills the space of a third between two chordal members—$E\flat^5$ and C^5—to be a dissonant passing tone. However, these same pitches ($E\flat^5$ and C^5) in the oboe part of m. 3 have become dissonant passing tones, given that the underlying harmony has changed to the dominant (G–B♮–D–F) chord. Note that the embellishing tones are all consonant skips within the C-minor harmony. Thus, if we identify underlying harmony (consonance), then we can distinguish between melodic tones that are members of chords and those that are embellishments (just as we did in our 2:1 contrapuntal studies, where, for example, passing tones connected two consonances).

EXAMPLE 4.5 Vivaldi, Sonata in C minor for Oboe and Basso Continuo, *Allegro*



Harmonic underpinning is not limited to multivoiced textures. In fact, even solo instrumental music consisting of but a single line often unfolds within a strong, albeit implied, underlying harmonic context that still allows us to distinguish consonant and dissonant embellishing tones. For example, Bach's Presto in G minor (Example 4.6) opens with a cascading G-minor broken-chord figure that unfolds over five measures. In m. 6 a V^7 (D–F♯–A–C) chord succeeds the tonic, but only for two measures before G minor returns in m. 8. The acceleration of harmonic rhythm continues, with chord changes at least once per measure: m. 9 contains a C mm7 chord, m. 10 a B♭ MM7, and m. 11 an A dm7 chord, all of which lead to the V^7 in m. 12 and back to tonic in m. 13. Notice that mm. 5, 7, and 12 contain pitches that are not members of the underlying harmony within that measure. For example, in m. 5, the C^5 and A^4 are not members of the G-minor triad but, rather, are passing tones; and in m. 7, $B♭^4$ is a passing tone within the D^7 chord (the parenthetical $E♭^5$ and, in m. 12, the G^5, are embellishing tones that we'll discuss at a later point). In each case, these nonchord tones function identically to the dissonances encountered in our counterpoint studies.

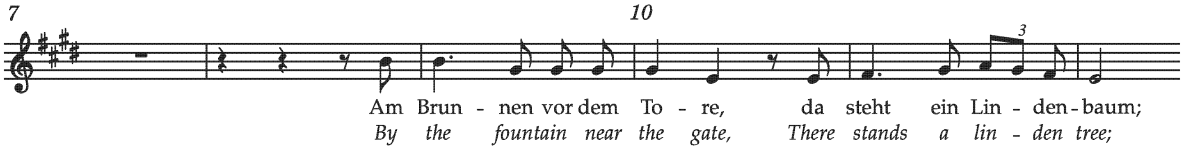
EXAMPLE 4.6 Bach, Sonata for Solo Violin in G minor, *Presto*



The Importance of Context in Analysis

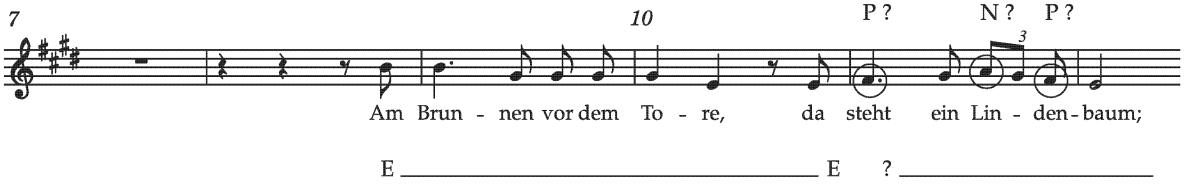
We have learned that the tonic pitch and its accompanying triad are central to tonal music. But do composers always give priority to $\hat{1}$, $\hat{3}$, and $\hat{5}$? That is, can we always assume that the tonic triad primarily controls melody? And might we be able to study melody without having to consider the implied harmony or the supporting voices? Listen to an excerpt from one of Schubert's songs (Example 4.7).

EXAMPLE 4.7 Schubert, "Der Lindenbaum," from *Winterreise*, D. 911 (melody only)



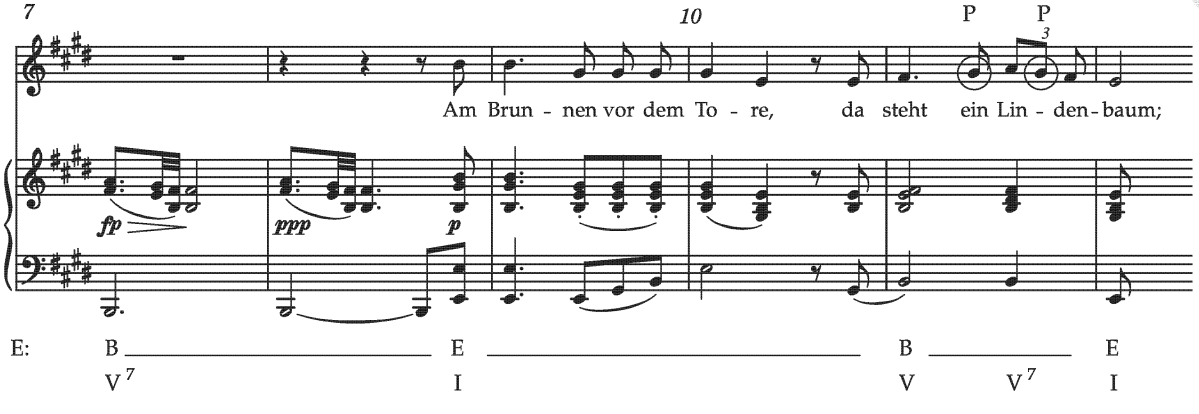
Because "Der Lindenbaum" ("The Linden Tree") is in E major, we might assume that E, G♯, and B are the primary structural tones and that the remaining pitches will be embellishments of the tonic triad. To be sure, the vocal line opens with an arpeggiation of the tonic. The following F♯4 (m. 11) appears to be a dissonant passing tone that leads to G♯4, and A4 would then be viewed as an upper neighbor to the stable G♯4, as shown in Example 4.8.

EXAMPLE 4.8 Schubert, "Der Lindenbaum," from *Winterreise*, D. 911 (melody only)



Now listen to the excerpt again, this time with the accompaniment (Example 4.9). The underlying chords in mm. 9 and 10 are, indeed, all tonic. Because the harmony changes in m. 11 to a dominant harmony (B–D♯–F♯), however, the E4 in the right-hand accompaniment is not a chord tone but merely delays D♯4. Similarly, the F♯4 that begins m. 11 in the vocal line is not a dissonant passing tone at all. Rather, it is a member of the B-major triad and thus is consonant. The following G♯4, which we originally said was related to the E-major triad, instead turns out to be a dissonant passing tone, since it is not a member of the underlying B-major harmony. Finally, the A4 that we labeled as an upper neighbor to G♯4 turns out also to be a chord tone; it is the seventh of the dominant harmony, B–D♯–F♯–A.

EXAMPLE 4.9 Schubert, "Der Lindenbaum" (with accompaniment)



WORKBOOK 1
4.1–4.2

Our initial analysis of "Der Lindenbaum" was incorrect. Because we did not consider the underlying harmonic support or the rhythm, we had no standard to measure a pitch's function within a musical context. As a result, we confused a pitch's consonant or dissonant status.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

4.1 Harmonic and Melodic Analysis (I)

Given are short excerpts of various homophonic textures. Complete the following tasks:

1. Circle each harmony, and label the root, the type of harmony (for triads: Maj, min, dim; for seventh chords: MM, Mm, mm, dm, dd), and the inversion, if any (for triads: $\frac{6}{3}$, $\frac{6}{4}$; for seventh chords $\frac{6}{5}$, $\frac{4}{3}$, $\frac{4}{2}$).
2. Label each embellishing tone in the melody; use the following abbreviations: passing tone: P; neighbor tone: N; chordal leap: CL; arpeggiation: ARP.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Vivaldi, Sonata in C minor for oboe

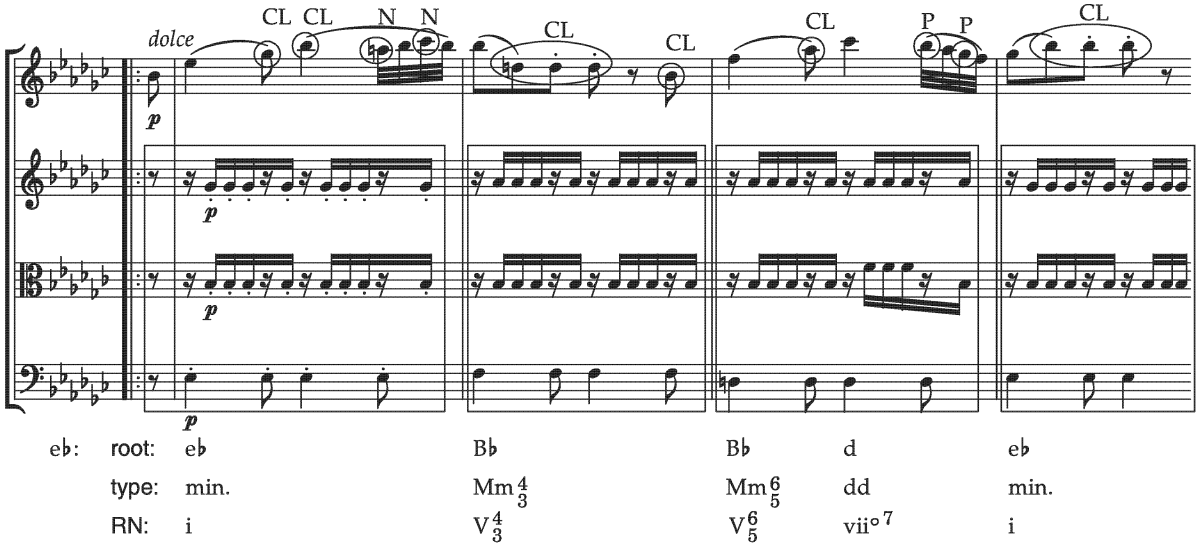
B. Corelli, Sonata no. 11 in F for two flutes, after Violin Sonata in E major, op. 5, *Allegro*

4.2 Harmonic and Melodic Analysis (II)

This exercise is identical to Exercise 4.1, but this time you will add roman numerals. Begin by determining the key and harmonic rhythm.

Sample Solution:

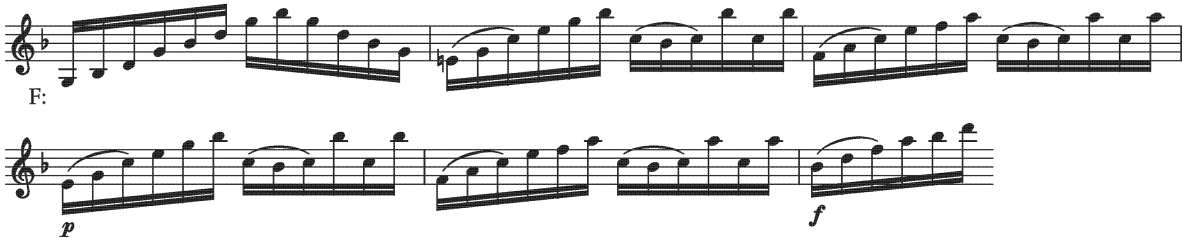
Haydn, String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 50, no. 1, *Adagio non lento*



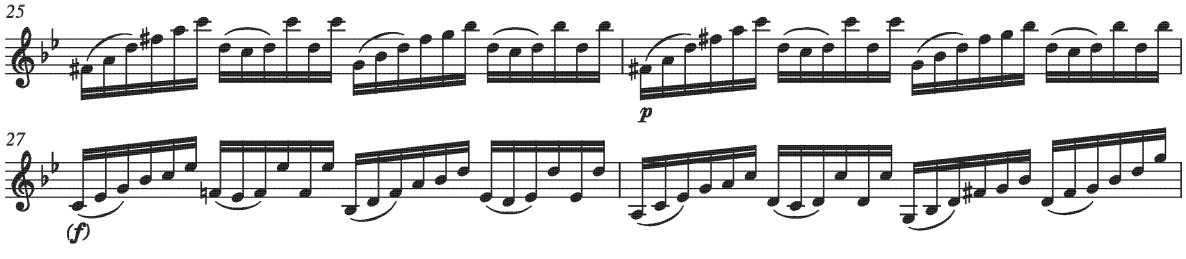
A. Bach, Violin Partita in D minor, BWV 1004, Giga

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Bach, Violin Partita in D minor, BWV 1004, Giga



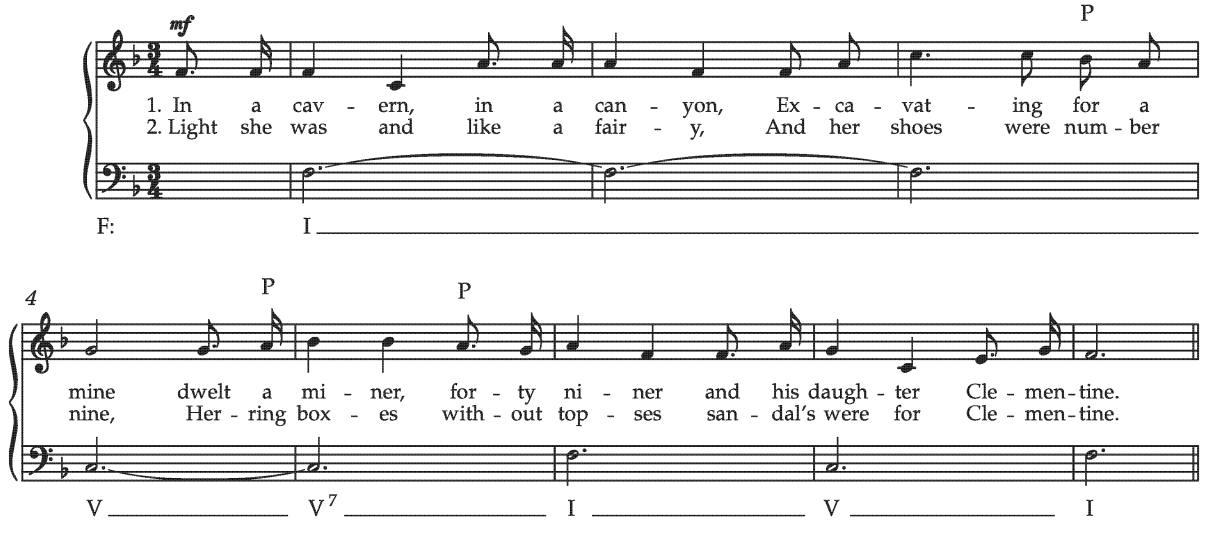
C. Bach, Violin Partita in D minor, BWV 1004, Giga



Analytical Interlude

Let's develop our understanding of the hierarchy of melodic tones by exploring how they are used in two familiar melodies. Sing the opening of the well-known ballad "Clementine" (Example 4.10). The piece is in F major, and the first phrase begins on $\hat{1}$. The controlling harmonies for each measure are represented by bass pitch and roman numeral. The lengthy pause on G^4 in m. 4, which provides a natural place to breathe, divides the eight measures into two four-measure units that we will call **phrases** and that we will explore in depth in the following chapter. The first phrase consists mostly of disjunct motion. Through a series of consonant skips and leaps, the melody leisurely ascends to the C^5 ($\hat{5}$) on the downbeat of m. 3. The descending leaps at the beginning of the first two measures are subordinate to the larger arpeggiation of the tonic triad (F^4–A^4–C^5) heard on the strong beats of mm. 1–3. After attaining the melodic high point, the melody quickly descends to the G^4 ($\hat{2}$) in m. 4, completing the melodic shape of an arch. The stepwise descent, with the $B\flat^4$ in m. 3 acting as a passing tone between C^5 and A^4, stops short of returning to the tonic F^4, thus giving rise to a phrase ending that is somewhat unsettled because it ends on $\hat{2}$.

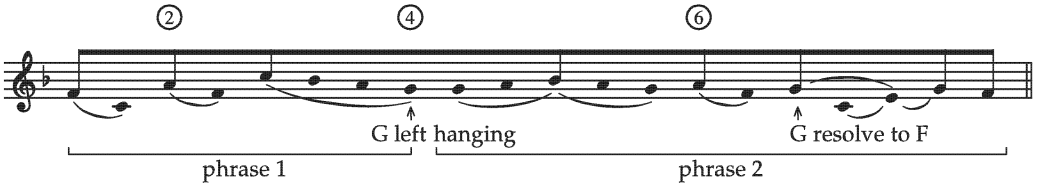
EXAMPLE 4.10 "Clementine"



The second phrase begins as the G^4 on the third beat of m. 4 ascends by step to $B\flat^4$ via the passing tone A^4. Another passing A^4 traces the descent from $B\flat^4$ to G^4 in m. 5. The consonant skips of the first phrase return in mm. 6–7: first A^4 falls to F^4, then G^4 falls to C^4, C^4 skips up to E^4, and finally E^4 skips up to G^4. As in the opening phrase, the emphasized downbeats in mm. 5–8 reveal a melodic pattern—this time a stepwise descent from $B\flat^4$ (m. 5) to F^4 (m. 8). The F^4 at the end of the second phrase "resolves" the G^4 "left hanging" at the end of the first phrase. These larger motions are revealed in the structural analysis in Example 4.11.

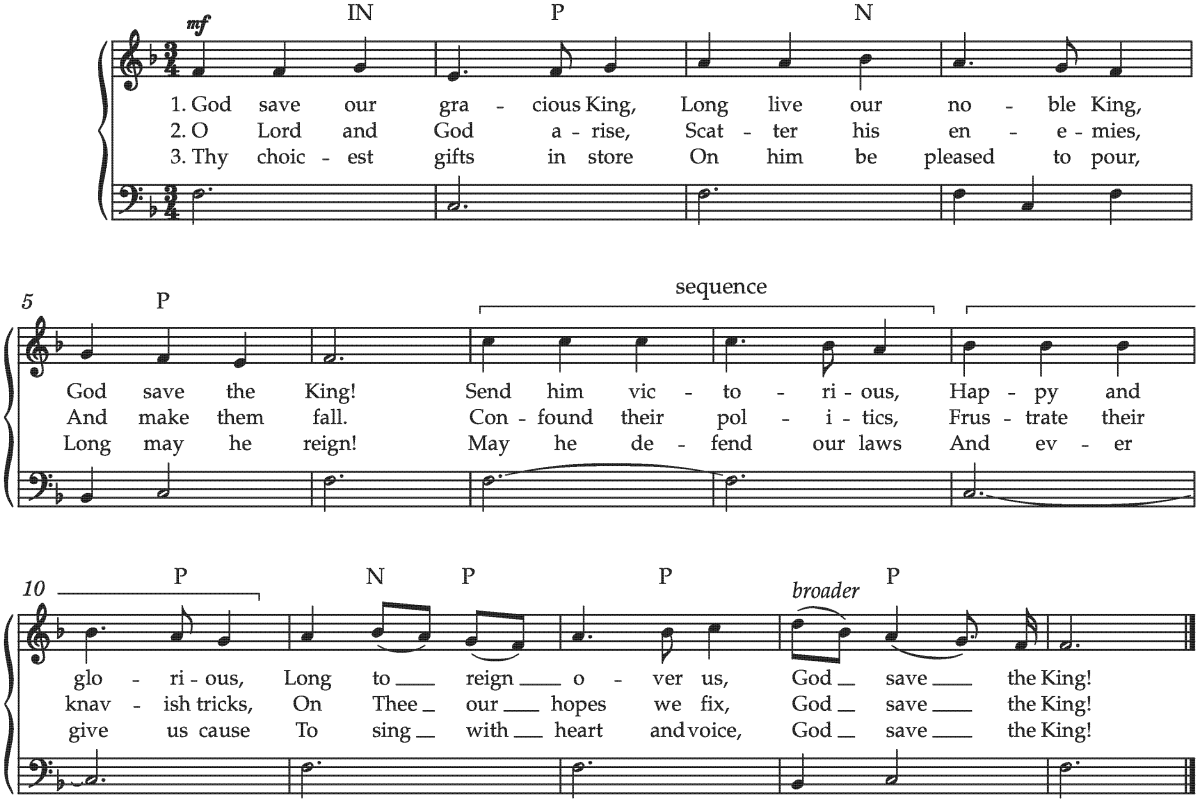
The notation in Example 4.11 reflects the relative importance of pitches. The most important notes have stems and beams, and the less important notes consist only of noteheads. The slurs either connect less important notes to more important notes (as in a neighbor) or connect one member of a chord to another member.

EXAMPLE 4.11 Structural Analysis of "Clementine"



Having analyzed the long-range pitch structure of "Clementine," it may be illustrative to compare it to "God Save the King" (Example 4.12). This piece is also in the key of F major and has two phrases (once again, harmonic changes are represented in the bass); the first phrase contains six measures, the second phrase contains eight.

EXAMPLE 4.12 "God Save the King"



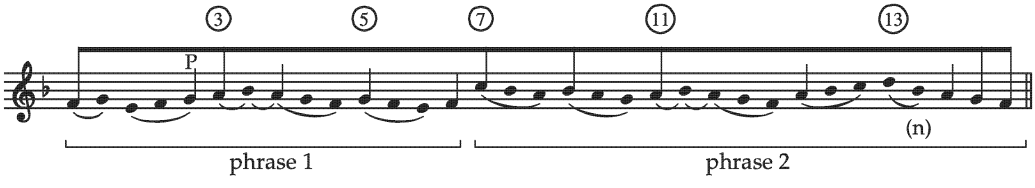
For the most part, the melody moves in stepwise motion, using passing and neighbor tones. However, the G^4 in m. 1 is neither a passing tone nor a typical neighbor. Since G^4 neighbors F^4 but does not return to F, it is called an **incomplete neighbor**. This particular type of incomplete neighbor—which is approached by step but is then leapt from in the opposite direction to a chord tone—is called an "escape tone" or "échappée." The E^4 in m. 2 leads through the passing tone F^4 to G^4. Since the G^4 sets the end of the first line of text ("King") (note the comma in the text) and leads to the A^4 that is the focal pitch in mm. 3 and 4, we may consider G to be a slower-moving passing tone, which connects the F of m. 1 with the A of m. 3. $B\flat^4$ is an upper neighbor to the A^4 in m. 3. There is a quick descent through G^4, which again functions as a passing tone and leads back to F^4. The phrase continues, and closure occurs in m. 6. Given that the more important stepwise descent from A^4 to F^4 occurs only in mm. 4–6, we can view the A^4 that begins m. 4 as being extended by a subordinate stepwise descent to F^4. In the same manner, we can view the G in m. 5 to be extended by a subordinate stepwise descent to E^4. Thus, the same slowly unfolding passing motion that opens the song on F^4–G^4–A^4 (mm. 1–3) is mirrored at the close of the first phrase with A^4–G^4–F^4 (mm. 4–6).

The second phrase begins on C^5 ($\hat{5}$) in m. 7. The passing tone $B\flat^4$ connects C^5 to A^4 in m. 8, and mm. 9 and 10 imitate mm. 7 and 8 by repeating the material down the interval of a second. This immediate restatement of a musical idea on different scale degrees is called **sequence**. The A^4 returns to C^5 in mm. 11 and 12, and the melody ends with a consonant skip from D^5 to $B\flat^4$, followed by a stepwise line that descends from A^4 through G^4 to F^4.

Once again, let's step back and collect our observations (refer to Example 4.13). The first phrase of the melody (mm. 1–6) begins on F ($\hat{1}$), ascends to A ($\hat{3}$, m. 3), and returns to $\hat{1}$. The second part of the song descends from C ($\hat{5}$) to F ($\hat{1}$).

If we compare "Clementine" and "God Save the King," we see that both tunes contain two phrases. More importantly, both first phrases arpeggiate the tonic triad, F^4–A^4–C^5, and both second phrases bring the C^5 back to its resting place on $\hat{1}$ through long stepwise descents.

EXAMPLE 4.13 Structural Analysis of "God Save the King"

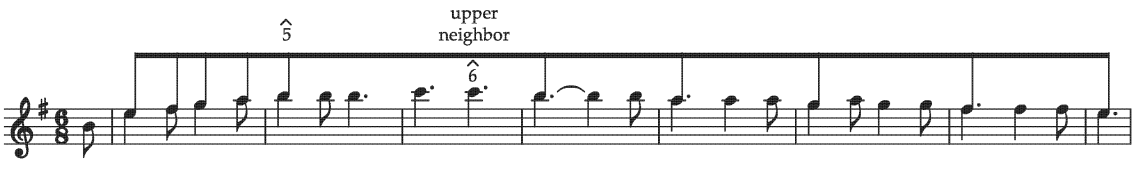


These two analyses function as a preview of the sort of contextual and interpretive analysis that will be developed in the text. Our analysis in this text will always go deeper than simply labeling surface events, for it is these deeper relationships that actually control the surface events.

Melodic Fluency

We have seen that melodies share particular attributes. For example, melodies often rise from a stable initiating point (usually $\hat{1}$), ascend to a climax, and descend to a point of repose. Melodies move primarily by step, and any large leaps are balanced by stepwise changes of direction. One such melody is heard in Example 4.14, where a rapid ascent to $\hat{5}$ is followed by a long neighbor note on $\hat{6}$ that returns to $\hat{5}$. The following leisurely stepwise descent convincingly closes on $\hat{1}$.

EXAMPLE 4.14 Smetana, "Moldau," from *My Country*, mm. 40–47



A given melody (e.g., a cantus firmus) or harmony provides a standard against which we can measure dissonance and consonance. Such a foundation allows us to **embellish** the given melody with both consonant and dissonant embellishing tones. Conversely, by pruning away, or **reducing**, these embellishing tones, we discover structural lines and these nonadjacent stepwise pitches provide the underlying skeleton of the piece. We also learned that analysis reveals similar underlying melodic trajectories in works with very different musical surfaces, such as "Clementine" and "God Save the King." We invoked a single criterion to support our findings: that a pitch's function depends entirely on the context in which it appears. That is, all scale degrees are not created equal, and subordinate scale degrees embellish more important scale degrees.

Step motions, occurring below the embellished surface of a melody, are central to tonal music. Indeed, they are reflections of a larger human preoccupation to elaborate and dramatize forms of discourse and communication. For example, nothing particularly interesting is learned when someone is described as balding and middle aged. However, when these generic attributes are augmented by the mention of prominent scars and tattoos, a curious gait, and that third thumb, the listener's interest is certainly piqued. The same desire to embellish music is age old, as we can see from the highly decorated portions of thousand-year-old chant to classical theme and variations, to jazz and contemporary commercial music.

Further, all humans possess the basic desire to make sense of the myriad stimuli presented to them in their day-to-day activities and, therefore, subconsciously to group these stimuli into meaningful shapes. In order to accomplish this, we must ignore superfluous and confusing stimuli, give priority to the most logical, clear, and useful bits of information, and fill in incomplete yet necessary pieces, all in order to create an entity that makes the most sense. The rise of Gestalt psychology in the l920s and its flowering in the second half of the twentieth century is predicated on the specific ways humans make sense of a world of nonstop stimuli. Composers and performers instinctively invoke these rules, which include various types of balance, expectation, and realization (e.g., the buildup toward a climax and the subsequent release) and the thwarting of expectations, surprise, ambiguity, and so forth. We have

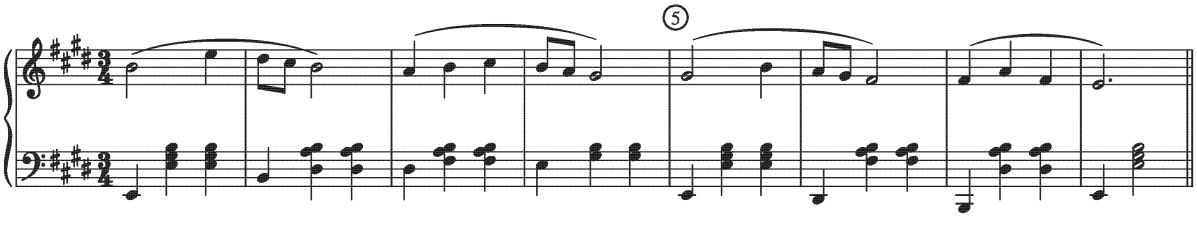
already invoked several of these Gestalt principles in our discussion of musical accent in Chapter 1, and we now encounter a few additional types in the following discussion of below-the-surface step motions.

Melodic fluency refers to underlying scalar patterns that support the infinite variety of melodic embellishments that lie on the music's surface. Most likely you intuitively sense these lines and use them to guide your interpretations of phrases; you might even choose to project them in performance. Indeed, composers guide our ears by aurally "marking" these underlying melodic lines in a variety of ways. Recall from Chapter 1 that we equated marking with "accent" and that there are many ways to accent a musical event, including duration, metric placement, dynamics, articulation, harmonic and contour changes, and so on. Powerful goal-oriented motions arise when accented musical events are coordinated with hierarchical pitch structures (such as the tonic triad).

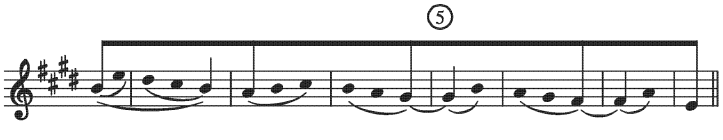
As you listen to Example 4.15, ask yourself whether or not the melody's register and general contour are static, or whether there is an ascent or descent over the course of the excerpt. The melody begins on B and slowly descends during the phrase to close a fifth lower on E. That you heard this descent is noteworthy, given that many of the pitch-to-pitch melodic gestures actually *ascend* (e.g., the piece opens with a leap up to E and ascending gestures occur in mm. 3, 5, and 7). By tracing the metrically and durationally accented pitches in this phrase, we understand why you heard the underlying descent (see Example 4.15B): B, which holds forth in mm. 1–2 falls first to A and then to G♯ (m. 4). G♯, like the preceding B, is a member of the tonic triad that is sustained in m. 5. G♯ then falls to F♯ (which is extended in mm. 6–7) and on to E. Each of these pitches is accented in specific ways: B by duration and metric placement, and A by metric placement and the fact that as $\hat{4}$ it is inherently predisposed to function as a passing tone between the more stable $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{3}$. Further, A is counterpointed by the unstable leading tone, D♯, which creates a dissonant diminished fifth: D♯ fulfills its responsibility to ascend to E as A in turn falls to G♯. The following G♯, F♯, and E are either metrically accented, durationally accented, or both.

EXAMPLE 4.15 Melodic Fluency

A. Donizetti, *Lucrezia Borgia*, act 1, no. 3



B. Donizetti, *Lucrezia Borgia*, act 1, no. 3 (reduction)



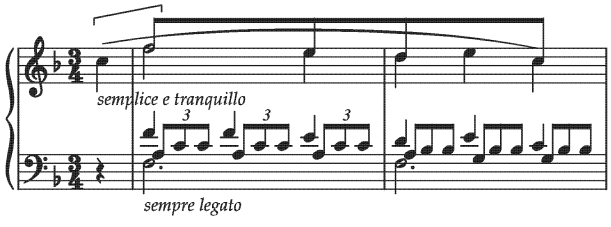
Donizetti uses specific embellishments to elaborate the fifth descent. A chordal leap of a fourth in m. 1 (from B to E) is filled in as the fourth retraces itself by stepwise motion. We have learned that changing direction after a leap is an

important means of creating melodic balance. The specific procedure of filling in a leap is called **gap-fill**, another Gestalt principle that is predicated on the listener's expectation that a melodic leap will eventually be filled in by stepwise motion in the opposite direction. Notice that the change of harmony to V^7 (B–D♯–F♯–A) in m. 2 renders the melodic D♯ and B chord tones, with C♯ a weak-beat passing dissonance. In fact, this falling passing motion characterizes mm. 4 and 6.

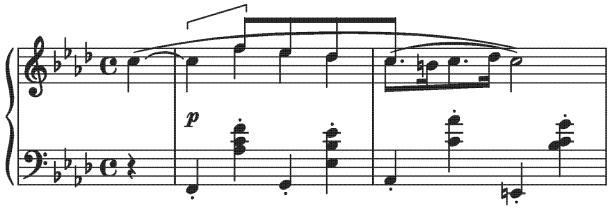
We have, of course, encountered gap-fill in our previous counterpoint studies. But it is a crucial component of successful composition, as we can see in the Chopin excerpts in Example 4.16A–D, each of which begins with a leap that opens a musical space that is immediately filled in—and in contrary motion to the leap.

EXAMPLE 4.16 Gap-Fill in Chopin's Nocturnes

A. in F major, op. 15, no. 1



B. in F minor, op. 55, no. 1



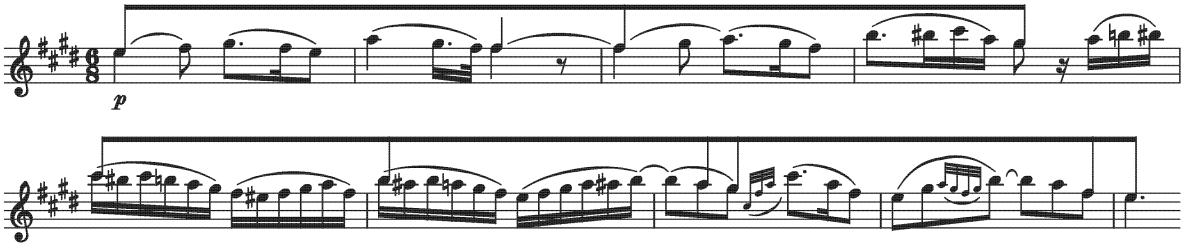
C. in E minor, op. posth. 72, no. 1

D. in G minor, op. 15, no. 3

Composers, of course, also create rising structural lines. Placed in the first half of phrases, such lines produce a subtle tension that is balanced and discharged by the later cadential falling. See Example 4.17. The phrase divides into two

two-measure units. The second unit is a transposition (up a step) of the first. Further, the rising and falling passing figures that pervade each measure reflect the gradual rise in the line from E to G♯: E is embellished by the ascending third, while F♯ in m. 2 is embellished by the falling third (A–G♯–F♯). In the modified transposition in mm. 3–4, where the F♯ from m. 2 is picked up in m. 3, the line closes on G♯. Notice that these measure-to-measure thirds reflect the larger ascending third, E–F♯–G♯, that spans the entire excerpt. Thus, a slow structural ascent from E to G♯ in the first phrase (mm. 1–4) is embellished by various thirds (E–G♯, F♯–A, B–G♯), with a single neighbor motion (B–C♯–B) in m. 4 embellishing the high point of the phrase.

EXAMPLE 4.17 Beethoven, Piano Trio, in E♭ major op. 1, no. 2, *Largo, con espressione*



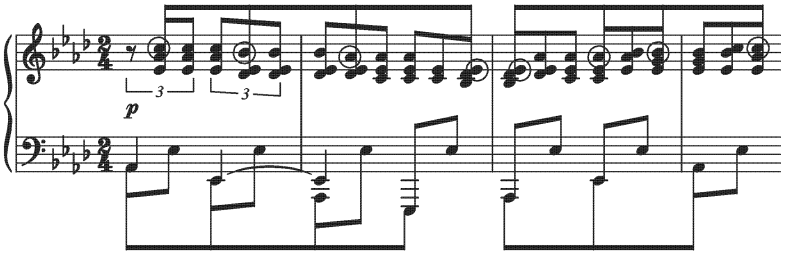
The descending stepwise contour of the second phrase (mm. 5–9) nicely balances the ascending stepwise contour of the first phrase: The downbeat of m. 5 restates the first phrase's highest pitch, C♯, from which the descent unfolds from C♯ back to the passage's opening pitch, E.

Many phrases exhibit archlike contours, in which both ascending and descending subsurface lines occur. In Example 4.18A, each member of the stepwise ascending fourth line (from C to F) appears on the accented downbeat. The arrival on F is followed by an equally clear descent in the second half of the excerpt. Notice also that within the web of pitches in each measure (composed mainly of upper and lower neighbors) one hears miniature ascending thirds that mimic the larger passing motion in the line (for example, in m. 1: **C** B **D** C F **E**). Arches that ascend and then descend are not the only possible types; composers often employ a descent followed by ascent, as shown in Example 4.18B. Notice that Chopin parallels the melodic contour in the bass.

EXAMPLE 4.18

A. Mozart, Symphony no. 41, in C major, "Jupiter," K. 551, *Andante cantabile*

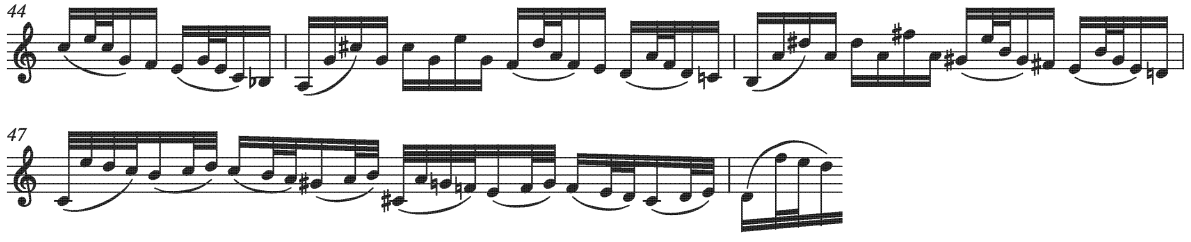
B. Chopin, Etude in A♭, op. posth.



Melody As Harmony

Finally, single-line melodies alone often present explicit or strongly implied harmonic underpinnings, as we discovered at the end of Chapter 3. As might be expected, such works also depend on the concept of melodic fluency. See Example 4.19. The first step in grappling with this excerpt is to determine the underlying harmonies. It is also helpful to find patterns in the speed of harmonic change (the *harmonic rhythm*), since composers will usually continue an established pattern, whether it be the texture, the mood, or the rate of harmonic change, yet another Gestalt principle, referred to as **good continuation**. This knowledge—combined with the fact that changes in harmony usually coincide with metric accents—provides a powerful standard of measurement that guides analysis.

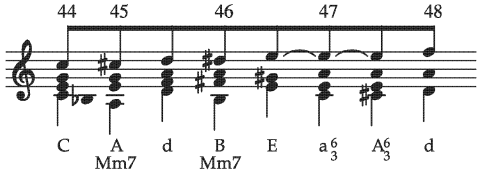
EXAMPLE 4.19 Bach, Sonata no. 3 for Solo Violin in C major, BWV 1005, *Allemande*



Most likely you heard two harmonic changes in each measure. The incomplete first measure establishes the two-beat harmonic rhythm. Example 4.20 presents a harmonic verticalization of the chords, from which we can see the steadily rising chromatic line that begins on C (C–C♯–D–D♯–E) and eventually arrives on F (m. 48). Notice that given the pattern of rising half steps, we expect it to continue from the E^5 in m. 47, even though E is sustained for one and a half measures. This expectation arises because E is a member of the E-major, A-minor, and A-major harmonies that control the second half of m. 46 and all of m. 47.

That the pattern is not continued creates a dramatic moment, and listeners are rewarded for their patience: F arrives over the D-minor harmony. Note that we are able to hear the retention of the previous E and its ascent to F in spite of 25 intervening pitches, given that we expect the previously established pattern to continue. The attentive performer will most likely exploit such a moment in performance.

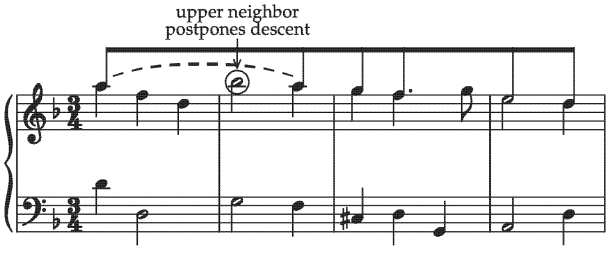
EXAMPLE 4.20



Another method that composers use to delay ascending and descending lines is momentarily to change a line's direction, which postpones and even thwarts what listeners assume will happen. The longer the postponement, the more dramatic its effect. This process, called **expectation/fulfillment** in

Gestalt psychology, is central to the unfolding of a musical work. Listen to Example 4.21. The clear stepwise fifth descent from A to D accelerates, so four of the five pitches of the descent occur in mm. 3–4. The descent is postponed, however, by the upper-neighbor A–B♭–A that follows the initial descending arpeggiation in m. 1. Notice that the upper-neighbor B♭ is consonant, given that it is supported by the tenth, G.

EXAMPLE 4.21 Corelli, Sonata no. 7, op. 5, Sarabande in D minor

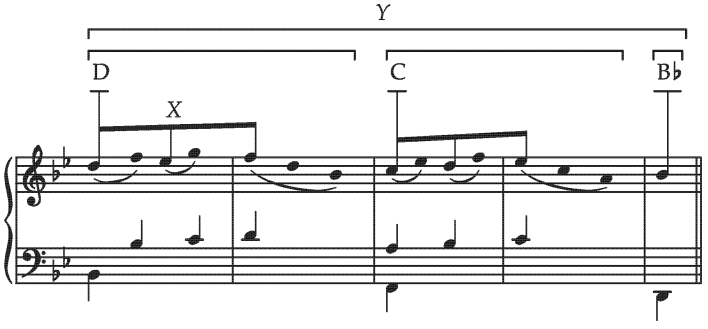


Our final example (4.22) traces a third descent and provides a notational means to illustrate such descents. Haydn presents a two-measure tune that is sequentially repeated down a second in mm. 3–4. The D^5 from m. 1 moves via passing tone $E♭^5$ to F^5 and via arpeggiation to $B♭^4$ in m. 2, generating a B♭ triad. Haydn balances the ascending motion in m. 1 with the descent in m. 2.

This can be seen at X in Example 4.23. When the idea is repeated in m. 3, D^5 is the passing tone that links C^5 and $E♭^5$. The stepwise-third descent that occurs over the four measures from D^5 through C^5 to $B♭^4$ can be seen at Y in Example 4.23.

EXAMPLE 4.22 Haydn, String Quartet in B♭, op. 33, no. 4, *Allegretto*

EXAMPLE 4.23 Structural Analysis of Haydn, *Allegretto*



Analysis is not a casual, prescriptive endeavor. It must reflect what actually takes place in the music and what you, the analyst, bring to that music in terms of your own instincts. We must consider an entire musical texture, because harmony provides a foundation that allows us to understand what is stable and what is unstable in the melody.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

WORKBOOK 1
4.3–4.4

4.3 Melodic Fluency, Harmony, and Embellishing Tones

The florid soprano melody of each of the following examples depends on slower-moving stepwise lines that emerge when we listen to and study the examples. Complete the following tasks:

1. Listen to each example, and circle and stem each note of the structural stepwise line; then beam them together.
2. Identify harmonies using roman numerals for those bass notes with horizontal lines beneath them.
3. Label the type of embellishing tone for each soprano pitch beneath an arrow.

A. Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 50, no. 3, *Allegro con brio*

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Rameau, Rondino

C. Beethoven, Piano Concerto no. 1 in C major, op. 15, *Allegro con brio*

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- arpeggiations
- chordal leaps (consonant leaps)
- embellishing tones
- embellishment versus reduction
- 5–6 technique
- Gestalt concepts: expectation/fulfillment, gap-fill, good continuation
- hierarchy
  - melodic fluency
- neighbor tone (auxiliary tone or neighbor)
  - upper neighbor, lower neighbor
  - incomplete neighbor, complete neighbor
  - consonant neighbor, dissonant neighbor
- nonchord tones
- passing tones
- phrase
- resolution
- transposition

CHAPTER 5

Tonic and Dominant as Tonal Pillars and Introduction to Voice Leading

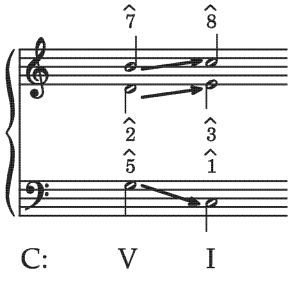
Tonic and dominant chords provide the harmonic foundation of tonal music, and can define a key. When used in conjunction with other chords, these two pillars create a sense of arrival and departure. Compositions and the phrases they comprise generally begin with the tonic chord and progress through nontonic chords. Eventually the harmonies lead to the dominant and then on to the concluding tonic. The tonic stated at the opening of a phrase or piece need not progress to any particular chord, but the dominant inevitably leads back to the tonic.

Characteristics and Effect of V and I

In the V chord, melodic and harmonic functions work together to create a powerful expectation of the tonic's return (see Example 5.1). The dominant's tendency to resolve to tonic stems from the relationship between its chordal members and those of the tonic.

The V harmony contains active scale degrees, called *tendency tones*, that are less stable than those of the tonic triad. $\hat{7}$ and $\hat{2}$ are melodic tendency tones: $\hat{7}$ wants to ascend to $\hat{1}$, and $\hat{2}$ can move to either $\hat{1}$ or $\hat{3}$. Although $\hat{5}$ is stable as a member of the tonic harmony, it is unstable as the root of the dominant harmony and has a tendency to return to $\hat{1}$. The V^7 chord contains a fourth tone, $\hat{4}$, that forms the dissonant seventh of the chord. Although the progression I–V–I is simple, it is the basis for much great and imaginative music and can create different psychological effects when used in isolation.

EXAMPLE 5.1 The V Chord: Harmonic and Melodic Functions



An E♭-major triad slowly emerges out of the sustained E♭ at the beginning of Wagner's *Das Rheingold* (Example 5.2). The chordal fifth is added in m. 5, and the chordal third does not enter until m. 18. This introduction (less than one-tenth of which is reproduced in Example 5.2) contains a single sonority: the tonic triad of E♭ major. Note that the single stable sonority does not create the expectation that it needs to move on to another harmony, in spite of the growth of the triad through register and textural changes; forward motion is achieved instead by rhythmic means.

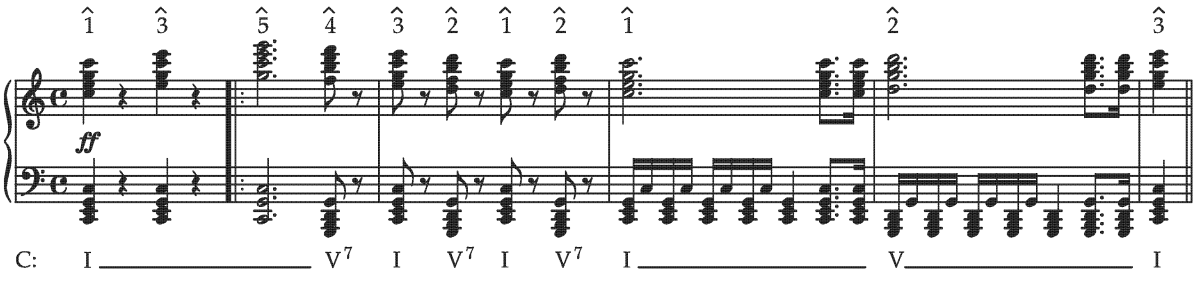
EXAMPLE 5.2 Wagner, *Das Rheingold*, Prelude

Now listen to Example 5.3, the climactic passage from the last movement of Beethoven's *Eroica* Symphony. Beginning with the arrival of the B♭-major triad in m. 328, dominant harmony unfolds over the remainder of the excerpt. Compared with Example 5.2, this passage sounds much less stable, because the dominant gives rise to a powerful expectation to resolve to tonic harmony, which occurs after the fermata. Further destabilizing the passage is the addition of the dissonant minor seventh (A♭), heard first in m. 330 but then incessantly from m. 336 to m. 348, which turns the dominant triad into a dominant seventh chord and creates an even more powerful impulse to resolve.

EXAMPLE 5.3 Beethoven, Symphony no. 3, "Eroica," in E♭ major, op. 55, Finale

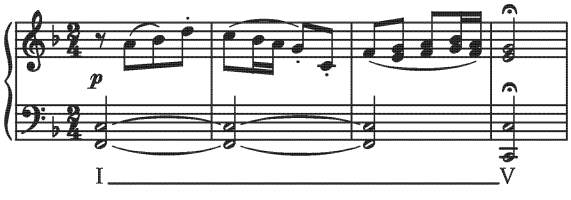
Of course, lengthy passages of a single harmony have specific rhetorical meaning and are not the norm in tonal music. The following examples juxtapose the two harmonic forces of tonic and dominant. The forceful opening of the last movement of Beethoven's Fifth Symphony (Example 5.4) is created by the simple alternation of tonic and dominant harmonies. Here the tonic harmony supports the opening arpeggiation ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{5}$ in mm. 1–2) in the melody, after which I and V^7 alternate as the melody descends through the scale back to $\hat{1}$ and tonic harmony (mm. 2–4) and I–V–I supports a scalar ascent to $\hat{3}$ (mm. 4–6). The changing harmonic rhythm is correlated with the rhythm of the melody and the use of V^7 chords (as opposed to V triads) to create a sense of both breadth and vigor. That is, after the broad statement of the opening tonic, Beethoven changes chords every beat from the end of m. 2 to the beginning of m. 4 and uses the less stable V^7 chord to propel the music forward. Beginning in m. 4, both melody and harmonic rhythm broaden again, and Beethoven's choice of the dominant *triad* in m. 5 underscores the grand ascent to $\hat{3}$ over the tonic.

EXAMPLE 5.4 Beethoven, Symphony no. 5 in C minor, op. 67, *Allegro*



Although the tonic is the ultimate goal of all tonal motions, small yet important arrivals often occur on the dominant; this heightens the musical drama and propels the music forward. Listen to the opening of Beethoven's Sixth Symphony (Example 5.5). The four-measure phrase leads from the tonic to the dominant, creating the effect of a musical question that needs an answer.

EXAMPLE 5.5 Beethoven, Symphony no. 6, "Pastorale," in F major, op. 68, *Allegro ma non troppo*



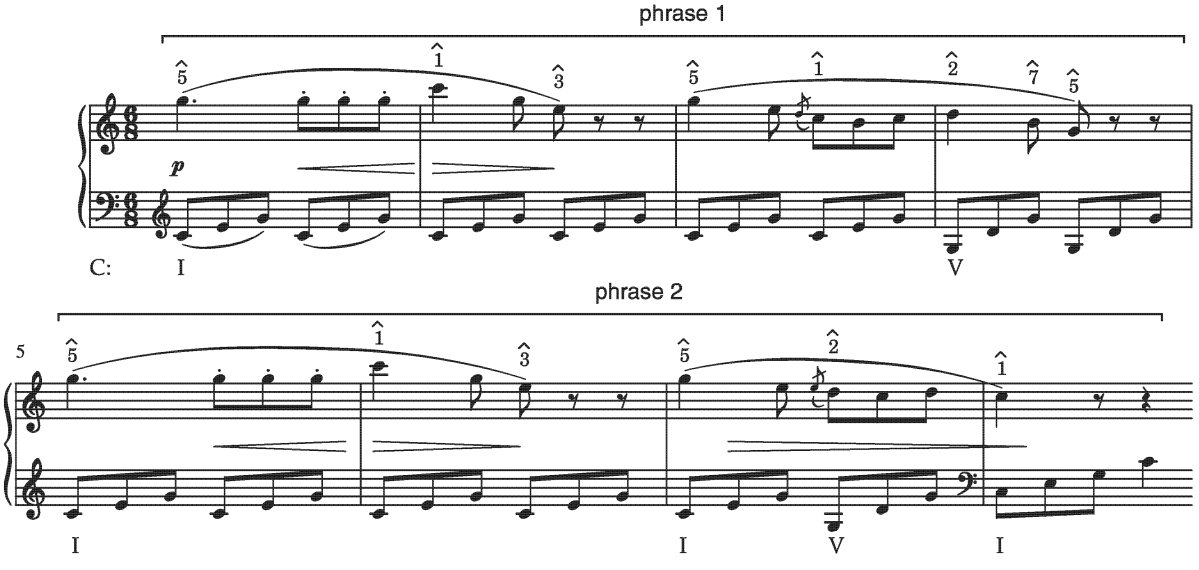
The Cadence

A cadence is a point of arrival that usually occurs at the end of a phrase. We first encountered cadences in our exploration of two-voice counterpoint. The preceding examples show that a sense of closure occurs, regardless of whether or not an example ends on I or V. This is because the forward motion of the music often stops on these chords, given the changes in the rhythm and the completion of larger metrical patterns. Further, specific soprano scale degrees are coordinated with these harmonic arrivals so that the entire musical fabric of melody, harmony, counterpoint, rhythm, and meter participates in this phrase-defining moment.

Mozart's Rondo contains examples of the two structural cadences used in tonal music (see Example 5.6). The Rondo can be divided into two parallel four-measure phrases. Harmonic as well as melodic motion is necessary to create a phrase. The first phrase closes on the dominant of C major (m. 4), and the second phrase closes on the tonic (m. 8). The melody begins on the downbeat $\hat{5}$, arpeggiates a tonic triad (G^5–E^5–C^5), and arrives in m. 4 on the correspondingly accented $\hat{2}$. At this point, another shorter arpeggiation unfolds, this time on the dominant (D^5–B^4–G^4). The opening idea on I returns in m. 5. When the tonic occurs in m. 8, the soprano strengthens the arrival by firmly stating $\hat{1}$. Notice how changes in the harmonic rhythm help articulate each phrase. In the first phrase, after three measures of tonic harmony, the

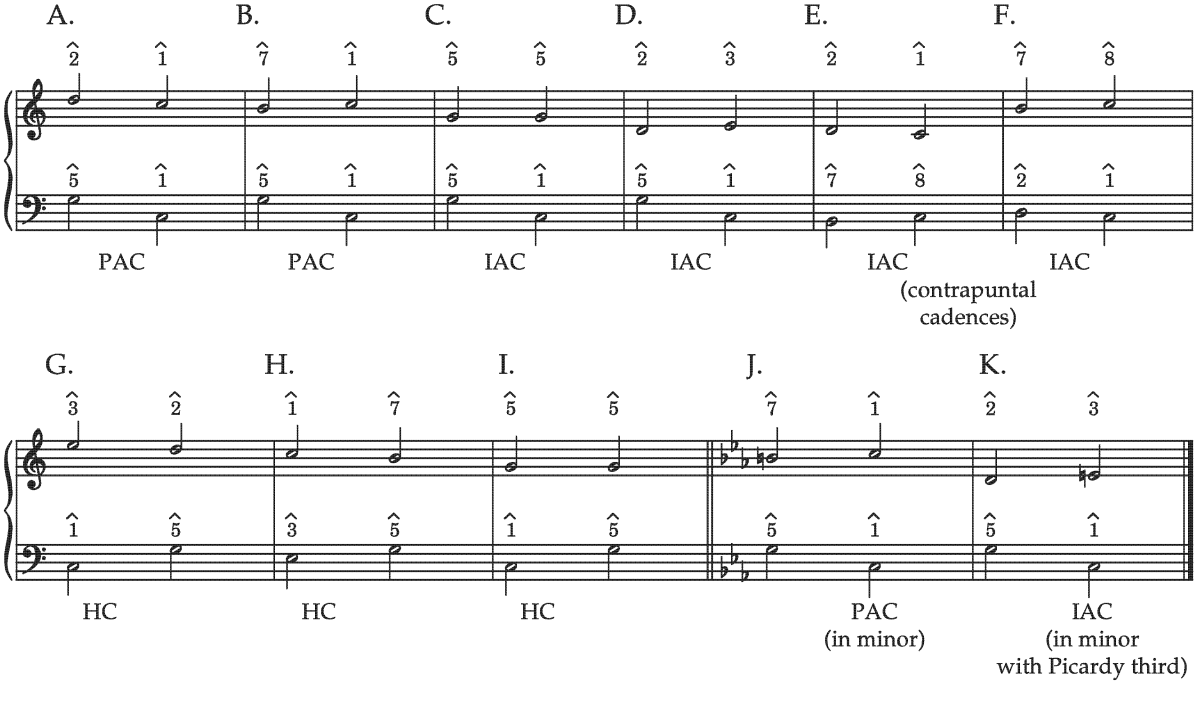
dominant arrives in m. 4, supporting the arpeggiated D^4–B^3–G^3 in the melody. Leading to the final cadence, the harmonic rhythm speeds up even more noticeably as the chords change every dotted half note beginning in m. 7.

EXAMPLE 5.6 Mozart, Rondo in C major, K. 144



Mozart's example illustrates the two main types of cadences in tonal music. **Authentic cadences**, or full cadences (labeled AC), close V–I (dominant to tonic in root position). **Half cadences** (labeled HC) close on a root-position dominant.

EXAMPLE 5.7 Perfect and Imperfect Authentic Cadences; Half Cadences



Authentic cadences are graded in strength based on the outer voices. In **perfect authentic cadence** (labeled PAC) the soprano moves $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$ or $\hat{7}$–$\hat{8}$, while the bass moves $\hat{5}$–$\hat{1}$ (see Examples 5.7A–B). An **imperfect authentic cadence** (labeled IAC) has the soprano close on $\hat{5}$ or $\hat{3}$ (see Examples 5.7C–D).

Any bass motion other than $\hat{5}$–$\hat{1}$ (such as $\hat{7}$–$\hat{8}$ or $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$) also creates a special type of IAC called a **contrapuntal cadence**. Contrapuntal cadences, so named because of their relation to the cadences we used in our contrapuntal studies, are harmonically weaker than the more common leaping bass motions of $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{1}$ (see Examples 5.7E–F).

In contrast, no formal terms are in use to distinguish different types of half cadences, although the root-position dominant usually supports $\hat{2}$ in the soprano. Examples 5.7G–I show common HCs.

WORKBOOK 1
5.1

In minor, two common chromatic alterations occur. First, the dominant will be a major triad, so $\hat{7}$ must be raised to create a leading tone (Example 5.7J). Second, the tonic harmony that closes a piece will sometimes contain a raised third to form a major triad (Example 5.7K). This idiom is called a **Picardy third**.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

5.1

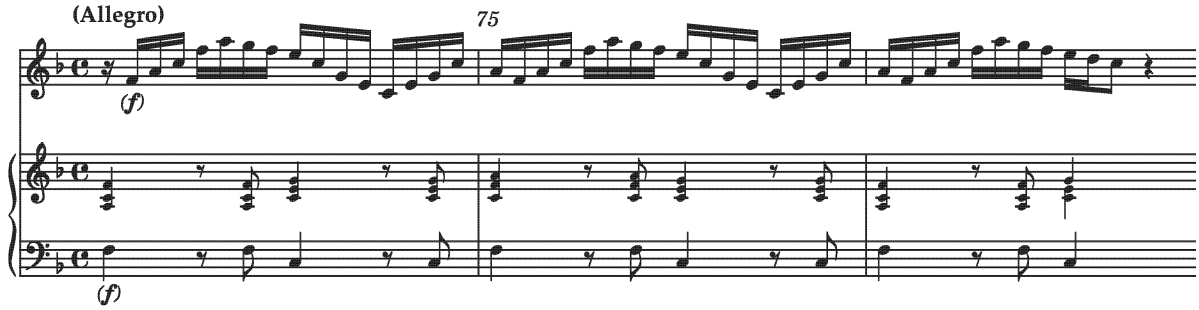
The following excerpts employ only tonic and dominant triads in root position. Listen to each example; then locate and label the cadence that closes each excerpt. Provide roman numerals for the remaining chords, and label passing and neighbor tones in the soprano. Finally, choose two contrasting excerpts and write a paragraph that describes their differences, focusing on harmonic rhythm, textural and accompanimental patterns, melodic embellishing tones, or underlying two-voice counterpoint.

A.

SOLVED/APP 6

B.

C. Vivaldi, Violin Sonata in F major, Ryom 176



SOLVED/APP 6

D. Clara Schumann, "Les Ballet des Revenants," from *Quatre pieces caracteristique*, op. 5

Although the melody occurs in the left hand, the harmony should be clear from the metrically accented notes and the chords in the right hand.

Introduction to Voice Leading

Using only what we have examined thus far—the tonic and dominant—it is possible to write satisfying music with smooth and logical homophonic progressions. The remaining harmonies can be incorporated once they have been introduced later in this text. You will discover that when we strip away the surface of compositions written in various styles throughout the common-practice period, a small core of tonal principles occurs over and over. These principles are not limited to so-called "serious" or "art" music but extend to popular and commercial music heard today.

The idea of an underlying harmonic foundation includes both the permissible chords (harmonic vocabulary) and the order in which chords appear (harmonic progression). The connection between chords must be smooth; therefore, you should focus on how members of one chord connect to members of the following chord. **Voice leading** refers to the way individual voices move. Voice-leading rules are derived from the principles that we learned in Chapter 2 concerning two-voice counterpoint.

Texture and Register

Tonal music of the common-practice era was generally conceived in four voices, although not every piece of tonal music literally uses four voices at every possible moment. Rather, a four-voice framework underlies compositions that may have many more than four voices, such as works for large forces, including the symphony and the concerto, or those that have fewer than four voices, such as solos, duets, and trios in which the framework is implicit. The four-voice texture represents a happy medium because it nicely accommodates the triads and seventh chords, which make up tonal harmony.

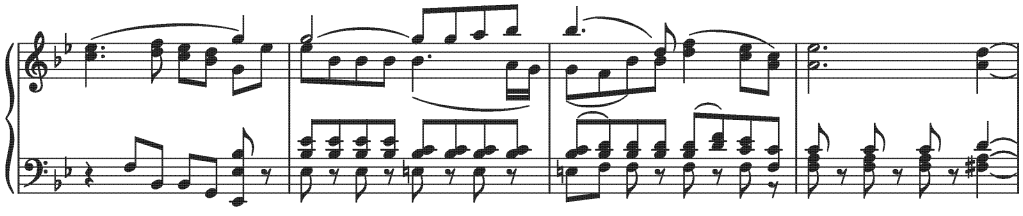
To accommodate different vocal ranges, singing is divided into four voices that are ordered from highest to lowest: soprano, alto, tenor, and bass (SATB). Composers notate these four voices in one of three ways: In **open score** (or **full score**), each voice appears on its own staff, and clefs specific to each voice are used (Example 5.8A). A **short score** is notated on two staves, with the women's voices (SA) in the treble and the men's voices (TB) in the bass. The soprano and tenor pitches always have upward stems; the alto and bass always have downward stems (Example 5.8B1). We refer to open score and short score as **chorale style**. The third method of notation is **keyboard style**, which uses bass and treble staves but places soprano, alto, and tenor in the treble staff and the bass alone in the bass staff (Example 5.8C). The three upper voices should fit within an octave in order to be comfortably played by the right hand. In keyboard style, the soprano stems point upward, alto and tenor stems point downward; the bass voice follows general stem-direction rules of melody writing. In our writing you will rely almost exclusively on the two-stave short-score format.

EXAMPLE 5.8 Four-Voice Frameworks

A. Bach, "Nun ruhen alle Wälder" from *St. Matthew Passion* (open score: chorale style)

B1. Bach, "Nun ruhen alle Wälder" (short score: chorale style)

B2. Beethoven, Symphony no. 9 in D minor, *Adagio molto* (short score)

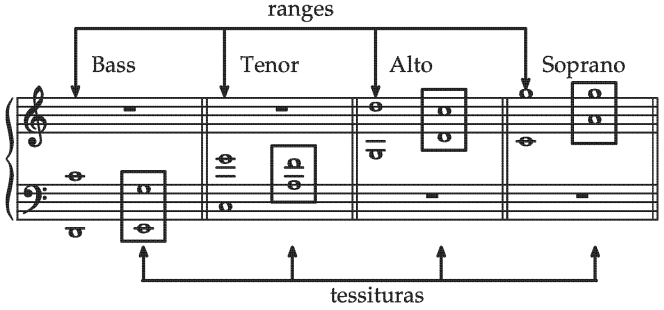


C. Keyboard style

Voices, like most instruments, are limited to particular registers. A vocal **range** is the total span of pitches that a voice can sing; this covers roughly the interval of a twelfth. Composers utilize this "unrestricted range" when writing for solo voice (see Example 5.9). Of course, the entire range of one's voice is not called for at all times; rather, composers set the majority of a vocal part in a more comfortable register, referred to as its **tessitura**. This "optimal range" is much better suited to accommodate four voice parts simultaneously sounding. **Ambitus** refers to the specific range of a melody (as opposed to the range of the instrument playing the melody).

Example 5.9 shows both the range and the tessitura for each of the four vocal parts. *When writing for four voices, you should observe the narrower tessitura spans.* A helpful rule of thumb is to write for a voice's midrange and to restrict its tessitura to about a sixth or a seventh for the upper voices. Note that the bass's register is usually approximately one octave below the alto, and the tenor's register is usually one octave below the soprano. The leaps in a soprano melody should be fewer and smaller than those in a bass line. Tenor and alto lines contain even fewer skips than a soprano line. The larger range of the bass voice reflects its dual function as both melodic line and guiding force of the harmonic progression.

EXAMPLE 5.9 Vocal Ranges and Tessituras



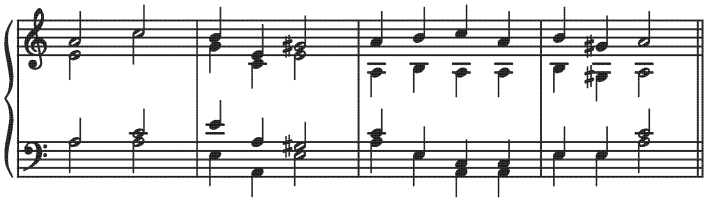
Three Techniques to Create Voice Independence Within a Four-Voice Texture

Composers face a continual paradox between maintaining the melodic and independent nature of individual voices and making sure voices work well with each other. In this section, we'll examine three techniques for reaching this goal. Example 5.10 presents two four-voice examples that use only tonic and dominant harmonies, yet they sound different. Listen carefully to each one. Which do you prefer? Why? What criteria are you using to support your opinions?

EXAMPLE 5.10 Voice Leading in Four-Part Texture

A.

B.



Technique 1: Smoothness

The first example is unique because of its overall smoothness; the upper three voices in Example 5.10A move primarily by step and never leap more than a third. (The bass moves by leap because it is limited, for now, to the roots of the tonic and the dominant harmonies.) The tenor is remarkably static, because the tonic and dominant share $\hat{5}$ (the fifth of the tonic and the root of the dominant). However, given that *our chief concern is for minimal movement of voices*, this stasis is an asset. Always try to maintain common tones between chords by either tying or repeating them in a single voice. Example 5.10B reveals melodic lines that are angular and disjunct. Smooth melodic motion is a primary requirement when connecting chords.

Technique 2: Registral Independence

Each voice must be independent and should be given a consistently comfortable tessitura. Independence is created in several ways, including maintaining a specific register for each voice, as shown in Example 5.10A. Note how the tenor elegantly controls the area just above and below C^4. Now compare this with the tenor line of Example 5.10B, which not only contains unnecessary leaps of fifths and sixths but forces the voice into an exceptionally low register.

Excessive leaping and registral shifting within a vocal line usually has very serious consequences, as illustrated in Example 5.10B. Problems start as early as the third beat of m. 1, where the alto intrudes into the soprano's tessitura by hopping up a sixth to C^5, and actually extends beyond the soprano's previously established A^4. Such intrusions are called **voice overlaps**; additional examples occur between the tenor and alto in m. 2 as well as between the bass and tenor in mm. 3 and 4. **Voice crossing**, another kind of registral intrusion, occurs on the first beat of m. 3. The alto appears below the tenor C^4. Crossed voices occur again in the last chord of m. 4, where the tenor C^4 is higher than the alto A^3. Avoid overlapping and crossing voices.

Technique 3: Contrapuntal Independence

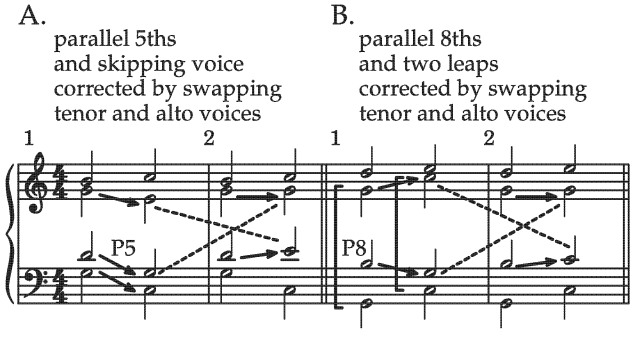
The rules of counterpoint aim for contrary and oblique motion, when possible. However, parallel motion in thirds and sixths is perfectly acceptable, as seen in Example 5.10A, where the soprano and alto move primarily in parallel thirds.

Notice that all the other intervals in Example 5.10A are approached by contrary or oblique motion. Further, in each case of similar motion, at least one voice moves smoothly by step.

Example 5.10B presents the most serious of voice-leading errors: Pairs of voices move in parallel octaves in every measure, creating the effect of one or more voices dropping out of the texture. Further, the soprano and bass move in parallel fifths in m. 2. Parallel motion by perfect fifths and octaves is inherently weak; *avoid parallel motion by perfect consonances (unisons, fifths, and octaves) between any pair of voices.*

You can avoid clumsy vocal lines that contain excessive leaping, intrusion of one voice into another's musical space, and parallels by following a single rule: *Move the voices the shortest possible distance when changing chords.* The appearance of leaps of fifths, or even fourths, particularly when you see leaps in two voices simultaneously is an indication that there may be something wrong in your voice leading. Often you can just switch the pitches in the two voices to smooth out the individual lines and correct voice leading between the lines.

EXAMPLE 5.11 Correcting Errors in Voice Leading



Example 5.11 shows corrections for two instances of faulty voice leading. In A1, the awkward tenor forms parallel fifths with the bass; in A2, correct voice leading results by switching tenor and alto. In B1, we encounter parallel octaves between alto and bass, and the awkward alto and tenor diverge to create a very wide spacing; in B2, the problem is easily solved simply by maintaining the common tone G in the alto and resolving the tenor's leading tone ($\hat{7}$) up by step.

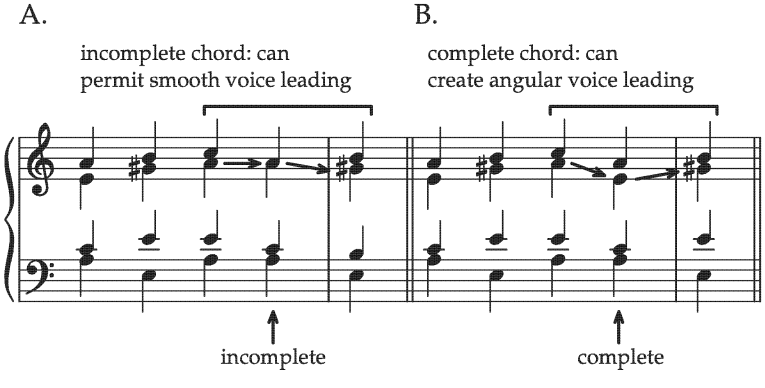
Creating the Best Sound: Incomplete and Complete Chords, Doubling, and Spacing

Omitted Chord Tones

In general, write complete chords. This is easy, since you have four voices in which to include the three members of a triad. If you must write an incomplete chord for the sake of smooth voice leading or the requirements of dissonance treatment, *you may only omit the fifth; all chords must contain a root and a third.*

Example 5.10A contains an example of an incomplete chord on beat 4 of m. 3: Here, the fifth (E) is missing and the root (A) has been tripled in order to avoid a leaping alto (A–E–G♯). Because the alto remains on A^4, stepwise voice leading is maintained in the upper voices. Example 5.12 shows the two versions.

EXAMPLE 5.12 Incomplete Versus Complete Chords



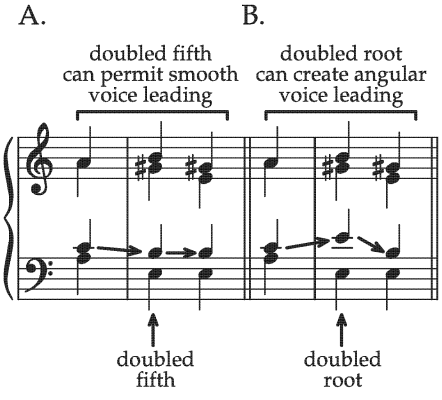
Instances of "illegal" incomplete chords abound in Example 5.10B. For example, there is no third in the first chord of m. 1, and the following chord has three thirds. How many more examples of chords with missing thirds can you identify?

Doubled Chord Tones

Most of the time when we write for four voices, we must double one of the triad members. In general, *double the root, since it is the most stable member of a chord*. (Later, when we use new chords and inversions of chords, we will learn other doublings.) Again, however, if the voice leading is smoother, you may double the fifth and, as a last resort, the third.

In Example 5.10A, the first chord in m. 4 contains a doubled fifth (B), which allows the tenor in the following chord to move a half step from C to B and then maintain the B in the next chord. If the root was doubled in the chord, the tenor would then skip from the preceding C up to E and then down a fourth to the B. Example 5.13 shows the two versions.

EXAMPLE 5.13 Doubling the Fifth



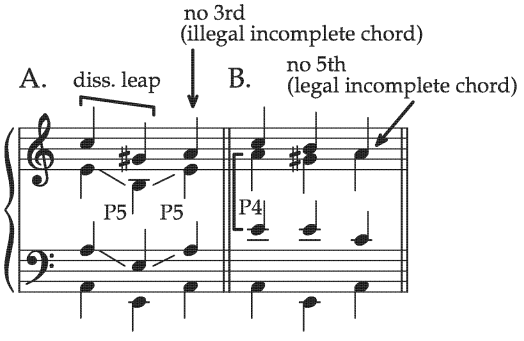
Tendency tones are aurally marked and therefore usually require special treatment. Do not double them because (1) they are already aurally prominent and inherently unstable, and (2) correctly resolving both instances of them will necessarily result in parallel octaves. For example, $\hat{7}$ is the most important tendency tone for now. Harmonized by V, it has a strong tendency to resolve to $\hat{1}$ (harmonized by I). *As a rule, never double the leading tone.*

Spacing and Voicing

There is one more problem in Example 5.10B. The sound seems muddled in m. 3 as the tenor falls to C. This places the chordal third next to the root in a low register. To avoid this sound, *keep adjacent upper voices (i.e., soprano, alto, and tenor) within one octave of one another*. As we already know, we can pack the three upper voices within a single octave such that it is not possible to insert additional chord tones between any voice, a spacing referred to as **close position**. For a chord to be in close position, we consider only the upper three voices and not the bass, which must necessarily leap more than the upper voices, given that it is entrusted with defining the harmony. When the total spacing of the upper voices is an octave or more, we call this **open position**.

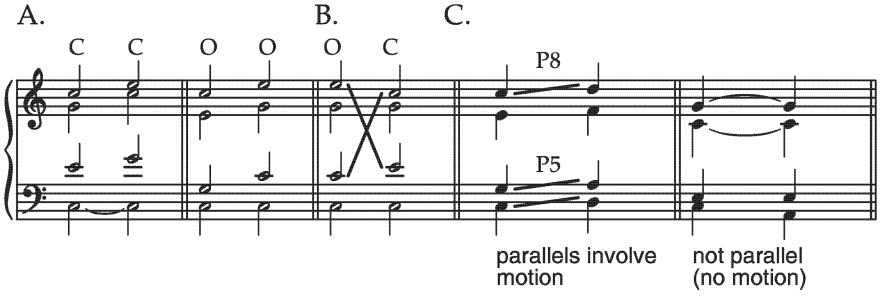
It is a good idea to begin an exercise in close position; to accomplish this, keep the inner voices relatively high. Then, as you continue, it is perfectly acceptable to move the upper voices to open position, which results in a fuller, nicely contrasting sound. Try to return to close position, however, because in open position one can more easily write problematic parallels, which are more difficult to detect than when writing in close position. For example, parallel fifths are more easily avoided if you use close position, because potential parallel fifths will be rendered as harmless perfect fourths. See Example 5.14.

EXAMPLE 5.14 Benefits of Close Position



It is common to repeat a harmony within a measure. When this happens, you may change a chord's voicing by maintaining close (C) or open (O) position, as in Example 5.15A. You also may shift from open to close position, or vice versa, as in Example 5.15B. Note that in Example 5.15B the tenor and soprano voices have exchanged the notes C and E in the revoicing that moves from open to close position; this exchange is marked by the diagonal lines that form an X. This swapping is called a **voice exchange**. In such cases, two or even all three of the upper voices may leap. Note that the sustained perfect fifth (C–G) in the bass and the alto voices is perfectly acceptable and isn't considered a parallel. Parallels occur only when a pair of voices moves from one perfect interval to the same perfect interval on different pitches, as in Example 5.15C.

EXAMPLE 5.15 Revoicing Repeated Harmony; Parallel Motion



Summary of Voice-Leading Rules and Guidelines

The following voice-leading rules and guidelines will remain in effect for our entire study of harmony. Voice-leading rules cannot be broken; guidelines are suggestions, based on style and aesthetics. Many of these rules were first introduced in the counterpoint studies in Chapter 2.

Move the Voices as Little as Possible When Changing Chords

Rule 1 Resolve tendency tones ($\hat{7}$, chordal dissonances, or chromatically altered tones) by step. *Exceptions:* The leading tone, $\hat{7}$, does not need to resolve up to $\hat{1}$ when it is in an inner voice, or as part of the falling line $\hat{8}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$.

Guideline 1 Retain common tones, and move upper voices mostly by step.

Guideline 2 Avoid melodic leaps involving dissonant intervals.

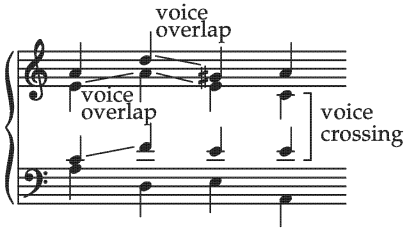
Maintain the Independence and Musical Territory for Each Voice

Rule 2 A pair of voices cannot move from one unison, octave, or perfect fifth to another interval of the same size in parallel or contrary motion.

Rule 3 Tendency tones cannot be doubled. They are aurally marked and often require special treatment.

Rule 4 Keep adjacent upper voices (S-A and A-T) within an octave of each other.

Guideline 3 Avoid voice crossings and voice overlappings. A *voice overlap* occurs when a part leaps above (or below) a higher (or lower) part's previous pitch, infringing on that part's territory, so to speak. A *voice crossing*, on the other hand, occurs when a part is above (or below) a higher (or lower) part's current pitch, swapping places with the adjacent part.



Guideline 4 Avoid direct octaves and fifths between the soprano and bass (unless the soprano moves by step, especially in perfect authentic cadences).

Construct Chords Logically

Guideline 5 In general, write complete chords. If you must write an incomplete chord for the sake of smooth voice leading or the requirements of dissonance treatment, you may omit only the fifth; all chords must contain a root and a third.

Guideline 6 In general, double the root of a chord. However, you may double the fifth (and, as a last resort, the third) if it makes the voice leading smoother.

Tips for Avoiding Problems

Guideline 7 Write the outer voices first. Their counterpoint controls everything.

WORKBOOK 1
5.2–5.5

Guideline 8 Move the upper voices in contrary motion (and, if possible, by step) to the bass.

Guideline 9 Begin part-writing exercises with a complete chord in close position, and try to maintain close position as much as possible.

Guideline 10 If any pair of upper voices leaps simultaneously by more than a third, try revoicing a chord to smooth things out.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

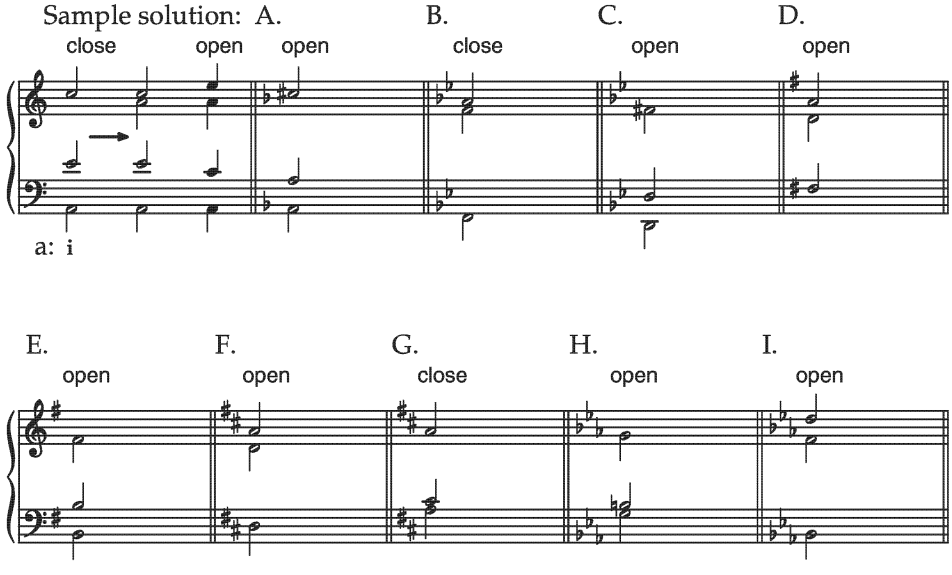
WRITING

5.2 Chord Completion

The following chords are incomplete root-position tonic and dominant triads, each of which appears in a different major or minor key. Complete the following tasks (the first exercise is completed for you):

1. Label each key, and use a roman numeral to identify whether the chord is tonic or dominant.
2. Determine which voice (SATB) of the chord is missing, and add it, in open or close position, as specified. (*Hint*: To help identify the missing voice, examine stem directions.)
3. Rewrite each example next to the original presentation using the opposite spacing and a different soprano voice; that is, close position becomes open position, and vice versa.

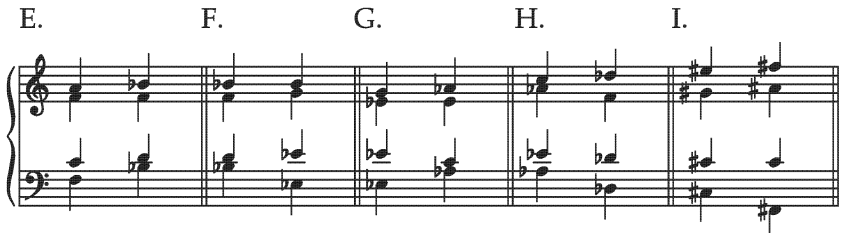
SOLVED/APP 6



5.3 Review of Analysis and Voice Leading

1. Identify the key and label the harmonies with roman numerals.
2. Identify cadence types (PAC, IAC, or HC).
3. Label the soprano pitches using scale degree numbers.
4. For parallel motions between voice pairs, label the generic interval.

SOLVED/APP 6



TERMS AND CONCEPTS IN ACTION

5.4

Define and then compare and contrast the following terms:

1. range versus ambitus versus tessitura
2. parallel versus hidden intervals
3. perfect authentic cadence, imperfect authentic cadence, half cadence, contrapuntal cadence

5.5

Using the corresponding number, label one instance of each of the following terms or concepts in the following score.

1. close position
2. open position
3. common tone
4. contrapuntal framework
5. doubling
6. harmonic rhythm
7. hidden (or direct) fifths or octaves
8. parallel fifths
9. parallel octaves
10. Picardy third
11. tendency tone
12. voice
13. voice crossing
14. voice exchange
15. voice overlap
16. illegal doubling
17. excessive space between voices

CHAPTER 6

The Impact of Melody, Rhythm, and Meter on Harmony; Introduction to V^7; and Harmonizing Florid Melodies

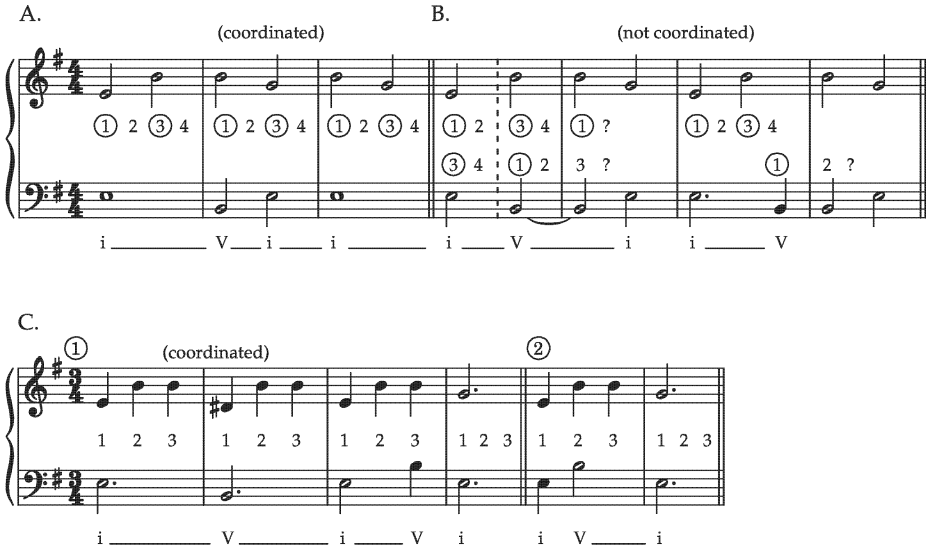
In this chapter we explore three topics. The first revisits tonal hierarchy, this time through the lens of harmony. The chapter explores how the melodic, contrapuntal, rhythmic, and metric domains determine how we perceive harmonic flow and its impact on harmonic rhythm. The second topic, an introduction to chordal dissonance, details the ramifications of adding a seventh to the dominant triad. Finally, we learn to identify implied harmonies within a melody in order to create a fuller texture.

The Interaction of Harmony, Melody, Meter, and Rhythm: Embellishment and Reduction

Tonal music—a composite of harmony, melody, rhythm, meter, dynamics, and register—is crafted through a series of checks and balances. The bass (or harmonic foundation) often contains large leaps that are a result of the alternation of root-position tonic and dominant harmonies. These leaps are, in a sense, compensated for and balanced by a soprano line that moves primarily by step. Meter and rhythm help to coordinate all this activity. Not only is harmony governed by the ebb and flow of weak (unaccented) and strong (accented) beats, but the counterpoint between bass and soprano is also dependent on meter and rhythm.

Harmonic rhythm is intimately tied to and helps reinforce the meter. Sometimes you will need to make a choice between using one chord or another. For example, when deciding whether to harmonize $\hat{5}$ with tonic or dominant harmony, you must consider its metric placement, since a change to a new harmony creates an accent, and such harmonic accents usually align with metric accents. In general, it is advisable to change chords when moving from a weak to a strong beat (see Example 6.1A). Avoid a syncopated harmonic rhythm (Example 6.1B).

EXAMPLE 6.1 Coordination of Harmonic Rhythm with Rhythm and Meter



In $\frac{3}{4}$ you will often encounter a harmonic change on beat 3, creating the familiar accentual pattern of long–short, which helps to underscore the triple meter (Example 6.1C1). One exception to avoiding a syncopated harmonic rhythm occurs in $\frac{3}{4}$ at a cadence, when the dominant enters on beat 2 and is sustained through beat 3 (Example 6.1C2).

Another aspect of pitch organization that is dependent on meter and rhythm is the outer-voice framework arising from the combination of bass and soprano voices. This contrapuntal relationship is quite important: For every change of harmony (bass note), there is a single, primary soprano note. We now place the outer-voice framework in a rhythmical-metrical context, one that is fleshed out with complete chords and textural embellishments. Such embellishments are much like the leaves on a tree, which can decorate but not obscure the structural branches on which their existence depends.

Embellishment

To **embellish** a basic outer-voice structure, begin with a single implied harmony, the tonic, which supports $\hat{1}$ (Example 6.2A). We can elaborate this soprano pitch with embellishing tones to create a melody of sorts; one dissonant neighbor and two passing tones appear in Example 6.2B. The hierarchy is clear, since not only are the embellishing tones dissonant, but they also fall on unaccented beats or parts of beats. We can also stabilize these embellishing tones by harmonizing them with chords that render them consonant. Since the neighbor (B) and passing tones (D) are members of the dominant harmony, simply place the root of the dominant, G, in the bass (Example 6.2C).

EXAMPLE 6.2 Stages of Embellishment

While it's true that each soprano pitch is now consonantly harmonized, you can still distinguish aurally between the more important melody notes that are members of the tonic triad (the soprano C and E) and the subordinate embellishing tones (the neighbor [B] and passing tones [D]). Both the contour of the soprano line and the weak metric and rhythmic placement of the dominant harmony strongly prioritize the tonic. Indeed, these less important melodic and harmonic events let you hear the underlying tonic harmony. Specifically, the neighbor B extends the flanking C, and the passing Ds provide a bridge that connects the C and the E. The D^5 in m. 1 is perhaps less important than the D^5 in m. 2 because the second D^5 is a member of the perfect authentic cadence.

To illustrate this hierarchy in harmonic analysis, we label every chord and then consider their function within the context by adding a *second-level analysis* (with roman numerals) that reveals our interpretation of the underlying harmonic progression. (See Example 6.2D.)

The first five chords embellish tonic, and the last two chords are part of a PAC. Notice the absence of the P over the final soprano D, which indicates that this pitch and the accompanying harmony are interpreted as very important, since the V chord is part of the structural authentic cadence and the soprano D is not just another harmonized embellishing tone.

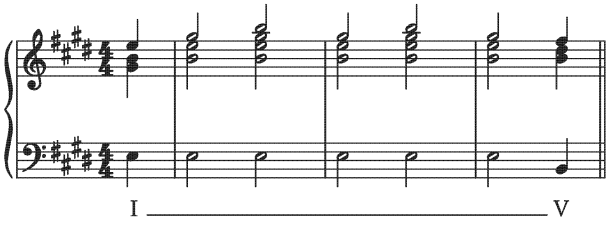
You can repeat the procedure of adding embellishing tones and then harmonizing them; done enough times, we could generate an actual piece of music. For now, we merely embellish Example 6.2D twice more with embellishing tones to show that neighbors, passing tones, chordal leaps, and one or two other embellishing tones can be used to create examples in contrasting styles. In Example 6.2E, notice how the E^5 on beat 2 in m. 2 delays the arrival of the D^5 by a sixteenth note just as the D^5 on beat 3 displaces the C^5 by a whole beat. Understanding of the harmony once again helps us to interpret melodic features.

Although Example 6.2F preserves both the harmony and the outer-voice counterpoint of the original model, the surface of the music in this example is even more altered than in Example 6.2E. Cast in the parallel mode of C minor, with each chord change occupying an entire measure rather than a single beat, Example 6.2F is in a freer texture. The arpeggiated figuration creates a seamless flurry of sixteenth notes that is punctuated by the sparse upper-neighbor figure on the fourth beat of mm. 1–3.

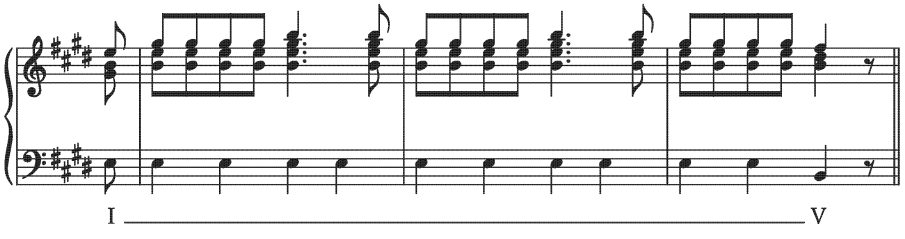
Example 6.2 demonstrates how a soprano voice can help distinguish structural from ornamental harmonies, and how a basic two-voice structure might be ornamented—a process called **embellishment**. Embellishment takes many forms, including the simple process of sustaining and revoicing a tonic harmony that leads to a dominant chord (Example 6.3A). By adding a recurring eighth-note rhythmic figure we energize the texture (Example 6.3B). Finally, with a few passing tones, we have the opening of "Spring" from Vivaldi's *Seasons*.

EXAMPLE 6.3 Building a Piece

A. Tonic Harmony Revoiced



B. Eighth-Note Figures Added



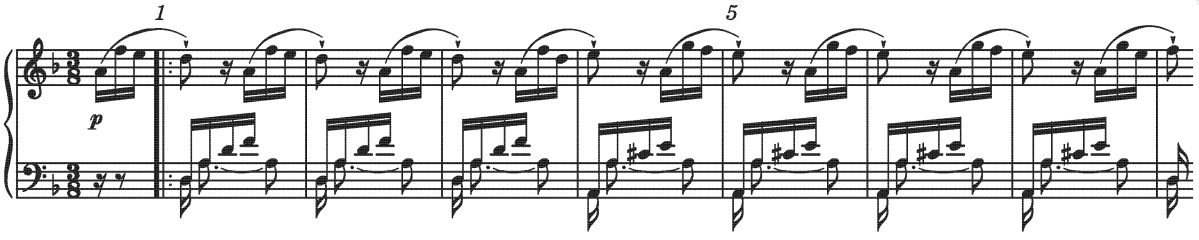
C. Passing Tones Added: Vivaldi, *Seasons*, "Spring"

Reduction

Reduction reverses the process by using the harmony as a means of distinguishing structural tones from embellishing tones. This process reveals the underlying two-voice contrapuntal framework of a musical passage.

Listen to Example 6.4. On the downbeat of m. 8, the musical unit sounds relatively complete, as if closure had been achieved. There are two reasons why we hear a strong arrival in m. 8. First, the eight measures can be subdivided into two symmetrical harmonic and metrical units of four measures each. Given the change to dominant harmony in m. 4 (following three measures of tonic), we expect a similar change to occur in the corresponding spot four measures later, and indeed it does. At the end of m. 4, the addition of the high G in the melody creates a V^7 chord that destabilizes the dominant and sends it forward into the next musical unit, which reverses the harmonic process of mm. 1–4: Three measures of dominant seventh harmony lead to one measure of tonic. The return to tonic in m. 8 is what creates the sense of resolution.

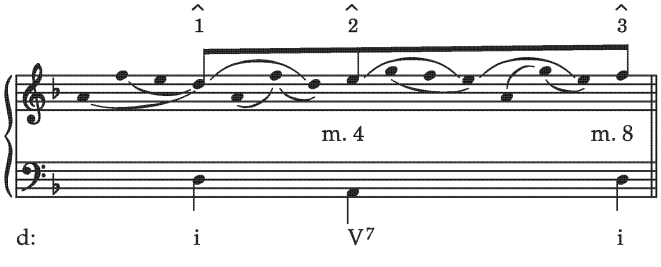
EXAMPLE 6.4 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D minor, "Tempest," op. 31, no. 2, *Allegretto*



Second, the relationship between the melody and the harmony enhances the effect of closure. The opening D^5 ($\hat{1}$) over tonic harmony repeats on the downbeats of mm. 2 and 3, after which E^5 ($\hat{2}$) arrives over the dominant on the downbeat of m. 4. Thereafter, E^5 is similarly emphasized over a repeated V^7 chord until it ascends to F^5 ($\hat{3}$), coinciding with the return of tonic harmony in m. 8. Thus, a sense of harmonic arrival is balanced by the forward motion of the melody: Tonic harmony returns at the moment the melody dramatically attains $\hat{3}$.

Example 6.5 is a reduction of Example 6.4. Literal repetitions of patterns are not shown. Ties illustrate restatements of important pitches, such as the two Ds and the three Es. Slurs convey the dependency of less important melodic pitches on the important ones; slurred notes arise from embellishing tones, such as neighbor tones, passing tones, and chordal leaps. Notice that the pitches aligned with a slur's beginning and ending points are members of the underlying harmony: The notes D, F, and A begin and end slurs over the tonic harmony, and the notes A, E, and G begin and end slurs over the V^7 harmony.

EXAMPLE 6.5 Structural Analysis of Beethoven, *Allegretto*



In Example 6.5, we can view the E in mm. 4–7 (at a deeper melodic level) as a large-scale passing tone that connects D and F. This motion is represented by the beamed pitches, which are supported by the bass voice as in previous chapters. This large-scale melodic ascent ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$) is reflected in reverse order within the right hand's sixteenth-note figuration in Example 6.4.

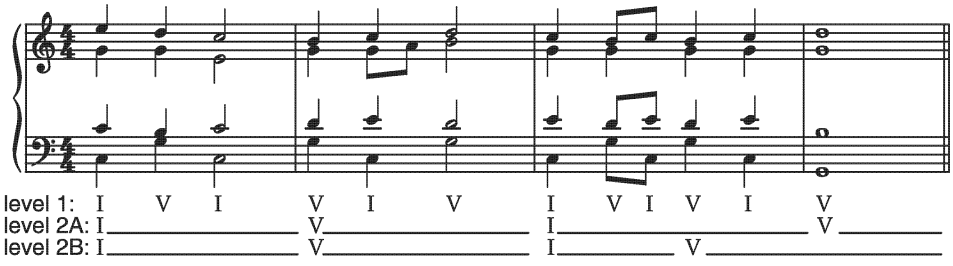
Supermetrical figurations are embellishing figures (like the large-scale melodic passing figure D–E–F) whose durations extend beyond the value of the beat. These figurations are always made consonant by the supporting bass notes, as seen in the harmonization of the passing figure with the bass D–A–D, creating the overarching i–V^7–i progression.

Second-Level Analysis

Understanding the important roles played by meter, rhythm, melody, harmony, and their contrapuntal combinations provides a standard by which to measure the relative strength and weakness of certain chords. Even when they appear in root position, shown in previous examples, we can distinguish between structural and ornamental harmonies.

Example 6.6A reminds us to postpone interpretive decisions until carefully considering the musical context.

EXAMPLE 6.6A Two Levels of I–V Harmonies



Tonic harmony usually falls on strong beats within a measure. But is this true for Example 6.6A? Tonic and dominant harmonies alternate on two levels: on the downbeat of each measure (level 2A) and within each measure (level 1). Tonic does indeed control m. 1 since the dominant appears on a weak beat and is outnumbered by the tonic harmonies that flank it on beats 1 and 3. The D^5 is a harmonized passing tone that connects E^5 and C^5. Since D occupies one metrical unit (in this context one beat), we call it a **metrical passing tone. Metrical figurations** are any figurations whose duration occupies one metrical unit. Note that for an embellishing tone to occupy an entire metrical unit, it must be rendered consonant. Thus, metrical figurations are usually harmonized.

The relationship between the tonic and the dominant is reversed in m. 2: Tonic harmony helps to extend the dominant, with C^5 as a harmonized passing tone between B^4 and D^5. And given its identical function as the passing tone D^5 in m. 1, it too can be labeled as a metrical figuration (again, harmonized). The eighth-note passing tone A^4 is called a **submetrical passing tone**. **Submetrical figurations** are any figurations whose duration occupies less than one metrical unit. That A^4 is not harmonized is common for submetrical figurations, although submetrical figurations may be harmonized.

Although m. 3 begins and ends with tonic harmony, it differs in two important ways from the previous measures. First, rather than a single harmony between the flanking chords, as in mm. 1 and 2, there are three root-position harmonies between the two flanking tonics. Second, accented beat 3 is occupied by a different harmony from that on the downbeat of the measure. For the first time, deciding which harmony is most important within the measure is more difficult.

For example, if metrically accented harmonies are more important than unaccented harmonies, then we can assume that the dominant on beat 3 is more important than the tonic on beat 4. This would mean that the tonic on

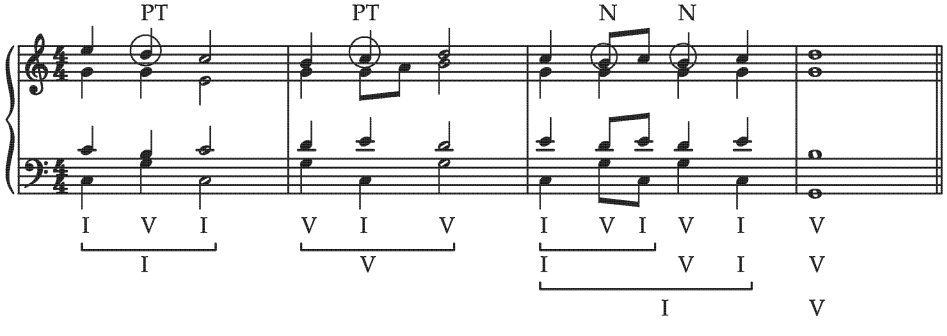
beat 4 (and the C^5 in the soprano) becomes a passing tone between the dominant chord on beat 3 and the dominant arrival in the next measure. This interpretation is reflected in level 2B.

If, however, we view the two tonic harmonies that begin and end the measure as important, then the dominant on beat 3 extends the tonic by harmonizing the lower neighbor B^4, in spite of the neighbor note's metric prominence. This interpretation is shown in level 2A.

These are two very different, yet plausible, readings that carry important performance implications. For example, the level 2A interpretation takes into account patterns established in the preceding measures. Since a single harmony controlled each of the preceding two measures, and a pattern of alternation of harmonies was established (i.e., m. 1 begins on I, m. 2 begins on V, and m. 3 begins on I), the listener may expect a *continuation* of the pattern. Thus, a performer would interpret it the same way as mm. 1 and 2, with the tonic controlling m. 3. Since this interpretation postpones the dominant arrival until m. 4, the performer will shape m. 3 accordingly and play down the importance of the dominant chords. Alternatively, the interpretation in level 2B, with the greater rhythmic complexity of m. 3, *breaks* the pattern of the repeated rhythm in mm. 1–2. Given that surface changes create an accent, the listener is drawn to this moment, and the performer would highlight the dominant's control that would begin midway through m. 3.

Consider the harmonic changes on the eighth notes in m. 3. We will adopt interpretation 2A (in which tonic governs all of m. 3) because of the strength of pattern continuation over expected change. The soprano's B would be labeled a neighbor; given its strong metric placement, we call it an **accented neighbor note**. Further, since the neighbor is made consonant by the V, it is a **harmonized accented neighbor note**, analogous to the harmonized passing tones discussed earlier. Finally, given its short duration, this accented neighbor note is a submetrical embellishing tone.

EXAMPLE 6.6B Second-Level Analysis of Example 6.6A

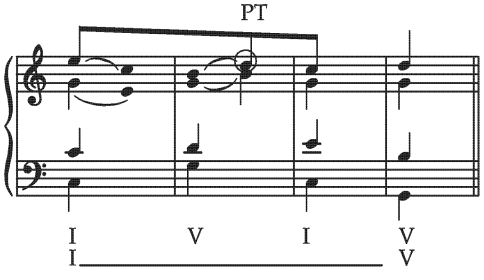


Example 6.6B summarizes our analysis so far. Notice two things. First, the soprano pitches in each measure, which are subordinate to more structural pitches, are now circled and labeled as harmonized passing tones (PT) and harmonized neighbor tones (N). Second, each chord is labeled with a roman numeral, and the bracketed groups indicate the larger harmonic units with the controlling harmonies labeled beneath the brackets.

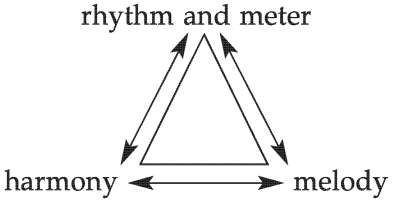
Multileveled analysis, a reduction that uses counterpoint and harmony to distinguish structural harmonies and melodies from embellishments, is called second-level analysis. Second-level analysis is also referred to as **interpretive analysis**, given that the deeper you understand the function of counterpoint and harmony within a passage, the more it becomes a matter of interpretation. Finally, depending on the number of musical events, there may be more than one level of reduction required. For example, in m. 3 the submetrical I–V–I harmonies that occur on beats 1 and 2 require their own interpretation before it is possible to analyze the entire measure.

If we consider the possibility of a melodically fluent large-scale soprano controlling the entire passage, we can view the E^5 in m. 1 moving to the C^5 in m. 3 through a large-scale supermetrical passing tone in m. 2 (see Example 6.6C). Finally, our attention will be naturally drawn to the opening E. Given the extension of the tonic over mm. 1–3 and the accent created by the change to the dominant harmony on the half cadence in m. 4, our ears might connect the opening E to the final D in the melody. Such deep-level melodic fluency is a feature of musical unity, one that composers are well aware of.

EXAMPLE 6.6C Structural Analysis of Example 6.6A



As we have just seen, the harmonies in a progression are not always of equal structural value. There are many musical contexts in which I and V, chords that are usually viewed as structural, may become subordinate to each other and to other harmonies. The key to hearing and analyzing music is being sensitive to the musical context, especially the meter, the rhythm, and the counterpoint between bass and soprano. Think of analysis as a musical triangle; each side is intimately connected with and dependent on the other two sides.



Taking these elements into account makes analysis a creative enterprise and informs musical interpretations and therefore performance.

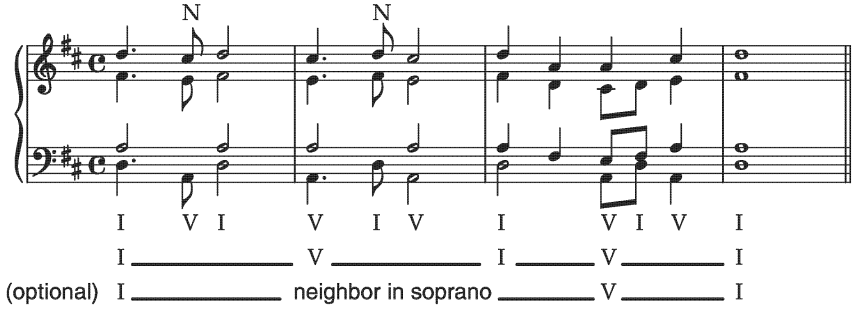
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

6.1

Provide a two-level roman numeral analysis of each of the following examples. Only root-position I and V are used. In order to derive your second-level analysis, in which either tonic or dominant controls one or more measures, you will need to consider metric placement (i.e., whether or not the harmony occurs on a metrically stressed beat) and the soprano (whether the chord provides consonant support of a soprano passing tone or neighbor tone).

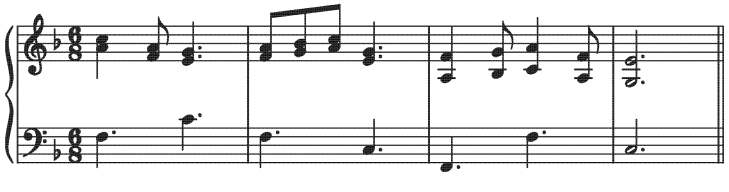
Sample solution:



SOLVED/APP 6

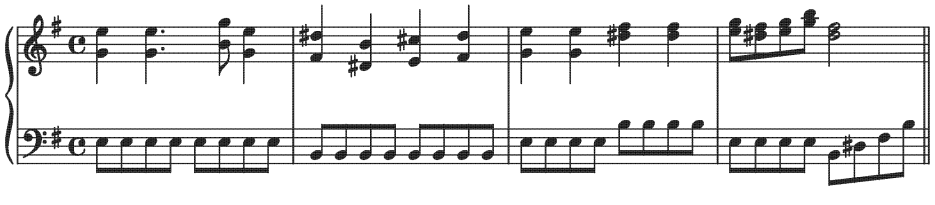
A.

B.



SOLVED/APP 6

C.



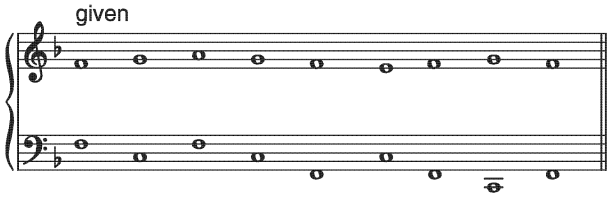
COMPOSITION

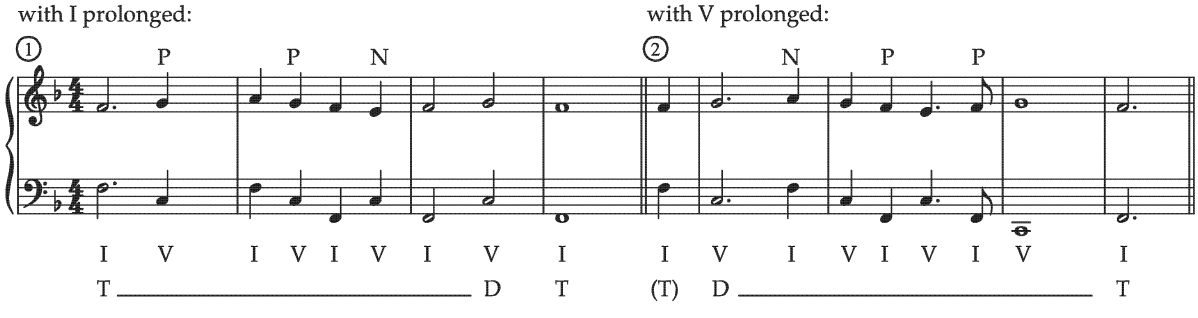
6.2

The relative importance of individual harmonies depends on their function within the musical context. For example, metrically stressed, durationally extended, and contrapuntally strong chords are more important than the surrounding chords, whose subordinate role is to extend the more important chords' control. Given next are short unmetered two-voice counterpoints without rhythm. You are to:

1. Select a meter for each counterpoint.
2. Write two different rhythmic settings using the selected meter so that one setting places tonic in control (with dominant as subordinate harmony), and the second setting places dominant in control (and tonic as subordinate harmony). See the following sample solution.

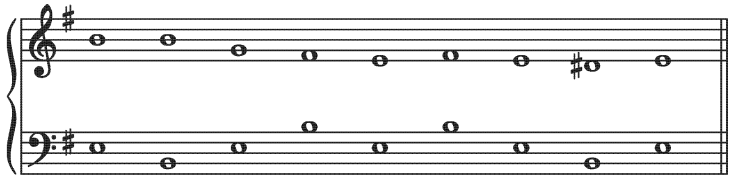
Sample solution:



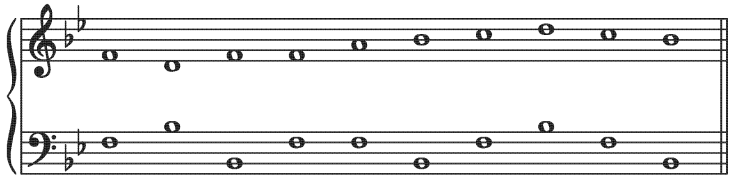


SOLVED/APP 6

A.



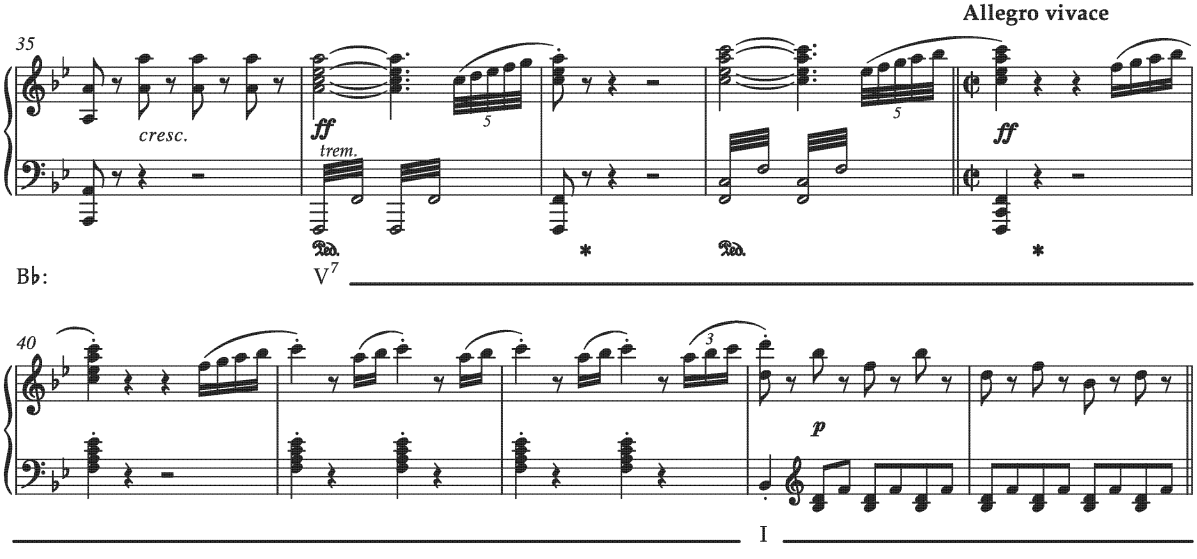
B.



The Dominant Seventh and Chordal Dissonance

The seventh is a dissonant interval, and chords that contain the seventh are dissonant. Just as dissonant intervals resolve to consonant ones, dissonant chords seek resolution to consonant chords. Dissonant chords create tension and heighten expectation in tonal music. In the opening measures of Beethoven's Fourth Symphony, the repeated V^7 chord that links the end of the slow introduction with the following *Allegro vivace* provides a powerful springboard to the eventual tonic that arrives seven measures later (see Example 6.7).

EXAMPLE 6.7 Beethoven, Symphony no. 4 in B♭ major, op. 60, *Adagio/Allegro vivace*

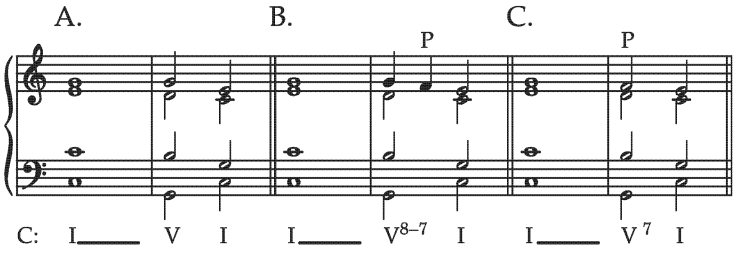


Derivation and New Melodic Possibilities

Chordal sevenths can participate in passing motions.

- Example 6.8A is a basic model, showing a I–V–I progression with G^4–G^4–E^4 ($\hat{5}$–$\hat{5}$–$\hat{3}$) in the soprano voice.
- Example 6.8B is nearly identical, except that the skip from G^4 to E^4 in the soprano voice has been filled in by a passing F^4. Notice how the "8–7" in the figured bass acknowledges the voice leading of the soprano voice over the bass G: The octave G moves to a passing seventh. Notice further that the F^4 is introduced inconspicuously on a weak beat, in the same way we wrote passing dissonance in second-species counterpoint.
- In Example 6.8C the seventh now enters the harmonic domain and appears on a strong beat. Melodic motion remains intact; F^4 still passes between G^4 and E^4, but now it is accented.

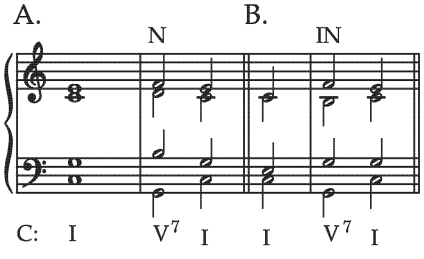
EXAMPLE 6.8 Passing Seventh



Chordal sevenths can also participate in neighboring motions.

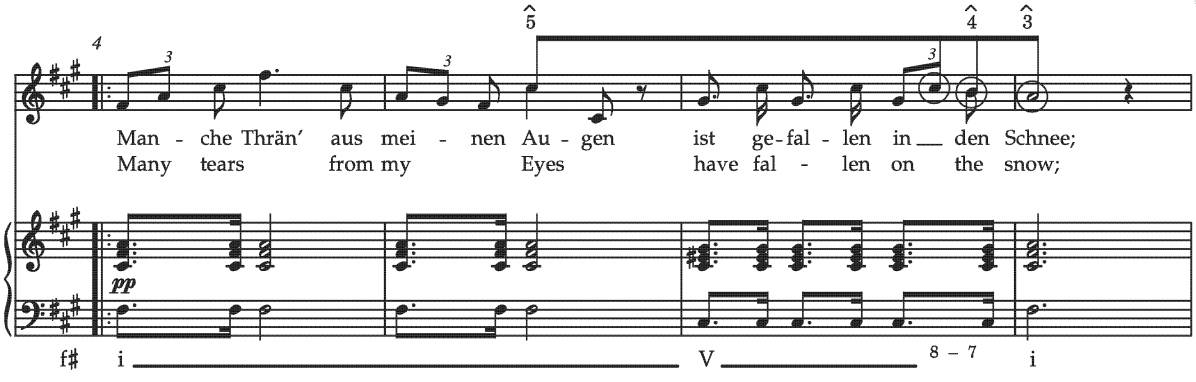
- In Example 6.9A, F—the seventh of the V^7 chord—functions as a neighbor to the surrounding Es.
- The treatment of the chordal seventh in Example 6.9B significantly differs from the preceding examples: F is not preceded by step. Rather, it enters by leap (from C) and then falls by step, creating an incomplete-neighbor motion in the soprano. For V^7, the approach to the dissonance (its **preparation**) can occur in different ways. But *there is only one way to leave the dissonant seventh (its **resolution**): by descending step.* Preparation by step from above is the preferred method to use. The unprepared entrance of the seventh in Example 6.9B is not very common; avoid it.

EXAMPLE 6.9 Neighboring Seventh



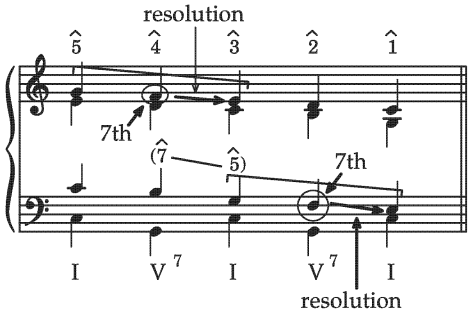
Schubert's song "Wasserfluth," from the song cycle *Winterreise* (Example 6.10), demonstrates how V^7 works within a musical context. Note how the tonic controls mm. 4–5, and the vocal line mostly arpeggiates the F♯-minor triad. Dominant harmony enters in m. 6 and returns to the tonic in m. 7. In m. 6, $C♯^5$ in the vocal line descends by step to B^4, the dissonant seventh, which resolves appropriately to A^4. Thus, B^4 functions as a passing tone that connects $C♯^5$ and A^4. Once again, we label the figured bass "8–7" to show the voice leading, with respect to the bass C♯, of the passing seventh from the octave. The dash connecting the two numbers means that this voice leading takes place *in a single voice*. Note also how the V^7 chord can participate in an authentic cadence (here, the IAC in mm. 6–7); the addition of a seventh only enhances the dominant *triad's* tendency to resolve to tonic. *Therefore, always use the dominant triad (and not V^7) at a half cadence.*

EXAMPLE 6.10 Schubert, "Wasserfluth" ("Torrent"), *Winterreise*, op. 89, no. 6, D. 911



With the addition of the V^7 chord to our harmonic palette, we add $\hat{4}$ to the soprano scale degrees that can be harmonized by the chords discussed thus far: $\hat{1}$, $\hat{2}$, $\hat{3}$, $\hat{4}$, $\hat{5}$, $\hat{7}$. Using $\hat{4}$ opens up the possibility of harmonizing a complete descending-fifth soprano melody from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{1}$ (Example 6.11). The passing motion from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{3}$ in the soprano is imitated in the tenor over the last three chords.

EXAMPLE 6.11 Harmonizing the Falling Fifth: $\hat{5}$–$\hat{1}$

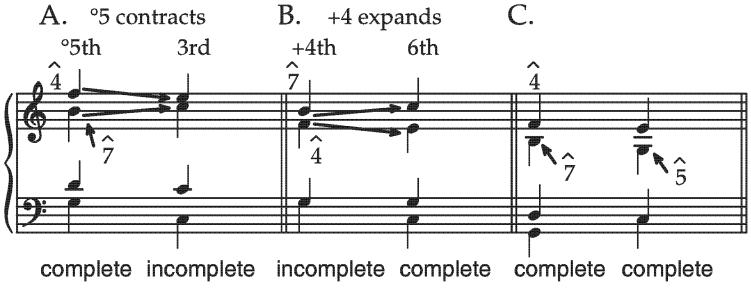


You can add the seventh to V and create V^7 chord, but you can't go from V^7 to V; to do so would contradict the natural drive to the tonic chord when the tritone is created.

Part Writing with the Dominant Seventh Chord

Generally, connect the upper voices of V^7 to the preceding chord (for now, I) by step. Then resolve the chord's tendency tones: the chordal seventh ($\hat{4}$) *always descends* in any voice (as a *dissonant* tendency tone there are no other options), and the leading tone ($\hat{7}$) *always ascends* when it occurs in the soprano. These two members of the V^7 chord create a tritone, either a diminished fifth or an augmented fourth, which resolves to I by moving in contrary motion: The diminished fifth contracts to a third, and the augmented fourth expands to a sixth. Tritones and their resolutions occur in the upper voices of Example 6.12.

EXAMPLE 6.12 Resolving the V^7 chord



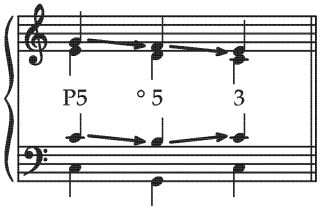
Incomplete chords occur frequently in V^7–I progressions, often due to the resolution of tendency tones. *The only member of a triad or a seventh chord that you can omit is the fifth.* In Example 6.12A, the V^7 chord is complete, and the tonic triad is incomplete. The tendency tones in the soprano and alto resolve as expected, and the bass moves from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{1}$. The tenor cannot create a complete C-major triad; to do so would require a jump to G, which would cause consecutive perfect fifths in the bass and tenor. Instead, the tenor moves by step and triples the root, omitting the fifth of the C-major triad.

In Example 6.12B, it is the I chord that is complete. The soprano and alto again have the two tendency tones of the V^7 chord, and the tenor cannot complete the V^7 chord with a D. If the tenor were to take the D in the first chord, parallel fifths would occur between the bass and tenor. Instead, the tenor doubles the root of the V^7 chord and omits the fifth. Generally, *a complete V^7 resolves to an incomplete tonic, and an incomplete V^7 resolves to a complete tonic.*

There is one way to have both the V^7 and I chords complete. When the leading tone is in an inner voice, it can move down to $\hat{5}$ instead of resolving to $\hat{1}$ (Example 6.12C). This exception to the rule that the leading tone must ascend by step to $\hat{1}$ is permissible because the leading tone occurs in an inner voice, where its skip to $\hat{5}$ is less audible than it would be had it occurred in an outer voice.

The final part-writing issue concerns I moving to V^7, where the perfect fifth in I moves to the diminished fifth in V^7 (see Example 6.13). These fifths are not parallel perfect fifths, but rather **unequal fifths**, and *they are permissible as long as the diminished fifth resolves to a third.* Note that the reverse—a diminished fifth moving to a perfect fifth—is generally not permitted, since it contradicts the natural tendency of the diminished fifth to resolve to a third.

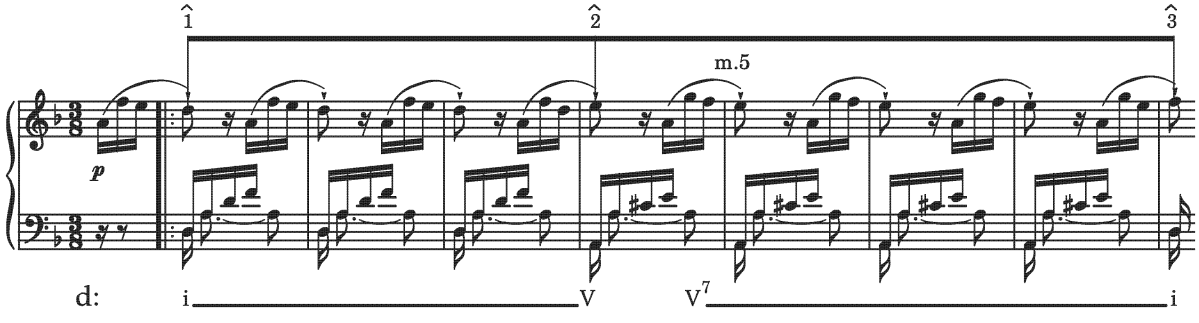
EXAMPLE 6.13 Approaching the V^7 Chord



An Analytical Interlude

Beethoven's "Tempest" Sonata provides an analytical model for the accompanying exercises (Example 6.14). Listen for the context in which the dominant seventh chord appears, and how it intensifies the musical drama and enriches the voice leading.

EXAMPLE 6.14 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D minor, "Tempest," op. 31, no. 2, *Allegretto*



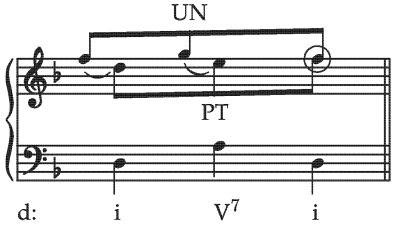
As we saw in Examples 6.4 and 6.5, this excerpt is built out of two four-measure units; the second unit mirrors the first in its 3 + 1 harmonic rhythm:

mm. 1–4:	mm. 5–8:
i–i–i–V	V^7–V^7–V^7–i

The dominant seventh chord that appears in the upbeat to m. 5 (G^5 in the soprano) intensifies the sound of the dominant triad in the beginning of m. 4. The harmonic motion is i–V–|V^7–i. The V provides the musical glue that binds the two units to create a single phrase.

Above the staff of Example 6.14, the long beam connects the three pitches of the large-scale melodic ascent in the right hand from D^5 via E^5 to F^5. The reverse of this melodic line (F^5–E^5–D^5) occurs in sixteenth notes in mm. 1–3 and is answered by another filled-in third, G^5–E^5, in each of mm. 4–7. The imperfect authentic cadence in m. 8 spotlights the all-important arrival on the soprano's F^5, because this pitch is a point of arrival that is simultaneously secured from both above and below. E^5 rises to F^5, and G^5—the crucial seventh of the dominant harmony—falls to F^5. See the summary in Example 6.15.

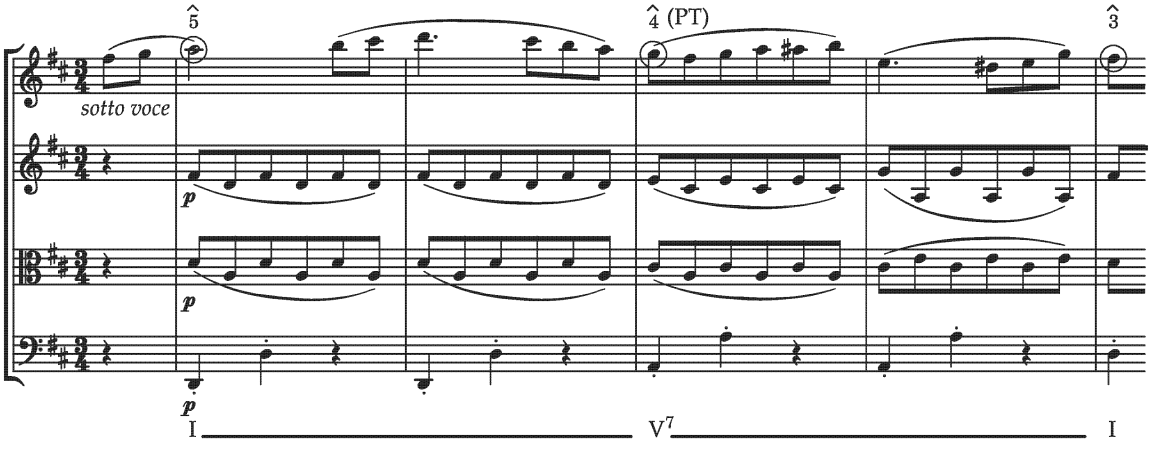
EXAMPLE 6.15 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D minor (reduction)



Notice that the seventh, G, does not resolve to the sixteenth-note F that immediately follows it in each of mm. 4–6. The harmony at this point is still dominant and the F is a passing tone between G and E. Resolution of G occurs only in m. 8, where the F has the support of the underlying tonic

harmony. Given that the basic soprano motion of the example is an ascent from D^5 to F^5, we view both E and G as supermetrical embellishing tones. A second example of supermetrical passing motion is given in Example 6.16.

EXAMPLE 6.16 Mozart, *Eine Kleine Nachtmusik*, K. 525, Trio



It is generally unproblematic to identify submetrical and metrical figurations. Supermetrical figurations can be more difficult to perceive. If, however, you locate the entrance and resolution of the seventh (recall that the resolution always requires a chord change), then you should be able to trace the deeper-level passing or neighbor motion.

Harmonizing Florid Melodies

Up to this point we have harmonized melodies in chorale style, a procedure in which every soprano pitch is harmonized. Such settings resulted in very fast harmonic rhythm, with four or even more chord changes within each measure. However, composers regularly slow the harmonic rhythm to only one chord change in each measure or even in a group of measures. The listener hears the single underlying harmony that controls the span (whether it be part of a measure, an entire measure, or a group of measures) and the underlying pattern of harmonic changes expressed in the harmonic rhythm.

The vast body of folk songs is an important repertoire that relies on a few basic harmonies—such as I, V and V^7—to accompany countless melodies. Below is a simple method to harmonize these tunes.

Example 6.17 presents the popular tune "Simple Gifts." Begin by singing the tune, noting the key and where cadences (and thus phrase endings) occur. The key is F major, and melodic repetitions, sustained pitches, and particularly the underlying four-measure "feel" of musical units reveal four-measures phrases, with cadences in mm. 4, 8, 12, and 16.

We can determine the type of cadences as follows: Measure 4 ends on C ($\hat{5}$), and while this could be harmonized with a I chord, such a weak authentic cadence would not be as common as a half cadence, implying V. In addition, m. 4 arpeggiates a V chord and there is no sign of F anywhere. The choice of dominant harmony is supported by the beginning of the next phrase (m. 5), which—given that it starts on F—strongly implies a I chord.

An authentic cadence is implied in m. 8, given the strong repeated Fs. Measure 12 again suggests a HC and m. 16 an authentic.

EXAMPLE 6.17 "Simple Gifts"

Notice the pattern of cadences:

mm. 1–4	mm. 5–8	mm. 9–12	mm. 13–16
HC	PAC	HC	PAC

Finish by identifying the harmonies that begin each phrase and then look for an underlying harmonic rhythm. In order to determine the controlling harmony for a span, look at accented pitches, which will be stressed in a variety of ways, including metrically, durationally, and by repetition. Be aware which scale degrees can be harmonized with which harmony: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{5}$ implies a I chord, and $\hat{5}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{2}$ and often $\hat{4}$ imply a V(^{7}) harmony. The greater the number of stressed scale degrees that belong to a single harmony, the greater the chance that that harmony will work best for that span.

The accented pitches in m. 1 are F (on beat 1) and A (on beat 3), which imply a tonic harmony. Because this is the first full measure of the piece, we can almost assume it will be tonic. Further, the upbeat eighth notes (on C) imply a dominant harmony, and chords generally change from a weak beat to a strong beat. Using this method, the following summarizes the harmonies that begin and end phrases:

Phrase 1:	Phrase 2:	Phrase 3:	Phrase 4:
mm. 1–2–3–4	mm. 5–6–7–8	mm. 9–10–11–12	mm. 13–14–15–16
I HC	I PAC	I HC	I PAC

Examining melodic patterns and starting to feel the implied harmonic changes, shows that the harmonies change no more often than once per measure. Phrase 1 contains harmonic changes every two measures.

Phrases 2 and 4 share the same harmonic rhythm: two measures of tonic, one measure of dominant, and cadence on tonic. Phrase 3 has three measures of tonic and one measure of dominant.

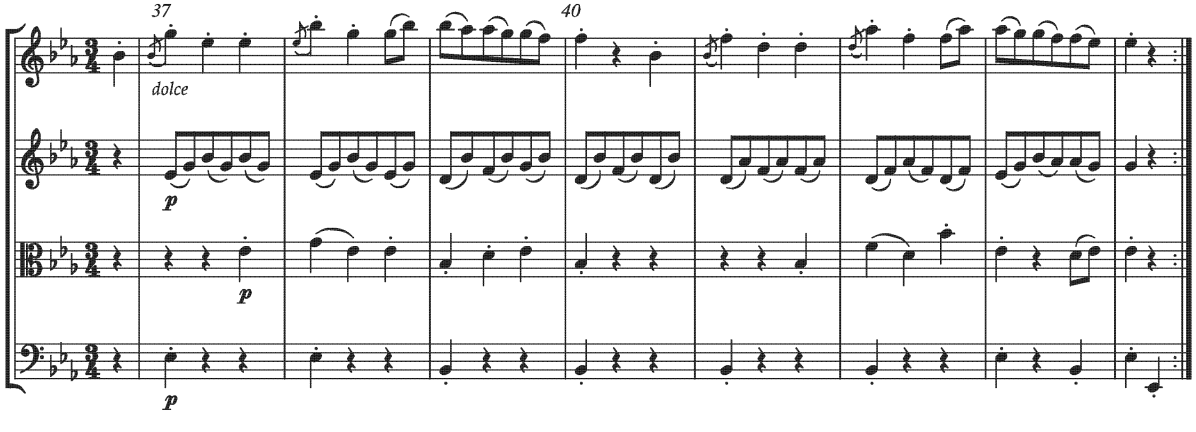
Phrase 1:	Phrase 2:	Phrase 3:	Phrase 4:
mm. 1–2—3–4	5–6–7–8	9–10–11–12	13–14–15–16
I V	I V I	I V	I V I

Of course, the folk song is but one type of music that depends on a relatively slow rate of harmonic change and the use of only a few basic chords (see Example 6.18). This analytical method shows that there are two phrases, the first of which implies a HC and the second a PAC. The remaining harmonies are clearly implied, given that most of the melody is composed of chordal leaps. Thus, mm. 37–38 are tonic harmony, mm. 39–40 are dominant, and m. 40 is the HC. Measures 41–42 are dominant, with m. 41 adding A♭, the seventh of the chord. Measure 42 begins with A♭, implying a V^7 chord, and the rest of the measure could certainly be harmonized all by V^7 (the embellishing tones are strongly accented and therefore obscure the implied harmony).

EXAMPLE 6.18 Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 76, no. 6, Trio (melody only)

Examine how Haydn *actually* harmonizes these eight measures, with special attention to m. 43 (Example 6.19). Haydn has indeed followed the hints in the melody and harmonized at least most of it the way we might have imagined. However, he fools us a bit in m. 43: He begins the measure with a I chord, treating the downbeat A♭ as a dissonant embellishing tone. Only at the very end of the measure does he move to the expected V chord.

EXAMPLE 6.19 Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 76, no. 6, Trio



Summary

WORKBOOK 1
6.1–6.5

The central point of this chapter has been to show that tonal music is hierarchical. That is, certain events are more important than others. And what is remarkable is that these events need not be literally sounding in order for them to control a musical passage. For example, an underlying tonic may guide a tonal progression even if the actual tonic triad is not present. This notion of hierarchy can trickle down so that chords that help to extend a harmony may themselves be more important than surrounding harmonies, a process that can continue to the surface of the music. How composers extend more important contrapuntal and harmonic events with those that are less important is one thread we will follow in Chapters 7 and 8.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

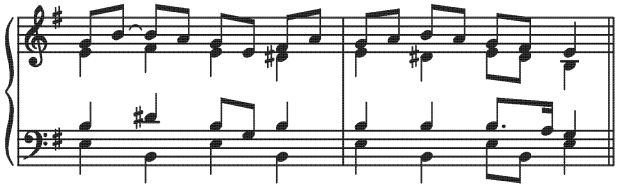
ANALYSIS

6.3

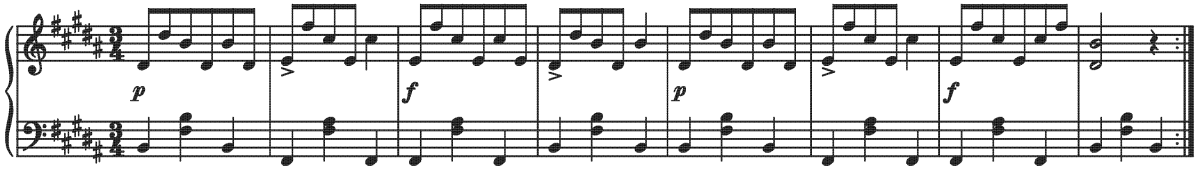
The following excerpts demonstrate I, V, and V^7.

1. Listen to each example and complete a two-level harmonic analysis. Be sure you are able to distinguish between V and V^7.
2. As you analyze each example, note if the sevenths are prepared (not a requirement) as a common tone or by step. Draw a line from each seventh to its resolution.

A.

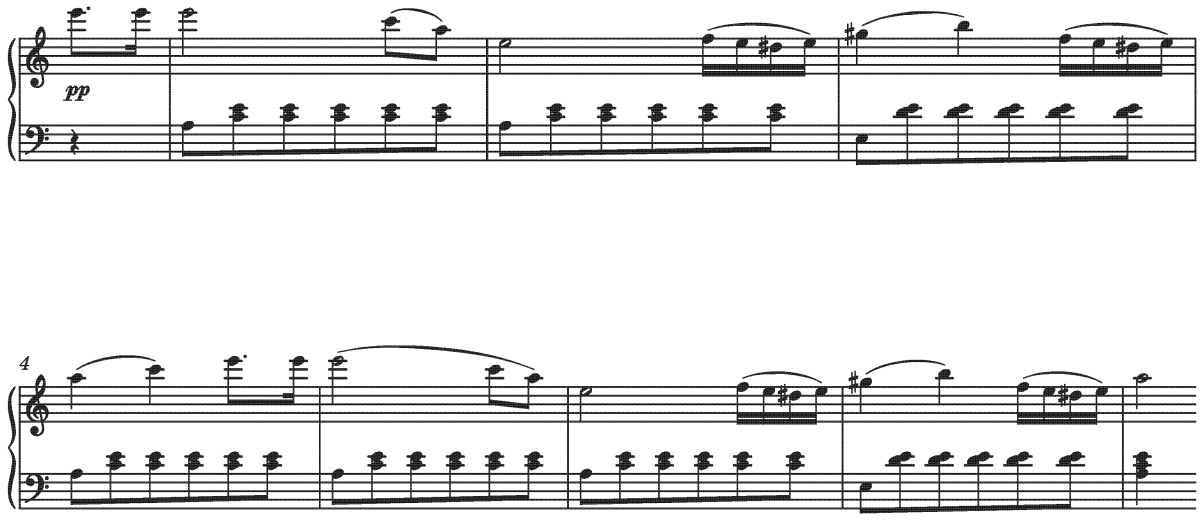


B. Schubert, Waltz in B major, from *36 Originaltänze*, op. 9, no. 24, D. 365



C. Schubert, Minuet in A minor, from *20 Minuets*, D. 41, no. 8, Trio

The dissonant notes in the sixteenth-note figure found in mm. 2, 3, 6, and 7 are upper and lower neighbors around the chord tones. Together they constitute a double-neighbor figure.

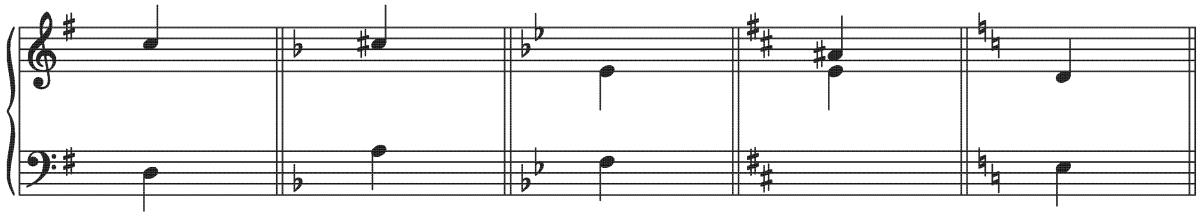


D. Mozart, Cosi fan tutte, act 1, scene 5

6.4 Three-Voice Writing

Determine the key for each example, then add a third voice to create an incomplete V^7 chord that contains a root, third, and seventh. For Example D you will add two voices.

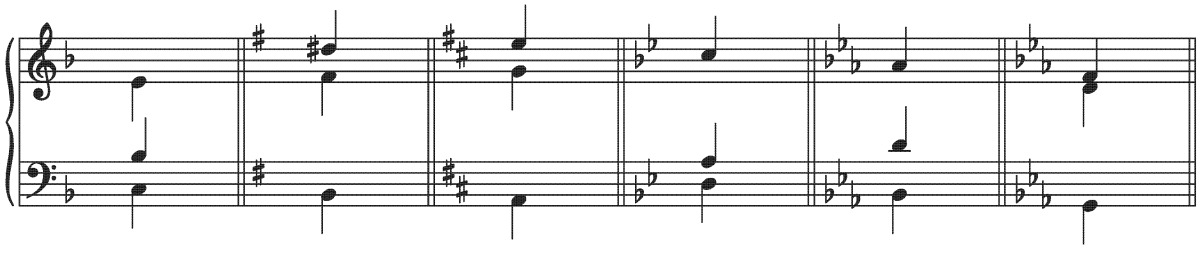
A. B. C. D. E.



6.5 Four-Voice Writing

Determine the key for each example, then add a fourth voice to create a complete V^7 chord.

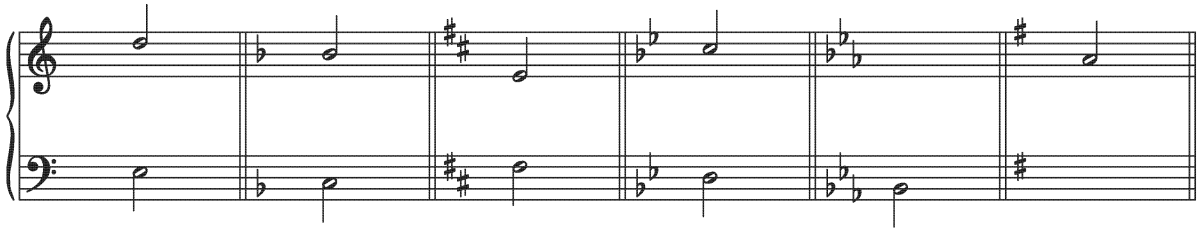
A. B. C. D. E. F.



6.6 Writing and Resolving V^7 in Two Voices

Determine the key for each example, and resolve the V^7 chord to tonic. Examples E and F require you to add one missing pitch.

A. B. C. D. E. F.



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- analysis: descriptive versus interpretive
- embellishment/figuration: metrical, submetrical, supermetrical
- chordal dissonance
- dominant seventh chord
- 8–7
- preparation and resolution
- unequal fifths

CHAPTER 7

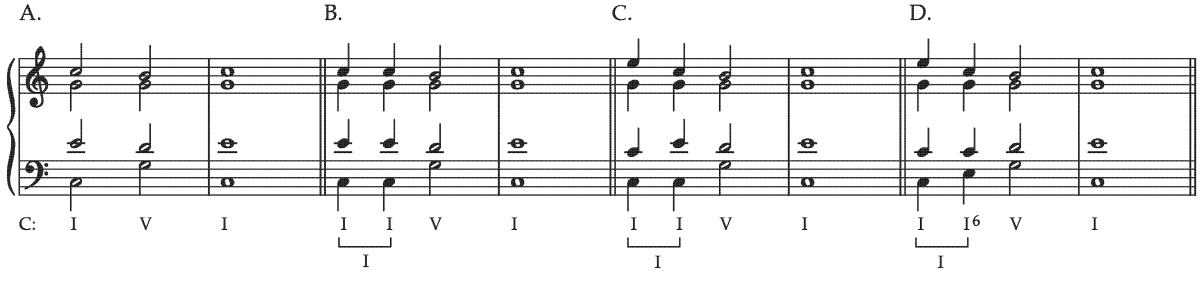
Contrapuntal Expansions of Tonic and Dominant: Six-Three Chords

In this chapter we explore how specific first-inversion triads enrich musical structure by elaborating the tonic–dominant axis within a phrase. Because inverted triads are less stable than their root-position counterparts, they allow for greater harmonic nuance. And by using inversions, composers turn the bass line into a melody.

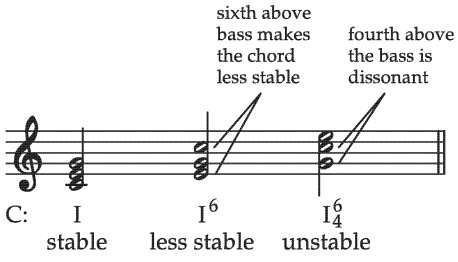
Chordal Leaps in the Bass: I^6 and V^6

The progression I–V–I (shown in Example 7.1A) can be expanded by simply repeating the first chord: I–I–V–I (Example 7.1B). One could also revoice the upper parts for added interest (Example 7.1C). But a more dramatic and contrapuntally interesting way to expand the tonic is to use the first inversion I^6 chord: I–I^6–V–I (Example 7.1D). Instead of the leap of a fifth, the bass first skips by chordal leap to another note in the tonic chord. The I^6 chord is less stable than the root-position I chord; this instability helps to push the music forward. (See Example 7.2.)

EXAMPLE 7.1 Embellishing Tonic with First Inversion



EXAMPLE 7.2 Relative Stability of Root-Position and Inverted Triads

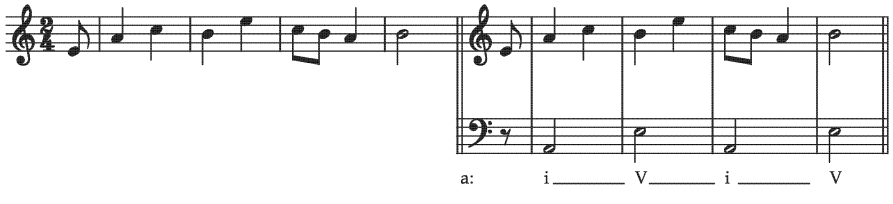


Whereas root-position and first-inversion triads can often be interchanged, second-inversion triads are not an effective substitute for either root position or first inversion, given their dissonant fourth above the bass. Triads in second inversion function quite differently from those in root position and first inversion.

The folk song excerpt in Example 7.3A can be harmonized exclusively by means of tonic and dominant chords. Indeed, the chordal leaps and single weak-beat passing tone in m. 3 imply a harmonic rhythm of one chord per measure, with an alternation of tonic and dominant chords (see Example 7.3B). The excerpt closes with a half cadence. Although this is a passable harmonization, it is not very inspiring, given the predictable bass. More problematic is the rather heavy and static sound created by the consistent root-position harmonies. Indeed, the half cadence sounds less like an arrival and more like just another dominant harmony.

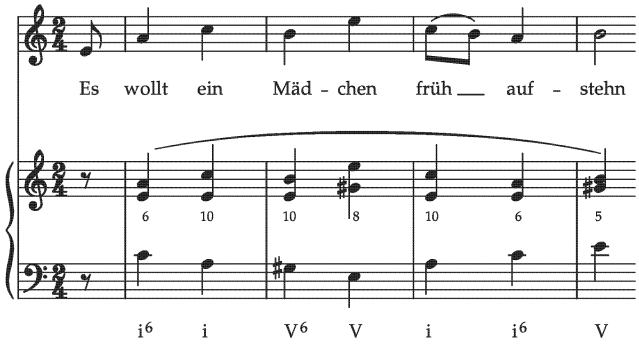
EXAMPLE 7.3 "Vom verwundeten Knaben"

A. "Vom verwundeten Knaben"
("Of a wounded boy")
(German Folk Song)

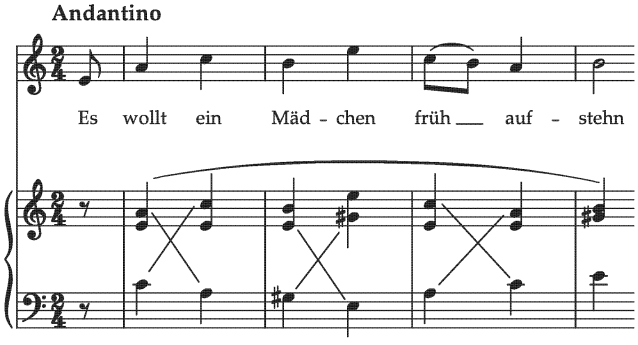


B. Root-Position Setting

C. Brahms's Setting of "Vom verwundeten Knaben," op. 14, no. 2



D. Brahms, with Voice Exchanges



In Example 7.3C, Brahms restricts the harmonies in his setting to the very tonic and dominant chords heard in the previous example. But rather than relying exclusively on root-position triads, he includes their first-inversion counterparts. This change aurally alters the piece so that it is now buoyant and strongly directed toward the half cadence.

First-inversion chords energize phrases because they render the bass more melodic. A brief look at the lowest voice in Brahms's setting reveals a melodic arch created by the descent of a sixth from C to E and the ascent of an octave to the half cadence. The bass plays multiple roles, fusing harmonic function with melodic interest, as it becomes a counterpart to the soprano, with which its underlying counterpoint controls the flow of events.

The downbeat intervals of the root-position harmonization in Example 7.3B reveal an octave, a fifth, a tenth, and a fifth; only the tenth is active. Now compare this with Brahms's setting in Example 7.3C. Not only are the downbeat intervals all active (sixths and tenths, except for the half cadence's fifth), but so are nearly all of the weak-beat intervals. Note that the piece begins with tonic in first inversion, as does the second measure, where the leading tone, G♯, is prominently displayed in the bass's V^6 chord. The relationship between bass and soprano is intensified by the fact that the intervals in mm. 1 and 3 are inverted, and the pitches are swapped, creating **voice exchanges** (the voice exchange in m. 2 occurs between the piano's bass and alto parts). Example 7.3D shows these voice exchanges.

Moving between a chord's root position and first inversion is analogous to revoicing the upper voices of a harmony. There is no harmonic change, but rather, the extension or prolongation of a single harmony. That this can occur in the bass simply makes the change more dramatic. As a rule, it is much more common to extend the tonic harmony using its first inversion than it is to extend the dominant with its first inversion.

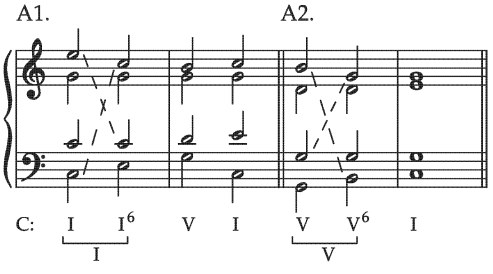
Example 7.4 presents common bass and soprano settings for motions between I and I^6, all of which are applicable to expanding V with V^6 (as shown in Example 7.4A2). Notice that the motion both to root position from first inversion and from first inversion to root position involves at least one and often two imperfect consonances (thirds *and* sixths). The fluid nature of the inverted chords helps propel a phrase. Therefore these chords are best

used within a phrase rather than at the beginning or end of a phrase, where the stability of root-position chords is desired [although Brahms began his song in this very way (see Example 7.3), with a i^6 chord!].

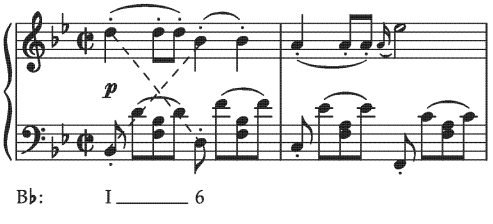
EXAMPLE 7.4 Expanding I and V with $^6_3$ Chords

A. Voice Exchange

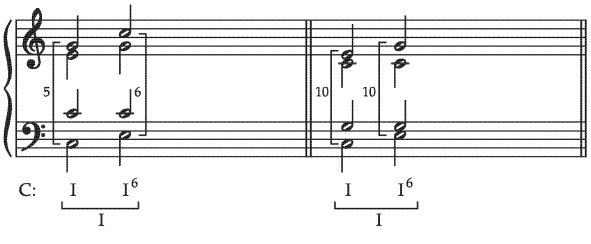
A1. A2.



A3. Schubert, Impromptu in B♭ major, Thema, *Andante*



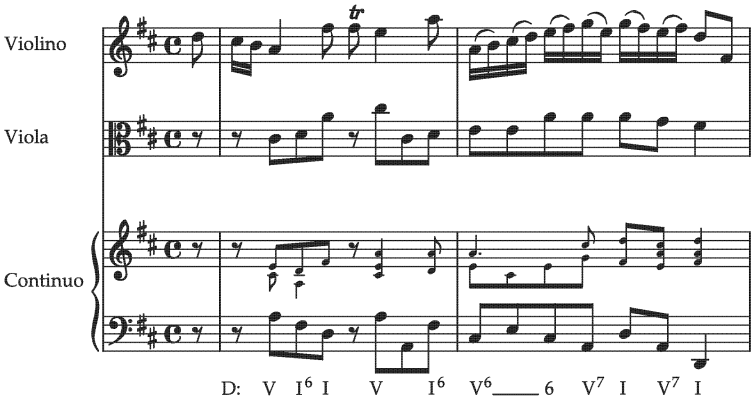
B. Similar Motion C. Parallel Motion



In addition to the voice exchange in Example 7.4A1–A3 using I^6 between I and V breaks up the large leap of a fifth into two smaller leaps of a third. Just as $\hat{1}$ in the soprano is most often harmonized by the tonic, $\hat{3}$ in the bass overwhelmingly appears as part of the tonic triad. The pitches retained through the voice exchange make it clear that a single harmony, the tonic, has been extended by chordal leaps.

The contrary-motion voice exchange is one of many possible outer-voice configurations. Example 7.4B shows a similar-motion outer-voice counterpoint, and Example 7.4C shows parallel-tenth motion. Not only are these chordal leaps reversible ($^5_3 \rightarrow {}^6_3$ or $^6_3 \rightarrow {}^5_3$), but they can work in tandem, their combination creating entire phrases, as shown in Example 7.5. Telemann draws exclusively on I, I^6, V, and V^6, reserving two root-position V^7 chords for the final chords.

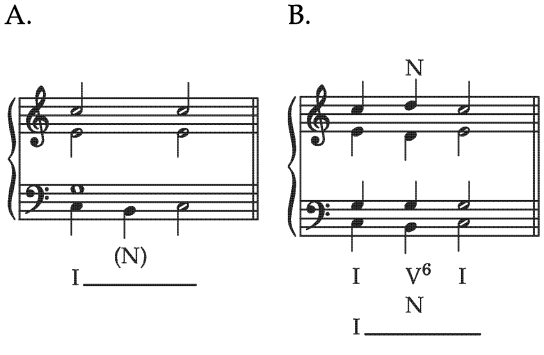
EXAMPLE 7.5 Telemann, "Domenica," from *Scherzi Melodichi, Vivace*



Neighbor Tones in the Bass (V^6)

We have seen that a harmony can be ornamented with a neighbor tone; in Example 7.6A, the B in the bass is a neighbor tone that ties together the surrounding root-position tonic chords. However, the pitch B is dissonant because it is not a part of the tonic harmony. You can change the upper voices to pitches that are consonant with the bass note B, thus **harmonizing** the bass note. The result is a V^6 chord (see Example 7.6B). This new chord is still ornamental and subordinate to the surrounding chords; we refer to the V^6 harmony as a **neighboring chord**.

EXAMPLE 7.6 Stabilizing Neighbors

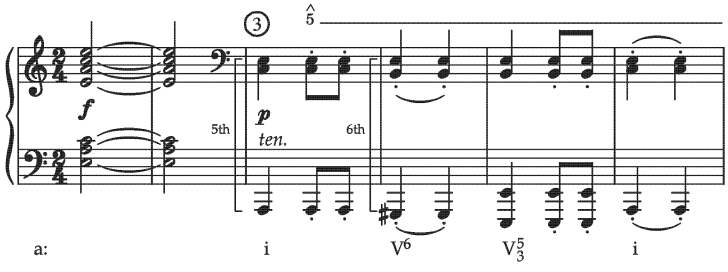


Often $\hat{5}$ is prominently displayed in the soprano when V^6 extends I, because this common tone secures their kinship. In addition, the musical drama is intensified because the outer-voice perfect fifth of the tonic harmony ($\hat{1}$ in the bass and $\hat{5}$ in the soprano) is destabilized by the sixth of the first-inversion dominant harmony. Beethoven takes advantage of

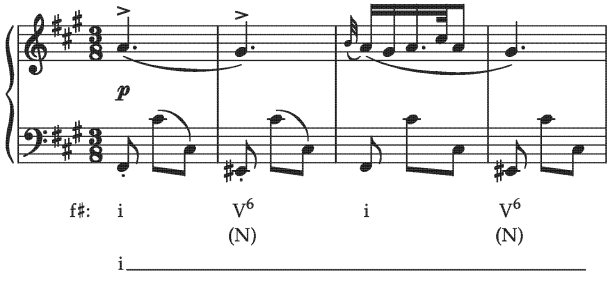
this effect in the first sonorities of the slow movement from his seventh symphony (Example 7.7A). A different effect is created when the soprano begins on $\hat{3}$, joining the bass in its own neighboring motion; the result is the gently rocking pair of lines moving in parallel tenths. Schubert opens one of his slow movements in just this way (Example 7.7B).

EXAMPLE 7.7

A. Beethoven, Symphony no. 7, *Allegretto*



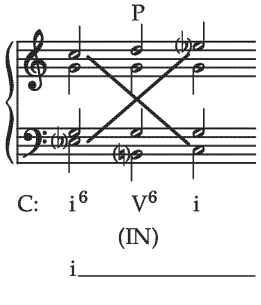
B. Schubert, Piano Sonata in A major, D. 959, *Andantino*



The V^6 can also be used as an **incomplete neighboring chord**. The most common type of incomplete neighbor occurs when i^6 is followed by V^6, which then returns to i (see Example 7.8A). In minor, the bass leap from $\hat{3}$ to $\hat{7}$ forms a diminished fourth, which is permitted given its extreme pathos and the leading tone is immediately resolved. See Example 7.8B, in which Corelli presents a dramatic diminished-fourth leap from E♭ (the bass of i^6) to B♮ (bass of V^6).

EXAMPLE 7.8

A.



B. Corelli, Concerto Grosso no. 8 in F major, *Allegro* no. 2

Second-Level Analysis

Harmonic analysis is a two-stage process. The first stage (or **first-level analysis**) identifies each sonority with roman numerals and figured bass; such labeling represents the **descriptive** analysis of the progression. The second stage—or **second-level analysis**—is interpretive and reflects the **functions** of the sonorities. Stage 2A distinguishes harmonies that are **structural** from harmonies that are **ornamental**. Structural harmonies are **progressional** because they indicate movement from one harmonic function (such as tonic) to another (such as dominant). Structural harmonies keep their roman numerals in second-level analysis. Ornamental harmonies—such as the neighboring chord in Example 7.8—help to extend or prolong a single structural harmony, and are thus called **prolongational**. In level 2A analysis, prolongational chords are labeled by melodic function, as this chart shows.

Structural harmonies . . .	*Ornamental harmonies . . .*
• are progressional	• are prolongational
• have harmonic function (tonic, dominant)	• have melodic function (chordal leap, neighbor tone)
• are usually on strong beats	• are usually on weak beats
• are usually in root position	• are usually in inversion
• are part of a harmonic progression	• are part of a contrapuntal progression
• keep their roman numerals in second-level analysis	• are labeled as ornaments (“N,” “CL”) in second-level analysis

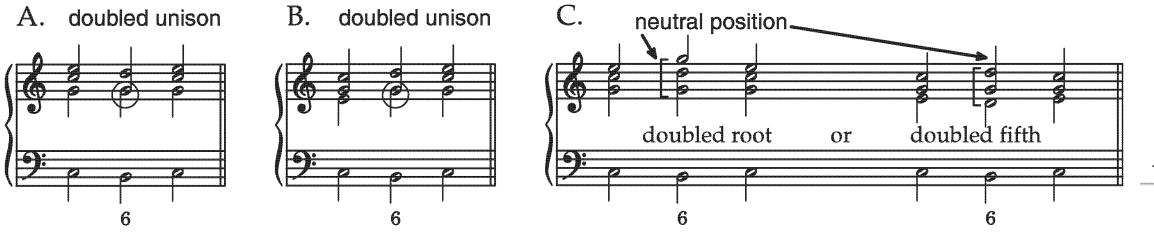
Finally, level 2B analysis contains only structural harmonies, usually only I and V (at least at this point in your studies). Merely labeling each harmony with a roman numeral does not constitute an analysis; it is more a description. An analysis with the sole aim of placing roman numerals beneath every chord is a mechanical and dull exercise, one that is doomed to fail. As we proceed, you will see the merits of multilevel analysis.

Analysis is a creative, thought-provoking activity whose goal is to penetrate deep into the musical structure to reveal important correspondences between the surface and the underlying structure of a composition.

Voice-Leading and Doubling Rules for I^6 and V^6

- Keep common tones (unless you use a voice exchange, which often requires movement in multiple voices).
- When possible, double the root (you can double the third or fifth if it smooths the voice leading).
- Never double the leading tone, $\hat{7}$ (the third of a dominant chord).
- If the bass is not doubled, choose one of the following spacings for first-inversion triads:
  - *Doubled unison:* Two voices share the same pitch at the unison (Example 7.9A–B).
  - *Neutral position:* Two voices share the same pitch at the octave (Example 7.9C).
- Subordinate harmonies, especially those that neighbor, usually appear on metrically weak beats or parts of beats.

EXAMPLE 7.9



WORKBOOK 1
7.1

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

7.1

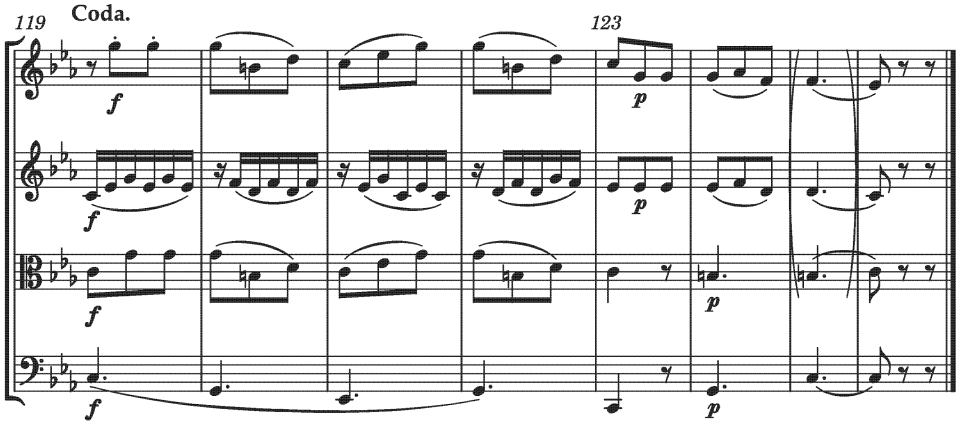
Each excerpt contains one or more first-inversion chords that expand tonic or dominant. Analyze each example using a first- and second-level (2A and 2B) analysis.

A. Mozart, String Quartet in F major, K. 590, *Andante*

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Mozart, String Quartet in D minor, K. 173, *Menuetto*

C. Mozart, String Quartet in C major, K. 157, *Andante*



WRITING

7.2

In four-voice chorale style, set the following soprano scale degree fragments and bass scale degree fragments in the keys listed. Each progression must contain a tonic expansion. Some progressions, however, may contain both a tonic expansion and a cadence. Use only I (i), I^6 (i^6), V, V^6, V^7.

Soprano scale degrees:

SOLVED/APP 6

- In A minor: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$
- In F major: $\hat{3}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{5}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$
- In B minor: $\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$

Bass scale degrees:

SOLVED/APP 6

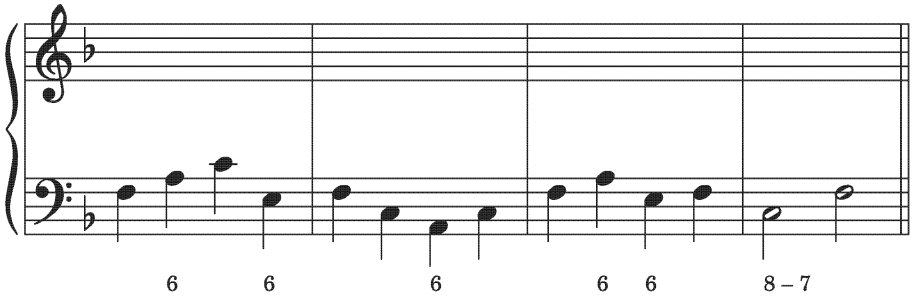
- In C minor: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$
- In E♭ major: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$
- In A major: $\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{5}$–$\hat{1}$

7.3 Figured Bass

1. Study the figured bass that follows, adding a soprano that moves primarily by step and creates mostly imperfect consonances with the bass (i.e., thirds and sixths).

2. Analyze, including a second-level analysis, then fill in inner voices.

SOLVED/APP 6



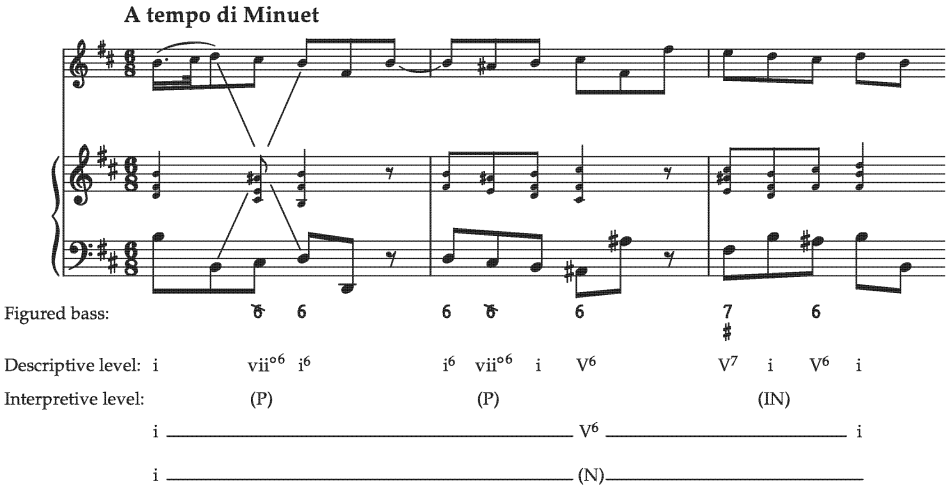
Passing Tones in the Bass: vii°6

Contrapuntal expansions often use neighbor tones (I–V6–I) and chordal leaps (I–I6 and V–V6). A third contrapuntal motion, **passing**, expands the tonic by inserting a bass passing tone between I and I6 chords.

Example 7.10 presents the opening of one of Handel's flute sonata movements. Each of the tonic's bass tones ($\hat{1}$ and $\hat{3}$ in m. 1 and the reverse in m. 2) is harmonized by root-position and first-inversion triads; in m. 1 a voice exchange is created between the bass and flute Bs and Ds. Additionally, Handel has harmonized the bass and soprano passing tones C♯ ($\hat{2}$) with first-inversion chords built on vii°. Because vii°6 harmonizes the passing tone C♯, it is called a **passing chord**, as shown below the example in the second-level analysis.

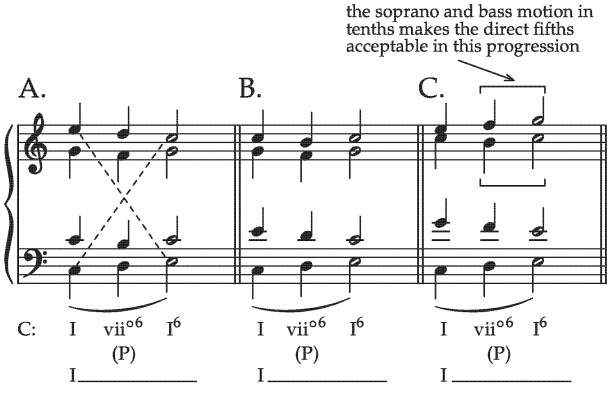
Similar to neighboring embellishing chords, passing chords usually fall on metrically weak beats or parts of beats. Before we leave the Handel example, notice in m. 3 that the tonic harmony first appears on a weak part of the beat, sandwiched between two dominant harmonies and harmonizing D, a weak-beat passing tone in the flute. The tonic chord is an incomplete neighbor that helps to extend the dominant that began its control on the second beat of m. 2 and that remains in force until the strong-beat arrival of tonic at the end of the excerpt. We might even assign the extended V6 chord a neighboring function, given that it is flanked by the opening and closing tonic chords in root position.

EXAMPLE 7.10 Handel, Flute Sonata in B minor, HWV 367b



Example 7.11 shows common settings of vii°6 with both first- and second-level analysis. Again, each of the contrapuntal chords occurs on a metrically unaccented beat, while the underlying harmony that is expanded usually occurs in a metrically accented position.

EXAMPLE 7.11 Common Settings of vii°6



The vii° in first inversion—rather than ii in root position—is used when harmonizing the bass passing tone $\hat{2}$. The ii is a strong harmony that draws attention away from the tonic and therefore is not a suitable contrapuntal chord. By contrast, vii°6 is a perfect passing chord because:

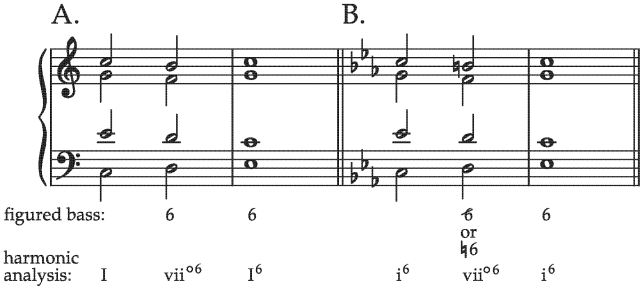
- It is an unstable diminished sonority.
- It shares notes with V and V7, which work well as passing chords (we call vii°6 a **dominant substitute**).
- It is in first inversion and therefore is more likely to be a contrapuntal chord.

Voice Leading for vii°6

- **Never** double the leading tone, $\hat{7}$.
- Try to double the third of the chord ($\hat{2}$), which may move to either $\hat{1}$ or $\hat{3}$ (you may double $\hat{4}$ but only to make the voice leading smoother).
- If possible, resolve the tritone (as you did with V^7)—but it is common not to resolve the tritone if:
  - It leads to a complete tonic triad (Example 7.11A, B, and C).
  - It does not involve the bass (Example 7.11A and B). This is especially true if the tritone is expressed as an augmented fourth (rather than a diminished fifth).
  - The bass and soprano move by parallel tenths (Example 7.11C).

When we write vii°6 in the minor mode, there is one addition to our figured bass vocabulary. We must raise the sixth above the bass of a vii°6 chord—this is $\hat{7}$—in order to create a leading tone. Example 7.12 presents the figured bass you will encounter for vii°6 in major and minor modes and, below that, the harmonic analysis that you should use.

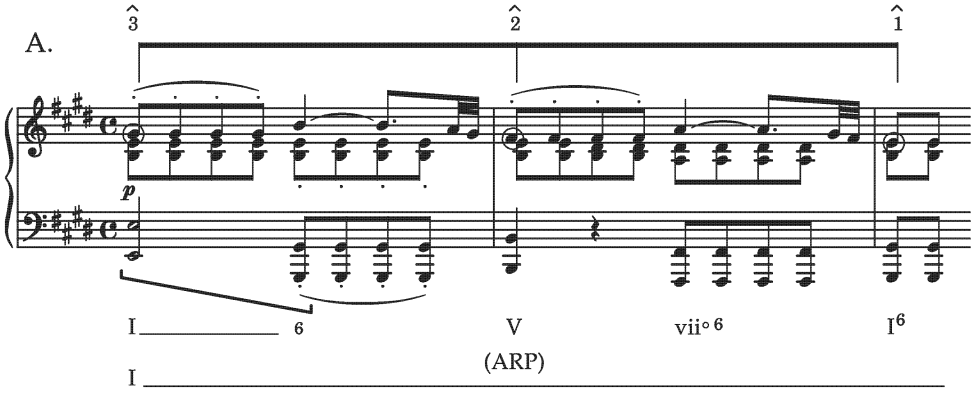
EXAMPLE 7.12 Voice Leading and Analyzing vii°6

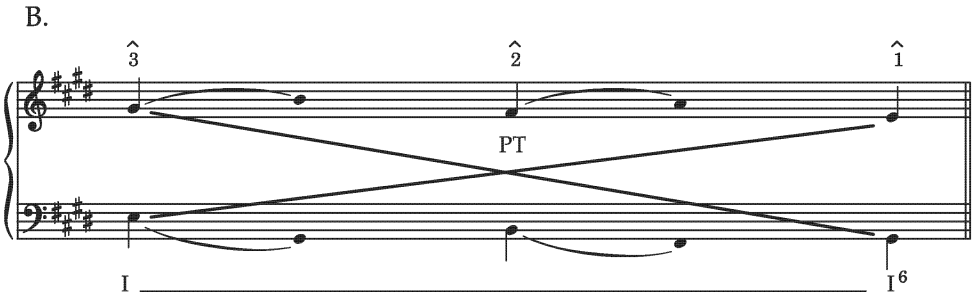


Tonic Expansion with an Arpeggiating Bass: IV6

We know that I6 expands I, with the bass *ascending* by a *third* (from $\hat{1}$ up to $\hat{3}$). Sometimes, for reasons of drama or range, the bass moves from I to I6 by *falling* a *sixth*, from $\hat{1}$ down to $\hat{3}$, as in Example 7.13. Notice the large-scale voice exchange that results in the process: The soprano uses a passing figure ($\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$), and the bass uses an arpeggiation ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{5}$–$\hat{3}$). See Example 7.13B. The resulting V chord is subordinate to the surrounding tonic chords.

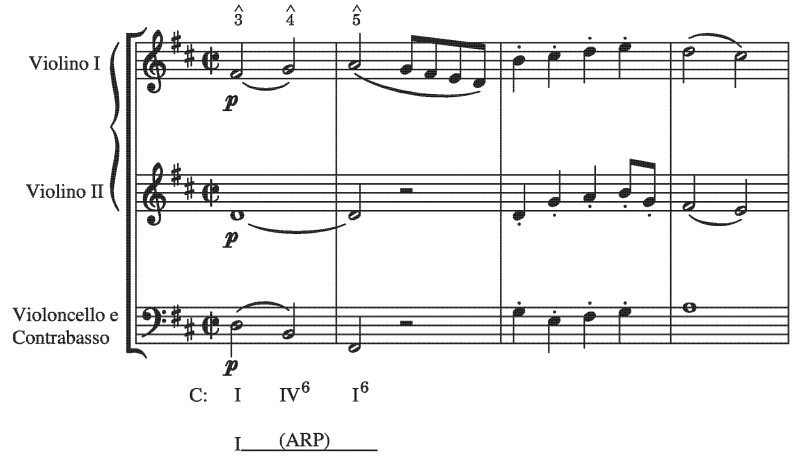
EXAMPLE 7.13 Handel, "Comfort Ye," from *Messiah*, HWV 56





The large leap of a sixth is often split into the arpeggiation $\hat{1}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{3}$ by the addition of a new chord: IV^6 (Example 7.14). Notice the stepwise ascent, $\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$, in the soprano; this ascent of $\hat{4}$ to $\hat{5}$ provides an important contrast to its more usual descent, as the dissonant seventh in dominant harmony. Composers commonly double $\hat{1}$ (the third above the bass) when writing IV^6, but you are free to double any member of the chord since smooth voice leading must always take priority over doublings.

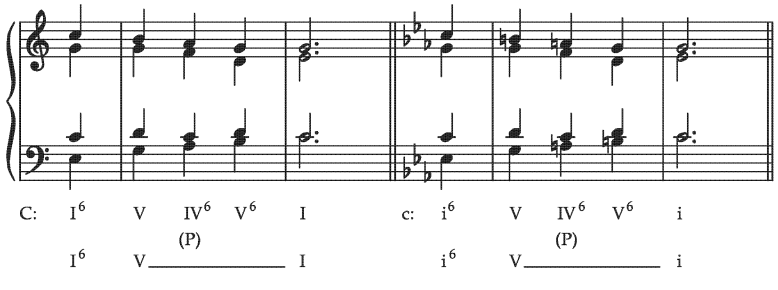
EXAMPLE 7.14 Haydn, Symphony no. 101, "Clock," Finale



Dominant Expansion with Passing Tones: IV^6

Just as tonic may be expanded with a passing vii°^{6} chord, so too may the dominant be expanded by a first-inversion IV^6 chord. Observe in Example 7.15 how V–IV^6–V^6 is used in major and minor keys.

EXAMPLE 7.15 IV^6 Expands V



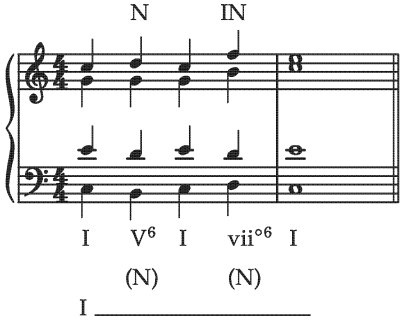
Voice Leading for V–IV^6–V^6

- In minor keys, $\hat{6}$ must be raised to avoid an augmented second between $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$—this results in a major IV^6 chord.
- Avoid parallel fifths and octaves in IV^6–V^6 by moving the upper voices in contrary motion to the bass.

Combining First-Inversion Chords

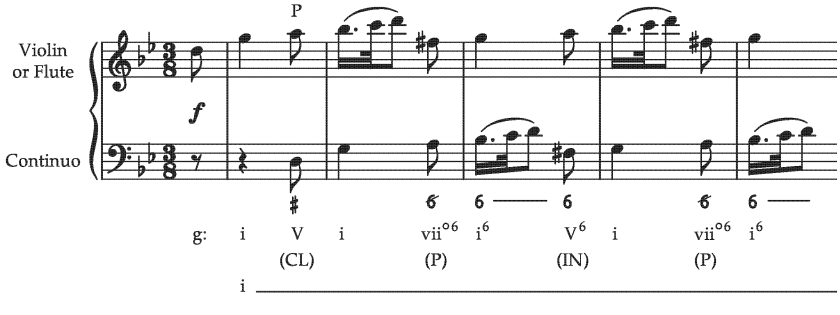
Extended prolongations of tonic are common, and they often involve combinations of the first-inversion chords we have discussed (I^6, V^6, vii^{o6}, and IV^6). Example 7.16 shows how a neighboring V^6 and vii^{o6} create a double-neighbor figure in the bass.

EXAMPLE 7.16 Multiple Expansions of Tonic



Example 7.17, from one of Telemann's flute sonatas, opens with an expansion of the G-minor tonic using the same chords as Example 17.16: V^6 and vii^{o6}. However, V^6 is now an incomplete neighbor and vii^{o6} passes between I and i^6.

EXAMPLE 7.17 Telemann, Sonata for Flute in B♭ major, *Dolce*



Summary

This chapter continued our exploration of two basic types of harmonies: structural (which control the underlying harmonic flow of the music) and embellishing (which ornament and extend the structural harmonies

through their derivation as by-products of melodic and contrapuntal events). Considering melody, harmony, and the resulting two-voice counterpoint, provides a powerful standard by which to interpret each harmony.

The importance of determining the *function* of each harmony is underscored in our second-level analysis, which carries with it performance implications. To be sure, composers did not create their artworks because of some burning desire to insert a I^6 or vii^{o6} chord. Rather, their choice of harmony came from artistic efforts to make their pieces goal directed and integrated. They accomplished this in a variety of ways, including sharing the same melodic figures (such as passing and neighbor tones), and passing them from one instrument to another to create recurring gestures or motives. When they fleshed out the harmonies implied by the melodic lines, the result was a tightly knit and organic structure. The two Corelli excerpts in Example 7.18 reveal this process. If labeling each chord with a roman numeral (m. 1: (i)–V–i–vii^{o6}; and m. 2: i^6–V^6–i–etc.) were to be the limits of analysis, one would have missed the "point," or premise, of these pieces, because the harmonies are actually the by-products of a compositional process. In Example 7.18A, Corelli has simply transferred the melodic figure of F♯–B–C♯–D–A♯–B from violin 1 to the keyboard. The same process is seen in Example 7.18B, where the I–IV^6–I^6 progression is the result of the transfer of the violin's tune to the keyboard. (A glance back at Example 7.17 reveals that Telemann, too, had the same idea in mind.)

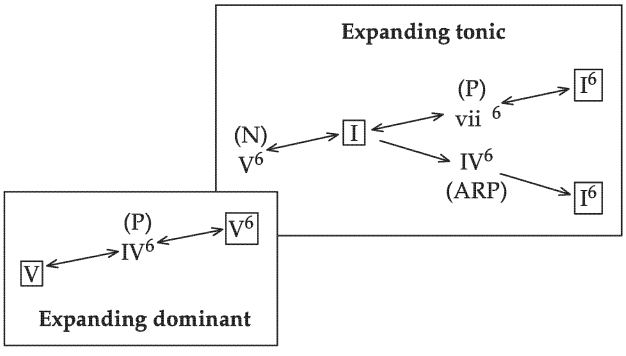
EXAMPLE 7.18

A. Corelli, Violin Sonata in F major, op. 2, no. 7, *Allegro*

B. Corelli, Violin Sonata in F major, op. 5, no. 4, *Grave*

Example 7.19 graphically summarizes the way tonic and dominant functions are elaborated by means of first-inversion triads.

EXAMPLE 7.19 Chart of Chords



WORKBOOK 1
7.2–7.5

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

7.4

Each given analytical snapshot contains tonic expansions and includes one or more of the first-inversion triads I^6, V^6, vii^{o6}, and IV^6. Analyze each example using two levels where appropriate.

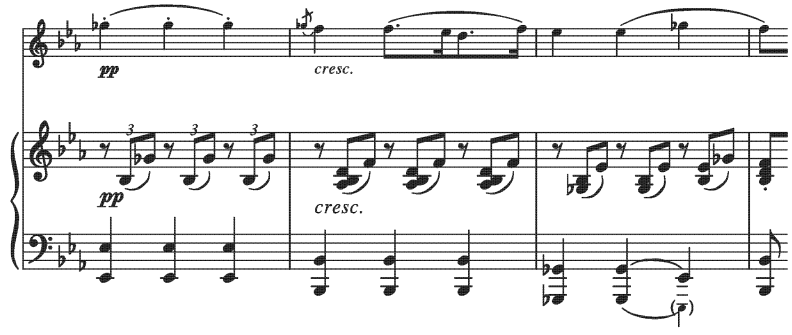
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Johann Jacob Bach, Flute Sonata in C minor, *Allegro*

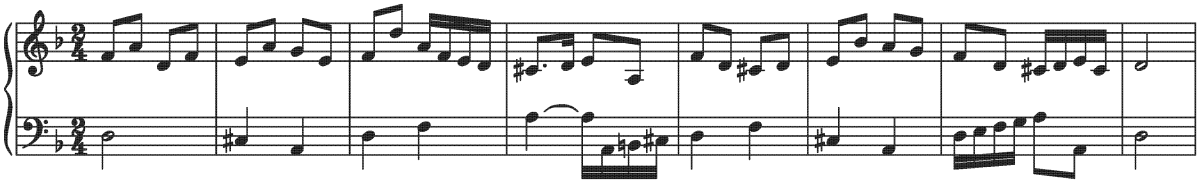
SOLVED/APP 6

B. Haydn, String Quartet in D major, op. 76, no. 2, *Andante o piú tosto allegretto*

C. Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 8 in G major, op. 30, no. 3, Minuet
Be aware of both the key and the mode.



D.

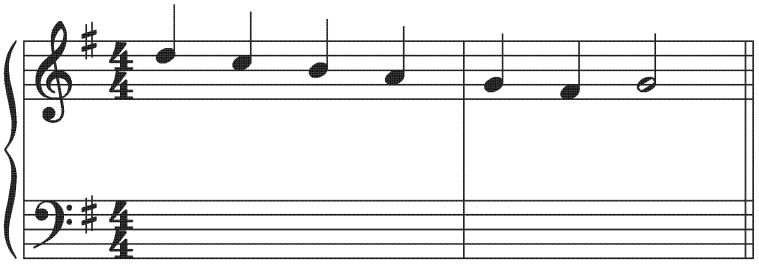


7.5 Soprano Harmonization

For the soprano fragment, include as many contrapuntal expansions of tonic and dominant as possible. First, study the melody, noting whether I or V controls each measure. Then, write the bass and fill in the inner voices. Analyze with two levels, making sure that you have noted all contrapuntal harmonies by their appropriate letter names (e.g., N and P).

SOLVED/APP 6

Extra credit: Harmonize the melody again using a different solution.



7.6

SOLVED/APP 6

Study the given scale degree numbers to determine an appropriate contrapuntal setting. Add roman numerals.

Sample solution: (soprano given)

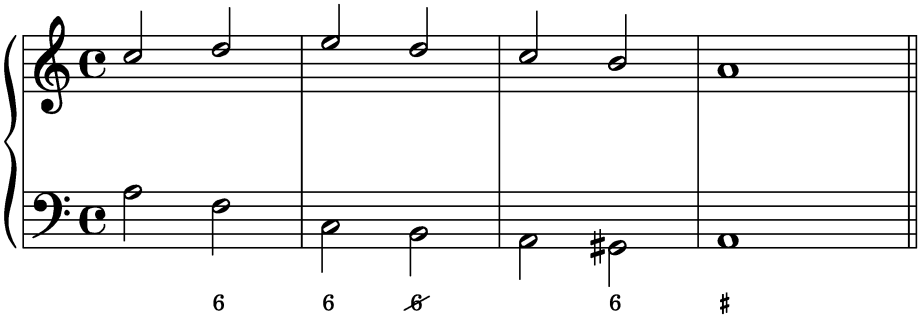
	A.	B.	C.	D.	E.
soprano:	3 2 1	1 7 1		3 4 3		5 5 5
bass:	1 2 3		1 7 1		3 2 1	
roman numerals:	I vii°6 I6					

WRITING

7.7 Figured Bass

SOLVED/APP 6

Realize the figured bass that follows by adding inner voices and analyzing with two levels.



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- descriptive versus interpretive analysis
- dominant substitute
- harmonic versus contrapuntal progression
- incomplete neighboring chord
- neighboring chord
- passing chord
- passing motion
- structural harmonies versus embellishing harmonies
- voice exchange

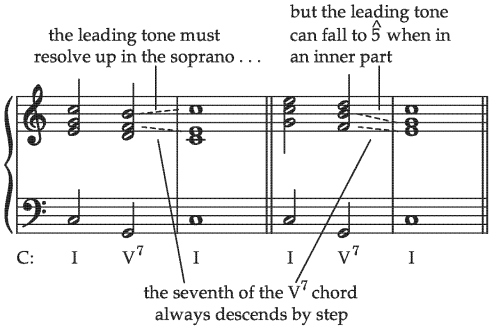
More Contrapuntal Expansions: Inversions of V^7, Introduction to Leading-Tone Seventh Chords, and Reduction and Elaboration

This chapter explores the compositional possibilities of inverting V^7 and $vii^{\circ 7}$ chords. These unstable chords are used primarily to expand tonic. We also examine the more limited functions of $vii^{\emptyset 7}$.

V^7 and Its Inversions

Root-position V^7 generally does not expand the tonic. It is a progressional harmony that often signals a cadence and should be used sparingly. Inverted chords are inherently unstable and give rise to the kind of motion that is needed *within* a phrase. The inversions of V^7 are ideal embellishing chords. The voice leading for inverted V^7 chords is identical to root-position chords: The chordal third ($\hat{7}$) rises (to $\hat{1}$), and the chordal seventh ($\hat{4}$) resolves down by step (to $\hat{3}$). (See Example 8.1.)

EXAMPLE 8.1 Tendency Tones and V^7

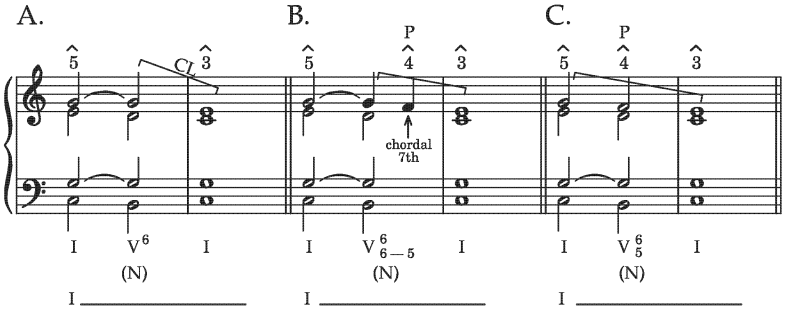


V^6_5

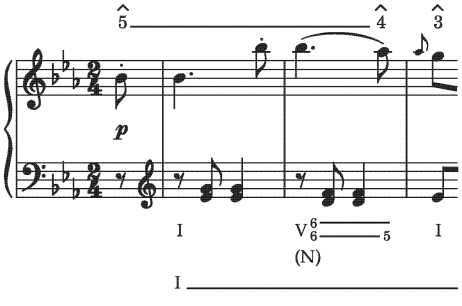
V^6_5 (first inversion) places the leading tone and chordal third ($\hat{7}$) in the bass; thus it is usually a neighboring chord (like its first-inversion triadic cousin, V^6). The single difference between V^6 and V^6_5 is the presence of the chordal seventh ($\hat{4}$) in the latter, which often appears in the soprano. Example 8.2 presents the derivation of the V^6_5 chord from the V^6. The soprano in Example 8.2A skips

down a third (from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{3}$). The third is filled with the unaccented *passing seventh* in Example 8.2B. In Example 8.2C, the passing seventh is metrically accented.

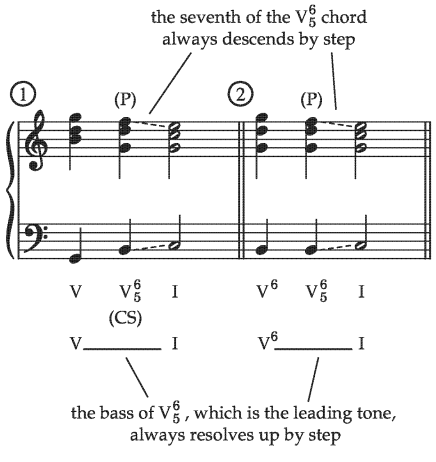
EXAMPLE 8.2 Passing Sevenths in V_5^6



D. Mozart, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, K. 282, *Allegro*



E.

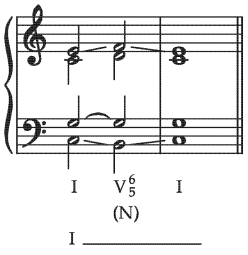


Example 8.2D illustrates the smooth entrance of the seventh: Mozart's movement begins on tonic, with B♭ ($\hat{5}$) prominently stated and then repeated as a dramatic octave leap. The sustained B♭ accompanies a harmonic change to a neighboring V^6 chord, which prepares the weak-beat passing seventh (A♭) that leads to the return of tonic in m. 3. Finally, V_5^6 can also follow V or V^6 (as shown in Example 8.2E) because the addition of the seventh intensifies a triad.

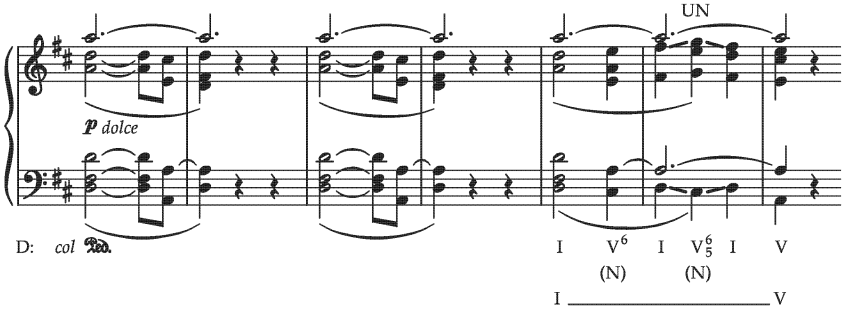
The seventh often appears within a *neighboring* configuration, where it mirrors the neighboring bass in contrary motion, as shown in Example 8.3A and B. With the anchoring neighbor motion of the fifth in an inner voice, a number of creative soprano lines are possible, one of which is shown in Example 8.3C, in which Mozart counterpoints the first violin and cello in parallel tenths.

EXAMPLE 8.3 Neighboring Seventh in V_5^6

A.



B. Beethoven, Symphony no. 7 in A major, *Assai meno presto*



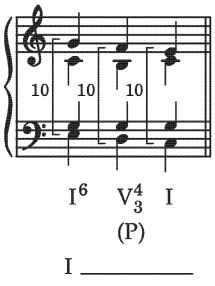
C. Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 159, Rondo

V_3^4

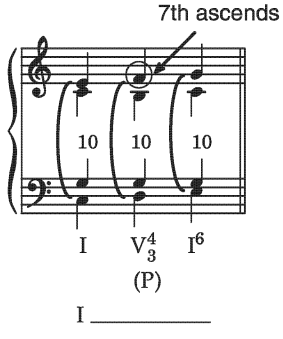
V_3^4 (second inversion) places the chordal fifth ($\hat{2}$) in the bass. Since $\hat{2}$ also appears in the bass of vii°^{6}, V_3^4 functions in much the same way—as a neighboring chord to I or, more often, as a passing chord between I and I^6. Example 8.4A shows this passing motion as V_3^4 connects I^6 and I. The soprano moves in parallel tenths with the bass.

EXAMPLE 8.4 V_3^4

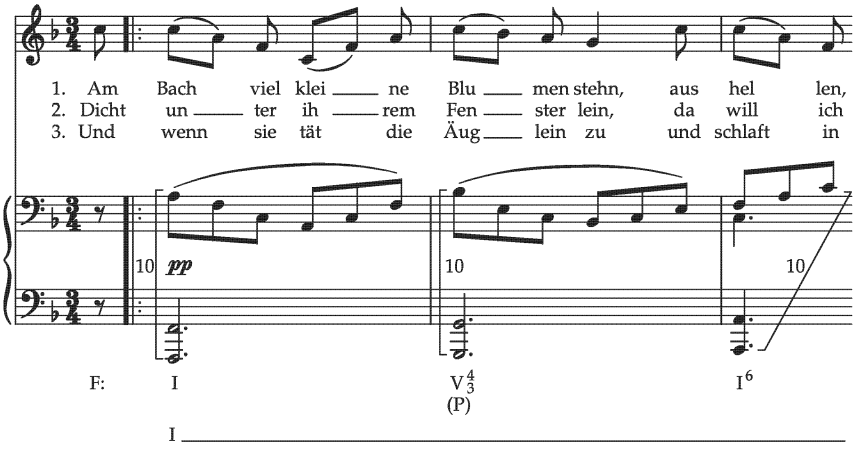
A.



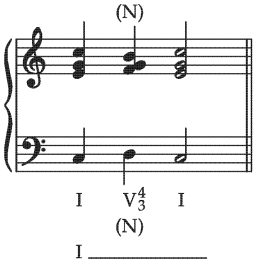
B1.



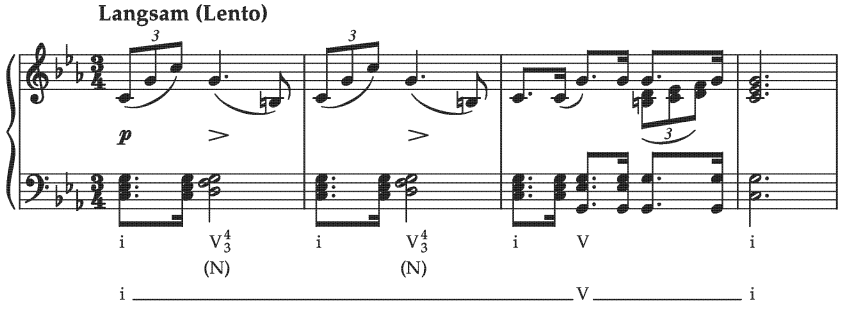
B2. Schubert, "Des Müllers Blumen," from *Die schöne Müllerin*



C1.



C2. Schubert, "Wasserflut," from *Winterreise*



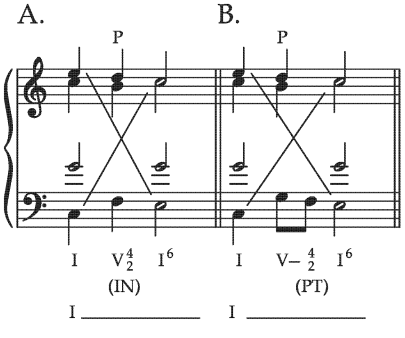
In Example 8.4B1, the contour is reversed: V^4_3 is part of an ascending line, connecting I and I^6. Notice that the chordal seventh (F) *ascends* to G instead of resolving normally to E. This exception to the rule that chordal dissonance must resolve by step *descent* is permitted because the strong parallel-tenth motion between bass and soprano overrides the normal resolution of the seventh. Schubert's song "Des Müllers Blumen" opens in just this way, with the outer voices of the accompaniment tracing the parallel-tenth motion (Example 8.4B2).

V^4_3 may also prolong the tonic by neighbor motion, as shown in Example 8.4C1 and C2.

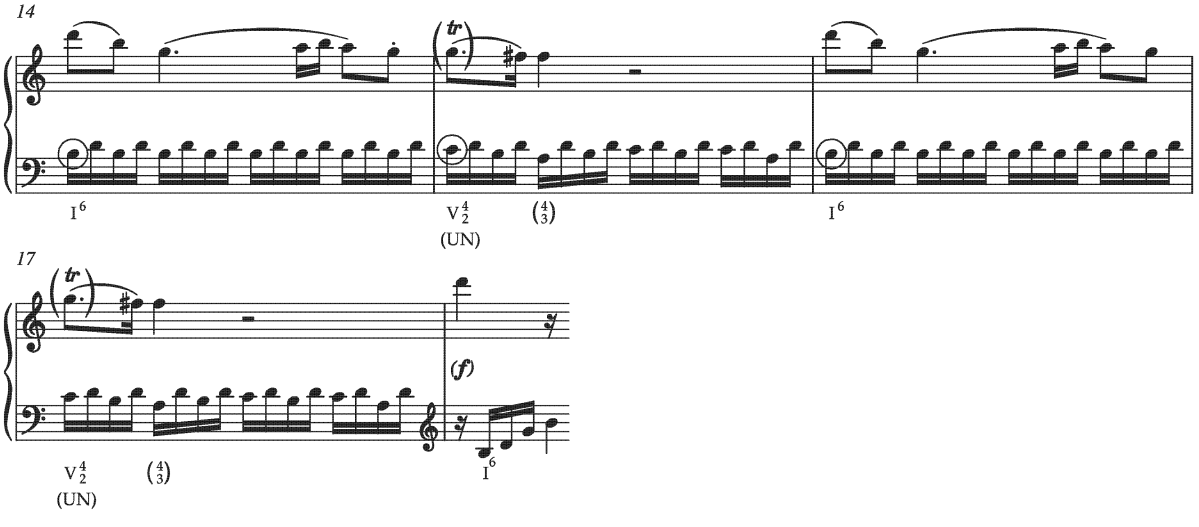
V^4_2

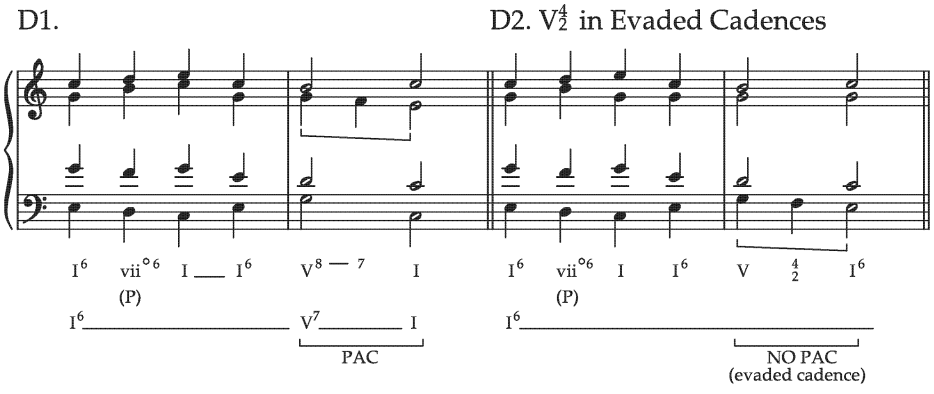
V^4_2 (third inversion) places the chordal seventh ($\hat{4}$) in the bass. Given the prominent placement of the seventh, V^4_2 is the least stable of the inverted dominants. Example 8.5A presents a setting of V^4_2 in which it participates in a tonic expansion from I to I^6 that includes a voice exchange. Composers often soften the effect of V^4_2 by preparing the seventh as a passing tone, as shown in Example 8.5B. It is also possible to use V^4_2 as an upper neighbor to I^6, which creates a less stable, more fleeting prolongation of the tonic (see Example 8.5C).

EXAMPLE 8.5 V^4_2



C. Mozart, Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*





Finally, placing the passing seventh in the bass at a cadence destabilizes dominant and transforms it into part of a tonic prolongation. Example 8.5D1 shows a tonic expansion and typical PAC (with passing seventh in the alto). Example 8.5D2 presents the passing seventh in the bass, creating an **evaded cadence**.

Voice-Leading Inversions of V^7

There are no new voice-leading rules for the inversions of V^7, but remember these tenets of good part writing that have already been discussed.

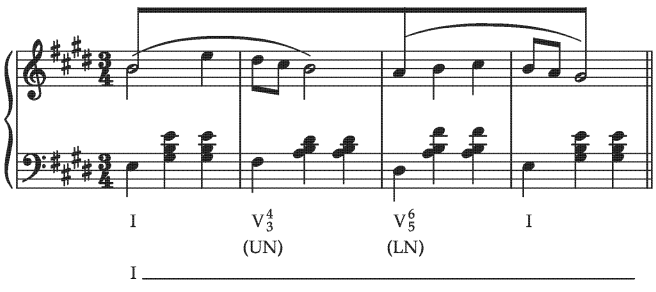
1. Move most, if not all, of the voices by step or common tone when leading to and from inversions of V^7.
2. Inversions of V^7 should appear as complete chords.
3. Inversions of V^7 tend to fall on metrically unaccented beats, connecting the more stable tonic triads, which tend to fall on strong beats.
4. Resolve tendency tones: $\hat{7}$ (the leading tone) *must* ascend when it occurs in an outer voice (but may fall to $\hat{5}$ when it occurs in an inner voice). $\hat{4}$ (the seventh of V^7) *must* descend to $\hat{3}$ (except in the progression I–V^4_3–I^6, harmonizing a $\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ soprano).

Combining Inversions of V^7

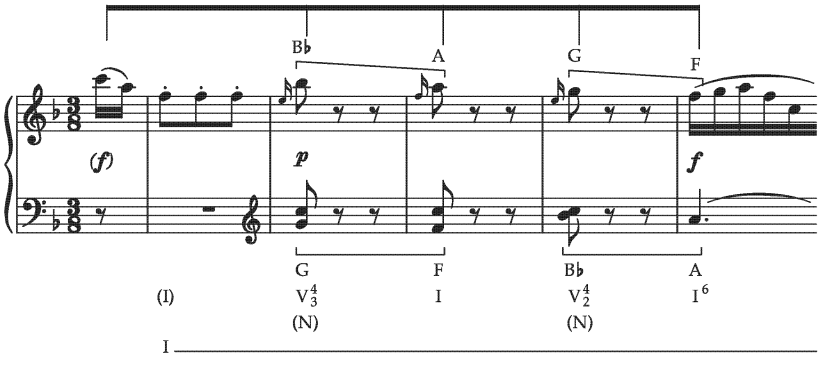
Extended prolongations of tonic are common, and they usually involve two or more inverted V^7 chords. A Donizetti aria (reproduced in Example 8.6A) opens with a tonic expansion using both V^4_3 and V^6_5. These expanding inverted dominant sevenths link the two-measure subphrases by creating the overall effect of double neighbors, as shown in the second-level analysis. Notice how Donizetti moves from an inversion with a less active tone in the bass ($\hat{2}$) to one with an active tone ($\hat{7}$), and not the reverse (i.e., V^6_5–V^4_3). The melodically fluent soprano line, B–A–G♯, enhances the connection between the two subphrases.

EXAMPLE 8.6 Multiple Expansions of Tonic

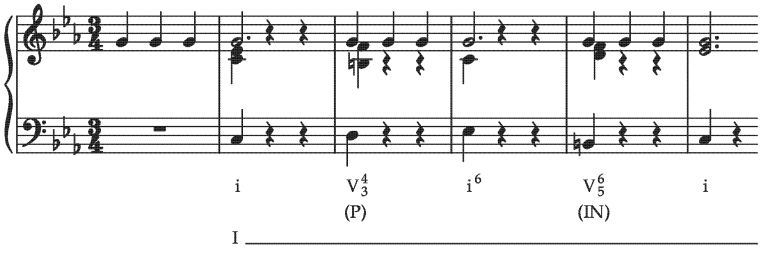
A. Donizetti, *Lucrezia Borgia*, act 1, no. 3



B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in F, K. 280, *Presto*



C. Beethoven, Symphony no. 5 in C minor, *Allegro*



Example 8.6B shows how V^4_3 and V^4_2 expand the tonic in the opening of a Mozart *Presto*. Notice that their contrapuntal functions are made clear in the melodic swapping of the two-note pairs B♭–A and G–F. Single-pitch swappings are called *voice exchanges*; multiple-pitch swappings are called **part exchanges**. The part exchanges in the upper voice are members of a longer stepwise falling fifth from the opening C down to F. Example 8.6C shows how Beethoven expands the tonic by moving from i to i^6 through V^4_3 and then dramatically leaps by a diminished fourth from $\hat{3}$ to $\hat{7}$ and back to $\hat{1}$ through a neighboring V^6_5 chord.

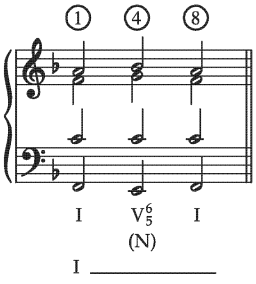
Compositional Impact of Contrapuntal Chords

Composers have introduced new concepts in musical contexts as short as three chords, providing compositional models. These models, or **harmonic paradigms**, are crucial to the unfolding of all music written in the common-practice periods (including the Baroque, Classical, and Romantic periods and the late nineteenth century) as well as the commercial and popular music of today. You should be able to recognize these paradigms immediately no matter what the key, the mode, the meter, the instrumentation, the texture, or the like. Consider two excerpts by Chopin, a Romantic composer credited with expanding the Classical harmonic palette by experimenting with unusual sonorities and progressions. However, he still relied heavily on these paradigms at the surface as well as the deeper levels of his works. Listen to the excerpts in Example 8.7.

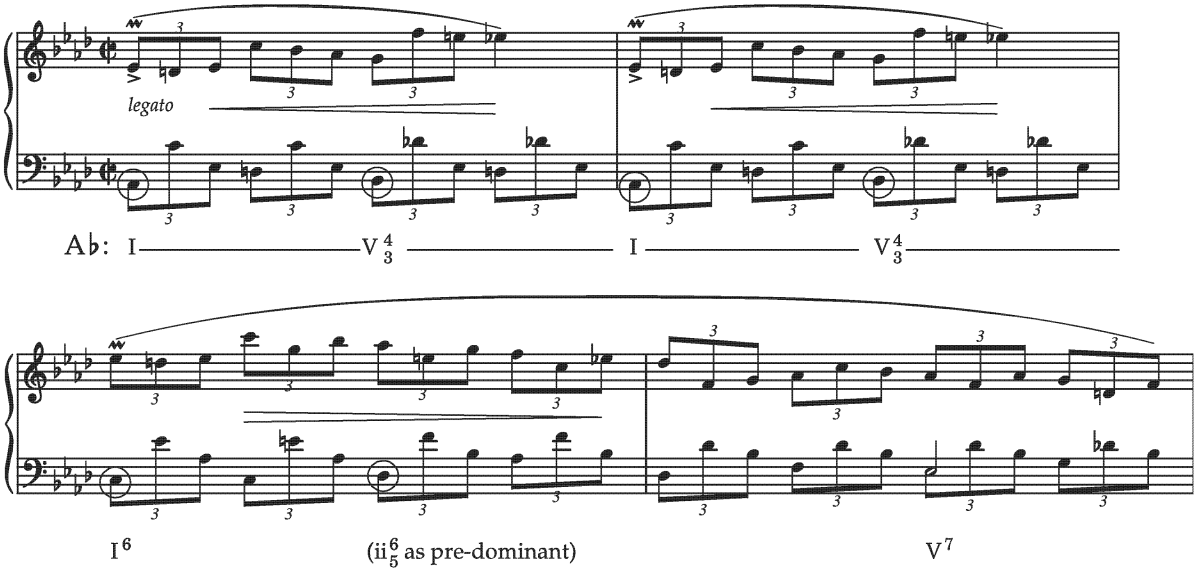
EXAMPLE 8.7 Harmonic Paradigms in Chopin

A1. Chopin, Etude in F major, op. 10, no. 8, BI 42

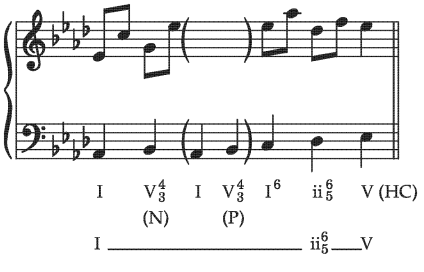
A2.



B1. Chopin, Impromptu no. 1 in A♭ major, op. 29, BI 110



B2.



WORKBOOK 1
8.1–8.3

The progression in the etude is simple: an eight-measure phrase that consists entirely of tonic in root position, a neighboring V^6_5 that extends the tonic, and a return to tonic. In Example 8.7B, the tonic is also prolonged by linear chords. In mm. 1–3, two instances of V^4_3 help prolong the tonic—the first as a neighboring chord, the second as a passing chord. The cadential dominant arrives in the second half of m. 4. Indeed, these crucial harmonies are the skeleton that composers from various stylistic periods flesh out with their own distinctive figurations.

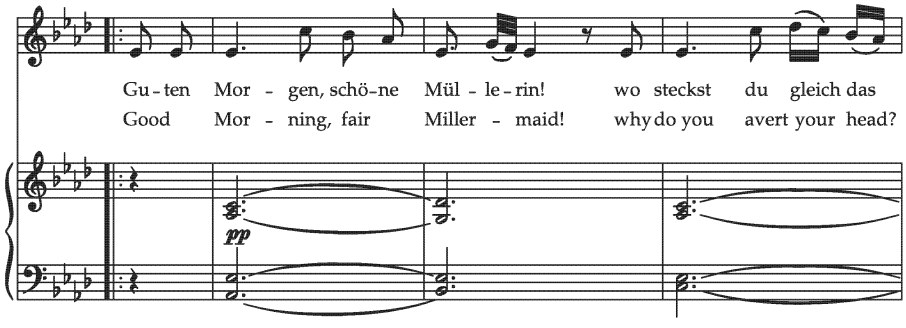
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

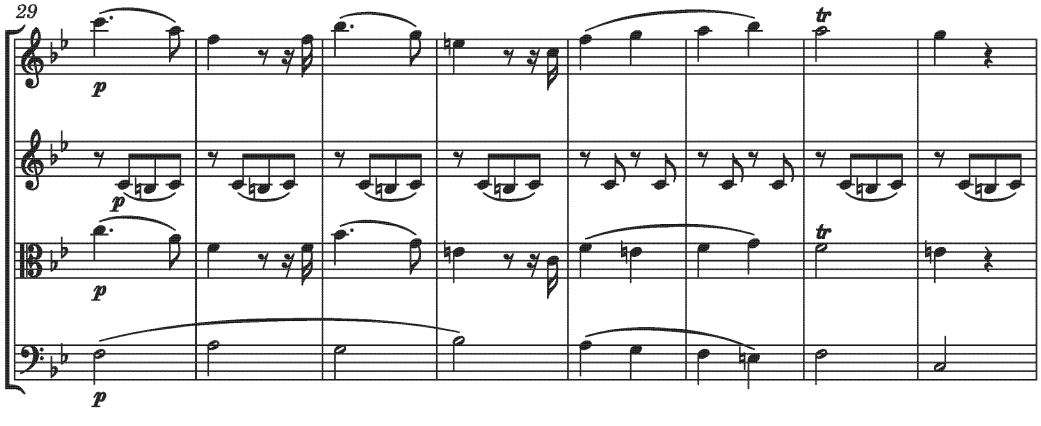
8.1 Analytical Snapshots

Each of the following short excerpts contains expansions of the tonic and the dominant using inversions of V^7. Expect to encounter vii^{o6} and V^6 as well. Analyze each, using two levels where appropriate.

A. Schubert,"Morgengruss," from *Die schöne Müllerin*



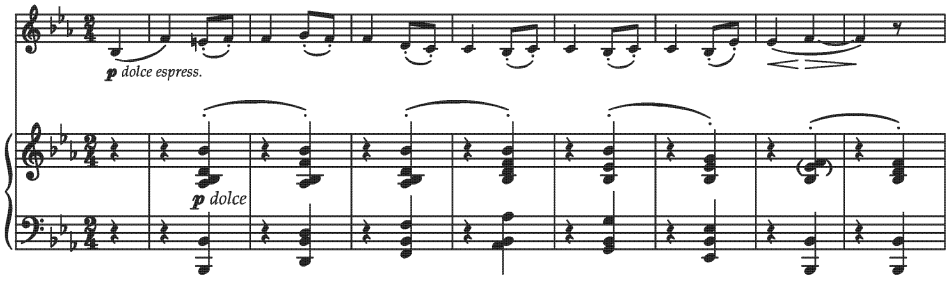
B. Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 172, *Allegro assai*



SOLVED/APP 6

C. Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 3 in E♭ major, op. 12, no. 3, *Adagio con molta espressione*

D. Brahms, Horn Trio, *Andante*
What harmony is prolonged in mm. 1–4?



SOLVED/APP 6

E. Thomas, Gavotte, from *Mignon*

WRITING

8.2 Spelling Inversions of V^7

Given here are unordered inversions of V^7 chords. The first boldfaced pitch is the bass. Determine the *major* key in which each chord functions as V^7, and, using figured bass, provide the inversion based on the given bass note.

Example: Given: **G♯**–*D*–*B*–*E Answer: A major:* V^6_5

A. **F**–D–**B♭**–**A♭** _____

B. **C**–**A♭**–**E♭**–**G♭** _____

C. **F**–B–D–G _____

SOLVED/APP 6 D. **A♭**–F–**D♭**–**C♭** _____

E. **D**–**G♯**–E–B _____

SOLVED/APP 6 F. **A**–F–C–**E♭** _____

G. **A**–D–C–**F♯** _____

SOLVED/APP 6 H. **A**–**D♯**–**F♯**–B _____

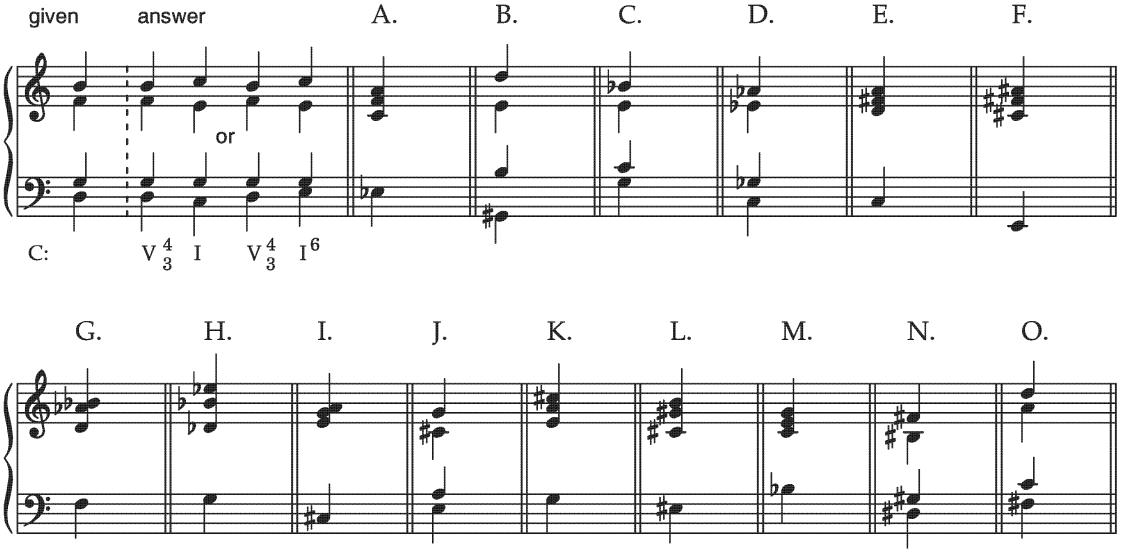
I. **G♯**–**C♯**–**E♯**–B _____

J. **E♭**–**C♭**–**G♭**–**B𝄫** _____

8.3 Resolving Inversions of V^7

Determine the key in which each inverted V^7 chord functions. Then resolve each to a form of the tonic chord. Since V^4_3 may resolve either to I^6 or I, include both possibilities. Examples A–F are in major keys, and G–O are in minor keys.

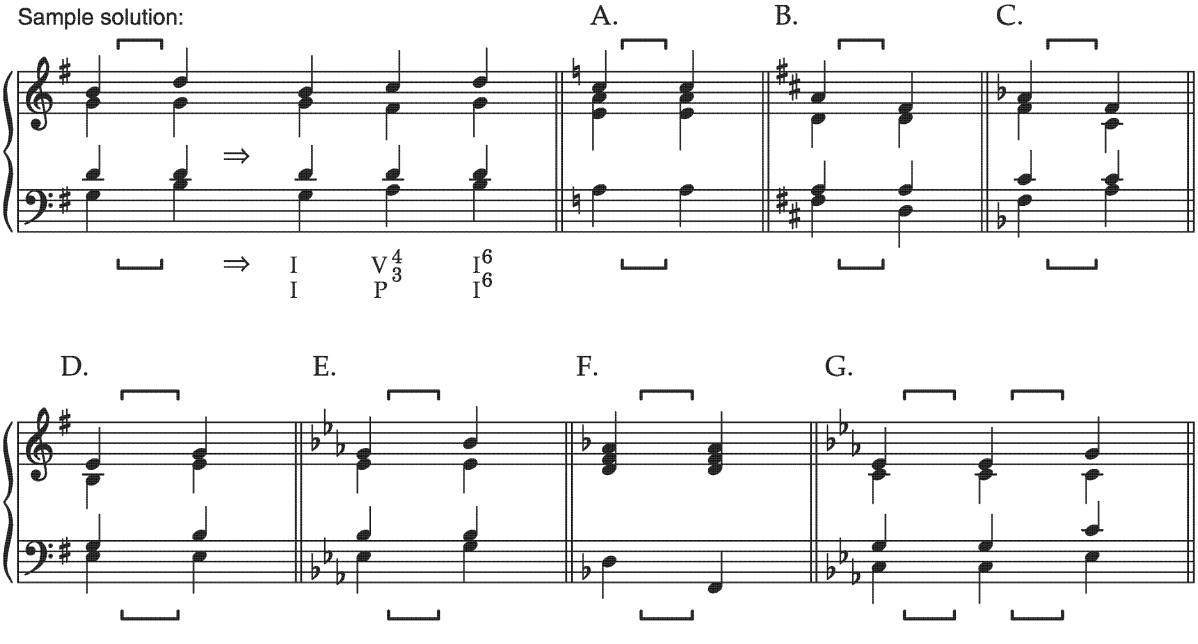
SOLVED/APP 6



8.4 Harmonic Paradigms: Adding Inversions of V^7

Determine the key; then use inversions of V^7 to create P, N, or IN bass motions that expand the tonic. Analyze.

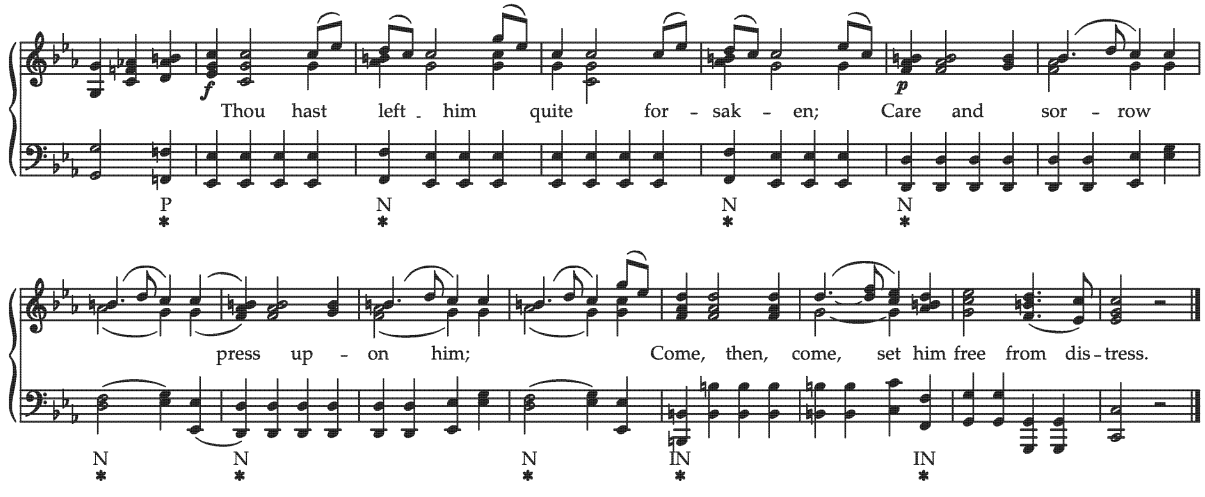
SOLVED/APP 6



Leading-Tone Seventh Chords: vii°7 and viiø7

A glance at the bass line of Gluck's *Orfeo* in Example 8.8 reveals contrapuntal expansions of the tonic similar to inversions of V^7. However, when you listen to the example, you will hear that each neighboring and passing sonority is a form of $vii^{\circ 7}$. The $vii^{\circ 7}$ and its inversions are much more dissonant than V^7 and its inversions. This is because $vii^{\circ 7}$ contains the interval of the diminished seventh as well as two tritones (in C minor, B–F and D–A♭). Further, V^7 shares one common tone with the tonic ($\hat{5}$), while $vii^{\circ 7}$ does not share any common tones with the tonic ($\hat{7}$, $\hat{2}$, $\hat{4}$, $\hat{6}$).

EXAMPLE 8.8 Gluck, *Orfeo*, act 1, no. 1



The $vii^{\circ 7}$ and its inversions function the same way as V^7 and its inversions because they share three pitches ($\hat{7}$, $\hat{2}$, and $\hat{4}$). $vii^{\circ 7}$ and V^7 are interchangeable, as follows:

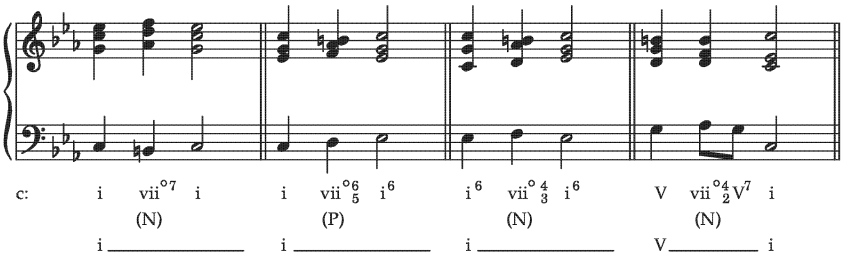
- $vii^{\circ 7}$ behaves just like V^6_5—it is a neighboring chord to root-position tonic.
- $vii^{\circ 6}_5$ behaves like V^4_3—it is a passing chord between i and i^6.
- $vii^{\circ}\ {}^4_3$ behaves like V^4_2—it is a passing chord between V and i^6, or it is a neighboring chord to i^6.
- $vii^{\circ 4}_2$ is rare and usually is a neighboring chord to root-position V^7.

The diminished seventh chord appears more often in minor-mode compositions because the chord appears within the minor scale. Finally, the diminished seventh provides support of $\hat{6}$, a soprano scale degree that we have not harmonized before and that is particularly expressive.

Example 8.9A shows the contrapuntal functions of $vii^{\circ 7}$ and its inversions. Example 8.9B compares V^7 with $vii^{\circ 7}$; unfilled noteheads show common tones, and filled noteheads show the pitch difference between V^7 and $vii^{\circ 7}$. Composers often take advantage of this subtle semitone shift between $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{6}$, as we will see. Finally, Example 8.9C compares and contrasts V^7 and $vii^{\circ 7}$ in chart form.

EXAMPLE 8.9 Contrapuntal Functions of vii°7 and Its Inversions

A.



B.

C.

vii°7 chords . . .

- expand tonic
- occur in minor keys
- have $\hat{7}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{4}$ plus $\hat{6}$
- share no notes with tonic
- are highly unstable because they have two tritones, $\hat{7}$–$\hat{4}$ and $\hat{2}$–$\hat{6}$

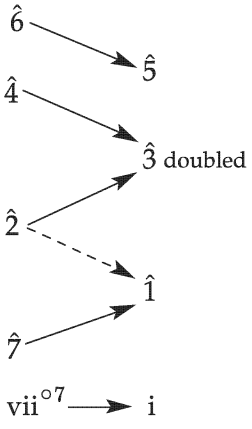
V7 chords . . .

- expand tonic
- occur in major and minor keys
- have $\hat{5}$ plus $\hat{7}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{4}$
- share one note with tonic
- are somewhat unstable because they have one tritone, $\hat{7}$–$\hat{4}$

Voice Leading for vii°7

The best way to approach writing vii°7 is first to think of the inversions of V7 and then to substitute $\hat{6}$ for $\hat{5}$. *Note:* Correct resolution of vii°7 and its inversions to tonic usully results in a doubled third. Since all notes in vii°7 are tendency tones, the following is a guide to resolving the vii°7 chord to tonic (see Example 8.10):

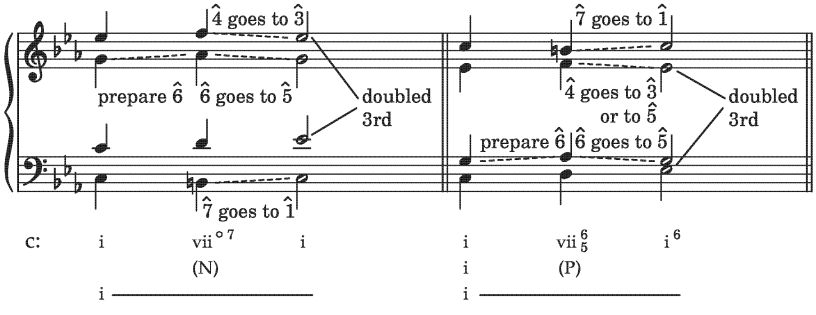
EXAMPLE 8.10



- Prepare $\hat{6}$—approach by step or with a common tone.
- $\hat{6}$ moves down to $\hat{5}$.
- $\hat{4}$ moves down to $\hat{3}$.
- $\hat{2}$ usually moves up to $\hat{3}$ (resulting in the common doubled third in the tonic chord), or it can move down to $\hat{1}$.
- $\hat{7}$ moves up to $\hat{1}$.

Example 8.11 demonstrates these voice-leading guidelines. Example 8.9 confirms that these guidelines are consistent regardless of inversion.

EXAMPLE 8.11 Voice Leading vii°7 and Its Inversions



Alternatively, consider the resolution of vii°7 and its inversions from the perspective of chord-tone pairs and their resolution. For example, the interval of the diminished seventh (or augmented second when the chord is inverted) between $\hat{7}$ and $\hat{6}$ must resolve by contrary motion to $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{5}$. Further, resolve the tritones normally: A diminished fifth contracts and an augmented fourth expands. (Remember that resolution to tonic chords with doubled thirds is common.)

Just like V^7 and its inversions, vii°7 and its inversions often appear in combination, not only with one another but also with V^7 and its inversions.

Example 8.12 presents vii°^{7} as part of an expansion of tonic (in m. 4). In m. 5, vii°$^4_3$ moves to vii°^{7} and on to V^7 before resolving to tonic. Given that the dominant function controls mm. 5–8, vii°^{7} is a substitute for V^7 rather than an elaboration of the tonic. Thus, because vii°^{7} is a contrapuntal chord that usually expands the tonic, it occurs in a metrically weak position.

EXAMPLE 8.12 Jean-Marie Leclair l'aîné, Sonata in G minor for Two Violins and Basso Continuo, op. 4, no. 5, *Andante*

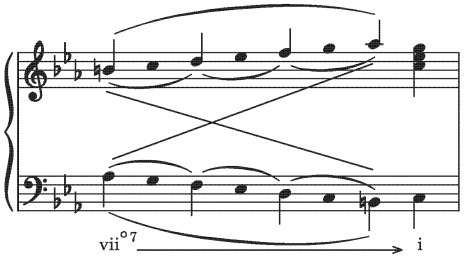
Analytical Interlude

A compelling example of vii°^{7} occurs in Mozart's E♭-major symphony (Example 8.13). Each of the four possible positions of vii°^{7} occurs, with tonic playing a subordinate role in the passage. Beginning with the highly unstable vii°$^4_2$ and falling through $^4_3$, $^6_5$, and finally ^{7}, inversions of the tonic (C) occur as passing chords that help to extend the dramatic vii°^{7}, which functions as an upbeat gesture that leads eventually to the arrival on C minor. Notice that the outer voices move in contrary motion, each spanning the interval of the diminished seventh (B♮–A♭). Since the initial interval is an augmented second (A♭–B♮) and the final interval a diminished seventh (B♮–A♭), a voice exchange results (Example 8.13B).

EXAMPLE 8.13

A. Mozart, Symphony in E♭ major, K. 132, *Andante*

B. Reduction

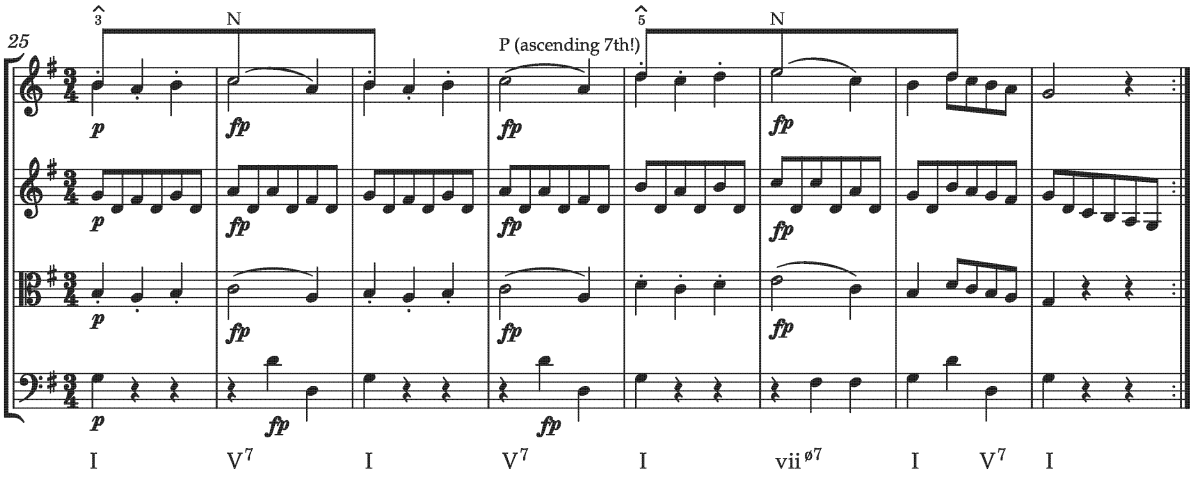


vii^{ø7}

The leading-tone seventh chord in major is a half-diminished seventh chord (e.g., B–D–F–A in C major). The minor seventh between $\hat{7}$ and $\hat{6}$ is much less dissonant than the diminished seventh found in the fully diminished seventh chord. However, because of its less goal-oriented tendencies, the vii^{ø7} chord in major occurs much less often than its minor-mode counterpart. In fact, composers often import the fully diminished seventh chord from minor into their major-mode works by borrowing $\flat\hat{6}$ from the parallel minor, a technique discussed in Chapter 21.

Example 8.14 illustrates vii^{ø7} used to expand the tonic. Here, vii^{ø7} appears as part of a larger neighboring process that unfolds in the melody: The line B–C–B (in which C is harmonized by V^6_5) is transposed up a third to D–E–D. Because no inversion of V^7 contains $\hat{6}$, Mozart must use the vii^{ø7}. Notice also the unusual treatment of the seventh of the root-position V^7 chord in m. 28: It *rises*, rather than falls, in order to pass up to the D in m. 29.

EXAMPLE 8.14 Mozart, Symphony in G major, K. 97, Trio



The vii^{ø7} appears much more often in root position than in any of its inversions. Follow the part-writing rules for vii^{o7}.

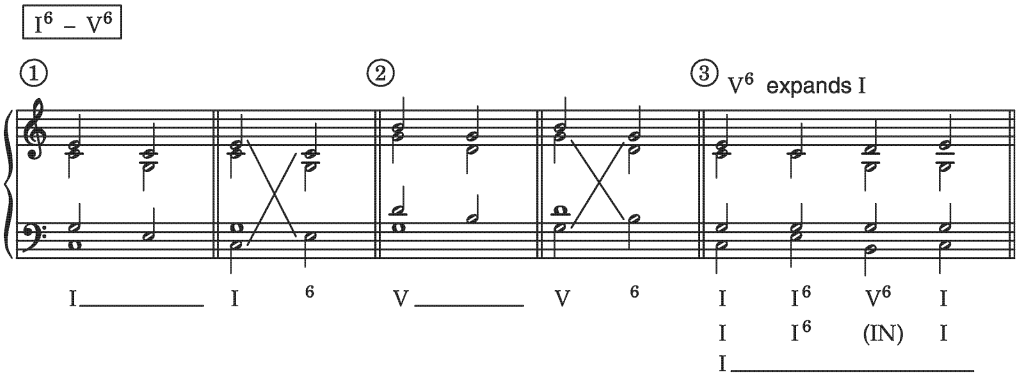
Summary of Contrapuntal Expansions

Example 8.15 presents a summary of the various contrapuntal expansions of tonic and dominant that involve chordal skips, passing, neighboring, and their combinations. These involve the following chords:

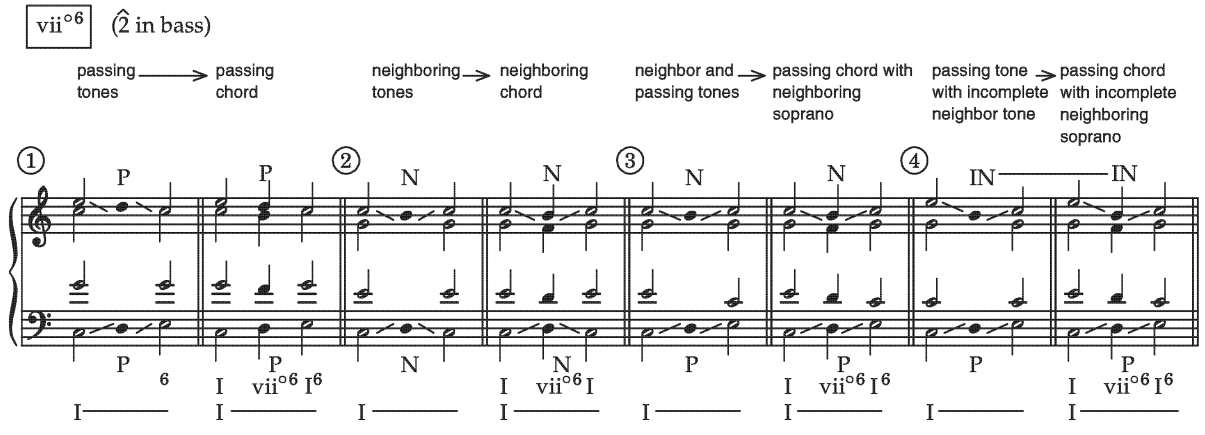
I and I^6	V^7, V$^6_5$, V$^4_3$, and V$^4_2$
V and V^6	vii^{o6}, vii^{o7} (vii^{ø7}), vii$^{o6}_5$, vii$^{o4}_3$, and vii$^{o4}_2$
IV^6	

EXAMPLE 8.15 Summary of Contrapuntal Expansions

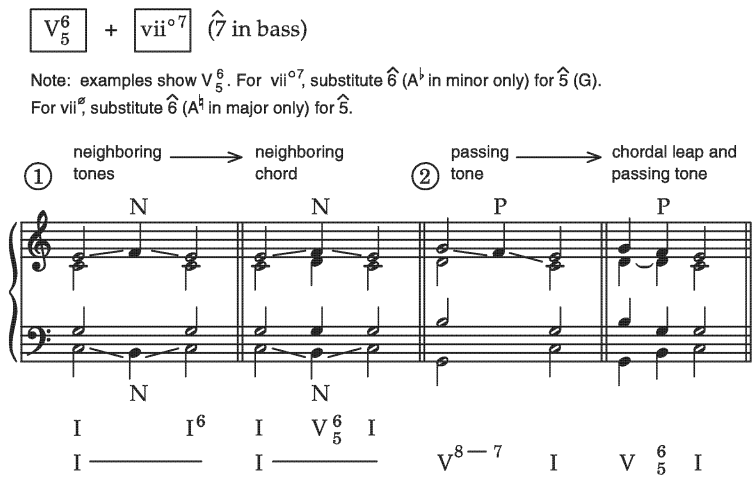
A.



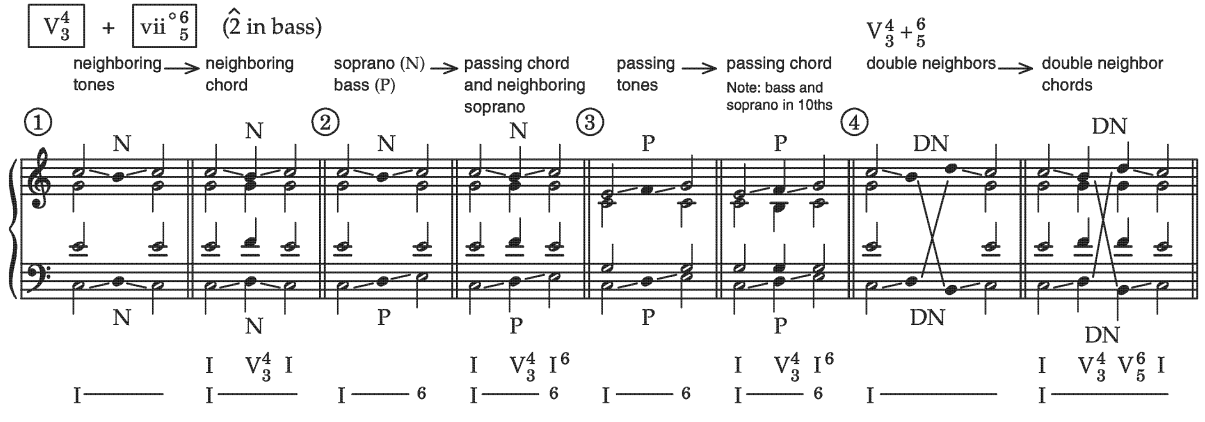
B.


vii°6 (2̂ in bass)
passing tones → passing chord
neighboring tones → neighboring chord
neighbor and passing tones → passing chord with neighboring soprano
passing tone with incomplete neighbor tone → passing chord with incomplete neighboring soprano
1 2 3 4
P P N N N N IN IN
P P N N P P P P
6
I vii°6 I6 I vii°6 I I vii°6 I6 I vii°6 I6
I I I I I I I I

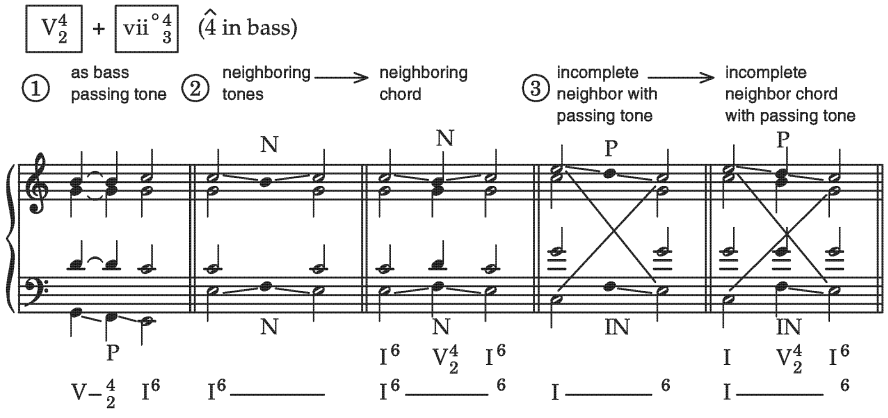
C.


V6/5 + vii°7 (7̂ in bass)
Note: examples show V6/5. For vii°7, substitute 6̂ (A♭ in minor only) for 5̂ (G).
For viiø7, substitute 6̂ (A♮ in major only) for 5̂.
neighboring tones → neighboring chord
passing tone → chordal leap and passing tone
1 2
N N P P
N N
I I6 I V6/5 I
I I V8—7 I V 6/5 I

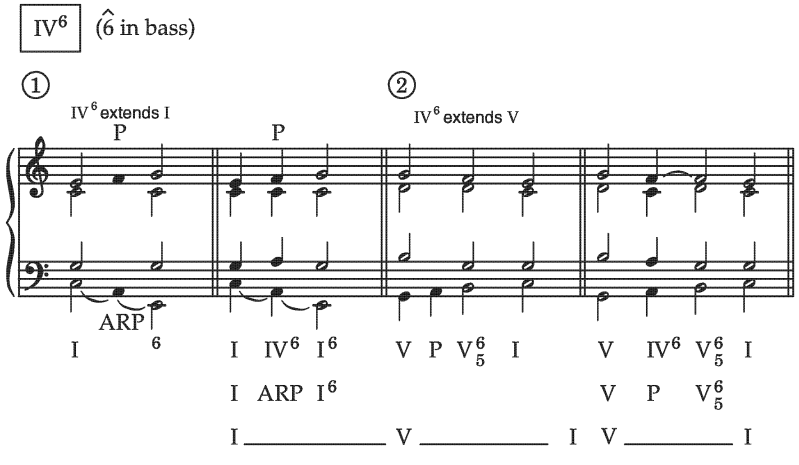
D.


V4/3 + vii°6/5 (2̂ in bass)
neighboring tones → neighboring chord
soprano (N) bass (P) → passing chord and neighboring soprano
passing tones → passing chord
Note: bass and soprano in 10ths
V4/3 + 6/5
double neighbors → double neighbor chords
1 2 3 4
N N N N P P DN DN
N N P P P P DN DN
I V4/3 I I V4/3 I6 I V4/3 I6 I V4/3 V6/5 I
I I 6 I 6 I 6 I I

E.



F.



Reduction and Elaboration: Compositional and Performance Implications

This chapter and Chapters 5–7, have explored the complementary processes of **reduction** and **elaboration**. To illustrate reduction, a florid example from the literature was simplified so that only the essential outer-voice counterpoint and homophonic inner voices remained. In the example of elaboration, a skeletal two-voice counterpoint or four-voice homophonic texture was embellished with florid accompaniments, embellishing tones, and the like.

We now begin to apply these concepts to your specific instrument, particularly melodic instruments (i.e., winds, brass, and strings). Internalizing and transferring this knowledge to your own repertoire is the ultimate goal of these exercises. The elaborating process lets you be creative and encourages you to improvise your solutions. The reductive process lets you apply your analytical and aural skills to discover the melodic, contrapuntal, and harmonic commonality in tonal pieces.

Reduction

To see how the reduction process can be applied to a melody instrument like the violin, consider the orchestral excerpt in Example 8.16. With its seven staves, three different clefs, dense texture, and highly varied rhythmic complexity, this excerpt looks formidable. However, following a specific procedure will let you tackle any score and find its basic harmonic structure and voice leading.

EXAMPLE 8.16 Mozart, Symphony no. 28 in C major, K. 200, *Allegro*

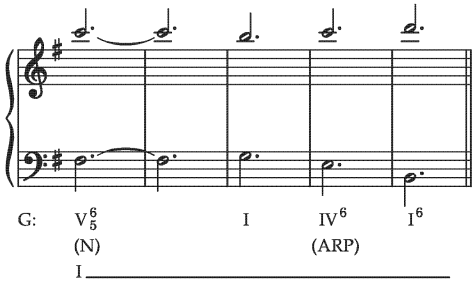
First, determine the key. This is necessary because an example may not be taken from the opening of a movement but may be from an interior portion

of the movement, where a key other than the main key of the movement occurs. In the Mozart excerpt, we see that G major is the key because of the introduction of the accidental (F♯) and the emphasis on dominant and tonic harmonies.

Second, we determine the function of each harmony, beginning with the harmonic rhythm, which seems to change once per measure. Focus on the accented bass notes, which are usually the lowest-sounding pitches. Large scores often use a great deal of pitch doubling, especially between the strings and the woodwinds. So it is usually easiest to focus on the four string parts (violins 1 and 2, viola, and cello/bass) and merely glance at the winds to confirm that they are doubling the strings. You must then reduce out the embellishing tones, including dissonant as well as consonant types. Here the chords unfold as follows: V^6_5 (two measures)—I—IV^6—I^6. This contrapuntal progression expands I (G major), first with a neighbor figure (F♯–G in the bass) and then with a descending arpeggiation (G–E–B in the bass).

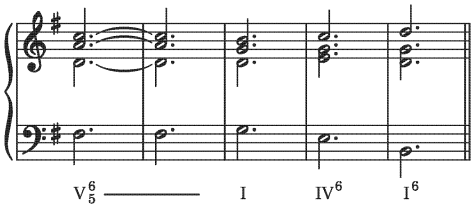
Third, find the spacing of the upper voices and determine how these voices lead from one chord to another. Begin with the soprano in order to establish the outer-voice counterpoint, and notice a lot of activity around C in both the first violin and the upper winds (Example 8.17). C is the seventh of the dominant; as such, it should resolve by descending to B, the third of the tonic chord, just as the bass F♯ (as the leading tone) must resolve to $\hat{1}$. Indeed, Mozart follows the standard voice leading. Continue this process to see that the main soprano pitches, doubled in high strings and winds, are C–D, as shown in Example 8.17. This very same counterpoint was presented earlier (e.g., Example 7.14).

EXAMPLE 8.17 Mozart, Symphony in C major (reduction)



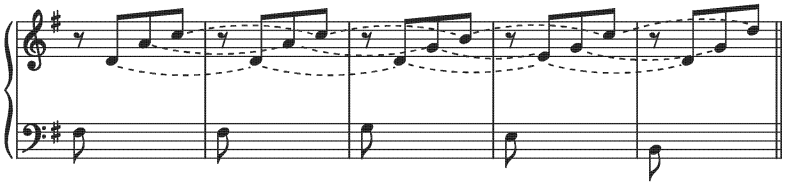
Fourth, we add the inner voices. But first review the outer-voice counterpoint in order to have a general idea of what pitches are missing in the chord and, therefore, what to expect to find in the actual composition. Given that the root (D) and the fifth (A) are missing in the outer-voice counterpoint of the V^6_5 chord, you should expect those pitches to be prominent in the remaining instruments. Indeed, missing A appears immediately beneath the soprano's C in winds and strings, and the root, D, appears on the downbeat in four other instruments. Now trace the voice leading from one chord to the other, as shown in Example 8.18 (note that the upper voices are notated one octave lower).

EXAMPLE 8.18 Adding Inner Voices to the Mozart Reduction



Mozart's surface embellishments have now been reduced to the generating four-voice structure; you should play it on the piano. However, this chordal structure cannot be played on a melody instrument, so, we must "horizontalize" the homophonic chords, as shown in Example 8.19, by playing them as arpeggiations. Note, however, that the strict four-part voice leading in Example 8.18 is maintained. You need not play your arpeggiations within the meter, and you should find a register that suits your instrument (e.g., in order to play Example 8.19 on the violin, you would have to transpose it up one octave, since the bass lies below the range of the instrument). When you reduce an embellished score from the literature, you must be flexible, since you will need to omit embellishing tones, normalize the registers of pitches, infer the existence of missing pitches, etc.

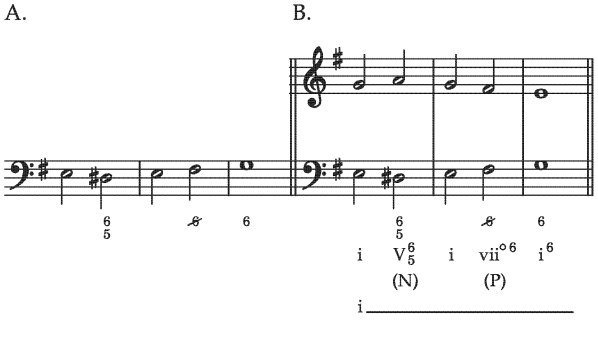
EXAMPLE 8.19 "Horizontalizing" a Chorale Texture for Performance on a Melody Instrument



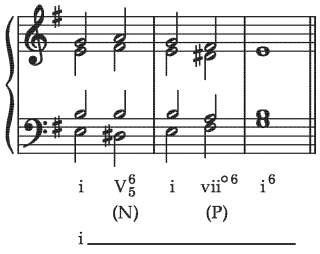
Elaboration

The **elaboration** process involves three types of models: a four-voice chord progression, a soprano melody (with or without given roman numerals), and a figured bass (with or without a given soprano). Example 8.20 provides the third type of model, a figured bass (without a given soprano).

EXAMPLE 8.20 Stages in Embellishing a Figured Bass



C.



Example 8.20A contains five bass notes and figures that could be the opening of a progression. Again, use a multistage procedure to bring this figured bass to life.

Step 1 (Example 8.20B). Determine the chord progression based on the figures, and add a soprano voice. Again, we encounter an expansion of the tonic, one that begins with a neighbor and then passes up to i^6 ($i—V^6_5—i—vii^{o6}—i^6$).

Step 2 (Example 8.20C). Add the inner voices to create a four-part structure.

Step 3 (Example 8.21). We are now at the performing stage, where you must horizontalize the progression into broken chords. However, whereas this was the end of the exercise when reducing the score, the arpeggiation of the chords marks the beginning of the elaboration process.

EXAMPLE 8.21 Performing a Horizontalized Figured Bass

There are many ways to play these arpeggiations. In Example 8.21A, only an ascending arpeggiation occurs, but Example B incorporates changes of direction that align with the strong beats. In Example 8.21C, a mix of directions is possible; in Example D, triplets replace the sixteenth notes. Note that if you choose to use triplets, you must be conscious of the need to leave out one of the chord tones in seventh chords, even if they are inverted. For example, in the V_5^6 chord (measure 1, beat 2), only the third, the root, and the seventh occur. In Example 8.21E, an alternation of *arco* and *pizzicato* differentiates the bass and the upper voices. In Example 8.21F, shorter note values increase the possibilities not only of contour, but also for the addition of embellishing tones (in this case neighbors and passing tones). Finally, you can increase the duration of each chord to slow the harmonic rhythm to two or even more times its given length.

Particularly expansive examples of slowing the harmonic rhythm occur in many of Corelli's concerto grossi; an excerpt of one in the key of D major is given as Example 8.22. Note the single tonic harmony that unfolds over eight measures.

EXAMPLE 8.22 Corelli, Concerto Grosso in D major, op. 6, no. 7, *Allegro*

Summary of Part 2

In Part 2, you have learned that a great deal of music can be made from tonic and dominant harmonies. In addition to their use as vertical harmonic pillars, their contrapuntal expansion allows them to participate in melodic construction. Melodic passing tones and neighbor tones in the outer voices, when harmonized, become passing and neighboring chords. In a similar manner, the succession of these chords is often dependent on melodic processes.

We saw that dissonance and consonance still regulate musical flow and that inverted triads, derived from melodic passing and neighboring motions, are effective means for creating musical drive. The six-three chord is a versatile sonority often used to expand the tonic or the dominant function, or to lead from the tonic to the dominant, or vice versa. We also used seventh chords, including those built on $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{7}$, both of which served to expand the tonic. We discovered that these underlying tonal principles and processes are not limited to any one style period but can be found in musical examples written by composers over three centuries. Our examples have been taken from the music of Bach, Mozart, Beethoven, Schubert, Chopin, and Brahms.

WORKBOOK 1
8.4–8.5

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

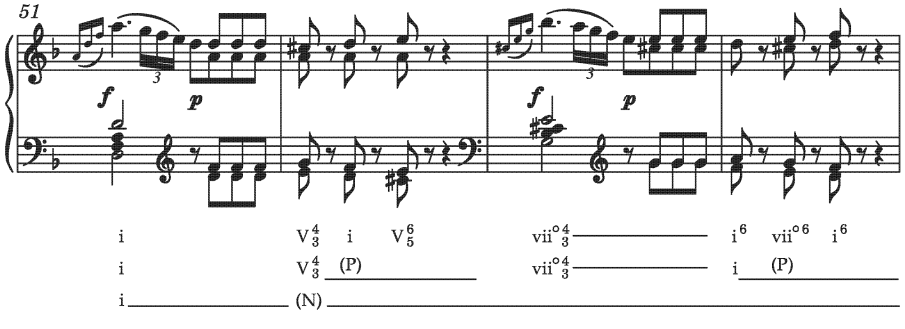
ANALYSIS

8.5 Analytical Snapshots

Each of the following short excerpts contains expansions of the tonic using vii°^{7} and vii^{ø7}. Expect to encounter other chords that expand tonic, including vii°^{6}, V^6, and inversions of V^7 as well. Analyze each, using two levels where appropriate.

Sample solution:

Mozart, Rondo, in F major K. 494



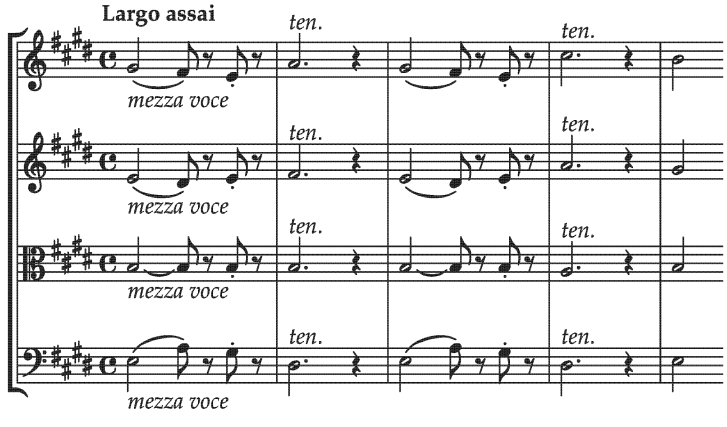
A. Strauss, "Ach lieb, ich muss nun scheiden," op. 21, no. 3

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Johann Helmich Roman, Flute Sonata in B minor, op. 1, no. 6, *Grave*

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Haydn, String Quartet in G minor, op. 74, no. 3, ii, *Largo assai*



D. Wagner, *Das Rheingold*, scene 1

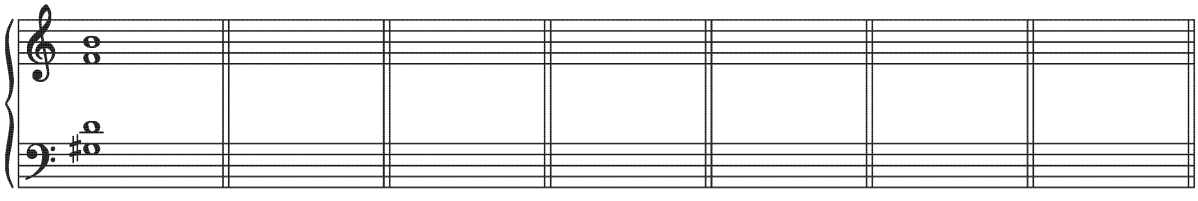
8.6 Spelling vii°7 and vii⌀7

Complete each leading-tone seventh chord.

A. in d minor: vii°7	D	F		
B. in e minor: vii°7			A	
SOLVED/APP 6 C. in f minor: vii°$^6_5$		B♭		
D. in c♯ minor: vii°$^4_3$	F♯			
SOLVED/APP 6 E. in A major: vii⌀$^6_5$				G♯

8.7 Notate each leading-tone seventh chord in open position. (Use accidentals rather than a key signature.)

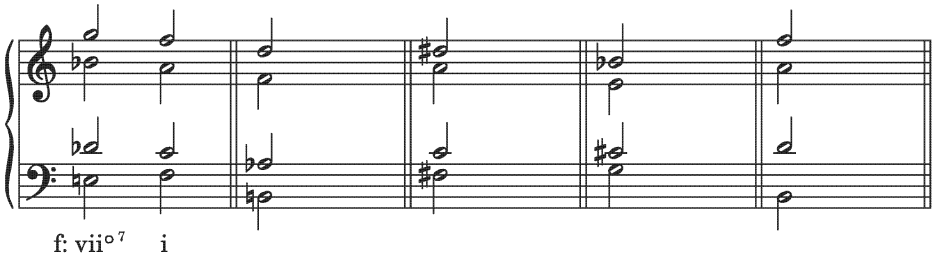
SOLVED/APP 6



8.8 Identify the key and analyze and resolve each leading-tone seventh chord.

SOLVED/APP 6

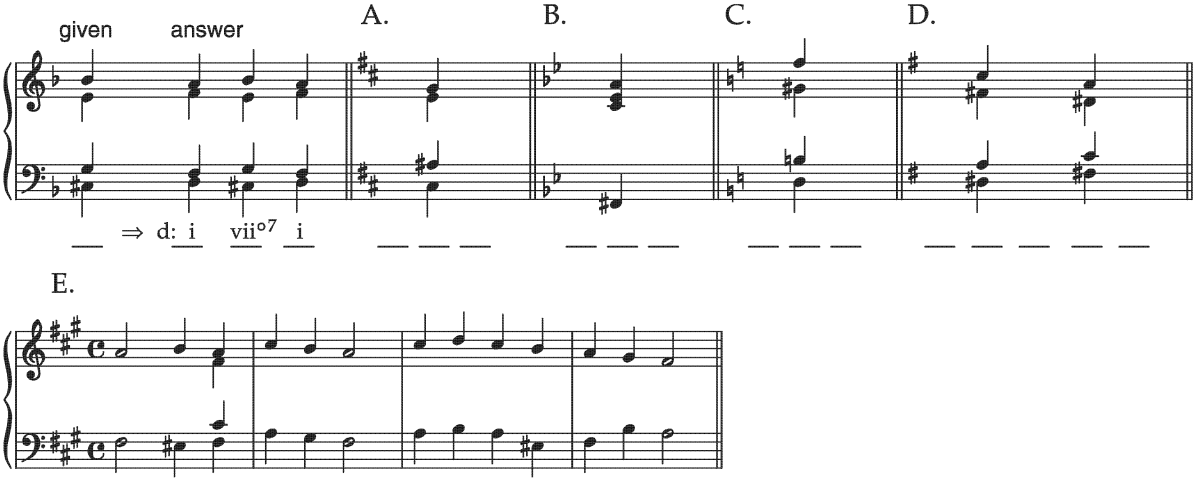
Sample solution:



8.9 Resolving Inversions of vii^7 (and Inversions of V^7)

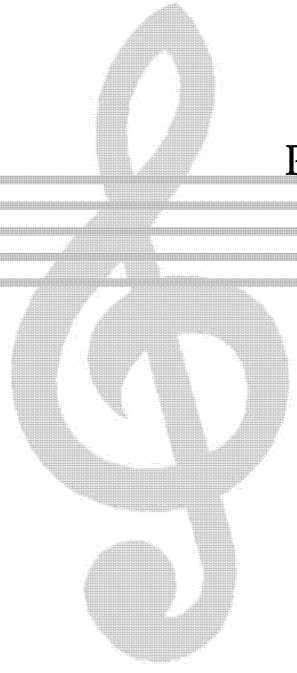
For parts A–E, determine the *minor* key in which each inverted vii^{o7} chord functions. Then precede and follow each with a form of the tonic chord. For part E, add inner voices based on the implications of the given outer voices.

SOLVED/APP 6



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- elaboration and reduction
- evaded cadence
- harmonic paradigms
- part exchange



PART 3

A NEW HARMONIC FUNCTION, THE PHRASE MODEL, AND ADDITIONAL MELODIC AND HARMONIC EMBELLISHMENTS

In Part 3 we will explore how composers incorporate the third and final harmonic function, the pre-dominant. This harmonic function introduces a new way of enhancing the listener's expectations and also new ways of fulfilling or even thwarting those expectations. You will also learn new techniques for elaborating both melodic lines and harmonic functions, as well as techniques composers use to drive their pieces forward and unify them. Finally, you will learn about a new type of melodic figuration predicated on metric accent and chromaticism.

CHAPTER 9

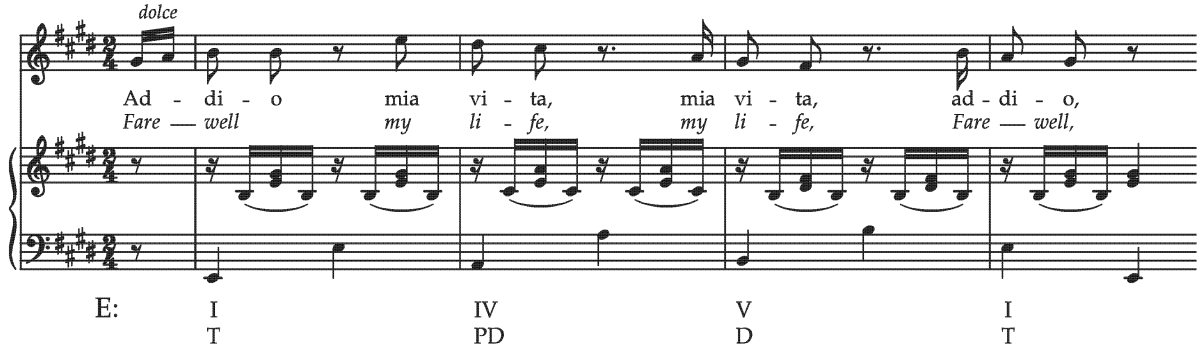
The Pre-Dominant Function and the Phrase Model

The Pre-Dominant Function

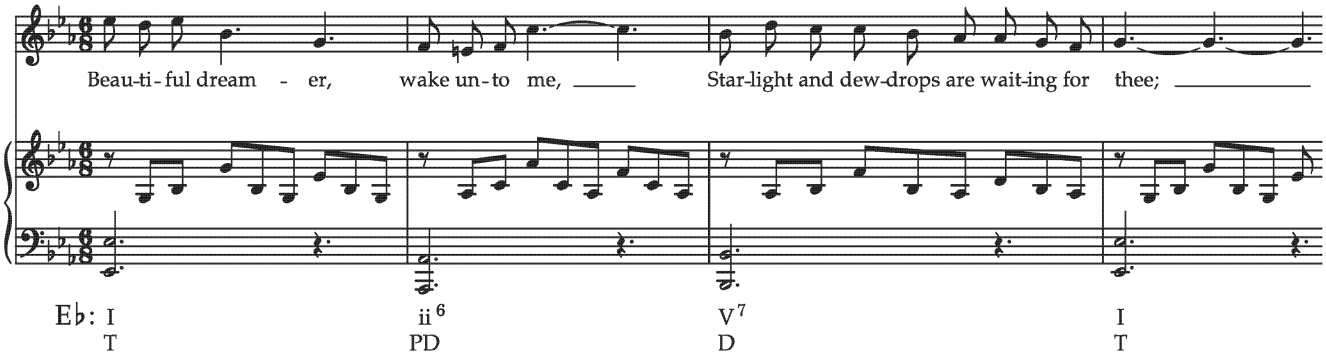
Whereas tonic and dominant functions are sufficient to create coherent musical passages, a third harmonic function adds a new dimension to our sense of harmonic tension and resolution. Each excerpt in Example 9.1 contains independent sonorities that act as connective tissue between the tonic and the dominant. We call these chords **pre-dominants** because they precede the dominant. The most important pre-dominant chords are IV and ii, which we see in Example 9.1. Listen to the intensified harmonic drive that results from these pre-dominant chords. Note that we now add the symbols T, PD, and D to represent the three functions of "tonic," "pre-dominant" and "dominant" in the second-level analysis.

EXAMPLE 9.1 The Pre-Dominant in Context

A. Meyerbeer, "Se non ti moro allato," *Sei canzonette italiane*, no. 5



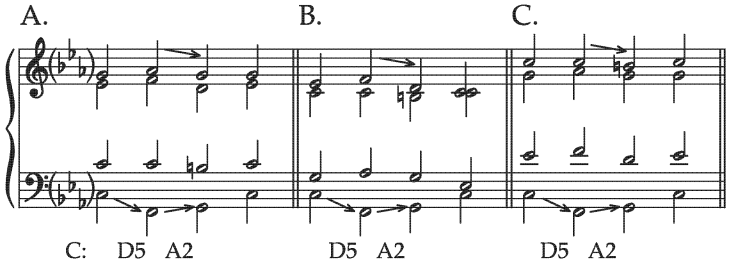
B. Foster, "Beautiful Dreamer"



C. Verdi, Overture to *La forza del destino*

The Subdominant (IV in Major, iv in Minor)

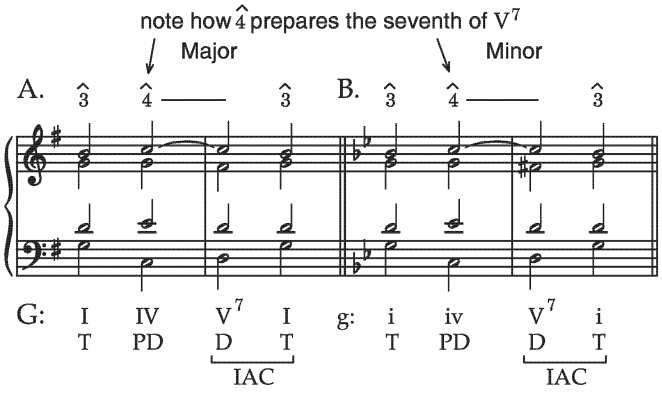
EXAMPLE 9.2



Composers frequently choose the subdominant as the pre-dominant chord because the I–IV motion proceeds by descending fifth (the most convincing root motion in tonal music) and the bass's ascent from $\hat{4}$ to

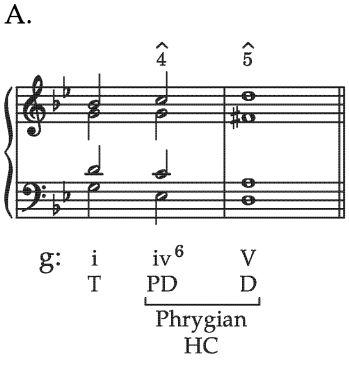
$\hat{5}$ creates a smooth motion to the dominant (Example 9.2). As the bass ascends by step, the upper voices usually descend, to avoid voice-leading problems. Example 9.3 shows how IV can move to V^7. Note in Example 9.3 that the soprano's $\hat{4}$ prepares the seventh of the upcoming dominant.

EXAMPLE 9.3 Part Writing IV

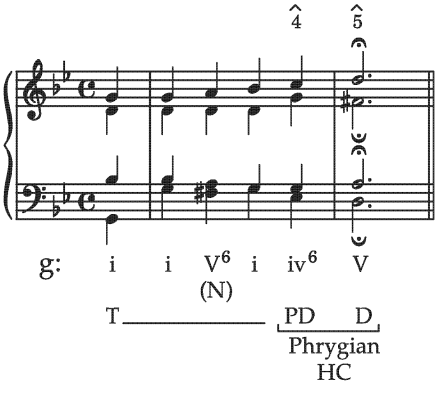


Approaching V from below (i.e., $\hat{4}$ up to $\hat{5}$ in the bass) is not the only way to incorporate a pre-dominant IV within a progression. Motion from IV^6 to V, allowing the bass to fall from $\hat{6}$ to $\hat{5}$, is very useful, especially in the minor mode, where the powerful falling half step intensifies tonal motion to the dominant. This resulting special type of half cadence, in which iv^6 moves to V, is known as a **Phrygian half cadence** (Example 9.4A). Listen to the characteristic sound of the Phrygian half cadence in Example 9.4B, and note how the upper voice moves from $\hat{4}$ to $\hat{5}$ against the bass's descent from $\hat{6}$ to $\hat{5}$. Given the musical tension of the phrygian half cadence, Baroque composers were predisposed to closing slow inner movements of multimovement works with this cadence, leaving the listener with a strong expectation of tonic to follow in the opening of the next movement. See Example 9.4C.

EXAMPLE 9.4 Phrygian Half Cadence



B. Bach, "Wo soll ich fliehen hin," Cantata no. 5, BWV 5



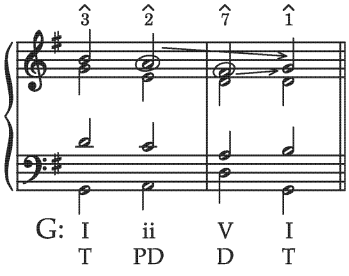
C. Corelli, Violin Sonata in A minor, op. 1, no. 4, *Presto/Adagio*

The Supertonic (ii in Major, ii° in Minor)

The supertonic is the most common pre-dominant chord. There are three main reasons why composers consider the supertonic to be an effective pre-dominant:

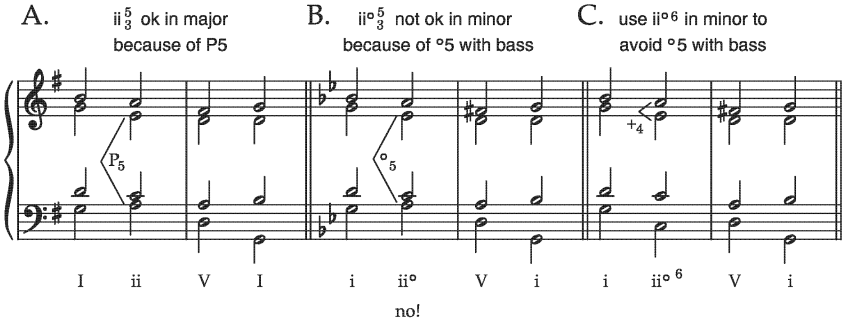
1. The progression ii–V proceeds by descending-fifth motion, the strongest root motion in tonal music.
2. It introduces a striking sonority and modal contrast in progressions:
   a. In major keys, ii is minor. I and V are major.
   b. In minor keys, ii° is diminished. i is minor and V is major.
3. The progression ii–V–I is often set to $\hat{2}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$ in the soprano, versus the less dynamic $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$ when IV functions as the pre-dominant. This melodic motion encircles the upcoming $\hat{1}$, making the cadence especially powerful (Example 9.5).

EXAMPLE 9.5 Soprano Converges on Î



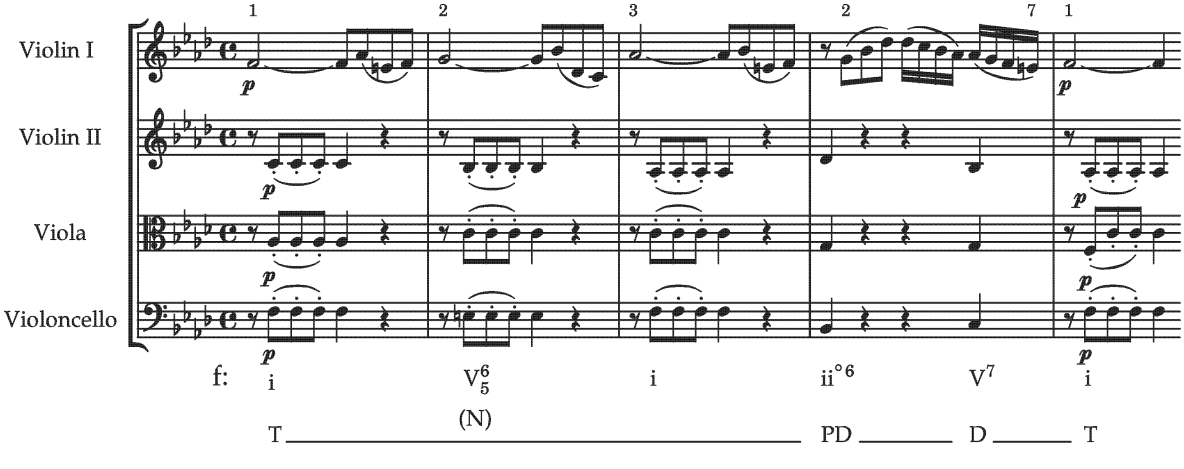
Composers write ii and ii^6 in the major mode, but they almost always use the first inversion ii°^{6} chord in the minor mode. This is because ii° is a dissonant diminished triad, and (as with vii°) any root-position diminished triad has an unsettling effect, given its exposed tritone between the bass and an upper voice. The tritone is softened when first-inversion ii°^{6} is used and $\hat{4}$ occurs in the bass (Example 9.6).

EXAMPLE 9.6 Part Writing ii



The use of ii in first inversion raises an important issue. Recall that root-position ii lacks the smooth melodic step progression to V in the bass that is enjoyed by IV (Example 9.3). The first-inversion supertonic (ii^6) embodies the best attributes of ii and IV: the modal contrast from ii, the descending-fifth root relation of ii–V, and the smooth bass voice leading of $\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ from IV. See Example 9.7.

EXAMPLE 9.7 Haydn, String Quartet in F minor, op. 20, no. 5, Hob III.35, *Allegro moderato*



Pre-Dominants and the Stepwise Ascending Bass

When we first used V^7, we harmonized stepwise motions between $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{5}$ in the *soprano* (see Chapters 6 and 8). With the addition of pre-dominants, you can now write a stepwise line in the *bass* that ascends from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{5}$. Thousands of musical phrases, from the early Baroque to today's popular music, feature this bass line, as shown in Example 9.8. The ascending bass line has an especially powerful effect in major-mode pieces, given that the bass of I^6 ($\hat{3}$) lies only a half step from the pre-dominant on $\hat{4}$.

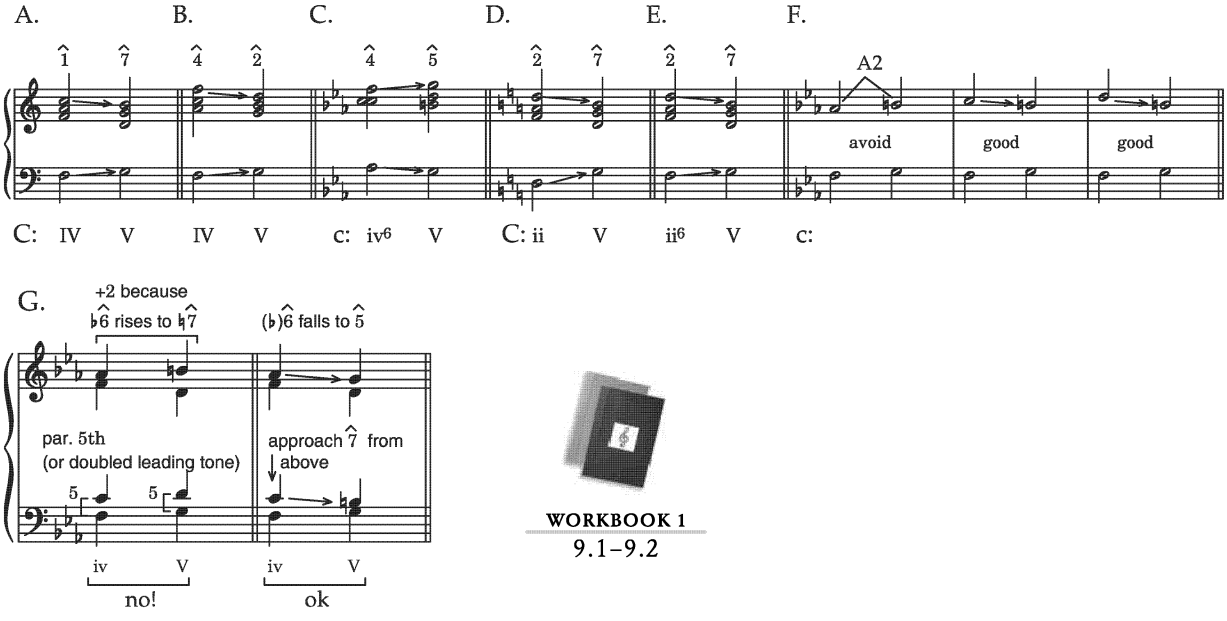
EXAMPLE 9.8 Chopin, Nocturne in F♯ minor, op. 48, no. 2

Part Writing for Pre-Dominants

Keep the following in mind when writing pre-dominants.

1. Pre-dominants move to V: tonic→pre-dominant→dominant→tonic.
2. When the bass of a pre-dominant chord approaches the dominant by step ($\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ or $\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$), the soprano moves in contrary motion with the bass (Example 9.9A–E).
3. Try to double the root of pre-dominant chords that are in root position (Example 9.9D).
4. Try to double the bass ($\hat{4}$) when writing a ii^6 chord (Example 9.9E).
5. In a Phrygian half cadence (iv^6–V), the bass moves from $\hat{6}$ to $\hat{5}$, the soprano usually moves from $\hat{4}$ to $\hat{5}$, and the other voices double $\hat{1}$ to avoid errors in voice leading (Example 9.9C).
6. When writing in a minor key, approach the leading tone ($\hat{7}$) in the V chord from above. Examples 9.9F and G show both problematic and good voice leading.

EXAMPLE 9.9 Pre-Dominant Part-Writing Summary

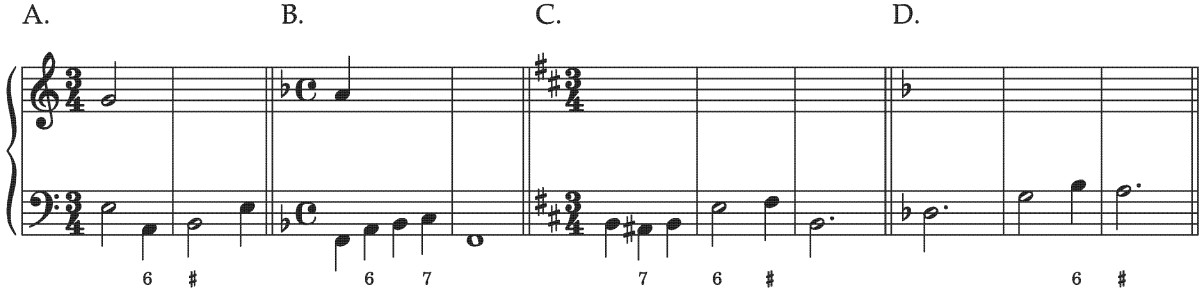


WORKBOOK 1
9.1–9.2

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

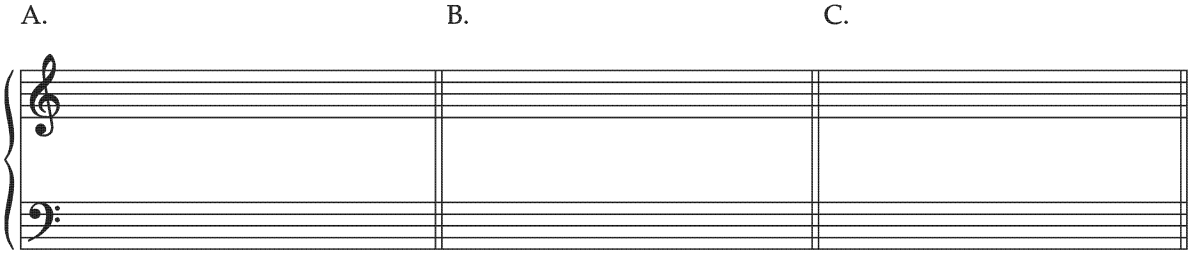
WRITING

9.1
Realize the following figured basses in four voices (SATB). Analyze using first-level roman numerals.



9.2
Write the following progressions in chorale style, using only half notes. Analyze your work using two levels.

A. i–iv–V–i (in D minor)
B. I–ii^6–V^7–I (in F major)
C. i–iv^6–V (in A minor)



9.3

Brain twister: Complete the tasks that follow on a separate sheet of manuscript paper.

A. In no more than five chords in A major incorporate a tonic expansion, a PD, and a half cadence.

B. Provide three different harmonic settings in G minor for the following bass line (you need add only the roman numerals, not pitches): G–F♯–G–A–B♭–D.

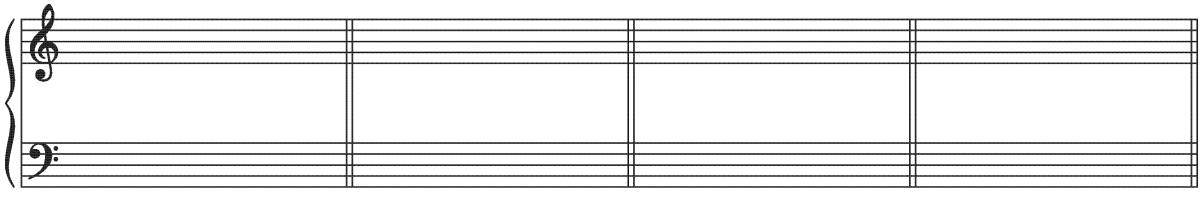
C. Incorporate both ii^{o6} and iv^{6} in a 5 to 7 chord progression in B minor.

9.4 Harmonizing Soprano Fragments

Harmonize the following soprano fragments by adding only a bass line and roman numerals. Include one pre-dominant chord in each progression.

A. in D major: $\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$
B. in D minor: $\hat{5}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$
C. in B minor: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ (minor only) .
D. in B♭ major: $\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$

A. B. C. D.

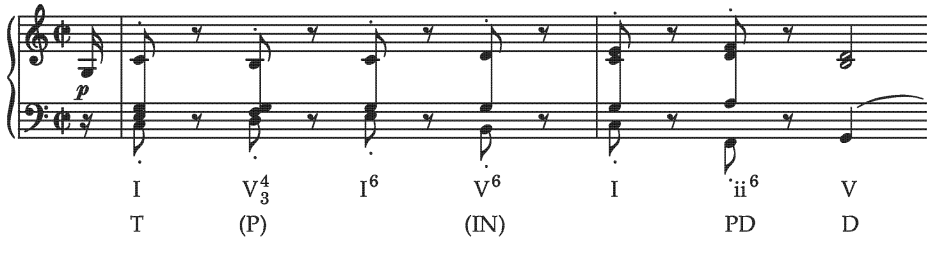


ANALYSIS

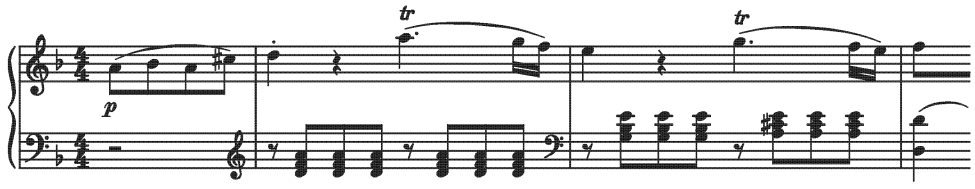
9.5 Snapshots

Listen to and study the following excerpts. Identify the harmonic rhythm. When do chords change? Identify the tonic part of each excerpt: Some excerpts contain just one tonic chord, and others expand the tonic with contrapuntal chords. Identify the pre-dominant chords, some of which may be ornamented with nonchord tones (strong-beat dissonances are indicated by parentheses). Provide a two-level harmonic analysis.

Sample solution: Beethoven, Piano Sonata in G major, op. 14, no. 2, *Andante*



A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, "Variation VII, Minore"



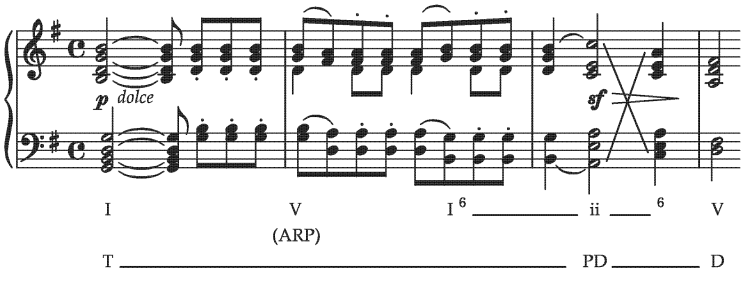
B. Haydn, String Quartet in B minor, op. 64, no. 2, Hob III. 68, *Adagio ma non troppo*

Extending the Pre-Dominant

Just as the tonic and the dominant functions may be extended by embellishing chords, so too may the pre-dominant. Following are two techniques that extend the pre-dominant function.

The first technique involves the use of a chordal skip in the bass, moving from ii to ii^6 or vice versa. Example 9.10 illustrates this simple technique. Notice the resulting voice exchange between the outer voices.

EXAMPLE 9.10 Beethoven, Piano Concerto in G major, op. 58/I, *Allegro moderato*

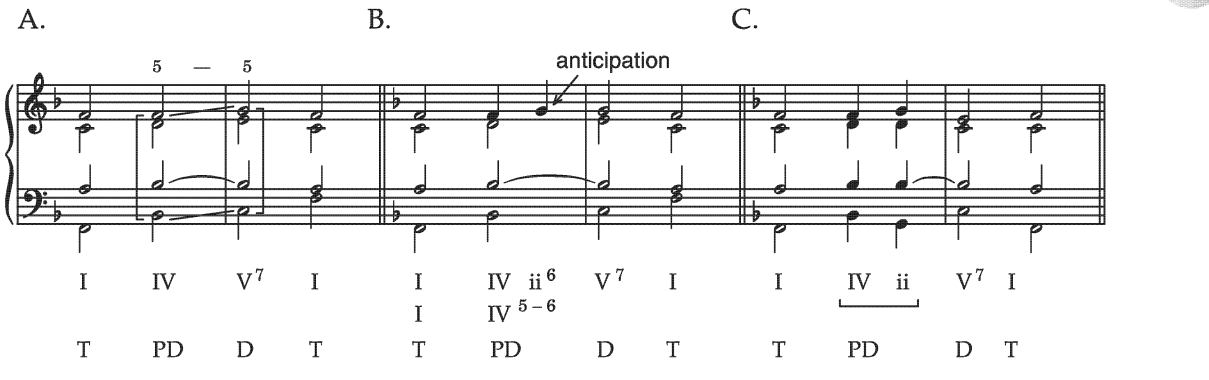


The second technique is subtler, yet is often considered to be more important. Progressions whose roots move by step (e.g., IV–V) are especially vulnerable to parallel perfect intervals in voice leading, especially when the outer voices move in the same direction (Example 9.11A). In order to avoid poor voice leading, you can use a **voice-leading chord**, which breaks up the parallels.

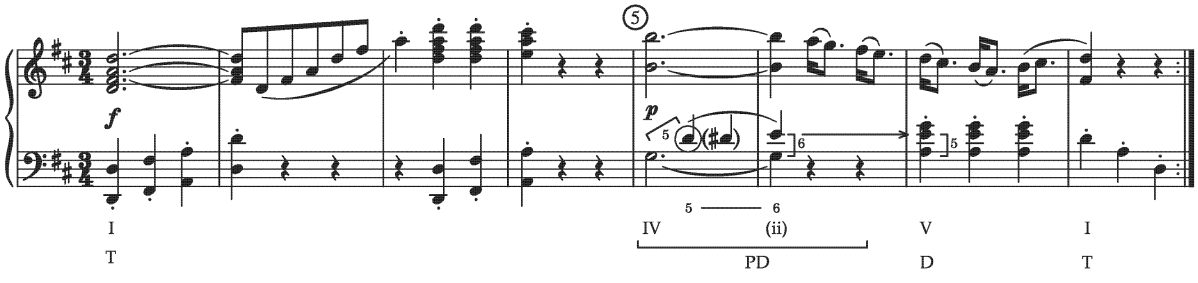
In Example 9.11B, the soprano quarter-note motion creates a contrapuntal 5–6 motion above the bass that anticipates the dominant pitch G and avoids the parallel fifths seen in Example 9.11A. Though it appears that the IV moves to ii^6, we interpret this motion as a subtle *melodic* shift (IV$^{5–6}$) rather than as a functional chord change, and we refer to the process as the **IV–ii complex**. This interpretation is reflected in the second-level analysis, which groups the IV–ii under a single functional heading: *PD*. In Example 9.11C the bass falls from $\hat{4}$ to $\hat{2}$, yet even this apparent chord change (IV to ii) is still motivated by the same voice-leading concerns as in Example 9.11B.

Note that the goal-oriented melodic motion in the succession IV–ii$^{(6)}$ is very common but that the weaker motion of ii–IV is not. Example 9.11D, from Mozart's "Haffner" Symphony, shows how the pre-dominant, IV, moves to V using the IV–ii complex. Keenly aware of effective voice leading, Mozart would never move in parallel fifths from IV to V (as shown in Example 9.11D2). Rather, he shifts the upper note of the fifth, D, by step up to E, creating a consonant sixth and a resulting ii^6 chord. E is sustained as the bass raises to A (the root of the V), where it functions as the fifth of the chord (Example 9.11D2).

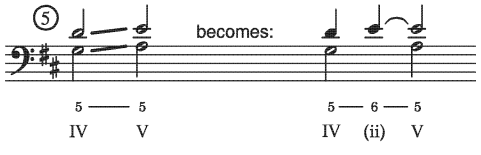
EXAMPLE 9.11 The IV–ii Complex



D1. Mozart, Symphony 35 in D major, "Haffner," K. 385, *Menuetto*



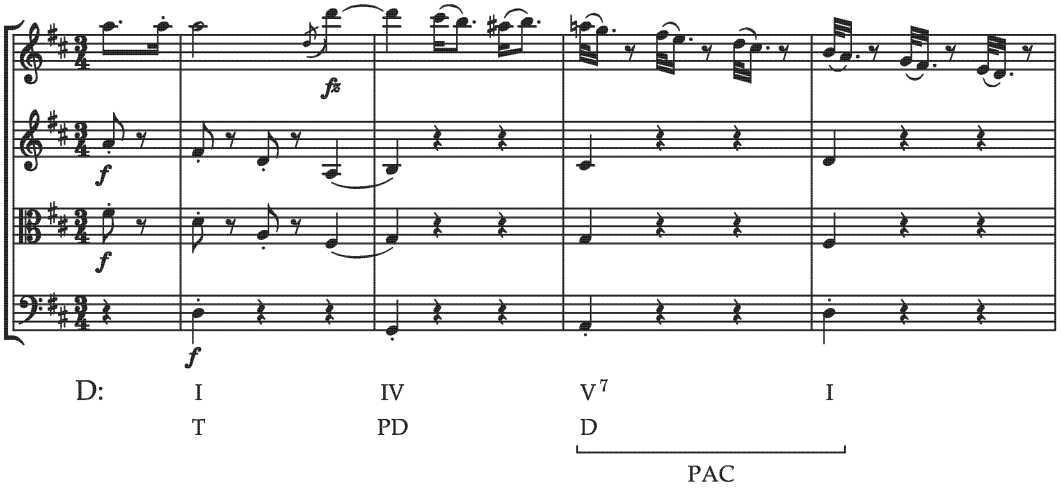
D2.



Introduction to the Phrase Model

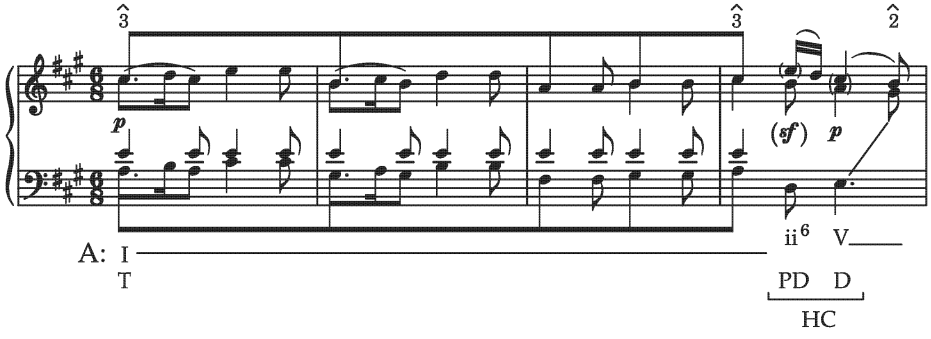
Complete musical statements can rely exclusively on tonic and dominant chords. These units, called *phrases*, are always punctuated by strong closing gestures called *cadences*. Although many examples of phrases built exclusively on tonics and dominants exist, most phrases incorporate the pre-dominant function to create a richer harmonic progression. The harmonic motion of tonic (T), through pre-dominant (PD), to dominant and tonic at the cadence (D or D-T) guides a phrase from its beginning to its cadence and is called the **phrase model**.

EXAMPLE 9.12 **Haydn, String Quartet in D major, "The Frog," op. 50, no. 6, Hob III.49, *Menuetto***



Although the phrase model can occupy any number of measures, four measures (or some multiple of four) is common, as seen in Example 9.12. Here, a balanced motion is clearly felt as the harmonic rhythm shifts once every measure. There is much room for variation in this model, however, and while the order of presentation of harmonic functions (T–PD–D–T) remains the same, their relative durations may vary considerably. For instance, the opening tonic often occupies at least as much time as the pre-dominant and dominant combined. Example 9.13 extends the tonic for three and a third measures, with the PD and D occupying barely more than one beat. (Notice that the bass and soprano begin at the interval of a tenth; then, in parallel motion, they descend by step together and then return to the root-position tonic harmony, making the expansion of tonic explicit.)

EXAMPLE 9.13 Mozart, Piano Sonata in A major, K. 331, *Andante grazioso*



In Example 9.12 the phrase model closed with an authentic cadence. Example 9.13 closes with a half cadence. These two basic models are represented schematically in Example 9.14. Models 3 and 4, which close with a half cadence, are as grammatically complete as the first two models, yet their harmony implies that the piece will eventually resolve the tension of the dominant.

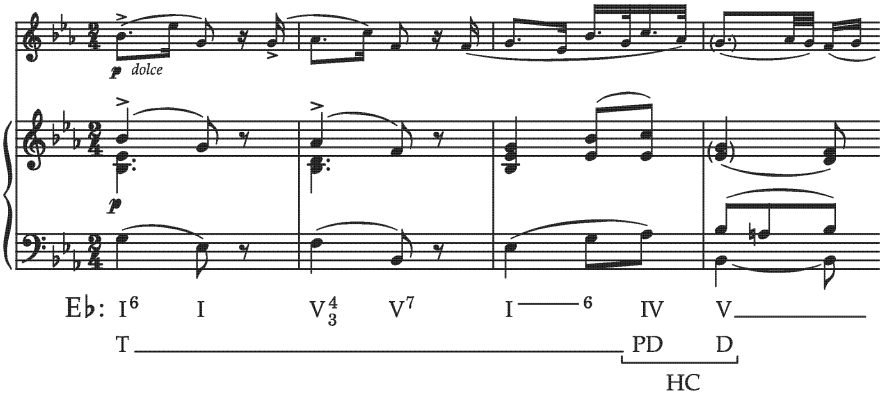
EXAMPLE 9.14

Four-Measure Phrase Models

measures:	1	2	3	4	*cadence*
model 1:	T	PD	D	T	authentic
model 2:	T		PD D	T	authentic
model 3:	T		PD	D	half
model 4:	T			PD D	half

Notice how in models 2–4 it takes much more time for the tonic to move to the pre-dominant than for the pre-dominant to move to the dominant. It is common for the tonic to occupy two or even three times more time than the pre-dominant. Example 9.15 (closely resembling model 3) illustrates a four-measure phrase with five and a half beats of tonic and one and a half beats of dominant, but only half a beat of pre-dominant.

EXAMPLE 9.15 Schubert, Violin Sonata no. 2 in G minor, D. 408, *Andante*

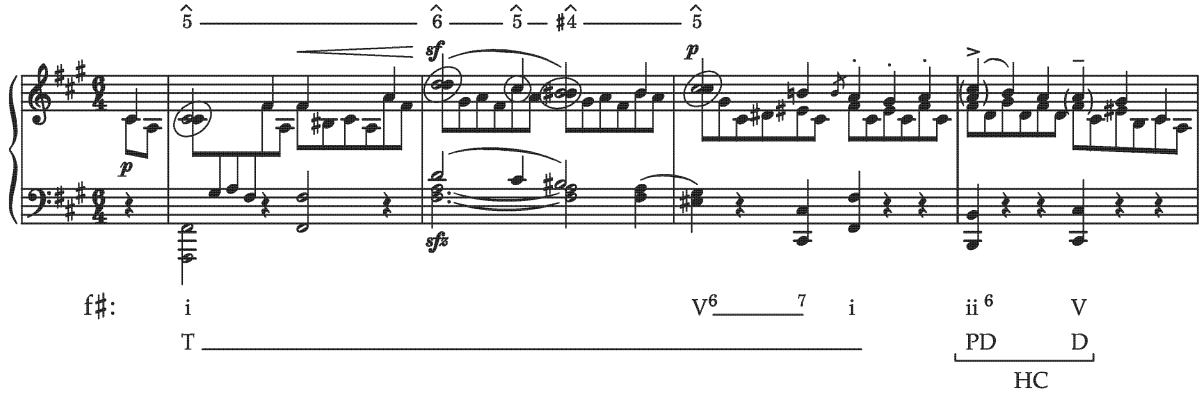


Analytical Interlude

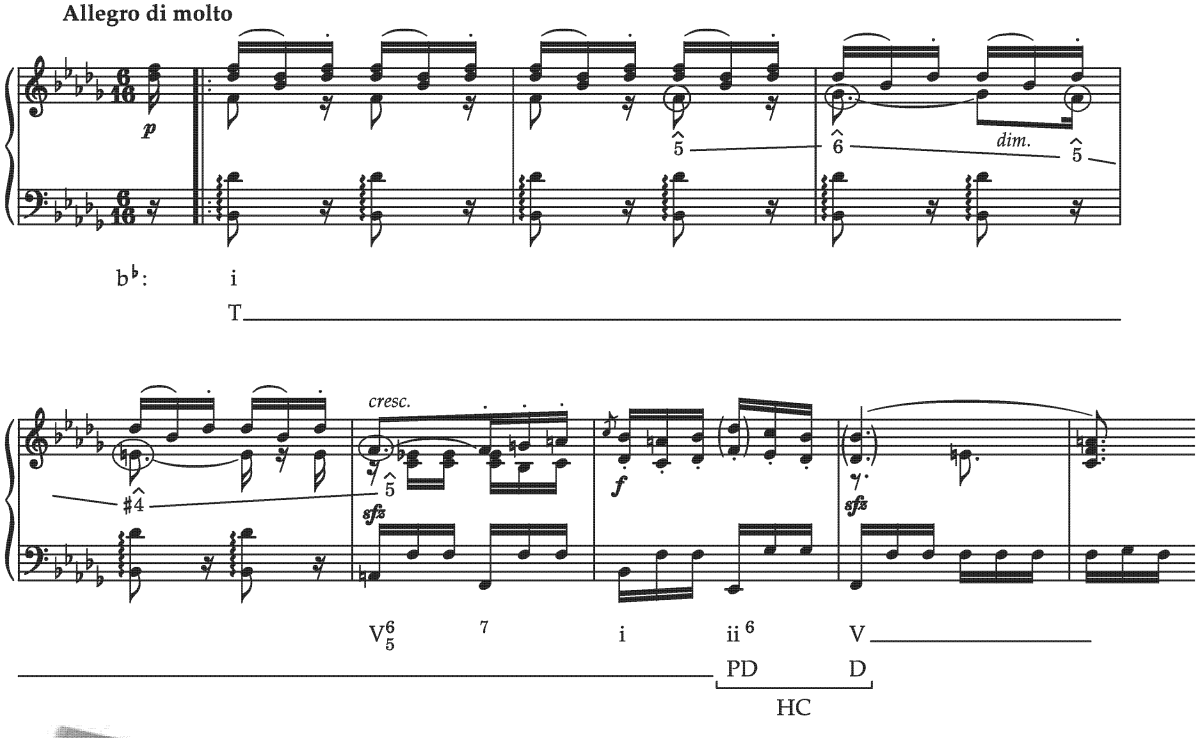
Although the phrase models shown in Example 9.14 might seem to constrain a composer's creativity, they actually generate unlimited compositional possibilities. Composers from the Baroque era through the late nineteenth century, writing in very different styles, employed these models tirelessly. For example, listen to the two excerpts in Example 9.16. Both excerpts share the same harmonic structure, but because of their different figurations on the musical "surface," they could not sound more different. Each contains a single phrase (example A is four measures and example B is eight) that begins with a tonic expansion (i–V^6 (or V^6_5)–V^7–i). This is followed by a pre-dominant on ii, ornamented with strong-beat upper-voice dissonances and followed by a half cadence (also embellished by strong-beat dissonances). Even motivic details unfold identically in both examples. Note the $\hat{5}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$–$\sharp\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ motion that extends the tonic in both examples and the embellishing harmonies.

EXAMPLE 9.16 The Phrase Model

A. Mendelssohn, *Lieder ohne Worte* ("Songs Without Words"), op. 19, no. 5



B. Mendelssohn, *Lieder ohne Worte* ("Songs Without Words"), op. 30, no. 8



WORKBOOK 1
9.3–9.4

Final Checklist for Pre-Dominant Function

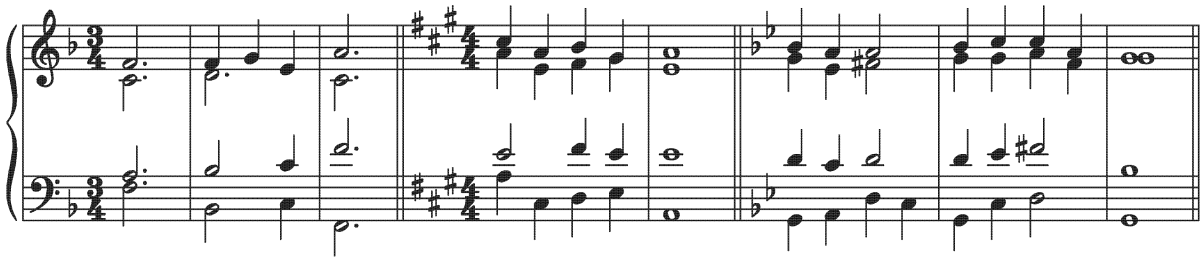
- The T–PD–D–T order is not reversible.
- Use contrary motion in the outer voices when writing I–ii, IV–V, or ii^6–V.
- In minor, $\hat{6}$ must descend to $\hat{5}$, and $\hat{7}$ must be approached from above.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

9.6 Error Detection

Each short progression contains a minimum of three part-writing and spelling errors. To develop fluency, study each progression for no more than one minute, adding roman numerals and labeling each error.

D. E. F.



ANALYSIS

9.7

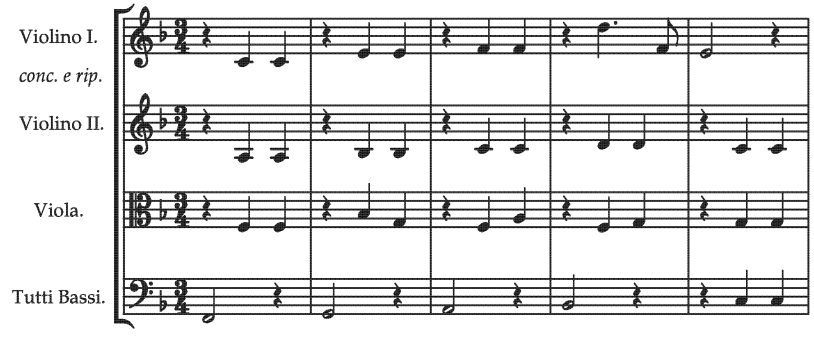
Determine the cadence, harmonic rhythm, and pre-dominant (ii, ii^6, or IV) for each of the following excerpts. Also, answer the following questions for each excerpt.

1. How is the tonic expanded?
2. Is there more than one pre-dominant harmony used (for example, IV–ii)? Circle and label each PD harmony.
3. What phrase model does each example most resemble?

A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, *Allegro*

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Handel, Concerto Grosso, op. 6, no. 9, *Largo*



SOLVED/APP 6

C. Haydn, String Quartet in G major, op. 33, no. 5, Hob III.42, *Largo cantabile*

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- IV–ii complex
- four-measure phrase model: with perfect authentic cadence and with half cadence
- helping chords (or voice-leading chords)
- phrase model
- Phrygian cadence
- pre-dominant
- use of IV
- use of ii

CHAPTER 10

Accented and Chromatic Embellishing Tones

Embellishing tones enhance music's motion, grace, and drama. Their presence on the immediate surface of the music means that they are the first events to which the listener's attention is drawn. Embellishing tones flesh out the basic harmonic and contrapuntal structures in infinite ways, and, finally, composers use them in specific ways, to the degree that they provide stylistic fingerprints and helpful cues for performance practice.

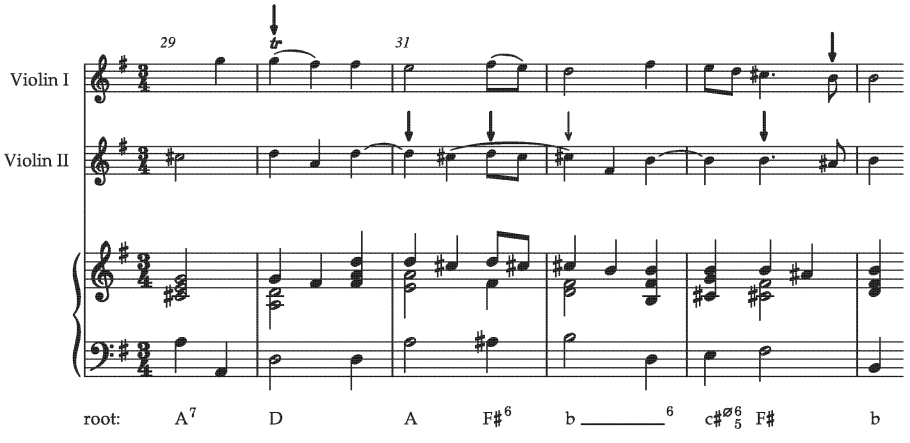
So far we have encountered three types of melodic embellishments: chordal leaps, passing tones, and neighbor tones. The Corelli excerpt in Example 10.1 contains examples of each of these types of embellishments. Chordal leaps are heard in the first two beats of m. 9. Passing tones occur in beat 3 of m. 9. The upper-neighbor figure G–A♭–G on beat 2 in m. 10 is followed by an incomplete neighbor in violin 1 and a passing tone on beat 3 in violin 2. All dissonances are metrically *unaccented*; as such, they create a light and buoyant sound.

EXAMPLE 10.1 Corelli, Sonata for Two Violins in E♭ major, op. 2, no. 11, Giga

Now listen to Example 10.2, taken from the slow movement of another Corelli sonata. Again, the letter names of chord roots appear below the score. Compare Corelli's use of embellishing tones in this example with their use in the previous example. The embellishing tones in Example 10.2

are much more striking than those heard in Example 10.1. This is because the dissonances occur on *accented* beats or parts of beats. Most seem to arise through a rhythmic delay. For example, in m. 29 the chordal seventh, G, extends into the following measure, where it forms a dissonance against the D-major harmony. However, one beat later, G falls by step to F♯, where it functions as the third of the D-major chord. Another type of dissonance occurs in m. 31: The second violin plays an accented neighbor figure C♯–D–C♯ over the F♯ triad. The appearance of this dissonant neighbor *on* a beat rather than *between* beats makes it much more striking.

EXAMPLE 10.2 Corelli, Sonata for Two Violins in E minor, op. 2, no. 4, Preludio



We group embellishing tones into two categories, based on their rhythmic placement. The first category, called **unaccented embellishing tones** (Example 10.1), includes metrically unstressed embellishing tones. We have already studied the most important of these, including the chordal leap, the passing tone, and the neighbor tone (both complete and incomplete). We further categorized the unaccented embellishing tones into those that are consonant (chordal leaps) and those that are dissonant (most passing tones and neighbor tones). Consonant embellishing tones may appear without preparation or resolution. However, dissonant embellishing tones must be carefully controlled, nearly always occurring between consonances and moving by step.

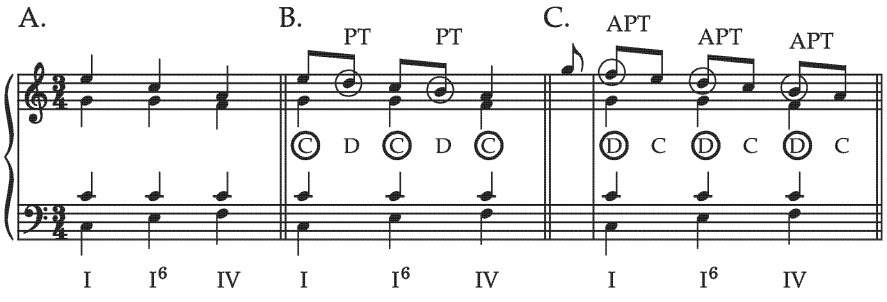
Embellishing tones that belong to the second category, called **accented embellishing tones** (Example 10.2), occur in metrically stressed contexts (e.g., on, rather than between, beats). Accented embellishing tones are some of the most emotive elements of music; recognizing them can influence your performance significantly. In fact, given that Baroque- and Classical-period composers expected performers to add various types of embellishing tones to their published scores, it is desirable for the modern performer to enhance the music's drama with ornamentation. Accented dissonances occur in many forms, but the most important are: the accented passing tone (APT), the accented neighbor tone (AN), the suspension (S), the pedal (PED), and the appoggiatura (APP).

Since embellishing tones often fill the space between chordal members, then, by extension, **chromatic embellishing tones** fill the smaller intervallic space that occurs between stepwise motions. We also explore such unaccented and accented chromatic figures.

The Accented Passing Tone (APT)

Just like a passing tone, an **accented passing tone** (APT) fills in a melodic third; however, the APT occurs on, rather than between, beats. The usual metric positions of consonance and dissonance are reversed with the APT.

EXAMPLE 10.3 Unaccented and Accented Passing Tones

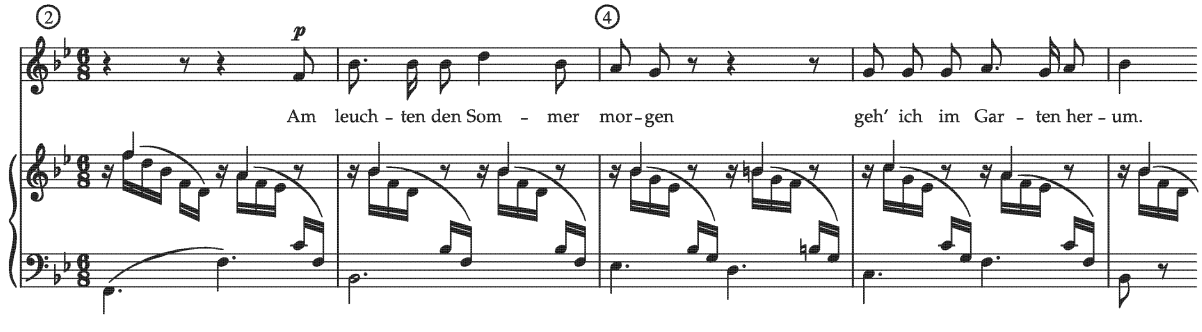


Example 10.3A shows an unelaborated SATB progression; Example 10.3B elaborates the progression with unaccented PTs. Note that consonance is aligned with metrical stress and that dissonance is reserved for the metrically weak offbeat. Example 10.3C demonstrates accented passing tones; dissonance is highlighted because it occurs on the beat, whereas the consonance now occurs on the offbeat. Accented passing tones impart a new level of tension, since consonance and metrical accents do not align.

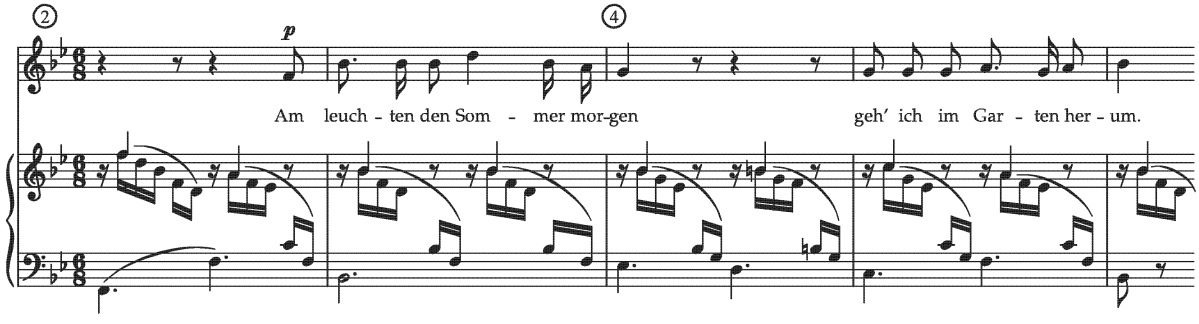
Accented passing tones most often occur in descending lines, and they usually are part of either a 7–6 or 4–3 contrapuntal motion against the bass voice. Example 10.4A presents the opening of Schumann's song "Am leuchtenden Sommermorgen," in which the accented passing tone A at the downbeat of m. 4 forms a dissonant fourth with the E♭ harmony before resolving to the chordal third. Imagine if Schumann had instead written the more mundane unaccented passing tone, as shown in Example 10.4B.

EXAMPLE 10.4 APTs and PTs in Context

A. Schumann, "Am leuchtenden Sommermorgen," from *Dichterliebe*, op. 48



B. Schumann, "Am leuchtenden Sommermorgen," from *Dichterliebe* (modified)

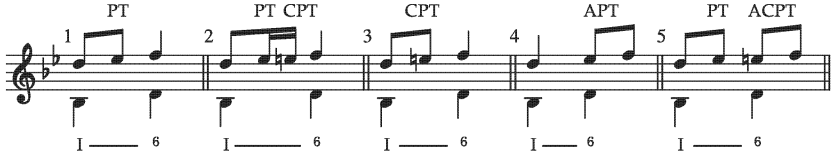


The Chromatic Passing Tone (CPT)

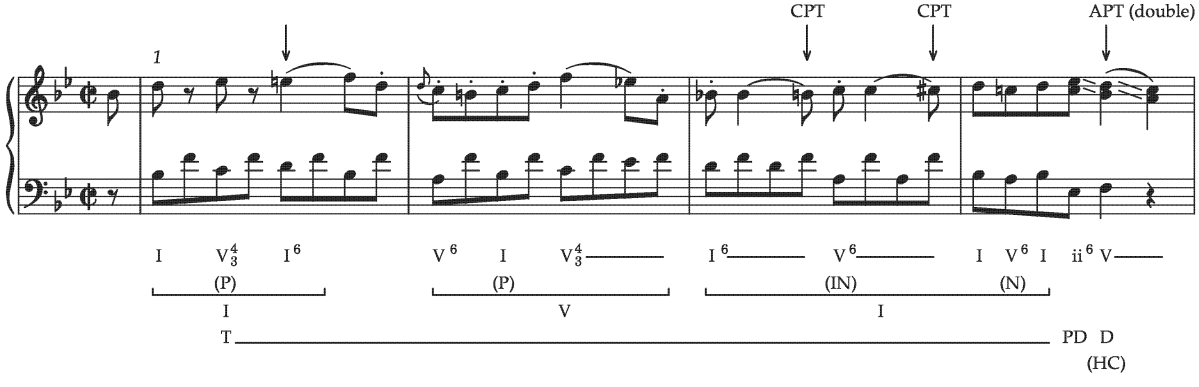
Chromatic passing tones fill the space between two diatonic pitches. Most often, the diatonic pitches are separated by a major second, creating a series of half-step motions. Example 10.5A1 illustrates how the diatonic passing tone E♭ fills the space between D and F. Example 10.5A2 illustrates the chromatic passing tone E♮, which fills the space between the major second E♭ to F. Less often CPTs can fill the space between diatonic pitches a third apart, as in Example 10.5A3.

EXAMPLE 10.5

A.



B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭, K. 570, *Allegretto*



Like diatonic passing tones, chromatic passing tones occur in both unaccented and accented contexts. Ascending chromatic passing tones are more common than those that descend because ascending CPTs create

miniature leading tones to the pitch they precede, thereby intensifying the melodic direction. Example 10.5A4 illustrates a diatonic APT, and Example 10.5A5 illustrates a chromatic APT (ACPT). Notice how all of the five passing tones in Example 10.5A increase their aural prominence as they move along a continuum from unaccented and diatonic to accented and chromatic.

Example 10.5B presents the opening phrase of a Mozart piano sonata that contains both unaccented and accented CPTs. We'll begin with m. 3, where two unaccented CPTs ($B\natural^4$ and $C\sharp^5$) fill the space between $B\flat^4$ and D^5 ($\hat{1}$ and $\hat{3}$). Because these CPTs are unaccented, our ears are not nearly as drawn to them as they are to the accented CPT $E\natural^5$ that occurs on—rather than between—the strong part of beat 2 in m. 1 and that fills the space between $E\flat$ and F. Notice that Mozart has written a two-note slur, indicating that $E\natural$ is to receive an emphasis (both dynamic and articulative), whereas the unaccented CPTs in m. 3 are marked as the second pitches in two-note slurs, indicating that dynamic stress should be given to the first pitch in a two-note slur and that the second pitch is released and played without emphasis.

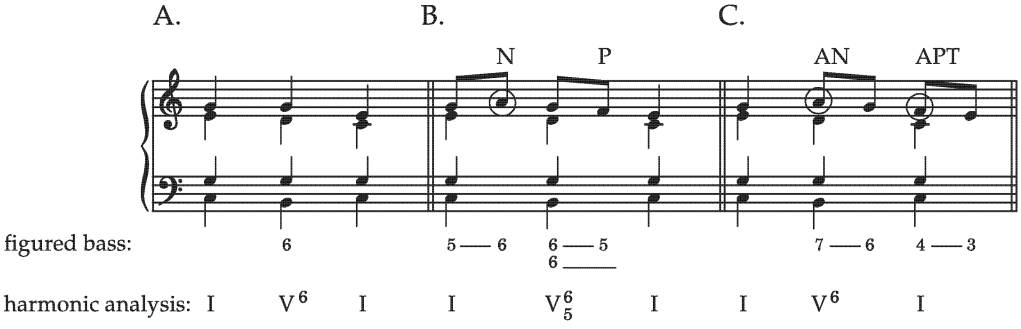
Mozart's phrase unfolds in the standard phrase model: T is prolonged for the vast majority of the excerpt, over three measures, until the PD enters for only an eighth-note duration and leads to D, on which the phrase closes in a half cadence. The strong, double APTs ($B\flat^4$ and D^5) at the end of m. 4 (Example 10.5B) postpone and therefore draw the listener's attention to the HC (both $B\flat$ and D lead to the chord tones A and C of the dominant). Notice that the tonic prolongation is made clear by the soprano's line that falls a third from D to $B\flat$ ($\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$) and ascends to recapture D. The counterpoint with the bass creates two voice exchanges ($B\flat$–D). D finally falls to C ($\hat{2}$) in the HC.

The Accented Neighbor Tone (AN)

While not nearly as common as accented passing tones, the **accented neighbor tone** occurs with some frequency, especially in nineteenth-century music. Example 10.6A presents a neighboring expansion of the tonic without melodic embellishment. Example 10.6B contains an unaccented neighbor (G–A–G) and passing tone (G–F–E). In Example 10.6C, the neighbor A^4 is metrically accented, since it sounds on the beat. The second accented event occurs when F^4, as passing seventh of the dominant harmony, becomes an APT (4–3) over tonic harmony.

Just as unaccented upper neighbors are more common than unaccented lower neighbors, so too are accented upper neighbors more common than accented lower neighbors. Finally, notice that the displacement (postponement) of the soprano's G in the V^6 chord results in what might be mistaken as a $vii^{\text{ø}7}$ chord. This interpretation ignores the nonharmonic—and therefore aurally marked—function of the soprano's A and instead views it as the chordal seventh. This analytical error has performance repercussions, for the nonchord tone A begins a pattern of implied two-note slurs that carries over into the next beat of the soprano's line, where F clearly displaces E.

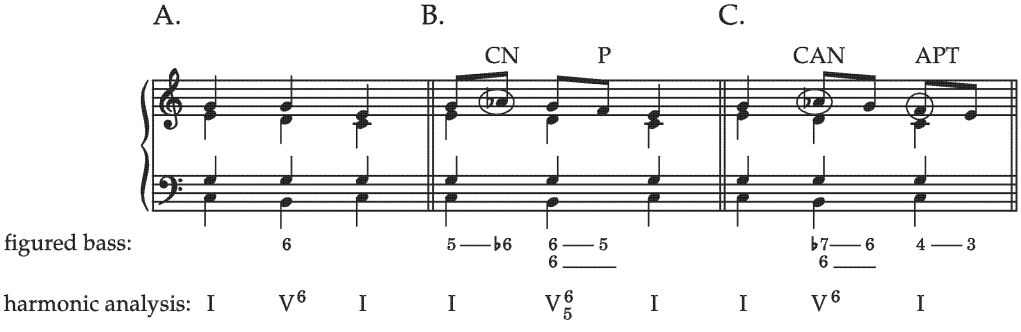
EXAMPLE 10.6 Unaccented and Accented Neighbors



The Chromatic Neighbor Tone (CN)

The chromatic neighbor is highly dissonant yet very beautiful. Example 10.7 recasts the diatonic neighbors from Example 10.6 as chromatic neighbors.

EXAMPLE 10.7 Chromatic Neighbors

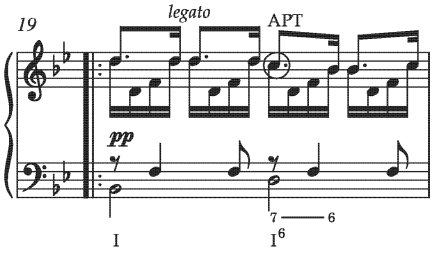


One frequently encounters accented and chromatic passing and neighboring tones in variation sets written in the late Classical and Romantic periods, where such variation and intensification of rhythmic and diatonic regularity provide contrast and drama. For example, Schubert's Impromptu in B♭ is cast as a theme followed by a series of variations. The theme (Example 10.8A) opens with a simple alternation of tonic and dominant, each of which is elaborated by inversion.

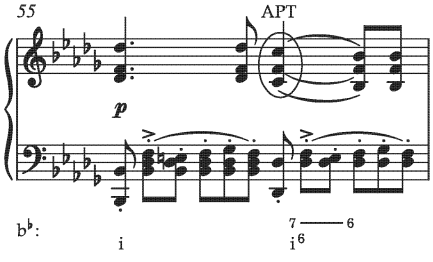
EXAMPLE 10.8 Schubert, Impromptu no. 3 in B♭, D. 935

A.

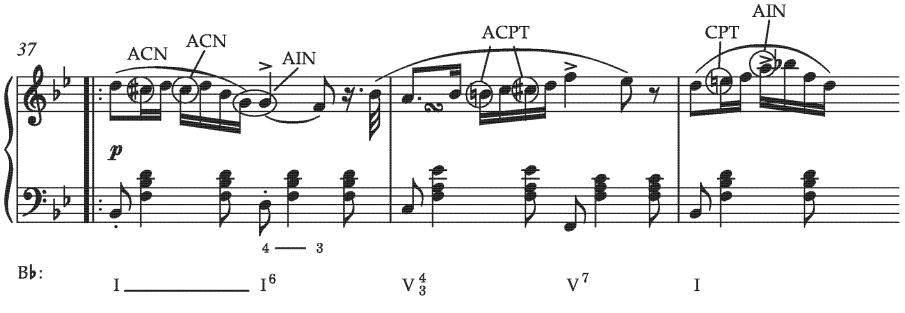
B. Variation 1



C. Variation 3



D. Variation 2



Variation 1 (Example 10.8B) is characterized by a broken-chord figure in which the melodic third D–B♭ from the theme is filled by the APT C^5, creating a 7–6 contrapuntal motion with the bass.

Variation 3 (Example 10.8C) contains the same APT figure in the right hand, but this variation is cast in the parallel minor, so the 7–6 figure is more dissonant, given that the seventh is major and more intense than the minor seventh found in variation 1. The upper part of the left hand contains faster-moving chromatic, unaccented neighbors that together form a larger, double-neighbor figure.

Variation 2 (Example 10.8D) contains nearly every possible type of embellishment, including chromatic neighbors (both unaccented and accented), two examples of which occur in m. 1. The variation opens with the complete neighbor D–C♯–D. This variation also presents something new, the **accented incomplete neighbor** (AIN). Incomplete neighbors move by step to a chord tone in only one direction; that is, rather than moving from a diatonic pitch and returning to the same pitch, incomplete neighbors usually leap from a diatonic pitch and move by step (up or down) to a different diatonic pitch. For example,

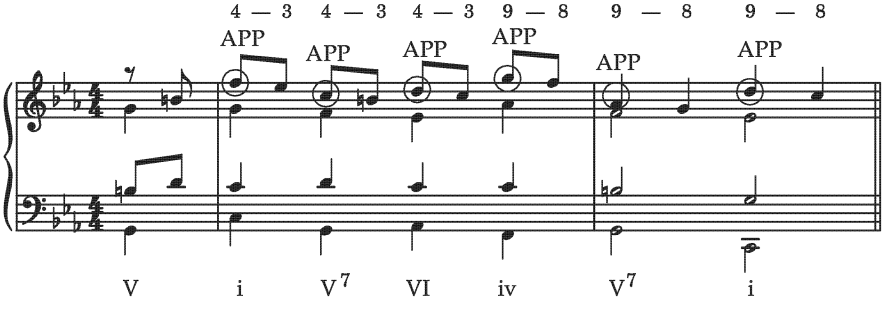
in m. 1 beat 3, G is an incomplete upper neighbor: It leaps down a third from the chord tone B♭ and then falls by step to the chord tone F as its incomplete upper neighbor. An incomplete lower neighbor is heard near the end of the example, where A leaps from F and resolves in neighbor fashion to B♭.

The Appoggiatura (APP)

The appoggiatura is a striking type of embellishment. Different than passing tones and complete neighbor tones (which are flanked by chord tones), appoggiaturas enter by leap and are dissonant and accented. They are related to other embellishing tones only in that they resolve by step to a chord tone (and usually in the direction opposite of their leap in order to balance the melodic contour; a number of important exceptions exist, such as the "Maria" motive from Leonard Bernstein's *West Side Story*).

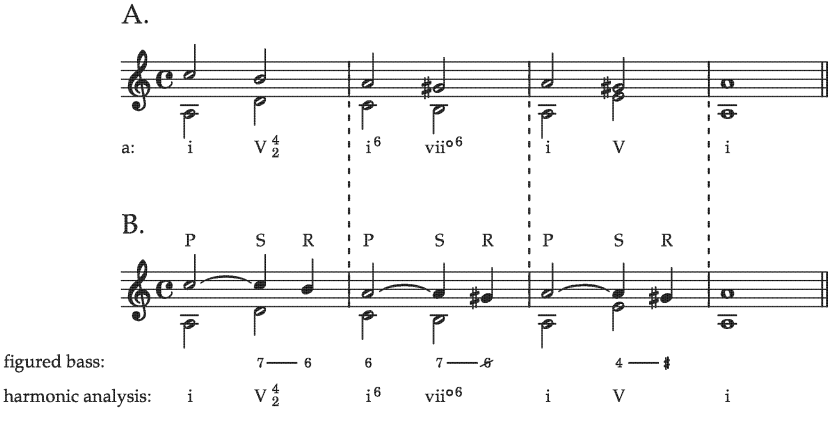
Thus, the appoggiatura behaves very much like the accented incomplete neighbors we encountered in Example 10.8. We will tend to refer to accented incomplete neighbors as appoggiaturas. Example 10.9 illustrates appoggiaturas and their labeling.

EXAMPLE 10.9 Appoggiaturas



The Suspension (S)

EXAMPLE 10.10 Suspensions in Two Voices



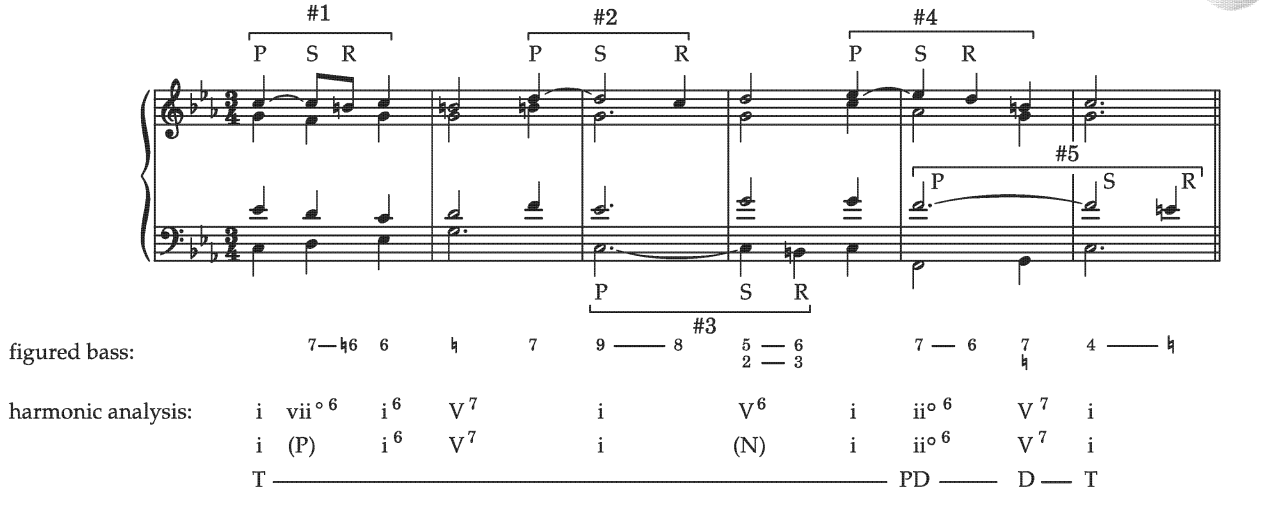
Listen to Example 10.10A, which presents a two-voice example that we'll consider to be the outer voices of the implied progression whose roman numeral analysis is given. Example 10.10B presents a modified version of Example 10.10A; in four instances the soprano voice is sustained, where it intrudes into the following implied chord change. The accented dissonant pitch creates a great deal of musical tension, which is then discharged, or resolved, as it falls by step to a chord tone. We refer to such expressive embellishments as **suspensions**; they are the most important type of accented embellishing tones, one found consistently in music from the fifteenth century to today's commercial and popular music.

The contrapuntal setting and metric placement of suspensions is prescribed and cannot be altered. Suspensions are composed of two pitches that are governed by a three-stage process. The first pitch progresses through two of the stages: a weak-beat *preparation* (P) followed by a strong-beat *suspension* (S). The second pitch participates in the third stage: a weak-beat *resolution* (R). Each suspension in Example 10.10B illustrates the two-note figure and the three stages. In m. 1, for example, the two pitches of the suspension figure are C and B. The first pitch, C, participates in the two stages of preparation and suspension. The second pitch, B, participates in stage 3: resolution. Details of each stage follow.

- **Stage 1, preparation:** C is initially consonant (a tenth above the bass) on the weak beat (beat 2) so that it prepares for its transformation into a dissonance.
- **Stage 2, suspension:** The prepared pitch is held, by means of a tie or a dot, as the bass moves to the implied V^4_2. The C is now transformed from a third (tenth) above the bass into a seventh above the bass.
- **Stage 3, resolution:** This stage occurs when the dissonant seventh falls by step to the chord tone B, resulting in the interval of a sixth above the bass.

Example 10.11 demonstrates the most common types of suspensions within a four-voice musical context. Listen to the example, which contains five suspensions. Once again, the three stages are labeled *P*, *S*, and *R*.

EXAMPLE 10.11 Suspensions in Four Voices



- Suspension 1 occurs in m. 1 as the harmony expands the tonic by moving from i to i^6 using a passing vii^{o6}. The motion in the soprano to its lower neighbor is delayed past the onset of beat 2 as C^5 in the soprano is suspended over the changing chord to create a seventh above the bass (D^3). The resolution to B occurs on the following weak-beat eighth note.
- Suspension 2 occurs in m. 3, as the soprano's D^5 from m. 2 is suspended over the tonic chord in m. 3 to form a ninth above the bass; it resolves on the weak third beat.
- Suspension 3 appears in the bass in m. 4, as C^3 is sustained from m. 3 to the downbeat of m. 4, thereby delaying for one beat the $B♮^2$ (as chordal third of V^6).
- Suspension 4 appears in the soprano voice between mm. 4 and 5. Given its aural prominence, it coincides with, and thus highlights, the change from T to PD. Here, $E♭^5$ is suspended and forms a dissonant seventh before resolving to the chord tone D, the root of ii^{o6}. Notice that the pre-dominant harmony appears to be an incomplete iv^7 chord, given the pitches F–A♭–E♭. As we discussed in relation to Example 10.6, context must determine function: Given the example's pattern of suspensions, the tie, and the fact that ii^6 is a far more common pre-dominant chord than iv^7, we interpret $E♭^5$ as a nonchord tone that resolves to D.
- Suspension 5 occurs in m. 6: The tenor finally gets a chance to suspend, imitating the alto. A dissonant fourth (F^4) against the bass (C^3) is created as the tenor holds F^4 and the bass moves to C^2; the tenor resolves down to $E♮^4$ on the final beat of the excerpt.

Labeling Suspensions

We use figured bass numbers to label the melodic motion of the suspension and resolution stages of the suspension figure. The names of the four upper-voice suspensions in Example 10.11 are based on the intervallic content of the suspended voice reckoned with the bass. Thus, the figured bass indications are 7–6, 9–8, 7–6, and 4–3, respectively. We label compound suspending intervals by their reduced, noncompound forms (an 11–10 suspension is called a 4–3, for example). By convention, however, the 9–8 suspension retains its compound label. The 2–1 suspension, while possible, is uncommon, given that the dissonance is sounding immediately adjacent to its resolution.

The 2–3 suspension in Example 10.11 (mm. 3–4) is the figured bass label given to the most common bass suspension. Note that the suspension in the bass voice is represented by "2–3"; but in a four-voice texture, there is always another voice that creates the "5–6" motion above the suspending bass. In mm. 3–4 of Example 10.11, the alto and tenor G^4 create the 5–6 motion against the bass's C–B. *In bass suspensions the numbers increase in size because the upper voices remain stationary, whereas the bass, in its descending resolution, naturally increases the size of the interval.*

We place the figured bass numbers immediately below the moving pitches, and we show the melodic motion by using the dash so as not to confuse the suspensions with inversions of chords. For example, a "7" appearing by itself indicates a root-position seventh chord; thus the "7" is

a chord member. However, a "7–6" indicates a 7–6 suspension (such as in m. 1 of Example 10.11) in which the seventh displaces the sixth of a first-inversion chord. That is, the second chord is not ii^7; rather, it is a vii$^{\circ 6}$ chord with a suspended seventh. Conversely, the V^7 in m. 5 indicates that the dominant includes a chordal seventh above the bass. Depending on your teacher's preference, you can represent suspensions (and other accented embellishing tones) within a figured bass analysis (immediately below the bass staff), or you can incorporate them in your roman numeral analysis.

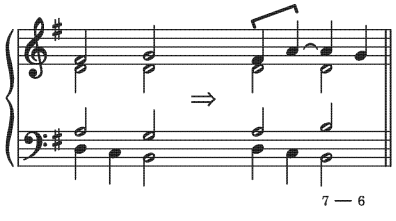
Writing Suspensions

The most common upper-voice suspensions are the 9–8, 7–6, and 4–3. In the bass, it is the 2–3. The following guidelines will help to write suspensions.

1. Suspension figures logically work best with chords whose intervals contain the interval of resolution. For example:
   - 7–6 suspensions work well with $^6_3$ chords, given that all first-inversion chords contain the interval of a sixth and that chords with a sixth above the bass are most often first-inversion chords (e.g., vii$^{\circ 6}$, V^6, and I^6).
   - Similarly, 4–3 and 9–8 suspensions work best with root-position chords.
   - The bass suspension (2–3) works best with a $^6_3$ chord (especially in the progression I–V^6).
2. Suspensions may occur in any voice at any time as long as the voice is moving down by step to the next chord tone. For example, in the chord progression in Example 10.12A, the three upper voices in the first chord all lie a second above the corresponding voice in the second chord, which means that the resolution is already set up. Now we consider the second chord in order to find an appropriate voice to suspend. Given that the second chord is a first-inversion sonority, the 7–6 suspension would work best (see Example 10.12B). Study Examples 10.12A and B to see how suspensions are generated.
3. If the voice in which you want to write a suspension is moving *up* by step, consider inserting an ascending chordal leap, which would allow for the preparation and resolution of the suspension downward. For example, say that you wanted to insert a soprano-voice suspension, as in Example 10.12C. However, F♯^{4} lies below G^4, which prevents the use of a suspension. A chordal leap from F♯^{4} to A^4 solves the problem, since the A^4 can now resolve to G^4 in a 7–6 suspension.

EXAMPLE 10.12 Adding Suspensions in Four Voices

C. Ascending Chordal Leap Prepares Suspension

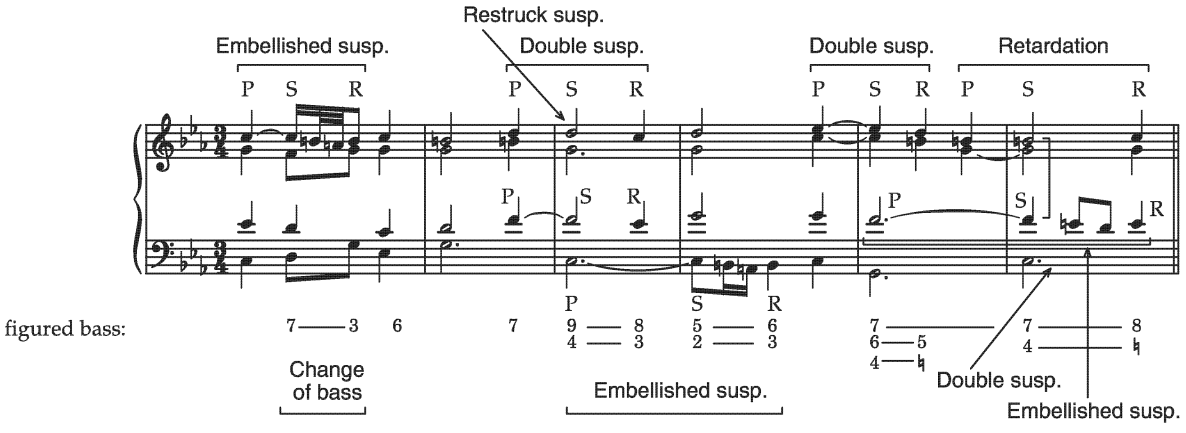


4. Make sure that the resolution pitch is not doubled in any other voice, for if it were, it would be sounding against the dissonant suspension and thus would anticipate the suspension's tone of resolution and ruin its intended effect. The one exception to this rule is the 9–8 suspension, which falls to the octave, because the dissonance is far enough away from the sounding note of resolution. Finally, the duration of the dissonant suspended note should be at least as long or longer than the preparation and the resolution.

Additional Suspension Techniques

Having learned the basics of suspensions, it is easy to spot variations on suspension technique in musical works. There are six common modifications of the basic suspension pattern that we will encounter in our analyses. Example 10.13, which is an elaboration of Example 10.11, illustrates each of these suspension modifications.

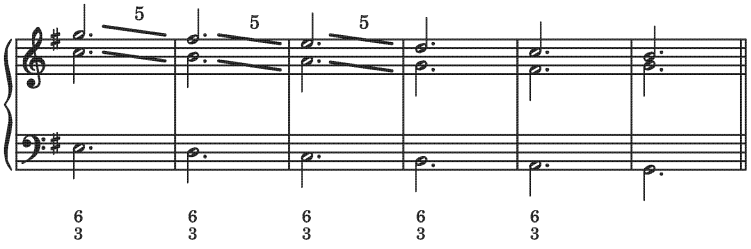
EXAMPLE 10.13 More Suspension Possibilities



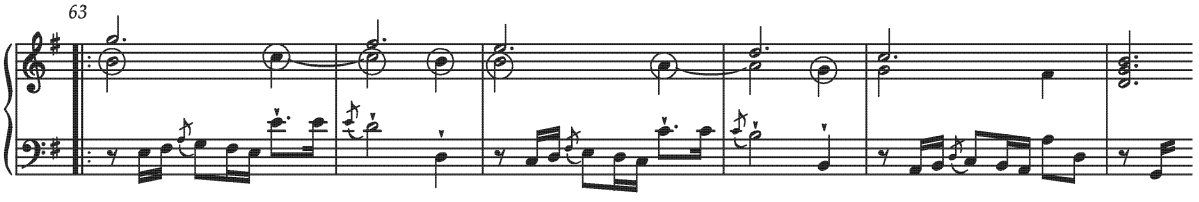
1. **Embellished suspensions**, as seen in mm. 1, 4, and, 6 use submetrical figurations to embellish the dissonant note.
2. **Suspensions with a change of bass**, as seen in m. 1, involve a bass leap to another consonance at the same time that an upper-voice suspension resolves. Since the bass is changing, this often results in a harmonic change. The figured bass notation for bass suspensions follows our established rules. Make sure you include the horizontal dash in order to make clear that the dissonance resolves (as seen in the 7–3 in the example).
3. **Restruck suspensions**, as seen in m. 2, omit the tie, permitting the suspended note to be resounded at the point of dissonance.
4. **Double and triple suspensions**, as seen in mm. 2–3, 4–5, and 6, involve two or three simultaneous dissonances, each of which resolves correctly.
5. **Retardations** (upward-resolving suspensions), as seen in m. 6, are common in Classical music, especially in the works of Mozart. We will use only one type, 7–8, and only in perfect authentic cadences.
6. The **suspension chain** is a patterned series of suspensions that interlock. An example can be derived from a series of falling $\frac{6}{3}$ chords (Example 10.14A), which in the hands of Haydn has been transformed into a suspension chain in Example 10.14B. In the reduction of Example 10.14C, we see how such motions are much more contrapuntal and melodic than harmonic. With all the submetrical figuration removed, Example 10.14C reveals outer-voice parallel tenths that descend by step, which provide an outer frame for the suspensions that occur in the alto voice. Haydn begins the series of 7–6 suspensions in m. 63 by moving the fifth of the E-minor chord, B^4, up to C^5. This is an effective preparation that creates a sixth that is tied over the bar to become the suspended seventh in the next measure. The 7–6s continue until m. 67, where Haydn uses a change of bass to create a V^7 harmony that intensifies the cadence on G major. Had he maintained the suspension pattern, the less conclusive vii^{o6} chord would have occurred as the cadential chord. Notice how the parallel fifths in the alto and soprano of Example 10.14A are disguised by Haydn.

EXAMPLE 10.14 Suspension Chains

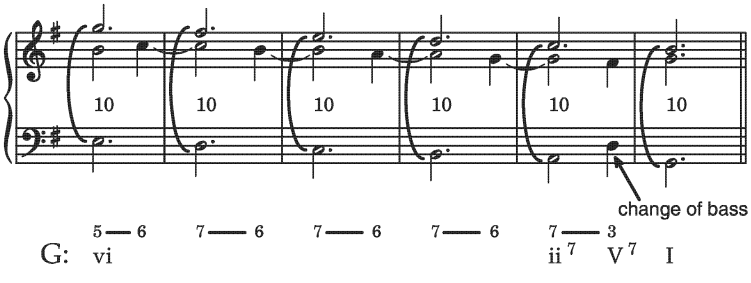
A. Parallel Six-Three Chords



B. Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 37 in E major, Hob XVI.22, *Allegro moderato*



C. Reduction

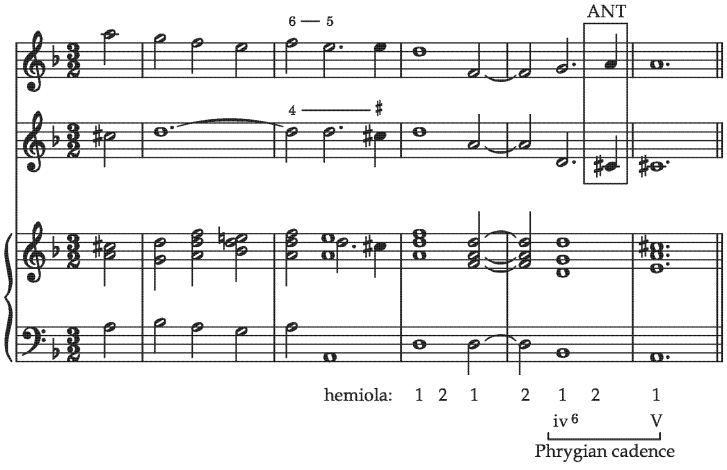


The Anticipation (ANT)

The **anticipation** is an unaccented nonchord tone, but, given that it can be considered the "mirror opposite" of the suspension, it is included at this point. The anticipation appears before the chord to which it belongs actually sounds, usually creating a dissonance with the already-sounding chord.

Because it occurs on a weak beat and is premature, it can be viewed as an embellishing tone that functions in the exact opposite manner of the suspension, which is an accented tone that delays a chord tone's resolution. It is most effective at cadences, when the final chord is strongly expected. Example 10.15 presents an example of a double anticipation: The Phrygian cadence (iv^6–V) is intensified by the entrance of C♯ and A (members of V) prematurely, while iv^6 is still sounding. This example also contains a hemiola and another double suspension.

EXAMPLE 10.15 Corelli, Violin Sonata no. 11 in D minor, op. 1, *Adagio*

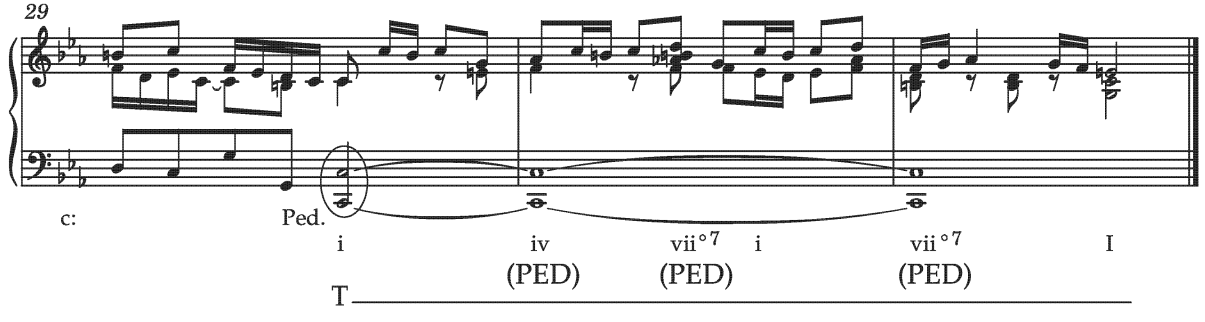


The Pedal (PED)

A sustained pitch or harmony that sits motionless during multiple harmonic changes is known as a **pedal** or **pedal point**. Derived from the organ's ability to sustain a pitch indefinitely, the pedal tone usually occurs in the bass and almost always is a tonic or dominant scale degree, which slows down the harmonic motion and firmly grounds the music on one static harmony.

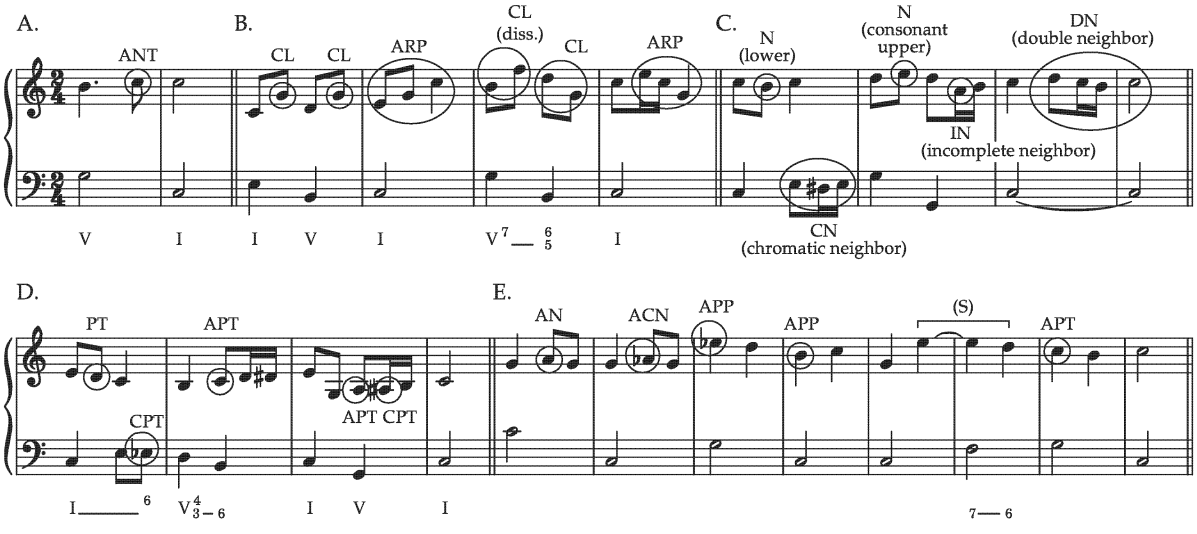
Pedals often occur in cadential situations (Example 10.16), in which harmonic successions can unfold over a single held note. As the two levels of analysis in the Bach excerpt show, such harmonic successions (usually labeled as though they were in root position) are subordinate to the pedal.

EXAMPLE 10.16 Bach, Fugue in C minor, from *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, BWV 847



Summary of the Most Common Embellishing Tones

EXAMPLE 10.17



Unaccented

Anticipation (ANT): dissonant, premature entrance of a member of an upcoming chord (Example 10.17A).

Arpeggiation (ARP): successive chordal leaps that occur in a single direction and that include all members of the triad or seventh chord (Example 10.17B).

Chordal leap (CL; called consonant leap in contexts such as sixteenth-century counterpoint)

1. A leap from one chord tone to another within a single harmony (Example 10.17B).
2. Dissonant leaps are permitted if the pitches are members of V^7 (e.g., the tritone between scale degrees $\hat{7}$ and $\hat{4}$) (Example 10.17B).

Neighbor tone (N, IN, DN, CN)

1. Stepwise ascent or descent from a chord tone, followed by a change in direction and return to the initial chord tone (N) (Example 10.17C).
2. *Incomplete neighbor* (IN): a leap to a note that neighbors a chord tone, followed by resolution to that chord tone by step (Example 10.17C).
3. *Double-neighbor figure* (DN): stepwise ascent or descent from a chord tone, followed by a balancing motion to the opposite neighbor and return to the initial chordal tone (Example 10.17C).
4. *Chromatic neighbor* (CN): includes one or more nondiatonic pitches (Example 10.17C).

Passing tone (PT)

1. Stepwise motion in a single direction that fills in an interval of a chord, most often a third (Example 10.17D).
2. *Chromatic passing tone* (CPT): fills the space between two diatonic tones a major second apart (or between two chord tones a third apart) (Example 10.17D).

Accented

Accented neighbor note (AN)

1. A three-note figure identical to the unaccented neighbor but occurring on accented beats (Example 10.17E).
2. *Accented chromatic neighbor* (ACN): A three-note figure identical to the chromatic neighbor but occurring on accented beats (Example 10.17E).

Accented passing tone (APT): a dissonant member of a passing figure that occurs on an accented beat. Usually occurs in descending lines. Most common intervallic structure is 7–6 and 4–3 (Example 10.17D and E).

Appoggiatura (APP): unprepared dissonance occurring on a strong beat; essentially an accented incomplete neighbor. Resolves by step, usually in the direction opposite that of its leap; 4–3 and 9–8 are most common (Example 10.17E).

Pedal (PED)

1. A sustained pitch, most often in the bass, with tonic or dominant function; surface harmonic succession usually unfolds above.

Suspension (S)

1. Most important accented embellishing tone, in which a stepwise melodic descent is temporarily postponed and that creates a dissonance before the line continues (Example 10.17E).
2. Unfolds in three stages:
   a. preparation (P): weak-beat consonance (chord tone).
   b. suspension (S): sustained preparation note continues into strong-beat chord change. In this environment it is a nonchord tone (usually dissonant).
   c. resolution (R): sounding dissonant suspension falls by step on a weak beat to a chord tone.
3. Three common upper-voice types: 9–8, 7–6, 4–3.
4. One common bass-voice type: 2–3 (9–10).

WORKBOOK 1
10.1–10.4

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

10.1 Suspensions

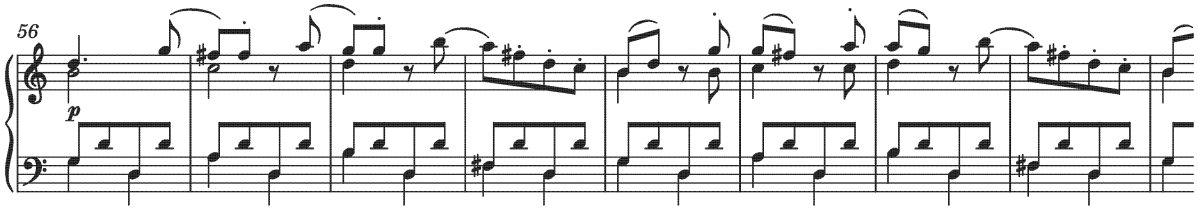
Analyze the given excerpts. Include the following:

1. Circle and label each component of the suspension (P, S, and R).
2. Figured bass that specifies the melodic motion of the suspension.
3. Roman numerals.

Sample solution:

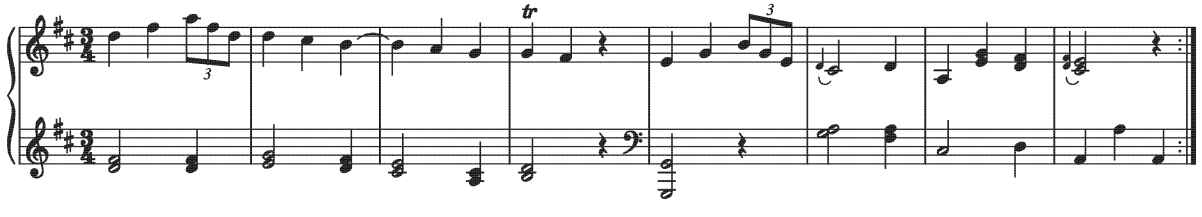
Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 172, *Adagio*

A. Beethoven, Symphony no. 1 in C major, op. 21, Finale



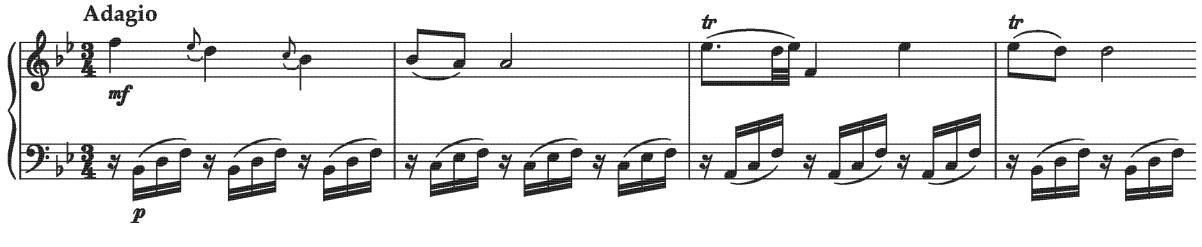
SOLVED/APP 6

B. Haydn, Piano Sonata in D major, Hob XVI.4, Menuetto
(Do not include roman numerals.)

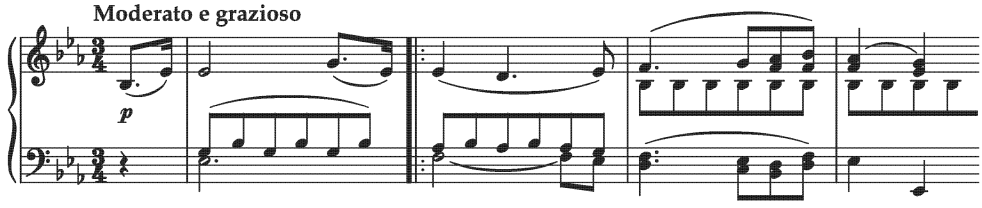


SOLVED/APP 6

C. Giardini, Six Duos for Violin and Cello, no. 2



D. Beethoven, Piano Sonata, in E♭ major, op. 31, no. 3, Menuetto



E. Somis, Twelve Sonatas for two Cellos, no. 9 in A major
(Do not include roman numerals.)

10.2 All Embellishing Tones

Circle and label all embellishing tones. Add roman numerals when specified. Be aware of accented and unprepared dissonances.

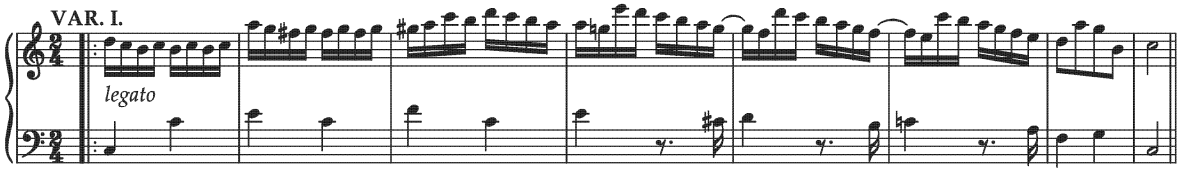
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Schubert, Waltz in C♯ minor, no. 27, from *36 Original Dances*, D. 365
(Add roman numerals.)

B. Corelli, Church Sonata, op. 3, no. 2

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Mozart, Variations on "Ah vous dirais-je, Maman," K. 265



D. Haydn, String Quartet in G major, op. 33, no. 5, iii

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- accented dissonances (accented embellishing tones)
  - accented neighbor, accented chromatic neighbor note
  - accented passing tone
  - appoggiatura
  - pedal
  - suspension
- unaccented dissonances (unaccented embellishing tones)
  - anticipation
  - neighbor
  - passing tone
- chromatic dissonances
  - chromatic neighbor
  - chromatic passing tone
- suspension
  - preparation, suspension, and resolution
- suspension chains
- suspension patterns
- double and triple suspension
- embellished suspension
- suspension with change of bass
- retardation
- restruck suspensions

CHAPTER 11

Six-Four Chords, Revisiting the Subdominant, and Summary of Contrapuntal Expansions

You might have noticed that we have not discussed any six-four ($\frac{6}{4}$) chords in our studies (save for their simple definition in Part 1). This is because they occur much less often than root-position and first-inversion chords, given their dissonant interval of a fourth that lies above their bass; root-position and first-inversion triads contain only consonant intervals (octaves, thirds, fifths, and sixths). While their intervals stack into second-inversion triads, they rarely function as do their root-position and first-inversion cousins.

We will see that six-four chords are often only apparent harmonies resulting from the coincidence of passing and neighboring tones in two or more voices. Therefore, six-four chords require careful contextual analysis and writing. Six-four chords occur in either unaccented or accented contexts; their discussion here will follow in that order.

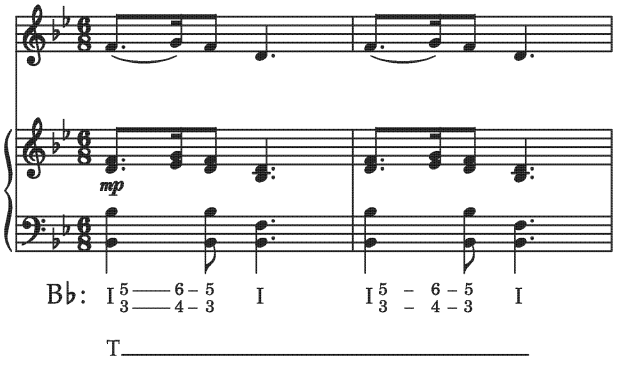
Unaccented Six-Four Chords

Pedal

Unaccented six-four chords usually occur on weak beats within a measure or on weakly accented measures in four-measure groups. Listen to the short excerpt in Example 11.1, noting the six-four chord's function. You probably heard the opening of this famous Christmas carol as a single prolonged tonic harmony. If so, you would have interpreted the two IV^6_4 chords as sonorities that elaborate the much stronger-sounding tonic chords, rather than as some sort of structural chords. These six-four chords arise when the bass holds B♭ and the inner voices ascend from D^4 and F^4 to $E♭^4$ and G^4, followed by a return to D^4 and F^4.

Thus, the apparent IV^6_4 arises through a neighbor figure exhibited simultaneously in two voices. Given the sustained bass over which the neighbor figure appears, we assign the name pedal six-four chord. We label pedal six-four chords as Ped $\frac{6}{4}$ or, with figured bass, $\frac{5\text{-}6\text{-}5}{3\text{-}4\text{-}3}$.

EXAMPLE 11.1 Gruber, "Stille Nacht" ("Silent Night")

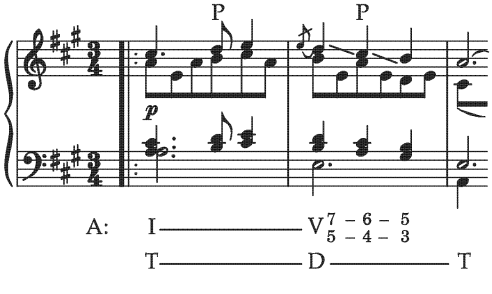


EXAMPLE 11.2 Schubert, Minuet in D major, D. 41

Pedal six-four chords can prolong not only tonic, but also the dominant, as shown in Example 11.2. It is crucial to recognize that the apparent tonic harmony (I^6_4) in m. 3 arises as the by-product of two upper neighbors that move in parallel motion.

So far, we have seen how pedal six-fours can arise out of upper-voice neighboring motion. Pedal six-four chords can also arise from passing motion. The expansion of $V^{(7)}$ is often accomplished through a pedal six-four, with the upper voices ascending or descending a third (from $\hat{7}$–$\hat{2}$ and $\hat{2}$ to $\hat{4}$), as shown in Example 11.3.

EXAMPLE 11.3 Mozart, Symphony in A major, K. 385, Menuetto/Trio

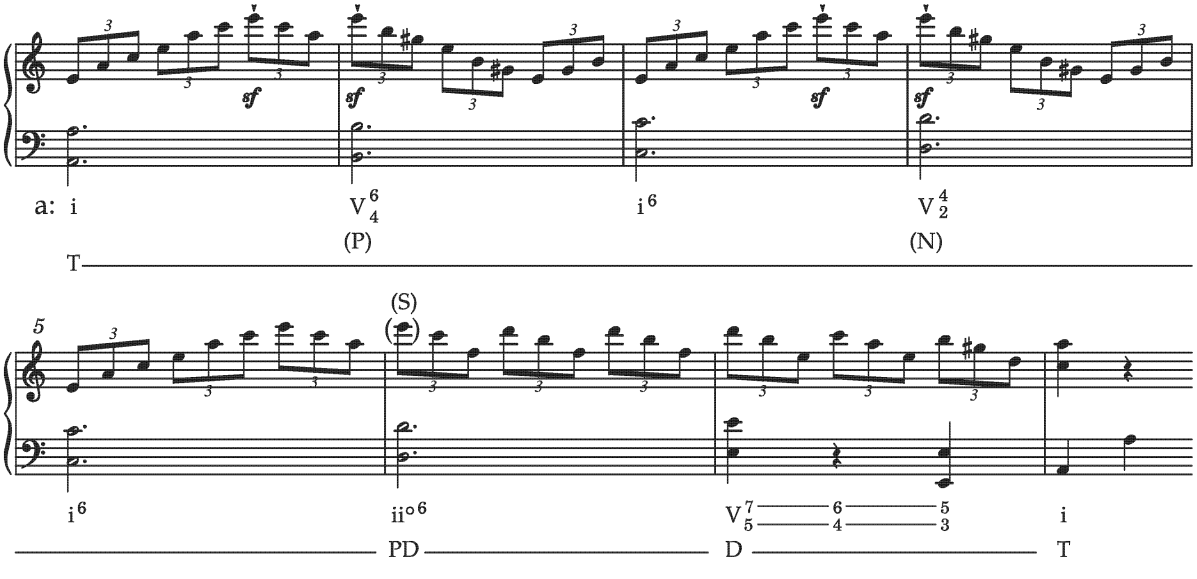


Passing

We learned that pedal six-four chords derive their name from a *sustained* bass and upper-voice motion. The **passing six-four chord** (P^6_4) derives its name from the bass *passing* motion that fills the interval of a third. Listen to Example 11.4 and locate the passing six-four chord. Measures 1–5 act as a tonic prolongation from i to i^6 featuring an arch-shaped bass line (A–B–C–D–C). Within the arch, the passing six-four chord occurs in m. 2, where it connects root-position tonic with first-inversion tonic by the stepwise bass line A^2–B^2–C^3.

Notice that this passing six-four chord functions identically to the passing vii^{o6} chord, which also fills the space between the tonic and its first inversion. On the second level of analysis, we label the chord P to reflect its passing function. Here, it is important to consider how this P^6_4 is unaccented. Unlike that of Example 11.2, which occurs on a weak *beat*, this chord occurs on a weak *measure* within a quickly moving four-bar group. Similarly, in very slow tempos such chords may occur on weak *parts of beats*.

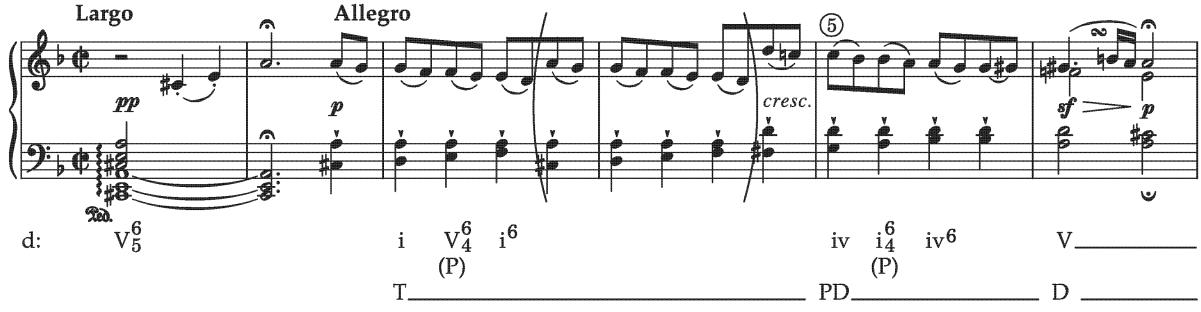
EXAMPLE 11.4 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C major, op. 2, no. 3, Trio



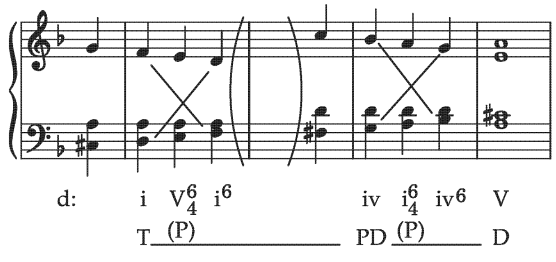
Passing six-four chords may be used to connect any five-three chord with its six-three inversion. Example 11.5 demonstrates a passing six-four to extend both the tonic (D minor) and the subdominant (G minor). The *Allegro* opens with a series of restruck suspensions; once we remove them from the texture in Example 11.5B, we easily see the implied passing six-fours connecting i to i^6 and iv to iv^6.

EXAMPLE 11.5 Passing Six-Four Chords

A. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D minor, op. 31, no. 2, *Largo/Allegro*



B. Reduction



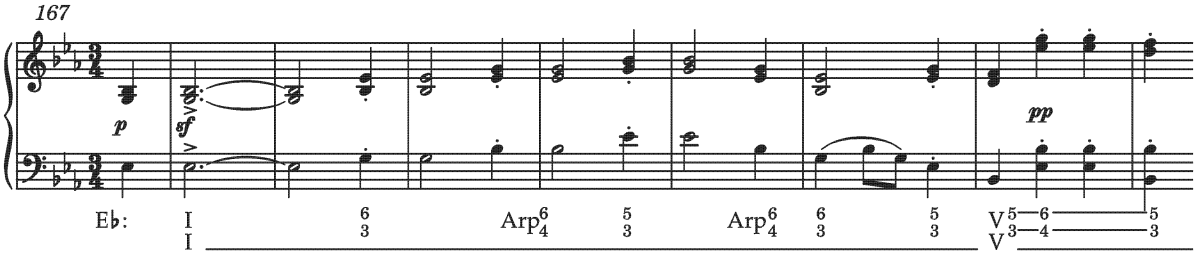
Arpeggiating

Emerging from figurated textures and accompanimental patterns, the **arpeggiating six-four chord** (Arp^6_4) is common in marches, waltzes, and folk tunes and is sometimes referred to as a **waltz six-four chord** (Example 11.6). In both the Schubert and Beethoven examples, the six-four chords that appear are consonant and are merely part of arpeggiations of the harmony that controls each measure.

EXAMPLE 11.6 Arpeggiating Six-Four Chords

A. Schubert, Ländler, D. 336, op. 67, no. 16

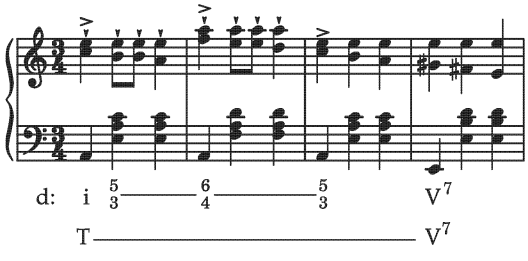
B. Beethoven, Symphony no. 3, in E♭ major, op. 55, III, Trio



In pieces such as waltzes, where one could easily imagine the first (low) bass note sustained through the entire measure, the (higher) apparent six-four chords are heard as completing a root-position harmony. Thus, when analyzing arpeggiating six-fours, you need not label the actual chords; it is sufficient to draw a dash after the initial roman numeral.

This analytical method can be seen at work in Example 11.7, where the "filler" six-four chords on beats 2 and 3 of mm. 1 and 3 are effectively ignored. Example 11.7 contains not only the arpeggiated six-four (which occurs on the weak beats of mm. 1 and 3) but also a pedal six-four (m. 2), which expands the flanking tonic harmonies in mm. 1 and 3 through neighboring motion (see the left hand).

EXAMPLE 11.7 Schubert, Waltz in A minor, from *12 Grazer Walzer*, D. 924, no. 9



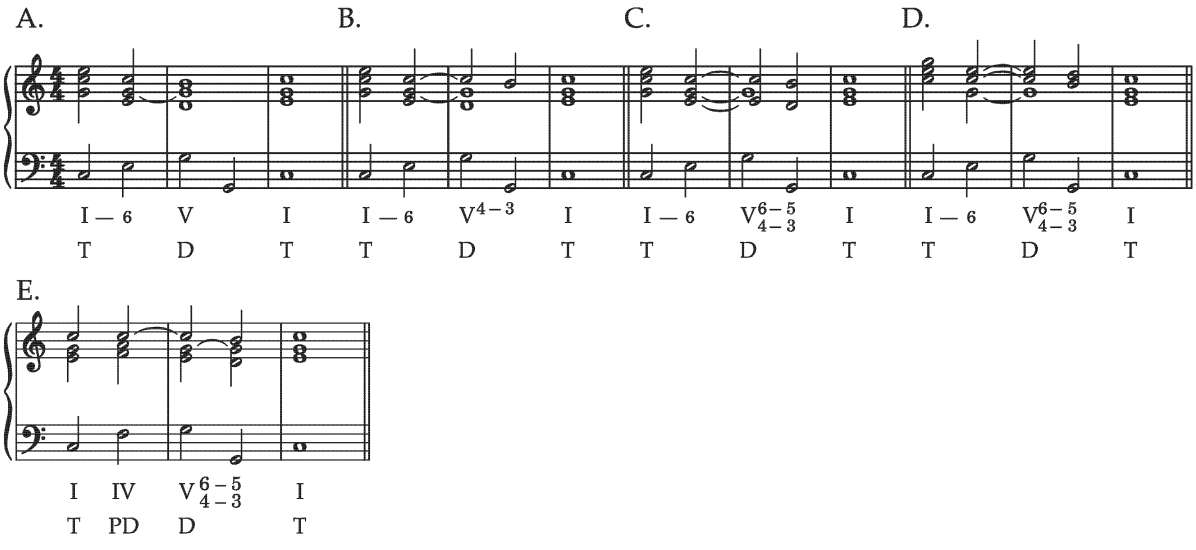
Accented Six-Four Chords

Cadential

We will explore only one type of accented six-four chord, which is usually found at cadences. For that reason, we call it the **cadential six-four chord** (Cad^6_4). The cadential six-four chord was an outgrowth of two metrically stressed dissonant events: the suspension and the accented passing tone. Example 11.8 provides a possible evolution of the cadential six-four chord from the suspension.

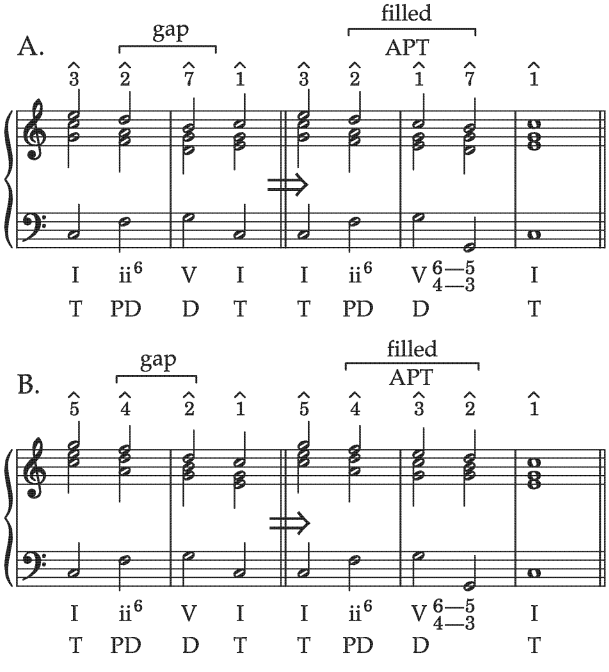
- In Example 11.8A, the progression is I–I^6–V–I; each harmonic function occupies one measure. The tied G^4 in the alto shows the common tone between the dominant and the tonic.
- In Example 11.8B, the progression is ornamented by a 4–3 suspension, as the soprano C^5 sustains into a measure of dominant harmony.
- In Example 11.8C, the tenor voice links up with the soprano voice by suspending into the next measure of dominant harmony and creating a $\frac{6\text{-}5}{4\text{-}3}$ double suspension. The sixth then falls to a fifth and the fourth falls to a third. Example 11.8D revoices the upper voices so that the suspended $\hat{3}$ appears in the soprano voice. Example 11.8E adds the PD function by incorporating a IV chord, since $\hat{1}$, the chordal fifth, continues to serve as preparation for the suspension.

EXAMPLE 11.8 Cadential $\frac{6}{4}$ Arising from the Suspension



Example 11.9 presents an evolution of the cadential six-four chord through the second type of dissonant event: the accented passing tone. Recall that a melodic gap occurs in the soprano between $\hat{2}$ and $\hat{7}$ (see Example 11.9A) or between $\hat{4}$ and $\hat{2}$ (see Example 11.9B) when moving from ii$^{(6)}$ to V. The cadential six-four chord fills this gap of a third as a powerful accented passing tone that intensifies the motion to $\hat{7}$ or $\hat{2}$. IV, with $\hat{4}$ in the soprano, also works well in this situation.

EXAMPLE 11.9 Cadential $\frac{6}{4}$ Arising from the Accented Passing Tone



The cadential six-four chord, then, is a root-position dominant harmony whose chordal fifth and third are temporarily postponed by an accented dissonant fourth and sixth. These upper-voice, nonharmonic tones are resolved by step down. Preparation occurs in one of two ways:

1. *Preparation by common tone* (as suspensions) occurs when I precedes the cadential six-four (given that $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{3}$ appear in tonic and become the double suspensions in the cadential six-four). IV (with $\hat{1}$ in the soprano) works well, too. (See Example 11.8C and D.)
2. *Preparation by step* (as accented passing tones) is used when a pre-dominant harmony precedes the cadential six-four (Example 11.9A and B).

Additional Uses of Cadential Six-Four Chords

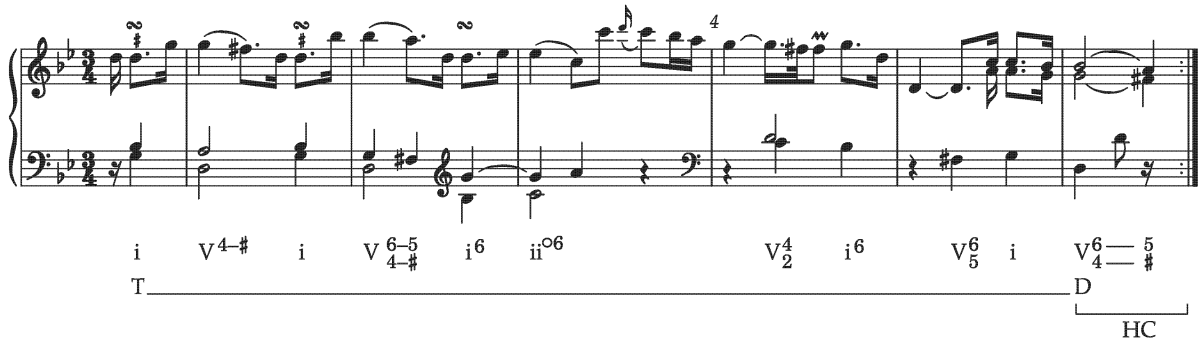
As Part of Half Cadences and Authentic Cadences Not only do cadential six-four chords occur in authentic cadences, but they also intensify the dominant at half cadences, given the accented strong-beat dissonance that draws attention to the chord. Example 11.10 shows cadential six-four chords in half and authentic cadences. The first phrase closes in m. 4 with a HC that includes the cadential six-four, which permits a full measure for the horn to move from D♭ through the accented passing tone C and eventually on, to resolve to B♭. The second phrase closes with an acceleration of the harmonic rhythm: Both the cadential six-four and the tonic occupy m. 8 as the horn balances the previous falling motion with a rise to $\hat{1}$.

EXAMPLE 11.10 Mozart, Concerto in E♭ for Horn and Orchestra, K. 447, *Larghetto*

Preceding V^7 Notice that the cadential six-four in m. 8 of Example 11.10 leads not to a triad on V but, rather, to V^7: E♭ (the root of V^7) appears as part of a melodic 8–7 motion above the bass.

Within a Phrase Just as V^7 may occur within a phrase, so too do accented six-four chords. Example 11.11 presents an example. The six-measure phrase closes with a half cadence that is strengthened by a cadential six-four. However, Haydn peppers his phrase with sustained dominants, the first of which (m. 1) contains a 4–3 suspension, while the second example intensifies the single suspension with two suspensions, creating the characteristic cadential six-four.

EXAMPLE 11.11 Haydn, Piano Sonata in G minor, Hob XVI.44, *Allegretto*



Evaded Cadences: Elision and Extension We have seen that composers can thwart a listener's expectations of a strong cadence by changing the direction of the line at the last second. For example, a root-position V chord setting up an authentic cadence can be weakened by the addition of the chordal seventh *in the bass* (resulting in a V^4_2 chord), as we saw in Example 8.5B. This common procedure of circumventing a cadence is called an **evaded cadence**. Evading the cadence occurs even more often when the most powerful dominant, the cadential $^6_4$ chord, is used as the dominant. Indeed, the addition of a simple passing seventh in the bass effectively dissolves a strong cadence, given that this seventh must resolve to the far-weaker I^6 chord rather than to a root-position tonic.

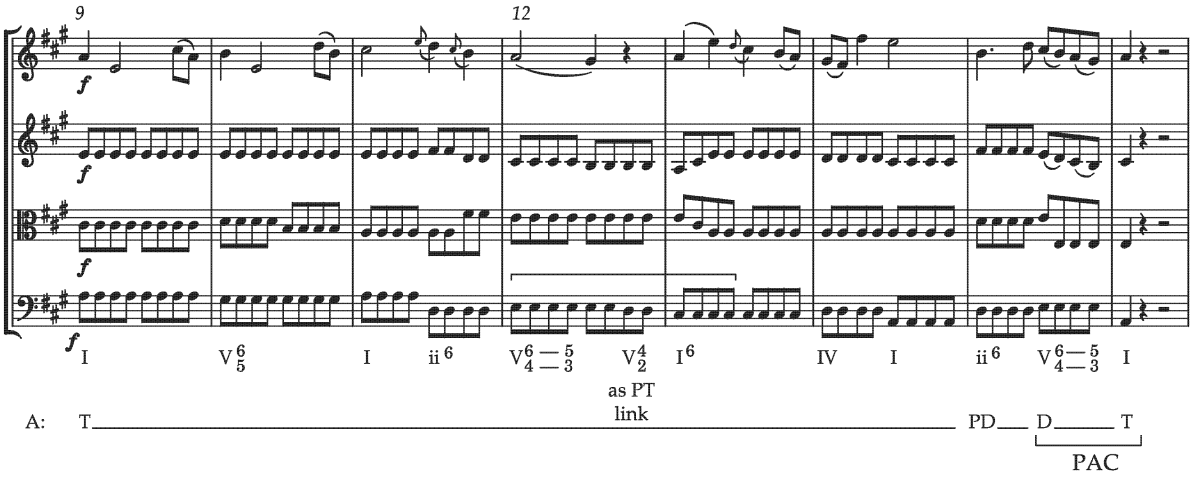
There are two common reasons why composers would want to evade a cadence when using a cadential six-four chord:

1. They wish to hide the seams between two independent phrases in order to create one large phrase, a technique called **elision**.
2. Or they wish to intensify a cadence by repeating certain elements of it, including the pre-dominant function and the dissonant, first part of the cadential six-four chord, before finally stating the authentic cadence—a technique called **cadential extension**.

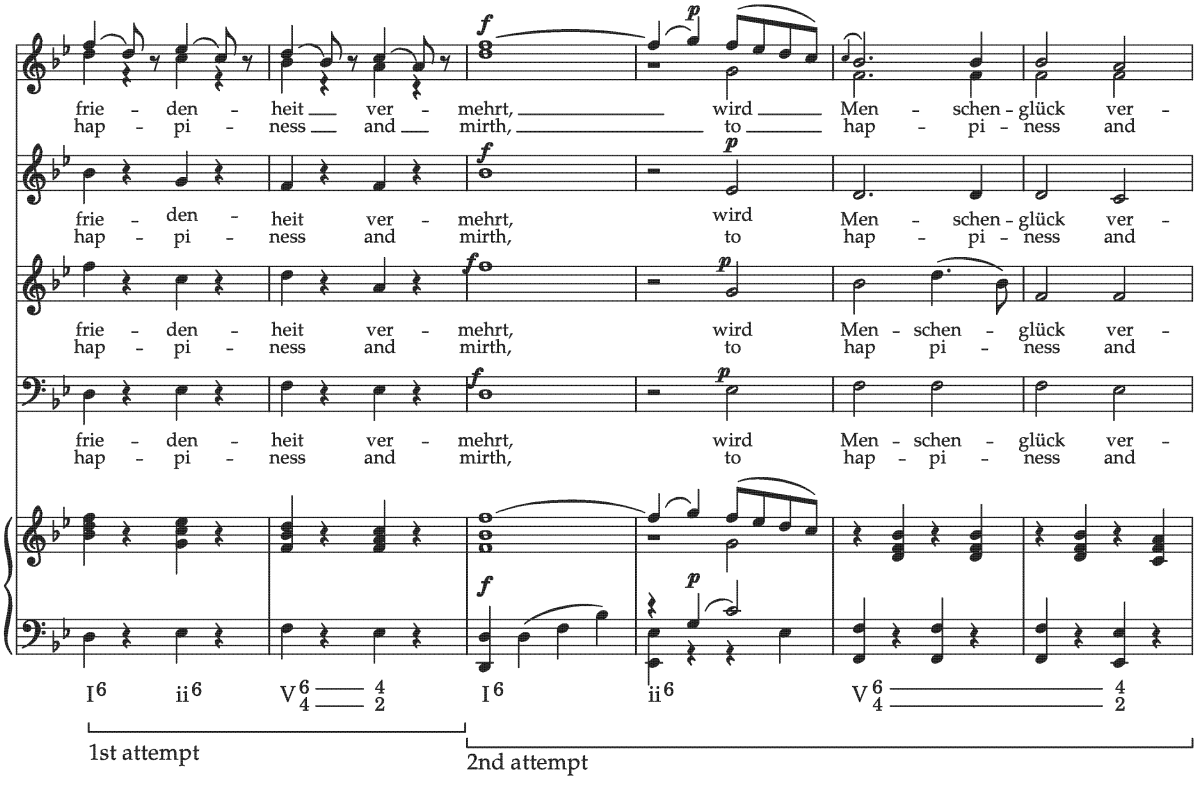
Listen to Example 11.12 for an example of phrase elision using V^4_2. Mozart creates a single expansive eight-measure phrase rather than two four-measure phrases by converting the cadential $^6_4$ (m. 12) into a V^4_2. Indeed, the required resolution to I^6 averts the potential HC and thus covers any seam between mm. 12 and 13. Notice that the final cadence includes another cadential six-four, this one, however, participating in the PAC.

EXAMPLE 11.12 Evaded Cadence and Cadential Extension

A. Mozart, Symphony in A major, K. 114, *Allegro moderato*



B. Mozart, Quintet "Hm! Hm! Hm!" from *The Magic Flute*, act I

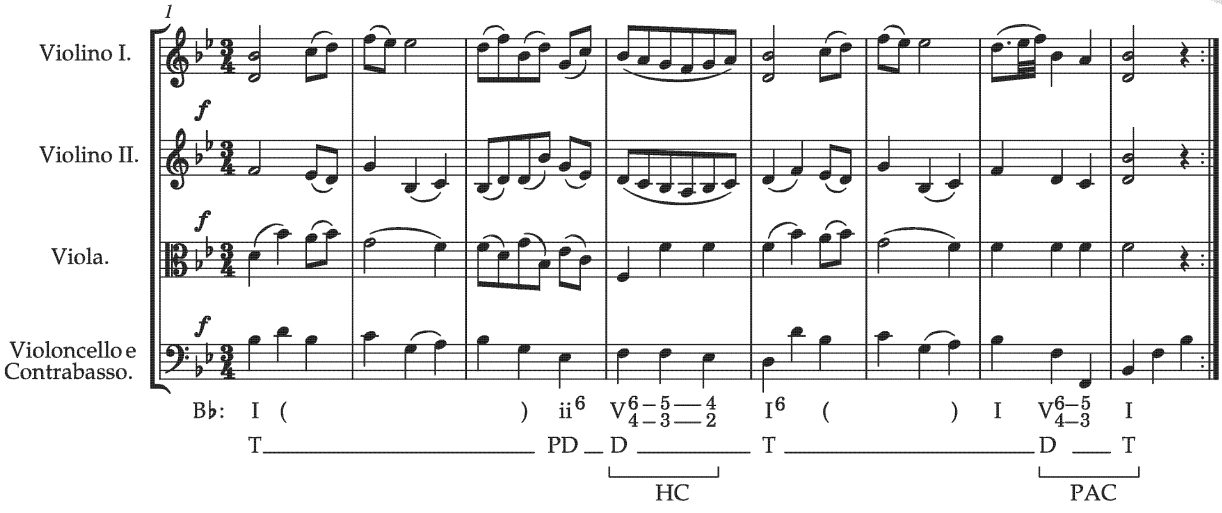


Continued

Cadential extension using V^4_2 dramatically intensifies the listener's desire for closure and sets up what amounts to a harmonic crescendo that heralds the impending structural cadence. Example 11.12B illustrates how Mozart is able both to suspend and to intensify an expected cadence. In the close of an aria from his *Magic Flute*, we hear the powerful cadential six-four chord lead not to a five-three chord, but rather to V^4_2, which necessarily leads to I^6 and another attempt to close the phrase. In the second attempt, the cadential six-four is extended, lasting almost two measures (rather than two beats, as in the first attempt). It is only in the third attempt, that the V^6_4 finally resolves to the root-position V^7 chord and moves on to tonic.

Triple Meter In triple meter, the cadential six-four chord may appear on either beat 1 or beat 2, since both are metrically stronger than beat 3. The last movement of Mozart's B♭ major Bassoon Concerto in $\frac{3}{4}$ often emphasizes beat 2, through durational accents (see Example 11.13). Yet again, the first appearance of a cadential six-four moves to V^4_2. However, different than in Example 11.12, we still hear two phrases, given the parallel melodic construction. Nonetheless, Mozart smooths the seam between the two phrases. Notice that the cadential six-four chord (m. 7) appears on beat 2 and falls to five-three on beat 3.

EXAMPLE 11.13 Mozart, Bassoon Concerto in B♭, K. 191, Rondo, *Tempo di Menuetto*



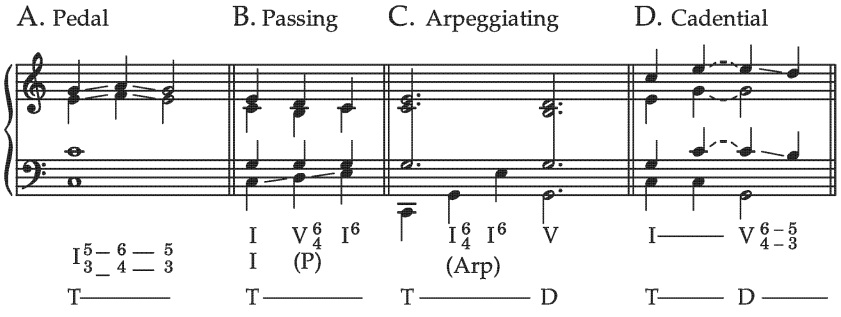
Writing Six-Four Chords Based on the models of unaccented and accented six-four chords, we can now summarize their functions and formulate writing rules.

1. *Unaccented six-four chords* are embellishing chords that prolong another harmony, usually the tonic. These include the pedal (Example 11.14A), passing (Example 11.14B), and arpeggiating six-four chords (Example 11.14C).
2. The one type of *accented six-four chord* we have learned is the cadential six-four. The cadential six-four occurs over the root-position dominant and is formed by two nonchord tones above the root of V: the sixth and the fourth postpone the chordal fifth and third.

   The cadential six-four chord:

   a. may be used at either a HC or an AC (Example 11.14D).
   b. is usually immediately preceded by a pre-dominant, although sometimes by a form of the tonic, but *not* by another dominant-function chord (e.g., vii°6 or vii°7) since it weakens the impact of the Cad_4^6 arrival.
   c. occurs on a metrically accented beat (beat 1 in duple meter, beat 1 or 2 in triple meter, beat 1 or 3 in quadruple meter).
   d. may lead to V (in a HC *or* an AC) or V^7 (in an AC).
   e. may be used within a phrase or between phrases (use V_2^4 to elide phrases by weakening cadential motion).
3. Approach and leave six-four chords by step or common tone.
4. Double the bass in six-four chords.

EXAMPLE 11.14 Summary of $\frac{6}{4}$ Chords



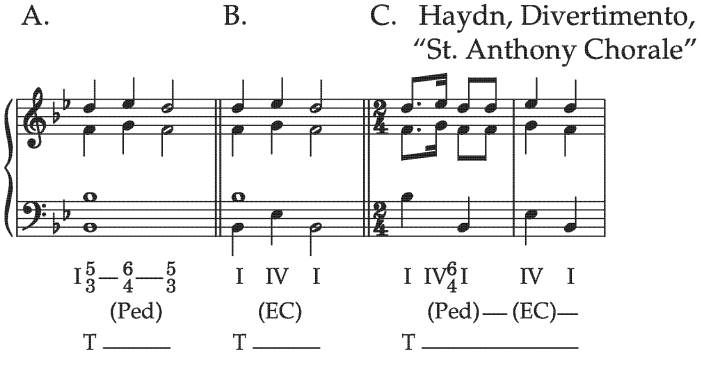
Revisiting the Subdominant

Contrapuntal Expansion with IV

The subdominant harmony can function in two very different ways. In its root position or first inversion (as part of the Phrygian cadence) it occurs as a strong harmonic function: the pre-dominant. In its first inversion, it regularly occurs as a weak contrapuntal chord that expands either I or V. (Recall that IV^6 participates in tonic expansions as part of a bass arpeggiation [$\hat{1}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{3}$] and as dominant expansions as a passing chord between V and V^6.) We now see how IV in root position may be used to expand tonic.

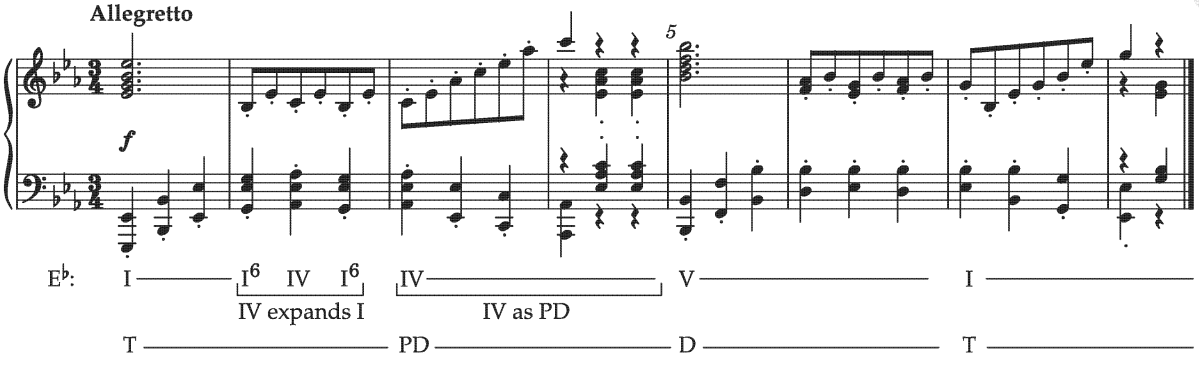
Remember that the pedal six-four chord contains the same pitches as the subdominant, yet we refrained from labeling it a IV harmony because of its neighboring motion in the upper voices. Consider the situation in Example 11.15. The central sonority in Example 11.15A clearly acts as a pedal six-four chord. The central chord in Example 11.15B looks similar, yet the neighbor notes (G and E♭) are less dissonant. In fact, the chord is a stable root-position triad on IV since the bass leaps to E♭ renders G and E♭ in the upper voices temporarily consonant. Therefore, even though IV appears in root position, we still hear tonic controlling the example, and we label the IV an **embellishing chord** (EC). Example 11.15C illustrates Haydn's use of IV to expand tonic.

EXAMPLE 11.15 IV as an Embellishing Chord



As we do with every musical event, we must consider the context in which the subdominant appears and interpret it accordingly. For example, the Menuetto from Mozart's Symphony no. 39 opens with multiple statements of the IV chord (Example 11.16). It appears as a pre-dominant in mm. 3–4, leading to the dominant function in m. 5–6. However, in m. 2, IV prolongs I through a neighboring motion.

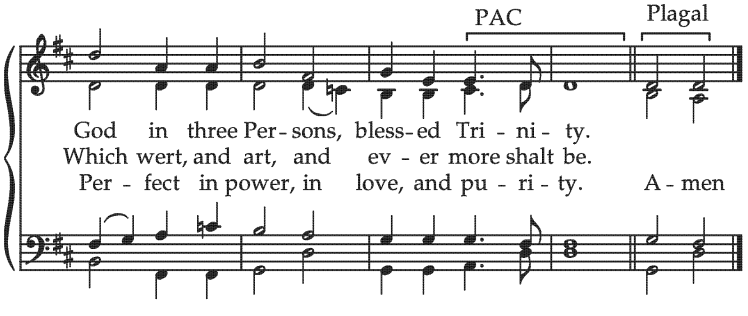
EXAMPLE 11.16 Mozart, Symphony no. 39 in E♭ major, K. 543, Menuetto



Plagal Cadence

In addition to being an embellishing chord, IV sometimes can have an important cadential function. In Example 11.17, IV participates in closing the hymn. The two-chord motion IV–I is called a **plagal cadence**; because it often appears in church music, it is also known as the "amen cadence." Notice how the plagal cadence immediately follows an authentic cadence, almost as if it were tacked on to the end of the piece. The plagal cadence is often a cadence in name only, since a strong authentic cadence usually precedes it.

EXAMPLE 11.17 Dykes, "Holy, Holy, Holy"

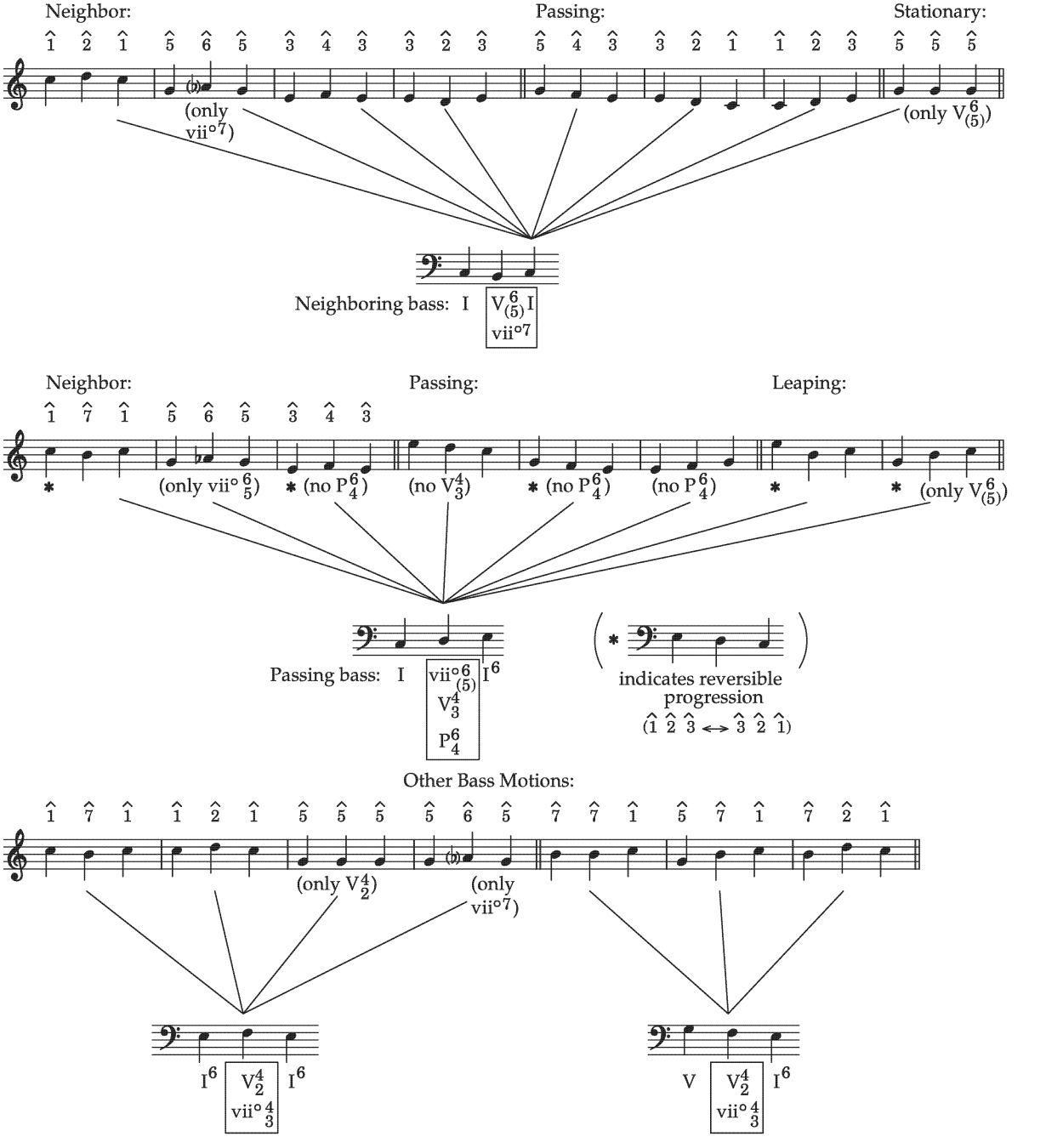


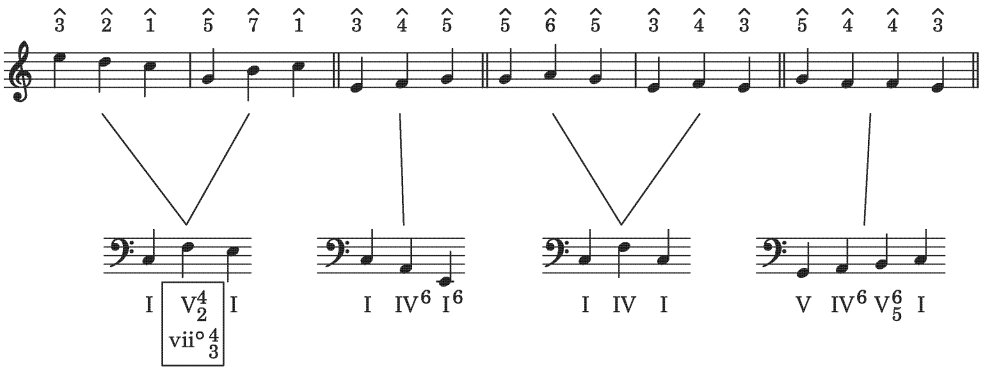
The plagal cadence is much weaker than the authentic cadence because the motion of IV to I is not nearly as goal directed as the motion from V to I heard in the authentic cadence. Whereas the authentic cadence contains the tonally defining *descending-fifth* root motion coupled with the equally strong melodic resolution of $\hat{7}$ to $\hat{1}$, the plagal cadence has only a *descending fourth* in the bass and a static common tone above, $\hat{1}$. Therefore, IV is peripheral to the harmonic motion and instead extends the tonic through double upper-neighbor motion.

Summary of Harmonic Paradigms

We have now completed our study of contrapuntal expansions. Although we have focused exclusively on ways that such embellishments expand the tonic and the dominant, we will see in later chapters that the principles can be applied to all of the other harmonies. Example 11.18 summarizes neighboring, passing and leaping bass motions, the possible contrapuntal chords used to harmonize them, and common soprano pitches used in setting these contrapuntal expansions. Progressions occur in major and minor, except those that involve vii°7, which (for now) occur only in minor.

EXAMPLE 11.18 Summary of Bass and Soprano Harmonic Paradigms



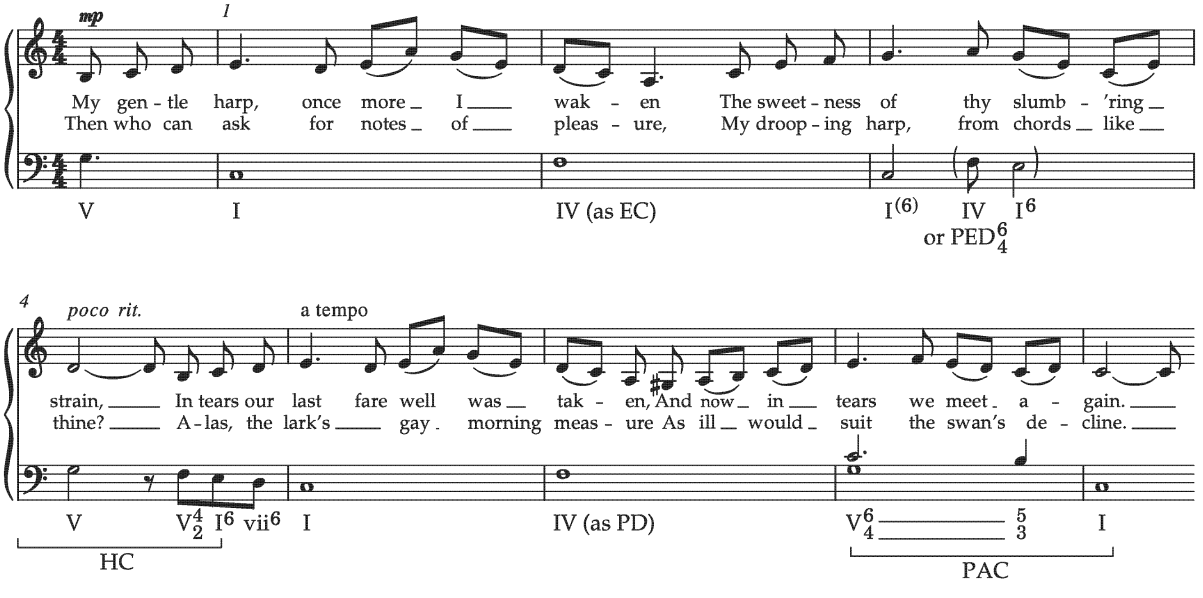


Harmonizing Florid Melodies

Now that the pre-dominant function has been added to your harmonic palette, we can harmonize tunes with slower harmonic rhythm much more effectively than we could using only tonic and dominant functions. Further, this chapter's discussion of six-four chords and the use of IV to expand I allows us to add these sonorities to our vocabulary and use them when harmonizing florid melodies.

For example, in "My Gentle Harp" (also called "Danny Boy") (Example 11.19), we see how a IV chord in m. 2 embellishes the tonic harmonies that extend from mm. 1–3. Note the possible addition of either a root-position IV or a pedal six-four chord in m. 3 to embellish the eighth-note A. The first phrase closes with a HC in m. 4. A single V chord will work well here, although the falling line in the bass allows a stepwise motion back to tonic in m. 5, and it nicely harmonizes the upbeat figure in the tune. The second phrase opens the same as the first phrase but closes with a strong pre-dominant (IV) and cadential six-four chord that is part of a PAC. Recall that in previous chapters we harmonized tunes with implied chord changes only once each measure or even less often. Such melodies contrast vividly with those whose harmonic changes accompany each melody note.

EXAMPLE 11.19 "My Gentle Harp"



We review and elaborate the working method that was presented in previous chapters.

1. Begin by singing the tune, noting the key and locations of cadences, since cadences imply the ends of phrases. Recall that phrases that end $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$, $\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$, $\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$, or $\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$ imply authentic cadences. Phrases that end on $\hat{2}$ or $\hat{7}$ imply half cadences. Cadences on $\hat{5}$ usually imply a half cadence, but they can imply an authentic cadence; you will need to consider the preceding pitches and implied harmonies before making a decision.
2. Identify harmonies that begin each phrase, and determine the pattern of harmonic rhythm. In order to determine the controlling harmony for a group of pitches, focus on accented pitches. Recall that accented musical events take many forms, but the most important are metric (i.e., they fall on accented beats) and durational (i.e., they are longer notes) and are repeated.

   Keep in mind what scale degrees can be harmonized with what harmony, because the greater the number of stressed scale degrees that belong to a single harmony, the more chance that that harmony will work best for that span. In general, change harmonies on strong beats rather than on weak beats.
3. Keep the phrase model in mind, and remember that T–PD–D (T) is not reversible. T is usually prolonged for the majority of the phrase, and PD–D usually occur together as part of a cadential gesture (either a HC or an AC).

WORKBOOK 1
11.1–11.4

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

11.1 Error Detection

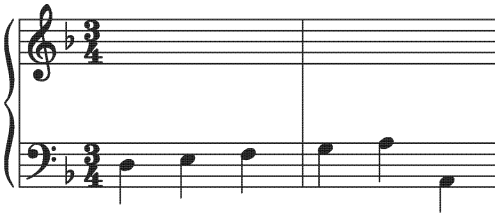
Analyze the following error-ridden example with roman numerals and figured bass. Errors are not restricted to six-four chords. Identify errors with numbers keyed to your detailed explanations of what is wrong.

SOLVED/APP 6

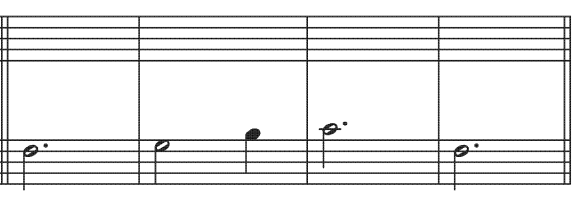
11.2

Harmonize the following bass and soprano fragments using at least two six-four chords in each example.

A.

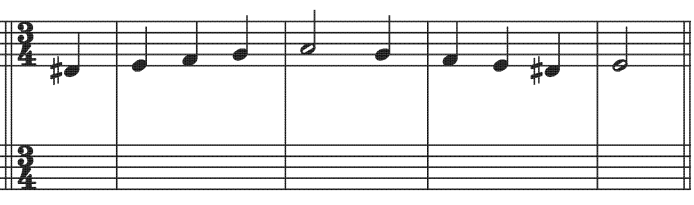


B.



C.

D.



ANALYSIS

11.3 Analytical Snapshots of Six-Four Chords and IV

Using first and second levels, analyze the following excerpts, which illustrate various types of six-four chords.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Mozart, "In diesen heiligen Hallen," from *The Magic Flute*

B. Mozart, String Quartet in F major, K. 173, Trio

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Daniel Gottlob Türk, *Serenade*

11.4 Analytical Potpourri

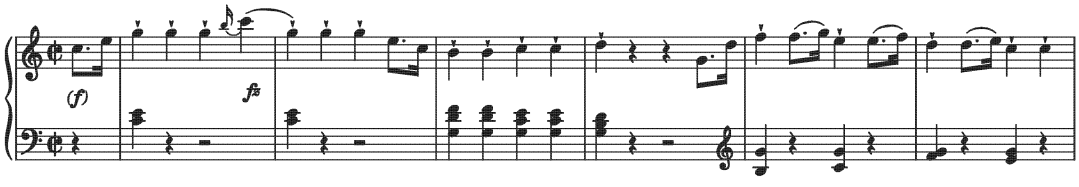
Given are numerous excerpts that include the following:

1. all harmonic expansions
2. the phrase model (T–PD–D–T)
3. all types of embellishing tones (including six-four chords)

SOLVED/APP 6

Using two levels, analyze each excerpt.

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata in C major, Hob XVI.35, *Allegro con brio*



B. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 31, no. 3, Trio

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Schubert, Waltz in D major, from *Belles Viennoises*

D. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in F minor, op. 2, no. 1, *Adagio*

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- cadential extension
- elision
- embellishing chord
- plagal cadence
- six-four chord
  - pedal $\frac{6}{4}$
  - passing $\frac{6}{4}$
  - arpeggiating $\frac{6}{4}$ (waltz $\frac{6}{4}$)
  - cadential $\frac{6}{4}$

CHAPTER 12

The Pre-Dominant Refines the Phrase Model

The phrase model is central to tonal music. Composed of goal-oriented harmonic progressions and melodic structures, phrases are complete, organic entities. The ordered harmonic functions of tonic, pre-dominant, dominant, and return to tonic—and their accompanying contrapuntal expansions—underlie the musical phrase and provide it with a simple yet remarkably rich fabric on which composers have relied for over four centuries.

In this chapter we explore important refinements in the phrase model and will learn that each of the five refinements depends on the expanded role played by the pre-dominant function. We will:

1. Begin by revisiting pre-dominant triads to discover that composers enrich them by adding sevenths, which create *nondominant seventh chords*.
2. Learn how the pre-dominant can partner with the dominant to expand the tonic. Such *embedded phrase models* add a new level of musical interest, sophistication, and structure to the phrase.
3. See that these same compositional techniques used to expand the tonic can be transferred to structural cadences that close phrases. Such *contrapuntal cadences* permit a subtler means of musical closure.
4. Explore how the pre-dominant function itself can be expanded in precisely the same ways that tonic and dominant can be expanded: by adding less-important passing and neighboring chords.
5. And finally learn that phrases often complete their dramatic trajectories in a series of stages, a sort of additive process, whereby each component functions as a *subphrase*. These subphrases often create phrase lengths that far exceed the common four-measure model.

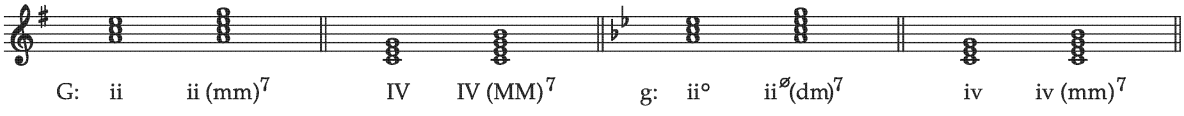
Nondominant Seventh Chords: IV^7 (IV^6_5) and ii^7 (ii^6_5)

Just as a diatonic seventh can be added to the V triad to create V^7 in both major and minor keys, so too can a seventh be added to the pre-dominant ii and IV triads. Example 12.1A shows how ii becomes ii^7 and IV becomes IV^7 in major.

Example 12.1B shows how ii° becomes ii^{ø7} and iv becomes iv^7 in minor. Example 12.1C shows the first measures of one of Chopin's nocturnes, in which he presents the cadential progression ii^7–V^7–I. Notice the tension created by the abrupt and unprepared entrance of the ii^7 chord. Further, the following V^7 chord sounds more like a *resolution* that discharges the tension of the ii^7 than a *dissonance*.

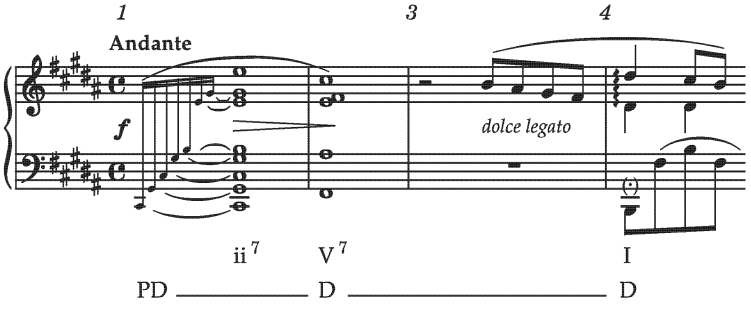
EXAMPLE 12.1 Nondominant Seventh Chords

A. ii^7 and IV^7 in Major

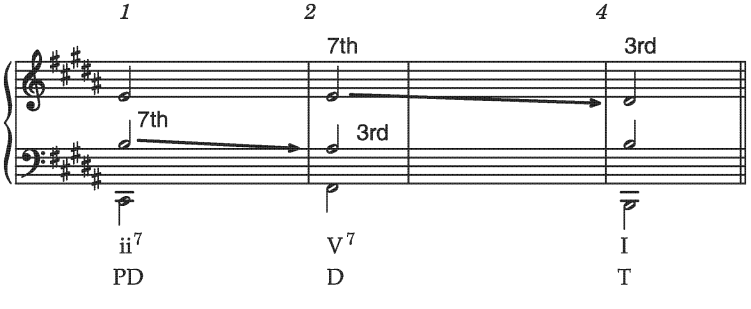


B. ii^{ø7} and iv^7 in Minor

C1. Chopin, Nocturne in B major, op. 62, no. 1



C2. Chopin (reduction)



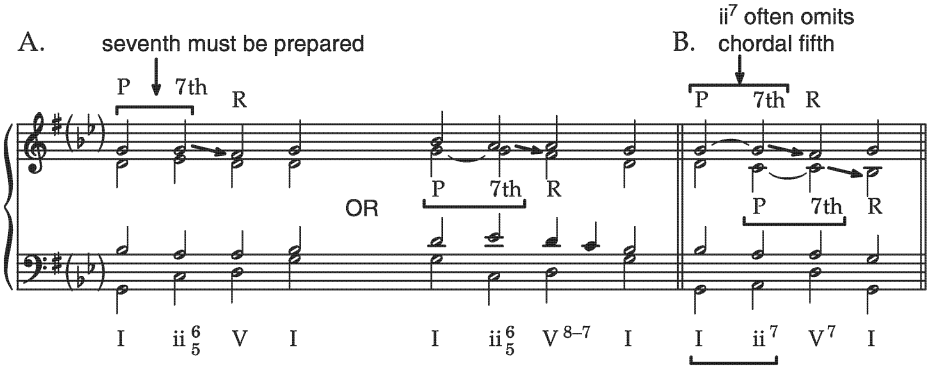
These pre-dominant seventh chords fall into a broad category of **nondominant seventh chords**—the chords in this category do not have a dominant (major–minor) or leading tone (diminished–diminished) seventh-chord quality. Nondominant seventh chords are widely used throughout the common-practice period; they provide color and contrast and are generally easy to implement.

Part-Writing Nondominant Seventh Chords

1. You must *prepare* the seventh of the chord. The note that becomes the seventh of the chord must be approached (in the same voice) by the same note (called *common-tone preparation* and the preferred means of preparation) or by the note one step higher. (See Example 12.2A.)
2. You must *resolve* the seventh of the chord. As with the V^7 chord, the seventh of the nondominant seventh chord must step down in the next harmony.
3. Chords in inversion should be complete. Root-position seventh chords can omit the fifth (and double the root) in order to avoid parallels. (See Example 12.2B.)

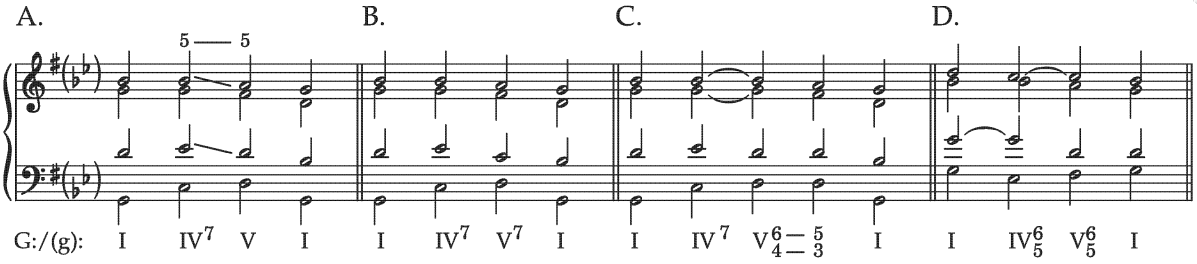
In general, pre-dominant seventh chords occur in all forms and inversions; however, ii^6_5 is the most common type and inversion of nondominant seventh chords. Example 12.2 illustrates ii^6_5 and the root-position ii^7 chord. Note how the seventh of the chord is prepared (marked with a *P*) and resolved (*R*). Also note that the ii^6_5 chord is complete but that the ii^7 chord omits the fifth and doubles the root to avoid parallels with the preceding tonic chord.

EXAMPLE 12.2 Part-Writing Supertonic Seventh Chords



The IV^7 chord, not as common as ii^7, is a colorful sonority that may occur in root position. *Pay particular attention to the potential parallel fifths between IV^7 and V.* To avoid this part-writing error, IV^7 is often followed by V^7 (Example 12.3B) or the cadential six-four chord (Example 12.3C). Doubling the root of IV^7 ($\hat{4}$) and omitting the fifth not only helps to avoid parallels, but also prepares the seventh of V. Finally, the IV^6_5 chord, shown in Example 12.3D, typically resolves to a V^6_5 chord.

EXAMPLE 12.3 Part-Writing Subdominant Seventh Chords



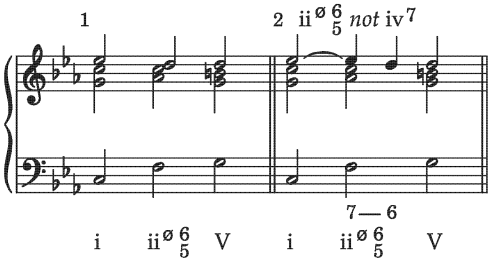
Analyzing Nondominant Seventh Chords

Composers often highlight nondominant seventh chords by suspending one of their chordal members. However, such suspensions can sometimes be misinterpreted as chord members, thus rendering a roman numeral label incorrect. Consider ii^6_5, a particular favorite of composers to which suspensions can be applied. In Example 12.4A1 the voices of the tonic move simultaneously to form $ii^{ø6}_5$. Because a form of the tonic usually precedes ii^6_5, $\hat{3}$ is the perfect candidate to suspend, since it displaces the chordal root of ii^6_5, $\hat{2}$, to create a 7–6 suspension, as shown in Example 12.4A2. Notice that this suspended pitch ($\hat{3}$) *looks* like it could be a chordal member not of a ii^7 chord, but of a root-position iv^7 harmony. However, it *sounds* like a suspension that resolves correctly to the chord tone D ($\hat{2}$). As always, we must interpret music as it sounds and as those sounds fit into the context.

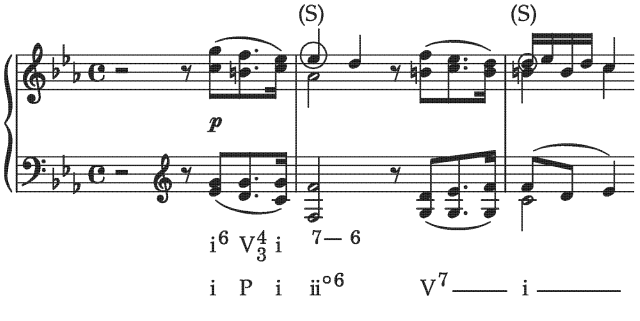
Examples 12.4B and C illustrate similar situations in two works by Schumann. Note that the suspensions are part of the motivic fabric of each example; therefore interpreting them in one context as chord tones but in another as nonchord tones is problematic.

EXAMPLE 12.4 Contextual Analysis of Nondominant Seventh Chords

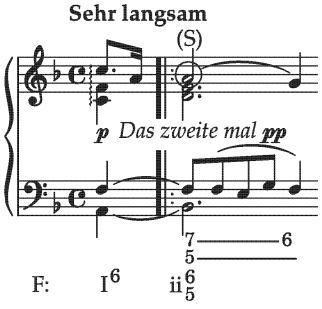
A.



B. Schumann, "Winterzeit," from *Album for the Young*, op. 68



C. (Untitled), from *Album for the Young*, op. 68



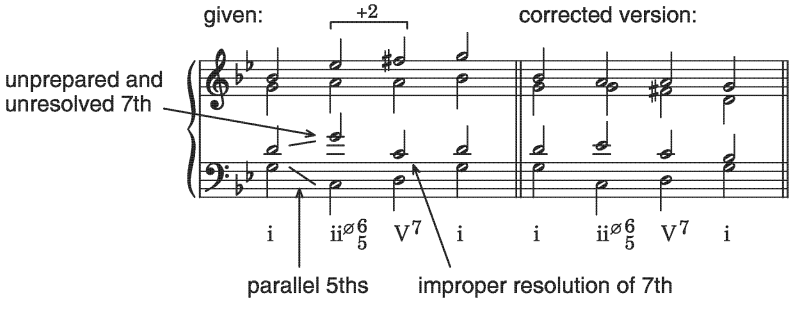
WORKBOOK 1
12.1–12.2

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

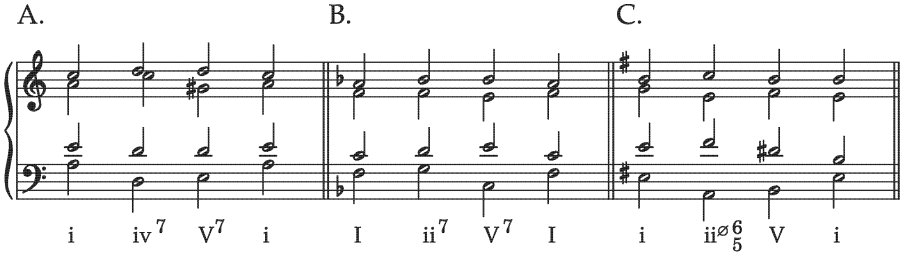
WRITING

12.1 Error Detection and Correction

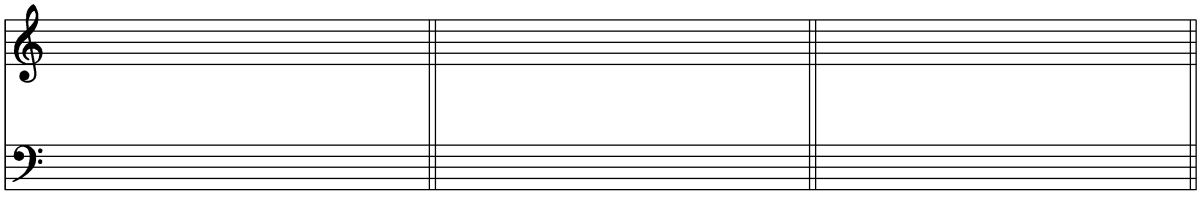
The short examples shown contain multiple part-writing and spelling errors. Label each error and then rewrite the example on the manuscript paper printed below.



SOLVED/APP 6



A. B. C.



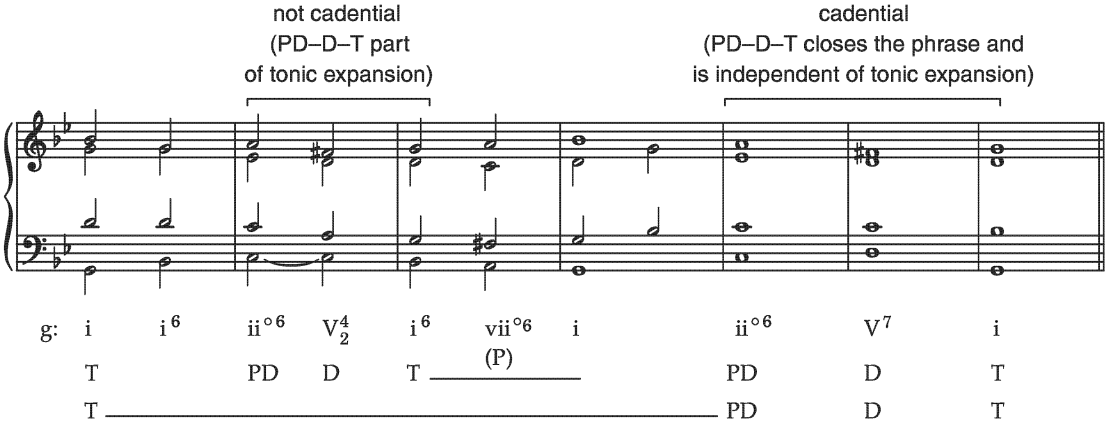
Embedding the Phrase Model

We have seen how musical events can coexist at various hierarchical levels. The tonal progression of the phrase model is no different. Composers often incorporate a mini "T–PD–D–T" model *within* a larger phrase model. The "mini" model begins and ends on tonic, thereby prolonging the tonic at the beginning of the phrase:

"mini" model:	T PD D T
phrase model:	T ———— PD D T

In order to accomplish this, composers weaken the first PD–D–T progression through the use of inversions so that a listener will not confuse it with the actual cadence of the phrase model. This progression can be seen in Example 12.5, where the tonic expansion includes a mini, noncadential "T–PD–D–T" model.

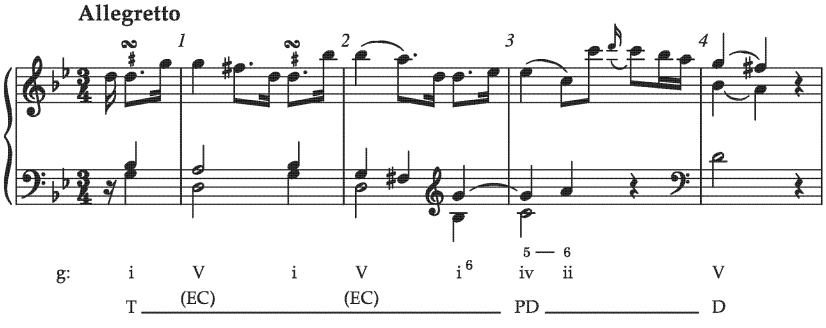
EXAMPLE 12.5 Cadential and Noncadential Phrase Models



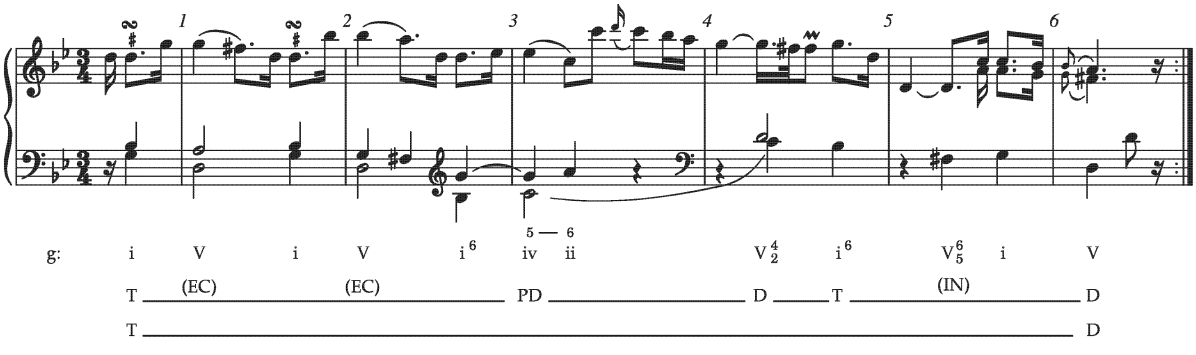
In Example 12.6A, we see a standard four-measure phrase model closing with a half cadence. Tonic and dominant alternate in mm. 1–2, until i^6 appears at the end of m. 2 and signals the upcoming pre-dominant, which enters in m. 3 and moves to the embellished HC. This example is a recomposition of what Haydn *could* have done. In fact, Haydn extends his phrase to six full measures by evading the HC in m. 4 (Example 12.6B). He does so by sustaining the bass pitch (C), which becomes the dissonant seventh in a V_2^4 chord. The chord resolves weakly to i^6, thus extending the tonic for two more measures before cadencing on V.

EXAMPLE 12.6 Embedded Phrase Model

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata in G minor, Hob XVI.44 (recomposed)



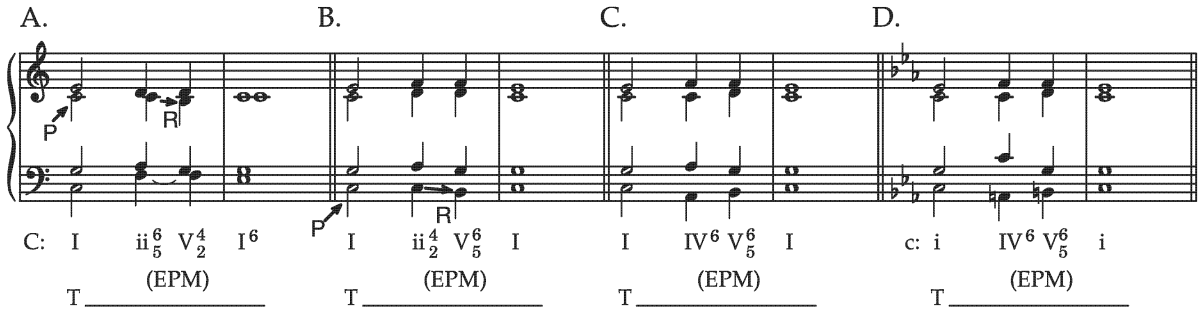
B. Haydn, Piano Sonata in G minor, Hob XVI.44 (original)



Such mini "T–PD–D–T" models, which we call **embedded phrase models** (EPMs), may occur anywhere within the tonic prolongation portion of the phrase. Keep the following in mind when analyzing a phrase with multiple T–PD–D–T progressions: A second-level analysis has just one overall T–PD–D–T progression for a phrase. Other occurrences of T–PD–D–T earlier in the phrase are not cadential—they are EPMs and expand tonic. Example 12.7 shows the following four important settings of EPMs:

- Example 12.7A places the dominant in a weak inversion and evades a cadence.
- Example 12.7B shows an EPM that affords great stability and balance between outer voices. The example has a neighboring motion in both of the outer voices. It also includes a common and important use of the ii^4_2 chord, whose seventh ($\hat{1}$) is prepared and resolved in the bass.
- In Example 12.7C, the bass downward leap of a third and stepwise return to $\hat{1}$ contrasts with the upper-voice neighboring motion.
- Example 12.7D shows the progression from 12.7C in minor. Note that $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ are raised to avoid awkward melodic intervals in the bass.

EXAMPLE 12.7 Common EPM Paradigms



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

12.2

Provide a two-level harmonic analysis for the following excerpts. Next, circle and label the preparation and resolution of non-dominant seventh chords.

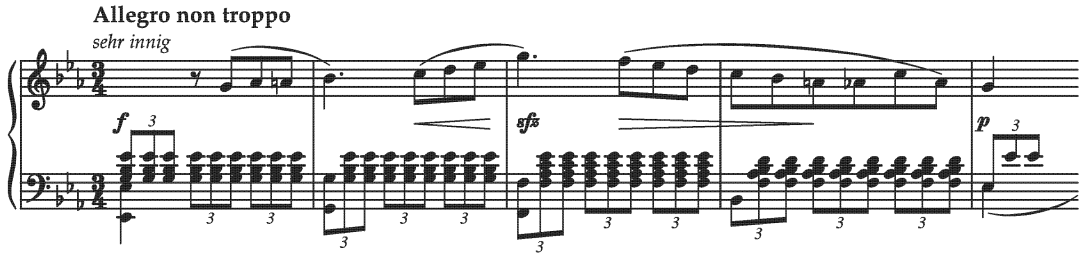
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Bach, "O Welt, ich muss dich lassen"

B. Corelli, Violin Sonata, op. 2, no. 3, Preludio, *Largo*

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Mendelssohn, *Lieder ohne Worte* ("Songs Without Words"), no. 20 in E♭ major, op. 53



D. Corrett, Sarabanda in E minor for Flute and Continuo

In m. 1, at the asterisk (*), which chord label is more appropriate for a tonic expansion: ii^{7} or vii$^{\circ 6}$?

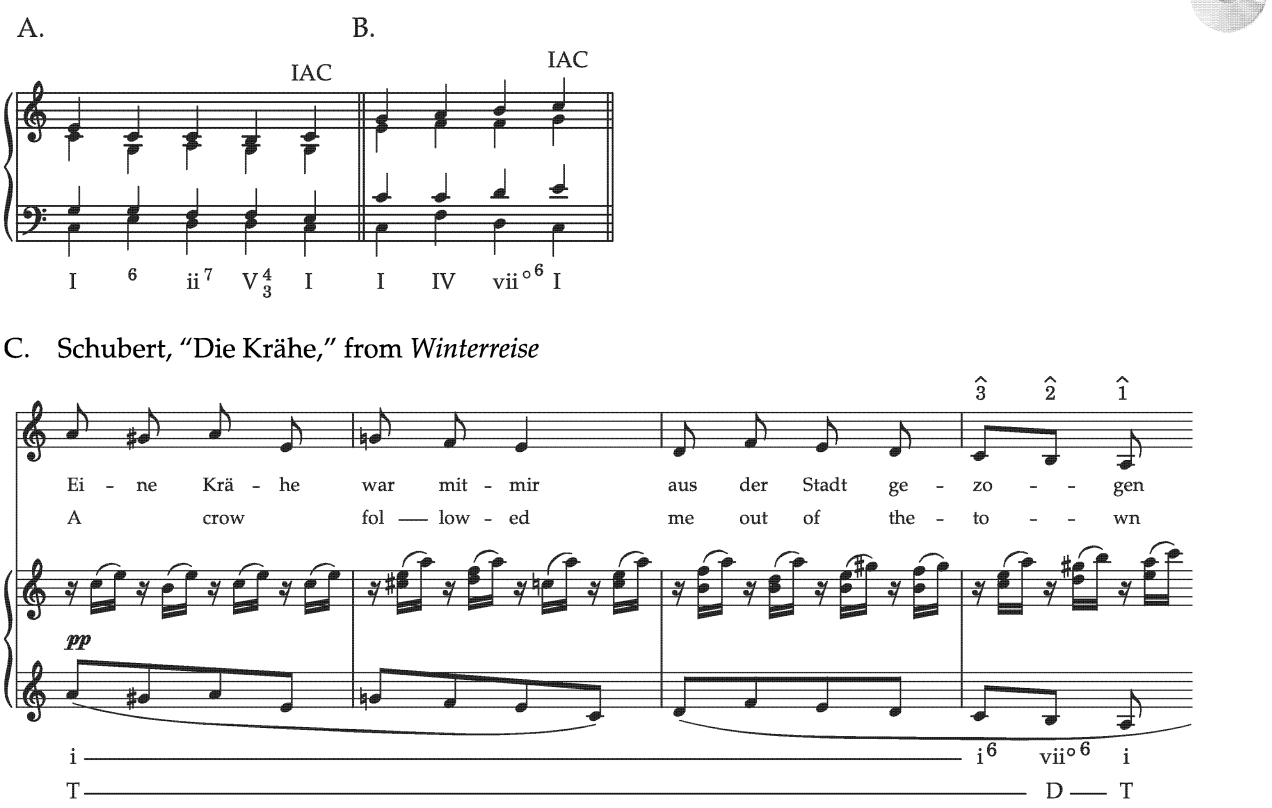
Contrapuntal Cadences

Structural cadences involve root-position dominant and tonic harmonies. However, composers occasionally close phrases using inverted dominant and tonic harmonies, often in order to save the powerful root-position V until a more dramatic and final-sounding cadence is required. Cadences in which either the dominant or the tonic (or both) are inverted are called **contrapuntal cadences**. Contrapuntal cadences often involve the very harmonies used in EPMs (e.g., I–IV^{6}–V$^{6}_{5}$–I) as well as others, including those shown in Example 12.8. Notice that not only V, but also vii$^{\circ 6}$ participate in the contrapuntal motions.

Example 12.8C presents the first vocal phrase from Schubert's song "Die Krähe." The first three measures that expand tonic are followed by the very weak vii$^{\circ 6}$–i to close the phrase. Clearly this four-measure excerpt has many of the hallmarks of a phrase: Both melody and accompaniment descend over the course of the excerpt and close on $\hat{1}$ (the voice and piano unisons dramatize the text, showing the crow's attachment to the tired protagonist by doubling—shadowing—the voice and piano at the unison). In the closing phrase, the relatively weak vii$^{\circ 6}$ chord (found more often in tonic expansions) could be heard as substituting for—yet functioning as—the dominant.

It is also possible to view the four-measure excerpt as merely a tonic expansion and therefore not a phrase, since there is no strong root-position harmonic motion from T through D. Even such apparently simple decisions as whether a musical unit is a phrase or not often can become a matter of interpretation.

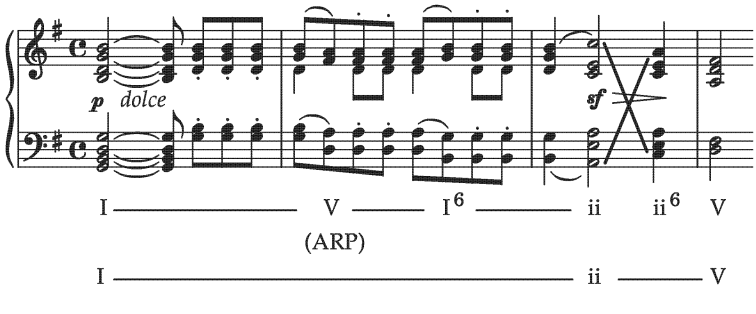
EXAMPLE 12.8



Expanding the Pre-Dominant

Just as the tonic and the dominant can be expanded, so can the pre-dominant. An obvious way is to move from ii^6 to ii, or vice versa, creating a voice exchange, as seen in the opening of Beethoven's fourth piano concerto (Example 12.9).

EXAMPLE 12.9 Beethoven, Piano Concerto no. 4 in G major, op. 58, *Allegro moderato*



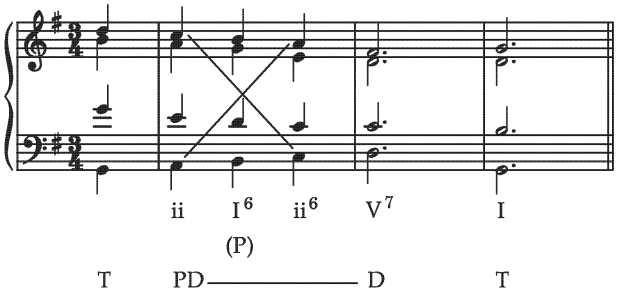
Another, more subtle and important, technique used to expand the pre-dominant is the "IV–ii complex" described in Chapter 9. Pre-dominants may also be expanded through passing and neighboring chords, in the same ways we have used them to expand the tonic and the dominant. Consider four additional ways the pre-dominant can be expanded.

Passing Chord Between ii and ii^6 (or Between ii^6 and ii)

I^6 is an ideal choice for a passing chord between ii and ii^6. This works in exactly the same manner in which vii^{o6} passes between I and I^6. The I^6 chord is subordinate to the prevailing pre-dominant, given its weak-beat placement and role as subordinate chord within a voice exchange. See Example 12.10.

Note: A weak I^6 can be used to expand the supertonic (ii), but the reverse—ii$^{(6)}$ used to expand the tonic—is not possible.

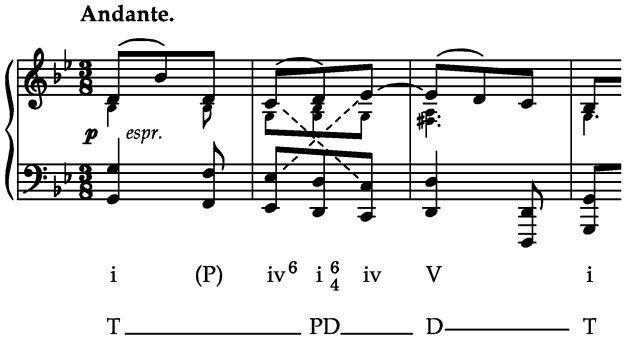
EXAMPLE 12.10 Expanding ii Using I as Passing Harmony



Passing Chord Between IV and IV^6 (or Between IV^6 and IV)

A passing I^6_4 chord helps to expand the pre-dominant IV. In Example 12.11 a passing i^6_4 chord occurs on a weak beat and is in the middle of the voice exchange.

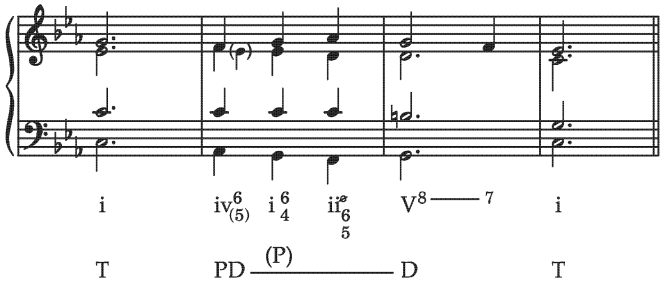
EXAMPLE 12.11 Bach, "Gerne will ich mich bequemen" ("Gladly Will I Take My Portion"), *St. Matthew Passion*, BWV 244



Passing Chord Moving from IV⁶ (IV^6_5) to ii^6_5

Expanding the pre-dominant by moving from IV^6 (IV^6_5) to ii^6_5 invokes both pre-dominant harmonies through voice exchange. As you may remember, this technique embodies another expansion of the IV–ii complex. The motion from IV^6_5 to ii^6_5 typically involves a passing $^6_4$ chord and a voice exchange. Notice the smooth voice leading in Example 12.12: Three voices move by step, and the fourth holds a common tone.

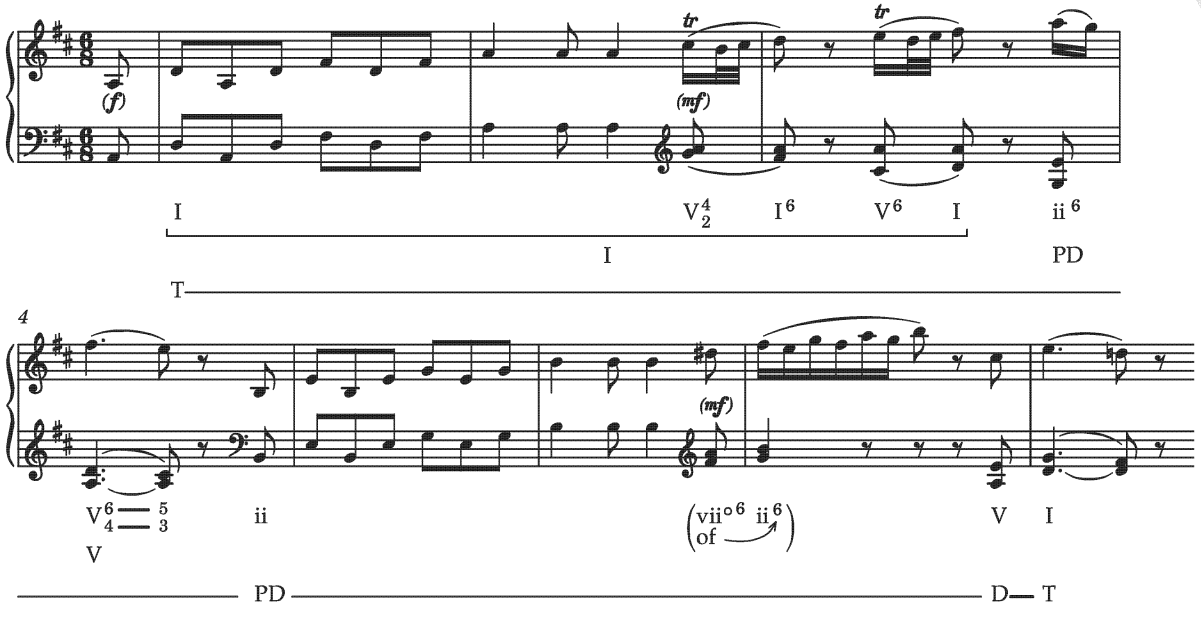
EXAMPLE 12.12 Expanding PD with $\hat{4}$–$\hat{6}$ Voice Exchange



Restate Tonic Material up a Step

One other way to expand the supertonic is to restate, up a step, musical material that was initially stated in the tonic. Consider Example 12.13, where the initial material in mm. 1–2 repeats up a step in mm. 5–6, expanding the supertonic (E-minor harmony) in mm. 5–7. (The chromatically altered pitch D♯5 in m. 6 creates a temporary leading tone that belongs to the E-minor scale.) The expanded ii leads to the cadential dominant in m. 7.

EXAMPLE 12.13 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegro*



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
12.3

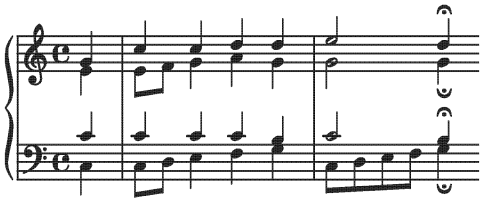
ANALYSIS

12.3 Analysis of EPMs, Contrapuntal Cadences, and Pre-Dominant Expansions

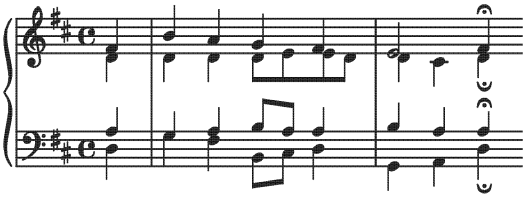
Provide a two-level harmonic analysis for the following excerpts. Circle and label the preparation and resolution of any PD seventh chords.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Bach, "In allen meinen Taten"



B. Bach, "O Haupt voll Blut und Wunden"

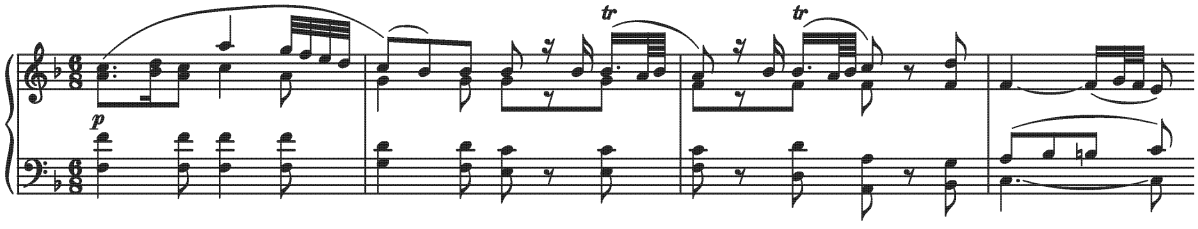


C. Bach, "Des heil'gen Geistes reiche Gnad"

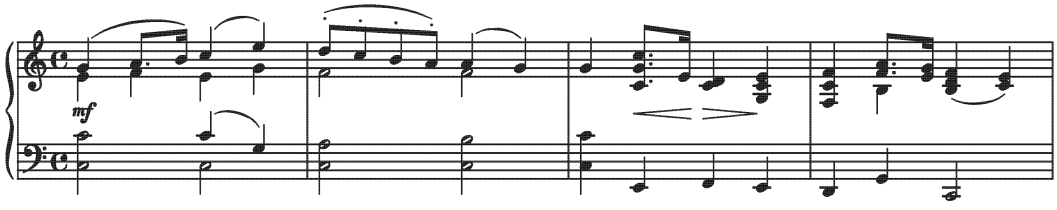
D. Brahms, Waltz, op. 39, no. 5

SOLVED/APP 6

E. Mozart, Symphony no. 36 in C major, "Linz," K. 425, *Poco adagio*



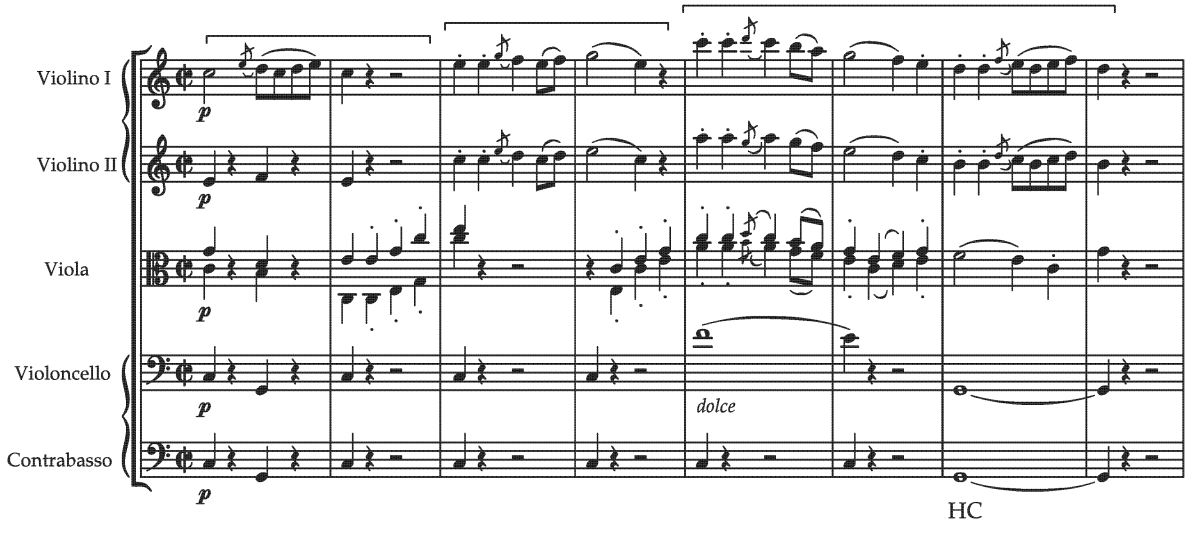
F. Mendelssohn, *Lieder ohne Worte* ("Songs Without Words"), no. 45, in C major, op. 102



Subphrases

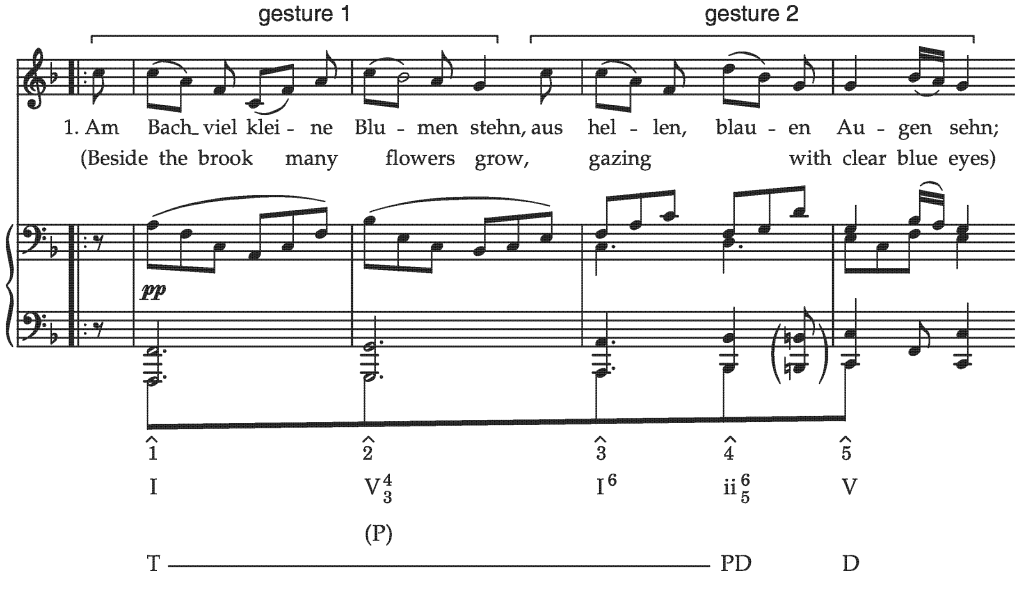
A complete phrase may comprise two or more smaller units called *subphrases.* A **subphrase** is a relatively independent part of a phrase that is marked by a pause (called a **caesura**) and/or by the repetition and variation of short melodic gestures. The eight-measure phrase in Example 12.14 divides into three subphrases. The first two subphrases are both two measures long, and each ends with a caesura. The final subphrase is four measures long and ends with a half cadence (thus ending the overall phrase).

EXAMPLE 12.14 Haydn, Symphony no. 100 in G major, "Military," *Allegretto*



The presence of a caesura does not guarantee the presence of a subphrase. For example, in the opening of Example 12.15, the vocal line is clearly divided into two gestures. However, a glance at the harmony reveals a single continuous harmonic motion over the four-measure phrase. The V^4_3 harmony in the second measure functions as a bass passing tone between $\hat{1}$ in m. 1 and $\hat{3}$ in m. 3. This I^6 then leads to the pre-dominant-dominant in mm. 3 and 4. The contiguous stepwise-fifth ascent in the bass combined with a goal-oriented harmonic progression and cadence in m. 4 results in a phrase that does not contain subphrases.

EXAMPLE 12.15 Schubert, "Des Müllers Blumen" ("The Miller's Flowers"), from *Die schöne Müllerin*, D. 795



Conversely, there may be subphrases within a phrase, even if there are no caesuras present. The eight-measure phrase in Example 12.16 moves from the tonic to a half cadence. Despite the nearly continuous movement, the phrase contains three subphrases, the first two are two measures long (delineated by their motivic structure), and the third is four measures long. (Roman numerals are given only for harmonies that begin and end the subphrases since we have not yet covered some of the chords within the subphrases.)

EXAMPLE 12.16 Schubert, Symphony no. 4 in C minor, "Tragic," *Andante*

Composite Phrases

Phrases that comprise three or more subphrases are called **composite phrases**. The phrases in Examples 12.14 and 12.16 are both composite. Composite phrases—like all phrases—contain only one structural harmonic progression and one cadence, but they are often longer than more common four-measure phrases, usually eight or more measures in length. They give the aural impression of being composed in an additive stage-by-stage process rather than as a single sweeping motion, which is why you need to be aware that these are single phrases—with one cadence—rather than multiple phrases.

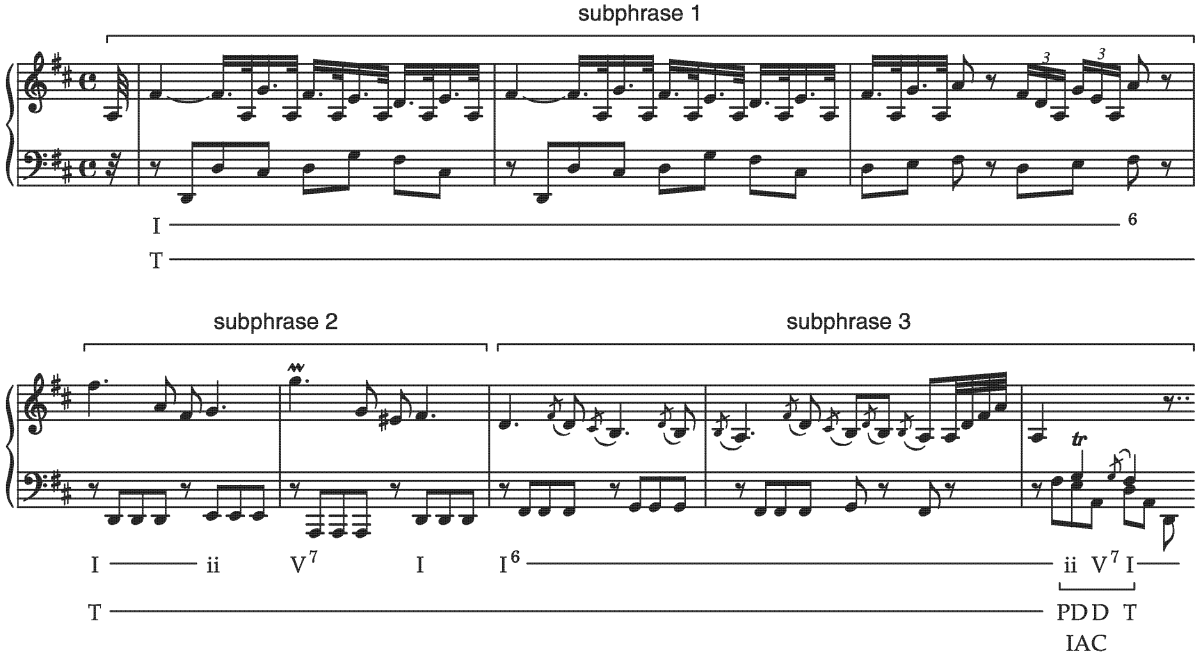
The two common types of composite phrases are distinguished in the way their harmonic motion unfolds.

1. The harmonic progression unfolds gradually, with each subphrase's melody supported by a new harmonic function, as illustrated in Example 12.17. This 14-measure phrase contains three subphrases, and a single goal-oriented I–ii^6–V–I progression underlies the entire structure.

EXAMPLE 12.17 Haydn, String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 64, no. 3, Hob III.67, *Menuetto*

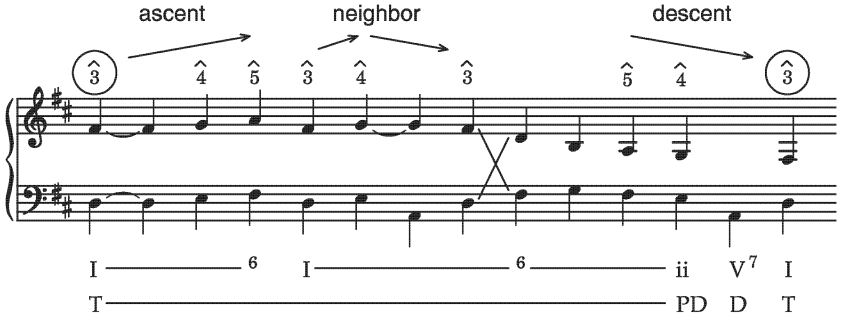
2. The harmonic progression stays on the initial tonic through most of the subphrases, changing to PD, D, and T only at the very end of the phrase, as shown in Example 12.18. Projecting this structure in performance enhances the musical drama considerably. Subphrase 1 ends in parallel tenths, surely a weak conclusion. Subphrase 2, while featuring a ii–V^7–I ending, still feels more like the beginning of a new phrase that is cut short with a T–PD–D gesture—more a harmonization of the soprano melody $\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$ than an actual cadence. It is only with the deceleration of the melody to quarter notes and the trill that the final subphrase brings the entire structure to a close in m. 8 (Example 12.18).

EXAMPLE 12.18 Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 30 in D major, Hob XVI.19, *Moderato*



Notice in Example 12.18 how Haydn balances the varying subphrase lengths with an overall graceful symmetry. The last subphrase brings the melody back down from $\hat{5}$ to its resting place, $\hat{3}$. The symmtrical shape, and the harmonic and melodic structure of the passage, are summarized in Example 12.19.

EXAMPLE 12.19 Haydn Piano Sonata (reduction)



Identification and interpretation of both subphrases and composite phrases is often, if not usually, a subjective enterprise. In fact, the interpretations of Examples 12.14–12.18 are all debatable to some extent, and alternate viewpoints are certainly possible.

Summary of Part 3

We explored several new topics in Part 3. First, the pre-dominant function is the third and final harmonic function in tonal music. This intermediate function, which occurs between the tonic and dominant functions, includes either or both

the supertonic and subdominant harmonies. Pre-dominants provide contrast between the tonic and the dominant while at the same time become springboards to and aural signals for the upcoming dominant function. The three functions provide a goal-directed motion through the phrase, which we call the phrase model.

We also learned that metrically accented and chromatic dissonances provide the phrase with intensity and dramatic forward motion. Further, our discussion of the various six-four chords confirmed the importance of considering harmonies within a musical context, rather than just stacking thirds and adding roman numerals.

WORKBOOK 1
12.4–12.5

Finally, we ended Part 3 by returning to where we began: We revisited the pre-dominant function, elaborating it by adding sevenths and, as we've done with both tonic and dominant, expanding it with embellishing harmonies. The phrase model reigned supreme, and we saw how the internal components of phrases can be elaborated and how phrases themselves can be extended.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

12.4 Subphrases

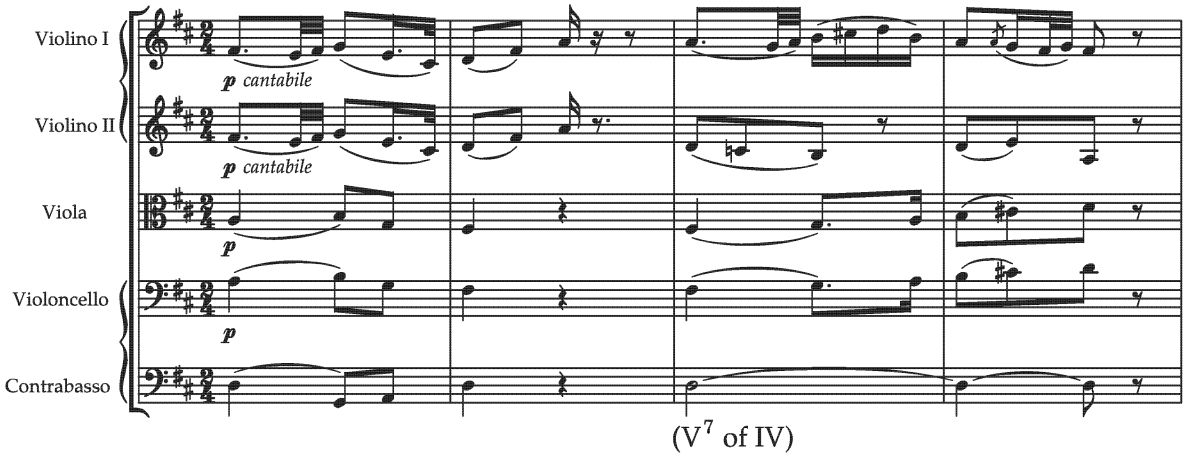
Bracket subphrases and provide a first- and second-level analysis (that includes T, PD, and D).

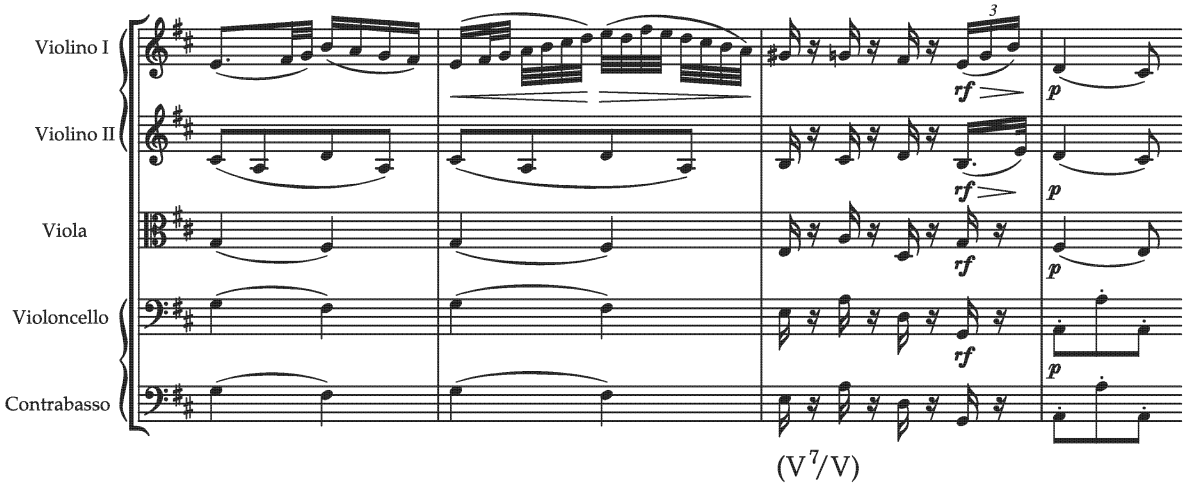
A. Schubert, Symphony no. 9 in C major, Scherzo

B. Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 29 in E♭ major, Hob XVI.45, *Moderato*

SOLVED/APP 6

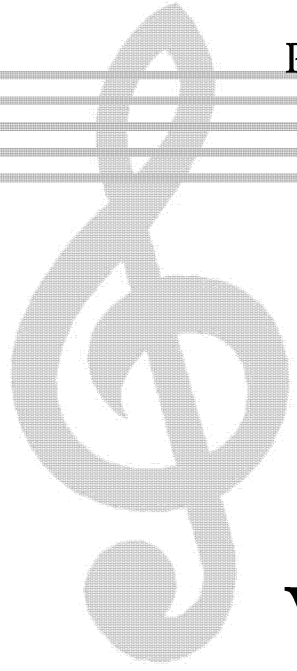
C. Haydn, Symphony no. 92 in G major, "Oxford," Hob I.92, *Andante*





TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- caesura
- composite phrase
- contrapuntal cadence
- embedded phrase model
- expansion of the pre-dominant
- nondominant seventh chord
- passing tonic
- subphrase



PART 4

NEW CHORDS AND NEW FORMS

We continue to explore the phrase model in the five chapters of Part 4. First, we complete our study of diatonic harmonies, including the submediant and mediant. We will learn how composers create larger formal structures by combining phrases. We refine our understanding of how music is hierarchical and present new techniques that reveal how harmony and counterpoint are interdependent. We also incorporate more fully the psychological phenomena of expectation and fulfillment. Analysis continues to be an essential activity in learning how subphrases and phrases can be strung together, but other skills also will be necessary. As you are given more creative responsibility, composition and instrumental application exercises will play a more pronounced role. You will learn how to write structures that balance repetition with contrast and stability with motion. The writing exercises depend on a rich and varied background of listening to and making music, since these activities provide a repository of common stylistic traits that can help guide your compositional choices.

CHAPTER 13

The Submediant: A New Diatonic Harmony, and Further Extensions of the Phrase Model

The next two chapters introduce the last of the diatonic harmonies: the submediant and the mediant. These chords always provide dramatic color contrast to the prevailing key and play important roles supporting the tonic, pre-dominant, and dominant pillars of the phrase model.

The Submediant (vi in Major, VI in Minor)

In a major key, the submediant harmony is a minor triad (vi). Because IV, V, and I are all major triads in a major key, the introduction of a minor sonority can provide a welcome relief from the prevailing harmonic color. In a minor key, the submediant harmony is a major triad (VI), so again it offers contrast to the minor and diminished harmonies i, iv, and ii°. The harmonic contexts in which the submediant typically occurs are inextricably tied to the three basic **root motions** of tonal music:

- the **descending fifth**, previously seen in the authentic cadence, V–I
- the **ascending second**, seen in the progression IV–V
- the **descending third**, to which we now turn

The Submediant as Bridge in the Descending-Thirds Progression

Our discussion of the submediant's first function arises out of the root motion by descending thirds (Example 13.1).

EXAMPLE 13.1

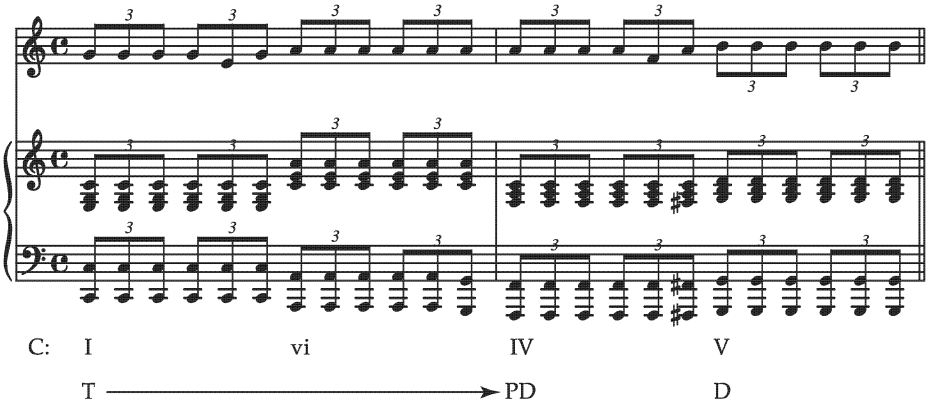
Bass:	Î	———	———	———	———	———
Harmonies:	I	-	vi	-	IV	-

Listen to Example 13.2, which demonstrates a progression that characterizes much of the rock and roll music of the 1950s and early 1960s. Take a moment to enjoy the voice leading of that style, which provides a heavy dose of parallel perfect intervals. Example 13.2B illustrates the same

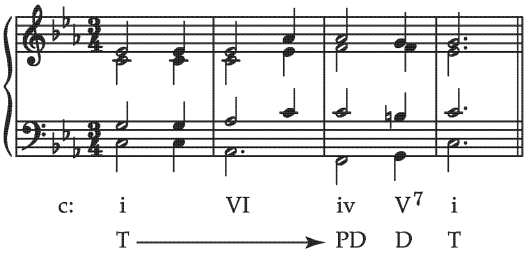
progression but places it in the minor mode and uses common-practice voice leading to connect the chords. In these examples, the submediant is both attained and departed from by means of a descending third: I–vi and vi–IV. Taken together, the three roots $\hat{1}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{4}$ arpeggiate a triad of sorts. This progression is therefore often called a descending **harmonic arpeggiation**. The submediant in descending harmonic arpeggiations provides a way station, or bridge, connecting the tonic to the predominant.

EXAMPLE 13.2 Harmonic Arpeggiations of vi

A.



B.



Note: The submediant often acts in two seemingly contradictory ways within a phrase:

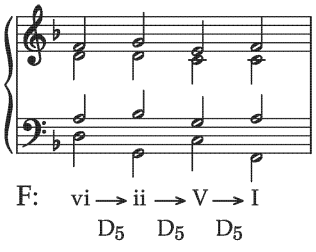
1. As an extension of the tonic. It has two common tones with the I chord and can be seen as arising from a contrapuntal 5–6 motion.
2. As a pre-pre-dominant chord, because it prepares the PD chord.

Although vi exhibits both qualities, we tend to analyze vi under "T" at the second level. However, the arrowhead is added to show the bridging function of vi.

The Submediant in the Descending-Circle-of-Fifths Progression

Another function of the submediant arises from its participation in descending-fifths progressions. It fits nicely into such a progression, extending the circle-of-fifths progression as seen in Example 13.3.

EXAMPLE 13.3 vi as Part of Descending-Fifths Motion

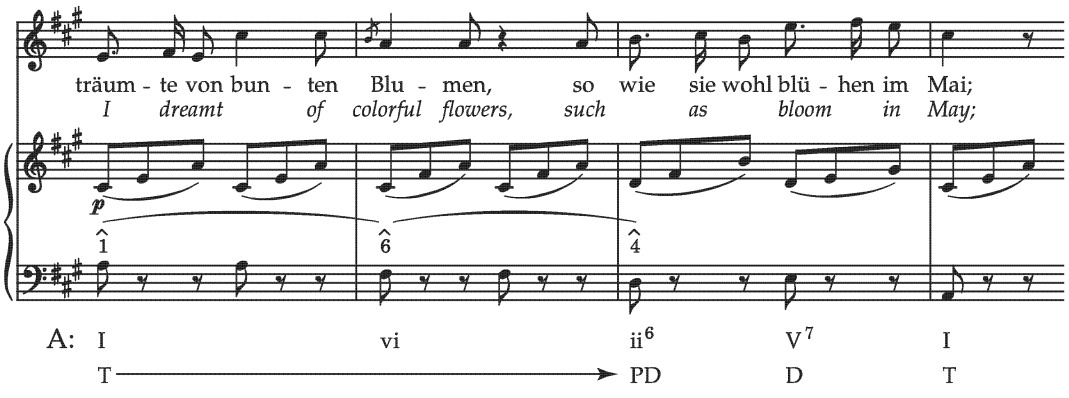


Listen to Example 13.4. The vi chord appears twice, first as part of an embedded phrase model (EPM) that prolongs the tonic and then as part of the phrase's structural cadence. Both times it is part of a descending-fifths progression.

EXAMPLE 13.4 Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 5 in F major ("Spring"), op. 24, *Allegro*

In Example 13.5 the vi–ii^6 progression blends the strong descending-fifths motion with a new means of obtaining a **melodic bass arpeggiation**: $\hat{1}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{4}$.

EXAMPLE 13.5 Schubert, "Frühlingstraum" ("A Dream of Springtime"), *Winterreise*, D. 911, no. 11



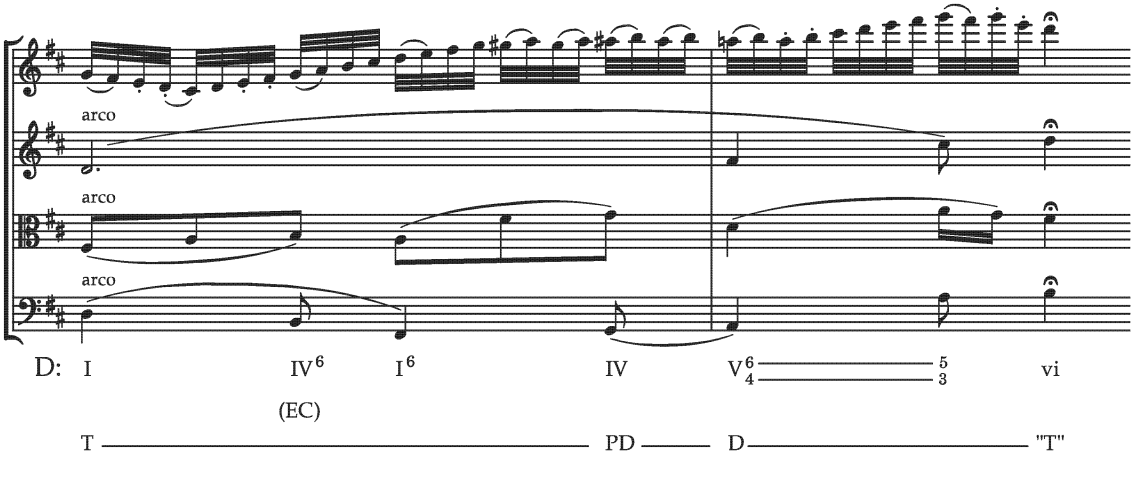
In Chapter 9 we praised the qualities of ii^6–V motion, in which a convincing descending-fifths root motion combines with smooth $\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$ bass motion. We see the same ii^6–V motion in the major-mode progression I–vi–ii^6–V–I, as shown in Example 13.5.

The Submediant as Tonic Substitute in Ascending-Seconds Progressions

So far we have seen vi appear as a bridging harmony within a descending-thirds progression and as a harmony that initiates a descending-fifths progression. A third functional possibility is for vi to substitute for the tonic chord in the cadential progression V–I; the resulting progression is a root motion by ascending second (V–vi).

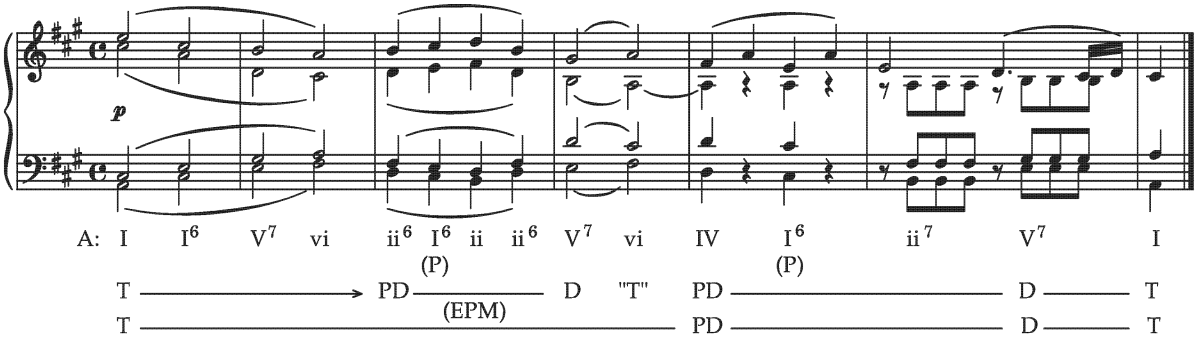
This is shown in Example 13.6, where V moves to vi and the bass moves from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{6}$. Haydn thwarts the arrival of the tonic by moving to vi. This suspenseful drama is intensified by the fermata as well as by the florid ascent in the first violin to a very high register. In general, the progression V–vi is called a **deceptive motion** (also called *evaded cadence*), since the listener expects one outcome (V–I) but hears another (V–vi).

EXAMPLE 13.6 Haydn, String Quartet in D minor, "Quinten," op. 76, no. 2, Hob III.76, *Andante o più tosto allegretto*



At the end of Example 13.6, we are suspended on vi and craving the tonic. In general, after a deceptive motion, the phrase model rewinds back to the pre-dominant and sometimes even to the tonic, which is followed by an authentic cadence. Listen to Example 13.7. The dramatic deceptive motion in m. 4 is followed by a return to pre-dominant harmonies, which leads to an imperfect authentic cadence in m. 7.

EXAMPLE 13.7 Mozart, Clarinet Quintet in A major, K. 581, I

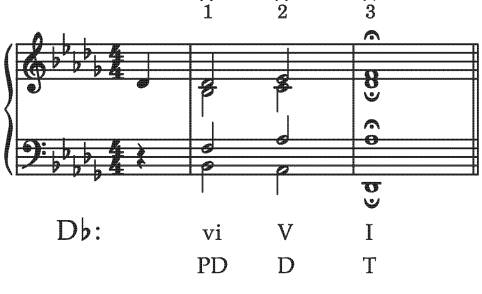


The Submediant as the Pre-Dominant

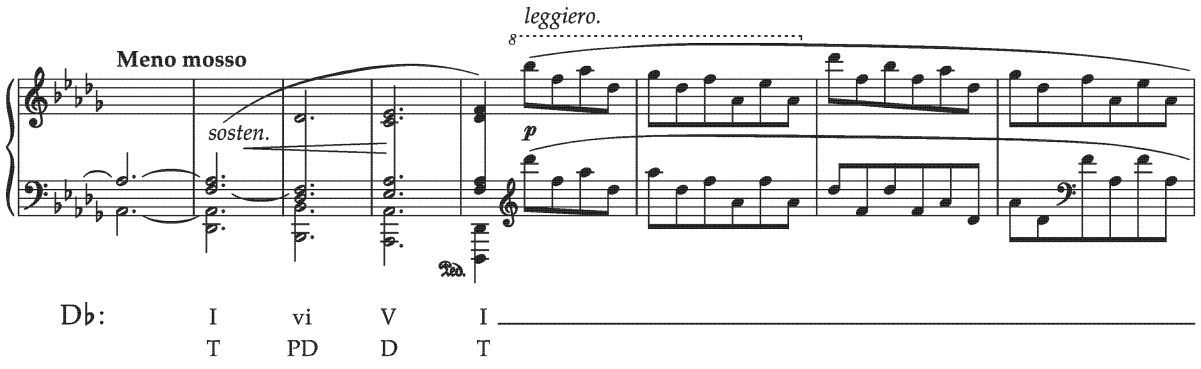
Occasionally, vi immediately precedes the dominant and, therefore, functions as the pre-dominant chord. Listen to Example 13.8; this famous opening features vi as a pre-dominant. As such, it allows for the motive of a descending second ($\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) to occur in the bass. Given the strong outer-voice counterpoint—10–5–10—that undergirds the progression, composers often use this very progression in their works. See Example 13.8B for Chopin's 70-year-earlier setting of it, and in the same key as Mahler's movement.

EXAMPLE 13.8 vi as Pre-Dominant

A. Mahler, Symphony no. 2 in C minor ("Resurrection"), "Urlicht"



B. Chopin, Scherzo no. 2 in B♭ minor, op. 31



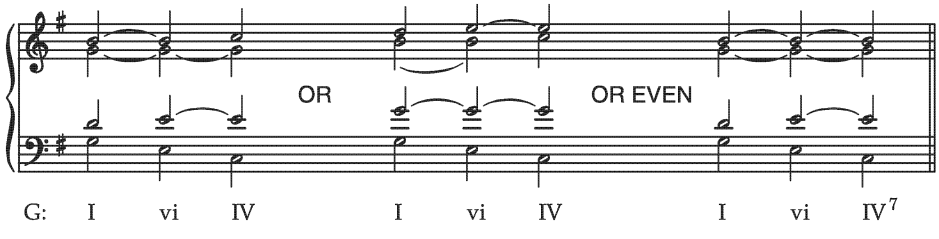
Voice Leading for the Submediant

Incorporating the submediant into your compositions is simple, and its color will greatly expand your harmonic palette, which until now involved only the tonic, dominant, and pre-dominant harmonies.

The Descending-Thirds Progression, I–vi–IV

The chords I and vi share two common tones ($\hat{1}$ and $\hat{3}$), and the chords vi and IV share two common tones ($\hat{6}$ and $\hat{1}$). When writing the descending-thirds progression, I–vi–IV, keep all the common tones; any voice that moves should move up by step (Example 13.9).

EXAMPLE 13.9 Part Writing vi as Descending-Third Progressions



The Descending-Fifths Progression, I–vi–ii (or I–vi–ii^6)

The chords I and vi share two common tones ($\hat{1}$ and $\hat{3}$), so keep all the common tones in the progression I–vi. Since vi and ii share only one common tone ($\hat{6}$), you have more freedom in the voice leading. Follow the voice-leading guidelines to avoid errors.

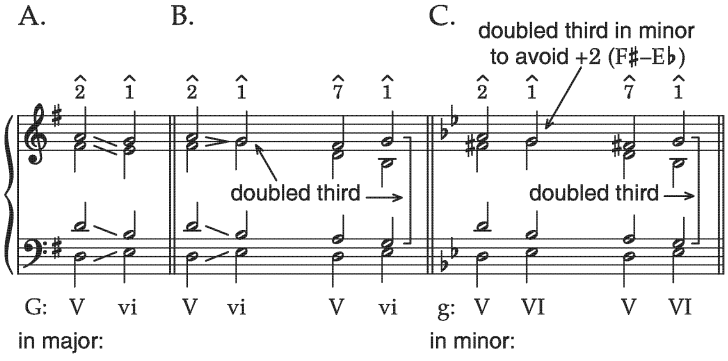
The Ascending-Seconds Progression, V–vi

To enhance the deceptive effect of the progression V–vi, use $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$ or $\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$ in the soprano. The voice leading varies slightly for major and minor keys because major $\hat{7}$ (as part of V) may *either* descend to $\hat{6}$ or ascend to $\hat{1}$. In minor, however, $\hat{7}$ may *only* ascend, since falling to $\hat{6}$ would create an augmented second.

- In major keys, if the soprano falls $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$, the remaining upper voices may all descend (as $\hat{7}$ falls to $\hat{6}$; see Example 13.10A) or $\hat{7}$ may rise to $\hat{1}$, in which case there will be a doubled third. If the soprano moves $\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$, double the third ($\hat{1}$) in the vi chord. See Example 13.10B.

- In minor keys, all upper voices move downward, except for the leading tone, which must resolve upward to $\hat{1}$, regardless of its voicing. This will always result in a doubled third ($\hat{1}$) in the VI chord. See Example 13.10C.

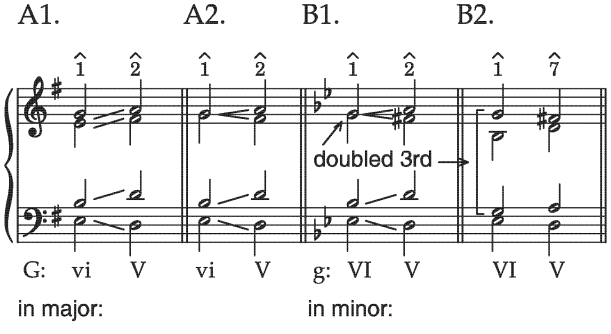
EXAMPLE 13.10 Part Writing vi in Ascending-Seconds Progressions



As with the progression V–vi, the voice leading for the progression vi–V varies slightly for major and minor keys.

- In major keys, all upper voices move upward against the descending bass. If the third is doubled, then the inner voice will follow the bass in tenths. See Example 13.11A.
- In minor keys, the VI chord must have a doubled third ($\hat{1}$) to avoid the augmented second. See Example 13.11B.

EXAMPLE 13.11 Part Writing vi as a Pre-Dominant



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

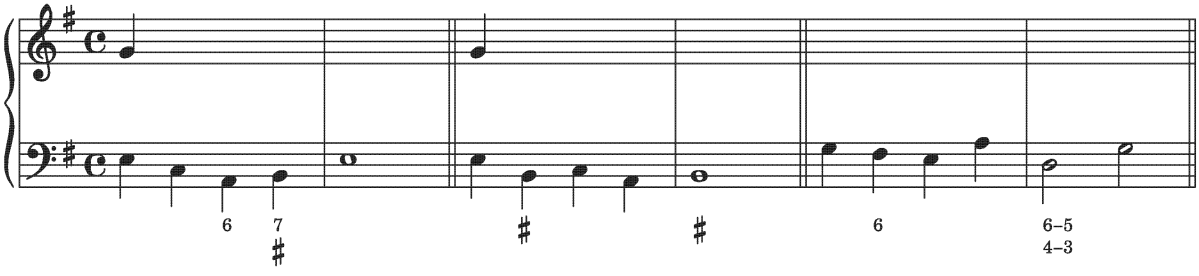
WRITING

13.1

WORKBOOK 1
13.1–13.2

Realize, in chorale style, these short figured basses. Analyze using two levels.

SOLVED/APP 6



13.2

Study the following melody, noting the possibilities for inserting vi. On a separate sheet of manuscript paper, harmonize in major by adding lower voices; then reharmonize in the relative minor key. Analyze.

SOLVED/APP 6

D:/b:

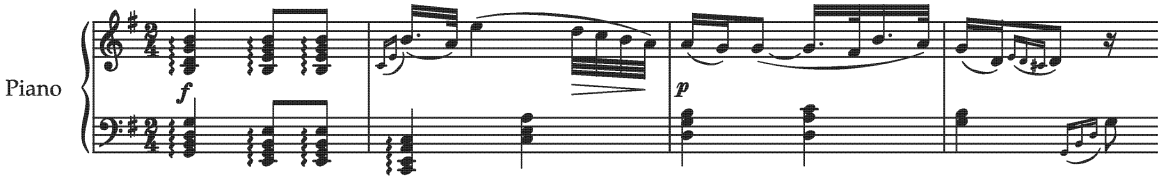
ANALYSIS

13.3

Each of the given excerpts contains at least one example of the submediant. Complete the following tasks for each excerpt.

1. Bracket phrases and/or subphrases and label accordingly.
2. Analyze each chord with a roman numeral (first-level analysis).
3. Label cadences.
4. Specify the function of vi each time it appears:
   - Is it a "bridge" in a descending-third motion?
   - Does it start a descending-fifth motion?
   - Does it substitute for tonic in a deceptive motion?
   - Is it the PD chord?

A. Mozart, Violin Sonata in G major, K. 379, *Adagio*

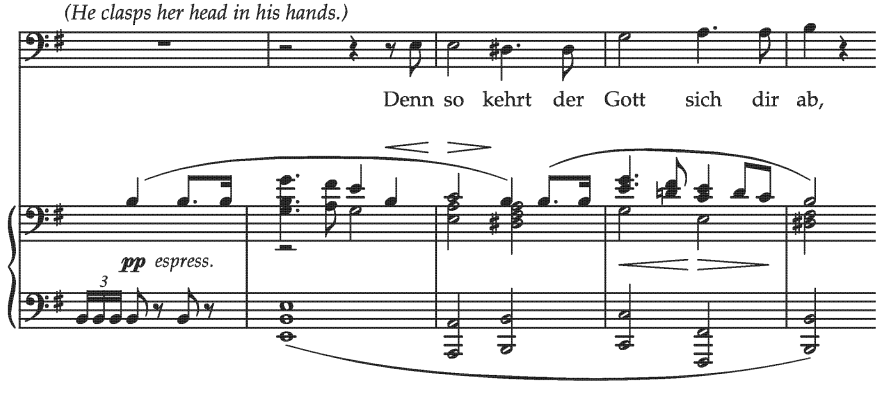


SOLVED/APP 6

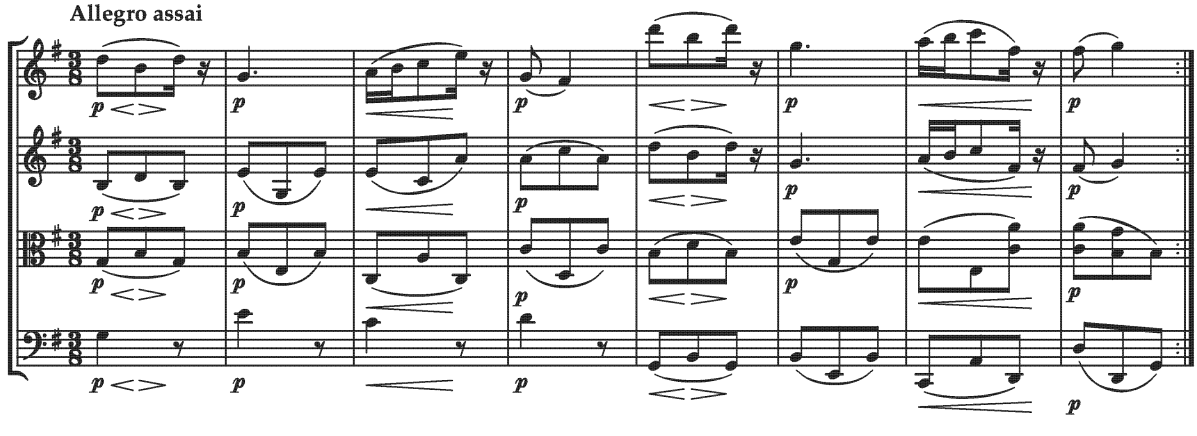
B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, *Andante*
Label embellishing tones in this excerpt.

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Wagner, "Der Augen leuchtendes Paar" ("Those eyes so lustrous and clear") (Wotan's Farewell), *Die Walküre*, act 3, scene 3



D. Beethoven, String Quartet no. 13 in B♭ major, op. 130, *Alla danza tedesca*
Describe the curious rhythmic effect in this excerpt.

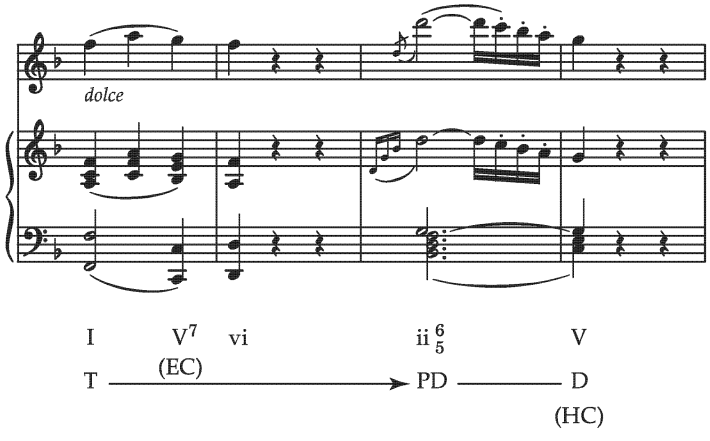


Contextual Analysis

Tonic and Dominant Embellish the Submediant

Although I and V are structural tonal pillars—usually more important than any other harmonies in a key—this is not always the case, because the importance of a harmony depends wholly on the musical context in which it appears. For example, in the progression I–V–vi, the vi chord often overshadows the dominant, which is demoted to being connective tissue between I and vi (Example 13.12).

EXAMPLE 13.12 Mozart, Violin Sonata in F major, K. 377, Minuet



Notice the deceptive motion in mm. 1–2 of Example 13.12. Because V is metrically weak (compared to the strong-beat tonic and submediant), it functions as a weak voice-leading chord (in this context it harmonizes the violin's G). Thus, the overall progression is I–vi–ii^6_5–V, with vi initiating a descending-fifth harmonic progression.

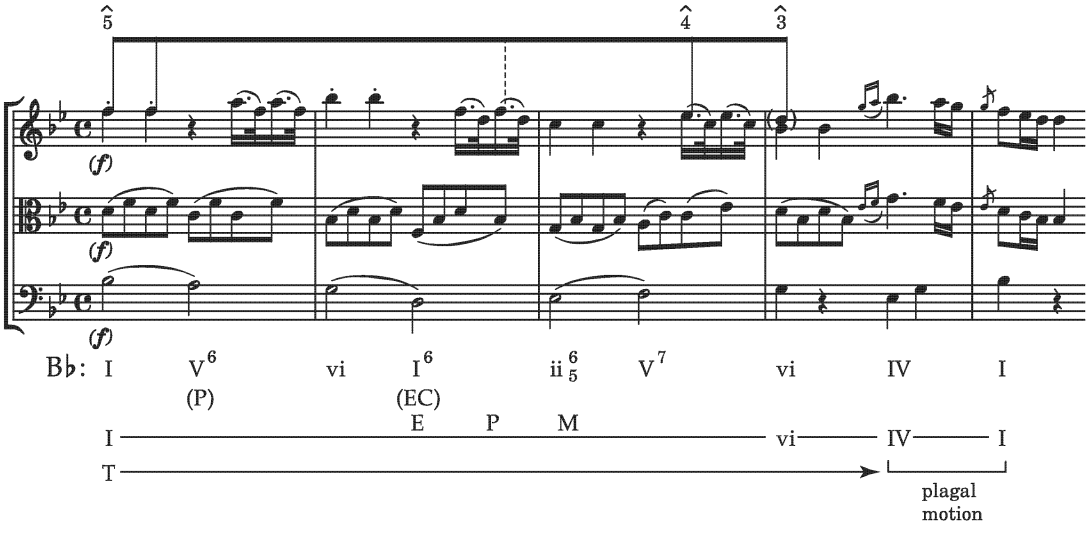
Example 13.12, also shows why we refer to such progressions as *deceptive motions* rather than as *deceptive cadences:* Clearly there cannot be a cadence after only three chords of a piece, and, most importantly, vi is not an independent entity but, rather, a member of the underlying progression that leads to the pre-dominant and dominant functions. The caesura on vi merely highlights the chord, but it does not take away its important role in the overall progression.

Not only can vi be more important than V, but it can even outrank the tonic. Listen to Example 13.13. Even though I^6 appears prominently at the end of m. 2, one can hear it as not being structural. To see why this is, consider the V^6 that occurs on beat 3 of m. 1: It acts as a passing chord between I and vi. Similarly, the I^6 on beat 3 of m. 2 is a voice-leading chord linking vi to the pre-dominant, ii^6_5 in m. 3.

Recognizing the harmonic motion I–vi–ii$^{6}_{5}$ can influence the performance of this passage. Rather than dividing mm. 1–4 into two-measure units, a performer can use the vi to fuse mm. 1–4 into a continuous idea.

One can also hear the I^{6} outranking the submediant in m. 2. In this interpretation, the first two measures expand the tonic. A performance that considers the weak-beat I^{6} as more important than the vi might result in a more flexible and lilting rendering of the phrase, especially if the downbeat is not emphasized by the performer.

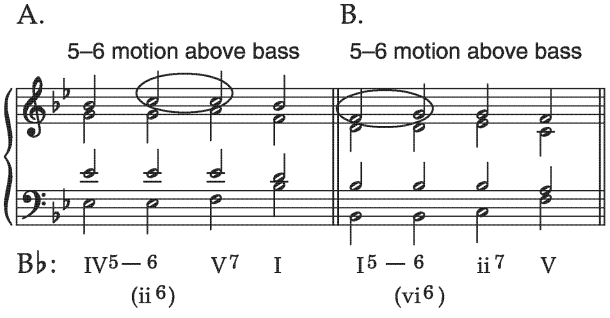
EXAMPLE 13.13 Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 159, *Andante*



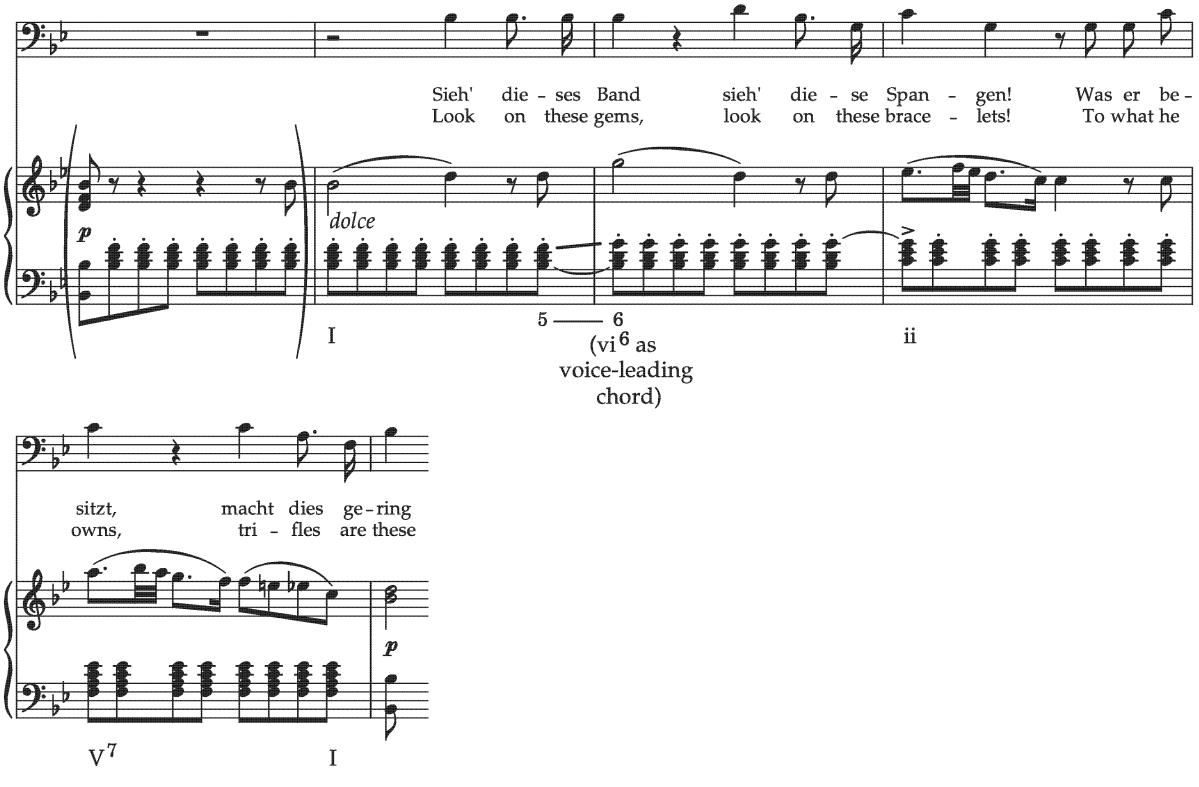
Apparent Submediants

When the submediant occurs as a by-product of voice leading it does not function as an actual harmony. Voice-leading harmonies occur in several contexts, the most important of which is in progressions whose roots lie a second away from one another, such as the progression IV–V. The important 5–6 motion—in which the interval of a fifth above the bass moves to a sixth—allows IV to move to V, since the potential parallel fifths are broken up by the intervening sixth. The result of this 5–6 motion creates the ii^{6} chord (Example 13.14A). This process, the "IV–ii complex," can occur in any progression where roots progress by an ascending second. In Example 13.14B, an analogous situation occurs when I moves to ii. Again, the 5–6 motion helps to avoid parallel fifths: F moves to G, which is already sounding as the bass rises to create the ii chord (Example 13.14B). Note that this 5–6 motion creates an apparent vi^{6} chord; however, there is no "chord change." Rather the vi^{6} is a by-product of the voice leading. Example 13.14C presents an example of the apparent vi^{6} in an aria from Wagner's *The Flying Dutchman*.

EXAMPLE 13.14 5–6 Motion Versus "vi^6"



C. Wagner, "Mögst du mein Kind," from *The Flying Dutchman*, act 2



The Step Descent in the Bass

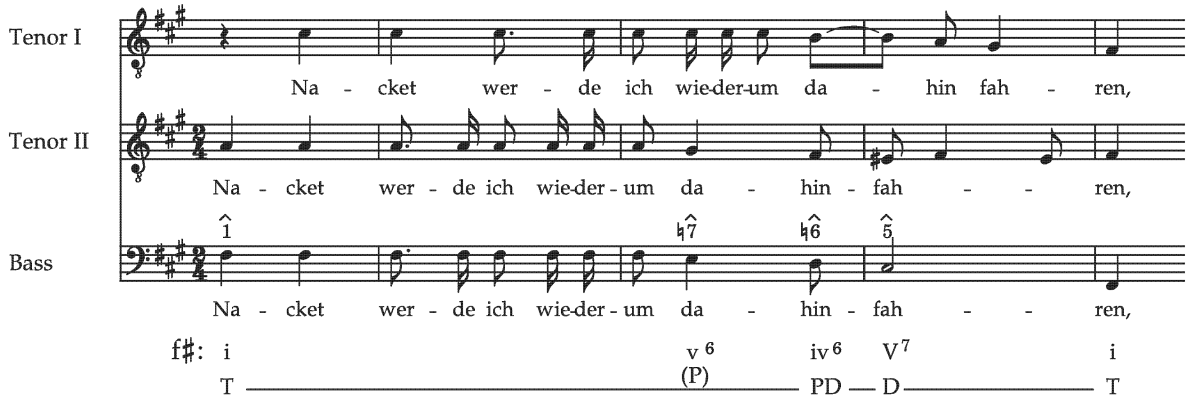
The most prevalent harmonic motion in phrases is from the tonic to the dominant. In Chapter 9 we saw a way to embellish I–V motion by means of stepwise *ascent* in the bass (Example 9.8). It is also possible to move from the tonic to the dominant by *descending* steps in the bass.

Composers have been creating phrases built on bass descents from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{5}$ since the early seventeenth century. For example, the descending four-note scale segment $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$ appears regularly in Monteverdi's operas and madrigals, a late sixteenth- early seventeenth-century Italian composer.

Composers use numerous paths of descent, ranging from diatonic (1̂–7̂–6̂–5̂) to descents that are chromatic (with multiple expressive chromatic passing tones), to descents that even overshoot 5̂ and then return to the dominant. Some well-known examples include "Dido's Lament" from Purcell's *Dido and Aeneas* and the "Crucifixus" from Bach's *Mass in B minor*.

Listen first to the diatonic descent in Example 13.15. Schütz's composition illustrates a characteristic stepwise descent: i→passing v^6→iv^6→V^7. Note that an especially strong gravitational pull downward to V is created by the descending melodic minor scale: This feel and the expressive half step ♭6–5 (D–C♯ in Example 13.15) show why such descents occur more often in the minor mode than in the major. Note that in minor, v^6 is used to precede minor iv^6 to give the bass line 8̂–♭7̂–♭6̂–5; the use of ↓7̂ avoids the augmented second between ↑7̂ and ↓6̂. First-inversion minor v and root-position v do not function as dominants; rather, they are used as passing chords or voice-leading chords.

EXAMPLE 13.15 Schütz, "Nacket bin ich von Mutterleibe kommen" ("Naked I have come from my mother's womb"), *Musicalischen Exequien*, op. 7, SWV 279

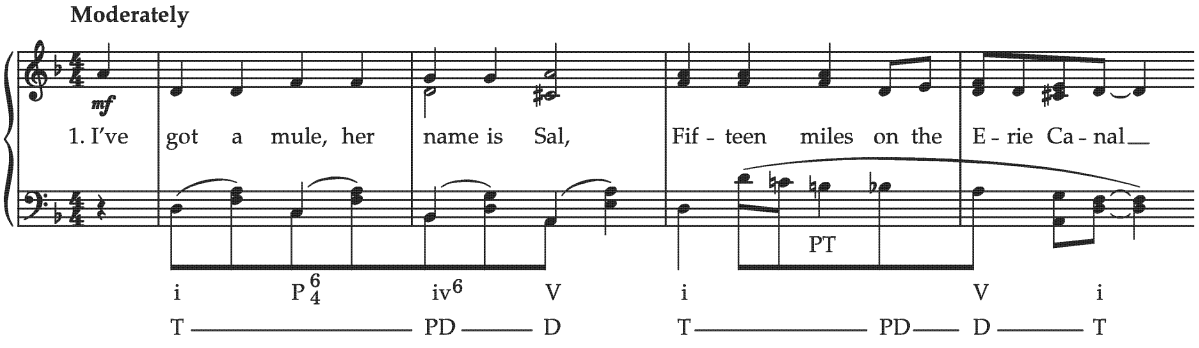


Step-descent basses that fall directly from tonic to dominant (1̂–7̂–6̂–5̂) are called **direct step-descent basses**. When direct step-descent basses are cast in the minor mode they are known as **lament basses**. Lament basses often accompany melancholy texts, which are not historically confined to the seventeenth century. Songs such as "Hit the Road, Jack," and "Erie Canal" are built on the same formula (Example 13.16A).

The lament bass that characterizes Rachmaninoff's aggressive G minor Prelude carves out a direct path from G down to its dominant (Example 13.16B). A quite different approach is taken by Gabriel Fauré in his eloquent Pavane (Example 13.16C). Each step of the lament bass (F♯–E–D–C♯) is interposed with a falling-third motion that not only creates beautiful, fleeting seventh chords (shown in Example 13.16C.2), but this wafting bass motion also provides voice leading that helps to avert the parallels that would have occured had Fauré used only the root-position chords on the downbeats.

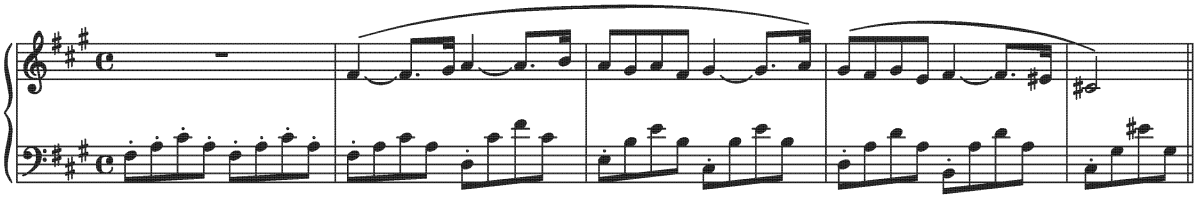
EXAMPLE 13.16 The Step-Descent Bass in Context

A. Traditional, "Erie Canal"

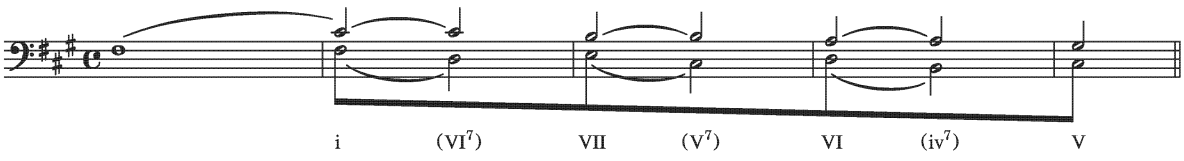


B. Rachmaninoff, Prelude in G minor, op. 23, no. 5

C1. Fauré, Pavane, op. 50



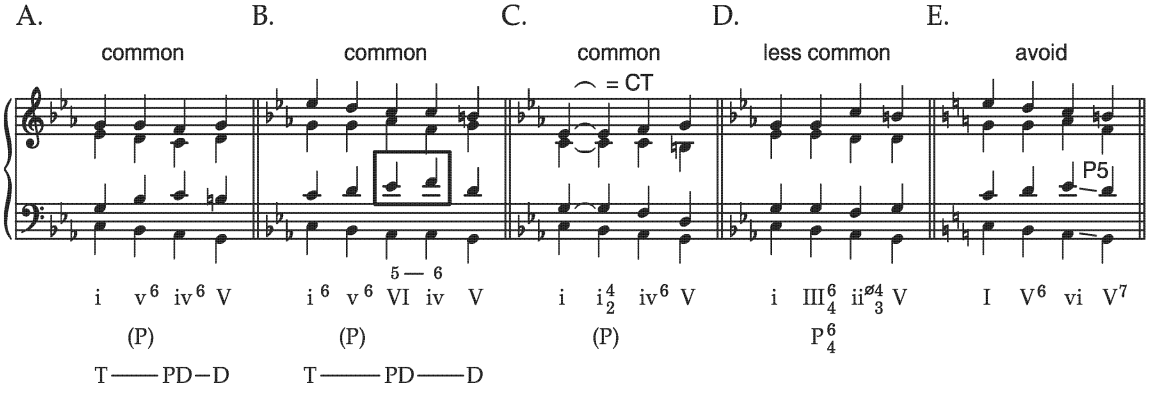
C2. Pavane (reduction)



Step-descent basses are often repeated throughout a piece, providing the composition with a firm harmonic foundation. Such repetitions are called *ostinatos*, and the pieces based on them are often called **ground basses** or **chaconnes**.

The most common harmonic settings of these step-descent basses use the PD iv^6, which moves to V (Example 13.17A). Because of the lurking parallels, a root-position VI usually does not lead directly to V (Example 13.17E). Rather, it is first converted into a iv^6 chord via a contrapuntal 5–6 motion in order to avoid parallels (Example 13.17B). Also, composers may opt to move $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$ in the bass while sustaining the tonic harmony; this creates a passing tone in the bass and the passing sonority i^4_2 (Example 13.17C).

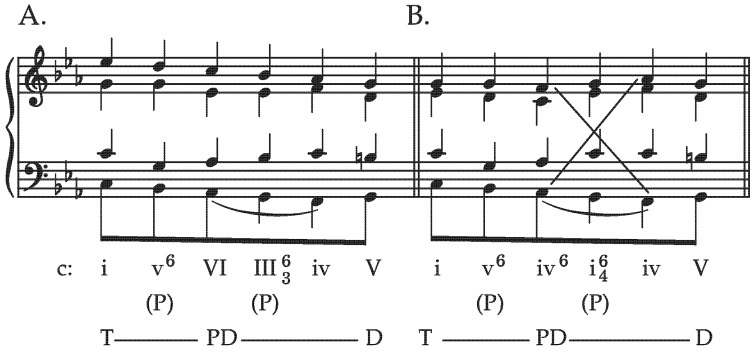
EXAMPLE 13.17 Voice Leading the Step-Descent Bass



Finally, two less common variants of the step-descent bass are presented. In Example 13.17D, note how ii$^{ø4}_3$ substitutes for iv^6; in Example 13.17E, note how the major mode may be used for the step-descent bass. There is less danger of awkward voice-leading intervals for the bass in the major mode than in the minor mode. Therefore, the major V^6 can move directly to vi or IV^6 (but be aware of potential parallels).

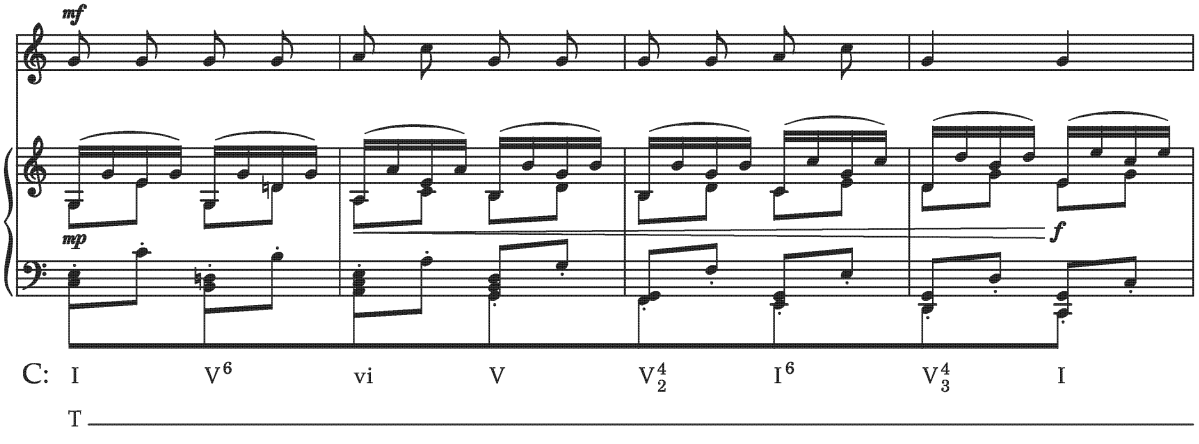
Step-descent basses may be extended by passing through the dominant to reach a pre-dominant on $\hat{4}$, which is harmonized by iv or ii^6. Such **indirect step-descent basses** ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$–$\hat{4}$ and then back to $\hat{5}$) create a descent by fifth. Composers often harmonize the first $\hat{5}$ with a passing $^6_5$ or $^6_4$ chord to avoid any feeling of arrival on dominant (Example 13.18).

EXAMPLE 13.18 Indirect Step-Descent Bass



Descents can assume a number of different guises. Likewise, they can prolong any of the three harmonic functions. See Example 13.19. Note that the bass descent, which prolongs the tonic, encompasses an entire octave. Notice that the dominant is converted to a V^4_2 that passes on to I^6, which expands the tonic in m. 3. The next passing V^4_3 connects I^6 with I, closing the octave descent and creating a large-scale tonic expansion. Notice also the problematic parallels between vi and V.

EXAMPLE 13.19 Tchaikovsky, "Za oknom v teni mel'kajet" ("At the window, in the shadow"), op. 60, no. 10



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
13.3–13.4

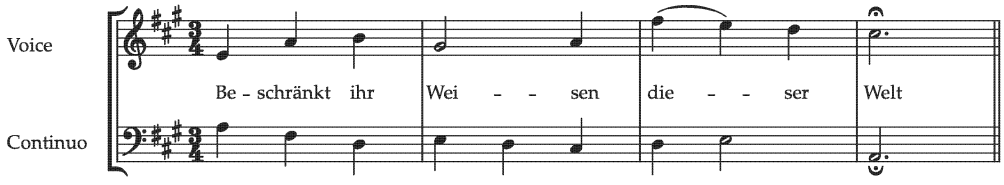
ANALYSIS

13.4

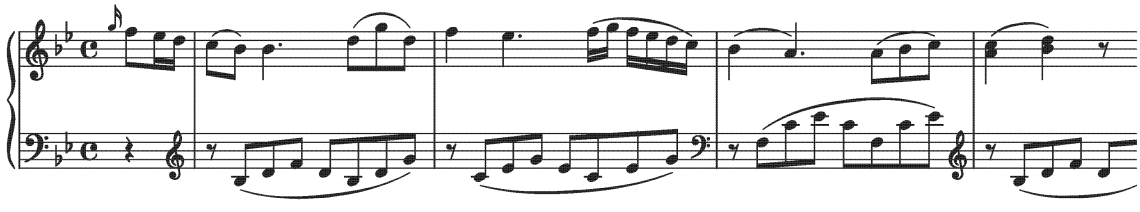
The following excerpts present vi in various contexts: as an independent harmony that leads to or is the pre-dominant (either as part of an EPM or as structural cadence) or as a voice-leading chord. Interpret each example based on how vi functions.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Bach, *Geistliches Lied*, "Beschränkt ihr Weisen"



B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭, K. 333, *Allegro*



C. Mozart, Serenade in D major, K. 204

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Mendelssohn, *Elijah*, opening of Part I

SOLVED/APP 6

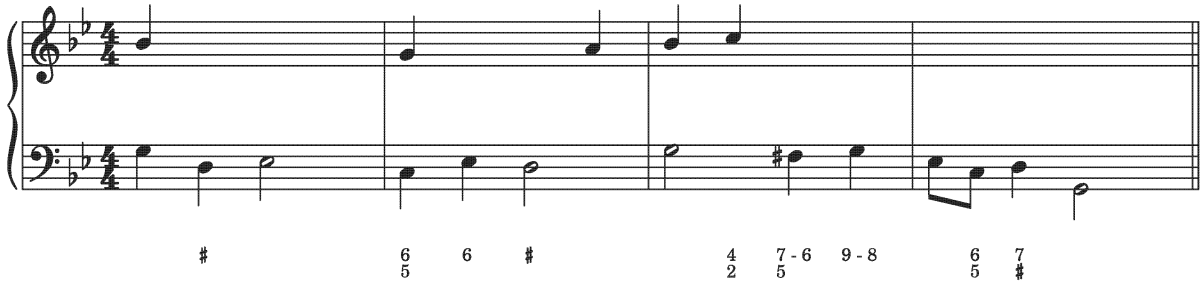
E. Bach, Flute Sonata in B minor, BWV 1030, *Largo*

WRITING

13.5

Complete the soprano voice for the figured bass, then add the inner voices. Provide a two-level analysis. (Since you will need to consider the harmonies as you complete the soprano, add the roman numerals at the same time.)

SOLVED/APP 6



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- bass motion versus root motion
- deceptive motion, deceptive cadence
- harmonic versus melodic bass arpeggiation
- lament bass, step-descent bass (direct and indirect)
- tonic substitute

CHAPTER 14

The Mediant, the Back-Relating Dominant, and a Synthesis of Diatonic Harmonic Relationships

The Mediant (iii in Major, III in Minor)

While the mediant harmony occurs less frequently than any other diatonic harmony, the chord is not unimportant. In minor-key pieces the structural significance of III is great—second only to that of tonic and dominant.

The mediant harmony provides the same color contrast as the submediant: It is a minor triad in a major key and a major triad in a minor key. Within the phrase, the mediant usually appears in one of the following contexts: (1) ascending-bass arpeggiations and (2) descending-fifth progressions.

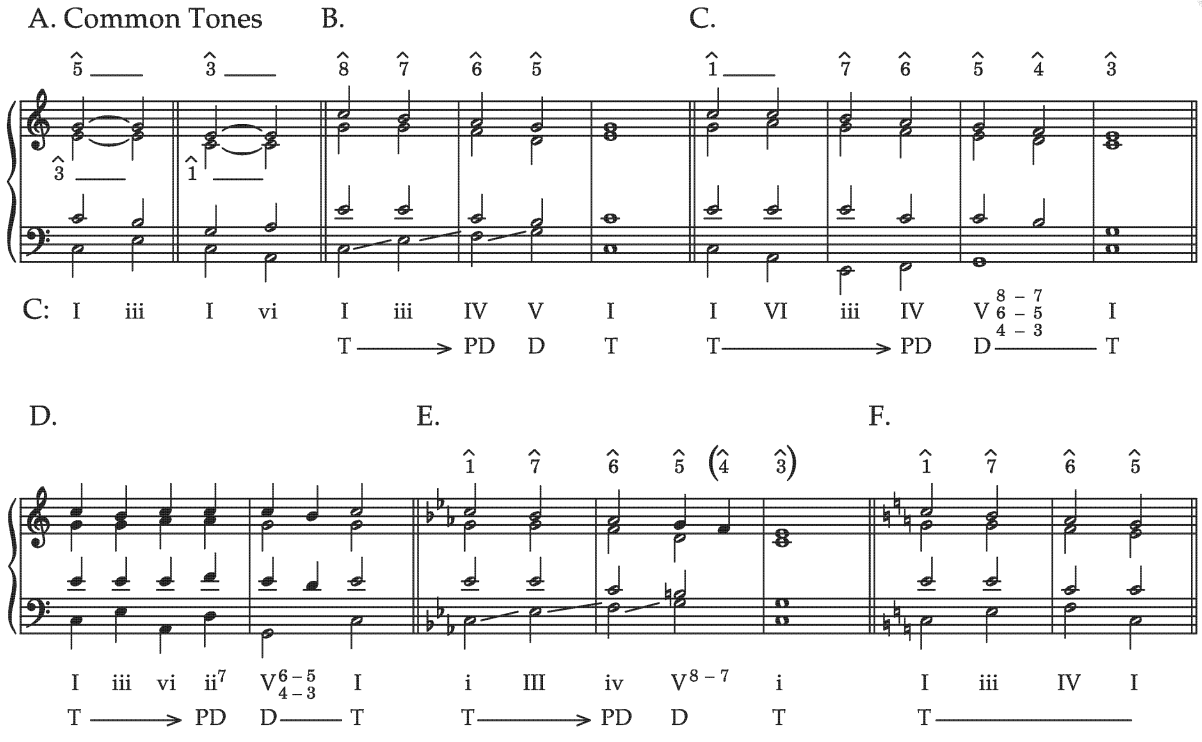
The Mediant in Arpeggiations

In Chapter 7 we encountered the **ascending-bass arpeggiation** $\hat{1}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{5}$ under a I–I^6–V progression. The contrapuntal motion of the bass can be filled with passing harmonies to create a stepwise ascent:

Bass:	$\hat{1}$	$\hat{2}$	$\hat{3}$	$\hat{4}$	$\hat{5}$
	I	vii^{o6}	I^6	IV	V
		or		*or*	
		V^4_3		ii^6	

Although $\hat{3}$ in the bass is most often harmonized by I^6, it can also be harmonized by a root-position mediant chord. In this way, iii substitutes for I^6 to create a tonic extension, just as vi may substitute for tonic. Example 14.1A illustrates the common tones in I–iii and I–vi progressions. The rest of the example shows some common uses of the mediant within phrases. The slurs show how the mediant divides the fifth from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{5}$ in the bass. Just as we label vi's bridging function from T to PD with an arrow, we also use the arrow to show iii's bridging function leading from T to PD.

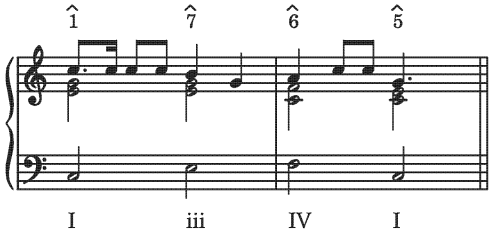
EXAMPLE 14.1 Typical Harmonic Contexts for the Mediant



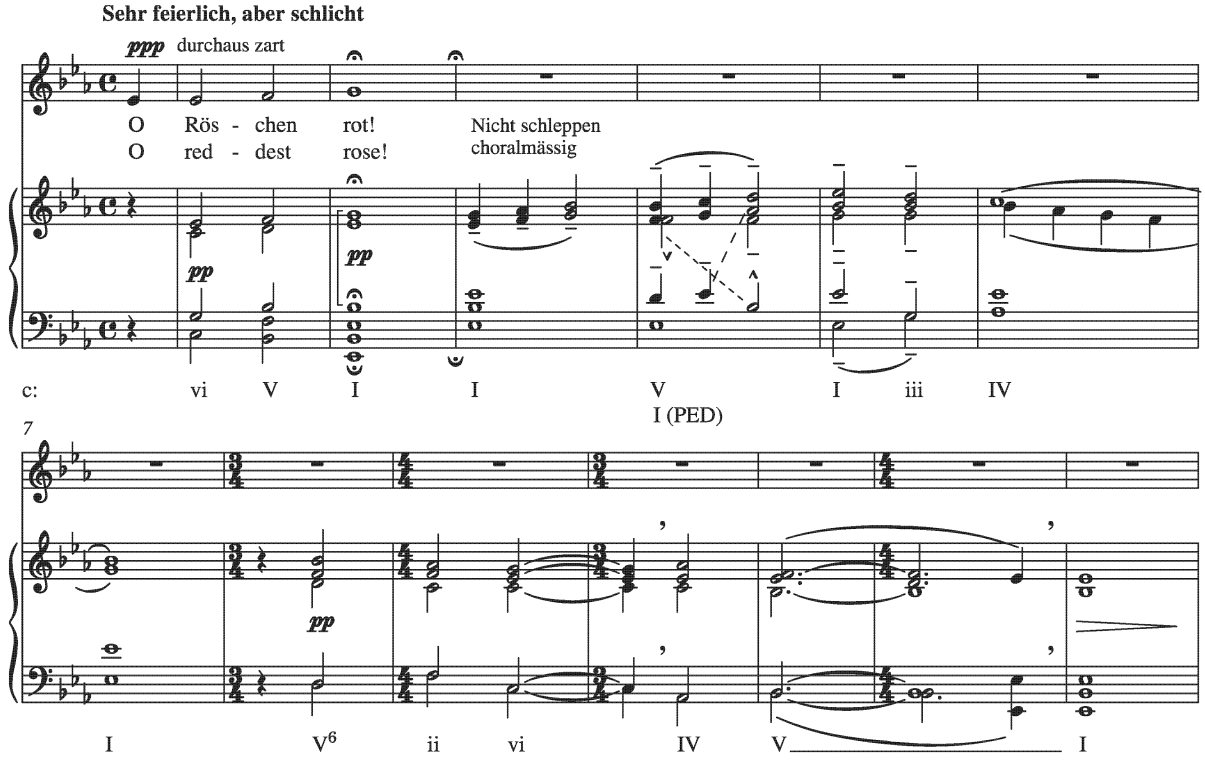
In Example 14.1B, the bass of the pre-dominant IV fills the space between $\hat{3}$ and $\hat{5}$. Note also how the soprano descends stepwise from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{5}$, with $\hat{7}$ functioning as a downward passing tone rather than a leading tone. Example 14.1C shows how vi can be inserted between I and iii, resulting in an effective descending arpeggiation. In many progressions, iii descends to vi, thus extending the descending-fifths progession back yet another notch (Example 14.1D). Mahler uses iii in his song "Urlicht." Note how vi also figures prominently in this excerpt (Example 14.2B).

Example 14.1E recasts 14.1A in the minor mode. Example 14.1F illustrates a prolongation of tonic: iii and IV harmonize passing tones in the soprano ($\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$) which leads back to I. The 1960s hit song "Puff the Magic Dragon" harmonizes its descending melody with this very progression (Example 14.2A).

EXAMPLE 14.2A Yarrow, "Puff the Magic Dragon"



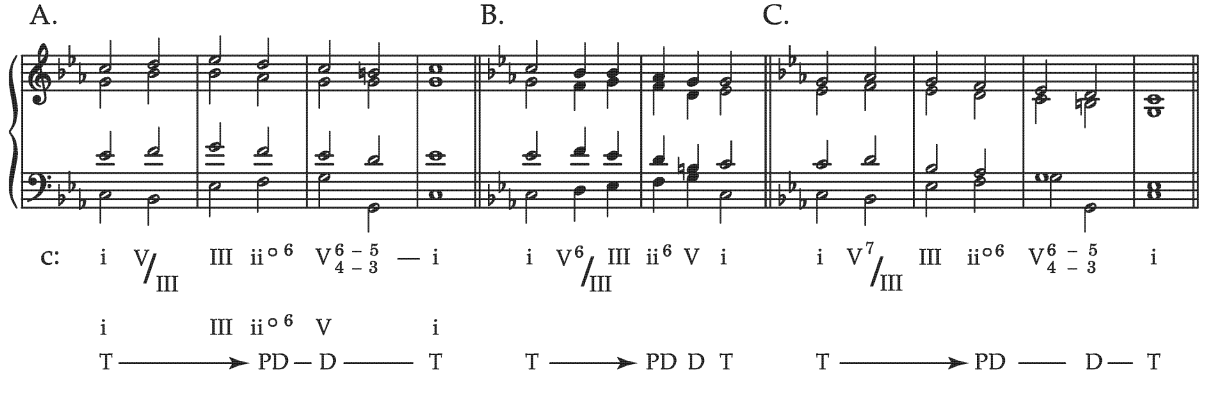
EXAMPLE 14.2B Mahler, "Urlicht" ("Primeval Light"), Des Knaben Wunderhorn, no.12



A Special Case: Preparing the III Chord in Minor

The mediant appears in the minor mode more often than in the major mode. Listen to Example 14.3. The second harmony that appears in all three examples is unfamiliar: a major triad built on $\hat{\flat 7}$. We have seen chords built from a leading tone (vii°6 and vii°7) and a passing v^6 chord (in the step-descent bass). In Example 14.3, the root-position "VII" chord has a different function: It is the dominant chord of III. To reflect this motion of the V–I sound of B♭–E♭, we label the B♭ harmony as "V of III" (or "V/III"), indicating that B♭ is the dominant (V) chord that leads to E♭ (III). This roman numeral symbol represents the sound of the triad built on $\hat{\flat 7}$ far more accurately than would the label "VII," which fails to capture its dominant function at the immediate, local level.

EXAMPLE 14.3 VII as V/III



V/III often occurs in first inversion as V^6/III (Example 14.3B). The use of this inversion prominently places D—the temporary leading tone that leads to E♭ (III)—in the bass, thus intensifying the motion to III. In Example 14.3C, a seventh is added to create V^7/III, which further intensifies motion to III (since V^7–I is more powerful than V–I).

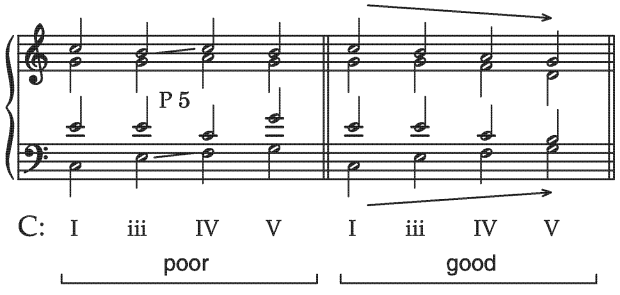
We explore the use of chords such as V/III, which are called **applied chords**, further in Chapter 18.

Voice Leading for the Mediant

Using the mediant with good voice leading is easy as long as you remember these simple guidelines:

1. Try to move the upper voices in contrary motion to the bass when approaching and leaving the mediant (Example 14.4).
2. Use the soprano line $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$ when iii supports the passing tone $\hat{7}$.

EXAMPLE 14.4 Part Writing the Mediant



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

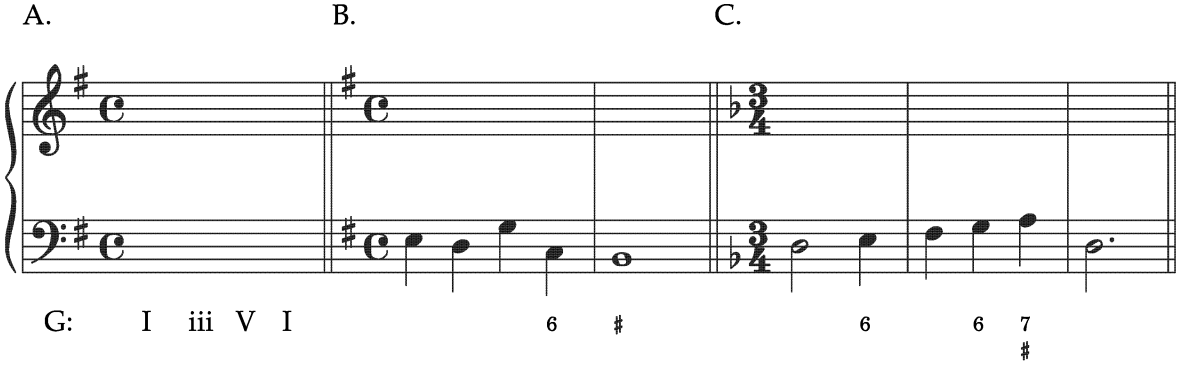
WORKBOOK 1
14.1–14.3

SOLVED/APP 6

WRITING

14.1

Exercise A provides roman numerals; add four voices. Exercises B and C require adding upper voices and roman numerals.



14.2

The following exercises contain ascending-bass arpeggiations and descending-fifths motions using the mediant. Choose a meter and write the progressions in

four-voice chorale style. Include a second-level analysis, and label the mediant's function (use a bracket and label with "arp. prog." or "fifths prog.").

A. In C minor: i–V/III–III–ii^{o6}–V–I (begin soprano on $\hat{1}$)

B. In A minor: i–V$^6_5$/III–III–iv–V–VI (begin soprano on $\hat{5}$)

SOLVED/APP 6

C. In D major: I–iii–IV–ii$^6_5$–V$^4_2$–I^6–V$^6_5$–I–vi–ii^6–V^7–I (begin soprano on $\hat{5}$)

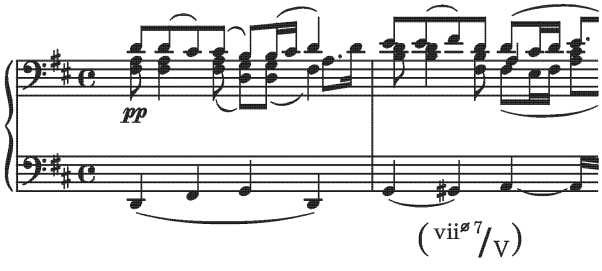
D. In D minor: i–V/III–III–VI–ii^{o6}–V–i (begin soprano on $\hat{3}$)

ANALYSIS

14.3

The following excerpts contain the mediant either in the context of an ascending-bass arpeggiation or as part of a descending-fifths progression. Analyze with roman numerals (first-level analysis).

A. Schubert, "Am Frühling," D. 361
Note the clef in the right hand.



SOLVED/APP 6

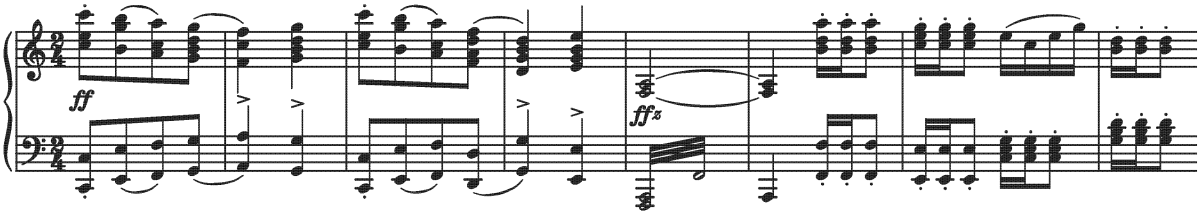
B. Brahms, "Beim Ritt auf dem Knie," *Volks- und Kinderlieder*, WoO 31, no. 8
Only the first portion of the phrase is given.

C. Marcello, Sonata in A minor, no. 8, *Presto*
Consider the standard harmonic phrase model as you analyze this example.

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Schumann, "Armes Waisenkind," from *Children's Pieces*, op. 68, no. 6

E. Brahms, Symphony no. 4 in E minor, op. 98, *Allegro giocoso*



More Contextual Analysis: The Back-Relating Dominant and Synthesis of Root-Motion Principles

We know that a V chord may or may not function as a structural, cadential dominant. For example, for a phrase built on the progression I–V–vi–ii–V–I, the structural dominant is most likely the second one, while the first dominant is only a voice-leading chord that connects tonic and submediant harmonies and helps to avert potential parallels. Another example of a nonstructural dominant occurs in the step-descent bass progression i–v^6–iv^6–V. The minor v^6 in this progression is far removed from its dominant function; it harmonizes the passing tone $\downarrow\hat{7}$, connecting $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{6}$ in the bass.

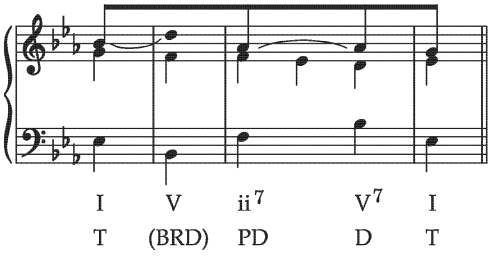
As always, such contextual analysis is essential for understanding how harmony works, and for interpreting which chords are structural and which ones merely embellishing.

Example 14.5A demonstrates an important way in which the dominant may appear in a nonstructural context. Listen to the example while observing the roman numeral analysis. What is unusual about the harmonic progression? Heard as a single phrase, this progression presents us with an analytical dilemma. You know that V does not progress to ii; such a backward motion from D to PD is called a **retrogression**, which usually sounds awkward and weak. But Bach's phrase doesn't sound weak at all. So what is the function of the V that appears in m. 2? Is it the structural dominant, which is prolonged through m. 3 by means of a passing ii? This reading makes abstract sense, yet we probably don't hear the V in m. 2 as a structural V. Doesn't the ii chord sound as if it plays a harmonic role as a predominant? Listen to the excerpt once again.

EXAMPLE 14.5

A. Bach, Prelude in E♭ Major, *The Well-Tempered Clavier,* Book 2, BWV 876

B. Bach, Prelude (reduction)



Ignoring the supertonic harmony is not a reasonable interpretation, because it clearly plays an important role in the excerpt. Given the prominence of ii, the harmonic importance of the first V now seems to wane. The excerpt begins on a soprano $B\flat^4$, but in m. 2—where the problematic V appears—the soprano leaps to $E\flat^5$ and then descends to D^5. If we ignore the first dominant, the overall progression is I–ii^7–V^7–I, and each harmony supports the melodic descent in the soprano ($B\flat^4$–$A\flat^4$–G^4). Example 14.5B shows this interpretation.

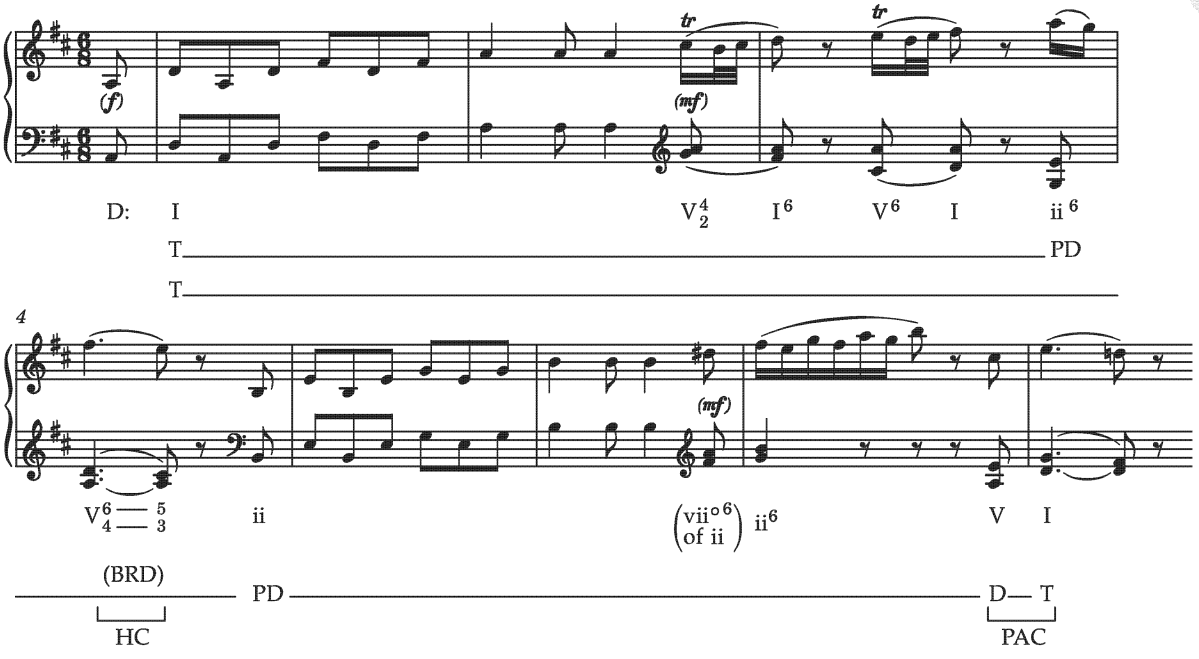
This analysis, which takes account of the phrasing and melodic continuity of the excerpt, reflects the perception of the music much better than viewing the V in m. 2 as structural. The dominant chord in m. 2 prolongs the preceding tonic, but there is no connection between the dominant and the following ii chord. *Dominants that prolong a previously sounding tonic without resolving to a following tonic are called* **back-relating dominants** (BRDs). BRDs can be shown only in second-level analysis:

1st-level analysis:	I	V	ii
2nd-level analysis:	T————	(BRD)————	PD

Given that the music following a half cadence is a restart of a new phrase model and not a continuation of the previous phrase model, we will view the half cadence as a common and important type of back-relating dominant.

The concept of the back-relating dominant can be extended from a single phrase to multiple phrases, where we begin to account for more substantive events within a piece. When considering how it functions at this deeper level, it carries possible performance implications, as Example 14.6 illustrates.

EXAMPLE 14.6 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegro*



The first phrase (mm. 1–4) closes on a half cadence, strongly articulated by the powerful cadential six-four chord that helps to secure the dominant. The next phrase begins on the supertonic (ii). Because Mozart merely transposes the opening material of phrase 1 up a step (from D major to E minor), we can connect the *openings* of the two phrases rather than the *end* of the first phrase and the *opening* of the second phrase. Further, since Mozart extends the pre-dominant function, we see a single, large-scale tonal motion over two phrases: I (BRD)–ii–V^7–I. Indeed, since the phrase with the HC is left harmonically open, the following phrase completes the incomplete tonal motion of the first phrase. The combination of the two phrases creates a single entity called a *period*, discussed in the next chapter.

Synthesis: Root-Motion Principles and Their Compositional Impact

The phrase model, composed of three ordered harmonic functions (T–PD–D–T), lies at the heart of tonal progressions, and the tonic function usually occupies significantly more time and chords than the other two functions. Further, considering how harmonies function within a musical context—rather than haphazardly scattering roman numeral labels over a score—allows us to see deeper connections.

We will apply these global analytical ideas to composition as well. However, we may find ourselves in a situation where we simply can't figure out which chord could come next. For example, after completing a basic tonic expansion using contrapuntal chords, we might wish to use other diatonic harmonies within the tonic expansion. In general, diatonic

harmonies (such as dominants, submediants, supertonics, and mediants) tend to follow one another in one of the following three root motions:

1. by descending fifth (or rising fourth), which we abbreviate *D5*
2. by ascending second, which we abbreviate *A2*
3. by descending third, which we abbreviate *D3*

These root motions may be combined in an infinite number of ways. For example, a series of falling thirds from the tonic, I–vi–IV, may be followed by two successive A2s (IV to V and then, the deceptive motion V, to vi). From the submediant, a set of D5 motions might follow, which will return the progression to tonic (ii–V–I). The sum total of all this motion is a large goal-directed progression: I–vi–IV–V–vi–ii–V–I, which may be set in many ways, depending on the progression's meter and harmonic rhythm. Most musical settings of this progression would likely reflect the following second-level analysis:

I–vi–IV–V–vi–ii^{7}–V^{7}–I
T————————PD-D—T

Compositional Application

Let's try out some of these ideas by setting ourselves a task and then working through the compositional process.

Task: Write a piece for string quartet or vocal ensemble (SATB) that encompasses 12–20 measures and contains three or more phrases. The key (major or minor) and meter are your choice.

1. Begin with a compositional plan, one in which you envision the large-scale harmonic progressions. For example, if you write a four-phrase piece, consider how each phrase will close and how it will relate to succeeding phrases. Example 14.7 presents an example plan for a minor key.

EXAMPLE 14.7

	phrase 1:	phrase 2:	phrase 3:	phrase 4:
soprano:	$\hat{5}$	$\hat{3}$	$\hat{5}$	$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$
harmony:	i→HC	i→IAC	i→HC	i→PAC

2. Then decide on the length of each phrase; four measures is the most common. Think about the general harmonies that lead to each cadence. You may use all the diatonic harmonies we have discussed, including EPMs, BRDs, and step-descent basses.

You may wish to lay out controlling harmonies for each measure by writing roman numerals, as in Example 14.8.

EXAMPLE 14.8

	phrase 1:				phrase 2:				phrase 3:				phrase 4:					
measures:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14		15	16	
harmonies:	i	V^{4}_{3}	i^{6}–iv^{6}	V	i	VI	iv	V^{7}–i	i	III	VI	ii^{o6}–V	i	iv–P^{6}_{4}–iv^{6}		V^{6}_{4}–$^{5}_{3}$		–i
second level:	T————		PD	D	T————		PD	D T	T————			PD D	T——	PD	————	D		T

3. You may wish to go so far as to specify every harmony within each measure; their exact rhythmic placement will have much to do with your choice of meter and melodic motives. Example 14.9 presents a detailed plan for the first phrase only.

EXAMPLE 14.9

	phrase 1:			
measures:	1	2	3	4
harmonies:	i–ii$^{\text{ø}4}_{2}$–V$^{6}_{5}$–i	V$^{4}_{3}$–i^{6}–V$^{4}_{2}$	i^{6}–III–iv–iv^{6}	V
structure:	i	V$^{4}_{3}$	i^{6} iv^{6}	V
second-level:	T————		PD————	D

WORKBOOK 1
14.4

Summary

We have explored phrases containing all diatonic harmonies. Keep in mind, however, that the phrase model—comprised of the three ordered tonal functions [T, PD, D(T)]—relegates all surface harmonies to this overriding structural unit.

This hierarchy may always be represented through a multitiered analytical process. In first-level analysis, we *describe* all vertical sonorities using roman numerals. In second-level analysis, we *interpret* harmonic functions within the musical context to see larger connections. We can interpret tricky harmonic successions by considering their overall tonal motion and effect (such as the back-relating dominant), and use a second-level analysis to mirror our perception of the music. This type of analysis can significantly influence the way we shape phrases in a performance.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

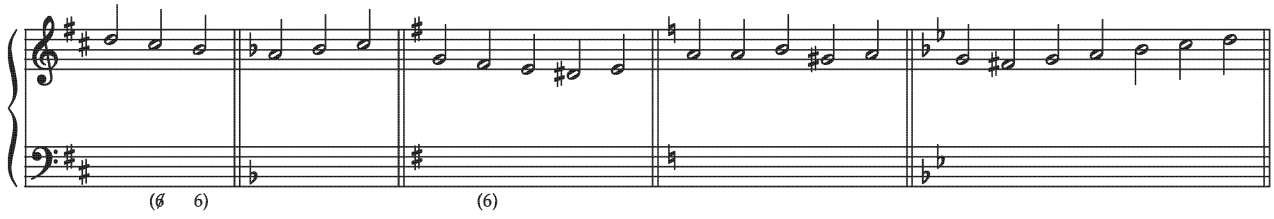
WRITING

14.4 Paradigms

Below are brief bass and soprano fragments. Add basses for Exercise A, sopranos for Exercise B, and provide first- and second-level analyses. Do not add inner voices.

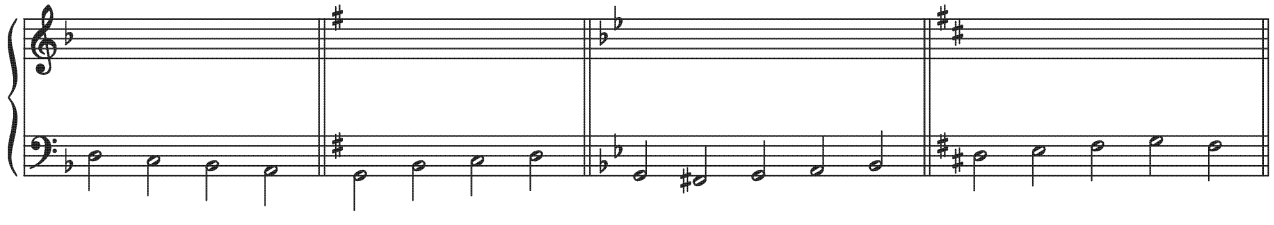
SOLVED/APP 6

A.



SOLVED/APP 6

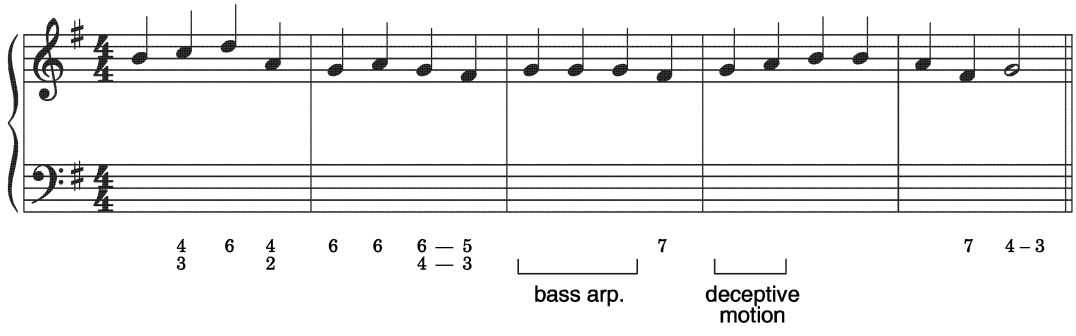
B.



14.5 Soprano and Bass Figures

Based on harmonic patterns you've learned and the implications of the figures with the soprano line, add a bass line and roman numerals (no inner voices). The absence of figures implies root position. Include one example of vi and iii.

SOLVED/APP 6



14.6 Unfigured Bass

Label cadences and locate harmonic paradigms; add roman numerals. Label the remaining harmonies, and then add a soprano melody. *Optional:* add inner voices.

SOLVED/APP 6

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- back-relating dominant
- iii in:
  - bass arpeggiations
  - motions of descending fifths
- retrogression
- V/III

CHAPTER 15

The Period

We have seen how contrapuntal and harmonic motions combine to create music: A phrase is not just a random succession of notes and chords, but a carefully balanced, goal-directed motion controlled by the outer-voice counterpoint and the pacing of the phrase model. According to the model, phrases often comprise one or more tonic expansions, a pre-dominant, and either a half cadence or an authentic cadence. Larger musical structures—those composed of multiple phrases—unfold logically as well. If this were not the case, music would move in unconnected, unmotivated chunks rather than in the smooth manner that connects the opening of the first phrase to the close of the piece.

Throughout the tonal era (and beyond), composers have relied on the pattern of incompleteness followed by completeness. Because a sense of incompleteness is crucial to the large-scale organization of tonal music, composers often avoid harmonically closed four-bar units. Instead, they rely on multiple four- or eight-bar phrases that hinge on one another.

EXAMPLE 15.1 **Beethoven, Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, "Eroica," op. 55, *Allegro vivace*: Trio**

Listen to Example 15.1, noting how the phrases work together. The first phrase ends on a half cadence with $\hat{2}$ in the soprano; this leaves the listener craving tonic and the resolution of the melody to $\hat{1}$, which is achieved at the PAC of the second phrase. When a weakly conclusive phrase pairs with a stronger, more conclusive phrase, we call the resulting unit a **period**. The pairing is possible because the harmonic and melodic tensions left hanging at the end of the opening (**antecedent**) phrase resolve at the end of the final (**consequent**) phrase. Two phrases make a period only when they relate to each other musically, and the second phrase ends with a strong authentic cadence.

Understanding the period allows us to view musical spans of eight or sixteen measures (as in Example 15.1)—or even more measures—as a single musical idea. We will explore how composers manipulate these units, increasing their size and linking them together to form complete musical works.

Aspects of Melody and Harmony in Periods

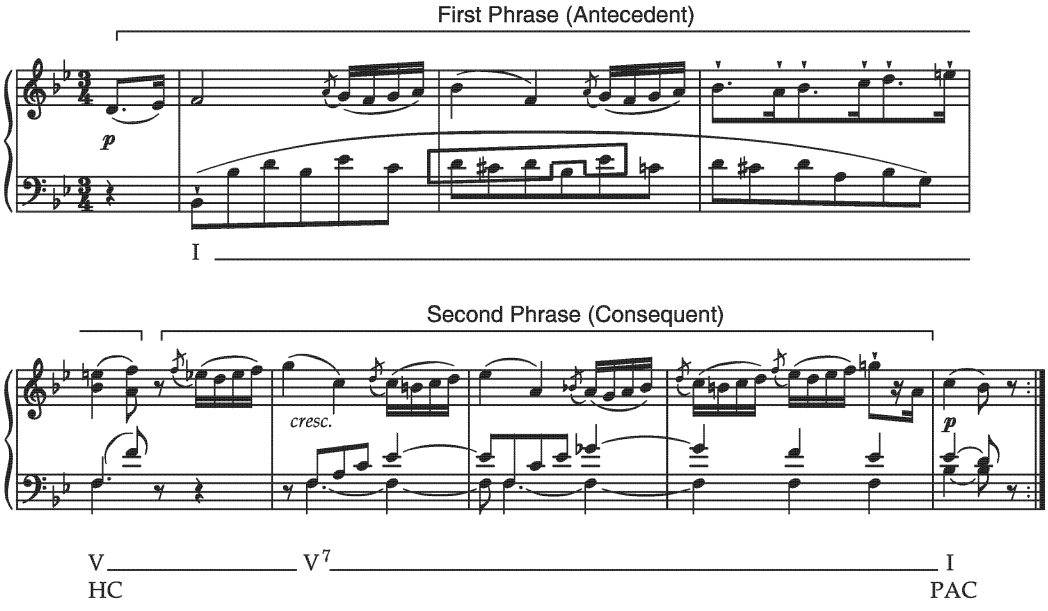
The cementing of two separate phrases is highly dependent on the interaction of melody and harmony. Listen to the two periods in Example 15.2, focusing on the following melodic and harmonic issues:

1. Do the two phrases in each period have melodies that resemble one another? If so, in what ways?
2. Locate and compare cadences.
3. What does the second-level harmonic analysis reveal about each phrase?

EXAMPLE 15.2

A. Mozart, Piano Concerto in D minor, K. 466, *Andante*

B. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, no. 11, op. 22, Menuetto

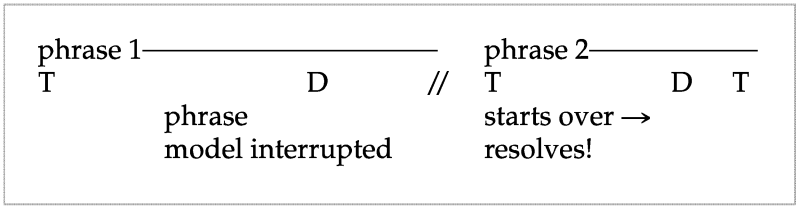


Both periods in Example 15.2 are in the key of B♭ major and divide into two four-measure phrases. Although the examples sound very different, they share several basic melodic features:

1. Both melodies begin with arpeggiations of the tonic triad.
2. The melody of the Mozart excerpt descends from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{3}$ to $\hat{1}$ in mm. 1–3; the Beethoven melody ascends from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{3}$ in mm. 1–3 and finally to the upper-octave $\hat{5}$ in m. 4.
3. The same accompanimental neighboring figure (boxed in both excerpts) gives a chromatic twist to each example.

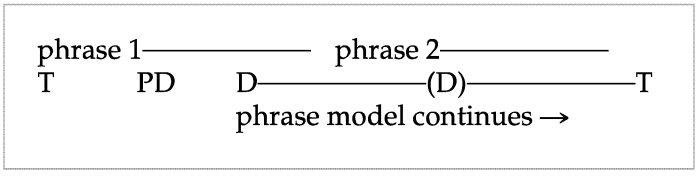
However, there are important melodic differences: The second phrase of the Mozart excerpt begins exactly the same as the first, with only a slight change at the end, while the Beethoven excerpt has no melodic repetition of material from phrase to phrase. When the two phrases begin with highly similar thematic material, as in the Mozart example, we call them **parallel periods** (aa or aa'). Those that are melodically dissimilar, as in the Beethoven example, are called **contrasting periods** (ab).

Although the two periods in Example 15.2 have similar cadences (HC and AC), there is one important harmonic difference. Mozart's second phrase begins again on the tonic, restating the same melodic idea of the first phrase. It is as if the music restarts after being interrupted at the half cadence. We indicate the interrupted motion with a double slash.

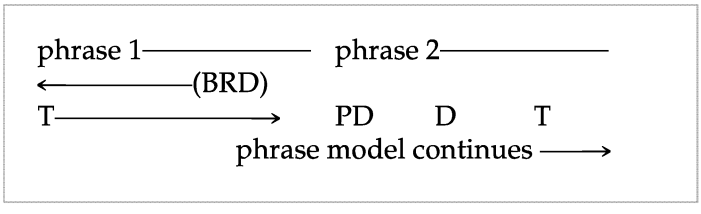


Only in the second phrase does the music push through the cadential dominant to attain the long-awaited tonic in m. 8. A pair of phrases with this related harmonic structure creates an **interrupted period**. (Note that Mozart's half cadence does not resolve to the tonic that begins the second phrase; the dominant at the end of the first phrase is a back-relating dominant that extends the first tonic.)

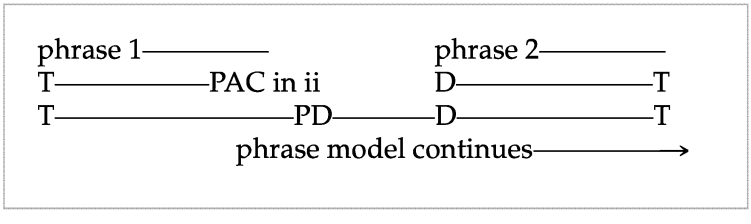
Beethoven's first phrase also has the structure T–PD–D. The second phrase, by contrast, does not begin on the tonic. Instead it begins with a V^7 chord, and *continues* away from the tonic.



A pair of phrases with this single, sweeping harmonic motion forms a **continuous period**. A favorite device of composers here is to lead to a HC in the first phrase but then follow it with the structural pre-dominant to begin the second phrase. In this case, the HC is strongly heard as a back-relating dominant:



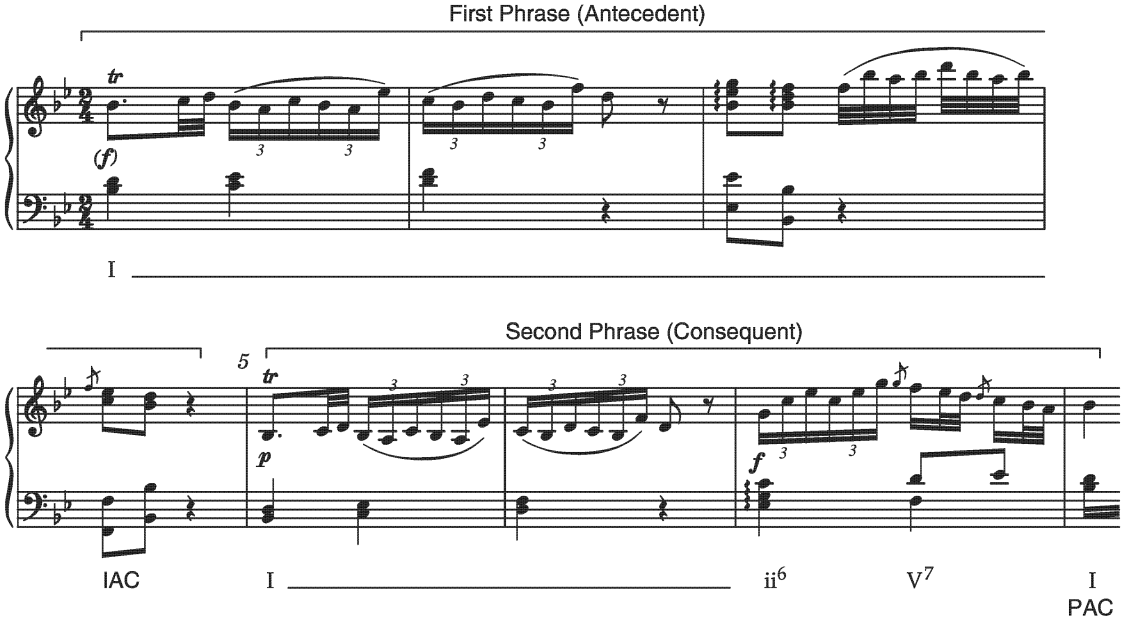
An alternate method of creating a continuous period is to end the first phrase with an authentic cadence on a harmony other than tonic, and then continue the second phrase on the dominant, as shown here:



Again, a single harmonic sweep occurs, as shown by the second-level analysis, which is the same for both models: T–PD–D–T.

Two other harmonic possibilities exist in addition to interrupted and continuous periods. Listen to Example 15.3 and focus on the cadences that close each phrase.

EXAMPLE 15.3 Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 281, *Allegro*



A period is a formal structure in which the final phrase closes something left open in the first phrase. In Example 15.3 even though both phrases close on the tonic, they form a period because the second phrase subtly completes the melodic motion by ending on $\hat{1}$. When two phrases have the cadences IAC and PAC—and each phrase is, in a sense, a closed harmonic *section*—they form a **sectional period**.

phrase 1				phrase 2			
T	PD	D	T	T	PD	D	T
			IAC: melody does not close on $\hat{1}$				PAC: melody closes on $\hat{1}$

The cadence in Example 15.4 forms a weak–strong relationship (HC–PAC), but we are struck by the sound of the second cadence, which ends in the key of v.

EXAMPLE 15.4 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D major, op. 28, *Andante*

If two phrases have a weak–strong cadence relationship and there is a key change during the course of the phrases, they form a **progressive period**. It does not matter whether the cadences reflect characteristics of any other period (sectional, continuous, interrupted). The "progressive" label trumps all other labels because it indicates a change of key.

Representing Form: The Formal Diagram

Diagramming the relationships of phrases visually captures the sense of how they combine to form periods.

Phrases and Periods

Arcs represent phrases, and an overarching curve over two arcs indicates that the phrases combine into a single period.

Melody

Letter names represent the melodic relationship between phrases:

For phrase 1:

a = melodic material of the first phrase

For phrase 2:

a′ = melodic material similar to the first phrase

b = melodic material different from the first phrase

Compare the following diagrams with the melodic material in Examples 15.2A and 15.2B:

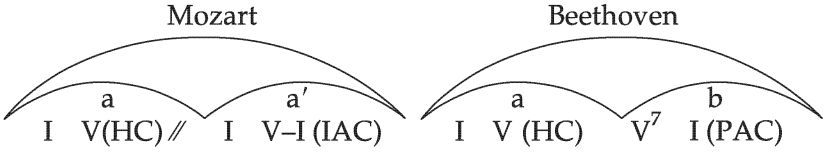
Harmony

Diagrams also capture the harmonic content of a period by listing the initial harmony and the cadence for each phrase.

Initial harmony: Typically, the first harmony is listed by roman numeral.

Cadence: Use HC, IAC, or PAC to identify the cadence.

A double slash (//) after a HC indicates a harmonic **interruption**—the second phrase restarts with tonic. Consider the diagrams for Examples 15.2A and 15.2B:

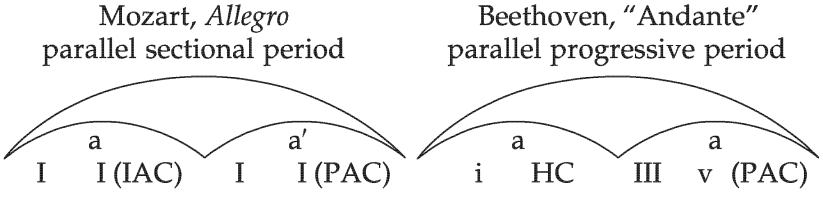


Period Label

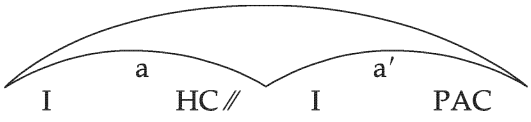
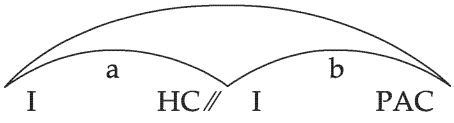
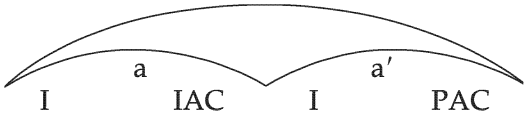
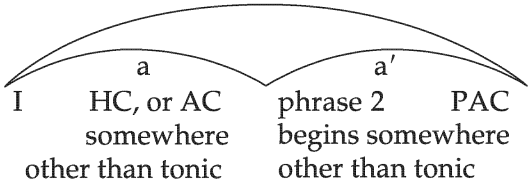
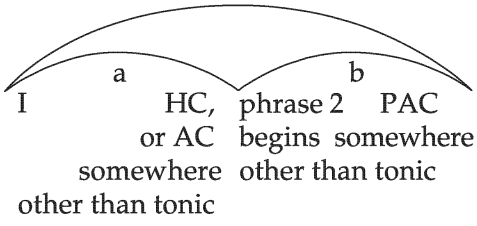
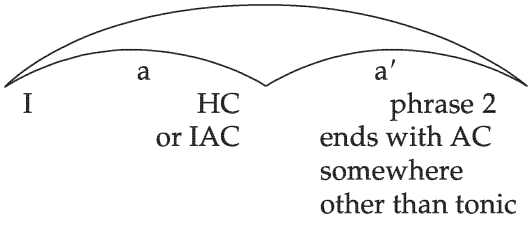
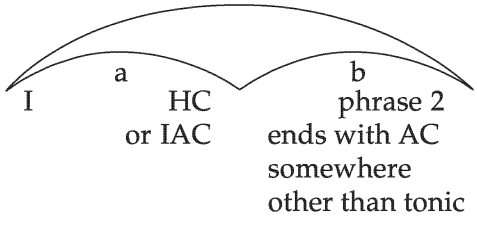
We label a period with three words:

1. The first word describes the melodic relationship between phrases. The choices are:
   a. parallel
   b. contrasting
2. The second word describes the harmonic motion of the period. The choices are:
   a. interrupted
   b. continuous
   c. sectional
   d. progressive
3. The last word identifies the structure: period.

As the completed form diagram illustrates, Example 15.2A is a **parallel interrupted period** and Example 15.2B is a **contrasting continuous period**. The following diagram represents the **parallel sectional period** and **parallel progressive period** of Examples 15.3 and 15.4, respectively.



Period Diagrams and Their Labels

Period label	Abbreviation	Formal diagram
parallel interrupted period	PIP	
contrasting interrupted period	CIP	
parallel sectional period	PSP	
contrasting sectional period	CSP	
parallel continuous period	PCP	
contrasting continuous period	CCP	
parallel progressive period	PPP	
contrasting progressive period	CPP	

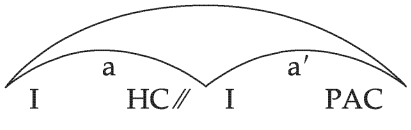
Sample Analyses of Periods and Some Analytical Guidelines

Listen to Example 15.5 and consider the five questions and answers that follow.

EXAMPLE 15.5 Mozart, *Die Zauberflöte (The Magic Flute)*, K. 617, act I, finale

1. Can the excerpt be divided into two or more phrases?
   Answer: Yes, it can be divided into two four-measure phrases, each of which ends with a cadence.
2. Do these phrases create an antecedent–consequent relationship?
   Answer: Yes, the first phrase sounds harmonically open (ending on a HC) and melodically open (ending on the leading tone); the second phrase provides satisfying closure, with $\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$ in the melody over a PAC.
3. Is the second cadence stronger than the first?
   Answer: Yes, the first phrase ends with a HC and the second ends with a PAC. *This forms a period.*
4. Are the melodies in each phrase related?
   Answer: Yes, they are clearly related. The second phrase is nearly identical to the first phrase except for embellishments throughout. *Thus, the melodic structure is parallel.*
5. What harmonies begin and end each phrase?
   Answer: Phrase I begins with tonic and ends with a HC. Phrase 2 restarts with tonic and ends with a PAC. *Thus, the harmonic structure is interrupted.*

From the answers to these five questions, we are ready to label the period as a PIP and diagram it in the following manner:



parallel interrupted period

Now let's try applying the same question-and-answer process to Example 15.6.

EXAMPLE 15.6 Beethoven, *Klavierstück*, WoO 82

1. Can the excerpt be divided into two or more phrases?
   Answer: No. Although the excerpt divides into two musical units, they cannot be considered phrases because there is no cadence in m. 4, just a caesura on a dissonant ii^6_5 chord. Because there is only one cadence (m. 8), there can be only one phrase.

This excerpt is simply an eight-measure phrase; it is not a period.

Summary for Analyzing Periods

The following four steps will assist you in locating and identifying periods.

Step 1 Locate phrases and mark their cadences.

Step 2 Examine the cadence of phrase 1. If it is a PAC in the tonic, it cannot be part of a period. If the first phrase closes with a cadence that is weaker than the cadence found at the end of the second phrase, however, draw arcs and identify phrase lengths.

Step 3 Analyze the melodies of the phrases for the two possible melodic structures: parallel and contrasting.

Step 4 Analyze the cadences of the phrases and write your answers to the right of each arc. Next, label the harmony that begins each phrase using one of the four possible harmonic structures: sectional, interrupted, continuous, and progressive.

Composing Periods

Writing periods involves creativity and using your ear. For the time being, confine yourself to three period types that end on the tonic. In beginning a composition, start with the large harmonic picture using the following tonal models:

Phrase One:	Phrase Two:
• I_____ HC	I_____ PAC or IAC
• I_____ IAC	I_____ PAC
• I_____ HC	$V^{(7)}$ _____ PAC

Next, map out the harmonies within each phrase. As a general rule, harmonic changes tend to occur on strong, accented beats (such as downbeats).

The following eight-measure structure reveals two potential harmonic solutions for an interrupted period (the first tonal model shown earlier):

	Phrase One				Phrase Two			
Measure:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Solution 1:	I	vi	IV	V //	I–IV–I	iii–vi	ii–V^7	I
Solution 2:	I–I^6	V^4_2–I^6	ii^6	V //	I–iii	vi–IV	ii^6_5–V^7	I

WORKBOOK 1
15.1–15.3

Notice that the consequent phrases in both solutions open with harmonic settings different from their antecedents. Such harmonic contrast permits—in fact, almost demands—these periods to be contrasting melodically rather than parallel.

After your harmonic plan is in place, you can then add a melody that provides a good outer-voice counterpoint and exhibits a high degree of motivic consistency and melodic interest.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

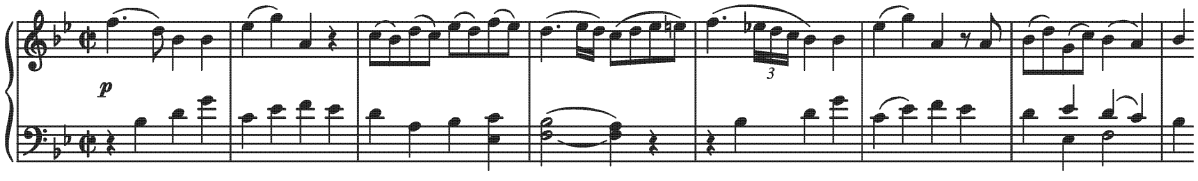
ANALYSIS

15.1

Following the question-and-answer procedure demonstrated earlier, label each of the following examples. *The examples may be a single phrase or a period*; if an example is a period, provide a formal diagram and period label. *Note:* You may find it useful to mark up the music to help you with your analysis. Do not analyze every harmony.

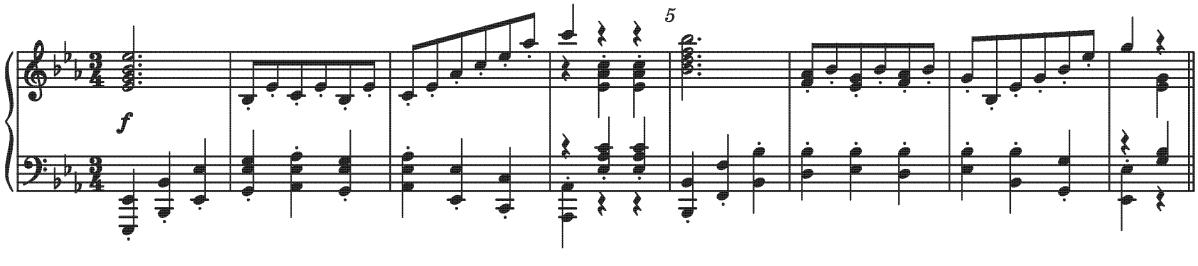
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, *Allegretto grazioso*



SOLVED/APP 6

B. Mozart, Symphony no. 39 in E♭ major, K. 543, *Allegretto*



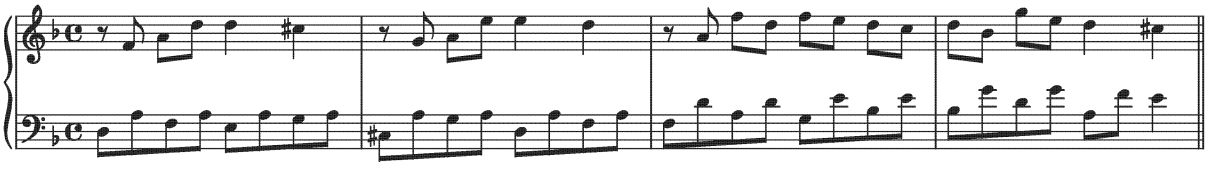
C. Brahms, Waltz in A♭ major, op. 39, no. 15

D. Beethoven, Violin Sonata in G major, op. 30, no. 3, *Allegro assai*

COMPOSITION

SOLVED/APP 6

15.2



Based on the given antecedent phrase, write two different period types. Make sure that your consequent phrases continue the basic texture of the antecedent phrase.

Type 1: a PIP

Type 2: a CCP

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- period
- melodic types
  - parallel
  - contrasting
- harmonic types
  - interrupted
  - continuous
  - sectional
  - progressive
- phrase
  - antecedent versus consequent

CHAPTER 16

Other Small Musical Structures: Sentences, Double Periods, and Modified Periods

Have you ever listened to the way parents call their children inside on a hot summer evening? There is usually a consistency in their speech pattern, since parents typically need to make their announcement more than once:

"Johnny, it's time to come in now."

"Johnny, you need to come in *now*."

"Johnny, I mean it. Get in right now or you'll be grounded for life."

While reading these three statements aloud, notice the pattern and the proportional length of each utterance. The first two declamations are related both in length and content: In eight syllables, each statement communicates that Johnny must come in, although a slight emphasis is made in the second statement by leaning on the word *now*. The third statement, however, is very different. Not only is it exactly twice as long (16 syllables), but now the parent's level of insistence is communicated by a threat to the child. One would assume that other factors, such as the pitch and the dynamic level of the parent's voice, are correspondingly accentuated as well. However, it is often only the third statement—which intensifies the sentiments of the previous two—that is ever successful: Within 15 seconds, the child makes it breathlessly through the door.

This threefold process of communication is common in human interaction: a short statement followed by a similar repetition and then an elaboration of the statement that occupies exactly twice as much time. Given that music is in many ways a communicative art filled with the same sorts of rhetorical characteristics, one frequently encounters this process in music as well. Whenever this rhetorical formal device of short–short–long (usually in the proportion 1:1:2) occurs within music, it is described as an instance of **sentence structure**.

Many folk and even popular tunes unfold using this pattern. Consider the pacing of "Clementine" (Oh My Darlin' | Oh My Darlin' | Oh My Dar—lin' Clementine). Entire genres of music are based on sentence structure, including the blues, and—not to be left out—composers of art music from the seventeenth century to the present have consistently relied on the successful rhetorical device in certain contexts.

The Sentence: An Alternative Musical Structure

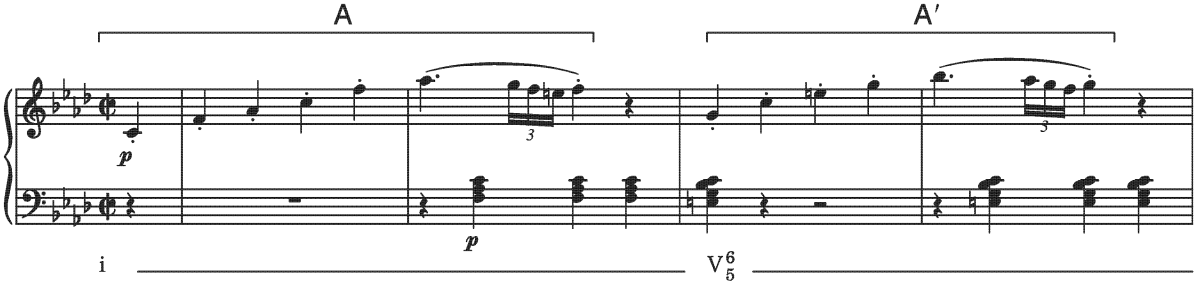
Listen to Example 16.1. The phrase contains subphrases articulated by rests that create a breathy and halting effect. The analytical annotations represent the harmonic, melodic, and rhythmic content of each gesture in the excerpt. Mm. 1 and 2, which move from I to V, are labeled A; mm. 3 and 4, which transpose the melody up a second, moving from V_5^6 to I, are labeled A′. The second contrasting gesture behaves as one continuous unit of four measures and is labeled B.

EXAMPLE 16.1 Beethoven, "Lustig-Traurig," WoO 54

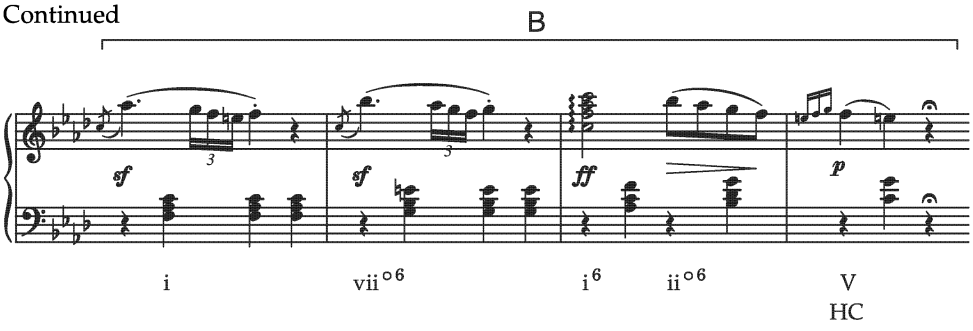
We see in Example 16.1 how Beethoven creates a proportional, additive structure, in which a two-measure musical idea is stated, restated, and then embellished and extended, ending in a cadence. The excerpt is particularly satisfying because it develops so organically: The two two-measure subphrases become, in a sense, an integral part of the consequent unit.

Now listen to Example 16.2. This eight-measure excerpt comprises a single phrase that closes with a half cadence. The first half of the phrase contains two distinct yet closely related ideas (labeled A and A′); the second four measures seem to combine into a single unit, creating an overall 2 + 2 + 4 sentence structure. Yet there is more to this sentence. Examining the harmonic rhythm reveals that the rate of change is relatively slow in the first four measures (two measures of tonic are followed by two measures of a neighboring dominant).

EXAMPLE 16.2 Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 1 in F minor, op. 2, *Allegro*



Continued



The harmonic rhythm speeds up in mm. 4–8, as illustrated here:

measure:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
harmony	i		V^6_5		i	vii°6	i6 ii°6	V

rate of harmonic change accelerates ⟶

Notice how Beethoven creates a musical paradox in his sentence: As the initial two-measure units combine and lengthen into a single four-measure unit, the final four measures are fragmented by the acceleration of the harmonic rhythm. Further analysis reveals another layer of complexity: On the first pass, we labeled the melodic ideas in the first four measures A and A′, implying a close relationship. However, the melodic content of mm. 5–6 also implies a close relationship, because m. 5 repeats a step higher in m. 6, even though this melody goes by twice as fast as A and A′.

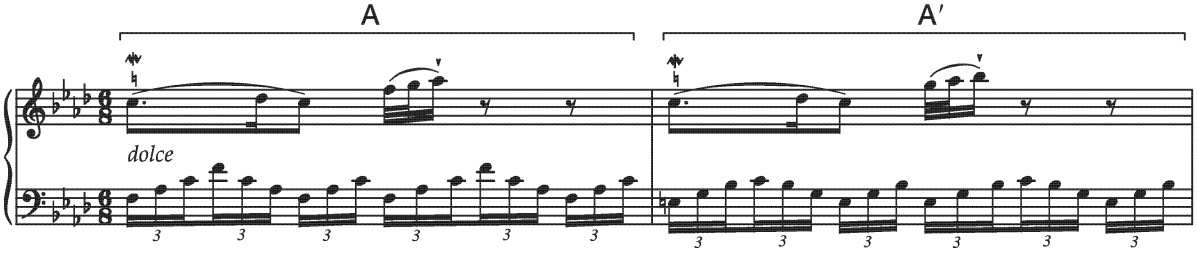
When the melody of mm. 5–6 (labeled a-a′) is followed by the climactic two-measure gesture of mm. 7–8 (labeled b), we see a miniature sentence develop (1 + 1 + 2) *within* the four-measure B of the larger sentence. This **nesting of sentences** is reflected in the following diagram. (When nested structures occur within *both* the A and the B portions of the sentence, new letters (c and d) are assigned to the nested structures in the B portion of the sentence. For example, A's nested structures would be labeled a, a′, b, and B's nested structures would be labeled c, c′, d.)

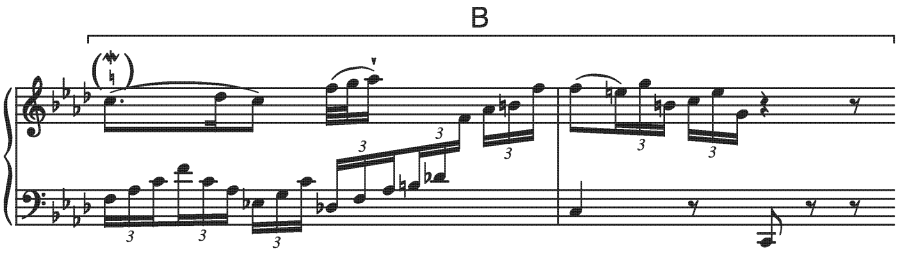
measure:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
larger sentence:	A (2 mm.)		+ A′ (2 mm.)		B (4 mm.)			
smaller sentence:					a (1)	a′ (1)	b (2)	

Beethoven is not the only composer to use these elegant techniques. Examples 16.3A and B present sentences composed by Haydn and Mozart, respectively. Haydn's sentence illustrates a single four-measure phrase; Mozart's sentence contains eight measures.

EXAMPLE 16.3

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 38 in F major, Hob XVI.23, *Adagio*





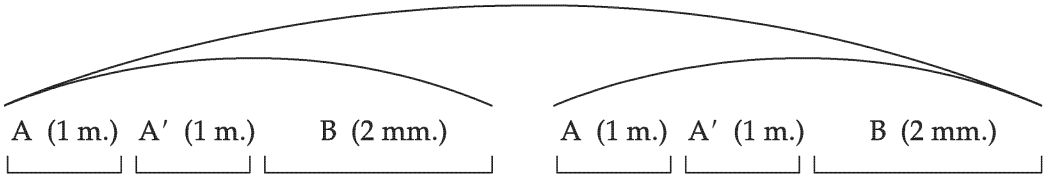
B. Mozart, Violin Sonata in C major, K. 14, Menuetto secondo en Carillon

Given that phrases are often fashioned into sentence structures, it follows that periods draw on sentence construction. Listen to Example 16.4. The first phrase (mm. 1–4) is also a sentence, containing two one-measure ideas that are answered by a two-measure idea that moves to a half cadence. The material repeats in an ornamented form in mm. 5–8 and closes with a PAC. The idea of repeating a phrase with sentence structure is one of two common techniques for casting a period in sentence structure (Example 16.5A). The second technique, which does not merely repeat the sentence structure, is more dramatic. The first phrase forms the A and A′ of the sentence; the second phrase comprises the B. Thus, a single sentence structure unfolds over the entire period (Example 16.5B).

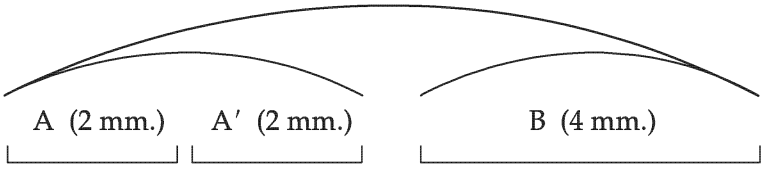
EXAMPLE 16.4 Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 281, Rondeau: *Allegro*

EXAMPLE 16.5 Periods Composed of Sentence Structures

A. Period Composed of a Repeated Sentence:



B. Period Composed of a Single Sentence:



WORKBOOK 1
16.1

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

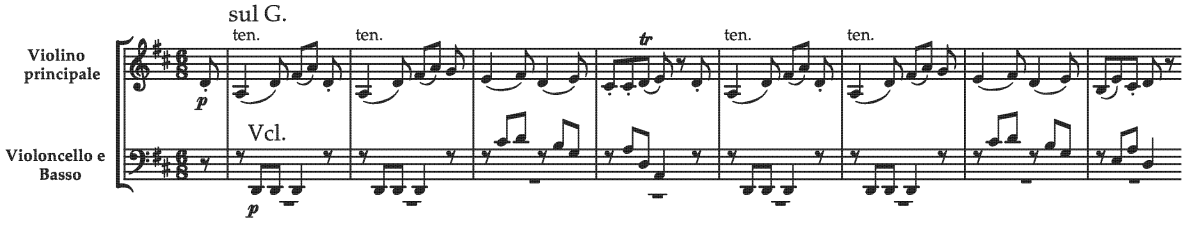
ANALYSIS

16.1

The following phrases and periods contain sentence structures. Do *not* analyze with roman numerals; provide only a formal diagram for each. Include period labels, and clearly identify sentence structures with brackets. (When you encounter a nested sentence, as in Example 16.2, use uppercase letters for the larger sentence and lowercase letters for the smaller sentence. Further, if both the A and the B of the sentence contain nested structures, assign new letters [c and d] to the nested structures in the B portion of the sentence.) In a paragraph or two, compare or contrast any two examples.

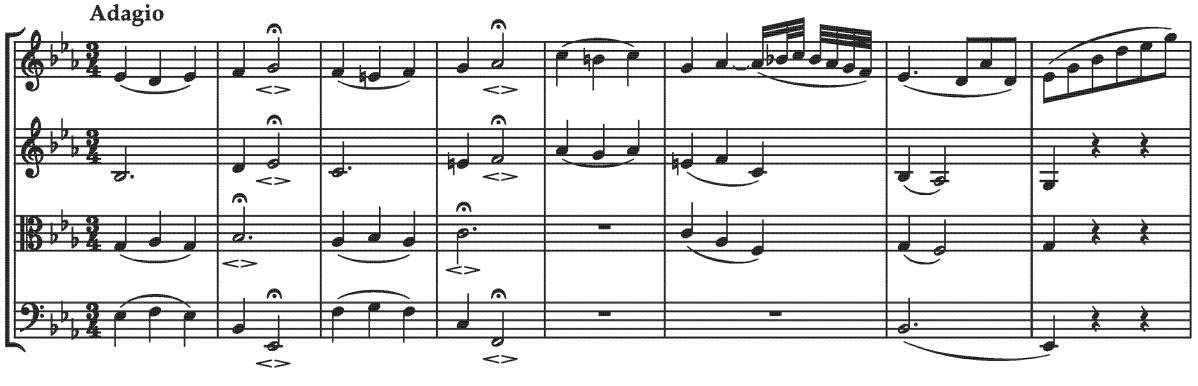
Sample solution: Beethoven, Piano Concerto in B♭, no. 2, Rondo

A. Beethoven, Violin Concerto in D major, op. 61, *Rondo: Allegro*

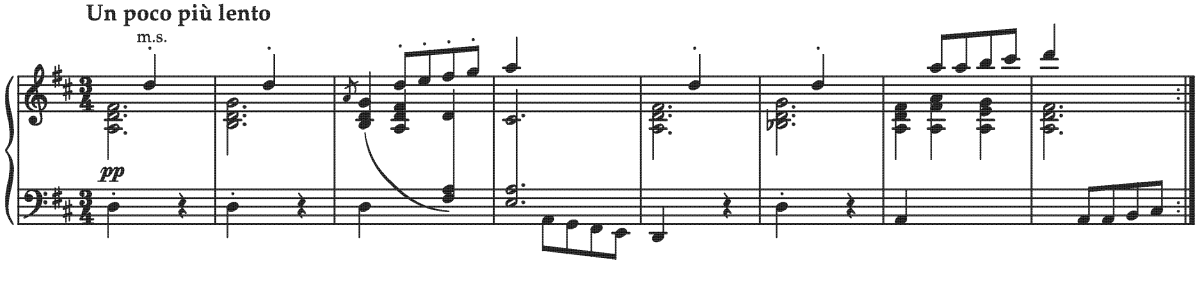


SOLVED/APP 6

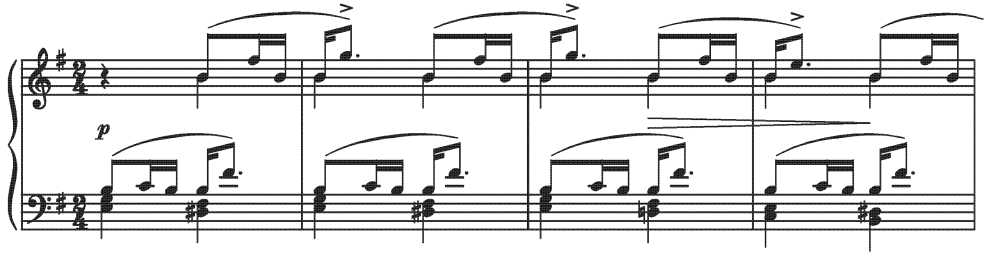
B. Haydn, String Quartet in D minor, "Quinten," op. 76, no. 2, Hob III.76, I, *Adagio*



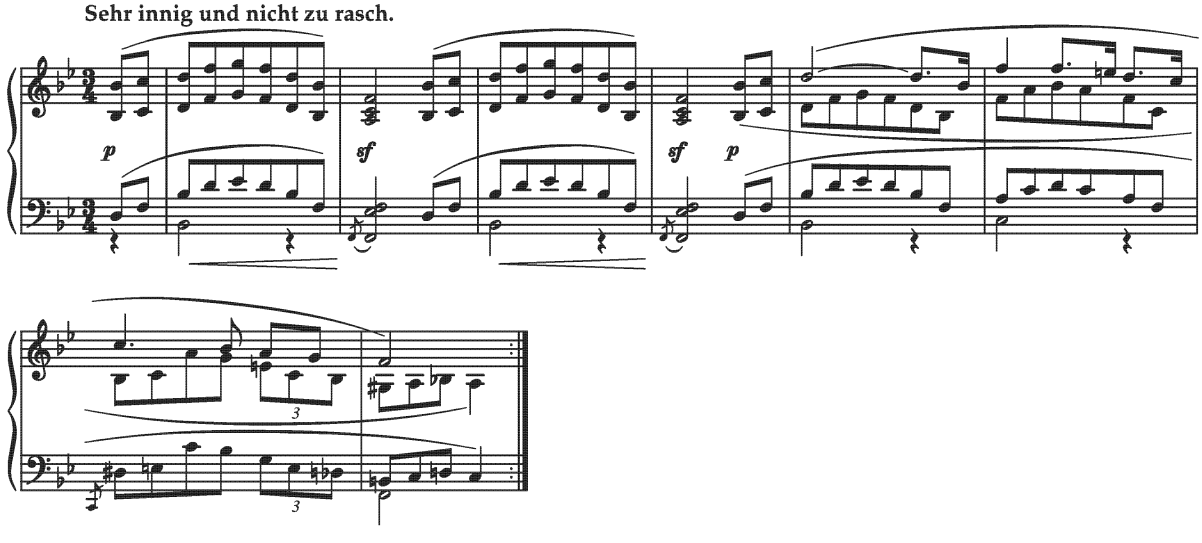
C. Schubert, Piano Sonata in A major, op. posth., Trio



D. Schumann, "Kind im einschlummern," *Kinderszenen*, op. 15, no. 12



E. Schumann, *Kreisleriana*, op. 16, no. 2



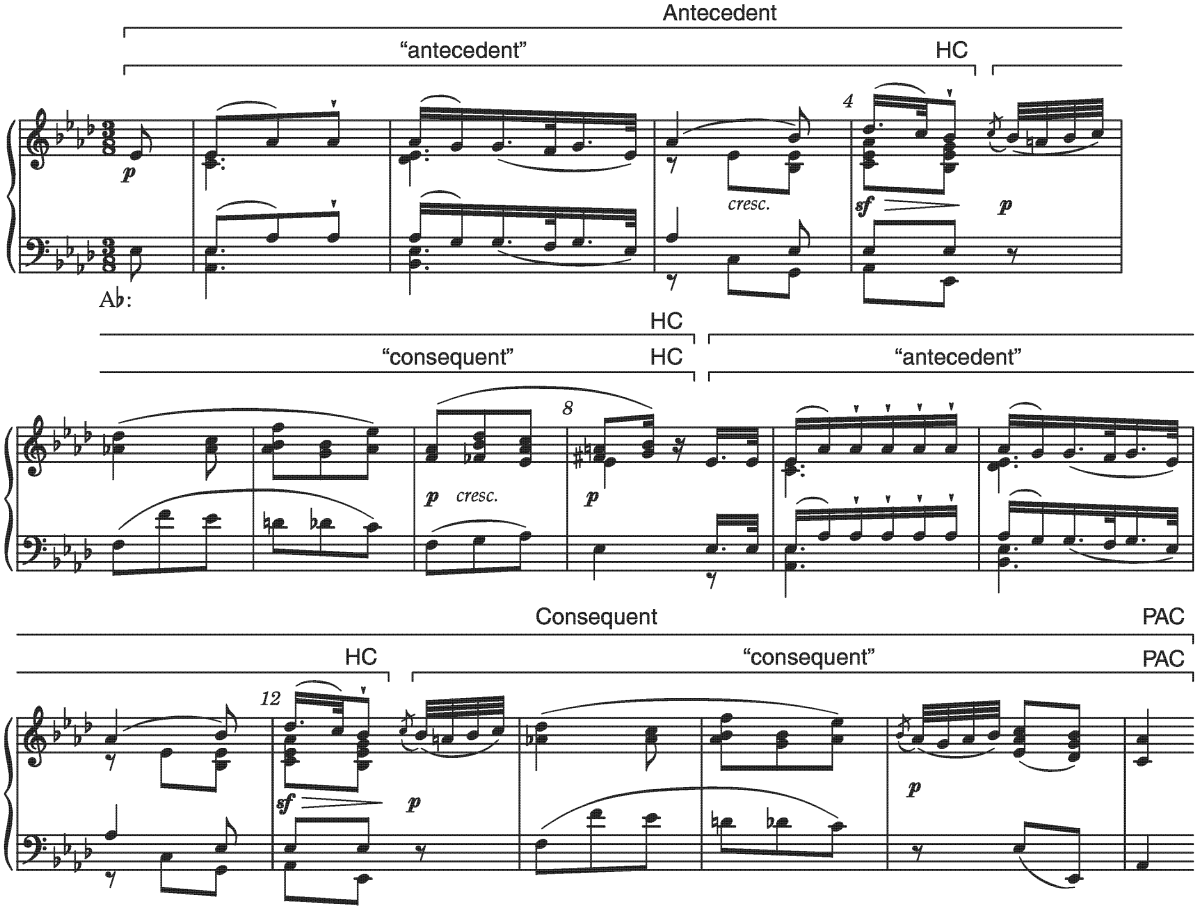
SOLVED/APP 6

F. Chopin, Nocturne in F minor, op. 55, no. 1

The Double Period

In Example 16.6, Beethoven's 16 measures contain four distinct cadences, which do not truly comprise two periods. The cadence in m. 8 is not conclusive enough to close a period; it is only a half cadence, which requires a consequent authentic cadence. The necessary PAC does not appear until m. 16, yet the 16 measures do not truly comprise one giant period either.

EXAMPLE 16.6 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in A♭ major, op. 26, *Andante*



It's true that mm. 1–8 and 9–16 each subdivide into four-measure antecedent–consequent segments and that the cadences in mm. 8 and 16 are stronger than the cadences in mm. 4 and 12. For example, the half cadence in m. 4 comes about almost as an afterthought. The downbeat sonority of m. 4 is tonic, and the dominant enters only on the weak beat of the measure. The half cadence in m. 8, however, appears to be more confident; here, the bass rings on dominant $\hat{5}$ right from the downbeat.

The fact that m. 9 parallels the melody of m. 1 creates a set of expectations for mm. 9–16. We anticipate that this second unit will take eight measures to close on the tonic. And indeed, the melody in mm. 9–16 is similar to the melody in mm. 1–8. The result is a parallel melodic structure, in which the PAC in m. 16 answers the HC in m. 8. The diagram in Example 16.7 summarizes the form of the four phrases. Measures 1–16 appear to be one giant parallel interrupted period, each half of which contains two contrasting phrases. This type of structure—the antecedent and consequent segments divide into antecedent–consequent phrases at a smaller level—is called a **double period**.

EXAMPLE 16.7

measures:	1–4 5–8	9–12 13–16
harmony:	I ------- HC IV^6 ------ HC//	I ------- HC IV^6 ------ PAC
smaller-level melody:	a b	a′ b′
large-level melody:	A ----------	A′ ----------
smaller-level period structure:	"antecedent" "consequent"	"antecedent" "consequent"
large-level period structure:	Antecedent ----------	Consequent ----------

Modified Periods

Occasionally we encounter periods that do not exhibit the typical antecedent/consequent relationship. Composers alter the standard two-phrase model in many ways; consider the following three:

1. Composers may immediately repeat either the antecedent or the consequent (for example, ***aab*** or ***abb***). Example 16.8 presents the opening of a rondo by Beethoven that has the structure antecedent–consequent–consequent. This type of period maintains a deeper-level two-phrase symmetry; the repetition of the consequent (which can also be considered an "extension" or "suffix" after the cadence in m. 8) is more of an echo than an independent entity.

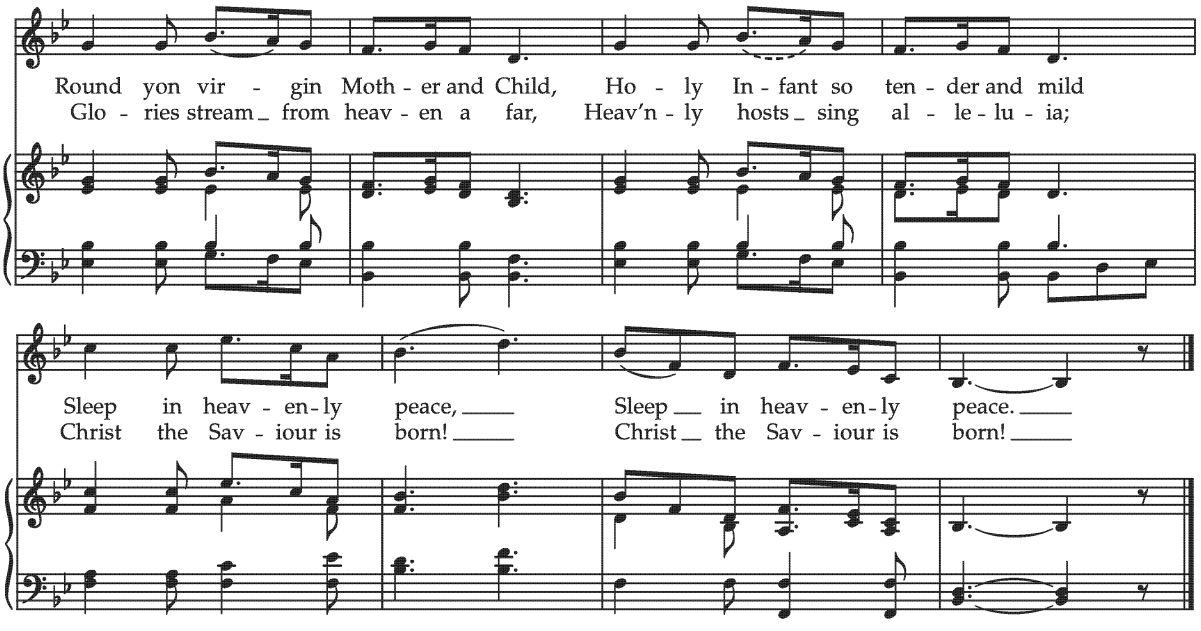
EXAMPLE 16.8 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C minor, "Pathetique," op. 13, Rondo

2. A series of phrases punctuated by weak cadences—none of which is strong enough to close a passage—does not constitute a period. Rather, it is just a phrase chain, or **phrase group**. Sometimes a composer writes a series of phrases, each of which contains new material, but the cadences in each, save for the final phrase, are weak or even more like caesuras. Thus, we must consider the strength of the final cadence in order to discriminate a period from a phrase group.

   Example 16.9 has three distinct four-measure units, but only the third closes with a real cadence. The first unit, which alternates tonic and dominant, barely qualifies as a phrase, and the second unit merely elaborates tonic with a IV–I motion. Yet, given that the final cadence is so strong and brings closure to the previous "phrases," one could interpret the piece as a two-phrase period, with the middle unit acting as an extension of phrase one: A–extension–B.

EXAMPLE 16.9 Gruber, "Silent Night"

Continued



3. Occasionally, composers write periods comprising an uneven number of distinct phrases, which create three-phrase, five-phrase, or even seven-phrase periods. We call these **asymmetrical periods**. Example 16.10 is an example of a three-phrase asymmetrical period (*abc*) that includes repeated phrases creating the pattern aabcc:

a	b	c
‖: I_____HC :‖	V_____HC ‖:	I_____PAC :‖
phrase 1	phrase 3	phrase 4
phrase 2		phrase 5

EXAMPLE 16.10 Haydn, String Quartet in C major, "Emperor," op. 76, no. 3, Hob III.77, *Poco adagio; cantabile*

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
16.2

ANALYSIS

16.2 Analysis of Periods and Sentences

Analyze each of the following periods by providing a formal diagram. Note that you may encounter sentences, double periods, and asymmetrical periods.

A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, Theme (*Andante*)

SOLVED/APP 6

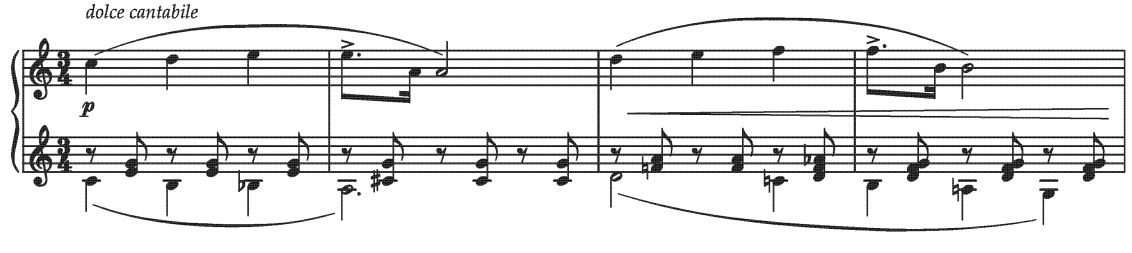
B. Brahms, Intermezzo in A minor, op. 116, no. 2

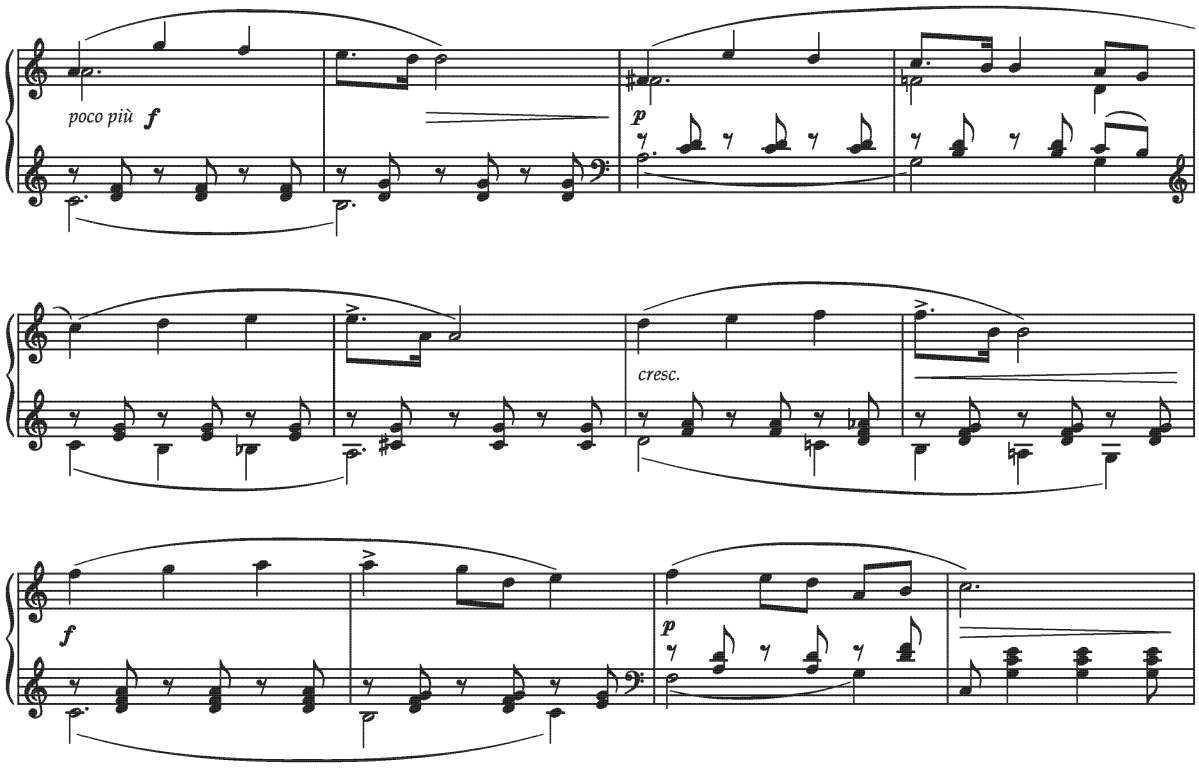
SOLVED/APP 6

C. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegretto*

D. Tchaikovsky, "Sweet Reverie," *Children's Pieces,* op. 39, no. 21

Explain why this excerpt could be interpreted as containing a sentence structure.





COMPOSITION

16.3

Provided are the openings (*incipits*) of sentence structures. Some will work well as single phrases cast in the 1:1:2 proportion, while others will provide good models for a period cast in sentence structure. Determine the implied harmonic rhythm and setting of each incipit, then write a continuation that leads to a cadence. Write in the bass notes and roman numerals.

A.

SOLVED/APP 6

B.

C.

SOLVED/APP 6

D.

E.

F.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- asymmetrical period
- double period
- sentence
- sentence structure

CHAPTER 17

Harmonic Sequences

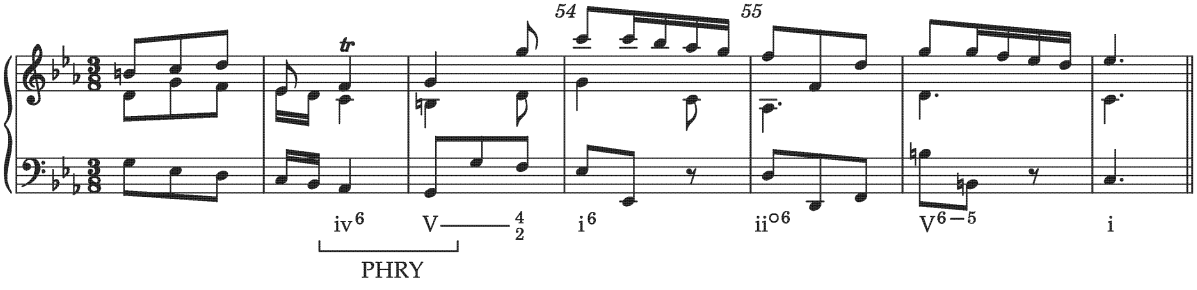
Diatonic harmonies in both major and minor keys participate in the phrase model. Though each harmony may appear in a variety of musical contexts, its behavior is strictly regulated by counterpoint and the hierarchy of the phrase model. The three ordered harmonic functions, and their expansion through contrapuntal chords, rarely incorporate more than just a few diatonic harmonies within any phrase. In this chapter, we explore how composers can employ all of the diatonic harmonies to fill a single phrase.

Listen to Example 17.1A, which presents the end of one phrase followed by a complete four-measure phrase. Example 17.1B presents the same structure as Example 17.1A, except the final phrase of Example 17.1B contains twice as many measures. The added measures, bracketed and labeled in the example, are interpolated between the i^6 that begins the final phrase and the $ii^{\circ(6)}$–V^6_5–i that closes the phrase. However, the added chords fit nicely within the phrase and serve both to prolong the tonic function and to connect the tonic to the pre-dominant. Such patterns, called **harmonic sequences**, form seamless, goal-directed musical units that do not draw attention away from the underlying harmonic progression.

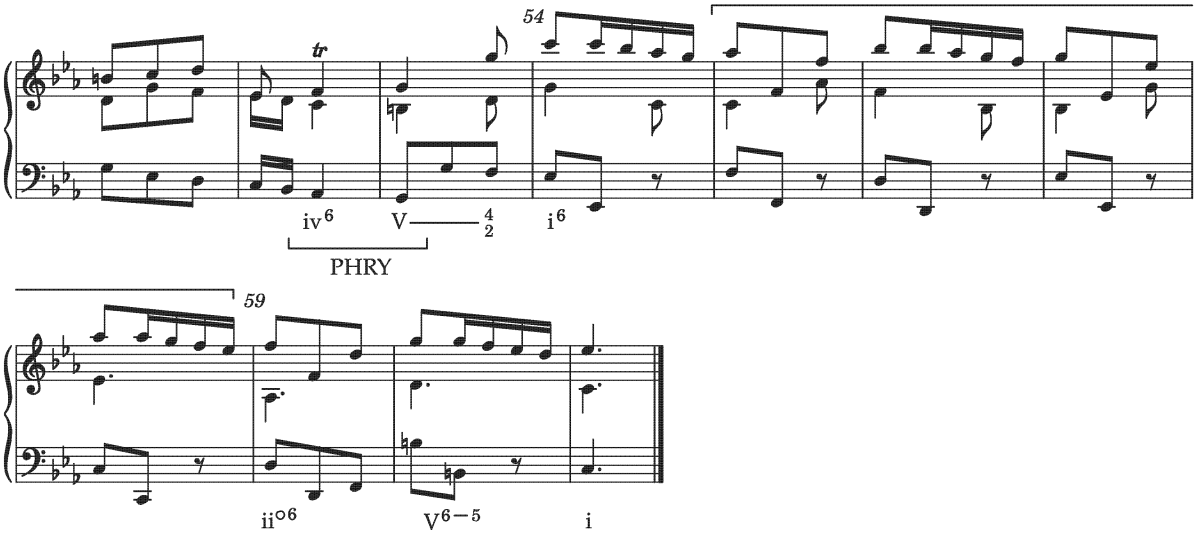
Sequences first appeared during the Renaissance period (ca. 1450–1600), but they played a much more important role in the Baroque (ca. 1600–1750) and in successive musical periods, including the popular and commercial music of today.

EXAMPLE 17.1

A. Vivaldi, Concerto Grosso in C minor, F. 1, no. 2 ("Il Sospetto"), *Allegro*

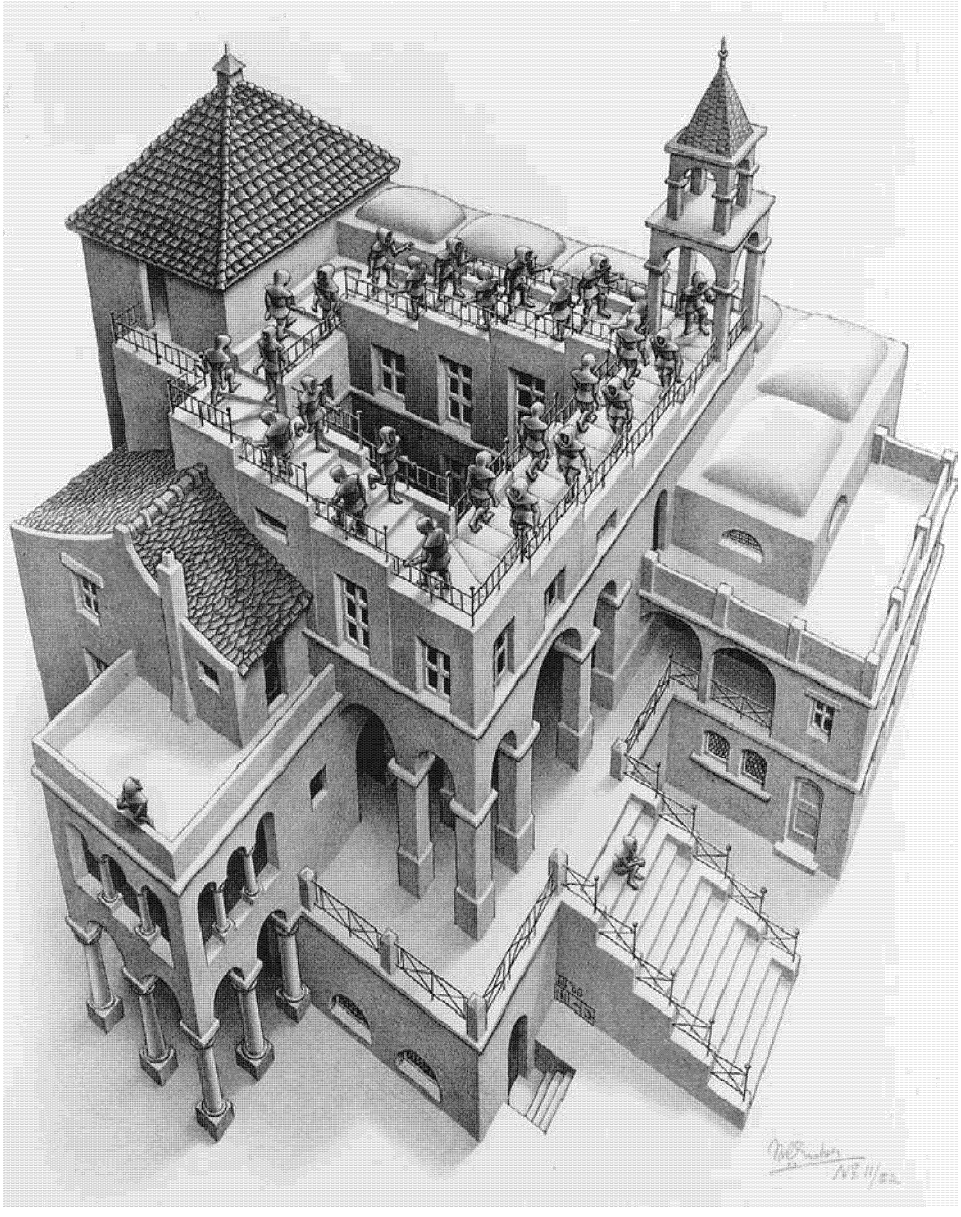


B. Vivaldi (recomposed)



Sequences embody a paradox. Given their rapid harmonic rhythm, they provide the impression of intense musical motion. Yet, given their repetition, predictability, and subordination to harmonically functional chords, they actually serve to slow harmonic motion. Sequences are comparable to some of the art of M. C. Escher, whose paintings, such as *Ascending and Descending* (1960) (Example 17.2), represent constant goal-directed motion. Following the course of these busy monks through their journey, only brings an observer back to the beginning point.

EXAMPLE 17.2 M. C. Escher (1898–1972), *Ascending and Descending*

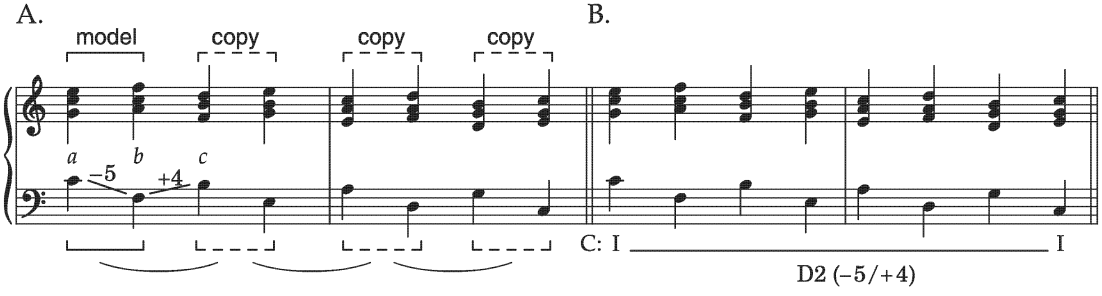


Components and Types of Sequences

One can divide a sequence into two parts: the **model** and its **copies** (which "copy and paste" the model at different pitch levels). The model presents the basic contrapuntal/harmonic pattern—this is usually two chords in length. Any melodic or motivic figuration used in the sequence will first appear in the model and will be repeated in each successive copy. Sequences typically have two or three copies of the model.

Sequence types are determined from harmonic and contrapuntal voice-leading patterns. Although there are many types of sequences, they fall into two categories: **descending** and **ascending** sequences. Consider Example 17.3.

EXAMPLE 17.3 Sequence Terminology



The sequence label indicates the distances between the chord roots that comprise the repeating pattern:

1. The first distance to consider is the root distance from chord *a* to chord *c*—the amount that the model moves each time it makes a new copy. In this example, the distance from the C-major chord to the B-diminished chord is a descending second (D2).
2. The second distance is the two steps that take us from *a* to *c* in our example. The first is the root distance from chord *a* to chord *b*—here, C down to F is a descending fifth (–5). Chord-to-chord motion labels use negative numbers to indicate descent and positive numbers to indicate ascent.
3. The final distance is from chord *b* to chord *c*—here F up to B is an ascending fourth (+4).
4. Only the first and last chords in a sequence receive roman numerals, because only they participate in the harmonic progression of the phrase. (See Example 17.3B)

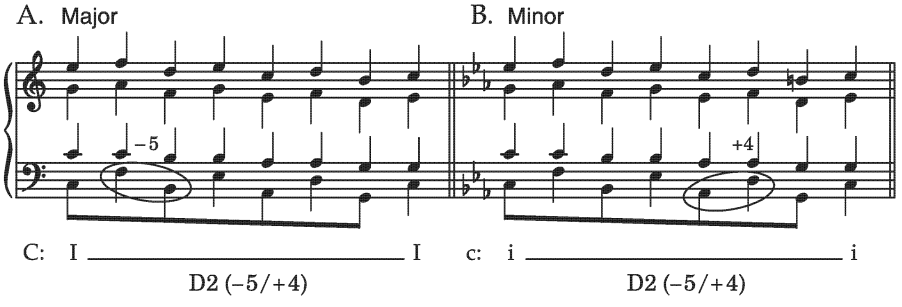
The label for this sequence is **D2 (**−5/+4). The D2 indicates that each repetition of the model descends by step. The "−5" and "+4" show the root motion that takes us chord by chord from the model to the copy. We will now examine two sequences that descend and two sequences that ascend.

The Descending-Second (D2) Sequence

The D2 (−5/+4) sequence, as in our example, is called the **descending-second sequence**. It is also called the *descending-fifth sequence,* because the root motion from chord to chord follows the circle of fifths. We began our harmonic discussion with V–I. Each time we added a new harmony, we

backed up one harmony on the circle of fifths. The complete diatonic pattern of fifths is I–IV–vii°–iii–vi–ii–V–I. Range limitations preclude using descending fifths exclusively; therefore, a descending fifth is typically answered with an ascending fourth, as illustrated in the previous example. Of course, composers might begin their D2 sequences by rising a fourth and then falling a fifth. For simplicity any sequence whose roots fall a fifth and rise a fourth *or* rise a fourth and fall a fifth is a D2 (−5/+4) sequence. Notice that this sequential two-chord pattern creates the deeper-level descent by second, as shown by the connecting beams in Example 17.4.

EXAMPLE 17.4 The D2 Sequence

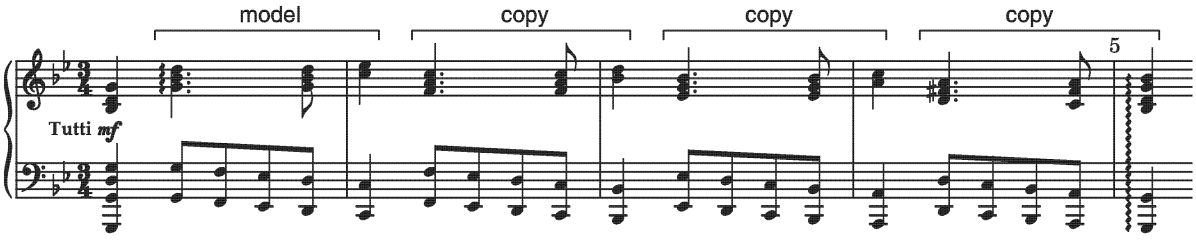


If the above example had only the beamed chords in Example 17.4, it would result in parallel motion in all voices. Another important function of sequences is that the second chord of the model (and of each of its copies) breaks up the potential parallels that result from moving downward by step. These helping chords that appear in each sequence are called **voice-leading chords**.

Note that the major-mode D2 (−5/+4) contains a melodic tritone in the bass near its beginning; in the minor mode, the tritone occurs near the end of the sequence (tritones are circled in Example 17.4). Given the need to keep the pitches from spiraling outside of the key, this bass tritone leap, though uncommon in traditional harmonic progressions, is both acceptable and necessary in this sequence. For example, in the key of C major, if the sequence were to move in strict perfect fifths, it would spin off into chromatic areas and require six copies of the model to return to the tonic (C–F–[B♭–E♭–A♭–D♭–G♭]–B–E–A–D–G–C).

In your analysis, you may have noticed that the harmonization of $\hat{7}$ in major and $\hat{2}$ in minor creates root-position diminished triads (vii° and ii°), which so far have not been permitted. Within sequences, these sonorities are members of a larger contrapuntal/harmonic pattern and are not independent entities; they are allowed in order to participate in the overall repeating pattern. In Example 17.5, the stately D2 (−5/+4) sequence in G minor maintains its contrapuntal/harmonic pattern through the entire circle of fifths in that key, arriving back at the tonic. Therefore, we hear not only the strong tritone E♭–A in the bass (E♭–[D–C–B♭]–A) but also the ii° in root position.

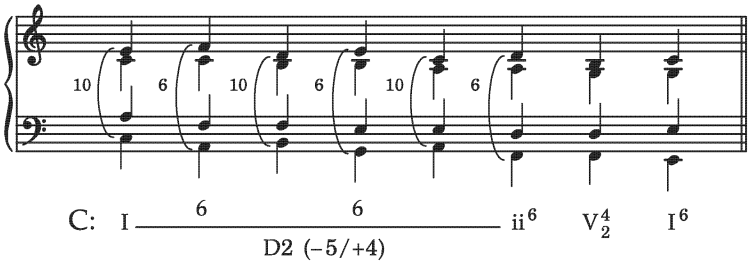
EXAMPLE 17.5 Handel, Concerto in B♭ major for Harp, op. 6, no. 6, *Larghetto*



The Descending-Second Sequence in Inversion

Given the angular, disjunct bass that occurs in root-position D2 (−5/+4) sequences, composers often place one of the chords of the model—usually the second chord—in first inversion. This technique, as we know, creates a more melodic bass. Sequence labels don't change with the use of inverted chords; instead add inversion symbols underneath the inverted chords. See Example 17.6.

EXAMPLE 17.6 D2 Sequence with $\frac{6}{3}$ Chords



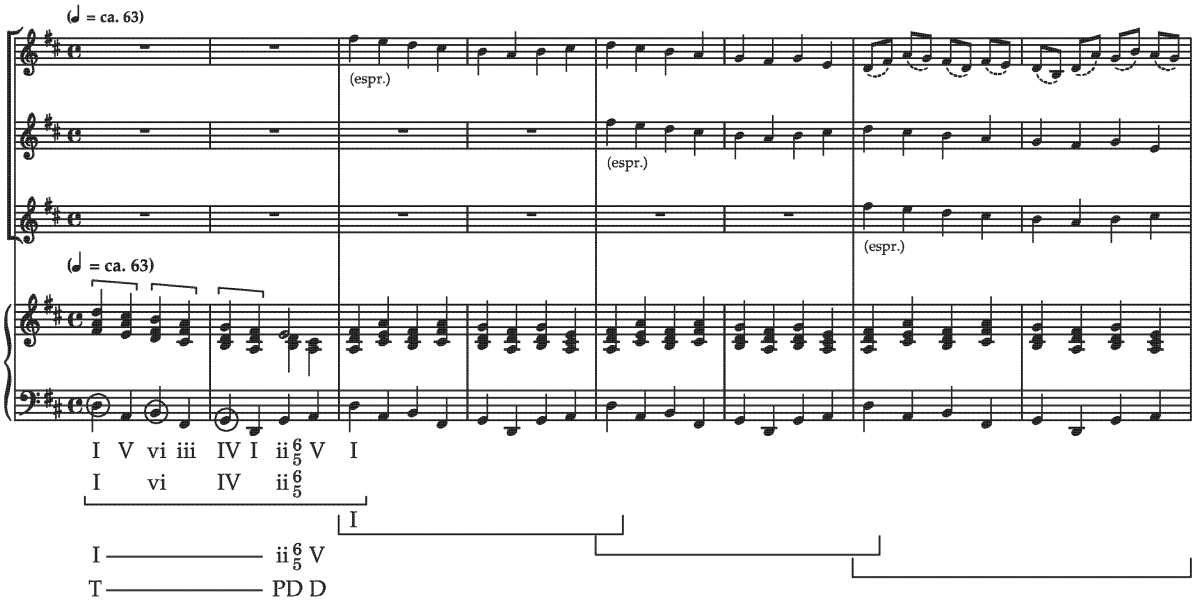
Compare the outer-voice counterpoint of Example 17.4 with Example 17.6. Notice that in the earlier example, an octave occurs on the second chord of the model and each copy. This is acceptable, but the bass is not smooth. The outer-voice counterpoint of Example 17.6 consists exclusively of imperfect consonances (10–6), which enhances the smooth, melodic sound.

The Descending-Third (D3) Sequence

The D3 (−4/+2) sequence contrasts nicely with the D2 (−5/+4) sequence, because it incorporates entirely different root motions in each stage.

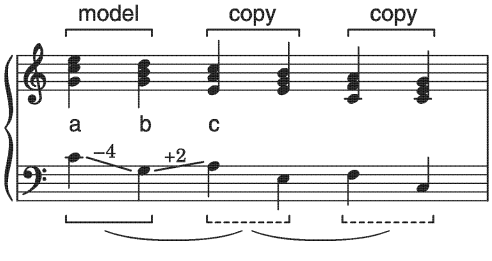
The Pachelbel Canon (Example 17.7) is a well-known example of this sequence. The sequence is two measures long, and three of the piece's many repetitions are included in the example. Both the model and its copies are bracketed in the first two measures, and important bass notes are circled. Notice that the sequence seems to serve a double function in the piece: It prolongs tonic (I is the first and last chord of the sequence), but it also leads to the PD (the tonic at the end of the sequence sounds less like an arrival than like a voice-leading chord to ii^6_5). D3 (−4/+2) sequences often function in this dual capacity.

EXAMPLE 17.7 Pachelbel, Canon in D major



EXAMPLE 17.8A The D3 Sequence

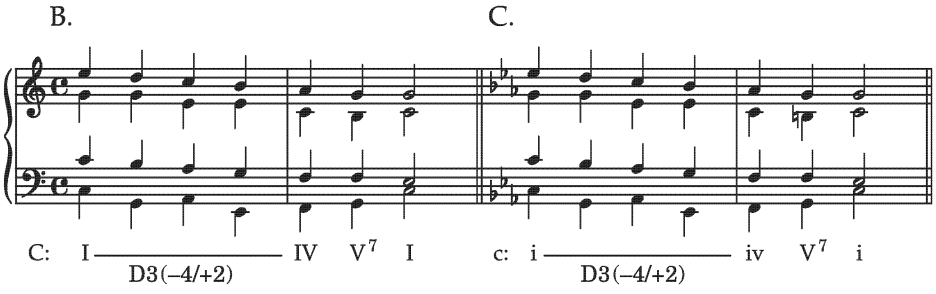
A.



As in the D2 sequence, the second chord of the D3 sequence's model (and each copy) is a voice-leading chord, because it avoids the potential parallels that result from falling directly by thirds.

Listen to Example 17.8A and note the miniature deceptive motion (V–vi) and the stepwise descending soprano line; these are common characteristics of the D3 (−4/+2) sequence. Also observe the minor v chord in m. 1 of Example 17.8C, which is necessary to avoid the augmented second between A♭ and B♮.

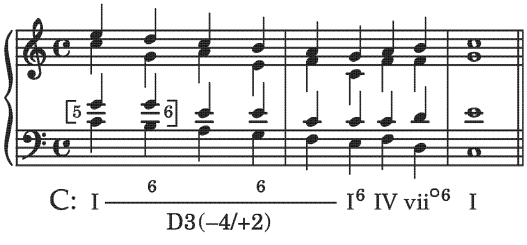
EXAMPLE 17.8B/C The D3 Sequence in Major and Minor



The Descending-Third Sequence in Inversion

Composers often use first-inversion chords to smooth the basses of D3 sequences.

EXAMPLE 17.9 D3 Sequence with $\frac{6}{3}$ Chords



In Example 17.9, notice the stepwise bass descent that moves in parallel tenths with the soprano. This sequence is often called the *descending 5–6 sequence* because one voice (often the tenor, as in the example) remains stationary against the falling bass, forming first a fifth and then a sixth. The D3 (−4/+2) sequence is more common in inversion than with only root-position chords.

The Ascending-Second (A2) Sequence

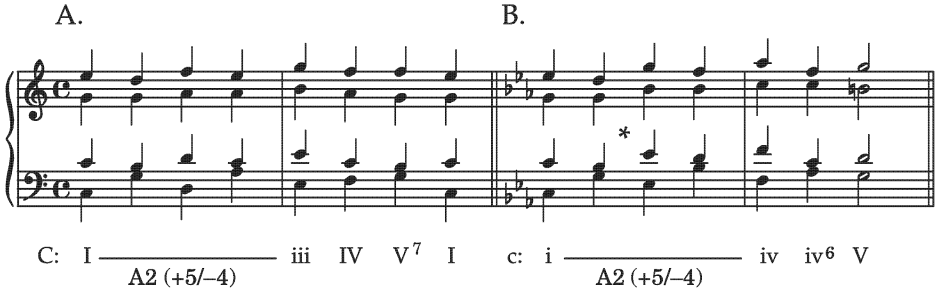
The ascending-second sequence, with ascending fifths and descending fourths, is much less common than the D2 (−5/+4) sequence, because it is not nearly as goal directed.

Look at Example 17.10. In the progression I to V, the dominant's natural tendency is to return to the tonic to create a strong progression; but V ascending a fifth to ii creates a weak retrogression. Common-practice composers occasionally use the A2 (+5/−4) sequence for two reasons:

1. Given its overall ascent, it provides a sense of drive.
2. The second chord of the model (and each copy) again serves as a voice-leading harmony that prevents potential parallels that would otherwise occur in a progression moving up by step.

The A2 (+5/−4) sequence—which typically occurs in root position only—results in a large-scale step ascent that usually moves to a PD on $\hat{4}$ (or, as shown in Example 17.10B, a leap to $\hat{6}$ as part of a Phrygian cadence). Note that ii° and VI chords are skipped in Example 17.10B (marked by an asterisk). This is typically done to avoid the tritone leap ($\hat{2}$–$\hat{6}$) in the bass.

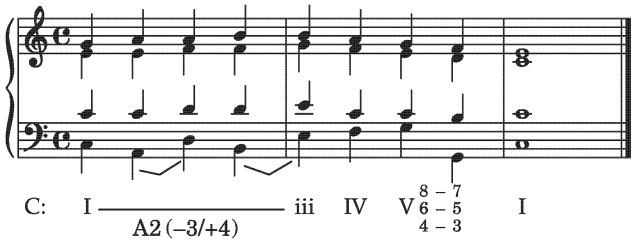
EXAMPLE 17.10 A2 (+5/−4) Sequence



Another Ascending-Second Sequence: A2 (−3/+4)

Similar to the A2 (+5/−4) sequence, the A2 (−3/+4) sequence is characterized by rising seconds leading to the PD, as illustrated in Example 17.11. The propulsion for this sequence comes from a springboard motion—up a fourth—to begin the next copy of the model.

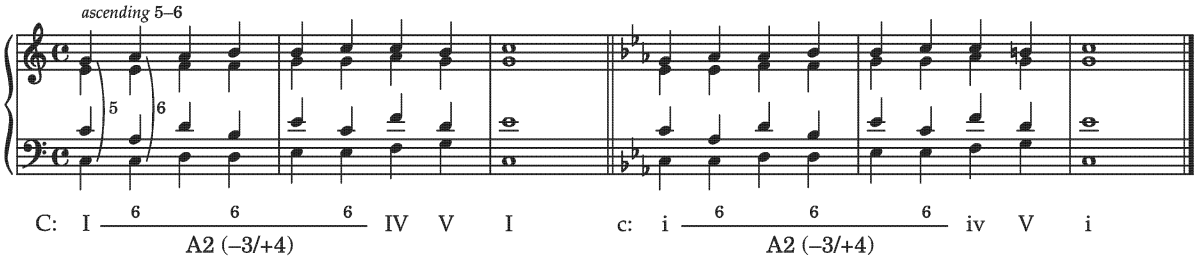
EXAMPLE 17.11 A2 (−3/+4) Sequence



Listen to and study Example 17.12. As with the other sequences that employ first-inversion triads, the addition of the six-three chords makes the A2 (−3/+4) much smoother. In fact, the bass is sustained as a common tone throughout the model (and in each copy).

This is, perhaps, the oldest of all sequences and can be found in the music of early sixteenth-century composers such as Josquin Despres (d. 1521). Parallels that would occur in a stepwise progression are averted by the intervening six-three chord, creating a 5–6 contrapuntal motion (which usually occurs in the outer voices). This sequence is also known as the *ascending 5–6 sequence*.

EXAMPLE 17.12 A2 Sequence with $\frac{6}{3}$ Chords



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

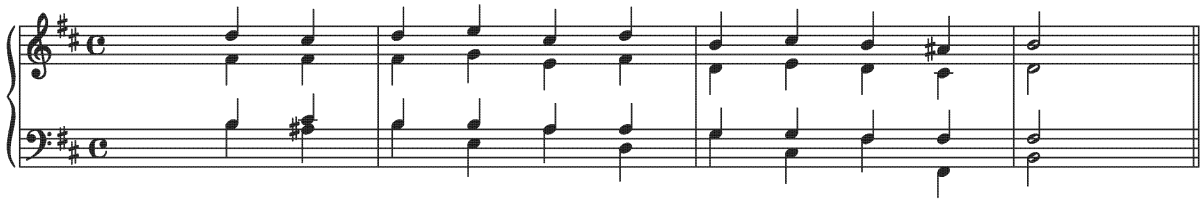
17.1 Analysis of Descending Sequences

Listen to and study the following sequences. Do not place a roman numeral beneath every chord: The chords within a sequence are members of a linear motion and do not carry individual harmonic weight.

WORKBOOK 1
17.1–17.4

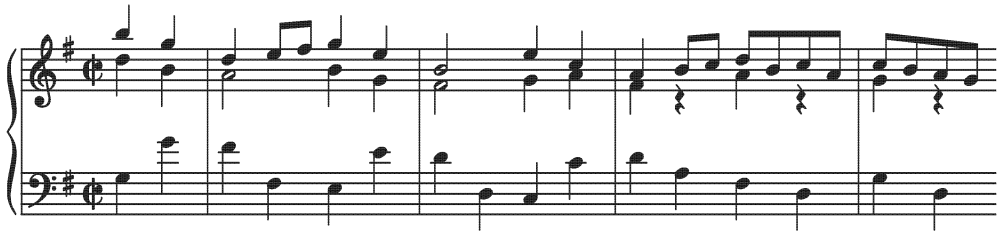
1. Bracket the beginning and end of each sequence.
2. Determine whether root-position chords or alternating first inversions are used. Label each sequence completely.
3. Determine whether each copy maintains the model's voice leading precisely. Label the interval between bass and soprano in the model and in one copy.
4. For D2 sequences, mark the location of the single tritone that occurs between IV and vii in major and ii° and V in minor.

A.



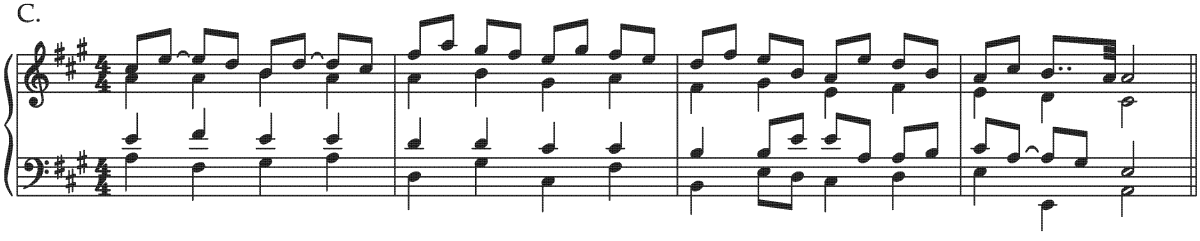
SOLVED/APP 6

B. Bach, Gavotte, French Suite no. 5 in G major, BWV 816



SOLVED/APP 6

C.



D. Mozart, Sonata for Violin and Piano in B♭ major, K. 372

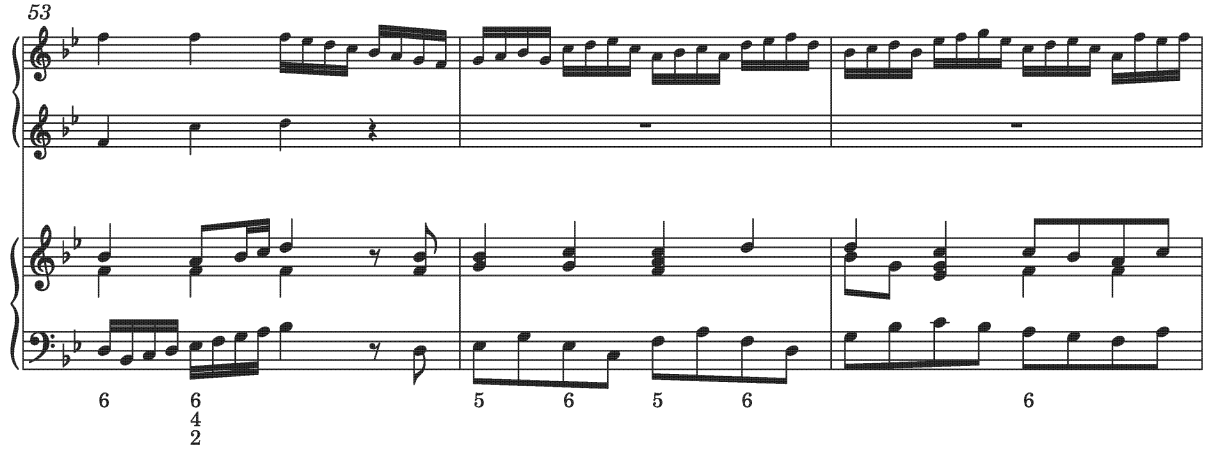
17.2 Analysis of Ascending Sequences

Bracket and label each sequence in the following examples.

A. Schubert, String Quintet in C major, D. 956, *Adagio*

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Handel, Trio Sonata in G minor, op. 2, no. 5, HWV 390, *Allegro*



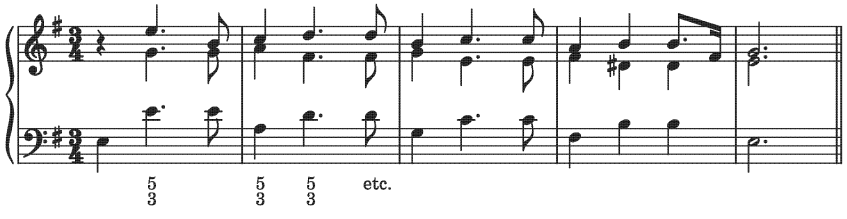
Sequences with Diatonic Seventh Chords

Composers commonly add sevenths to harmonies involved in sequences, resulting in a stream of seventh chords. We will limit our study of seventh-chord sequences to the D2 (−5/+4) sequence.

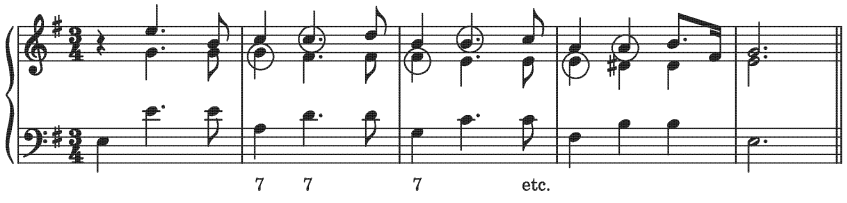
Listen to Example 17.13. Part A contains a D2 (−5/+4) sequence composed entirely of triads. Part B reproduces the opening of a movement by François Couperin, illustrating a D2 sequence that contains diatonic seventh chords. Notice the increased harmonic interest and richness in Example B compared with Example A, due in large part to the four different types of seventh chords used (mm, MM, dm, and Mm).

EXAMPLE 17.13 Triadic D2 Sequence Becomes Seventh-Chord D2 Sequence

A.



B. François Couperin "Les Nations," *Premier Ordre: La Francoise*, XIV, Chaconne

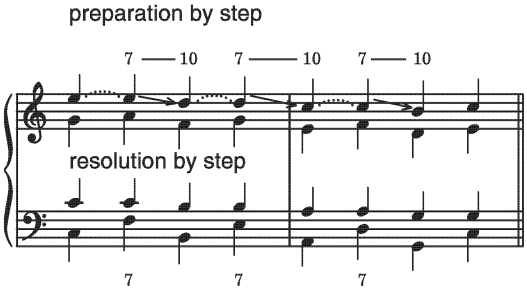


Diatonic sevenths may be added to every chord (see Example 17.13B) or to every other chord in the D2 (−5/+4) sequence. However, *you must prepare and resolve each seventh.* Refer back to Example 17.13B; notice that the circled sevenths of each chord have been prepared by common tone and resolved down by step (the soprano-voice seventh moves to its upper neighbor, actually the root of the chord, before resolving down).

Listen to and contrast the two D2 (−5/+4) sequences in Example 17.14. Example 17.14A has alternating triads and seventh chords and so is called a D2 (−5/+4) with **alternating** sevenths. Note that each seventh is prepared by a common tone (dotted slur in the example) and is resolved down by step (arrow in the example). Also, once the series begins, the resolution pitch serves simultaneously as the next preparation pitch.

EXAMPLE 17.14 Sevenths: Alternating and Interlocking

A. Alternating



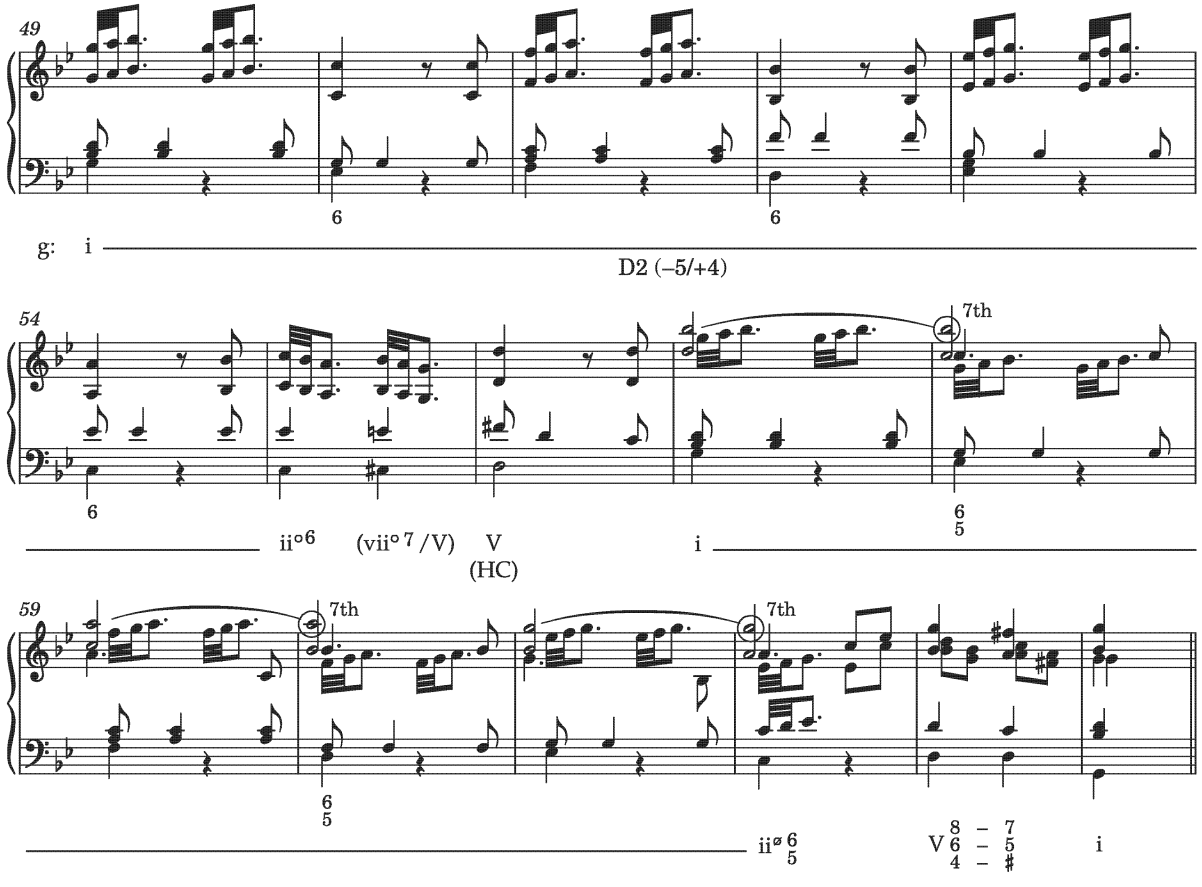
B. Interlocking

Every harmony in Example 17.14B contains a seventh; we call this type of sequence a D2 (−5/+4) with **interlocking** sevenths. The soprano and alto have interlocking sevenths above the bass: As the soprano resolves its seventh, the alto prepares its seventh; as the alto resolves its seventh, the soprano prepares its seventh; and so on. Notice that every other chord in Example 17.14B is incomplete (doubled root/omitted fifth).

Sequences with Inversions of Seventh Chords

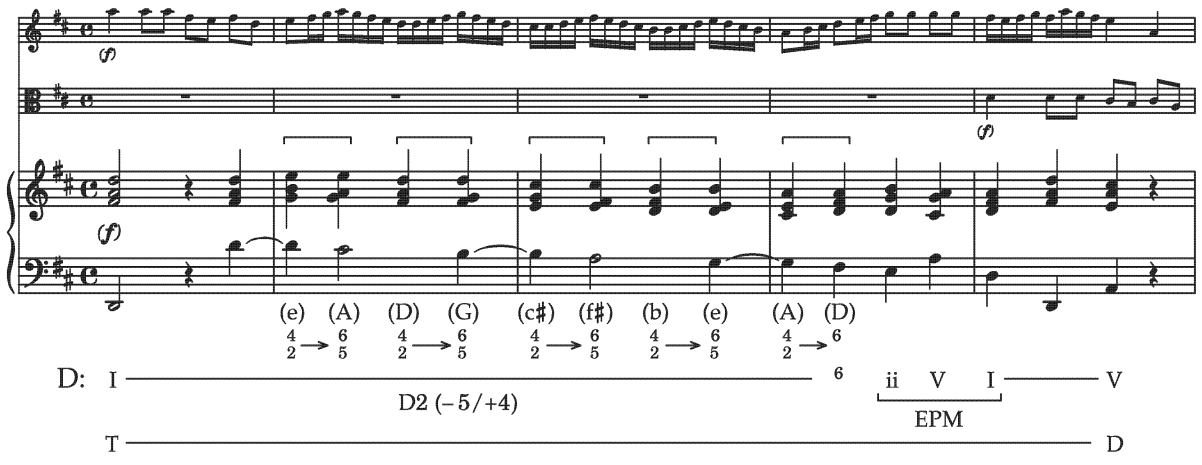
Just as first-inversion triads are used in D2 (−5/+4) sequences, so too are first-inversion seventh chords. Listen to Example 17.15, in which Mozart writes two back-to-back D2 sequences with first-inversion chords. The first sequence contains only triads. But for the repetition of the entire sequence, Mozart intensifies the drama by adding a pair of oboes that soar above the strings to present the falling sixths, whose suspension figure includes the chordal seventh (circled and labeled in the score).

EXAMPLE 17.15 Mozart, Symphony in G major, K. 74, Allegro



Seventh chords in third inversion ($^{4}_{2}$) are also common in D2 sequences. They resolve to first-inversion triads or seventh chords. Listen to Example 17.16. As always, the seventh—this time in the bass—is prepared, giving the impression of a bass suspension. In general, when determining a sequence type, locate the root of each chord. In Example 17.16, the sequence unfolds with the roots E–A, D–G, C♯–F♯, B–E, revealing the underlying D2 (–5/+4) motion; figures reveal the interlocking inverted seventh chords ($^{4}_{2}$ $^{6}_{5}$).

EXAMPLE 17.16 Leclair, Trio Sonata in D major, op. 2, no. 8, *Allegro*



Writing Sequences

Writing sequences does not involve any new chords, or any new voice-leading rules. In fact, given that each chord within a sequence must follow the voice leading and doublings in the model, you will encounter double leading tones, dissonant leaps, and even diminished triads in root position. These are all to be avoided in usual voice-leading situations, but they are perfectly acceptable within sequences (because of the overall repetition of the model). However, rely on your musical instincts, for the listener will soon tire of nonstop sequences. By contrast, the sequence is a compositional procedure that can be used without becoming stale. (Witness the continued popularity of works such as Pachelbel's Canon.) Note the following guidelines:

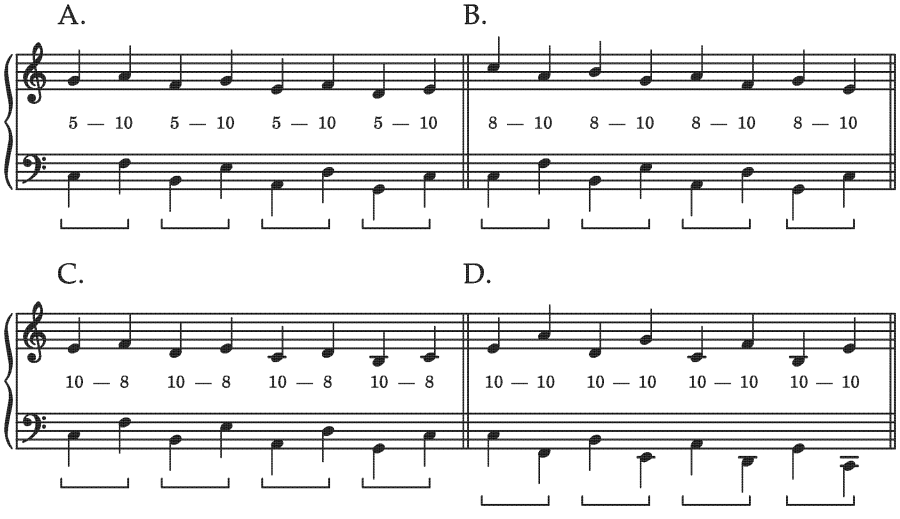
Guideline 1 The voice leading in the model and first copy must be correct. Because the copies merely restate the model (at a different pitch level), any faulty voice leading in the opening will blemish every copy.

Guideline 2 Write outer voices first. Try to incorporate contrary step motion between them and include at least one imperfect consonance (3, 6, 10). Example 17.17 shows various intervallic patterns between the outer voices of the D2 (−5/+4) sequence. Although the soprano becomes more disjunct with the nonstop tenths in Example D, such a contrapuntal framework has occurred often in music, particularly in popular music of the twentieth century (including Bart Howard's "Fly Me to the Moon" and Jerome Kern's "All the Things You Are").

Guideline 3 Prepare and resolve each chordal seventh.*

Guideline 4 When you write sequences involving inverted seventh chords, make sure each sonority is complete.

EXAMPLE 17.17 Outer Voices and Imperfect Consonances

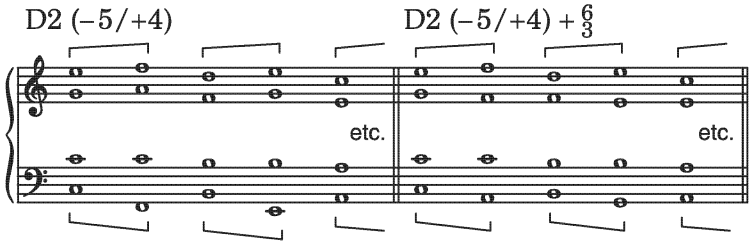


*For a step-by-step procedure to compose sequences within the phrase model, see Appendix 4.

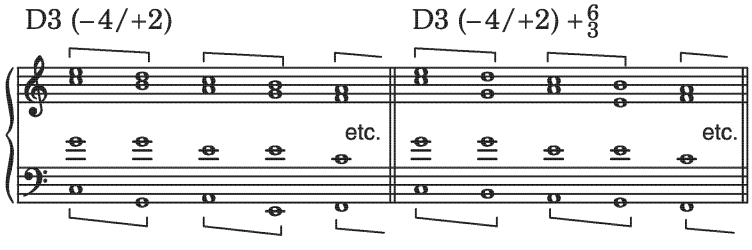
The following example (17.18) illustrates diatonic sequences in four voices.

EXAMPLE 17.18 Summary of Diatonic Sequences

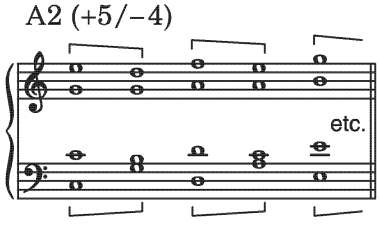
A. Descending Seconds



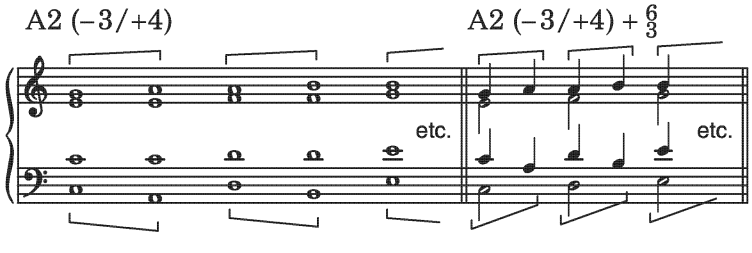
B. Descending Thirds



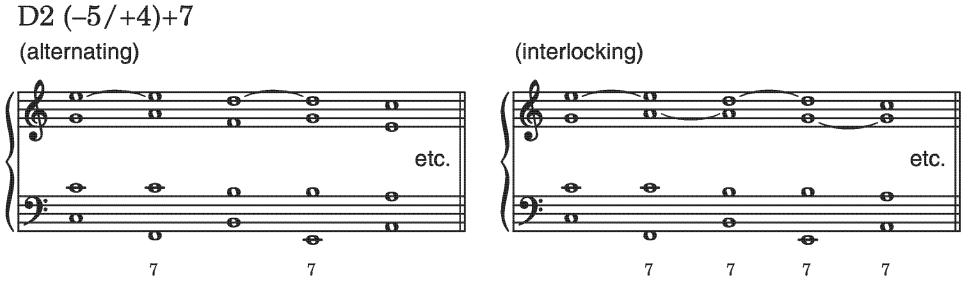
C. Ascending Seconds



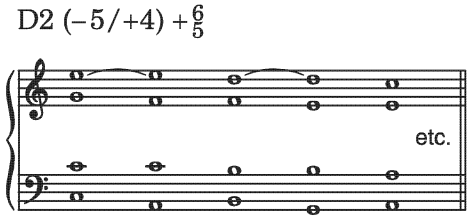
D. Ascending Seconds

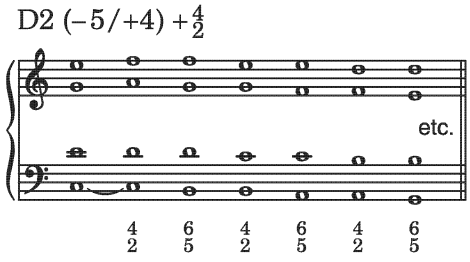


E. Descending Seconds (with Sevenths)



WORKBOOK 1
17.5–17.7





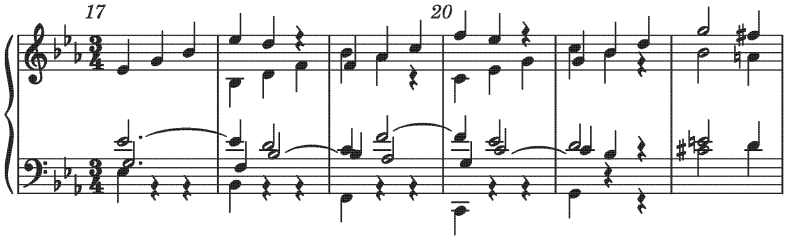
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

17.3

Identify the key of each excerpt, then bracket and label each sequence.

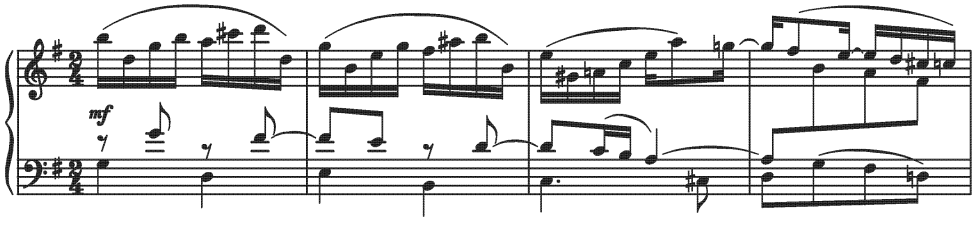
A. Mozart, String Quintet in C minor, K. 406, iii



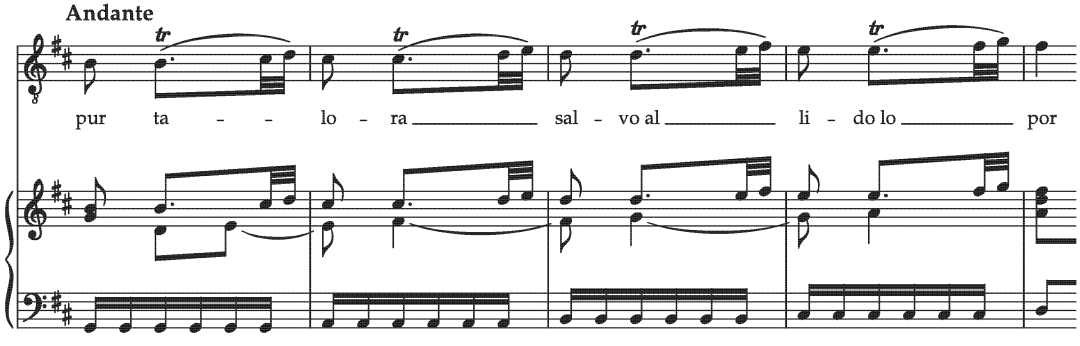
B. Handel, Keyboard Suite no. 7 in G minor, Passacaille

A single sequence type is repeated twice. Notice how Handel elaborates the underlying structure. What is the relationship between the two hands in mm. 9–12 and mm. 13–16?

C. Mozart, Violin Sonata in G major, K. 379, *Andantino cantabile*



D. Pergolesi, "Il nocchier nella Tempesta," from *Salustia*, act 2, scene 9

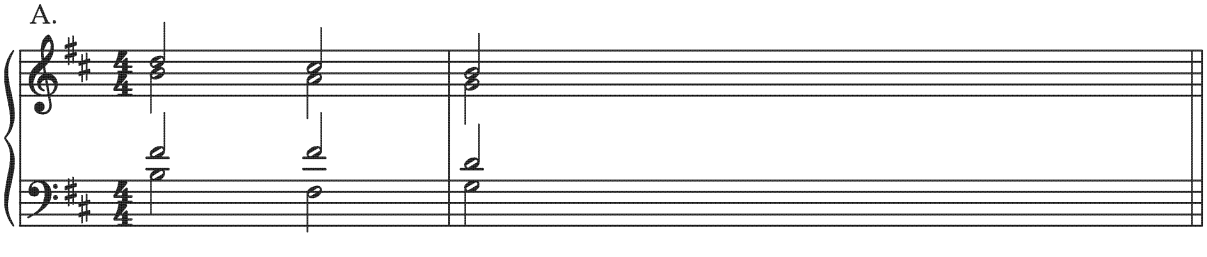


17.4 Writing

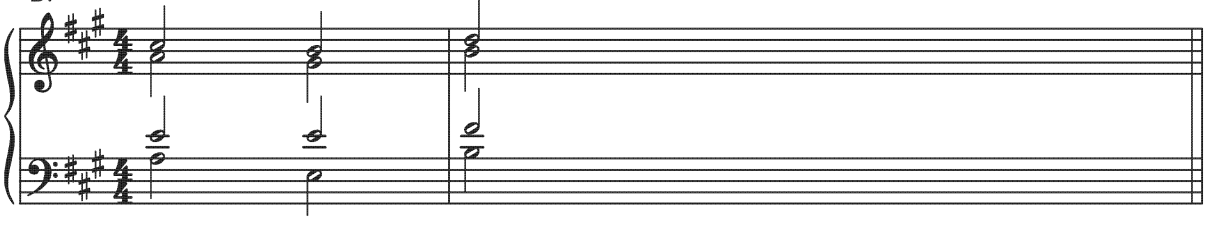
Continue writing the following sequences, each of which starts on the tonic. The model is given, as well as (in some cases) its connection to the first chord of the copy. Label the intervals of the outer-voice counterpoint, as in Example 17.17. Begin by writing the bass and the soprano, filling in the tenor and alto parts only after you are sure that the repetitions replicate the model exactly. Do not use accidentals within the sequence. Label each sequence type; note that there may be first-inversion triads. Follow these guidelines when completing the sequences:

- For D2 (−5/+4): Write a complete diatonic cycle, leading back to the tonic.
- For the other sequence types: Stop the sequence on a pre-dominant chord. Close with a HC.

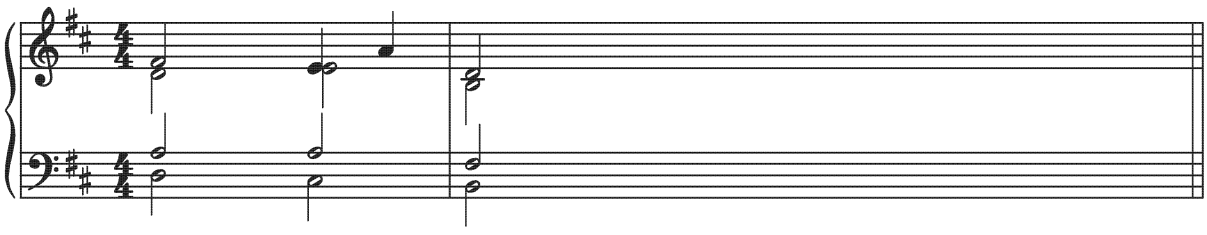
A.



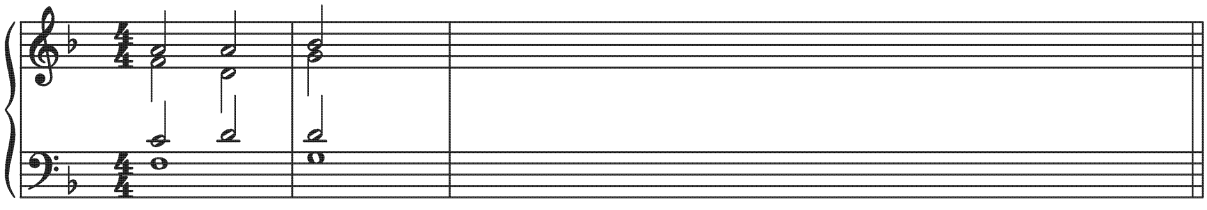
B.



C.



D.

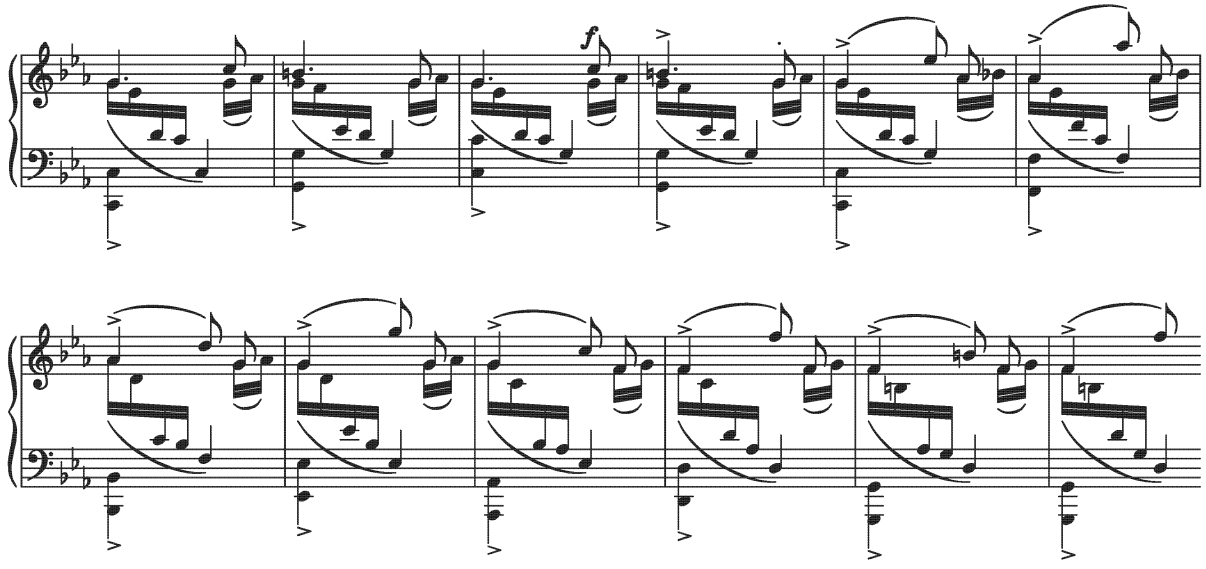


17.5 Analysis of Sequences with Seventh Chords

Analyze the following examples that contain D2 (–5/+4) sequences with seventh chords. Circle each chordal seventh and label its preparation and resolution.

A. Schumann, *Kreisleriana*, op. 16, no. 5

While this is not strictly a compound melody, it is possible to create a five-voice structure.



B. Haydn, String Quartet in C major, op. 20, no. 2, Hob III.32, Trio

C. Mozart, Symphony in G major, K. 124, *Allegro*

Dissonant suspensions in violin 2 are shown with parentheses.

WRITING

17.6

Each of the following exercises contains one of the sequences we have studied. Exercises A–D present figured basses. Study the figures and bass pattern; then label the sequence type, add a soprano, and fill in the inner voices. Exercises E–H present unfigured basses with a soprano. Study the sequential implications of the outer-voice counterpoint; then label the sequence and add inner voices.

A.

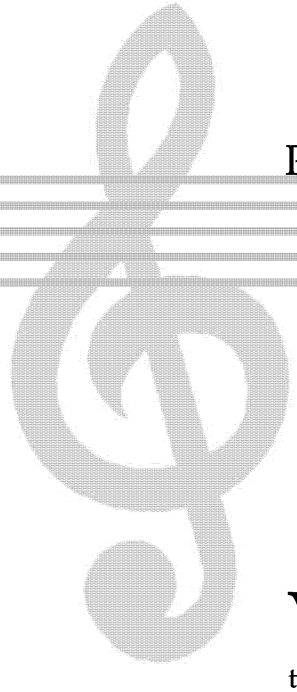
B.

C.

D.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- harmonic sequence
- ascending sequences
  - A2 (+5/−4 or −4/+5); ascending second (by ascending fifth and descending fourth or descending fourth and ascending fifth)
  - A2 (−3/+4); ascending second (by descending third and ascending fourth) and A2 (−3/+4) with $^{6}_{3}$s
- descending sequences
  - D2 (−5/+4 or +4/−5); descending second (by descending fifth and ascending fourth or ascending fourth and descending fifth) and D2 with $^{6}_{3}$s; also with alternating and interlocking sevenths
  - D3 (−4/+2); descending thirds (by descending fourth and ascending second) and D3 with $^{6}_{3}$s
- melodic sequence
- model and copy
- voice-leading chords (helping chords)



PART 5

FUNCTIONAL CHROMATICISM

We have studied two types of chromaticism. The first type involves unharmonized embellishing tones (such as chromatic passing tones), which animate the texture, provide color, and intensify motion to the following diatonic chord tone. The second type—harmonized chromaticism—creates a leading tone in the minor mode by raising $\hat{7}$ a half step to give V a dominant function.

Nearly all leading tones we have seen so far resolve to tonic. Now, however, we will expand our understanding of leading-tone chromaticism by examining how it can be transferred to chords other than V in a key. In doing so, we will learn how this chromaticism is a useful voice-leading tool and how it can participate in musical events at deeper levels of the structure. Despite the power of leading-tone chromaticism we'll see that it remains subordinate to the diatonic events in a piece.

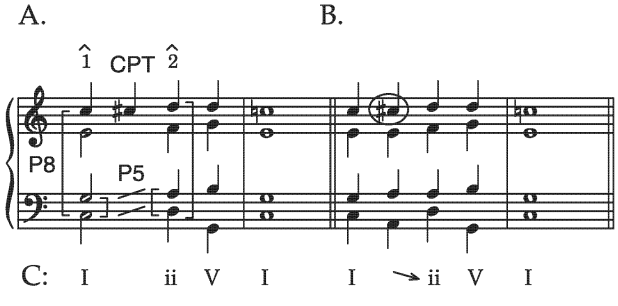
CHAPTER 18

Applied Chords

Chromaticism colors diatonicism; therefore, chromatic pitches are generally not integral to the underlying diatonic structure. Instead, chromatic pitches take the place of diatonic pitches in a process called **chromatic alteration**. Diatonic passing tones can be harmonized by diatonic chords. Similarly, chromatic passing tones can be harmonized by chromatic chords.

Compare the two excerpts in Example 18.1. Example 18.1A presents a chromatic passing tone (C♯) between the tonic and ii chords, invigorating the melodic motion between $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{2}$. In Example 18.1B, the chromatic passing tone is harmonized by an intermediate harmony, an A-major chord. The chromatic passing tone is of little help in avoiding the parallel octaves and fifths in Example 18.1A, but when C♯ is supported with its own chord (A major in Example 18.1B), all the parallels disappear and the harmonic motion to the ii chord is intensified.

EXAMPLE 18.1 Harmonic CPTs: Stabilization and Voice-Leading Corrective



A tonic chord is fairly neutral with respect to direction: It might progress to ii or V, extend to vi, act as a neighbor to V, or go nowhere. The A-major sonority in Example 18.1B, however, is strongly directed to ii; in fact, it functions as the dominant of D minor. Because the A-major chord functions as a dominant, it evokes the momentary impression that we are in the key of D minor. This sensation of briefly experiencing a key (e.g., for a few beats or even a measure or two) other than the tonic is **tonicization**, which is accomplished through the use of these **applied dominant chords** (also called **secondary dominant chords** or *applied* chords). The essential feature of tonicization is that it elaborates a

diatonic harmony with chromaticism. For example, the tonicization in the example expands the PD: The realm of ii lists two chords (A major and D minor) rather than just one, but it still participates in the underlying structural harmonic progression of T–PD–D–T.

Applied Dominant Chords

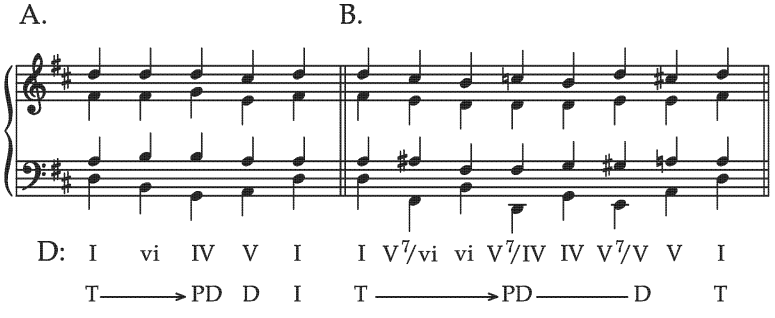
For a chord to function as an applied dominant, it must behave like a dominant. It must be a major triad (V) or a dominant seventh chord (V^7) and it will usually move to its tonic. Because dominant chords resolve to tonic chords that are either major or minor, any major or minor diatonic harmony can be preceded by an applied dominant chord.

Example: We are in C minor and would like to determine the applied dominant of V. V is a G-major chord, so we determine the applied dominant of G major to be D major. This is not in the original key, so we label the roman numeral as "applied dominant of V," or "V of V"—or simply "V/V." It is common for a key's dominant and pre-dominant to be preceded by their applied dominants. Just as common is the use of an applied dominant to III in minor—we have already seen this "V of III" chord in Chapter 14.

In Example 18.1B, the A-major triad is the applied dominant chord to ii in the key of C major. In this case, we label the A-major triad as the dominant of ii, or "V/ii."

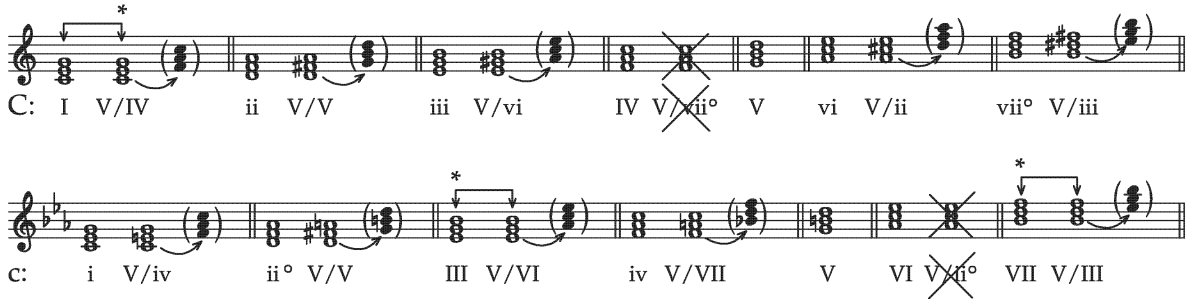
To summarize, there are two different methods for creating applied dominant chords. One way is to take any major or minor triad in a key and precede it with its applied dominant. In Example 18.2 the diatonic progression I–vi–IV–V–I is expanded with chromatic chords: V^7/vi precedes vi, V^7/IV precedes IV, and V^7/V precedes V.

EXAMPLE 18.2



The second method is to alter diatonic chords chromatically, changing them into applied dominants and seeing where they point as dominant chords. In Example 18.3, note that IV (in major) cannot be altered to create V/vii°, because vii° is dissonant (a diminished harmony) and the root of IV lies an augmented fourth (rather than a perfect fourth) below the root of vii°. Similarly, VI (in minor) cannot be altered to create V/ii° because ii° is dissonant and the root of VI lies an augmented fourth below the root of ii°. Example 18.3 shows the diatonic triads in both C major and C minor, their transformation into applied dominants (in parentheses), and to what diatonic triad they would lead.

EXAMPLE 18.3 Generating Applied Dominants



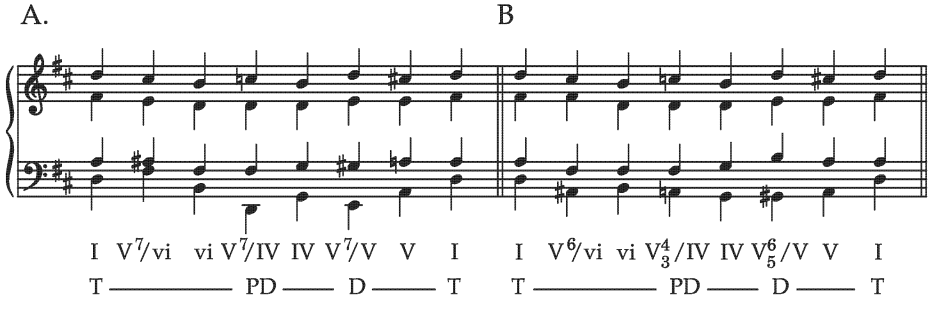
Notice that some diatonic chords are already major triads and therefore can be used as applied dominant chords (see the bracketed arrows): In major keys, V/IV is diatonic; in minor keys, V/VI and V/III are diatonic. In order to clarify their applied function, these chords typically appear as V^7 chords, adding the minor seventh above the root. For example, V/IV–IV in major will most likely be heard simply as tonic moving to IV rather than as IV's applied dominant. Adding the seventh transforms the diatonic harmony into an applied chord. Asterisks in Example 18.3 indicate applied chords that require the added seventh. Because of their strong connection, applied dominant chords and their tonics occur under the same function in second-level analysis. For example:

I	V/ii	ii	V/V	V	I
T	PD		D		T

Applied Chords in Inversion

The bass line in Example 18.4 is rather angular, so we use inversions to make it more melodic. Compare Example 18.4A to Example 18.4B, and notice that the latter sounds more polished.

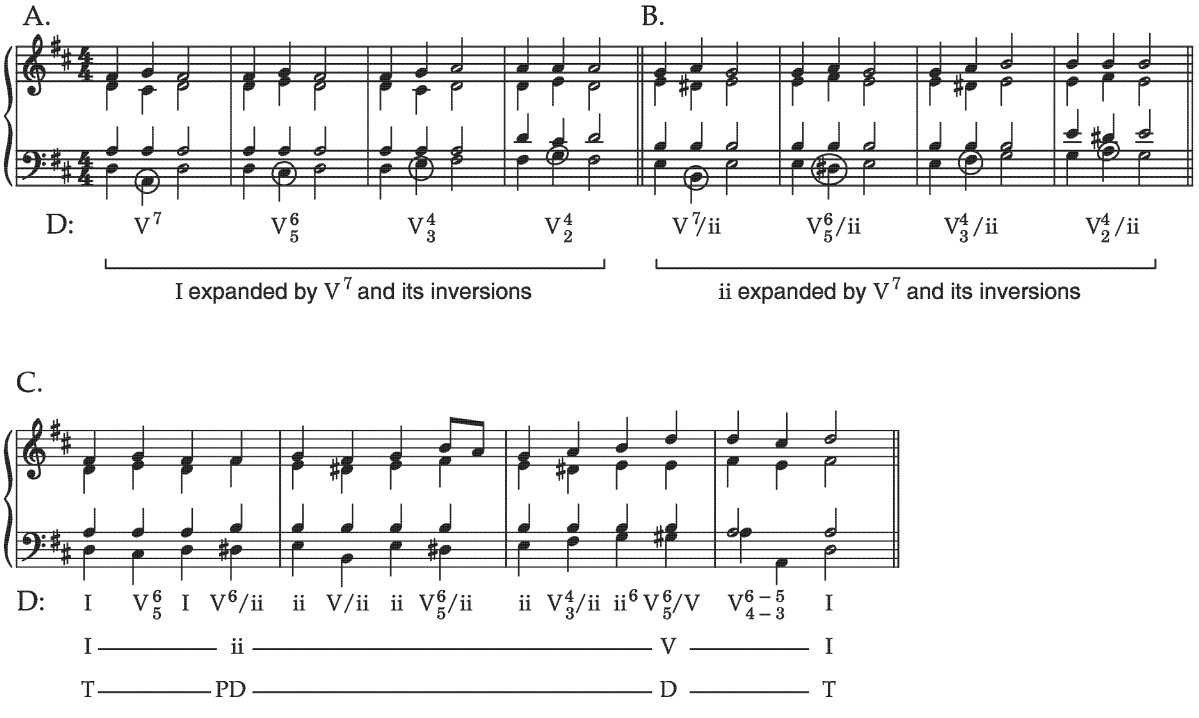
EXAMPLE 18.4 Root Position Versus Inverted Applied Chords



In the same way that inversions of V prolong I (e.g., V^6 usually expands I as a lower-neighbor chord), any other major or minor harmony in a key

can be prolonged by its applied dominant chord. Example 18.5A reviews how tonic may be prolonged by any inversion of V^7. In Example 18.5B the supertonic is prolonged by its V^7 chord in precisely the same way. The only difference is the chromaticism: D must be altered to D♯ in order to function as the leading tone to the key of ii (E minor). However, no matter how extensive the expansion of a nontonic harmony, that harmony will ultimately figure into the tonal motion of the phrase model. For example, in Example 18.5C, ii is considerably expanded, but it still functions in the capacity of the phrase's pre-dominant.

EXAMPLE 18.5 Expanding the Pre-dominant



Tonicized Half Cadences

Applied chords intensify the drive to cadences, especially to half cadences, which close the first phrase of an interrupted period. Such **tonicized half cadences** help to stabilize the arrival on the dominant. The last movement of Beethoven's E♭ major Piano Trio opens with a PIP whose first phrase closes with a HC that includes V^6_5 of V, which helps to secure the arrival on V. The following phrase, which closes the period, contains another applied chord that initiates the drive to the authentic cadence by the falling-fifth motion: vi–ii–V–I (see Example 18.6).

EXAMPLE 18.6 Beethoven, Piano Trio in E♭ major, op. 1, Finale

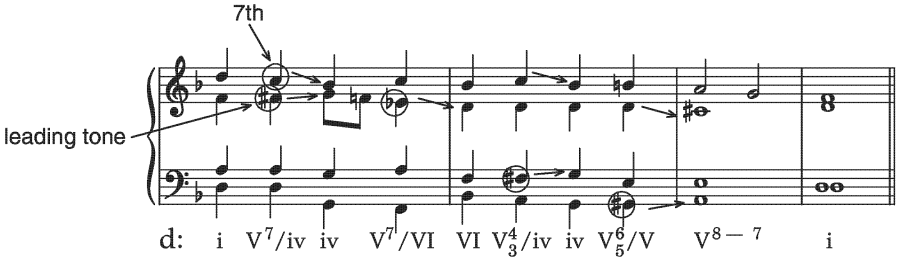
A.

Recognizing Applied Chords

Recognizing applied chords is not difficult: Aurally they have a distinctive dominant sound, and visually they have a distinctive notation. A chromatically raised note is often the third of an applied dominant chord (which is the leading tone for its key), and a chromatically lowered note is often the seventh of the applied dominant chord.

In Example 18.7, the first chromatic pitch is F♯, and as a *raised* pitch it signals its function as a temporary leading tone to G (and, of course, G is iv in D minor, which helps you analyze the chord as a V/iv). Similarly, the E♭ (diatonic E's *lowered* form; m. 1, beat 4) implies that it will function as the seventh of an F dominant seventh chord, as V^7/VI.

EXAMPLE 18.7 Detecting Applied Chords



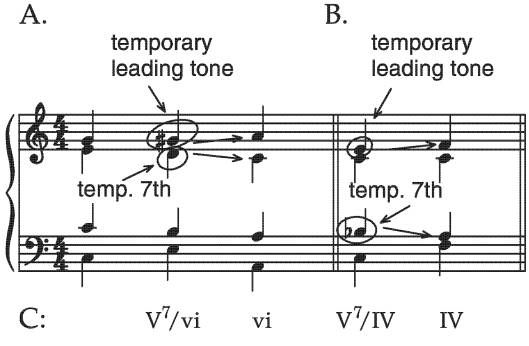
Voice Leading for Applied Chords

Two chromatic alterations are common in applied chords, both of which are tendency tones. One is the third of the chord, which is often chromatically *raised* and acts as a *temporary leading tone*. The other is the *seventh of the chord*, which often needs to be chromatically *lowered* in applied dominant chords. The voice-leading rules for the V^7 chord pertain to applied dominant chords as well.

- Do not double the third (the leading tone) or the seventh of the chord.
- The leading tone must resolve upward when in an outer voice.
- The seventh of the chord resolves downward in any voice.

Example 18.8 shows the proper voice leading for applied dominant chords to vi and IV in C major. Note that root-position applied dominant chords can be complete (V^7/vi in Example 18.7A) or incomplete (V^7/IV in Example 18.8B).

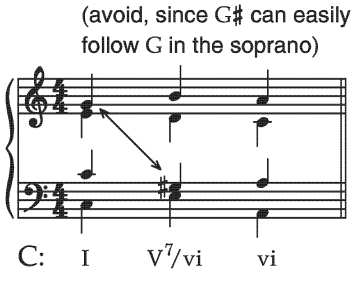
EXAMPLE 18.8 Part Writing Applied Chords



Look again at the soprano line of Example 18.8A. The leading tone (G♯) is a chromatic passing tone between G and A, which creates a smooth chromatic line: G–G♯–A. You **prepare chromaticism** by preceding a chromatic tone with its diatonic version in the same voice, in this case resulting in a chromatic half-step line, because it softens the harsh aural effect of the chromatic tone.

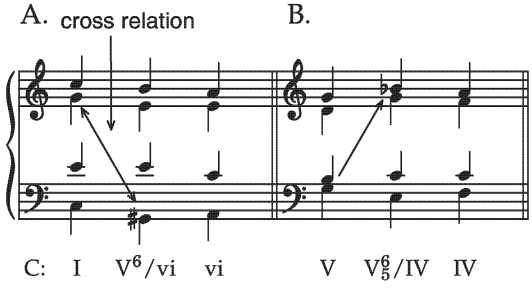
When a chromatic tone is prepared by another voice (instead of the same voice), it results in a **cross relation**. In Example 18.9, the chromatic G♯ is not prepared in the tenor; the diatonic G occurs in the soprano voice. This cross relation should be avoided since it produces a harsh aural effect due to the awkward leaps in the soprano and tenor.

EXAMPLE 18.9 Cross Relation



Despite the desirability of chromatic preparation, in many instances it is often impossible for chromatic pitches to follow their diatonic forms in the same voice. Example 18.10A shows one such scenario. In a progression from I to V^6/vi in C major, the bass leaps down from C to G♯, which resolves as it should, to A. This leap of a diminished fourth in the bass is acceptable and quite expressive; in Baroque music with text, this leap often accompanies words of great sorrow or pain. Clearly, the alto G cannot move to G♯ when the bass sounds that pitch (since G♯ is a leading tone in the applied V^6/vi chord. A similar scenario occurs with a leap to the seventh of an applied dominant chord in the soprano (Example 18.10B). If you must write a cross relation, avoid writing the notes between the aurally prominent bass and soprano; instead, place the cross relation between inner voices or between one outer voice and an inner voice.

EXAMPLE 18.10 Legal Cross Relations



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
18.1–18.3

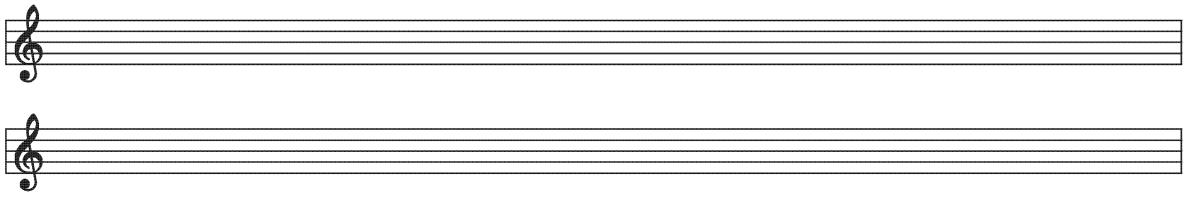
WRITING

18.1 Spelling Applied Dominant Chords

A. Notate the following applied dominant triads and seventh chords in close position on the treble clef staff. Use key signatures.

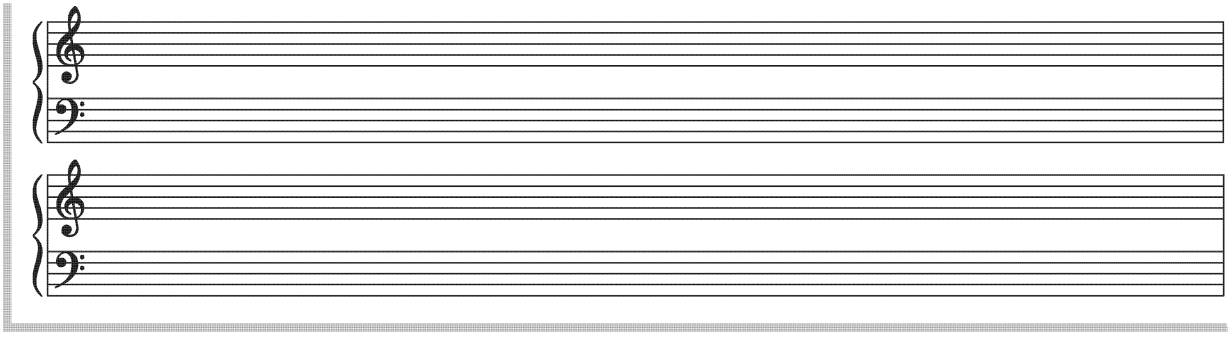
SOLVED/APP 6

1. In G major: V^7/IV V^7/vi V^7/V
2. In D minor: V^7/iv V^6_5/III V^7/VI
3. In B minor: V^7/V V^6/VI V^4_3/iv
4. In E♭ major: V^6/iii V^7/vi V^6_5/ii



B. Notate the following applied chords in four-part keyboard style. Use key signatures. Remember not to double temporary leading tones or chordal sevenths.

1. In F major: V^7/V V^6_5/IV V^6/ii V^7/iii
2. In G minor: V^7/VI V^6_5/III V^4_2/V V^6_5/iv
3. In E minor: V^6/III V^4_3/V V^7/VI V^6_5/iv

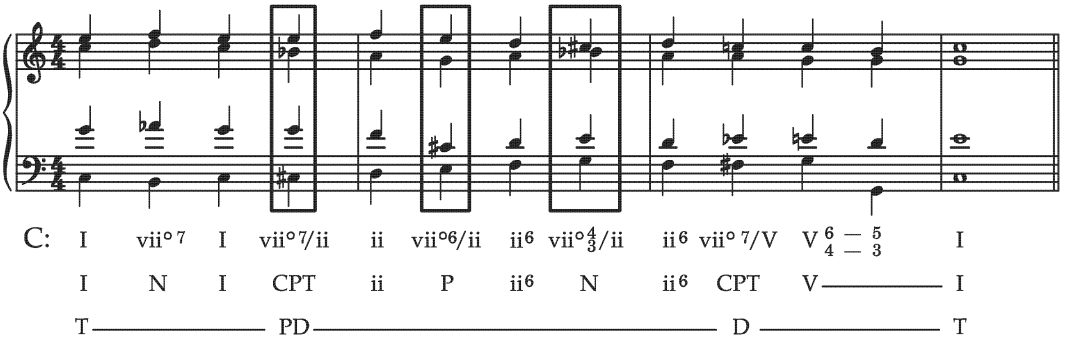


Applied Leading-Tone Chords

Dominant substitutes—vii°^{6}, vii°^{7}, and to a lesser degree vii^{ø7}—can participate in contrapuntal expansions of the tonic. Often, these harmonies are also used as applied dominant substitutes that lead to other scale degrees, or applied leading-tone chords. We have been using only those diminshed seventh chords that are built on $\hat{7}$ *of the minor mode*. With the introduction of applied leading-tone chords, *we now may use vii°^{7}and its inversions to tonicize major and minor triads.*

Listen to Example 18.11, in which the applied chords in mm. 1–2 help tonicize ii of C major. Because of the varied types and inversion of applied chords—vii°^{7}/ii, vii°^{6}/ii and vii°$^4_3$/ii—the supertonic can be tonicized for some time (nearly half of the example's four measures). Note that the larger function of ii as a pre-dominant remains unchanged. The tonicized area functions as a way station that helps to connect tonic and dominant.

EXAMPLE 18.11 Applied vii° and vii°^{7}

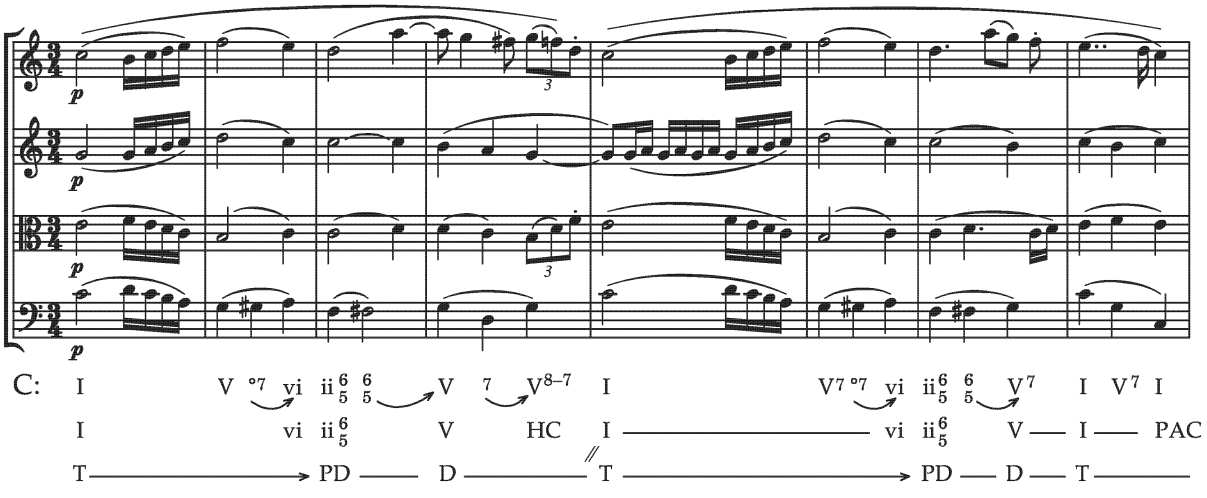


Incorporating Applied Chords Within Phrases

There are no new rules to learn when writing applied chords in phrases; however, you must consider metric and rhythmic placement in order to create a balanced and pleasing structure. Listen to Example 18.12, and determine its phrase structure and the metrical placement of the applied chords. Beethoven has created a parallel interrupted period, and every applied chord appears on a metrically weak beat. *Weak metrical placement of applied chords is common because they contain leading tones that precipitate motion toward a metrically stressed goal.* Beethoven uses three applied chords in the first phrase; the first, a vii°^{7} chord, is applied to vi; the second, V/V, appears

twice, the first time to lead to V and the second time to tonicize the half cadence. In the second phrase only a single V/V appears, because the dominant is not the goal of motion as it was in m. 4 of the first phrase. Rather, the tonic occupies the entire last measure, using the dominant to intensify the PAC.

EXAMPLE 18.12 Beethoven, String Quartet no. 9 in C major, op. 59, no. 3, Menuetto: *Grazioso*



Analytical Shorthand

A new notational symbol appears in Example 18.12, the curved arrow (⌣), which represents that the chord preceding the arrow is an applied dominant or dominant substitute that leads to the chord to which the arrow points. This shorthand label is often quite useful, as in this excerpt with such fast harmonic rhythm and so many chords in so few beats. However, sometimes applied dominants (like the actual $V^{(7)}$ chord) resolve deceptively to what would be vi in the temporary key. In such cases, you must supply the complete roman numeral for the applied chord, because the arrow alone will not indicate a deceptive motion. Further, you may also use the following analytical shorthand for both applied dominants (and dominant sevenths) and applied diminished seventh chords: For dominants, use only their figured bass symbols (e.g., $\frac{6}{3}$, ^{7}, $\frac{4}{3}$); for diminished sevenths, add the accompanying diminished sign (e.g., $^{\circ 7}$, $^{\circ 6}_{5}$). You can also use the complete roman numeral followed by the arrow (e.g., V^{7}⌣).

An Example Composition

Let's write a contrasting continuous period, in $\frac{4}{4}$ meter and G minor, incorporating several applied chords. First plan the big picture by mapping out the overall structure. Then construct a single large-scale harmonic progression by closing the first phrase with a deceptive motion, moving to a PD to begin the second phrase, and closing on tonic. The following diagram presents a possible harmonic rhythm of this plan:

	Phrase 1			(DC)	Phrase 2			PAC
mm:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
G minor:	i————		V——	VI	iv————		ii°—V—	i
	T ——————————→				PD————			D–T

Measures 2 and 6 provide opportunities to insert embellishing harmonies. First, try to connect the i of m. 1 with the V of m. 3, using the bass arpeggiation i–VI–PD. But because the phrase closes on VI, an early appearance of VI might make m. 4 sound anticlimactic. Another option to link i and V is to use the following progression:

	Phrase 1			
mm:	1	2	3	4
	i———	III——	PD—	V—VI

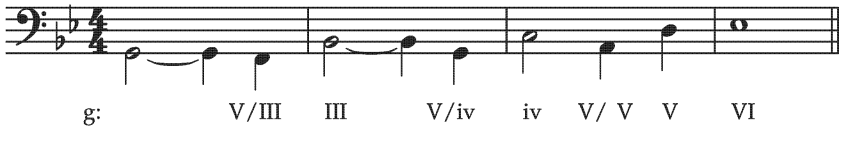
Although this looks like a workable harmonic plan, it still might sound a bit bare and simplistic. At this point, adding some contrapuntal and applied chords will help to establish the tonic in m. 1 and to intensify the overall progression.

Phrase One

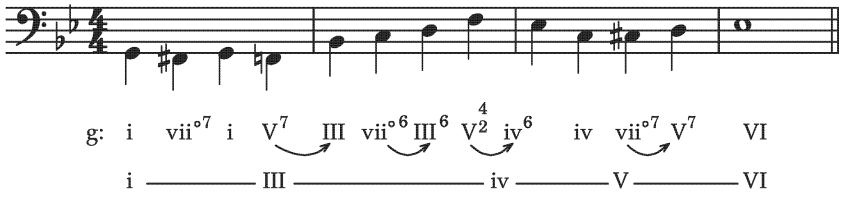
From this point on, envision your harmonic choices with the help of a bass line. First, arrange it so that every chord in the progression is preceded by an applied chord. (Remember that you can precede any consonant [major and minor] harmony with an applied chord, so only ii° may not be expanded by an applied chord.) In placing your applied chords, aim for weak beats so that the chord can resolve to structural chords on stronger beats, as in Example 18.13A. Don't rely exclusively on root-position applied dominant chords, nor should you restrict yourself solely to triads.

EXAMPLE 18.13 Generating a Bass Line

A.



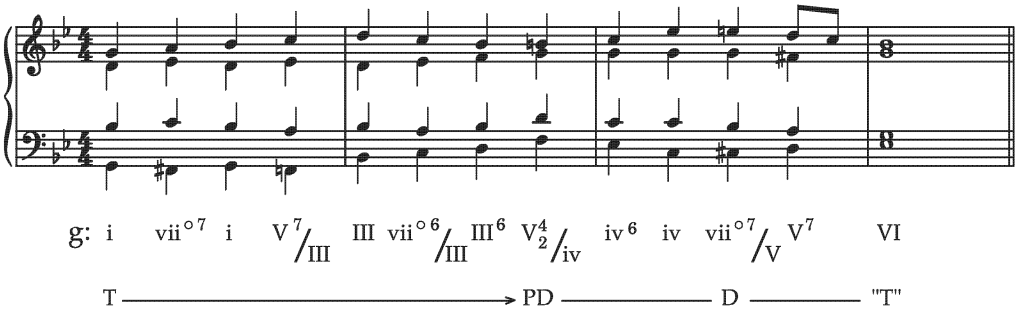
B.



For variety, our taste demands a mix of applied chords as well as a smooth bass contour, as in Example 18.13B. A neighboring diminished seventh chord helps to establish the tonic in m. 1. In addition, the bass of the chord contrasts with the following F, the root of a V^7/III chord. III is prolonged with an applied dominant substitute that acts as a passing chord. Rather than moving

directly to the PD at the end of m. 2, the bass skips up to F, creating a V^4_2/iv chord. The subdominant is then expanded with a simple chordal leap, and vii°7/V nicely fills the space between iv and V with a chromatic passing tone (C♯) in the bass. Now we will add a soprano melody and inner voices (Example 18.14).

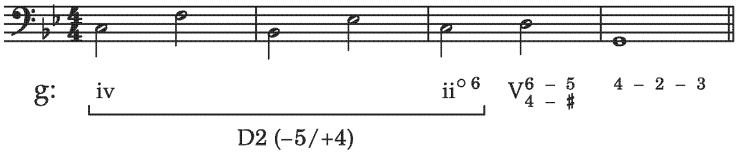
EXAMPLE 18.14 Harmonizing a Bass Line



Phrase Two

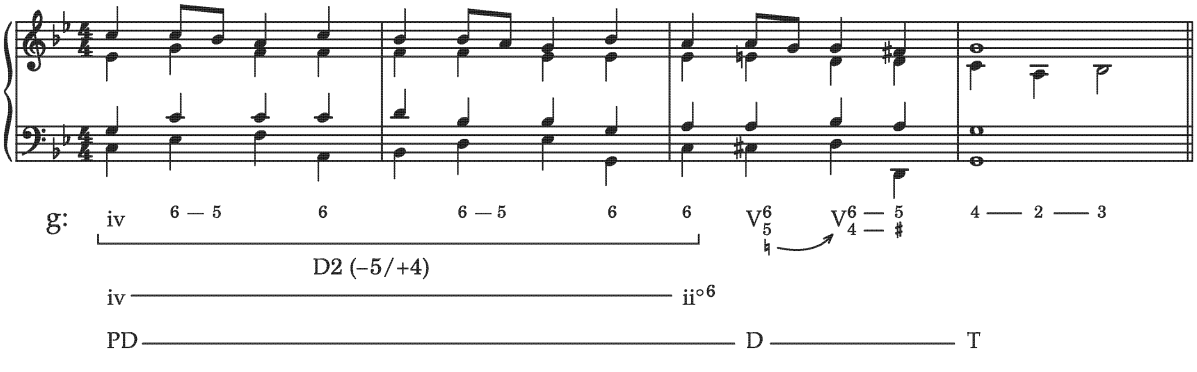
We can insert a sequence into the second phrase, because there is at least one measure—perhaps even two—to work with. A D2 (−5/+4) sequence starting on iv would lead to ii° in four chords (Example 18.15). However, the sequence unfolds in an unremarkable and rather clunky manner, moving in heavy half notes, with ponderous leaps.

EXAMPLE 18.15 Generating a Bass Line (Phrase 2)



We can enrich the harmonic color and smooth the linear motion of the sequence by using first-inversion chords, and by adding an applied dominant chord leading to V in m. 3 (Example 18.16).

EXAMPLE 18.16 Harmonizing a Bass Line (Phrase 2)



Finally, the seam between the two phrases—an entire motionless measure of VI—does not fit well in what is otherwise a robust harmonic progression. You can use an applied chord to integrate the two phrases: V^4_3/iv begins the second phrase and glues the disparate sections to form a continuous period, or, as interpreted, a single large phrase (Example 18.17). Since the chord-to-chord analysis has already been shown in previous versions of this example, only the underlying diatonic harmonic progression is shown in Example 18.17.

EXAMPLE 18.17 Completed Composition

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

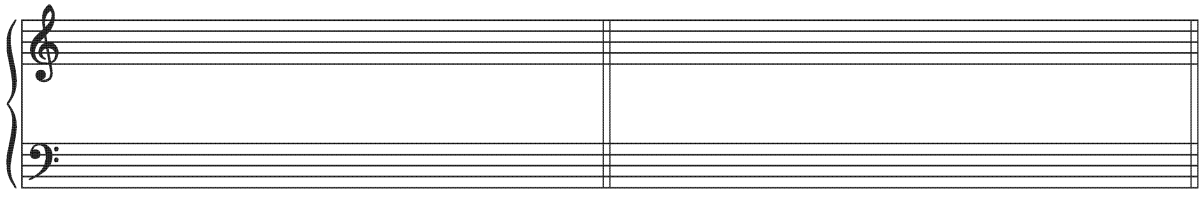
WORKBOOK 1
18.4

18.2

Write any two of the following applied-chord progressions in four-voice keyboard style. Choose any meter, but remember that applied chords are embellishing and often appear in weak metrical contexts.

A. F major: I–V^7/IV–IV–V^7/ii–ii–V
B. E minor: i–V^4_3/VI–VI–V^6_5/iv–iv
C. D major: V–V^6_5/vi–vi–ii^6–V^6_5/V–V
D. C minor: i–V^6_5/III–III–iv^6–V

SOLVED/APP 6



SOLVED/APP 6

18.3 Recognizing Applied Chords

Each of the following excerpts contains at least one applied chord. Based on the key listed for each example, analyze each of the chords using roman numerals.

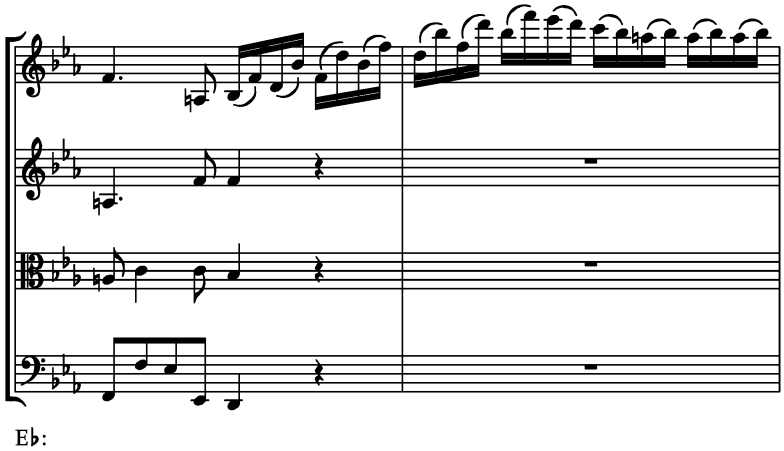
A. Haydn, String Quartet in F minor, op. 55, no. 2, Hob III.61

A:

B. Haydn, String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 64, no. 3, Hob III.67

B♭:

C. Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major (Finale), op. 20, no.1, Hob III.31



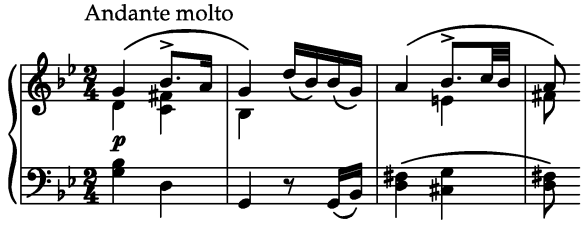
E♭:

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major (Finale), op. 20, no.1, Hob III.31

SOLVED/APP 6

E. Schubert, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 122, D. 568



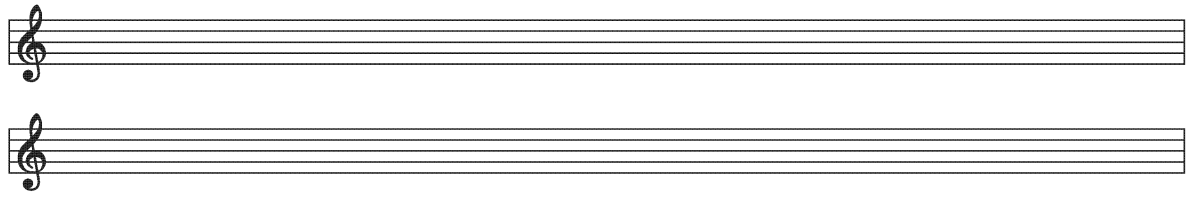
F. Haydn, String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 50, no. 1, Hob III.44

WRITING

18.4 Spelling and Writing Applied Dominant Substitute Chords (vii°6 and vii°7)

A. Spell the following applied dominant substitute chords (vii°6 and vii°7) in close position on the treble clef staff. Use key signatures.

1. In D major:	vii°7/IV	vii°6/vi	vii°$^{4}_{3}$/V
2. In E minor:	vii°7/iv	vii°$^{6}_{5}$/III	vii°6/VI
3. In B minor:	vii°$^{6}_{5}$/V	vii°7/VI	vii°6/iv
SOLVED/APP 6 4. In E♭ major:	V6/iii	vii°7/vi	vii°$^{4}_{3}$/ii



B. Write the following applied dominant substitute chords in four-part chorale style. Use key signatures. Remember not to double temporary leading tones or chordal sevenths. Write the resolutions of the applied chords.

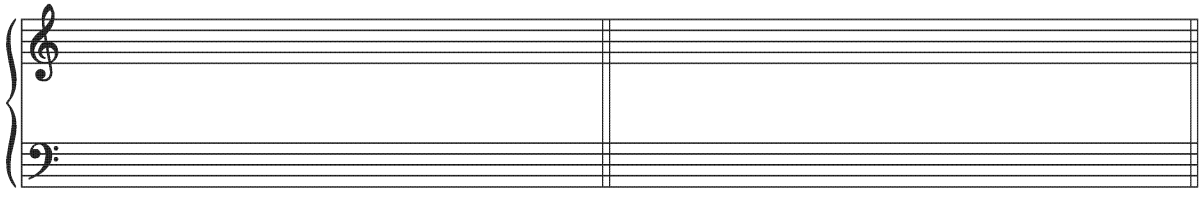
SOLVED/APP 6 1. In B♭ major:	(a) vii°7/V	(b) vii°$^{4}_{3}$/IV	(c) vii°6/ii	(d) vii°7/iii
2. In G minor:	(e) vii°7/VI	(f) vii°$^{6}_{5}$/III	(g) vii°7/V	(h) vii°$^{6}_{5}$/iv

18.5

Write the following progressions in four-voice keyboard style. Choose any meter, but remember that all applied chords are embellishing and often appear in weak metrical contexts.

A. D major: I–I6-vii°7/IV–IV–vii°7/ii–ii–V

SOLVED/APP 6 B. A minor: i–vii°$^{6}_{5}$/III–III–iv6–V—vii°7/V–V



Sequences with Applied Chords

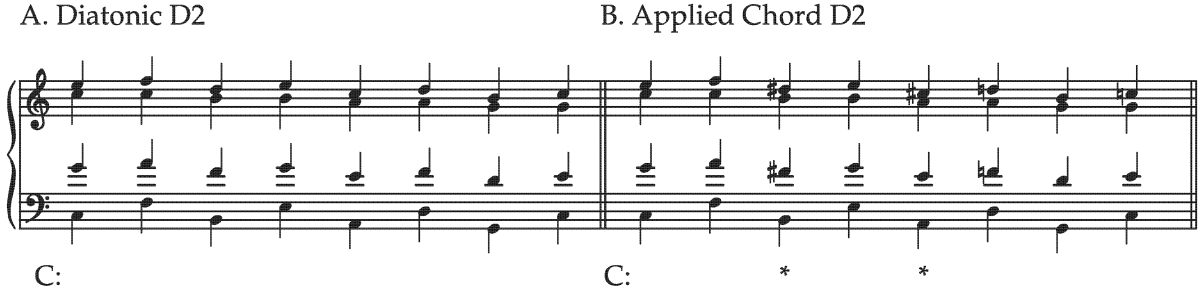
Listen to the sequence in Example 18.18. Analysis of the chord roots (C–F, D–G, E–A) reveals that it is an ascending sequence. But it is different from the rising sequences we have studied: It contains applied-chord chromaticism. Removing the chromaticism would leave a form of A2 sequence, here unfolding as (+4/–3). In the chromatic sequence, applied $^{6}_{5}$ chords alternate with diatonic triads. When applied chords are added to diatonic sequences, they create **applied-chord sequences**, which significantly intensify sequential motion.

EXAMPLE 18.18 Leclair, Sonata in C major for Flute and Continuo, op. 1, no. 2, *Corrente*

The D2 (−5/+4) Sequence

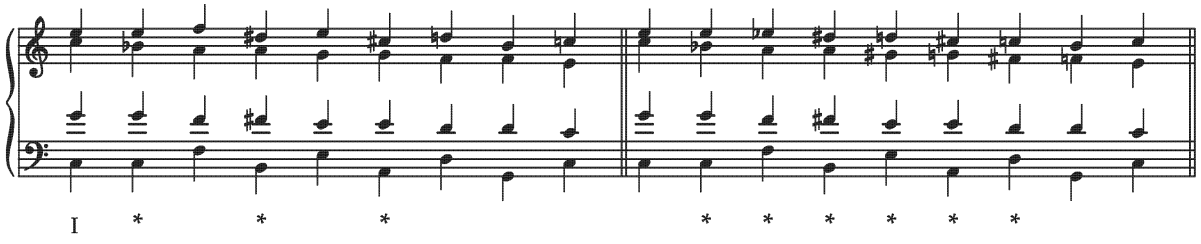
Review the diatonic form of the D2 (−5/+4) sequence in Example 18.19A, then note that a chromatic version of it appears when applied chords substitute for diatonic chords. The result is the sequence seen in Example 18.19B.

EXAMPLE 18.19 Diatonic Versus Applied D2 Sequences

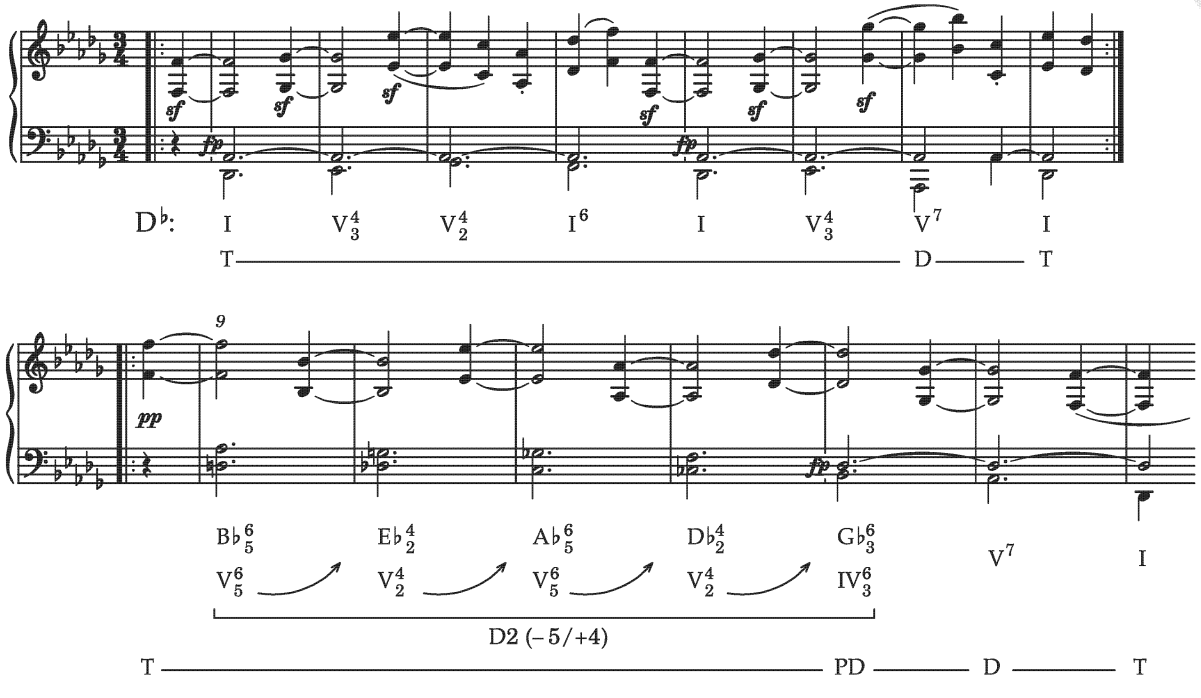


It is particularly common to add sevenths to the triads of the D2 (–5/+4) applied-chord sequence, thereby enhancing the sequence's goal-directed motion. These seventh chords may be alternating (Example 18.20A) or interlocking (Example 18.20B). Notice the presence of parallel tritones in the upper voices of 18.20B and in mm. 9–12 in the left hand of Beethoven's "Moonlight" Sonata (Example 18.21).

EXAMPLE 18.20 Applied V^7 in D2 Sequences



EXAMPLE 18.21 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C♯ minor, "Moonlight," op. 27, no. 1, Trio

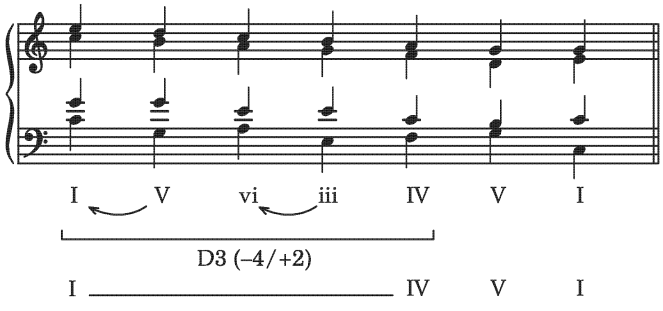


The D3 (−4/+2) Sequence

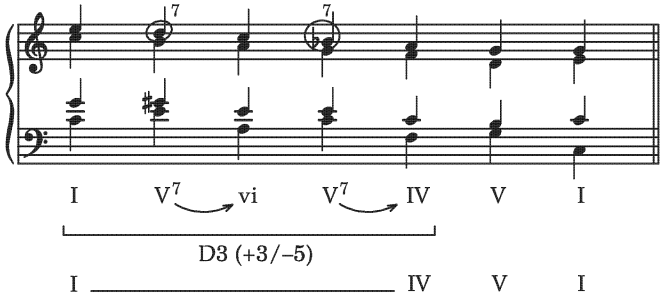
In the diatonic D3 (−4/+2) sequence, the second chord of each pair lies a fourth below the first, creating a back-relating dominant (Example 18.22A). A dramatic forward motion occurs in the applied-chord form of this sequence, seen in Example 18.22. Because each applied chord creates a temporary leading tone that leads to its own following tonic, the second chord of each copy functions as a dominant of the following—and not the previous—chord. Consequently, the chords have different roots from their counterparts in the diatonic sequence. The diatonic D3 (−4/+2) is transformed into the D3 (+3/−5) applied-chord sequence. Applied chords in this sequence most often contain sevenths, as shown in Example 18.22B.

EXAMPLE 18.22 Diatonic Versus Applied D3 Sequences

A. D3 (diatonic)

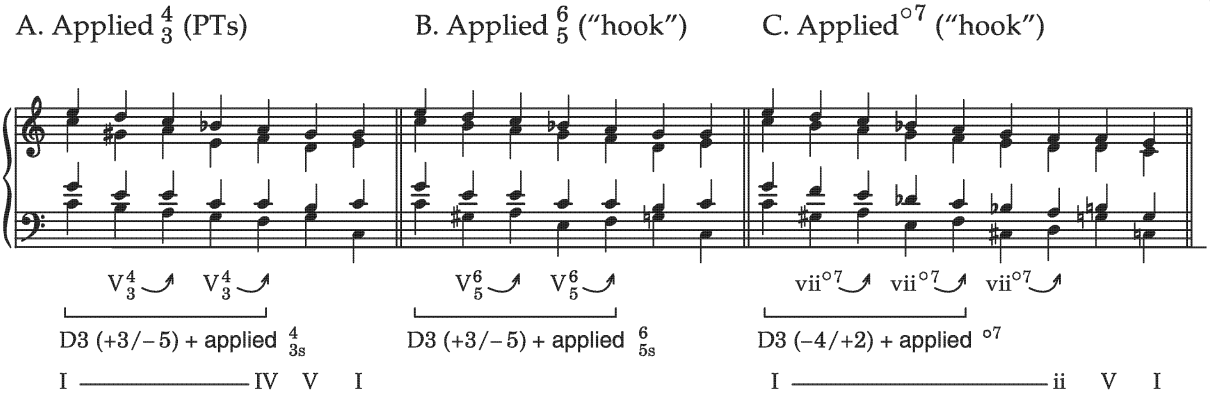


B. D3 (with applied chords)



Inverted chords help to smooth out the angular leaps created by root-position harmonies. Example 18.23 displays voice-leading variations on the D3 (+3/−5) applied-chord sequence. The form of the sequence in Example 18.23A is the most common, because the four-three inversion consistently provides a stepwise descent in the bass (which moves in parallel tenths with the soprano). Note the bass's hooking contour in Example 18.23B: The dissonant leap to the applied chord's leading tone is balanced by stepwise resolution in the opposite direction. Example 18.23C demonstrates that an applied root-position diminished seventh chord may also be substituted for the applied dominant chords in Example 18.23B, creating a D3 (−4/+2) sequence.

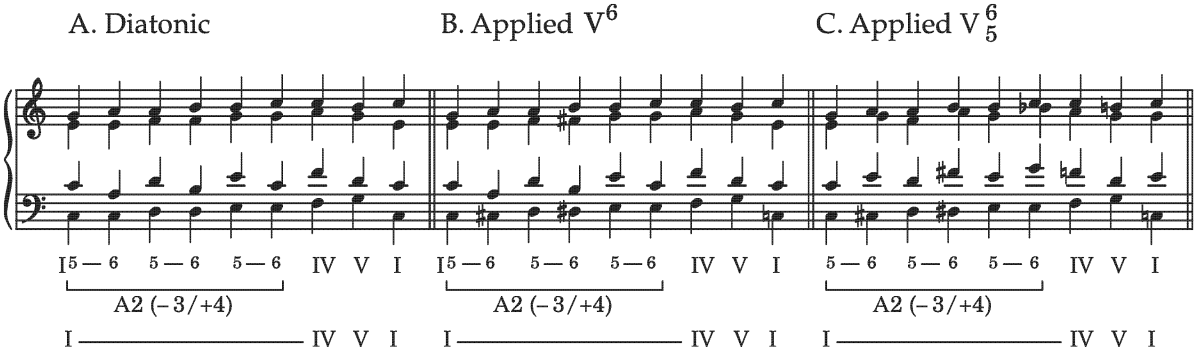
EXAMPLE 18.23 Applied V^7 and $vii^{\circ 7}$ in D3 Sequences



The A2 (−3/+4) Applied-Chord Sequence

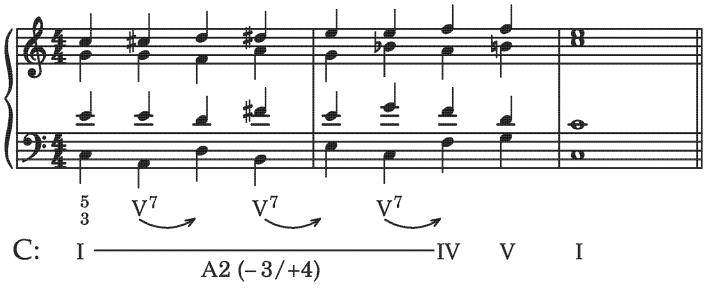
Of the two common sequences that ascend, A2 (−3/+4) is much more likely to incorporate applied chords. The form of the sequence that includes first-inversion triads—the *ascending* 5–6 sequence (Example 18.24A)—may be converted into an applied-chord sequence simply by raising the bass a half step. This creates a powerful harmonized chromatic passing tone that functions as a $\hat{7}$, which leads to the upcoming root-position triad (Example 18.24B). Example 18.24C adds the seventh to the applied chords.

EXAMPLE 18.24 Applied A2 Sequences: First Inversion



This sequence also employs root-position applied chords. In this case, the chromatic passing motion appears in the soprano rather than in the bass (Example 18.25).

EXAMPLE 18.25 Applied A2 Sequence: Root Position



Writing Applied-Chord Sequences

When writing applied-chord sequences, simply remember the following:

1. Construct the two-chord model carefully so that the voice leading between the two chords and the first chord of the copy is correct.
2. Copies must follow the voice leading of the model.
3. The *root* of each chord to which an applied chord leads must be diatonic to the key.
4. Write complete seventh chords, especially when they appear in inversion. The only exception occurs in D2 (−5/+4) sequences with interlocking sevenths (Example 18.20B).

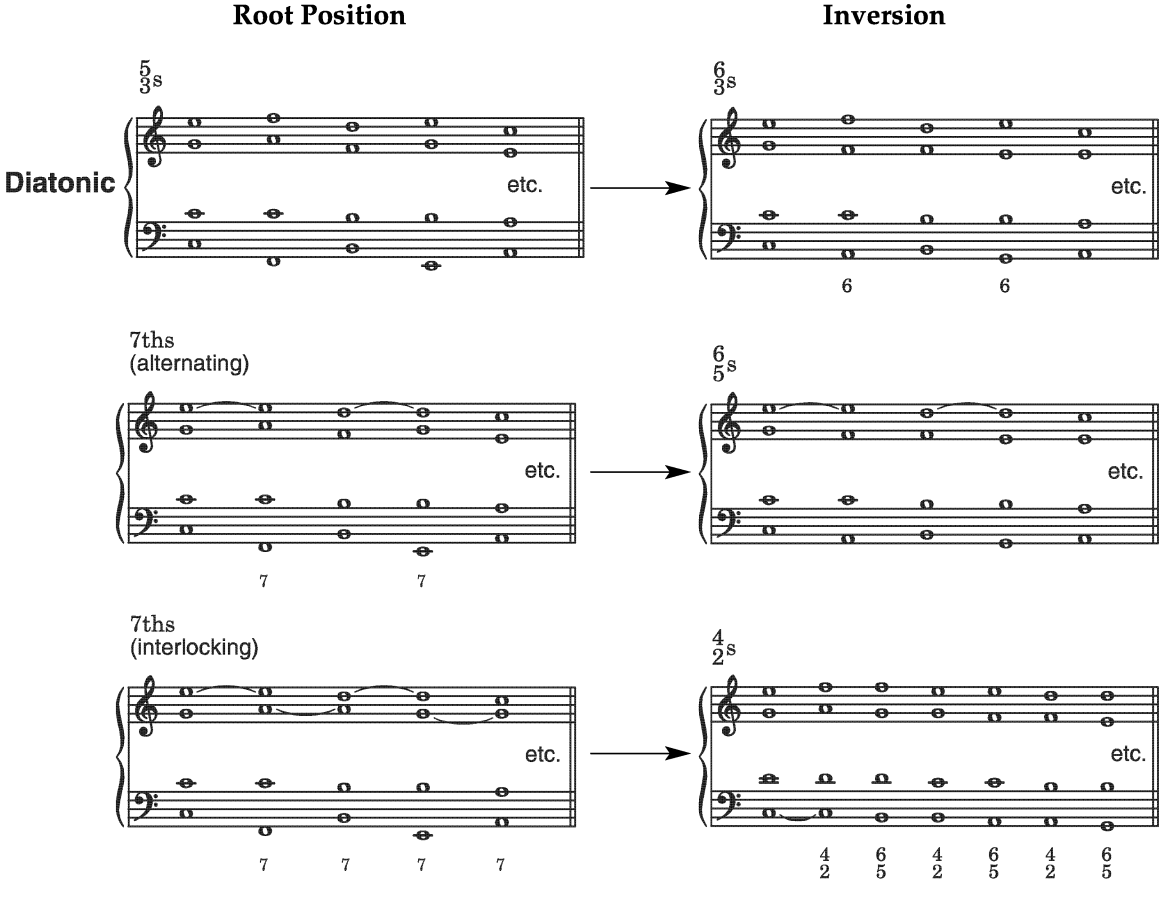
Summary of Diatonic and Applied-Chord Sequences

An example of each of the sequence types we have studied appears next. The examples are organized by the four generic types of sequences: descending by second and by third, and two forms of ascending by second. The modifications within each of the four types are organized as follows:

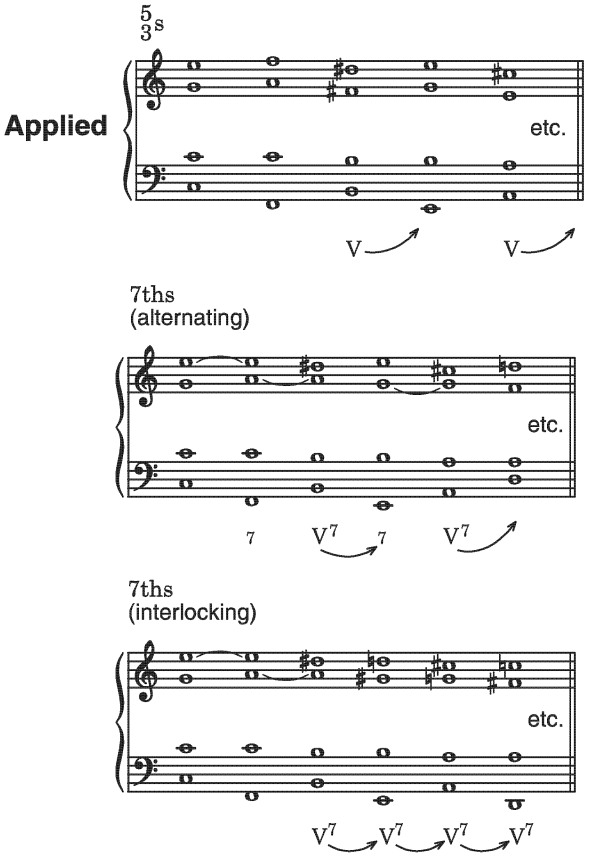
Diatonic: triads ($\frac{5}{3}$, $\frac{6}{3}$), seventh chords [root, inversion(s)]

Applied: triads ($\frac{5}{3}$, $\frac{6}{3}$), seventh chords [root, inversion(s)]

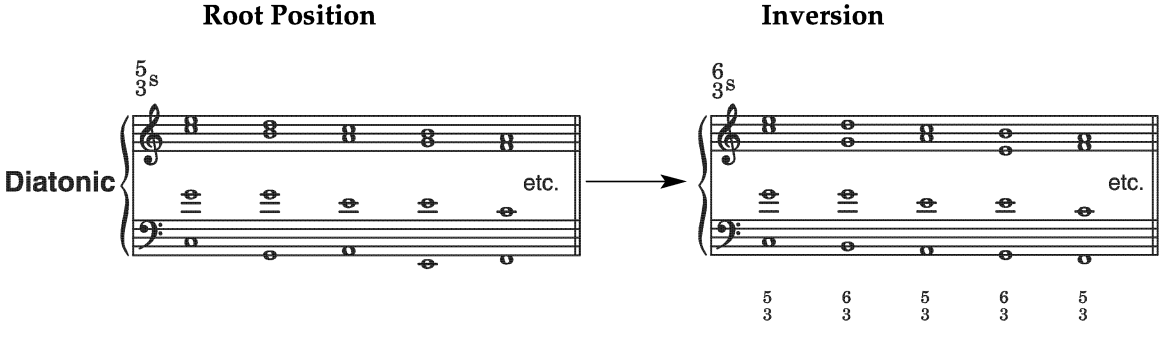
Descending 2 (−5/+4)



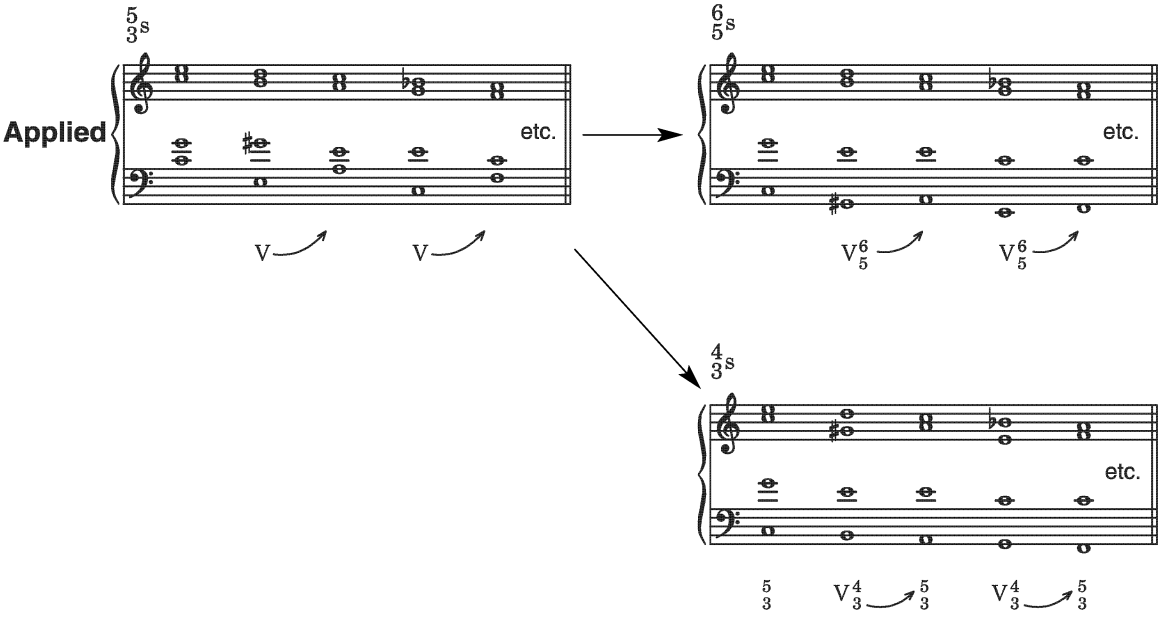
Descending 2 (−5/+4) *(continued)*



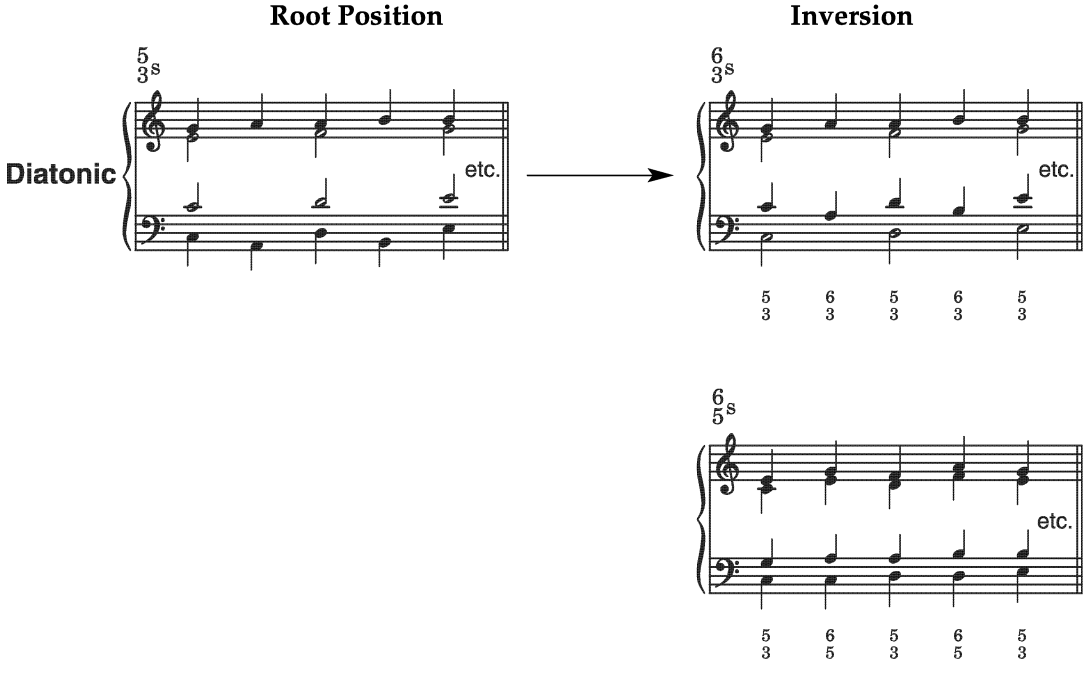
Descending 3 (−4/+2)

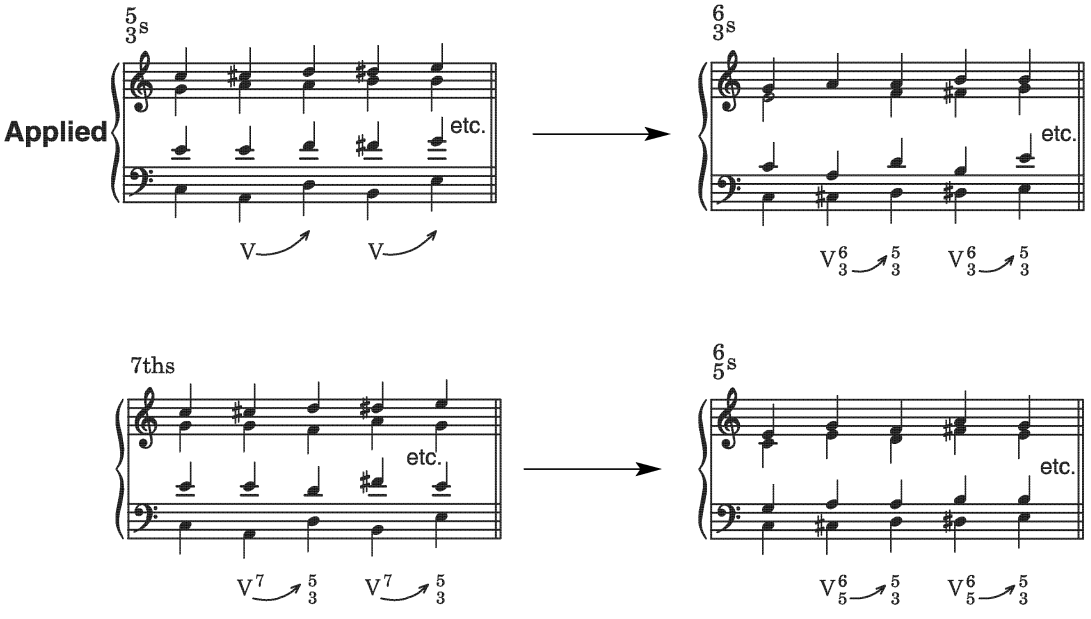


Descending 3 (+3/−5)



Ascending 2 (–3/+4)





Ascending 2 (+5/–4)

WORKBOOK 1
18.5–18.7

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- applied-chord sequences
  - D2 (−5/+4); A2 (+5/−4); D3 (+3/−5); A2 (−3/+4)
- applied dominant chord
- chromatic alteration
- cross relation
- temporary tonic
- tonicization
- voice leading of applied chords

CHAPTER 19

Tonicization and Modulation

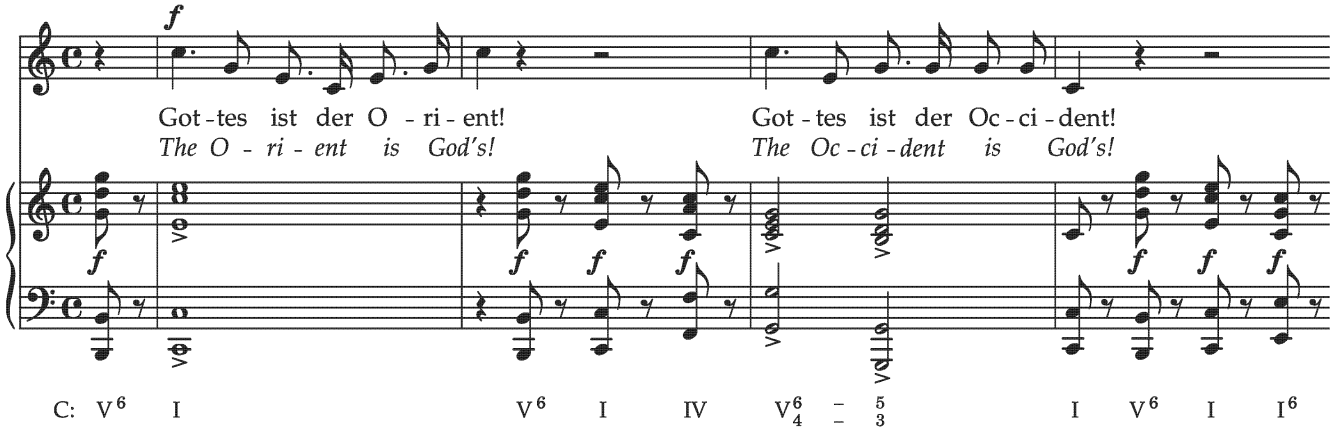
In Chapter 18 we learned about applied dominant chords that led toward chords other than the tonic through tonicization. We will now explore **extended tonicizations** and **modulations**.

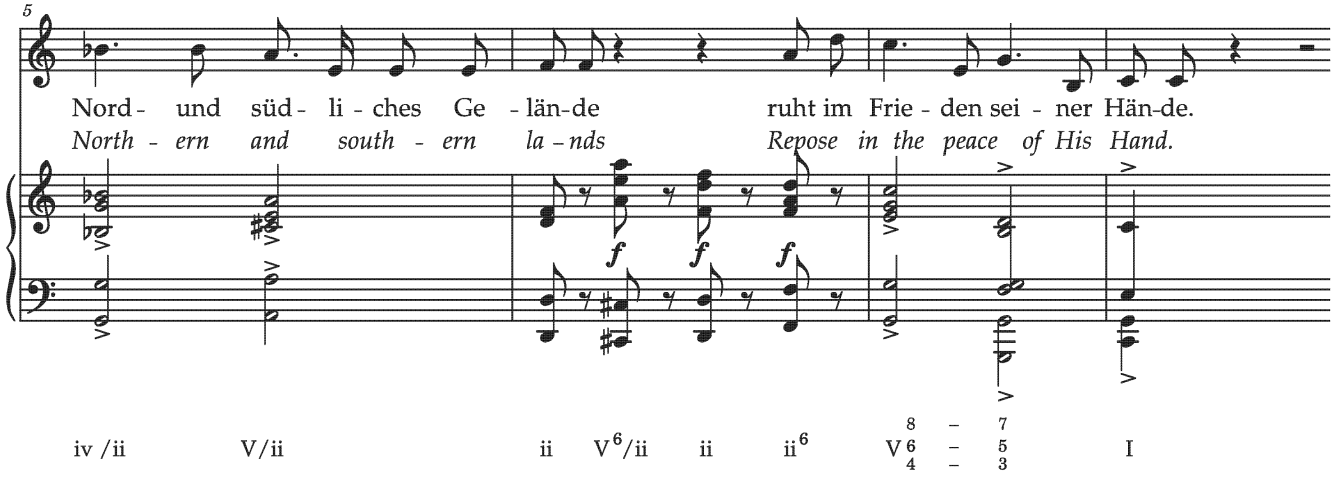
Extended Tonicization

A tonicization is extended when it involves multiple applied chords. For example, let's say you want to avoid the clutter of roman numerals in Example 19.1A, which has several chords in a row applied to D minor (ii). In order to show that there is an extended reference to another key—but the phrase remains in the original key overall, with a cadence in C major—bracket where the tonicization occurs, label the temporary tonic chord under the bracket, and analyze the bracketed chords in the key of the underlying temporary tonic (Example 19.1B). Thus, the chords in the fifth measure—iv/ii and V/ii—become the progression iv–V in the key of ii. You are not changing the applied nature of the chords, but rather are providing a more holistic view of the chords' tonicizing function.

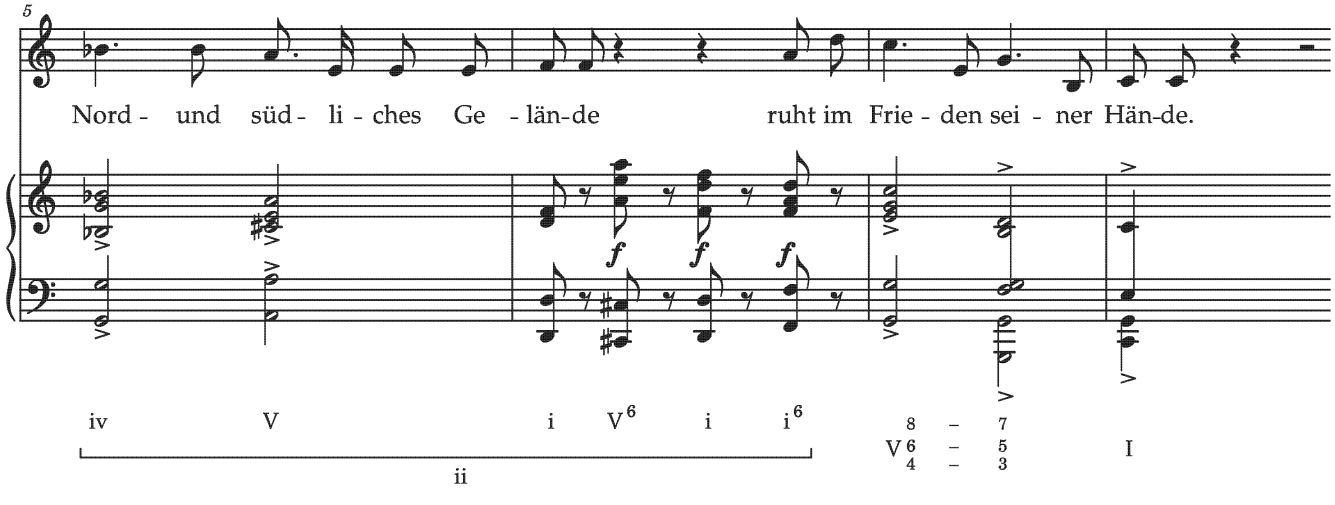
EXAMPLE 19.1

A. Schumann, "Talismane," *Myrten*, op. 25, no. 8



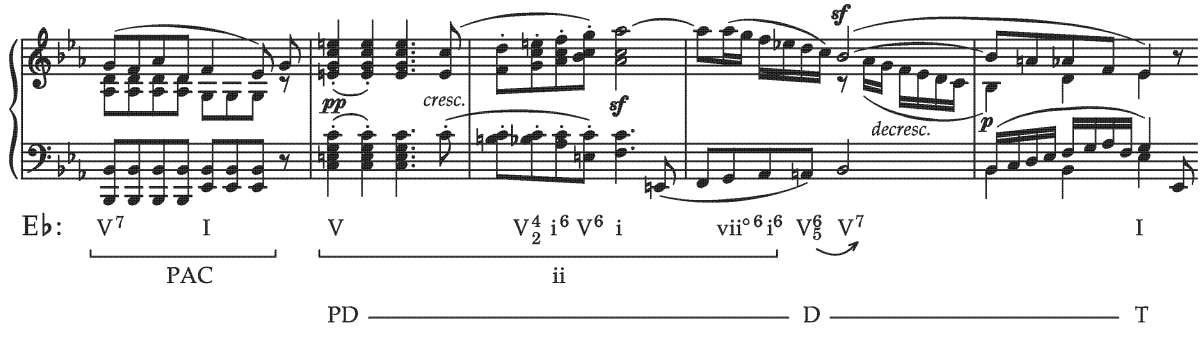


B. Measures 5–8 of the excerpt, with extended tonicization.



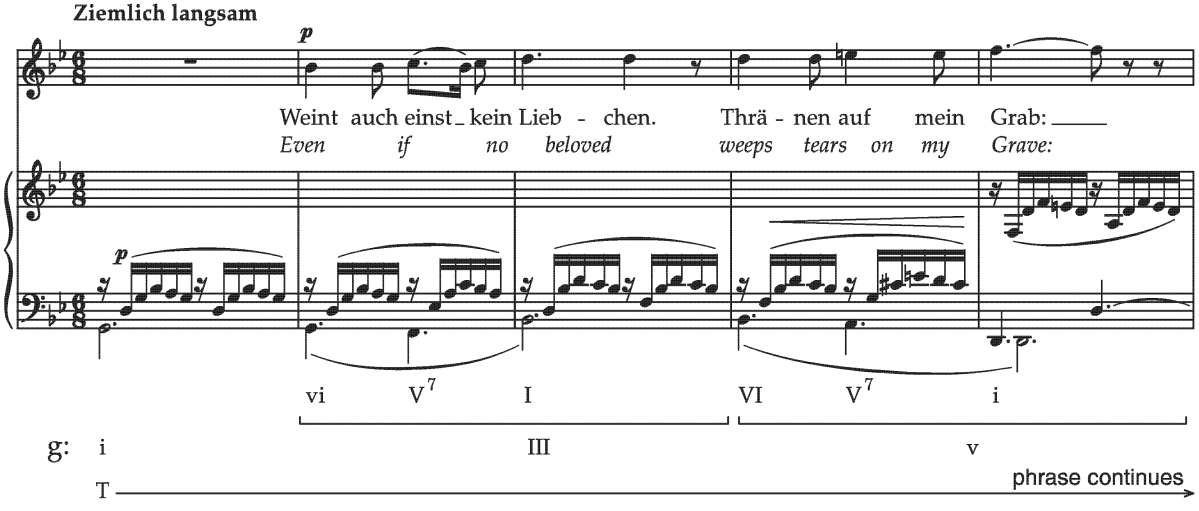
Let's apply this method of analysis to the following examples from the literature, each of which demonstrates an extended tonicization.

EXAMPLE 19.2 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 27, no. 1, *Andante*



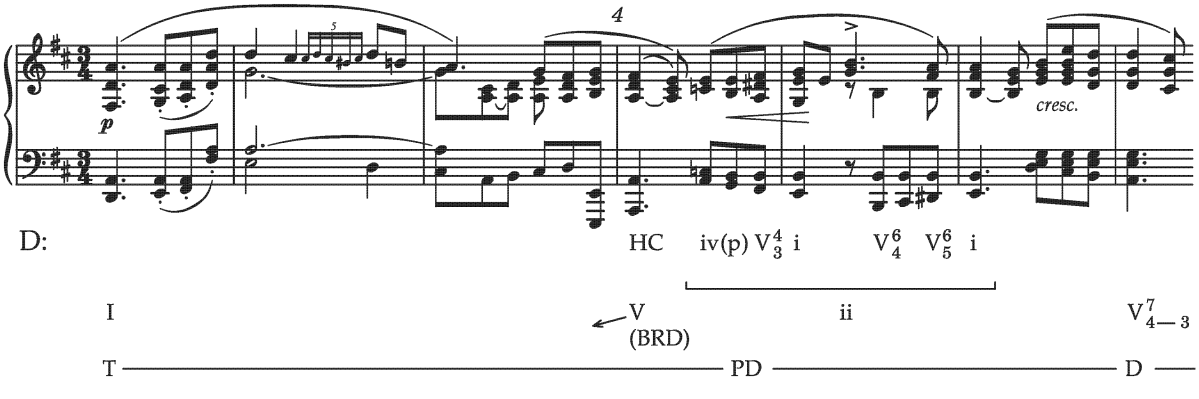
After a PAC closes a phrase in the first measure of Example 19.2, an unexpected and jarring C-major harmony appears in the second measure. When such an unusual event occurs, you should always look beyond individual harmonies to understand how it participates in the phrase. Given that the C-major chord becomes a dominant seventh in the third measure, it functions as an applied dominant chord leading to F minor. The tonicization of F minor (ii in the key of E♭ major) continues until the applied V/V chord. Thus, we see here an expanded tonicization of ii.

EXAMPLE 19.3 **Robert Schumann, "Sängers Trost" ("Singer's Consolation"), *Fünf Lieder und Gesänge*, op. 127, no. 1**



The tonic in Example 19.3 is barely established before it moves to B♭ major (III) and D minor (v), in a repeating pattern (vi–V^7–I). This brief tonicization of G, B♭, and D results in a large-scale arpeggiation of the tonic G-minor chord. Notice that G minor is reinterpreted as vi/III and that III becomes VI/v.

EXAMPLE 19.4 **Clara Schumann, "Andante espressivo," *Quatre pièces fugitives*, op. 15, no. 3**



The excerpt by Clara Schumann in Example 19.4 presents an extended tonicization of ii that follows a back-relating dominant in m. 4. Consequently, we can now understand the function of the A-minor chord in m. 4: It is a iv chord in the temporary key of E minor and not some sort of minor v chord in the home key of D. The ii, leads to the structural dominant, which completes the excerpt's overall progression, I–ii–V.

The excerpt by Robert Schumann in Example 19.5 contains tonicizations of two harmonies, vi and ii. As the second-level analysis reveals, over the course of the entire excerpt the tonicizations of vi and ii repeatedly expand the simple underlying harmonic progression, I–V–vi–ii–V–I.

EXAMPLE 19.5 Robert Schumann, "Mit Myrthen und Rosen" ("With Myrtle and Roses"), *Liederkreis*, op. 24, no. 9

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

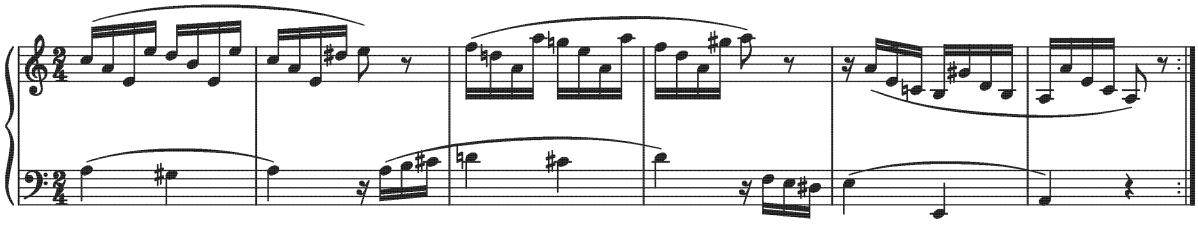
ANALYSIS

19.1

The following excerpts contain tonicizations. Listen to each example, and bracket the expanded harmony/harmonies; then provide a two-level roman numeral analysis.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Clementi, Prelude in A minor, op. 19



B. Chopin, Nocturne in G major, op. 37, no. 2

WORKBOOK 1
19.1

C. Mozart, Symphony in D major, "Prague," K. 504, *Presto*

Continued

Modulation

Longer tonicizations, which can occupy entire sections of a piece, are called **modulations**. Although it is difficult to draw a firm line between tonicizations and modulations, it is generally true that:

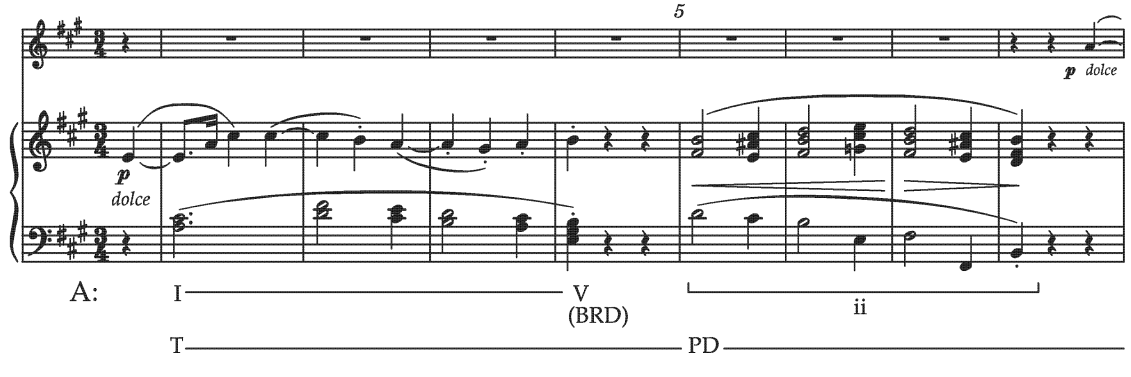
Tonicizations usually occur within phrases. They do not disrupt the feeling of the home key; they do not have strong cadences in new keys, and they are fleeting.

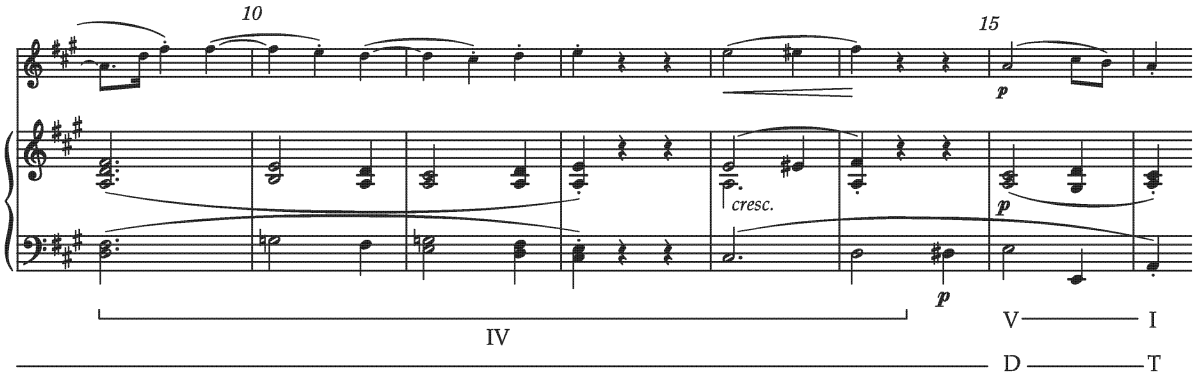
Modulations include a strong cadence in the new key, and the new key continues after the cadence. They give the feeling that a new key has usurped the home key (at least for the moment).

Listen to the two excerpts in Example 19.6. Each excerpt tonicizes one or more keys, but the methods and degree of tonicization are fundamentally different. The Beethoven example contains extended tonicizations that are reminiscent of those we have already encountered: The first strong cadence occurs at the end of the excerpt, with the PAC in mm. 15–16. The first phrase is in the tonic key; phrase 2 is an extended tonicization of ii, and IV is tonicized until the cadence at the end. There is one overall harmonic progression, I–ii–IV–V–I, and none of the fleeting tonicizations disrupts the sense that we are hearing an A-major piece.

EXAMPLE 19.6 Tonicization Versus Modulation

A. Beethoven, Violin Sonata in A major, op. 12, no. 2, *Allegro piacevole*





B. Haydn, Piano Sonata in E minor, no. 53, Hob XVI.34, *Vivace molto*

The tonicization of the Haydn excerpt (Example 19.6B) evokes a different effect. The piece begins in E minor, and the second phrase closes in mm. 7–8 with a PAC in G major (III). On reaching mm. 7–8, it seems for a moment that G has usurped the home key of E minor. The listener's sense of a G tonic is further confirmed when the music continues in m. 9. This motion to a strong, new tonal area is an indication that the music has modulated.

Closely Related Keys

Diatonic modulations move from a home key to any of its **closely related keys**, which we define as those keys derived from consonant triads that occur on each scale degree of the home key. For example, the keys closely related to C major are D minor (ii), E minor (iii), F major (IV), G major (V),

and A minor (vi). The keys closely related to C minor—using the natural minor scale—are E♭ major (III), F minor (iv), G minor (v), A♭ major (VI), and B♭ major (VII). Another way to determine closely related keys is to identify the major and minor keys whose key signatures differ by no more than one sharp or flat sign from the original key.

For example, the keys closely related to C major (0 sharps/flats) are: A minor (0 sharps/flats), G major (1 sharp), E minor (1 sharp), F major (1 flat), and D minor (1 flat). The keys closely related to C minor (three flats) are: E♭ major (three flats), F minor (four flats), A♭ major (four flats), G minor (two flats), and B♭ major (two flats).

Although it is possible to modulate to any major or minor diatonic key, we will focus on the most common modulations, which are listed in order of importance:

- Major keys tend to modulate to V, vi, and iii.
- Minor keys tend to modulate to III, v, and VI.

Analyzing Modulations

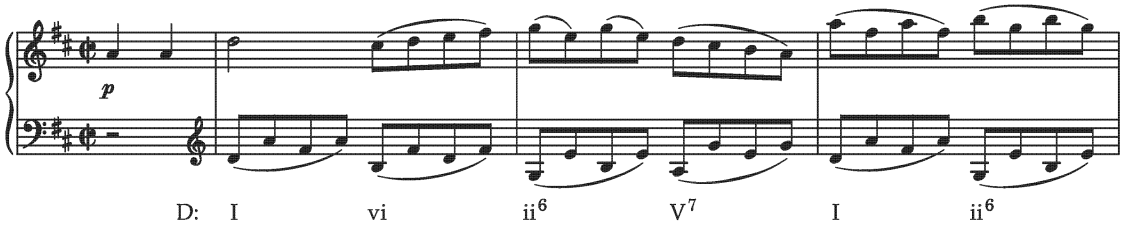
We interpret the new key in relation to the initial tonic (by roman numeral) and its function within the overall harmonic progression (e.g., as part of a large-scale harmonic arpeggiation).

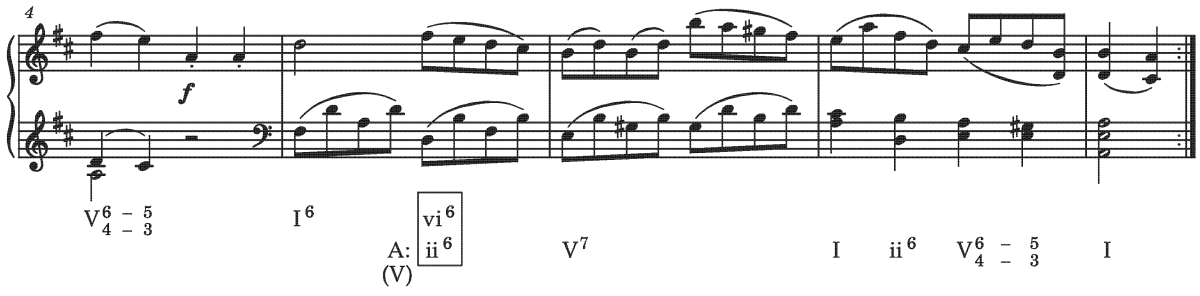
We also identify the point where the original key and the new key are momentarily fused, a point where a single chord, called a **pivot chord**, that is diatonic in both the existing key and the new key smooths the connection between the two keys. Example 19.7 illustrates the modulatory process using a pivot chord.

To analyze modulations:

1. *Look for the pitches that differ between the old and the new keys.* Consider Example 19.7, which modulates from D major to A major. The pitches that are exclusive here are G in D major and G♯ in A major. The G♯s begin in m. 6, which means that A major is already in effect in that measure.
2. *Identify the last chord that is diatonic in both keys. If this is not a second-inversion ($^6_4$) triad, then it can be a* ***pivot chord*** *between the two keys.* In Example 19.7, the final chord in m. 5 is the last possible chord that is diatonic in both the old and the new keys. It is vi^6 in D major and ii^6 in A major; therefore, it is a good candidate to be a pivot chord. The rare nature of vi^6—and its spelling as the common ii^6 in the new key—is one indication that the key is already changing.

EXAMPLE 19.7 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, Thema, *Andante*





Writing Modulations

You must test your modulations with performance, because often what looks like a successful pivot chord may, in actuality, not work at all. This is because in addition to the following voice-leading rules, you must establish two keys in a convincing manner. The following guidelines will help you to write modulations.

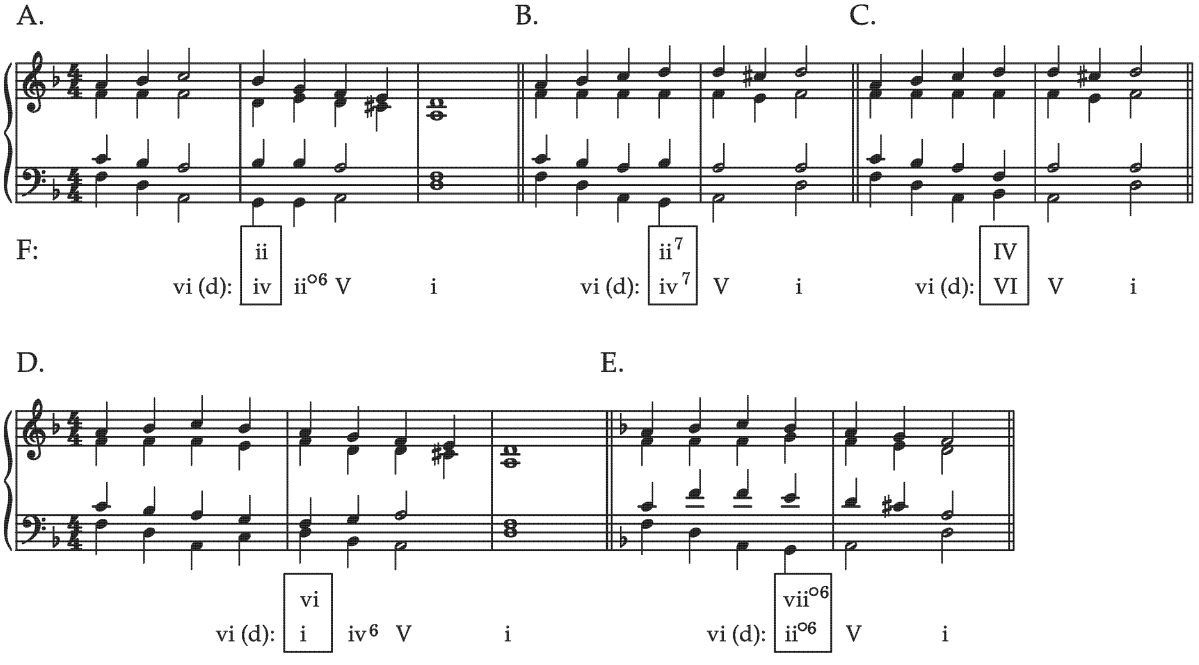
1. Figure out the potential pivot chords. Line up the diatonic chords for each key, and identify chords that fit well into both keys. The best pivot chords act as PD in the new key. To avoid harsh-sounding modulations, do not use the dominant of the new key as a pivot chord.
2. When establishing the original key and the new key, make sure that the duration of the two tonal areas is balanced. Place the pivot chord about halfway into a phrase that modulates.
3. Do not rush into a perfect authentic cadence immediately after the pivot. Try inserting a contrapuntal cadence or EPM, and close with a structural cadence only after you have strongly implied the key.
4. Use a stepwise soprano line to move to the strongest possible cadence in the new key: a PAC using a cadential six-four chord.

Let's create a phrase that modulates from F major to D minor. We first identify the potential pivot chords. Where the chord qualities match between keys, you have a potential pivot chord.

F major:	I	ii	iii	IV	vi	vii°
D minor:	III	iv	v	VI	i	ii°
Best choices:		*		*		*
Good choices:	*				*	
Poor choices:			*			

Start your progression with the descending bass arpeggiation, I–IV^6–I^6, and move to the pivot chord and then a strong cadence in the new key. For comparison, try out five possibilities for a pivot chord (Example 19.8). Listen to and study each progression, and identify which pivot chords work well.

EXAMPLE 19.8 Pivot Chords from I → vi



Modulation in the Larger Musical Context

Very few compositions end in a different key from the one in which they begin. Accordingly, modulations will never displace the prevailing tonic, and modulations in tonal music participate in a single overall harmonic motion. For example, a piece in C minor might modulate to E♭ major and F minor before leading to the dominant and returning to C minor to close the piece. This series of keys would constitute a large-scale progression in C minor: i–III–iv–V–i. When analyzing modulations, you should refer to the new key in terms of its relationship to the original tonic. For example, a modulation from C major to G major should be viewed as a modulation from I to V; a modulation from F minor to D♭ major is a modulation from i to VI. Listen to Example 19.9 and note the cadences and keys.

EXAMPLE 19.9 Handel, Prelude in G major

The first eight measures include a modulation from G major to D major. Starting at m. 9, we have a modulation to E minor, followed by a return to G major. Therefore, the overall harmonic motion is as follows:

m. 1	m. 8	m. 16	m. 21	m. 22	m. 25	m. 26
G: I	V	vi	V	I	ii^6_5 V	I
I ———		vi	V	I	ii^6_5 V	I
T ———					PD D	T

The keys participate in the overall harmonic motion. The modulation to V in m. 8 is subordinate to the larger I–vi–V–I that leads to m. 22; this progression is embedded within a larger I–ii^6_5–V–I that occurs over the entire example.

The Sequence as a Tool in Modulation

The function of a pivot is not limited to a single chord. Often, several chords that function in two keys will work together to create a **pivot area**. For example, a pivot chord might be expanded or tonicized. Or a group of

chords that share the same harmonic function (such as pre-dominants IV and ii) might be coupled through a voice exchange, creating a pre-dominant complex that works in both the starting and ending keys.

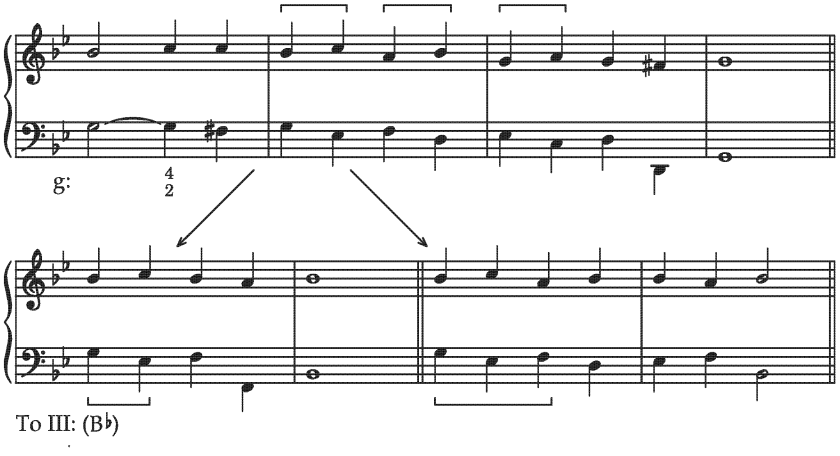
Sequences, too, make terrific pivots. In fact, one of the two functions of a sequence is transitional: It frequently takes the music from one harmonic area to another. Many strategies exist for using sequences to modulate, given that a sequence touches on many chords, sometimes every chord within a key. Therefore, by prematurely quitting a sequence and reinterpreting one of its chords as a pre-dominant that moves to a dominant, you can effectively move to a new key. Listen to Example 19.10. Vivaldi invokes a D2 sequence that stops on VI (c–f–B♭–E♭–A♭). The A♭ chord functions as IV in the new key of E♭ (III of C minor).

EXAMPLE 19.10 Vivaldi, Trio Sonata in C minor, *Allegro*

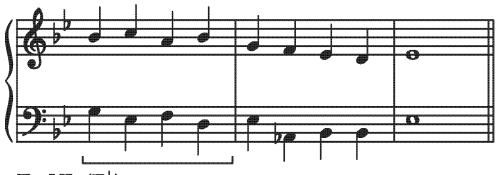
Example 19.11 demonstrates how easy it is to modulate to a variety of keys from within a sequence. Example 19.11A presents a D2 (−5/+4) sequence in G minor; Example 19.11B presents an A2 (−3/+4) sequence in B♭ major. Each sequence contains at least two repetitions of the model, marked by brackets. Beneath each sequence are progressions that modulate to several different keys, accomplished by incorporating some, but not all, of the given sequence. (Arrows indicate the point of departure from the sequence and continuation in the new key.) The G-minor example modulates to III (two examples), VI, and v (two examples). The B♭-major example modulates to vi, iii, and V.

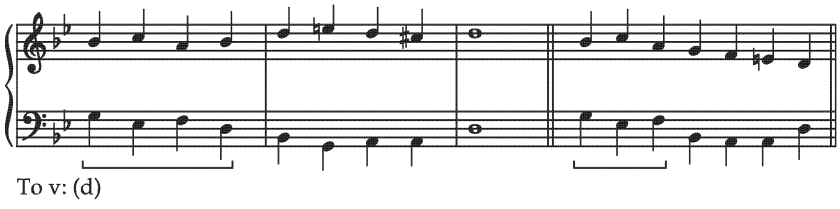
EXAMPLE 19.11 Modulation via Sequence

A.

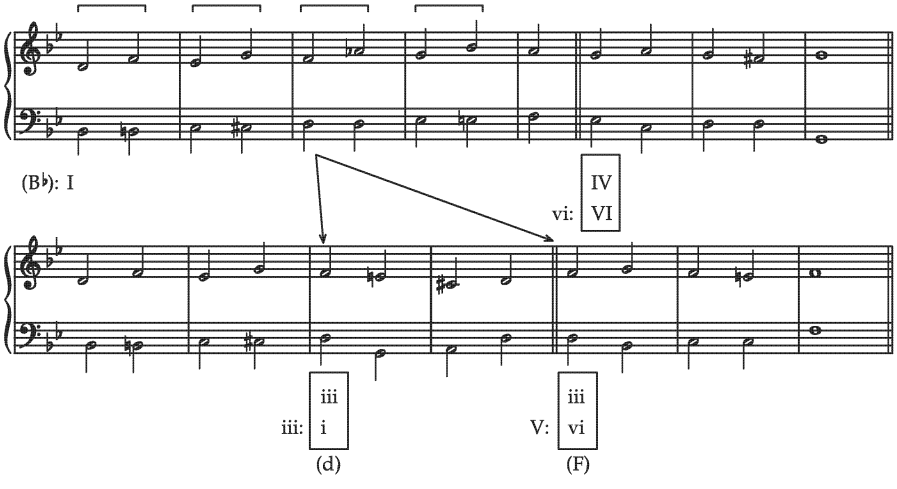


Continued





B.



WORKBOOK 1
19.2–19.5

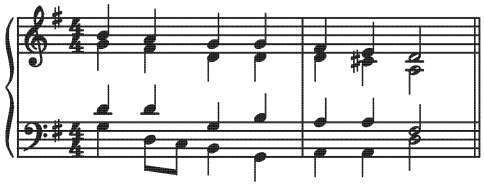
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

19.2

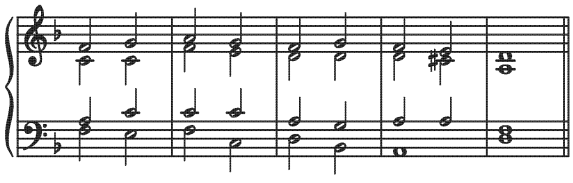
Given are examples that end in a different tonal area from the one in which they begin. Assume that they would continue in the new key. Provide a two-level harmonic analysis; remember to describe the pivot chord in both keys—draw a box around the roman numerals for the pivot chord.

A.



SOLVED/APP 6

B.

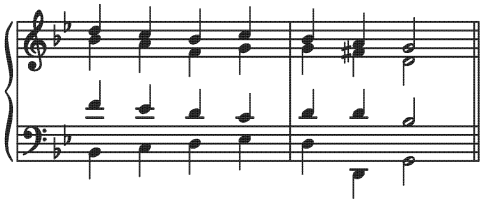


C.

SOLVED/APP 6

D.

E.



F. Scarlatti, Sonata in G minor, K. 64

SOLVED/APP 6

G. Mozart, Piano Concerto in G major, K. 453, *Allegretto*

Continued

19.3 Analysis of a Modulating Sequence

Bracket and label the following modulating sequence. Then determine, using pivot notation, how the last chord of the sequence functions in the new key.

SOLVED/APP 6

Handel, Concerto Grosso in B♭ major, op. 3, no. 2, HWV 313, *Largo*

WRITING

19.4 Modulation Warmup: Pivot Choices

The pivot chord is important because it hides any abrupt motion that might result from a modulation and instead glues the musical seams together to create one fluid gesture. Given are several harmonic scenarios in which phrases modulate from the tonic to a closely related key. Determine (and list on a separate sheet of paper) all the possible pivot chords that will work between the two keys, and then mark with an "X" the pivot that you feel might work best.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. D major: I to vi
B. C minor: i to v
C. G minor: i to III
D. A major: I to V
E. D minor: i to iv

19.5

Initial key and pivot chords are given. You will write short progressions (seven to nine chords) that modulate.

1. Determine what the new key is, based on the information provided by the pivot chord (e.g., given the key of D major, if the pivot is ii → iv, then you know you are to modulate to B minor, since, in D major, ii is an E-minor chord, and e minor is iv in the key of b minor.
2. Establish the first key (use a three- to four-chord contrapuntal progression or EPM), move to the pivot chord (one chord), and lead to a strong PAC in the new key (three to four chords).

Example:
Given: key of E minor; pivot; $\boxed{\begin{matrix}\text{iv}^6\\ \text{ii}^6\end{matrix}}$

The pivot is an A-minor chord in first inversion (iv^6). Since it will become ii^6 in the new key, we know we are modulating to G major (because A minor is ii in G). We then establish E minor (three to four chords), lead to the pivot, and write a cadential progression in G major.

A. In B♭ major: pivot is $\boxed{\begin{matrix}\text{vi}\\ \text{ii}\end{matrix}}$
B. In B minor: pivot is $\boxed{\begin{matrix}\text{VI}\\ \text{IV}\end{matrix}}$
C. In C minor: pivot is $\boxed{\begin{matrix}\text{III}\\ \text{VI}\end{matrix}}$
D. In F major: pivot is $\boxed{\begin{matrix}\text{ii}\\ \text{iv}\end{matrix}}$

19.6

In approximately seven to nine chords, write the following modulations on a separate sheet of manuscript paper. Analyze—remember to identify the pivot chord.

SOLVED/APP 6

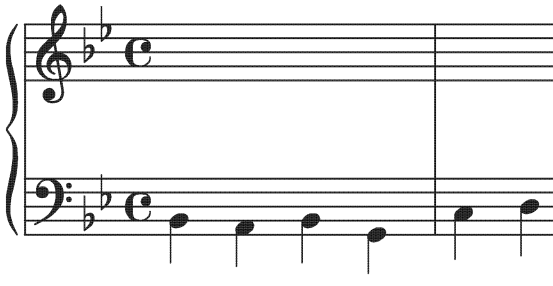
A. In G major, modulate from I to V.
B. In D minor, modulate from i to III.
C. In A major, modulate from I to vi.
D. In F major, modulate from I to iii.
E. In B minor, modulate from i to v.
F. In E minor, modulate from i to VI.
G. In B♭ major, modulate from I to ii.

19.7 Modulating Figured Basses

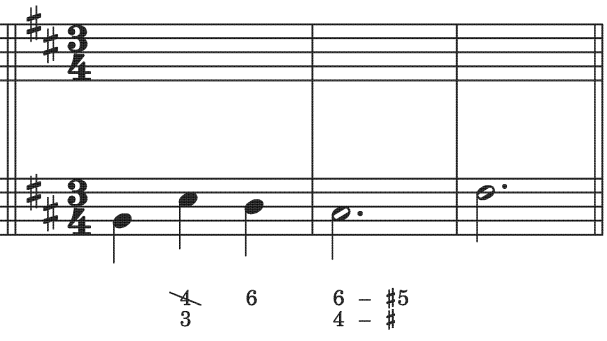
SOLVED/APP 6

Realize the short figured basses below in four voices. Then analyze, being sure to label the pivot chords fully.

A.



B.



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- closely related keys
- modulating sequences
- modulation
- pivot
- pivot area
- pivot chord
- tonicized area

CHAPTER 20

Binary Form and Variations

We can view the study of musical form in three stages. The first stage explored how the fundamental building blocks of music—the phrase and the subphrase—combine to form units of modest length: the period and sentence. Here, at the second stage, we will explore how composers combine periods, phrases, and sentences to create binary form. (The third stage, encompassing rondo, ternary, and sonata forms, is discussed in Part 7.)

Binary Form

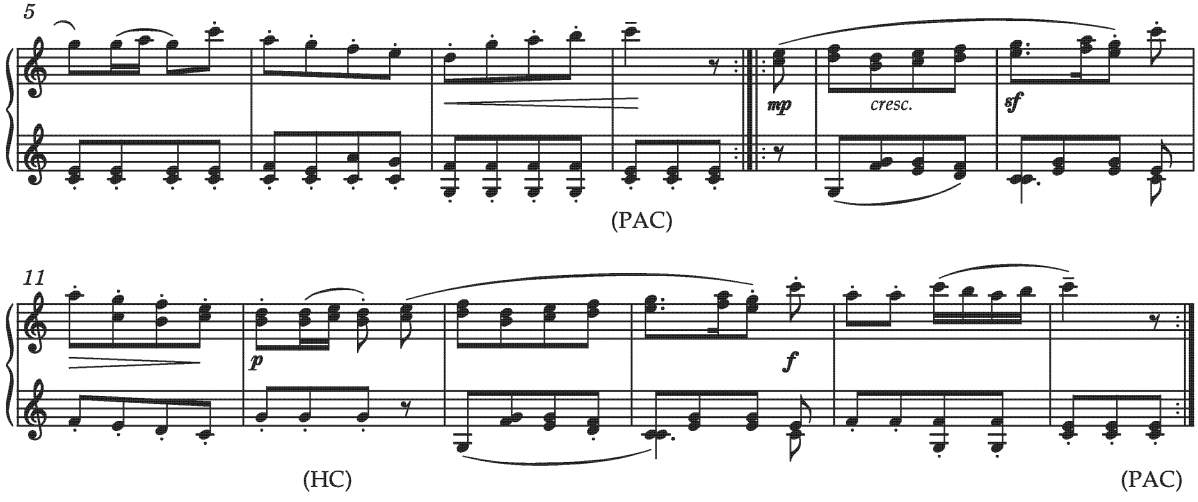
Binary form, a term describing a complete work that can be divided into two sections, can be traced back to well before 1700. The Baroque suite comprises numerous dance movements, ranging from slow sarabandes to lively gigues, each of which is cast in binary form. The **minuet** was maintained in many compositions of the Classical period, such as instrumental sonatas, string quartets, and symphonies. In the nineteenth century the **scherzo** appeared more and more frequently in works by Beethoven and later composers. It, too, is cast in binary form, as are the theme and subsequent subsections of many variation sets. Throughout the common-practice period, repeat signs almost always mark the two sections of pieces in binary form; for this reason, binary form is also known as **two-reprise form**.

Simple Sectional Binary

Listen to Example 20.1 and identify the different sections of the work and what differentiates these sections musically. Analyze the overall tonal structure and identify any material that recurs.

EXAMPLE 20.1 Hummel, Bagatelle in C major, op. 107

Continued

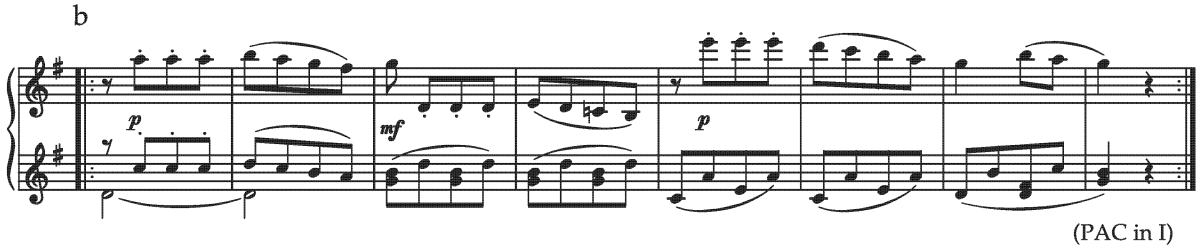


This piece is obviously in two parts; the double bars indicate two sections. When describing binary form, which is similar to describing a period label: We consider the melodic structure (or **thematic design**) and the harmonic structure. Notice that no thematic material recurs in Example 20.1. In cases like this, when the two sections of a binary form share no melodic material, labeled *ab*, the melodic design is called **simple**. As for the harmonic label, when the cadence at the end of the *first* section ends on the *tonic*, the harmonic structure is called **sectional** (since both *sections* of the binary form are tonally closed). Thus, we can say that Hummel's Bagatelle is in **simple sectional binary form**.

Simple Continuous Binary

Now listen to Example 20.2, which illustrates a different type of binary form. Identify how the Weber piece is similar to and different from the Hummel. Melodically, this binary form is simple. Harmonically, the tonicization of the dominant at the end of the first section clearly presents a significant difference from the previous example. The dominant continues after the double bar but is weakened by the addition of the seventh, which forces it back into the orbit of G major. In cases like this, when the first section closes *away from the tonic*, and the following section *continues* away from the tonic, the binary form's harmonic structure is called **continuous**. Thus, Weber's piece is in a **simple continuous binary form**.

EXAMPLE 20.2 **von Weber, no. 1, *Six Ecossaise*, J. 29**



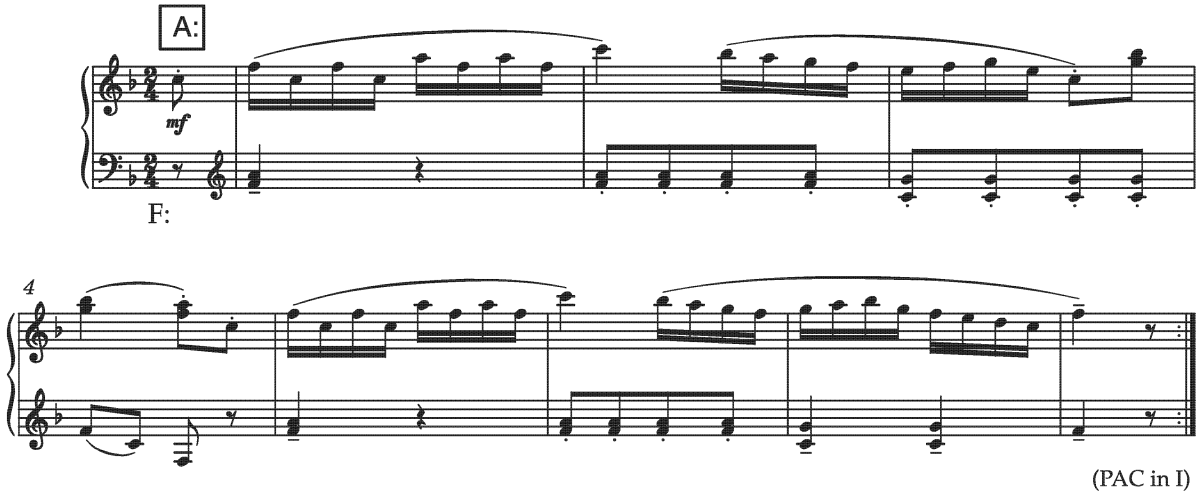
(PAC in I)

We have been using period terminology to describe the harmonic structure of binary forms. If both sections are tonally closed, binary forms (just like periods) are **sectional**. If the first section ends away from tonic, and the second section starts away from tonic, binary forms (just like periods) are **continuous**.

Rounded Sectional Binary

Listen to Example 20.3. In what ways does it differ from Examples 20.1 and 20.2? The first section closes on tonic; therefore, the piece's harmonic structure is sectional. However, the piece has a lopsided structure: The material after the first double bar occupies 16 measures, exactly twice as long as the preceding material, and there is a distinct HC in m. 16 that divides the second half. After the HC, there is a literal restatement of the material that began the piece. Thus, the second section of Haydn's binary form is more complex than Example 20.1 or Example 20.2. It features a new compositional tactic: Begin the second section with fragmented and unstable material that leads to a HC. We call this a **digression**, since it wanders from the preceding material but then quickly leads back to a restatement of the original material. When all or part of the *opening* material of a binary form returns in the second section after the digression, the binary form's thematic design is called **rounded**, indicating the cyclical effect created by the return of the opening material. The scherzo by Haydn is in a **rounded sectional binary form**.

EXAMPLE 20.3 Haydn, Sonatina no. 4 in F major, Hob XVI.9, Scherzo



(PAC in I)

Continued

Look again at Example 20.3. The structure of the binary form resembles a parallel interrupted period. The music works to a structural HC (mm. 1–16), after which the music begins again in the tonic (mm. 17–24). We call the structural HC in m. 16 an **interruption** (marked with a double slash (//), since this is the point where the harmonic progression is interrupted and begins again in the tonic.

Rounded Continuous Binary

Listen to Example 20.4, the theme that opens the variation movement of Mozart's Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284. Consider the nature of the theme (simple or rounded) and whether there is an interruption. Further, consider whether the harmony is sectional or continuous, and whether the sections are similar in proportion (like the Hummel excerpt) or lopsided (like the Haydn excerpt).

EXAMPLE 20.4 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, Thema, *Andante*

Example 20.4 contains two nearly symmetrical sections (of eight and nine measures, respectively), each of which is articulated by repeats and by cadences. The harmonic structure is continuous, since the first section ends away from the tonic. Thematically, there is a digression in mm. 9–12 that leads to an interruption; this is followed by a repetition of part of the opening theme in the tonic. Therefore, Mozart's piece is cast in **rounded continuous binary form**.

An interesting formal conflict arises when one compares the melodic design with the tonal structure. Mozart's piece has a three-part design that is based on the melodic structure and surface rhythm articulations:

Initial tune = A (mm. 1–8)

Sequential figuration = digression (mm. 9–12)

Restatement of tune = A′ (mm. 14–17)

However, it has a two-part tonal structure based on the large-scale interruption and restart on the tonic.

The following model illustrates the most common two-reprise form: the rounded continuous binary form. The model shows the three-part thematic design and two-part harmonic structure in both major and minor keys.

Rounded Continuous Binary Form

thematic design in 3 sections:

	a (main theme)	digression (sequence, etc.)	*a′* (main theme)
in major:	‖: I————to V——PAC in V	:‖: (x)————V(7)″	I————V–I :‖
in minor:	‖: i————to III——PAC in III	:‖: (x)————V(7)″	i————V–i :‖
	I/i——————————————————V(7)″		**I/i———V———I/i**

harmonic structure in 2 parts: **(interruption)**

Balanced Binary Form

Binary forms—whether sectional or continuous, simple or rounded—can have an additional characteristic: They can be **balanced** if the closing material in the first section is restated as the closing material in the second section. "Balanced" does not always refer to an exact repetition, because, in many binary forms the first section closes in a nontonic key. To provide convincing tonal closure at the end of the piece, the restatement of this material will naturally occur in the tonic. Look back at Example 19.9.

The first section closes in V (D major) in m. 8, making the harmonic structure continuous. In the digression (mm. 9–21), Handel develops the piece's opening gesture by reversing the order of scale and broken chord and placing them within two sequences. Handel is in a quandary: The extensive, 13-measure digression creates an imbalance with the first section, which occupies only eight measures, yet he must provide convincing melodic and harmonic closure. He does not return with the opening harmonic and melodic material as in rounded binary form; instead, his solution is to draw material that closes the piece from an analogous point in the close of the first section, to create a **(balanced) continuous binary form**. Balanced is in parentheses to show that it is an additional element of the form that does not disrupt the other melodic aspects of the label.

Summary of Binary Form Types

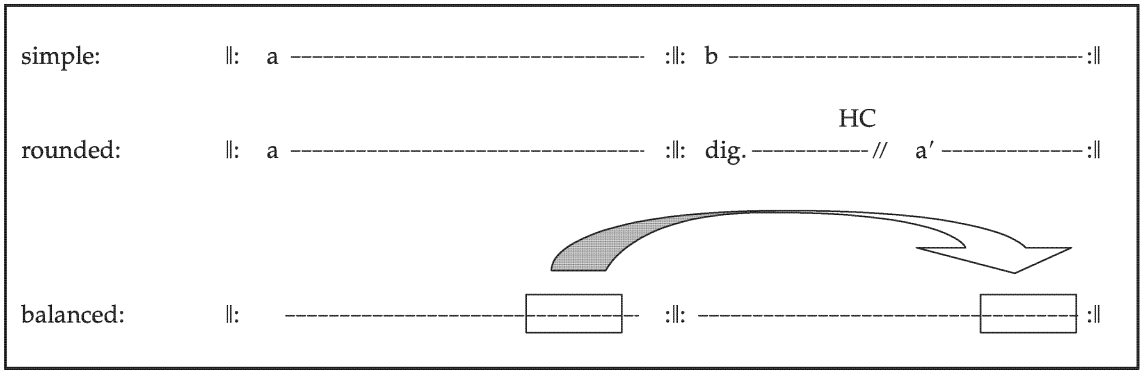
The feature common to all two-reprise binary forms is the presence of two sections, often marked by double bars. We look at cadences to determine the harmonic structure:

sectional:	‖: ----------	ends on tonic:	:‖: ----------	ends on tonic:	:‖
continuous:	‖: ----------	ends away from tonic:	:‖: ----------	ends on tonic:	:‖

To determine the melodic structure we discern whether material from the first section recurs in the second section. Finally, look at the closing material of each section to see if the binary form feature a "balanced" element.

Binary forms do not always fall neatly into one of our established theoretical categories. Categorization is merely an attempt to deal with the many and varied stimuli with which we are confronted at every moment of

our lives. As such, categories are more general than specific. Given that music is an art form capable of multiple interpretations, we must be flexible and open-minded in our attempts to come to grips with it. In your analysis of form, always be sensitive to the music.



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

WORKBOOK 1
20.1–20.3

20.1

The following binary pieces present a variety of formal and harmonic issues. Analytical questions will take you through the process of analyzing binary forms. Study the questions that follow each excerpt, and then listen to the piece. Answer as many of the questions as possible before listening a second time. Finally, compare your answers with the answers provided at the end of the chapter.

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 50 in D major, Hob XVI.37, *Presto ma non troppo*

1. What is the form? Be precise when labeling binary forms. Include harmonic and melodic labels.
2. What melodic embellishment occurs in mm. 2 and 4?
3. How many phrases make up mm. 1–8? Do they form a period? If so, label the type of period.
4. What key is briefly tonicized in mm. 9–10?
5. What applied chord appears in m. 17?

B. Mozart, Piano Trio in G major, K. 496, *Allegretto*

1. What is the form?
2. How many phrases occur in mm. 1–8? Do they form a period? If so, label the type of period.
3. How long is the tonic expanded in the first phrase?
4. What sequential progression occurs in mm. 9–11? And to what harmony does it lead?
5. Since this is a trio, one would expect an equal division of melodic interest between the instruments. Is this the case? Why or why not?

C. Haydn, Piano Sonata in A major, Hob XVI.12, Trio

1. What is the form?
2. What melodic embellishment occurs throughout the piece?
3. How would you label the bass motion from i to V in mm. 1–6?
4. What type of sequence begins in m. 7? How long does it last? Is it transitional or prolongational?
5. What key is the goal of the first section? What key is tonicized in mm. 15–18?
6. What is the underlying tonal progression for the entire excerpt?

D. Handel, Concerto Grosso in F major, op. 3, no. 4, HWV 315, *Allegro*

1. What is the form?
2. To what key does the first section modulate? What is the pivot chord?
3. Immediately after the double bar, there is a return to the tonic (F major), which seems premature, given the length of the second section. Is this a true return to the tonic, or is it part of a larger progression that leads to a new tonal destination?
4. The syncopated tune that appears in m. 9 looks new, yet one could argue that this syncopation is an explicit statement of rhythmic irregularity implied in the first tune. What are two other similarities between the opening four measures and mm. 9–13?
5. What sequence occurs in mm. 17–20? What is its function?

Variation Form

One of the most difficult and important tasks for a composer is to balance unity with variety. Fulfilling that task raises a central question in composition: How do you handle repeating melodic material? As master listeners, composers are keenly aware of the potential stasis that is created by literal restatement, on the one hand, and of the potential for aural chaos when a listener is constantly assailed with new material, on the other. An important genre for exploring and developing this relationship between unity and variety is the variation set.

Variation sets usually begin with an initial idea, or **theme**, from which a series of **variations** unfolds. These variation sets may be independent pieces, or members of larger, multimovement works, such as suites and sonatas. Variation sets are found in just about all musical combinations, including works for solo instruments, chamber works, symphonies, and vocal pieces.

The two common types of variation sets are **continuous variations** and **sectional variations**. The difference between the two is based on how strong the division is between variations, and how smooth the progression of events is from the opening to the close of the piece.

Continuous Variations

In a **continuous variation set**, the theme is relatively short (usually a phrase), and it gives the effect of being incomplete in order to permit each variation to flow seamlessly into the next. This is often accomplished by an overlapping process whereby the ending tonic of one variation simultaneously acts as the beginning of the next.

EXAMPLE 20.5 Monteverdi, "Lamento della ninfa" ("Lament of the Nymph"), *Madrigali guerrieri et amorosi*

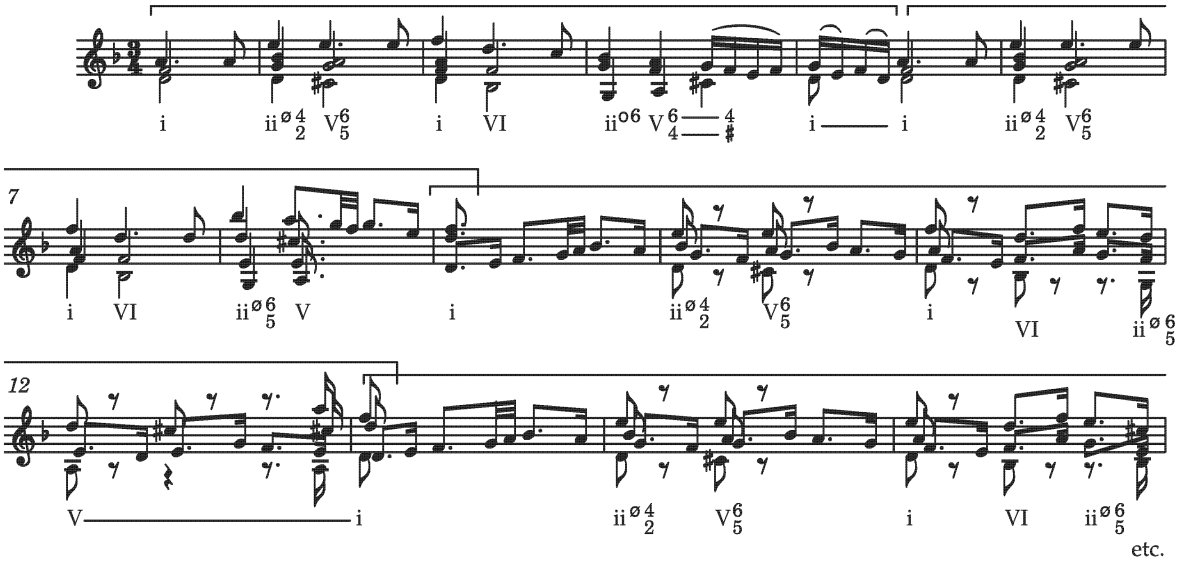
Listen to Example 20.5, which is the beginning of a continuous variation set. Notice the repeating bass pattern (bracketed in the example) that forms the foundation for the variations (notice also the brackets above the staves showing how some repetitions of the pattern are overlapped as part of an authentic cadence). Continuous variations are most often constructed through the use of a repeated idea, called an **ostinato**, rather than a lyrical tune. Ostinati provide the backbone of the variations, over which changes in register, texture, and motivic design occur. Ostinati generally appear in the

lower voices and can be as simple as a repeating bass pattern, called a **ground bass**, a repeating harmonic pattern, called a **chaconne**, or both a repeating bass and a repeating harmonic pattern, called a **passacaglia**, as in the case of Monteverdi's Lamento.

Often, all three terms are used interchangeably. The distinction between the repeating bass line of the ground bass and the repeating harmonic pattern of the passacaglia and chaconne is often artificial; composers use repeating harmonies to accompany a repeating bass, and vice versa. In Example 20.6, Purcell harmonizes his eight-measure ground bass (circled notes) with a harmonic pattern that is used in each repetition.

EXAMPLE 20.6 Purcell, Ground in G, theme and two variations

EXAMPLE 20.7 **Bach, Partita no. 2 in D minor for Solo Violin, BWV 1004, Chaconne**



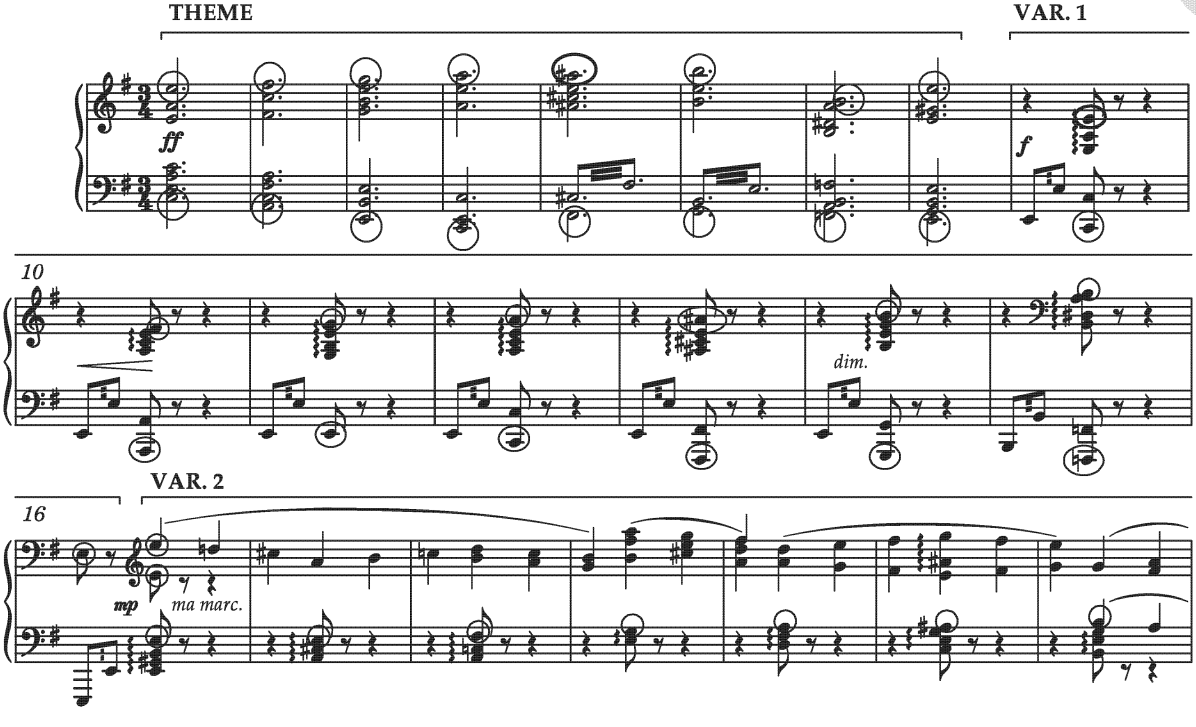
Examples 20.7, 20.8, and 20.9 illustrate how composers merge the two types of ostinati. Bach's famous Chaconne is based on a repeating series of harmonies (Example 20.7). That the ostinato begins in midmeasure helps to maintain continuity between repetitions. Furthermore, the variations overlap, with each ending dovetailed with the beginning of the next statement; only the theme is not overlapped.

EXAMPLE 20.8 **Beethoven, *Thirty-two Variations on an Original Theme*, in C minor, WoO 80, theme and two variations**

In Example 20.8, Beethoven's eight-measure theme—a repeating harmonic ostinato—traverses an indirect step-descent bass to iv, followed by a two-measure cadential gesture. Although the theme is tonally closed and there is no dovetailing between repetitions, continuity is preserved by the continuous figurations.

EXAMPLE 20.9 **Brahms, Symphony no. 4 in E minor, op. 98,** ***Allegro energico e passionato***

CH 20
TRACK XX

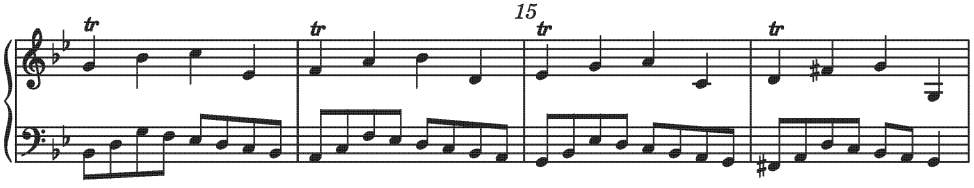


Continued

Brahms combines the idea of ground and chaconne in the last movement of his E-minor symphony (Example 20.9). The harmonic pattern (chaconne) of the opening continues in the first variations. But in the following several variations, it is the theme's upper-voice ascent (ground) that holds each variation together.

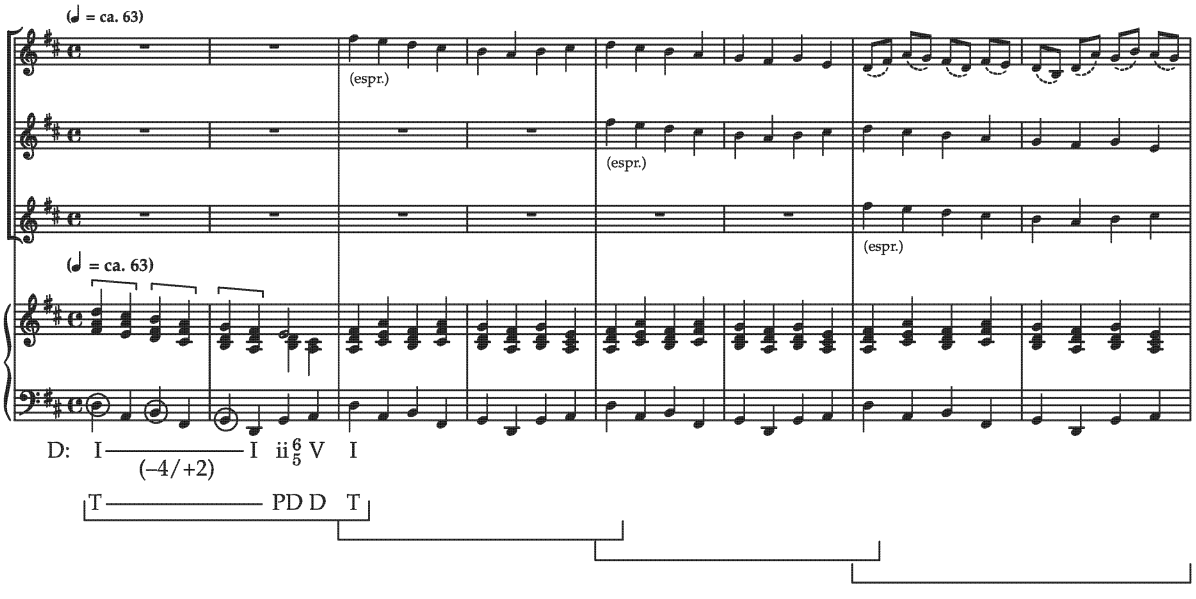
Chaconnes and passacaglias often employ sequences. For stepwise bass descents the (–5/+4) sequence works well. Recall that the underlying structural motion is by step, usually leading to the pre-dominant function on $\hat{4}$. Accordingly, this sequence preserves the common step descent. For example, in the key of G minor the progression i–iv–VII–III–VI–ii°–V–I creates a direct step descent to the dominant, as shown in bold: **G**–C–**F**–B♭–**E**♭–A–**D**–G. Example 20.10, from a Handel Passacaglia, demonstrates this use of sequence.

EXAMPLE 20.10 Handel, Suite no. 7 in G minor, *Passacaglia*



Indeed, Pachelbel's Canon is a good example of a continuous variation set: Its nonstop (–4/+2) sequence leads to the subdominant IV and rises to the dominant, preparing for the next statement of the pattern (Example 20.11).

EXAMPLE 20.11 Pachelbel, Canon in D major



Sectional Variations

Continuous variation sets flow seamlessly from one variation to the next. The overlap between variations is achieved largely through tonal means: Each ground bass tends toward V, whose resolution thus coincides with the next variation's start on tonic. In a **sectional variation set**, the theme and variations are usually in binary form (often a rounded continuous binary form) that is tonally closed, and therefore they are separated from one another. Sectional variations often have more substantive changes among variations. In addition to changes in texture and figuration, there may be reharmonization, tonicization of diatonic and chromatic keys, and changes between major and minor modes.

In general, composers strive to balance musical unity with diversity in each variation by retaining one or more characteristic elements presented by the theme. For example, if a composer significantly alters the theme's melody by adding embellishment or ornamentation, the harmonic underpinning will most likely not stray too far from its thematic presentation. If the harmony is dramatically altered, the melody will often remain unchanged. One musical

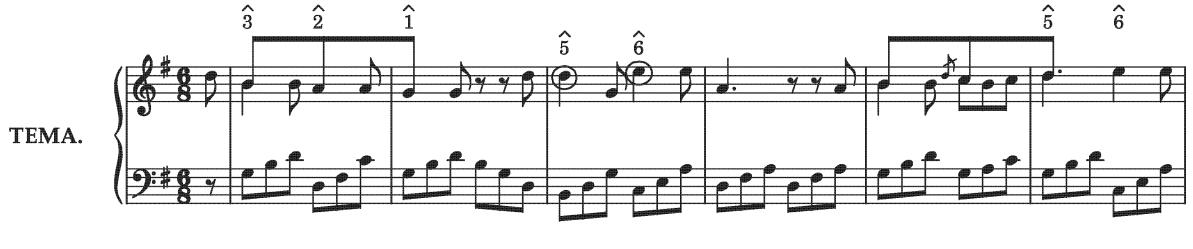
element that tends not to be altered is the form of the theme, including its general proportions and length. When we analyze variations, it is precisely the degrees and types of changes in the variations that interest us. It is particularly rewarding to find the seeds for such alterations sown in the theme itself—seeds that lie dormant until a particular variation provides the environment for it to germinate and flourish.

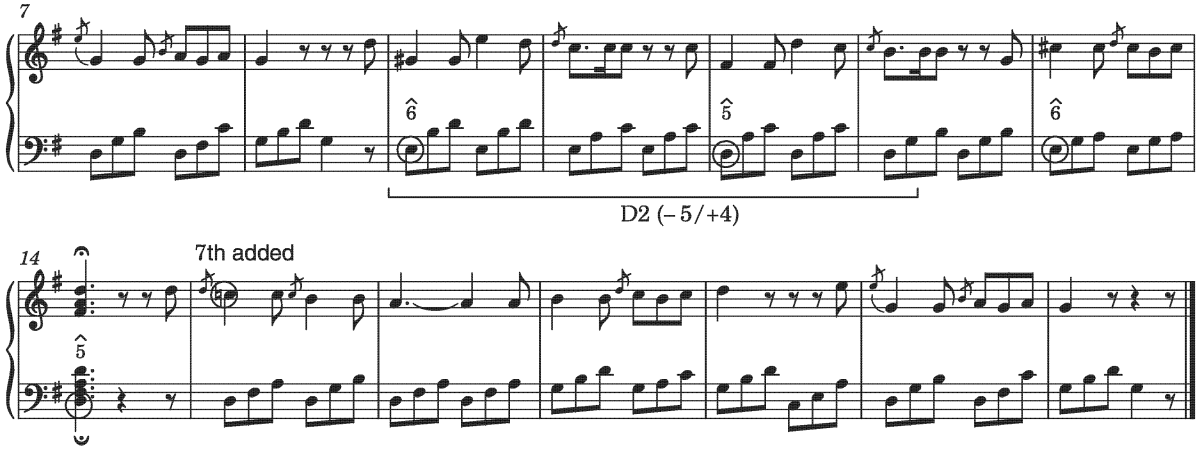
By their very nature, variation sets clearly run the risk of being merely a string of connected ideas devoid of any larger, goal-oriented musical process or development. To avoid such problems, composers use two common strategies. In the first strategy, they create a sense of drive that leads to a musical climax, most commonly by using ever-smaller note values (sometimes referred to as a *rhythmic crescendo*) or increasingly elaborate textures and expanded registers and dynamics (in which there may be one or more arches of intensity). In the second strategy, composers group two or more variations to create another level of organization, resulting in a large-scale ebb and flow in the unfolding of the entire set. For example, in a set of 12 variations, a composer might create three larger groups of five, two, and five variations respectively, with each group distinguished from the other by mode change (e.g., the central group may be cast in the parallel minor if the work is in major) and with each group unfolding in one of the processes described in strategy 1.

Example 20.12 presents excerpts from Beethoven's six variations on the duet "Nel cor più non mi sento," WoO 70 (1795), from Giovanni Paisiello's opera *La molinara*, which provides a clear and simple example of sectional variations. The theme lacks the typical double-bar signposts that are symptomatic of binary forms. Nonetheless, it meets all of the binary requirements. The theme opens with an eight-measure contrasting-interrupted period (4 + 4). The first phrase's initial descent is followed by a series of leaps that highlight $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{5}$ (E and D). The second phrase precisely balances these features by reversing the contour: It ascends by step to $\hat{6}$ and then descends to close on $\hat{1}$. This first period comprises the first half of the binary structure. Given its close on tonic, it is sectional.

Measures 9–12 are primarily sequential, though the bass is relatively static, given that the arrivals in mm. 10–12 occur on six-four chords. Perhaps this E–D neighbor motion in the bass is motivated by the same motion that occurred in the A section's upper voice. The sequential motion leads to the dominant, intensified by the applied chord and signaled by the fermata (mm. 13–14). The seventh of the chord (C) is added to this stable dominant, which weakens and thus prepares the return to tonic. The following tonic in m. 17 is accompanied by the material from mm. 5–8, which creates a (balanced) rounded sectional binary form.

EXAMPLE 20.12 **Beethoven, *Variations on the Duet "Nel cor più non mi sento,"* WoO 70**





Fast-note chromatic lower neighbors characterize the first part of Variation I, while broken-chord figures characterize the second part (mm. 9–11). Both melody and harmony remain faithful to the theme, save for minor deviations, which include a shift from root-position harmonies to more stepwise motion in the opening, followed by a compensating alteration in the sequence. Contrapuntal features that were only implied in the theme are now made explicit, including the striking parallel-tenth motion in mm. 25–26, which creates a strong drive to the subdominant in m. 26. A mini-cadenza follows the fermata, in which the lower-neighbor motive from the opening of the variation becomes a trill; C♯ eventually leads to C♮ in order to destabilize the dominant.

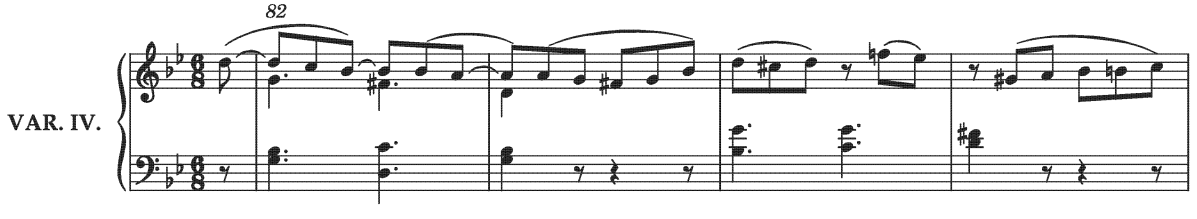
Continued

Beginning in Variation II, Beethoven intensifies the musical drama. By swapping the material that occurred in the right and left hands of Variation I, both textural density and register are expanded. The sixteenth-note motion now occurs in the left hand, and the right hand's large leaps create compound melody, giving the impression that a third voice has been added to the texture. An added applied chord (V^6_5 of V in the third measure) not only intensifies motion to the dominant to close phrase 1, but also reminds us of the preceding variation's C♯–D neighbor motive and trill extension.

Variation III, the midpoint of the variation set, is climactic, in that Beethoven continues to expand the register (by a full octave in the bass and by dwelling in the high register of the right hand. Further, the hands are equal: They share all textural material and create the impression of a dialogue.

Variation IV provides a momentary respite from the mounting tension of the preceding figuration variations. However, the shift to the parallel minor mode combined with the highly dissonant appoggiaturas, suspensions, and accented passing tones creates a dark and introspective mood. Beethoven again thickens the texture by adding a fourth voice. This variation also contains the most significant harmonic departures from the theme in the entire set. Here, the subdominant rather than the dominant becomes the harmonic focus in each section. The harmonic tide turns already at the beginning of the second phrase (m. 86), where tonic becomes V^7/iv, which briefly tonicizes iv.

The following sequential passage might have proven a minor obstacle for Beethoven, given that the D2 (–5/+4) applied chord sequence in the theme first tonicized ii and then returned to I. Now ii is a diminished triad and cannot be tonicized. Beethoven solves the problem by turning once again to the subdominant, which he tonicizes in m. 91 through a dialogue-like play between soprano and bass that is reminiscent of Variation III. This time, however, Beethoven inverts the relationships between the voices. He also develops the theme's 5–6 neighbor motive by reiterating D and E♭ at the variation's climax in m. 95. Sighlike echoes of the motive immediately follow in the inner voice (mm. 96–98). The variation closes with two more statements of the neighbor motive, which occur in invertible counterpoint, first in the tenor and then in the soprano.



Continued

Variation V's sudden shift to the high register, in which the tune is projected, accompanied by rapid scalar sixteenth-note triplets, and the out-of-doors, pastoral horn calls in the left hand dramatically contrast with Variation IV. Variation V also provides what feels like a giant upbeat to the final variation.

Variation VI not only summarizes the previous variations but also simultaneously provides a fitting climax for the entire set. To accomplish this, the prevailing texture is two voice; but, given the compound melody in each hand, four voices emerge. Therefore, Beethoven has artfully summarized the two- to four- voice texture that occurred throughout the set. Further, the neighbor motive that was so important reappears.

Variation VI rounds out the set by restating crucial features of the theme. For example, the applied V_3^4 of V reappears in m. 134, the harmony that had been replaced with others in preceding variations. Finally, Beethoven abandons the 20-measure theme and same-length variations by adding a 24-measure coda. This coda presents the opening gesture of the theme, scale degrees $\hat{5}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$ (D–B–A–G), which now becomes a closing gesture tossed between the hands in imitative fashion and in the extreme upper and lower registers of the piano. Such a drive to the end is fitting, given that it also summarizes events presented in earlier variations.

The brief tonicization of IV beginning in m. 156 serves three purposes. First, it signals the close of the piece, since codas often touch on the subdominant to create a plagal effect. Second, it is reminiscent of the tonicization of minor iv that took place in Variation IV. And third, the IV–I motion permits one last statement of the D–E neighbor motive that played a central role in the variation set.

Continued

Summary of Part 5

In Chapter 18 we learned that *applied chords* function as dominants of nontonic harmonies, and as such they are powerful agents of *tonicizations*. A tonicization may contain just a single applied chord, or it may be an extended area consisting of numerous applied chords, all working under the influence of a single harmony.

When a tonicized area is stabilized through one or more cadences, we call this larger expansion a *modulation*. Regardless of how extensive tonicizations and modulations are, however, the expanded harmonies always retain their function within the overall key and participate in the unfolding of the underlying harmonic progression.

We also have studied complete pieces for the first time in Part 5. In addition to simple, rounded, and balanced melodic plans, we built on large-scale motions from the tonic to one or more other tonal areas, followed by a return to (and closure in) the tonic. In labeling the harmonic content of binary forms, we saw how the large-scale cadences function analogously to the models of sectional and continuous periods.

Finally, we saw how extensive works can be constructed using building blocks composed of small binary-form movements. *Sectional variations* are one such type; we will study several others in the chapters to come. We also encountered *continuous variations*, in which constant cadential overlappings permitted a nonstop musical effect.

Answers to Exercise 20.1

Exercise 20.1A

1. The material from the opening of the piece returns in m. 13, making the thematic design rounded. That the initial tune is slightly embellished by thirds and sixths does not interfere with the immediate perception that the tune recurs and is thus rounded. The dominant (A major) is tonicized at the double bar, leaving the section open on the dominant; therefore, the harmonic structure is continuous. This, then, is a rounded continuous binary form.
2. The contrapuntal technique employed is the suspension: in m. 2, a 7–6 suspension, and in m. 4, a 4–3 suspension, both of which are prepared.
3. There are two phrases, and they combine to create a contrasting progressive period.
4. The key of E minor is briefly tonicized (it is ii in the original key, leading to V^6_5 in m. 11).
5. V^4_2/IV.

Exercise 20.1B

1. The first section (mm. 1–8) closes on the tonic; therefore, the harmonic structure is sectional. The opening material returns in m. 13; therefore, the melodic design is rounded. Thus, the form is a rounded sectional binary.
2. The two phrases comprise a parallel interrupted period (PIP).
3. The progression is contrapuntal, since the tonic is extended through neighboring six-five chords (mm. 1–2) and passing $vii^{\circ 6}$ (m. 3). The only harmonic motion in mm. 1–8 is the V^7 harmony that occurs in mm. 4 and 8.
4. This is a D2 (−5/+4) sequence with applied chords. Since the applied six-five chords resolve not to diatonic four-twos but to yet other applied chords, this is a D2 (−5/+4) applied $\frac{6}{5} - \frac{4}{2}$ (i.e., V^6_5 of E resolves to V^4_2 of A, which moves to V^4_2 of D, etc.). Notice the telltale parallel tritones between the piano's left hand and the violin. This sequence leads to the pre-dominant, ii^6, in m. 11.
5. The piano and violin share the spotlight with their florid lines and melodies. The cello doubles the piano's bass line, providing harmonic support.

Exercise 20.1C

1. Since opening material returns in the last system, albeit altered in order to close in the tonic, the thematic design is rounded. Furthermore, the modulation to the mediant, C major, at the first double bar makes the harmonic structure continuous. The form is rounded continuous binary.
2. The contrapuntal technique is suspension, most often 7–6s. The suspensions are prepared in m. 1 in the tenor with the 5–6 motion (E^4–F^4) that ties over the bar line. The bass descends to $G\sharp^3$, creating the suspended interval of a seventh with the tenor, resolving on beat 3 to E^4.
3. The bass line is an example of the step-descent bass.
4. The sequence is an A2 (−3/+4) type. Beginning on E minor, the harmonic motion consists of ascending triads in root position: E^3–F^3–G^3–A^3–B^3–C^4. The 5–6 motion helps avoid the potential parallel fifths. This sequence is a transitional type, since it begins in the tonic key area and, through its ascent, helps to secure the mediant key.

5./6. The mediant (C major) is the added key area that gives way to iv (D minor) in mm. 18–19. Notice how D minor is strongly implied by its PD and dominant, beginning immediately after the double bar. In fact, in a clever allusion to the opening octave leaps, Haydn transfers the dissonant seventh, G, of the dominant of D (A–C♯–E–G) down an octave in m. 17, where it finally resolves to F (the third of D) in m. 18. D minor as large-scale pre-dominant moves to the dominant and the interruption. The tonal structure of the movement, then, is i–III–iv–V || i–V–i.

Exercise 20.1D

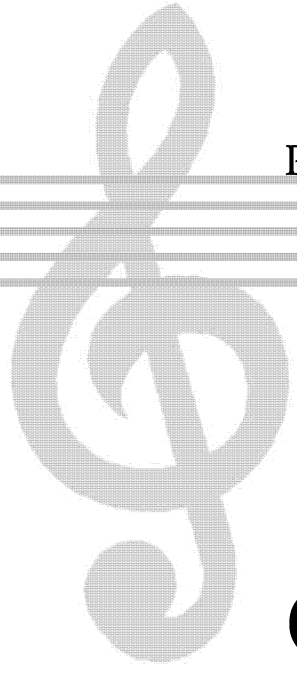
1. The first section does not close on tonic, so the harmonic structure is continuous. There is no obvious repetition of melodic material from the first eight measures, so the thematic design is simple. The form is simple continuous binary.
2. The new tonal destination is V, and the pivot may be traced to m. 4, the downbeat, at which point tonic becomes IV in the context of the dominant.
3. F major lasts only four measures but is followed by what sounds like a sequential restatement of the F-major material, the goal of which is to tonicize D minor (vi).
4. The new melody beginning in m. 9 is a loose inversion of the opening tune. Furthermore, the clear melodic ascent F^5–G^5–A^5, which occurs prominently at the downbeats of mm. 1–3, reappears in mm. 9–13 but now on the weak, second beats of each measure. This motivic restatement may help to explain why F major reappears after the double bar.
5. This is a D2 (−5/+4) sequence with applied dominants. D minor (m. 16) is converted to D major with an added seventh, creating a V^6_5 of G minor, to which it leads, followed by V^6_5 of F major, thus securing the return to tonic.

WORKBOOK 1
20.4–20.5

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- binary form
- chaconne
- continuous variations
- digression
- ground bass
- harmonic structure
  - sectional
  - continuous
- interruption
- minuet
- ostinato
- passacaglia
- sectional variations
- thematic design
  - simple
  - rounded
  - balanced
- theme
- two-reprise form
- variation set

This page intentionally left blank



PART 6

EXPRESSIVE CHROMATICISM

Chromatic harmony in the form of the applied dominant chord has existed essentially from the beginning of tonality. Examples of V/V can be found in the output of early-sixteenth-century composers, such as Josquin. Yet as music moved into the late Classical and Romantic eras, composers began to focus on the potential of pre-dominant, rather than dominant, harmony. For example, the off-tonic beginning—which typically involves starting a piece on a ii or IV chord and only eventually revealing the home sonority—is a hallmark of Schumann, Brahms, Wolf, and Mahler.

A natural outcome of this new interest in pre-dominant harmony was that composers began investing pre-dominants with their own forms of chromaticism. In the following chapters, we explore the roles of these chromatic pre-dominants. We will see how they function both as expressive devices in local contexts and as stepping-stones to remote tonicizations at deeper levels. In fact, at the same time that these new chromatic harmonies were surfacing, so too were new motivic techniques and new genres (including the solo song with piano accompaniment). We also explore two special sonorities of remarkable pre-dominant power: the Neapolitan sixth chord and the augmented sixth chord.

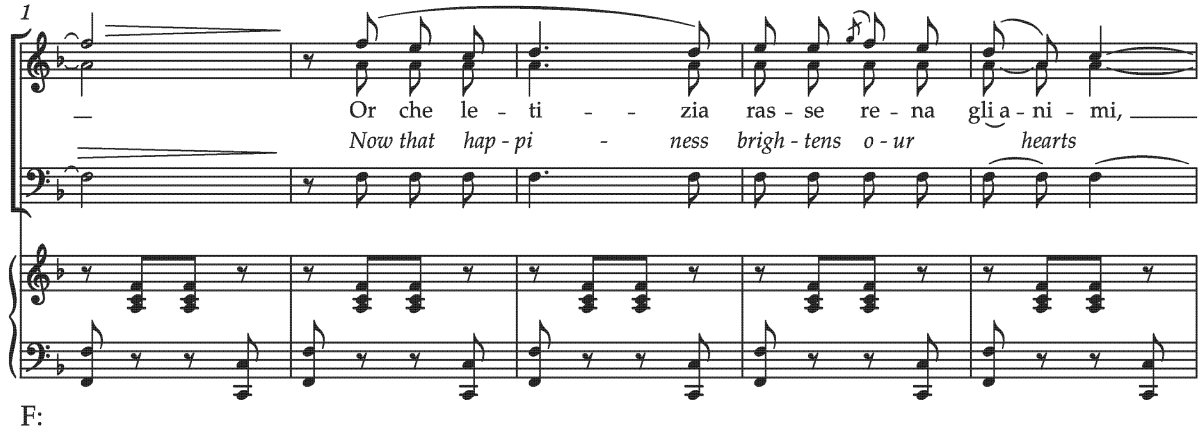
CHAPTER 21

Modal Mixture

Much music of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries commonly employs a type of chromaticism that cannot be said to derive from applied functions and tonicization. In fact, the chromaticism often appears to be nonfunctional—a mere coloring of the melodic and harmonic surface of the music.

Listen to the two phrases of Example 21.1. The first phrase (mm. 1–8) contains exclusively diatonic harmonies, but the second phrase (mm. 11–21) is full of chromaticism. This creates sonorities, such as the A♭-major chord in m. 15, which appear to be distant from the underlying F-major tonic. The chromatic harmonies in mm. 11–20 have been labeled with letter names that indicate the root and quality of the chord.

EXAMPLE 21.1 **Mascagni, "A casa amici" ("Homeward, friends"), *Cavalleria Rusticana*, scene 9**



These sonorities share an important feature: All but the cadential V–I are members of the parallel mode, F minor. Viewing this progression through the lens of F minor reveals a simple bass arpeggiation that briefly tonicizes

III (A♭), then moves to PD and D, followed by a final resolution to major tonic in the major mode.

The Mascagni excerpt is quite remarkable in its tonal plan. Although it begins and ends in F major, a significant portion of the music behaves as though written in F minor. This technique of borrowing harmonies from the parallel mode is called **modal mixture** (sometimes known simply as **mixture**). We have already encountered two instances of modal mixture. The first occurred as the "Picardy third," the cadence seen in minor-mode works that raises $\hat{3}$ to end on a major chord. A second instance arose through the use of the fully diminished seventh chord in the major mode, which had $\flat\hat{6}$ as its seventh.

Although harmonies may be borrowed from either the parallel major or minor, *it is much more common for elements of the minor mode to be imported into the major mode*. A quick review of the possible pitch material in the major and minor modes reveals why: In the minor mode, $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ each have two forms, depending on whether the melodic line ascends or descends. Consequently, the importation of natural $\hat{6}$ into a minor piece results from good voice leading and is not surprising. By contrast, the major mode does not include the altered forms of $\hat{3}$, $\hat{6}$, and $\hat{7}$; thus, if a musical passage is forging ahead in a major key but then introduces $\flat\hat{6}$, the effect can be quite shocking.

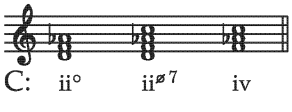
Altered Pre-Dominant Harmonies: ii° and iv

The most common scale degree involved in modal mixture is $\hat{6}$. There are four reasons why this is so:

1. $\hat{6}$ is least likely to undermine the integrity of the home key and mode.
2. Lowering $\hat{6}$ permits a strong half-step motion to the dominant.
3. Modal mixture invoked on $\hat{6}$ colors all PD harmonies.
4. $\hat{6}$ is the only scale degree outside of the tonic triad that can be consonantly supported by a harmony with $\hat{1}$ in the bass. Therefore, it is a component of the contrapuntal 5–6 motion that figures prominently in music.

Example 21.2 shows how $\flat\hat{6}$, which is drawn from the parallel minor, alters the most common pre-dominants, ii, ii^7, and IV; the supertonic harmony becomes a diminished triad (ii°), ii^7 becomes a half-diminished seventh, and the subdominant becomes a minor triad (iv). This type of chromatic alteration—which changes the quality of a chord but does not alter its root—is called **melodic mixture**. The labeling of chords to reflect melodic mixture is easy: You label the chord as if it were in a minor key.

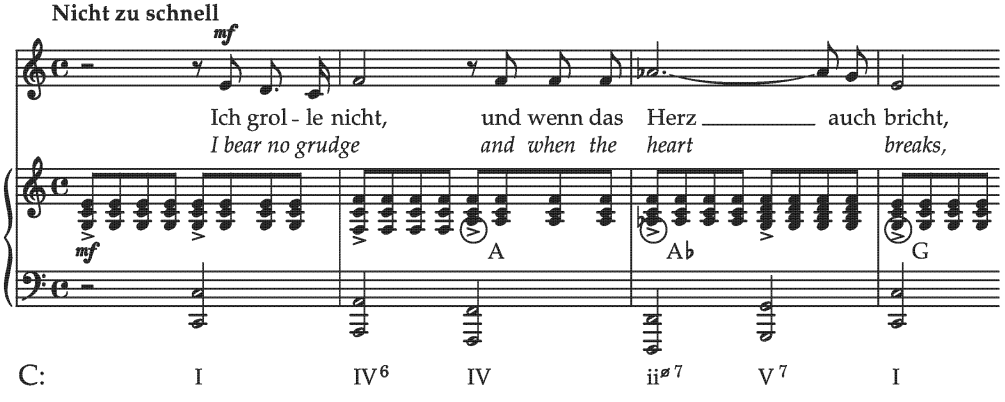
EXAMPLE 21.2 Mixture Applied to Pre-Dominant Harmonies



Application: Musical Effects of Melodic Mixture

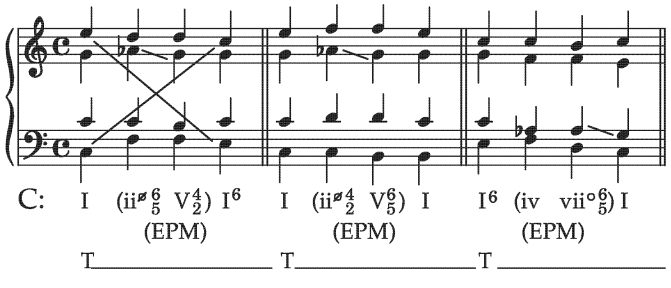
We now explore the musical contexts for mixture chords. Listen to Example 21.3, and focus on the downbeat of m. 3, where mixture appears as the PD seventh chord incorporates $\flat\hat{6}$ to become $ii^{\varnothing 7}$. One way to view this melodic mixture is to interpret the A♭ in the voice—a heartbreaking cry—as a surprising foreign tone to C major. When A♭ enters the melody in m. 3, it has a highly poetic function. Schumann is able to underscore the speaker's pain ("I bear no grudge, even if my heart breaks") by introducing dissonance through modal mixture. The jarring entrance of the A♭ shatters the major mode, just as the poet's heart ("Herz") is broken. Schumann leads the phrase to its high point on the word *heart*, extending the word for most of m. 3. The A♭ continues to intensify the pain by forming an even more dissonant minor ninth when the A♭ is sustained over the dominant (G).

EXAMPLE 21.3 Schumann, "Ich grolle nicht" ("I bear no grudge"), *Dichterliebe*, op. 48, no. 7



Finally, melodic mixture harmonies work very well in contrapuntal expansions of the tonic, especially as embedded phrase models (EPMs), shown in Example 21.4.

EXAMPLE 21.4 Mixture and EPMs

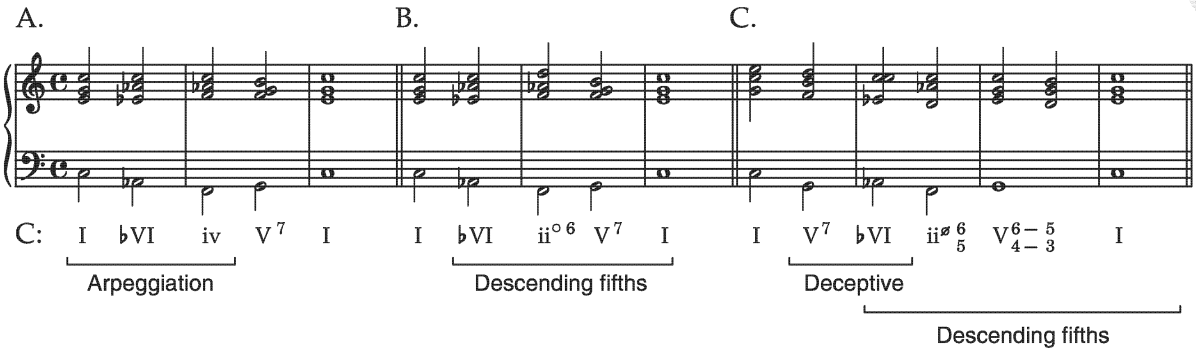


Altered Submediant Harmony: ♭VI

In melodic mixture $\flat\hat{6}$ appears as the *third* or the *fifth* of a mixture chord. A different situation occurs when $\flat\hat{6}$ appears as the *root* of a mixture chord. In these cases, the root of the chord has been shifted down from its usual

position. We describe this as **harmonic mixture** and write roman numerals to reflect the change in the root. In Example 21.5 the A♭-major chord, with ♭$\hat{6}$ as the root, is analyzed as a ♭VI chord.

EXAMPLE 21.5 Common Contexts for ♭VI



Take a moment to examine the nomenclature for harmonic mixture (Example 21.5). Notice that the lowered root of the chord is indicated by a flat sign placed before the roman numeral. If the root (♭$\hat{6}$) were the only altered pitch in the submediant chord, however, the resulting sonority would be a dissonant augmented triad (e.g., in C major, A♭–C–E♮), an unstable chord that common-practice composers never used as an independent harmony. Therefore, mixture is also applied to $\hat{3}$ in order to produce a consonant major triad on VI (just as it is in minor).

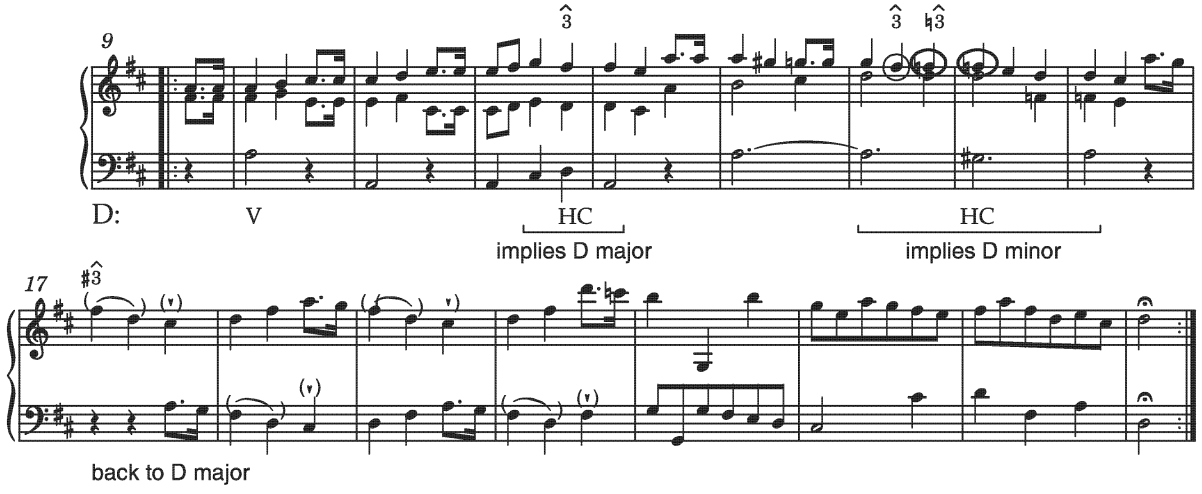
We use the generic "♭VI" to refer to all major triads built on the lowered form of $\hat{6}$ and when generally describing the chord, even if a natural, rather than a flat, is used to notate the chord (e.g., in A major, the ♭VI chord is built on F-natural, not F-flat). Despite its new roman numeral and chromatic inflection, ♭VI continues to function as a submediant chord.

1. It participates in descending arpeggiations (Example 21.5A).
2. It participates in descending-fifth motions (Example 21.5B).
3. It precedes the dominant as a PD chord.
4. It follows the dominant (and substitutes for the tonic chord) in deceptive motions (Example 21.5C).
5. Because ♭VI lies a half step away from the dominant, composers often take advantage of this proximity by using ♭VI motivically as a dramatic upper neighbor that extends V.

Altered Tonic Harmony: i

In addition to being part of ♭VI, ♭$\hat{3}$ creates melodic mixture in altered tonic harmonies. Eighteenth-century composers were keenly aware of the ambiguity that can result from making a major tonic minor. Because this modal juxtaposition calls the mode of an entire piece into question, a minor tonic is more often only implied rather than literally stated. For example, in Example 21.6, the long chromatic line—which extends the dominant (before it returns to the tonic) and includes F♮—implies the parallel mode, D minor.

EXAMPLE 21.6 Mozart, Menuett in D major, K. 94

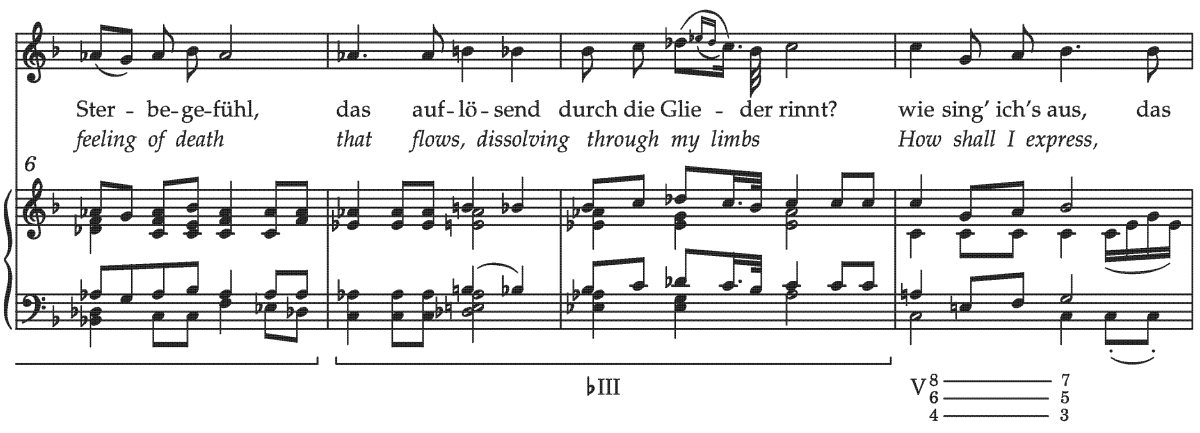


Despite this destabilizing effect, some eighteenth-century composers—including not only Bach but also Classical composers such as Haydn and Mozart—invoked modal mixture on the tonic. By the nineteenth century, some composers (such as Schubert) began to saturate their major-mode pieces with elements of the minor to such a degree that the 24 major and minor keys seem to have fused into 12 major–minor keys. For example, it would seem impossible to tell if a piece were in D major or D minor if it had equal numbers of F♯s/F♮s and B♭s/B♮s; you could only be sure it was in D. Listen to Example 21.7 and note how the key of F major is pervaded with elements of F minor, including a tonicization of ♭III (A♭).

EXAMPLE 21.7 Schubert, "Schwanengesang" ("Swan Song"), op. 23, no. 3, D. 744

Sehr langsam (Molto adagio)

Continued

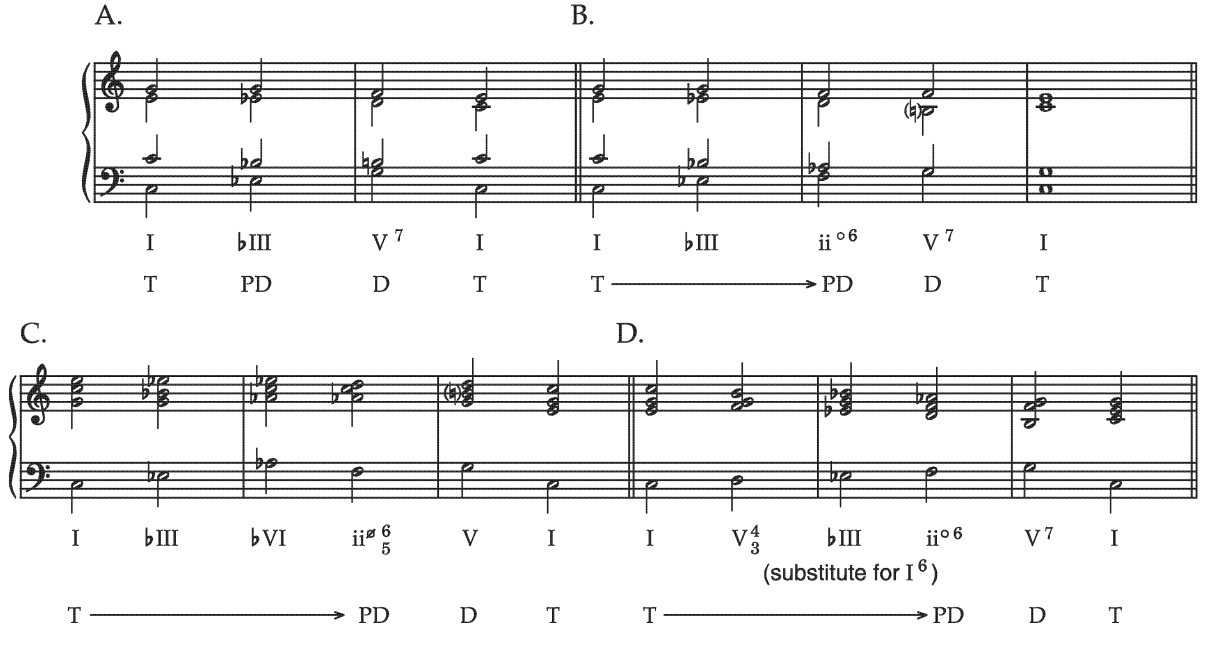


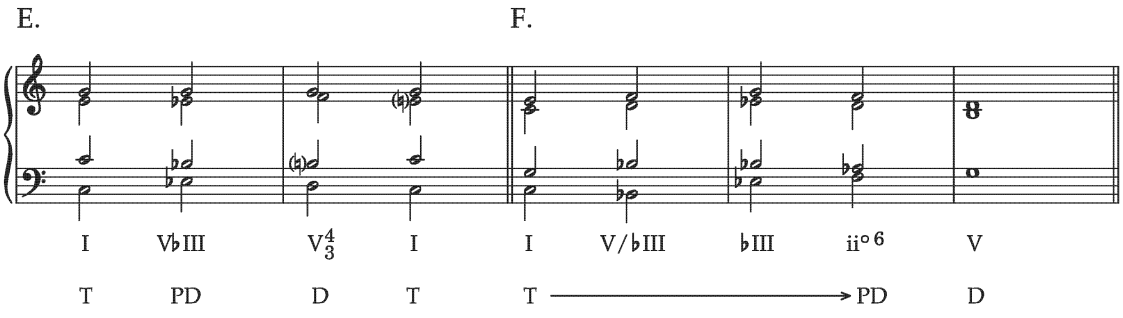
Altered Mediant Harmony: ♭III

Just as ♭VI arose from harmonic mixture, so too does the ♭III chord, which has ♭$\hat{3}$ as its root. The ♭III chord also borrows ♭$\hat{7}$ to create a consonant major triad. As Example 21.8 shows, ♭III continues to function as a mediant chord.

1. It divides the fifth between I and V into two smaller thirds (Example 21.8A).
2. It is a bridge between T and PD (Example 21.8B and D).
3. It participates in descending-fifths motion (Example 21.7C), although less often than the diatonic iii chord.
4. It is a PD chord (Example 21.8A and E).
5. It can be preceded by its dominant (in minor keys, V/III leads to III; in major keys, this progression becomes V/♭III to ♭III) (Example 21.8F).
6. It also is a substitute for I^6 (although not nearly as common as diatonic iii, given that $\hat{3}$ is lowered in ♭III; see Example 21.8D).

EXAMPLE 21.8 Common Contexts for ♭III



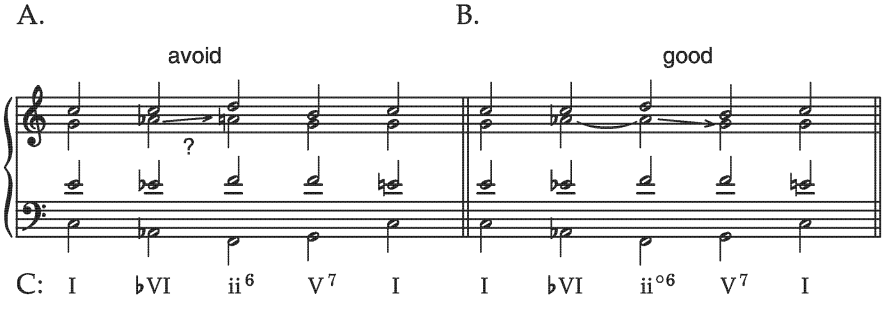


Voice Leading for Mixture Harmonies

The following guidelines restate and develop the rules we used when writing applied chords.

- Avoid doubling a chromatically altered tone unless it is the root of a chord (as in ♭VI).
- Since ♭$\hat{6}$ will be either a neighbor tone ($\hat{5}$–♭$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) or a descending passing tone ($\hat{6}$–♭$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$), prepare and resolve it by step motion. Keeping the chromatic line $\hat{6}$–♭$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$ in a single voice will help avoid cross relations.
- Once you introduce ♭VI, iv or ii°, continue to use mixture chords until you reach the dominant function. This is because ♭$\hat{6}$ possesses such a powerful drive to $\hat{5}$ that any intrusion of the diatonic $\hat{6}$ would not only create a jarring cross relation but also ruin the drive to the dominant (Example 21.9).

EXAMPLE 21.9 Part Writing Mixture Chords



WORKBOOK 1
21.1–21.2

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

21.1

Complete the given varied tasks.

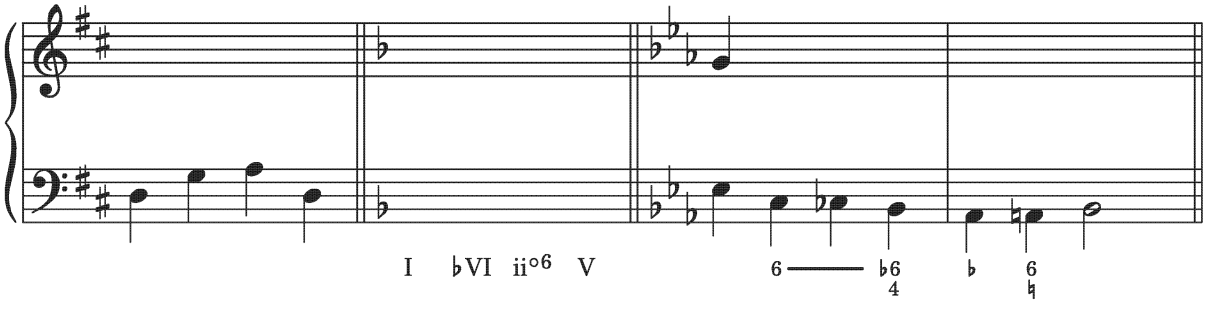
Exercise A. Add upper voices to the bass line; include one example of mixture. Analyze.

Exercise B. Complete the progression in four voices.

SOLVED/APP 6

Exercise C. Realize the figured bass by adding upper voices. Analyze.

A. B. C.



WRITING

21.2

SOLVED/APP 6

Complete the following tasks on a separate sheet of manuscript paper. Use a key signature.

A. In the major keys of D, F, and A, write the following chords in four voices. Do not connect them to one another.

ii$^{ø6}_{5}$ iv ♭VI ♭III V^7/♭VI V$^4_3$/♭III

B. Write the following progressions in four voices and in your choice of meter.

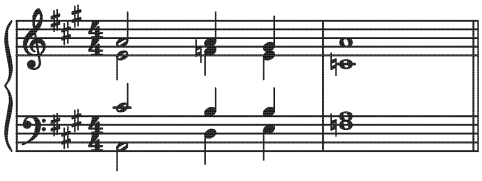
1. In C major: I–♭VI–iv–V–I. Begin with $\hat{3}$ in the soprano.
2. In F major: I–ii$^{ø6}_{5}$–V$^6_4$ – $^5_3$–I
3. In E♭ major: I–IV–iv–V$^{8-7}$–I
4. In G and E major: I–I^6–iv–I–♭III–ii$^{ø6}_{5}$–V–I
5. In C and A major: I–♭VI–iv–vii°^{7}/V–V$^{6-♭6-5}_{4\ \ \ \ 3}$–♭VI–iv^6–V$^{8-7}$–I

ANALYSIS

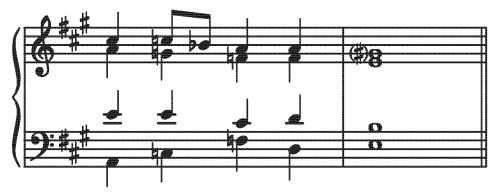
21.3

Determine the locations and types of mixture harmonies in the following excerpts. *Remember that not all chromatically altered chords result from mixture; some are applied chords.* Mixture harmonies are independent chords that participate in the harmonic progression and usually carry a pre-dominant function. Applied harmonies, by contrast, function as dominants and thus merely point to more important chords that are tonicized. Provide a two-level harmonic analysis.

A.

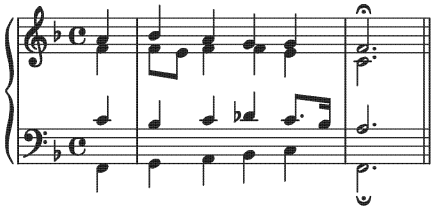


B.



SOLVED/APP 6

C. J. S. Bach, "Christus, der ist mein Leben"



SOLVED/APP 6

D.

E. Mizzou Waltz

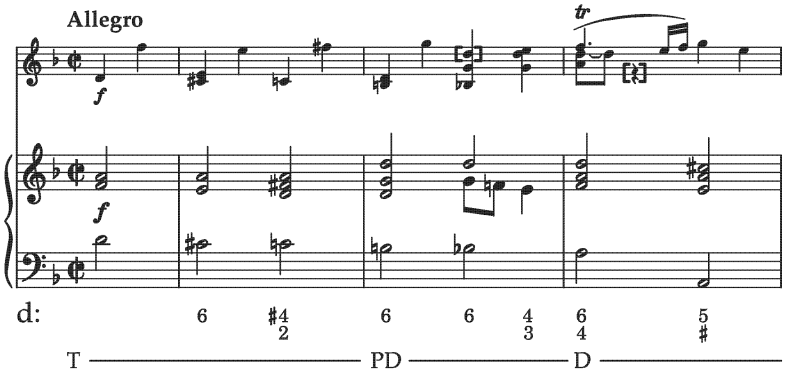
F. Schubert, "Du bist die Ruh," op. 59, no. 3

Chromatic Stepwise Bass Descents

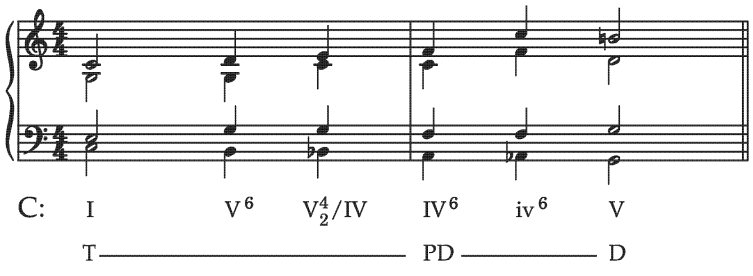
In Chapter 13 we encountered two types of stepwise bass descents leading to the dominant. Because there are two diatonic forms of $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ in minor, it is possible for this descent to be completely chromaticized (e.g., $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\flat\hat{7}$–$\hat{6}$–$\flat\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) in a minor piece, as shown in Example 21.10A, where Geminiani writes a fully chromatic descending bass line by using an applied chord (V^4_2 of IV) that leads to major IV^6. With modal mixture, we can import this powerful progression into major-mode pieces. Examples 21.10B and C illustrate two common settings. Example 21.10B shows a direct descent to V, and Example 21.10C shows an indirect descent to PD on $\hat{4}$, followed by the dominant. Note that the use of a passing minor v^6 in Example 21.10C leads to the pre-dominant, which is expanded through a **chromatic voice exchange** (where the **A**/F in the IV^6 chord are exchanged by the F/**A**♭ in the $ii^{ø6}_5$ chord).

EXAMPLE 21.10 The Chromaticized Step-Descent Bass

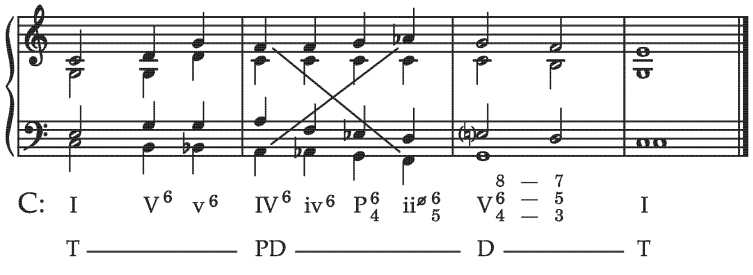
A. Geminiani, *The Art of Playing the Violin*, op. 9, no. 8



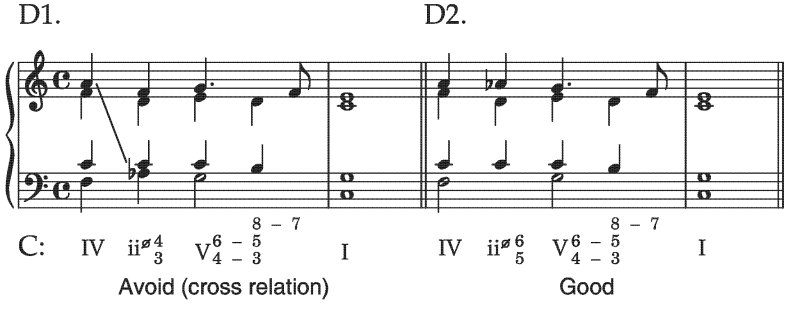
B.



C.



D.



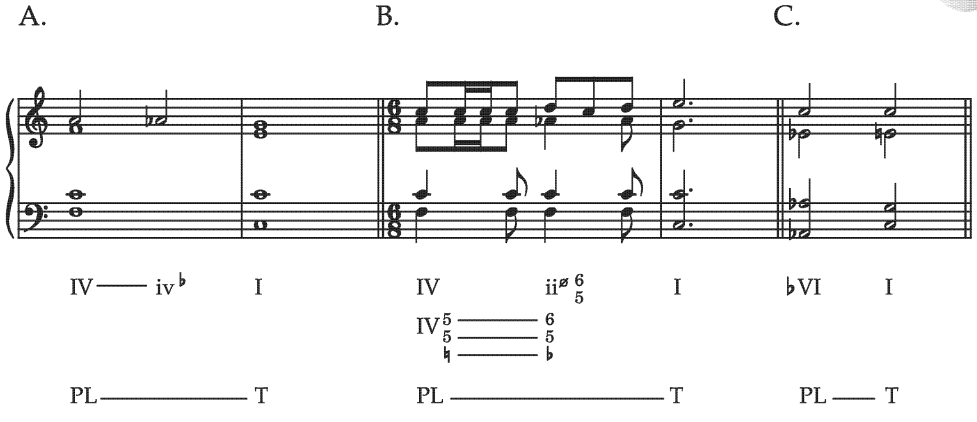
Notice that chromatic voice exchanges necessarily involve strong cross relations. In such cases, intervening passing chords diminish any harshness that would have occurred in a direct succession of chromatic tones. It is best to avoid direct outer-voice cross relations; instead, keep the chromatic motion within a single voice (Example 21.10D).

Plagal Motions

During the nineteenth century, the role of the dominant harmony gradually changed. For the most part, progressions still led to the tonic, but the dominant was often conspicuously absent from the cadence. This is due largely to nineteenth-century composers' obsession with creating novel harmonic combinations, along with a general distaste for commonplace formulas such as V^7–I. The growing acceptance of mixture harmonies partially accounts for this change, since their dramatic effects made them popular substitutes for the dominant.

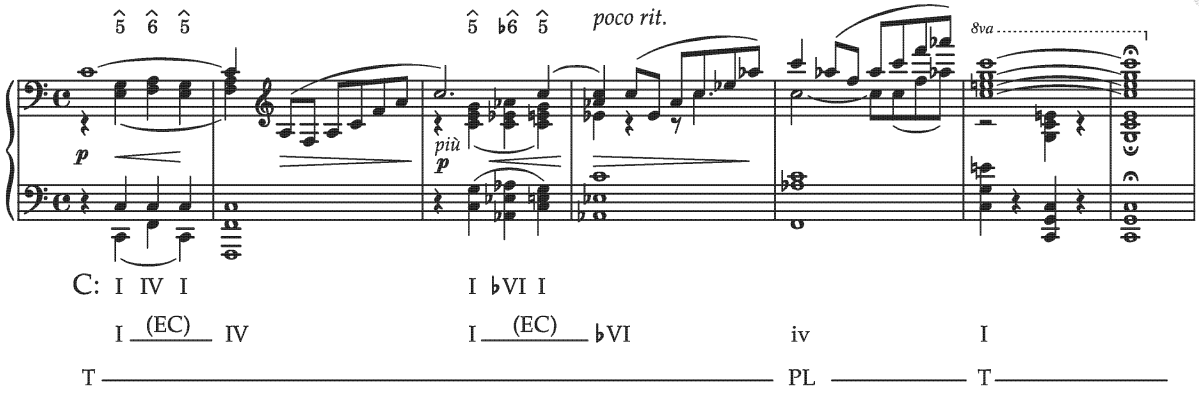
For example, iv leads convincingly to the dominant in both major and minor modes. However, because ♭$\hat{6}$ strongly desires resolution by half step to $\hat{5}$, iv also can move directly to the tonic at a cadence (Example 21.11A). Plagal motion is not restricted to the subdominant. Both the supertonic and the submediant may move directly to tonic (Examples 21.11B and C). The cadence in Example 21.11B is commonly heard in popular music of the 1920s through the l950s and in films today, and is therefore called a **Hollywood cadence**. Notice that the Hollywood cadence is a chromatically embellished plagal cadence (IV–I); a contrapuntal 5–6 motion and mixture transform IV into ii$^{\text{ø}6}_{5}$ before the resolution to the tonic chord. We use the term **plagal motion** and the abbreviation "PL" at the second level to describe progressions in which harmonies other than the dominant lead to the tonic.

EXAMPLE 21.11 Common Plagal Motions



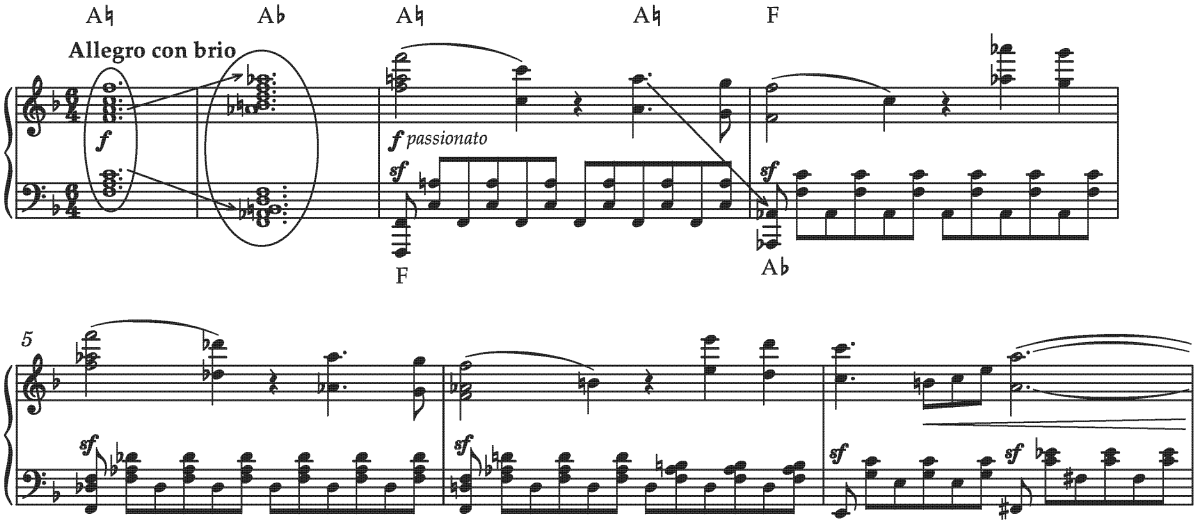
Notice both the absence of dominant harmony (even at the final cadence) and the prominence of mixture in Example 21.12. The passage begins with an expansion of tonic harmony through an upper-neighbor figure G–A–G in the alto. Although a repetition of this figure is expected in m. 3, ♭VI instead participates in the upper-neighbor figure, now chromaticized (G–A♭–G). The mixture continues with ♭VI and minor iv resolving to the tonic in a plagal cadence.

EXAMPLE 21.12 Brahms, Symphony no. 3 in F major, op. 90, *Andante*



The prominence of the neighbor figure—in particular, the conflict between A♮ and A♭—indicates that this gesture is motivic. In fact, this motive is not restricted to the slow movement of Brahms's third symphony. The seeds are planted in the opening measures of the symphony's first movement (Example 21.13). The A♮/A♭ conflict is set into motion by the cross relation in mm. 1–2 and is intensified in mm. 3 by a voice exchange. This pitch-class conflict between A♮ and A♭ that takes place in the first and second movements seems especially important, given that the two movements are in different keys: A♮ and A♭ function as $\hat{3}$ and $\flat\hat{3}$ in F major; in C major they are $\hat{6}$ and $\flat\hat{6}$.

EXAMPLE 21.13 Brahms, Symphony no. 3 in F major, op. 90, *Allegro con brio*



Modal Mixture, Applied Chords, and Other Chromatic Harmonies

Two tonal processes account for chromaticism in tonal music.

1. Tonicization is intimately associated with *dominant* function, as new chromatic tones act as *temporary leading tones*.
2. Modal mixture usually occurs within the *pre-dominant* function, as the new chromatic tones retain their scale degree function but in an *altered* form.

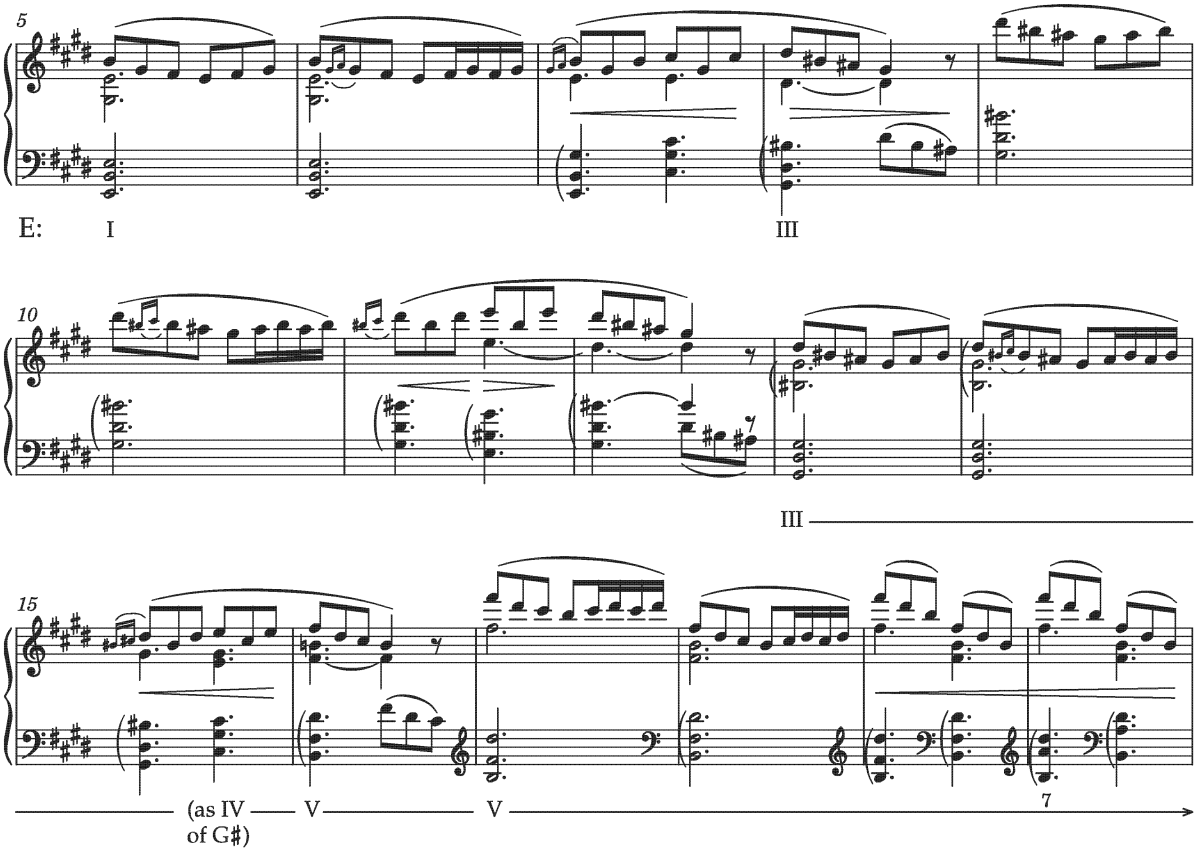
Occasionally, composers use two other chromatic harmonies on $\hat{3}$ and $\hat{6}$ of a major key, but these harmonies are *not* products of tonicization or modal mixture. The first is a major mediant chord (III) whose root is diatonic $\hat{3}$. Like diatonic iii and mixture ♭III, III most often is part of a rising bass arpeggiation (I–III–V), which may include a PD (I–III–IV–V).

Look at Example 21.14A. The piece is in E major. Note that the G♯-major triad is not an applied chord (V/vi), but rather a self-standing harmony. The second chromatic harmony that one occasionally encounters is a major submediant chord (VI) whose root is the diatonic $\hat{6}$ (Example 21.14B). And, like vi and ♭VI, VI most often leads to IV. Note that had VI led to ii, it would be

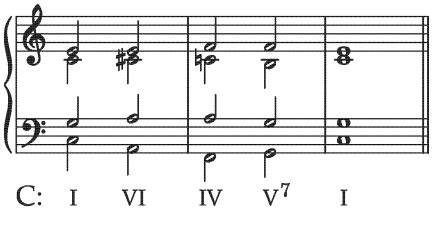
better interpreted as V/ii rather than VI (e.g., in C major, VI [A major] leading to ii [D minor] would sound more like an applied chord than an independent harmony). That VI is an independent harmony is made clear by the behavior of C♯ (in the alto): Rather than ascending to D, as it would had it functioned as an applied chord, it instead descends to C♮.

EXAMPLE 21.14

A. Grieg, "Morning" from *Peer Gynt Suite*, op. 46, no. 1

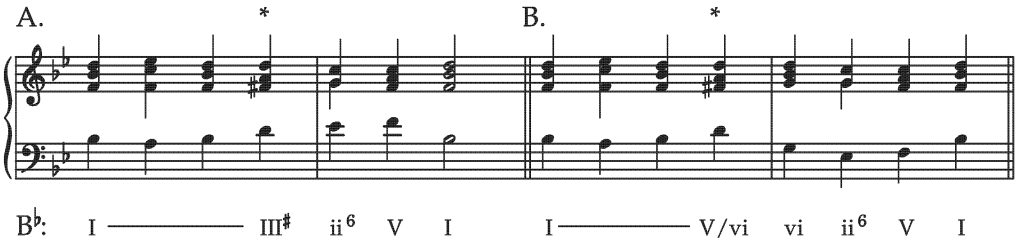


B.



Indeed, it is important in your analysis that you discern between these chords and applied dominant chords. For a final example, if you encounter a D-major harmony in B♭ major, you must determine whether it is the applied V/vi or the chromatic III chord. In Example 21.15A, D major functions as a chromatic mediant chord (III), leading to the PD ii^6 chord. In Example 21.15B, D major is V/vi, an applied dominant chord leading to G minor (vi).

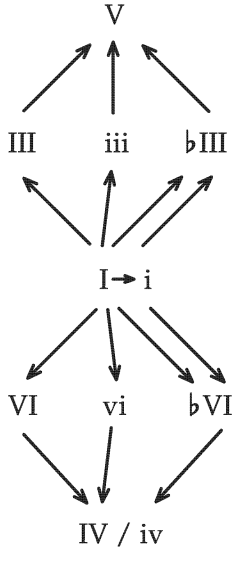
EXAMPLE 21.15 III♯ Versus V/vi



Summary

The major tonic now has access to three sets of third relations: to the *diatonic* upper and lower thirds (iii, vi), to the *raised chromatic* thirds (III, VI), and to the *lowered chromatic thirds* resulting from modal mixture (♭III, ♭VI). Notice that the minor tonic's options for third relations are very limited: A minor tonic will usually move only to its diatonic III and VI. Example 21.16 shows how the submediant and mediant harmonies fit into the common-practice tonal scheme. Upper thirds lead to $\hat{5}$ through arpeggiation, and lower thirds lead to $\hat{4}$ through arpeggiation.

EXAMPLE 21.16



WORKBOOK 1
21.3–21.4

Modal mixture plays a central role in tonal music—one that is much more varied than merely coloring harmonies for musical contrast. When paired with their diatonic counterparts, mixture chords present the potential for powerful musical conflicts that are often dramatically worked out over the course of a work.

The complex workings of chromatic pitches became a critical feature of nineteenth-century compositions. Through modal mixture, a chromatic pitch may appear early and at the surface of a work. As the work progresses, the mixture accrues significance and evolves until it participates in the deepest levels of musical structure.

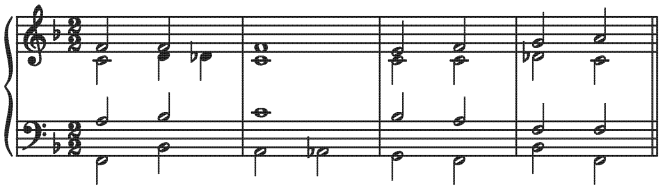
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

21.4

Analyze the following examples, which illustrate plagal motions and other chromatic chords.

A.



SOLVED/APP 6

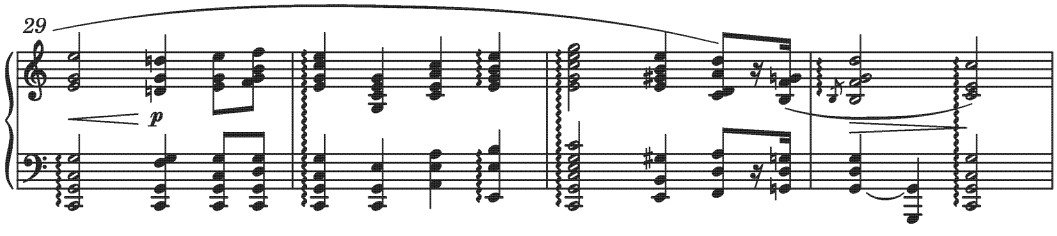
B.

C. "Heartfelt Greeting Card"

What type of period is this?

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Chopin, Nocturne in C minor, op. 48, no. 1



E. Beethoven, Piano Trio no. 5 in D major, "Ghost," op. 70, no. 1, *Presto*

COMPOSITION

21.5

Complete the following tasks in four-voice chorale style (choose a meter) on a separate sheet of manuscript paper. Analyze; then play your solutions on the keyboard.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. In D major, write a progression that expands tonic with a mixture chord, includes two suspensions, and incorporates ♭VI.
B. In A major, write a progression that contains two short phrases that create a PIP, includes $ii^{\varnothing 6}_{5}$ in the first phrase and iv in the second phrase, and includes an applied chord in each phrase.
C. Given an F-major triad, use it correctly within progressions in the keys of B♭ major, D minor, D major, and A major.
D. In E major, write a progression that includes a chromatic step-descent bass that leads to iv. Close with a PAC.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- chromatic voice exchange
- Hollywood cadence
- mixture
  - harmonic mixture
  - melodic mixture
  - modal mixture
- plagal relations

CHAPTER 22

Expansion of Modal Mixture Harmonies: Chromatic Modulation and the German *Lied*

Chapter 21 introduced the concept of mixture, and presented examples in which the mixture sonorities lasted only a moment or so and served to color a progression. Yet surely modal mixture can be extended for more than a single chord. Remember the Mascagni example (Example 21.1), in which F minor intruded for several measures. Think back also to the discussion of applied chords versus mixture, which showed that when an applied dominant precedes a mixture chord, the two together serve as a mini-tonicization of a chromatic harmony.

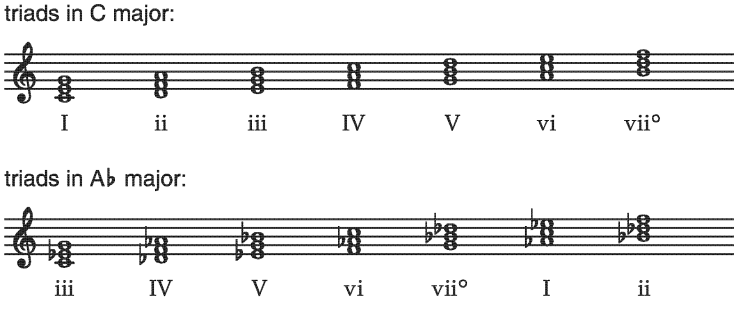
In this chapter, we explore **chromatic modulations**. This is based on the assumption that ♭VI and ♭III are the most commonly tonicized chromatic harmonies in eighteenth- and nineteenth-century music. Composers less often tonicize VI (e.g., C major to A major) and III (e.g., C major to E major), but we consider these relations as well.

We explore first the means by which composers move smoothly from diatonic harmonies to expanded chromatic harmonies within progressions, then learn how chromatic modulations function within the harmonic progressions of entire works.

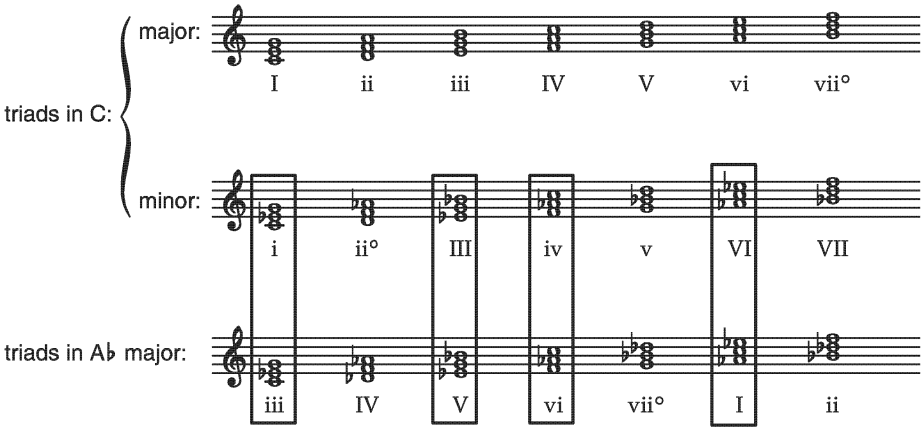
Chromatic Pivot-Chord Modulations

In order to move smoothly from one key area to another, composers usually employ a pivot harmony that is common to both keys. When searching for a suitable pivot for chromatic modulation, however, there are no triads common to both keys. For example, there are no chords in common between C major and A♭ (♭VI; see Example 22.1). However, the knowledge that a major key often borrows from its parallel minor lets us reenvision our move from C major as one from C major/minor to A♭ major (Example 22.2).

EXAMPLE 22.1 Absence of Common Chords Between C and A♭



EXAMPLE 22.2 Common Chord Between C Major/Minor and A♭



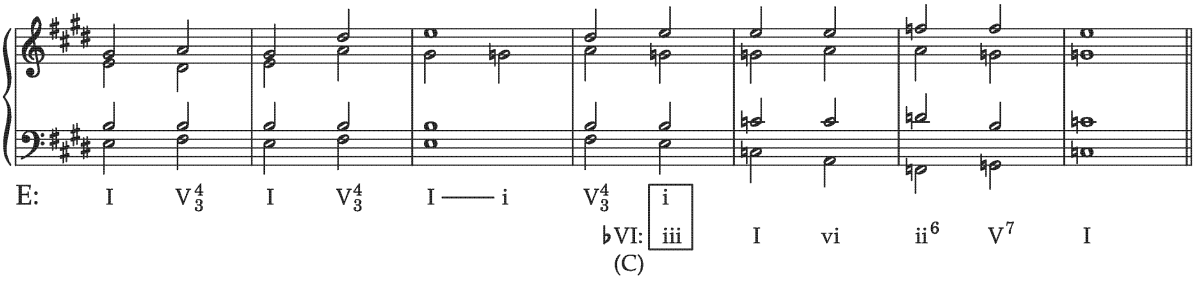
Permitting modal mixture to enter into the equation causes four potential pivot chords to emerge in Example 22.2. We can formulate the following rule for **chromatic pivot-chord modulations**:

In a modulation to a chromatic key that results from modal mixture (such as ♭III or ♭VI), the pivot chord must be a mixture chord in the original key.

This rule holds so consistently for music of the nineteenth century that the presence of modal mixture—particularly of the tonic—often signals an upcoming tonicization of a chromatic key. This is true because, owing to the modal shift, the tonic loses its anchoring power and instead begins to act as a pre-dominant to an upcoming ♭VI or ♭III. Listen to Example 22.3A and note how the modal shift from E major (I) to E minor (i) nicely prepares the motion from E major to C major (♭VI). The E-minor chord functions as iii in C major and as a bridge that connects the two distantly related keys.

EXAMPLE 22.3 Chromatic Third Modulation (E → C) Through Modal Mixture

A.



Now listen to Example 22.3B to see how Beethoven artfully uses this very same harmonic progression in his E-major piano sonata, considerably expanding it.

B. Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 27 in E minor, op. 90, *Nicht zu geschwind und sehr singbar vorzutragen (To be played not too fast and yet very songfully)*

An Analytical Interlude: Schubert's Waltz in F Major

Listen to Example 22.4 and determine the following:

1. Which chromatic harmony is the goal of the modulation: ♭III or ♭VI?
2. What is the pivot chord used to change to the chromatic key?
3. When does the original key return?
4. What is the function of the chromatic modulation in the overall harmonic plan of the work?

EXAMPLE 22.4 Schubert, Waltz in F major, *36 Original Dances*, D. 365, no. 33

After an alternation of I and V in F major, the major tonic is converted to minor in m. 13, where it functions as a pivot leading to A♭ major (♭III). The original key returns with a V^7 chord in m. 25. Given that chromatic modulation participates in the overall harmonic progression of a passage, the tonicized ♭III is actually part of a large tonal arpeggiation: I–♭III–V^7–I.

A motive that appears early in a work and on the music's surface may reappear later at a deeper level. Even the most common progressions or fleeting nonchord tones can provide the means for later development. This is just the case in Schubert's Waltz, which opens with a melody projecting the upper-neighbor motive C–D–C. The same upper-neighbor motive is restated in the parallel minor (C–D♭–C at mm. 13–14) to prepare the entrance of ♭III. Notice also that the neighbor motion has been transferred to the harmonic domain at mm. 13–14 where the bass F falls to E♭.

Writing Chromatic Modulations

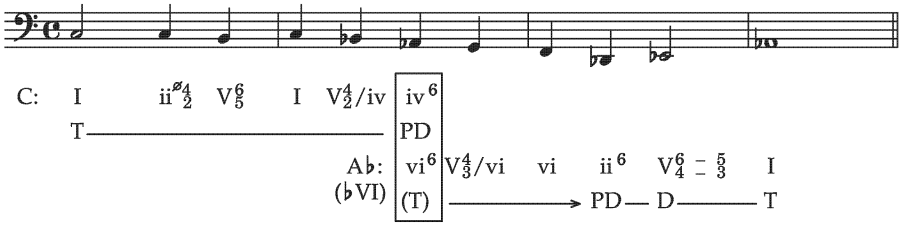
There are no new part-writing rules, but keep the following in mind:

1. Add the necessary accidentals in the new key, or, rather than writing many accidentals for several measures, simply add a new key signature.
2. The pivot chord must always result from modal mixture. Often, it is effective to use minor i (as vi or iii in the new key).
3. Try to create a seamless musical process by expanding the PD in the new key, either through inversions or a brief tonicization. This postpones the cadence in the new key and therefore allows the listener to become acclimated to the new tonal environment.

Study the following model analysis (Example 22.5).

- C major is established with an EPM. Note that mixture is already hinted with the $ii^{\varnothing 4}_{2}$ chord.
- The pivot chord is a mixture chord in the original key (iv^6 in C major) and a diatonic chord in the new key (vi^6 in A♭ major).
- In the new key, the submediant is elaborated (with a V^4_3/vi chord) in order to postpone the cadence.
- This is followed by the cadential dominant and tonic, with a PAC in A♭ major.

EXAMPLE 22.5 Composing a Modulation from C → A♭



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
22.1–22.2

22.1

Answer the following questions.

SOLVED/APP 6

1. Given the following major-key modulations, what pivot chords are possible? (Use modal mixture in the first key.)
   a. D to F (♭III)
   b. G to B♭ (♭III)
   c. E♭ to C♭ (♭VI)
   d. A to F (♭VI)
2. Complete the following chart.

In what key is the triad . . .

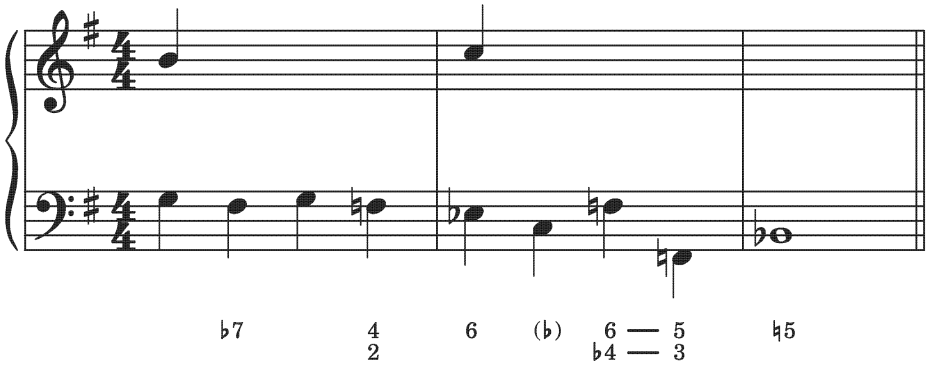
triads	I	III	IV	V	♭VI
D major	D major	B♭ major	A major	G major	F♯ major
C major					
E major					
B♭ major					
F major					
A major					

WRITING

22.2 Figured Bass

SOLVED/APP 6

Realize the figured bass below in four voices and analyze.



22.3

The following short progressions end with a chromatic pivot chord. To which chromatic keys could the chord lead? Choose one of your solutions for each example, and write a convincing bass voice that secures the new chromatic key.

SOLVED/APP 6

Example: C major: I–I^{6}–iv
Answer: iv in C major can be vi in A♭ major (♭VI) or ii in E♭ major (♭III).
D major: I–V^{6}–I–V^{7}–♭VI
F major: I–♭VI–V$^{4}_{3}$/iv–iv
A major: I–V^{6}/♭III–♭III

Unprepared and Common-Tone Chromatic Modulations

Unlike tonicizations achieved smoothly by means of a harmony that simultaneously functions in multiple harmonic contexts, **unprepared chromatic modulations** (sometimes referred to as *direct modulations*) occur without the aid of a pivot chord.

Listen for the unprepared chromatic modulation in Example 22.6. The opening 11 measures could be interpreted in two ways: as a single phrase that is divided into subphrases (I–V^7, V^7–I), or as a two-phrase parallel continuous period. After a grand pause in m. 12, the opening theme abruptly enters in A♭ (♭VI).

EXAMPLE 22.6 Haydn, String Quartet in C major, op. 54, no. 2, Hob III.58, *Allegro*

Most chromatic modulations are not as abrupt as that of Example 22.6. Often the composer will communicate by rhetorical means that a chromatic departure is approaching by providing the listener with a thread that connects the two keys.

Listen to Example 22.7, in which Schubert juxtaposes D major (I) with B♭ major (♭VI). Even though there is no hint of the upcoming motion to ♭VI, the pitch D in the violins is common to both keys: It is heard in retrospect as $\hat{1}$ of D major and is reinterpreted as $\hat{3}$ in B♭ major. This type of modulation, which usually links two nondiatonic keys lying a third above or below one another, is called a **chromatic common-tone modulation.**

EXAMPLE 22.7 Schubert, String Quartet no. 3 in B♭ major, D. 36, Menuetto-Trio

Both chromatic common-tone modulations and motivic development are common in nineteenth-century music. Listen to Example 22.8, the opening of Schubert's last piano sonata, written just weeks before his untimely death in 1828 at the age of 31. Identify the location and type of chromatic modulation. The opening tune repeats in the key of G♭ major (♭VI) in m. 20, and it returns to the tonic in mm. 36–37. The chromatic common-tone modulation in mm. 18–20 is surprising; a written-out trill (in the bass) is all that separates I and ♭VI (except for C♭ and A♭, which help to prepare G♭ major).

The written-out trill was in turn prepared by the preceding mysterious trill on ♭$\hat{6}$ in m. 8. Thus, the G♭ seed that Schubert planted in the trill germinates when the trill is written out in m. 19 and blossoms in the modulation in mm. 20–35. When Schubert boldly heads the tonicized G♭ major back to B♭ in mm. 36–37, the listener is transported back to the initial measures of the piece and the moment when the neighbor motive, ♭$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$, was born.

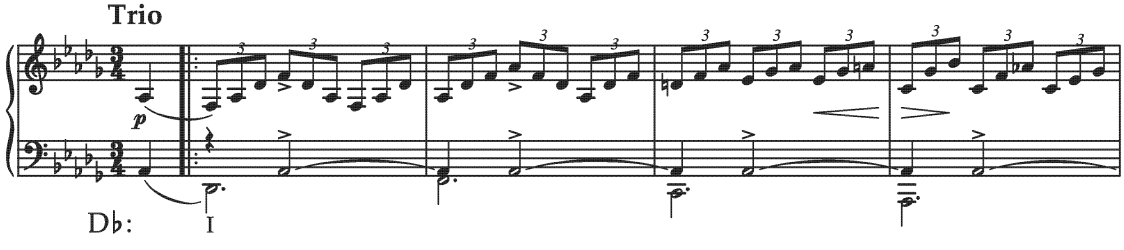
EXAMPLE 22.8 Schubert, Sonata in B♭ major, op. posth., D. 960, *Molto moderato*

Continued

Analytical Challenges

Some chromatic modulations pose interpretive challenges. Listen to Example 22.9. The trio begins in D♭ major, with its first section closing strongly with a PAC in m. 58. A sudden shift to the parallel minor (m. 59) is followed by a section in A major. How should we interpret the modulation to A major (♯V)?

EXAMPLE 22.9 Schubert Impromptu in A♭, from *Four Impromptus,* D. 935, *Trio*



Consider Schubert's dilemma. He obviously felt that this piece in D♭ major should modulate to ♭VI, which is B𝄫 major—with a painful nine-flat key signature. He might have considered tonicizing some other scale degree, but his artistic sensibilities and the piece's unity demanded that the music move to ♭VI. What to do? For over two centuries composers have employed a simple and elegant solution to this problem: write in the enharmonically equivalent key. So, instead of composing a section of music in B𝄫 major, Schubert wrote it in A major—a much easier key to navigate.

Therefore, we interpret the relationship between D♭ major and A major as I going to ♭VI (and not ♯V). This is confirmed when the diatonic dominant (A♭ major) returns: A♭ remains a structural pillar and is never altered. We have a chromatic pivot-chord modulation: The shift to D♭ minor in m. 59 is a pivot that links D♭ to its ♭VI key.

EXAMPLE 22.10 Schubert, "Der Flug der Zeit" ("The Flight of Time"), op. 7, no. 2, D. 515

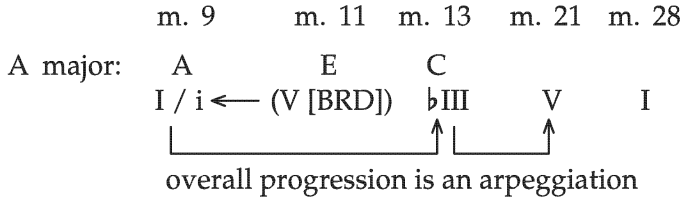
Now consider Example 22.10, which has an extended tonicization of C major in mm. 13–20. How does C fit into the overall progression? There are two potential interpretations:

1. There is a modulation from A major to E major in mm. 9–12, and E major goes to C major through a chromatic common-tone modulation.

2. The first 12 measures stay in A major. The E-major chord in m. 12 is a back-relating dominant and is followed by an extended tonicization of C major (♭III).

The best interpretation of C major rests on the fact that, while V is a point of arrival in m. 12, it is one that involves being "on" rather than "in" V. Accordingly, V is understood as back-relating, and C major is connected to A major as its ♭III. This interpretation is supported by the fact that C major is prepared by the modal shift to A minor in m. 9. Study Example 22.11, which presents a tonal summary of "Der Flug der Zeit."

EXAMPLE 22.11 Schubert, "Der Flug der Zeit": Tonal Interpretation



Modal Mixture and the German *Lied*

We now examine songs written by two of the most important composers of the nineteenth century, Franz Schubert and Robert Schumann, to see how modal mixture functions in larger contexts. We will also explore how composers control the interaction of music and poetry to project underlying poetic meaning in their vocal compositions.

In nineteenth-century Germany and Austria, the genre of song (*Lied*, plural *Lieder*) became an important laboratory for experimentation. The idea was to develop musically expressive forces capable of meeting the needs of communicating the emotionally rich poetry of the time. Modal mixture was often at the heart of these innovations. For example, the juxtaposition of mixture tones and harmonies against diatonic ones was almost always a sign of emotional conflicts, tensions, or contradictions. Consider the role of $\hat{6}$ (in both raised and lowered forms) in Schubert's song "Lachen und Weinen" ("Laughter and Tears") (Example 22.12). Notice that each form of $\hat{6}$ is highlighted within its respective mode, but also listen to how $\flat\hat{6}$ occurs in the major tonic, where it is starkly juxtaposed with its diatonic counterpart.

The shift to the parallel minor prepares the listener for the substitution of $\flat\hat{6}$ for $\hat{6}$ at m. 25, where the new expressive tone underscores the melancholy text "and why I weep now." The specific placement of the F♭–E♭ sigh, where the upper note is a dissonant ninth over the bass, strongly highlights the word *weep*. The next development of F♭ (at m. 27) transforms the pitch $\flat\hat{6}$ into the chord ♭VI.

Example 22.12 shows where a ♭VI chord captures the protagonist's wonder at love's ability to arouse conflicting feelings of pain at twilight and joy at daybreak by means of a strange and wondrous-sounding chromatic harmony. In summary, the diatonic and mixed forms of $\hat{6}$ represent these two sides of his emotions. Both forms of $\hat{6}$ are neighbors to $\hat{5}$; that they share a common genesis in $\hat{5}$ may be analogous to the fact that love is the source of both his pain and his joy.

EXAMPLE 22.12 Schubert, "Lachen und Weinen" ("Laughter and Tears"), D. 777

EXAMPLE 22.13 Schubert, "Die liebe Farbe" ("The Beloved Color") and "Die böse Farbe" ("The Evil Color"), from *Die schöne Müllerin*

Continued

Schubert's song cycle *Die schöne Müllerin* furnishes another example of the role that mixture plays in projecting a poetic text. The drama begins with a roaming youth's discovery of a brook that leads him to a mill and ultimately to a young woman with whom he falls in love. As he begins to press his affections, he finds that she does not love him but rather someone else. What follows is the youth's downward spiral, characterized by anger, jealousy, bitterness, and finally, when nothing can quench his pain, suicide. In the second half of the cycle, the young miller points to the fact that his gifts of green objects, such as the sash from his guitar, delighted her, and her delight—and with it her love—was only intensified as nature, in all of its green beauty, resounded in him.

But with the entrance of the hunter, who symbolizes authority and physical power, the miller's idyllic world comes crashing down about him. The woman is immediately drawn to the hunter, who is dressed in traditional green. The color is now poisoned for the miller, and, as he roams through the forest nature's green only mocks him, providing a thorny reminder that his beloved's affections are directed toward someone else. In the songs "Die liebe Farbe" ("The Beloved Color") and "Die böse Farbe" ("The Evil Color"), modal mixture plays crucial roles in projecting the powerful feelings aroused by the color green (Example 22.13). In fact, vacillations between the major and the minor modes through modal mixture become an important musical metaphor for Schubert in conveying the young miller's abrupt changes of mood.

An Analytical Interlude: Schumann's "Waldesgesprach"

Robert Schumann also used modal mixture to project poetic drama. In his song "Waldesgesprach" ("Forest Conversation"), from *Liederkreis*, op. 39 (Example 22.14), what appears at first as a simple chromatic tonicization is revealed through analysis to be an important dramatic moment. As the song

gathers momentum, the motion to ♭VI reverberates throughout, foreshadowing and directing the surprising turn of events that follows.

In familiarizing yourself with this work start by reading the text carefully, and then listen to the song with the following questions in mind:

1. What musical techniques does Schumann employ in setting the scene of the forest?
2. How does Schumann differentiate the two characters musically?
3. What is the form of the song?
4. What is the relation of the chromatic tonicization to the overall key, and how does the composer secure the new key (i.e., is it prepared or unprepared)?

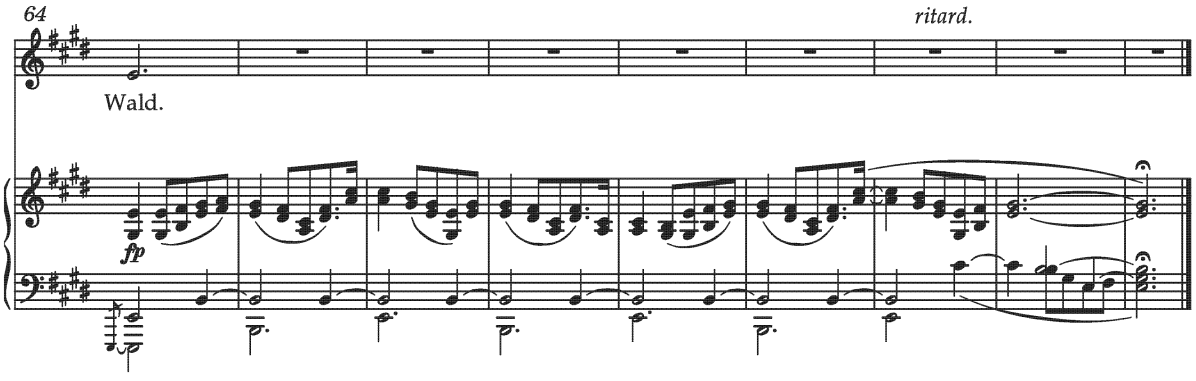
EXAMPLE 22.14 Schumann, "Waldesgesprach," from *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 3

Continued

15
p
heim! Gross ist der Män - ner Trug und List, vor
home! Great is the deceit and guile of man
p
Ped.
21
f
Schmerz mein Herz ge - bro - chen ist, wohl irrt das Wald-horn
pain has broken my heart, the horn sounds
aug. 6th → V
27
her und hin, o flieh', o flieh'. du weisst nicht, wer ich bin.
here and there Oh flee! You do not know who I am
aug. 6th → V (as IV/E)
ii⌀ 6/5
V
33
f
So reich ge - schmückt ist Ross und Weib, so wun - der-schön, so wun-der-schön der
So richly covered are horse and woman, so beautiful her

39
ritard.
Im tempo
ritard.
Im tempo
jun - ge Leib; jetzt kenn' ich dich, Gott steh mir bei, du bist die He-xe Lo - re - lei!
young body Now I know who you are—God save me! You are the witch, Lorelei!
45
Du kennst mich wohl, du kennst mich wohl, von ho-hem
Indeed you know me—from rock's height
51
Stein schaut still mein Schloss tief in den Rhein; es ist schon spät, es ist schon
my castle silently gazes deep into the Rhine. It is late, it is cold,
aug. 6th → "V" (P) aug. 6th →
58
ritard.
kalt, kennst nim-mer-mehr aus die-sem Wald, nim-mer-mehr, nim-mer-mehr aus die-sem
you will never leave this forest.
"V"

Continued



The story begins traditionally enough: A horseman comes across a beautiful woman deep in the forest, and, after informing her of the dangers of the woods and extolling her beauty, he offers to guide her home. The unsettling chromatic departure to C major to herald the woman's entrance is curious. This abrupt juxtaposition of E major and C major, coupled with the man's inability to complete the final word of his phrase, *heim* ("home"), in his key rather than in her foreign key, not only enhances the strangeness of this woman, cloaking her in tonal mystery, but also plants the seeds for his later demise.

The woman informs the man that she has been hurt in love before and by a hunter. Apparently, from her past unsuccessful encounters, she has now gained some sort of strength (intimating an otherworldly power) and warns the man that he does not know with whom (or what) he is dealing. She gives him one—and only one—chance to flee. Foolishly, the man stays and continues his flattery. But just as there was an abrupt shift in the first section, so too is there one here. As he realizes she is the infamous Lorelei (a demon in the form of a beautiful woman who lures men to their death) placid E major is thrown over by its parallel minor, the stark modal shift enhancing this terror-filled moment. In the final verse, the woman informs the man that he is ensnared and will never again leave the forest. He is hers.

The introduction to the song captures an out-of-doors feeling with its sprightly triple meter. The simple alternation of tonic and dominant in the bass lends a folklike quality to the song, while the syncopated upper voice of the left hand—with the emphasis on beat 2—creates a fifth drone and rhythmically suggests the feel of folk dances such as the mazurka and the polonaise. The lilting right hand also supports the rustic character of the introduction. In fact, the two-voice intervallic progression in the right hand with stepwise motion in the soprano (E–F♯–G♯) and leaps in the alto (G♯–B–E) is used by Schumann because of its connection with the sound of hunting horns. This trick of invoking the idea of the hunt has a double meaning in the song: Not only do we think immediately of the dense forest, its fauna, and the hunter's horn, but we are also reminded of another meaning of the hunt—that of seduction. By the end of the poem, however, we discover that our original expectations are shattered as the roles of hunter and prey are reversed.

The form of the song is dependent on the interaction of its two characters:

A (he speaks)—B (she speaks)—A′ (he speaks)—B′ (she speaks)—Coda

A number of musical features reinforce hearing the piece in this way: First, the piano interludes separate the sections; second, there is highly contrasting melodic, accompanimental, and tonal material in the B section. The motion from E major to ♭VI, C major, powerfully separates the A and A′ sections from the B section. This motion to ♭VI is quite surprising, yet, in retrospect, the listener realizes that it is prepared, in that the deceptive motion from V of E to ♭VI turns the flatted submediant into the tonic.

Analytical Payoff: The Dramatic Role of ♭VI

By virtue of its surprising arrival at m. 15 and its otherworldly sound, ♭VI obviously plays an important role in creating mystery and distance. Its appearance, like a rock thrown into a pond, creates musical ripples that extend to the outer reaches of the song. This strange new harmony seems to characterize the speech of the unknown woman in the piece's B section. But now let us turn to the moment in which he realizes who she is. The hunter begins his A′ section pretty much as his A began, seemingly oblivious to the woman's warnings. But at the moment of the modal shift to E minor, the man's tune moves in a new direction. His melody is strongly reminiscent of the Lorelei's tune, with her ascending line G–A–B–C recurring in his ascending motion. The effect is more than simple association. The witch's seductive powers have begun to permeate his being, and the decomposition of his melodic independence represents his loosening of will.

On the other side, the modal shift from E major to E minor, which places the Lorelei's key of C major within easy reach, further suggests that he is slipping into her tonal power. E minor is part of her tonal domain. It is diatonic to her C major, making his eventual abduction almost certain. The final step in his demise occurs in the Lorelei's closing strophe. Her musical texture returns unchanged, save for one crucial alteration: It is recast in his key, E major. His tonal foundation of E major, a metaphor for his physical being, has now been secured by the Lorelei. Indeed, even his opening words, "Es ist schon spät, es ist schon kalt" ("it is late and cold"), are now possessed and sung ironically by the victor. It is clear that the man is ensnared in her forest arms, never to return home. That the postlude reprises the introduction—lilting, happy, and naive—shows that the forest returns to its placid and amiable state, but the Lorelei—like a Venus flytrap—awaits her next victim.

WORKBOOK 1
22.3–22.5

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

22.4 Road Map

SOLVED/APP 6

Following is a series of steps that should lead you away from the tonic and back to it. Complete the steps in the given order in chorale style and on a separate sheet of manuscript paper. Try to stay on the path.

Step 1. Tonicize D major.
Step 2. Tonicize ♭III using a mixture chord in D major as a pivot.
Step 3. Use a descending-fifth sequence in ♭III as a pivot to tonicize the dominant of ♭III.

Step 4. In the dominant of ♭III, use any sequence that will lead you to its diatonic mediant; tonicize it.

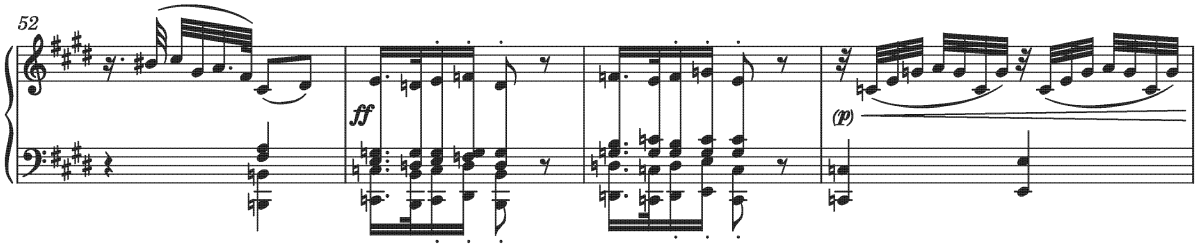
Step 5. In the mediant of ♭III's dominant, write a step-descent bass followed by a D2 (−5/+4) sequence that will lead you back to the original tonic, D major.

ANALYSIS

22.5

The given examples demonstrate various types of chromatic modulations. Analyze each.

A. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C major, op. 2, no. 3, *Adagio*



B. Schumann, Symphony no. 2 in C major, op. 61, Scherzo, Trio I

SOLVED/APP 6

C. Beethoven, String Quartet, op. 18, no. 6, *Allegro con brio*

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- chromatic third relations
- common-tone modulation
- *Lied, Lieder*
- prepared chromatic tonicization
- text–music relation
- unprepared chromatic tonicization

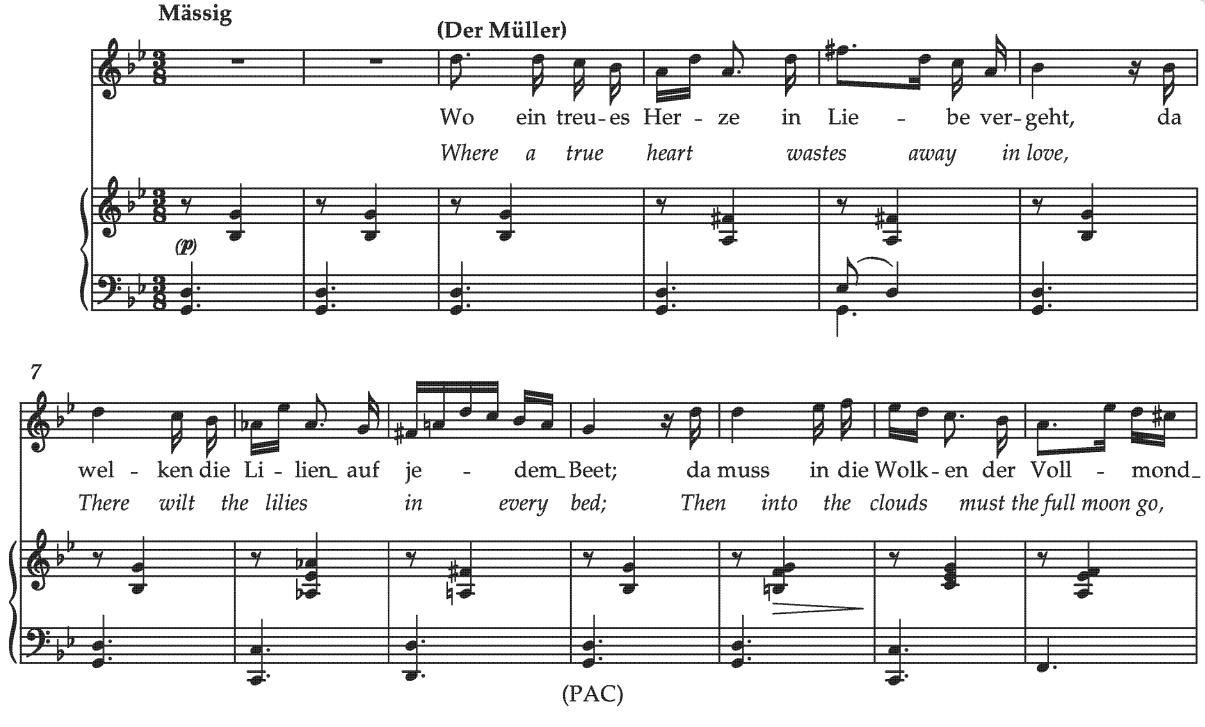
CHAPTER 23

The Neapolitan Chord (♭II)

Characteristics, Effects, and Behavior

Listen to the excerpt from one of Schubert's songs in Example 23.1. The music divides clearly into three phrases, which are marked by cadence type. As you follow along, try to keep a running tally of particularly striking chromatic harmonies. Where are they, and what contributes to their novel sound?

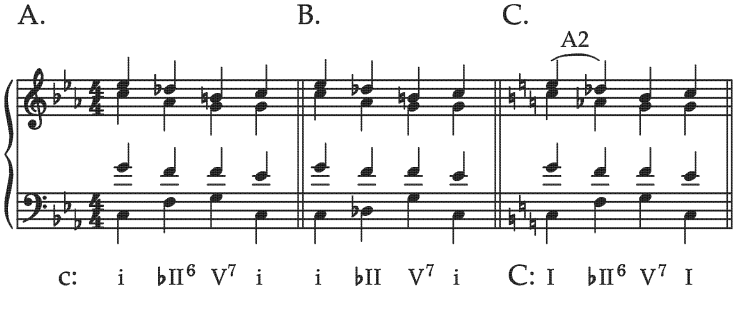
EXAMPLE 23.1 Schubert, "Der Müller und der Bach" ("The Miller and the Brook"), *Die schöne Müllerin*, D. 795, no. 19



A new chromatic harmony first appears in m. 8 (and again in m. 16 and m. 25). We have seen previously that there are two main types of chromaticism: (1) applied chords, which alter the function (and roman numeral) of diatonic chords in order to tonicize other keys; and (2) mixture, which alters the quality of a diatonic chord but does not change its roman numeral or function. What kind of chord do we have here? The chord in m. 8 is a major triad; its quality suggests that it may be an applied chord. However, as such it would be the dominant of D♭ (♭V of G minor), and we certainly have not encountered "♮V"!

Clearly this is a pre-dominant function chord, with the bass C ($\hat{4}$) and the pitch E♭ ($\hat{6}$) both pulling toward D ($\hat{5}$). The A♭ ($\flat\hat{2}$) is a chromatic pitch that substitutes for the diatonic A. As a result, instead of a ii°^{6} chord (C–E♭–A), we have a major triad in first inversion, a ♭II^6 chord (C–E♭–A♭). This chord, commonly called the **Neapolitan chord,** occurs more often in minor-mode pieces than in major-mode pieces (Example 23.2A), and it usually occurs in first inversion in order to have a smooth bass motion to $\hat{5}$ rather than an awkward tritone leap from $\flat\hat{2}$ to $\hat{5}$ (Example 23.2B). In the major mode, both the supertonic and the submediant are lowered ($\flat\hat{2}$ and $\flat\hat{6}$, respectively), as in Example 23.2C.

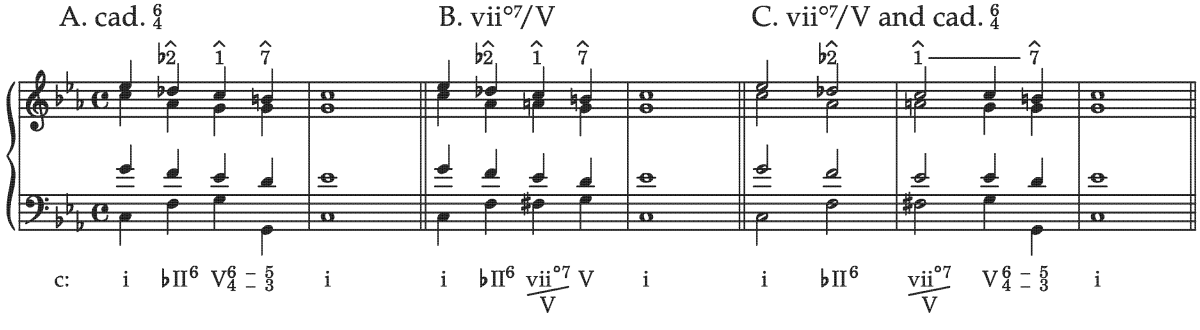
EXAMPLE 23.2 Common Neapolitan Contexts



Writing the Neapolitan Chord

- ♭II^6–V progressions will have a ♭$\hat{2}$–$\hat{7}$ motion in one of the upper voices—usually the soprano (Example 23.2A).
- Double the bass, $\hat{4}$. (See Example 23.2A.) If necessary, double $\hat{6}$.
- In minor, any chord that would precede ii°^{6} can also precede ♭II^6.
- In major, the common chords before ♭II^6 are tonic (I) and mixture chords (♭III, ♭VI, iv). When writing in major, avoid the augmented second that occurs between $\hat{3}$ and ♭$\hat{2}$ (Example 23.2C).
- The ultimate goal of the Neapolitan chord is to move to V. However, there are two common ways to move from ♭II^6 to V, both of which harmonize a passing $\hat{1}$ (Example 23.3).

EXAMPLE 23.3 Filling the Space Between ♭$\hat{2}$ and $\hat{7}$



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
23.1–23.2

WRITING

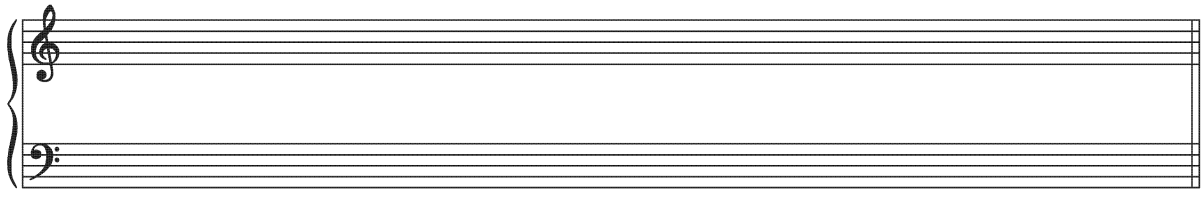
23.1

Set the following progressions in the specified minor keys and in four voices.

A. Use the given soprano fragments and chords.

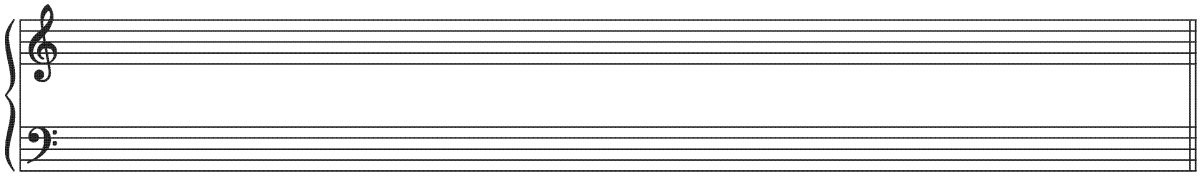
SOLVED/APP 6

Sop: ♭$\hat{2}$ $\hat{7}$ $\hat{1}$ ♭$\hat{2}$ $\hat{7}$ $\hat{1}$ ♭$\hat{2}$ $\hat{1}$ $\hat{7}$ $\hat{1}$ ♭$\hat{2}$ $\hat{1}$ $\hat{7}$ $\hat{1}$



♭II^6–V–i	♭II^6–V^7–i	♭II^6–V$^6_4$–$^5_3$–i	♭II^6–vii°^{7}/V–V–i
in: d	in: c♯	in: f	in: g

B. Use the given bass fragments; include a ♭II^6 chord in each progression.



Bass: $\hat{1}\ \hat{4}\ \hat{5}\ \hat{1}$ in: e $\quad$ $\hat{3}\ \hat{4}\ \hat{5}\ \hat{1}$ in: b $\quad$ $\hat{3}\ \hat{4}\ \sharp\hat{4}\ \hat{5}\ \hat{1}$ in: g

ANALYSIS

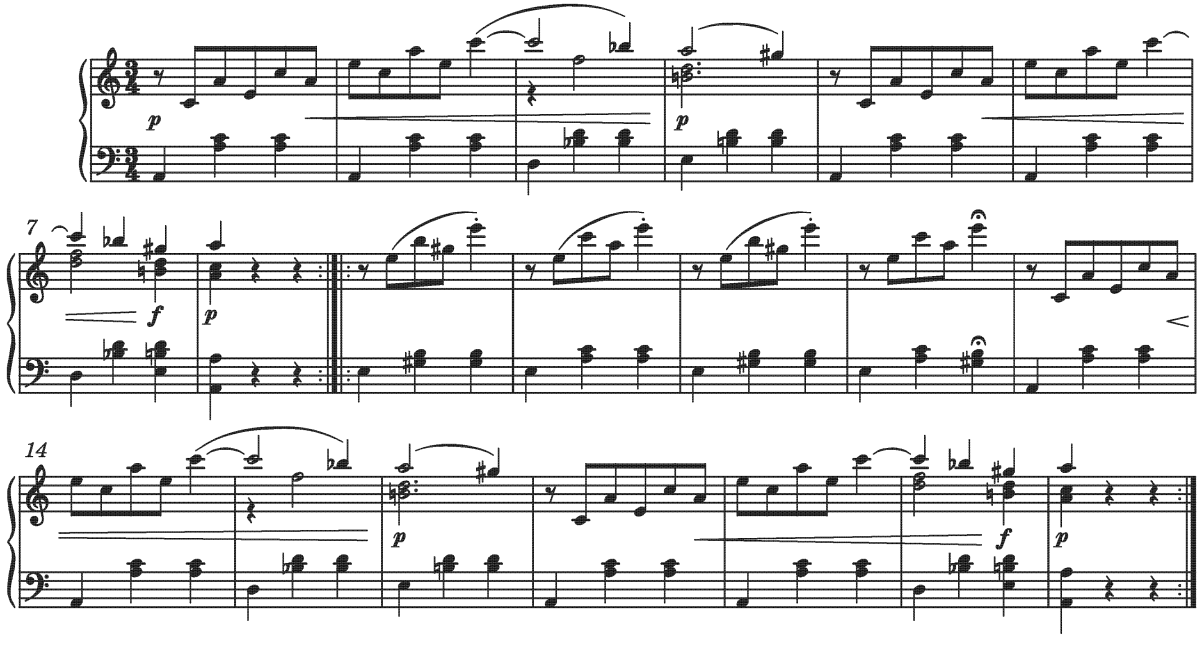
23.2

Provide a two-level roman numeral analysis for each of the following examples. To facilitate your chordal analysis, circle all embellishing tones in the melody.

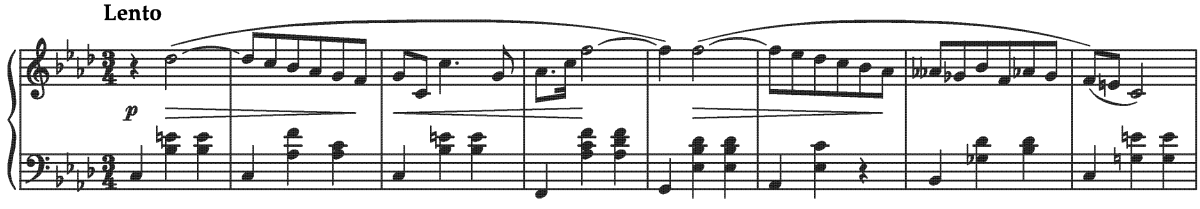
Sample: Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 14 in C♯ minor, "Moonlight," op. 27, no. 2, *Adagio*

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Beethoven, Bagatelle, op. 119, no. 9. Make a formal diagram.



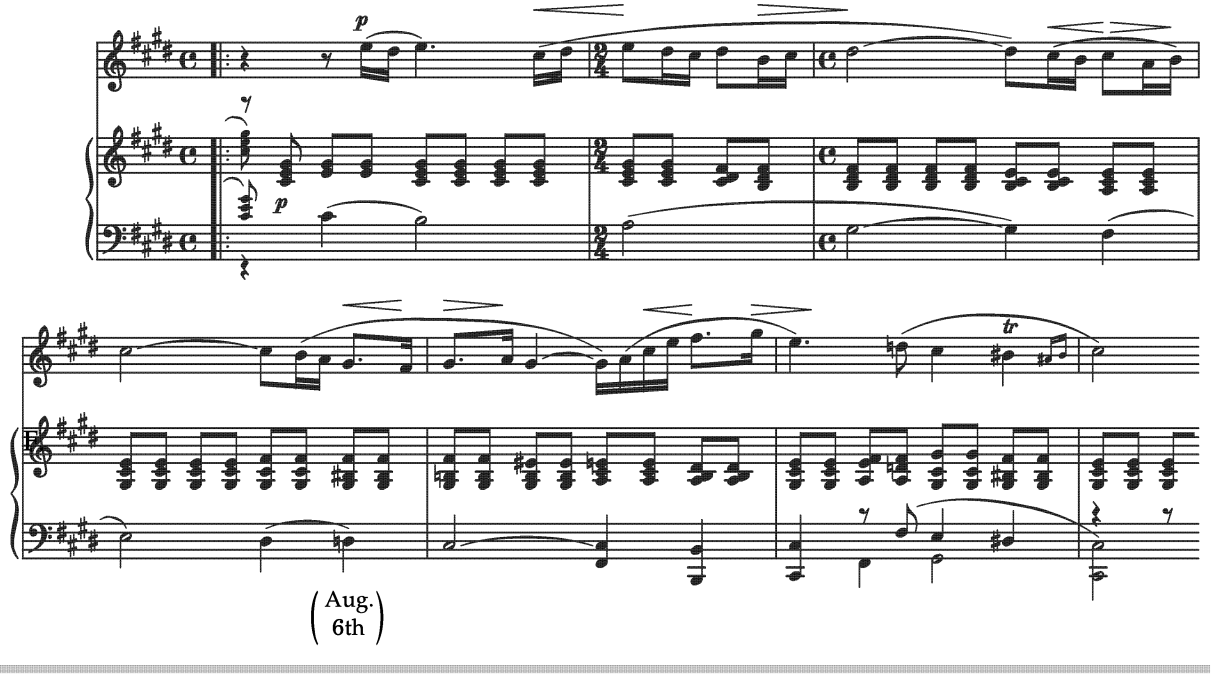
B. Chopin, Mazurka in F minor, op. 63, no. 2, BI 162



SOLVED/APP 6

C. Chopin, Mazurka in C♯ minor, op. 30, no. 4, BI 105
Include in your discussion the underlying harmonic progression in the excerpt.

D. Rachmaninoff, Vocalise
What type of bass line does Rachmaninoff use? What keys are implied in m. 5?

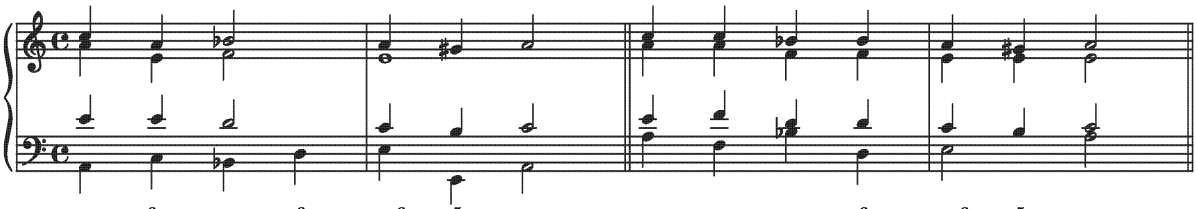


Expanding ♭II

The Neapolitan chord is like any other major chord. It can be prolonged with a chordal leap in the bass (Example 23.4A), by tonicization (Example 23.4B and C), and by extended tonicization (Example 23.4D).

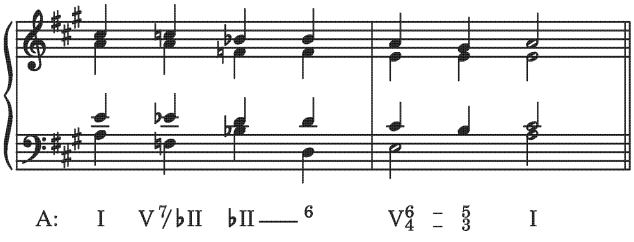
EXAMPLE 23.4 Expanding ♭II

A. Chordal Leap Expands ♭II

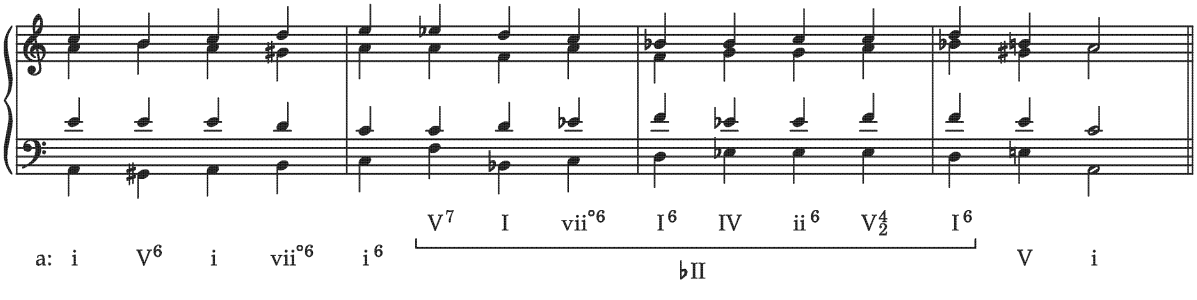


B. Tonicization Expands ♭II

C. Tonicization Expands ♭II (in major)



D. Extended Tonicization Expands ♭II

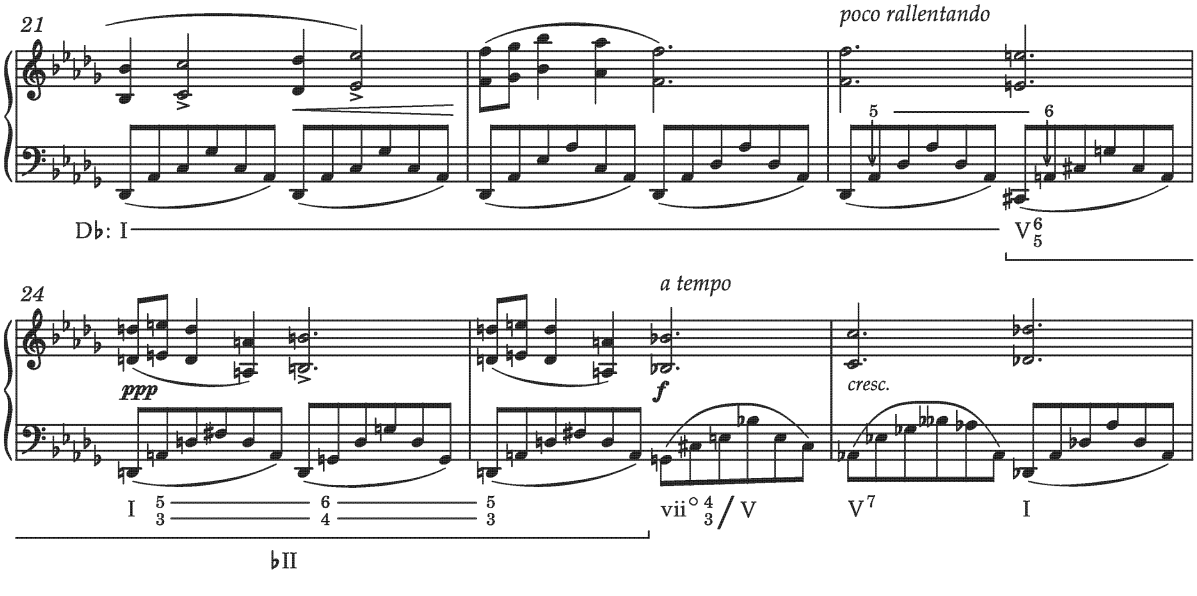


Sometimes composers tonicize ♭II merely by restating material up a half step—from I to ♭II. This procedure is common in middle-period Beethoven pieces, such as his String Quartet in E minor (Example 23.5). The root-position Neapolitan of mm. 6–7 occurs when the opening tune of mm. 3–4 is literally restated a half step higher in m. 6. Melodically, this presents an important motive, B–C, which is highlighted within mm. 3–6.

The analysis shows that the pre-dominant still moves to dominant function and on to tonic, creating a large-scale i–♭II–V–i motion. Notice that two forms of the dominant appear: vii°^{7} is followed by V. The only two pitch classes involved in this subtle shift are C ($\hat{6}$) and B ($\hat{5}$), which can be heard as a melodic summary of the immediately preceding motion from tonic to the Neapolitan. Beethoven has therefore returned the upper-neighbor C to B, its point of origin.

EXAMPLE 23.5 Beethoven, String Quartet no. 8 in E minor, op. 59, no. 2, *Allegro*

EXAMPLE 23.6 Chopin, Nocturne in B♭ minor, op. 9, no. 1



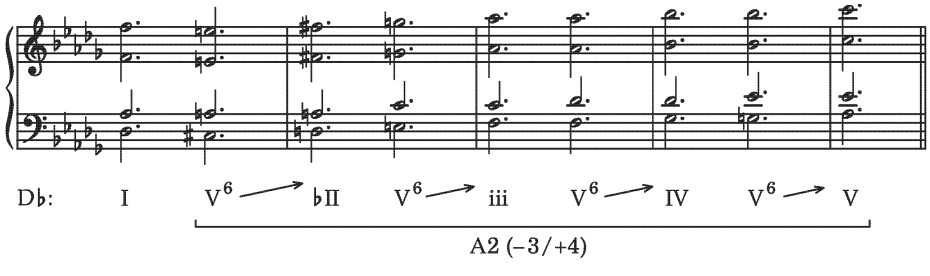
Listen to Example 23.6. The Neapolitan in m. 24 is contrapuntally prepared in the previous measure by the 5–6 motion from I; over the bass D♭/C♯, A♭ moves to A (the enharmonic spelling of ♭$\hat{6}$, B𝄫), creating a V^6_5/♭II. When the Neapolitan arrives at the downbeat of m. 24, Chopin spells it enharmonically as D major rather than as E𝄫 major. Chopin's *ppp* dynamic marking at this moment helps the performer interpret this special harmonic coloration. The Neapolitan's bass motion up to V is accomplished by the vii$^{o4}_3$/V chord in m. 25; this chord is pivotal, for it sounds like a mixture coloring of the right-hand B♮ in m. 24, yet the vii$^{o4}_3$/V also leads to V^7 (A♭) as an applied chord.

The Neapolitan in Sequences

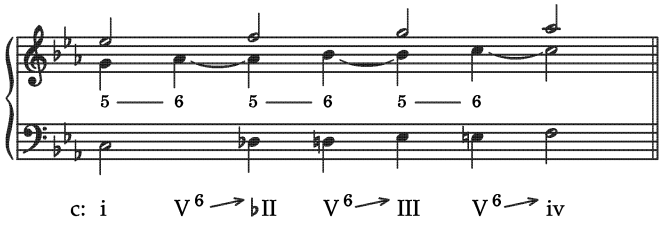
Look again at Example 23.6 and notice that the chords in m. 23, leading to the Neapolitan chord in m. 24, are identical to the way A2 (−3/+4) applied-chord sequences begin. Example 23.7A extends Chopin's ascent, continuing the sequence to V. The use of ♭II in the A2 (−3/+4) sequence is much more common in minor-mode works. A further bonus of incorporating the Neapolitan in sequences is that it allows for root-position ♭2 in minor pieces. (Remember, diatonic ii is diminished and cannot participate in applied sequences.)

EXAMPLE 23.7 The Neapolitan in A2 Sequences

A.



B.



The Neapolitan as a Pivot Chord

The Neapolitan is an effective pivot chord when modulating to diatonic as well as chromatic keys. Example 23.8 contains two statements of a D♭ sonority. The D♭ chord in m. 9 functions typically as a ♭II^6, leading to V. But when it returns in m. 23, it functions as a pivot that precipitates the modulation to A♭.

EXAMPLE 23.8 Schubert, String Quartet in C minor, "Quartettsatz," D. 703

WORKBOOK 1
23.3–23.4

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

23.3

The following excerpts illustrate expanded ♭II. Provide a two-level analysis for each excerpt and a short paragraph that summarizes your analysis.

Sample analysis: Chopin, Nocturne in C minor, op. 48, no. 1, BI 142

Sample paragraph: Chopin's C-minor Nocturne illustrates an extensive tonicization not only of ♭II, but also of several diatonic harmonies. The nocturne opens with a descending-bass arpeggiation (C–A♭–F) that returns to tonic, followed by a balancing ascending arpeggiation (C–E♭–G), each member of which is tonicized. The descent from G to G♭ begins the Neapolitan's expansion (m. 9). The G♭ in m. 9 is harmonized as V^4_2 of ♭II, and it becomes a

chromatic passing tone that connects G and the following F (m. 9), which is harmonized as ♭II^6. Root-position ♭II follows its V^6_5 chord in m. 10, ending the tonicization of ♭II. The dominant (G) is secured in precisely the same way that ♭II was: through chromatic passing tones that lead to V^6_5 (D♭–C–B♮). Notice that this bass motion ♭$\hat{2}$ to $\hat{7}$ is what usually takes place in the soprano when ♭II^6 moves to V.

A. Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 23 in F minor, "Appassionata," op. 57, *Allegro assai*

B. Rachmaninoff, Prelude in G♯ minor, op. 32, no. 12
Be aware of the D♮ in the bass and the chord of which it is a part in m. 7.

CHAPTER 24

The Augmented Sixth Chord

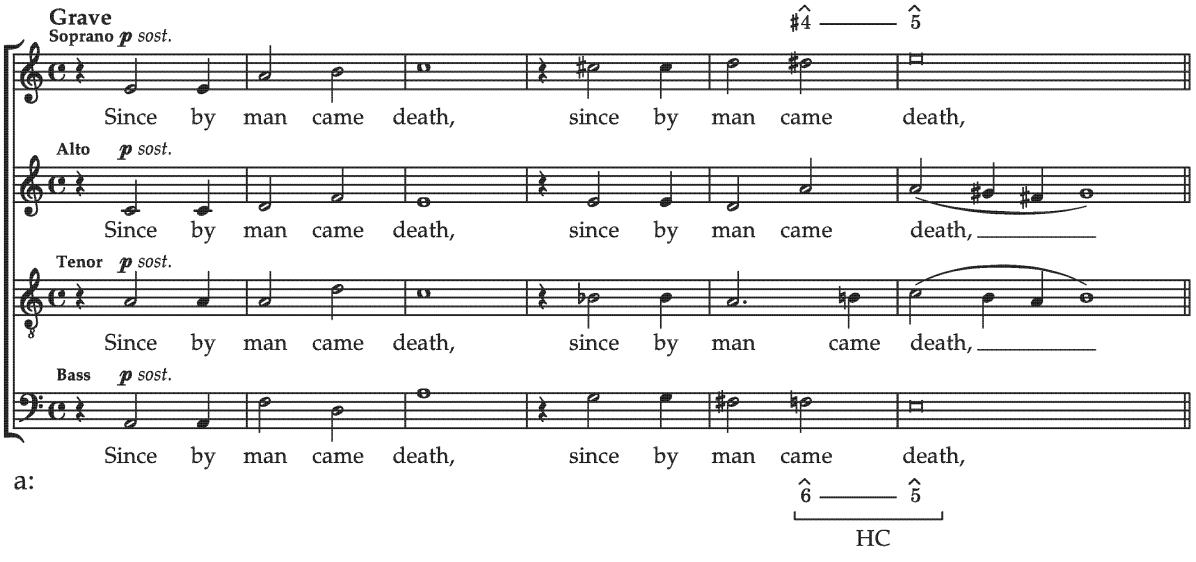
Characteristics, Derivation, and Behavior

The two excerpts in Example 24.1 are from different style periods, yet they share several features. In terms of form and harmony, both divide into two subphrases and close with strong half cadences. Further, the pre-dominant harmony in both examples is the same: an altered iv^6 chord. Indeed, we hear not a Phrygian cadence (iv^6–V), but rather some chromatic version, where the diatonic *major* sixth above the bass is raised a half step to create the strongly directed interval of the *augmented* sixth (+6). The new half-step ascent (♯$\hat{4}$–$\hat{5}$) mirrors the bass's half-step descent ($\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$). We refer to such chromatic pre-dominants as **augmented sixth chords** because of the characteristic interval between the bass $\hat{6}$ and the upper-voice ♯$\hat{4}$**.** Listen to both excerpts in Example 24.1, noting the striking sound of the augmented sixth chords.

EXAMPLE 24.1

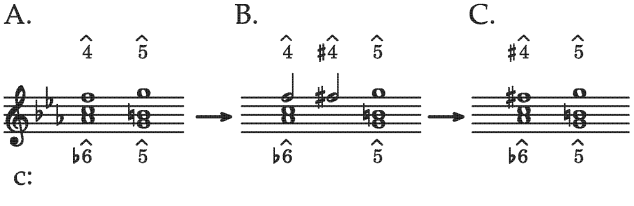
A. Schubert, Waltz in G minor, *Die letzte Walzer*, op. 127, no. 12, D. 146

B. Handel, "Since by Man Came Death," *Messiah*, HWV 56



Example 24.2 demonstrates the derivation of the augmented sixth chord from the Phrygian cadence. Example 24.2A represents a traditional Phrygian half cadence. In Example 24.2B, the chromatic F♯ fills the space between F and G, and the passing motion creates an interval of an augmented sixth. Finally, Example 24.2C shows the augmented sixth chord as a harmonic entity, with no consonant preparation.

EXAMPLE 24.2 Phrygian Cadence Generates the Augmented Sixth Chord



Given that the augmented sixth chord also occurs in major, one might ask if it is an example of an applied chord or a mixture chord? To answer this question, consider the diatonic progression in Example 24.3A. Then study the progression in Example 24.3B. There is a mixture iv^6 chord in Example 24.3B, which introduces ♭$\hat{6}$, a bass note that is a half step above $\hat{5}$. Compare Examples 24.3A and 24.3C; the difference this time is in the chord's function, with iv^6 changed into the applied vii$^{\circ 6}$/V through the use of the soprano ♯$\hat{4}$.

EXAMPLE 24.3

Accordingly, the mixture iv^6 uses $\flat\hat{6}$ in the bass, and the applied vii$^{\circ 6}$/V uses $\sharp\hat{4}$ in the soprano. So how do we describe the augmented sixth chord that has both pitches (Example 24.3D)? It is the ultimate chromatic chord, combining mixture (bass $\flat\hat{6}$) and tonicization ($\sharp\hat{4}$) to create the augmented sixth that pushes toward the dominant. The augmented sixth chord is typically preceded by a tonic chord, a subdominant chord, (♭)VI, or (♭)III; it is almost always followed by V or the cadential $^6_4$ chord.

Types of Augmented Sixth Chords

All augmented sixth chords have three basic components.

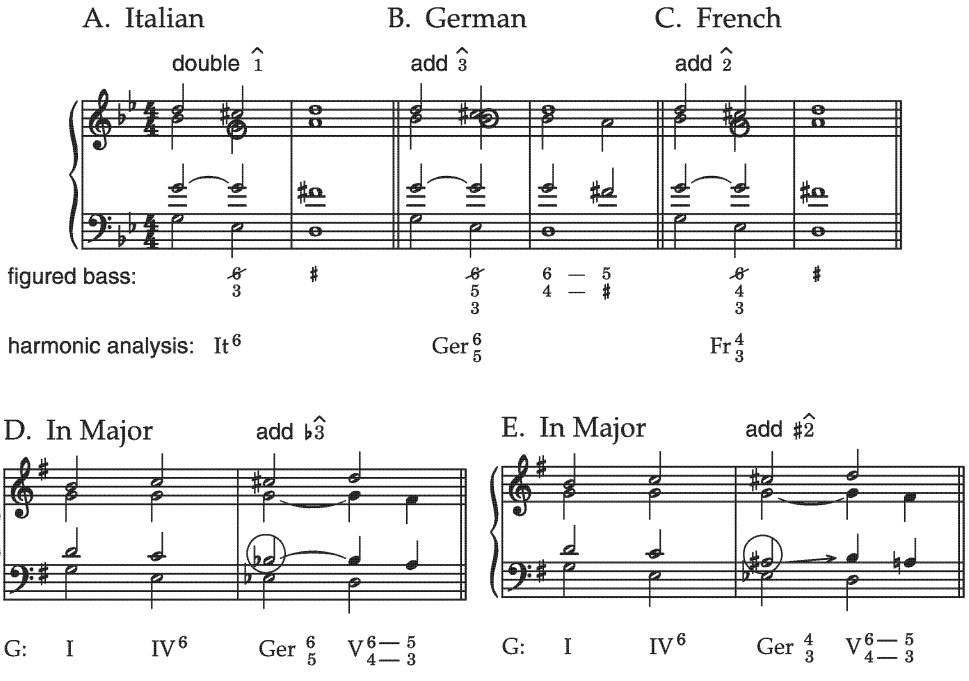
1. The bass is a *half step above* $\hat{5}$.
   a. In minor keys, the bass is the diatonic $\hat{6}$ and does not need an accidental.
   b. In major keys, the bass is $\flat\hat{6}$, requiring an accidental.
2. One of the upper voices—often the soprano—is a *half step below* $\hat{5}$, on $\sharp\hat{4}$.
3. Another upper voice has *the tonic*, $\hat{1}$.

We distinguish three types of augmented sixth chords, based on the pitch in the final upper voice (Example 24.4). We label augmented sixth chords using their "regional" names followed by their figured bass (without chromatic alterations).

- If the final upper voice doubles $\hat{1}$, it creates an **Italian augmented sixth chord**, It^6 (Example 24.4A).
- If the voice has $\hat{2}$, it creates a **French augmented sixth chord**, Fr$^4_3$ (Example 24.4C).
- The **German augmented sixth chord,** Ger$^6_5$, includes $\hat{3}$ in minor keys (Examples 24.4B and D).

- In major keys, this added pitch is $\flat\hat{3}$. When a Ger$^6_5$ occurs in the major mode and leads to a cadential $^6_4$ with a *major* sixth above the bass, composers often notate $\flat\hat{3}$ using the enharmonic equivalent $\sharp\hat{2}$ (Example 24.7E).

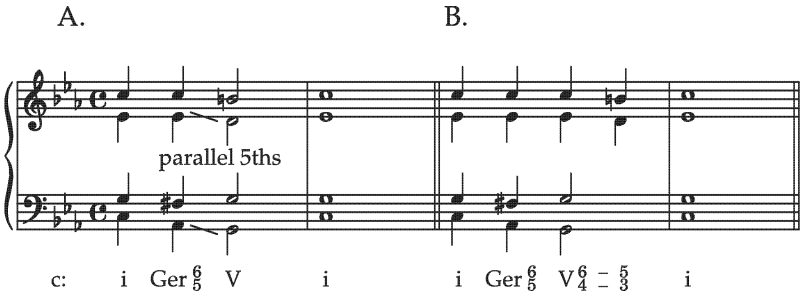
EXAMPLE 24.4 Common Types of Augmented Sixth Chords



Writing Augmented Sixth Chords

The voice leading after an augmented sixth chord is straightforward, due to the number of tendency tones in the chord. The bass moves down by half step to $\hat{5}$, the upper voice with $\sharp\hat{4}$ moves up by half step to $\hat{5}$, and the other voices move as smoothly as possible (usually by step). The most common chord after the augmented sixth is V; however, the progression Ger$^6_5$–V involves parallel fifths and is often avoided (Example 24.5A). Instead, a Ger$^6_5$ is followed first by the cadential $^6_4$, before resolving to the V; this results in no forbidden parallel motions (Example 24.5B).

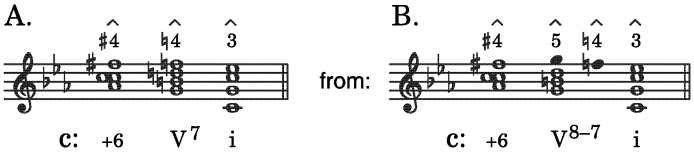
EXAMPLE 24.5



Although augmented sixth chords tend to occur more often in the minor mode, they can occur in the major mode, though at least one additional chromatic alteration is necessary in major: The bass must be lowered to $\flat\hat{6}$. This holds for all three species of augmented sixth chords. In the special case of the Ger$^{6}_{3}$, $\hat{3}$ must also be lowered (refer back to Example 24.4D). Finally, when a German $^{6}_{5}$ occurs in the major mode and leads to a cadential $^{6}_{4}$ with a *major* sixth, composers often notate this chromatic ascent (from $\flat\hat{3}$ to raised $\hat{3}$) using the enharmonic equivalent $\sharp\hat{2}$, which visually leads more effectively up to $\hat{3}$. See again, Example 24.4E. Given that the fourth above the bass is doubly augmented, this unfortunate-looking chord is referred to as the *doubly augmented sixth chord* or sometimes as the *Swiss* augmented sixth chord.

When the augmented sixth chord moves directly to V^7, an **elided resolution** often occurs, in which $\sharp\hat{4}$ does not resolve literally to $\hat{5}$ but moves directly to $\flat\hat{4}$ (and on to $\hat{3}$) (Example 24.6).

EXAMPLE 24.6



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

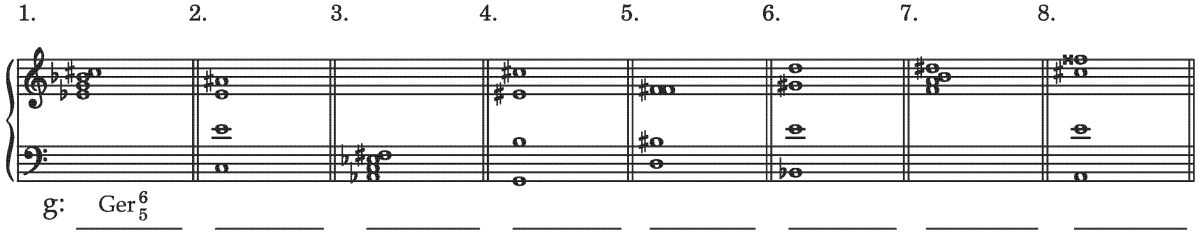
WORKBOOK 1
24.1–24.3

SOLVED/APP 6

ANALYSIS

24.1 Identification

Determine the key in which each of the augmented sixth chords would function; then identify the type of augmented sixth chord that is notated.

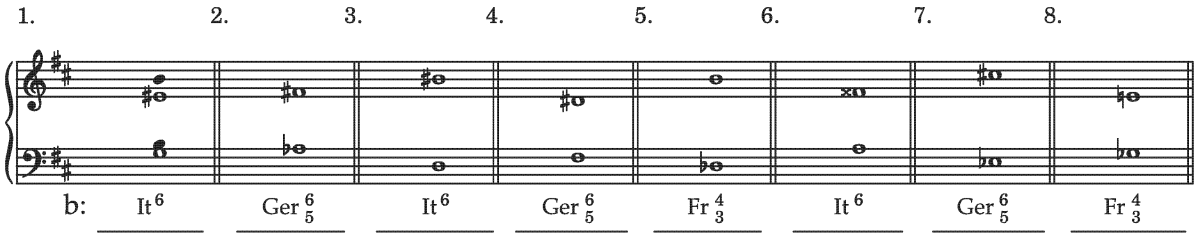


WRITING

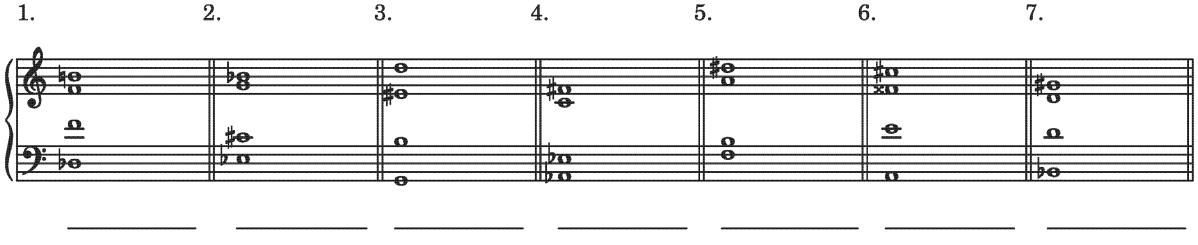
SOLVED/APP 6

24.2

A. For each given augmented sixth interval, label the minor key in which it would function as a pre-dominant and provide a key signature. Then add the missing chordal members to complete the sonorities as specified (the first one is completed for you).



B. Determine the key and the type of augmented sixth chord that is notated, and resolve each to a form of the dominant.



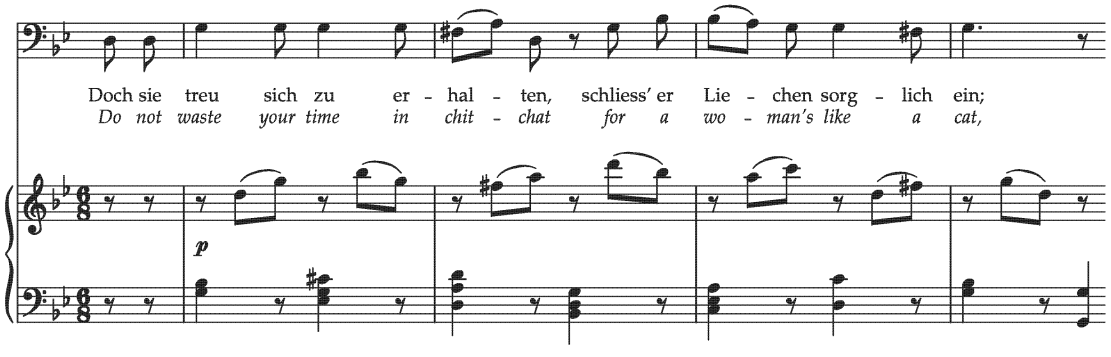
ANALYSIS

24.3

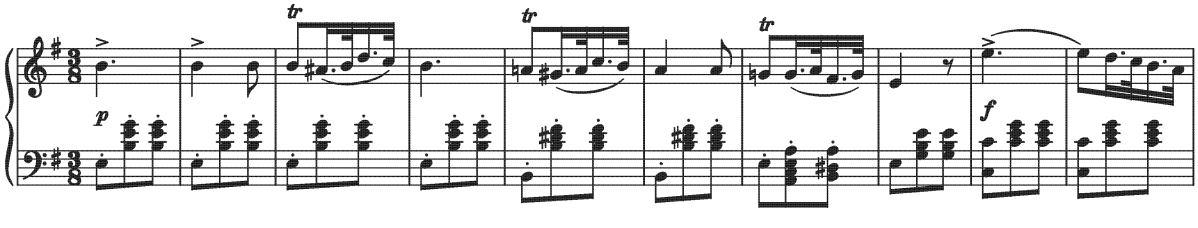
Listen to and then provide a harmonic analysis for the following examples, which contain augmented sixth chords.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Mozart, "Wer ein Liebchen," from *Abduction from the Seraglio*



B. Verdi, "Se m'an ancor," from *Il trovatore*, no. 19



Continued

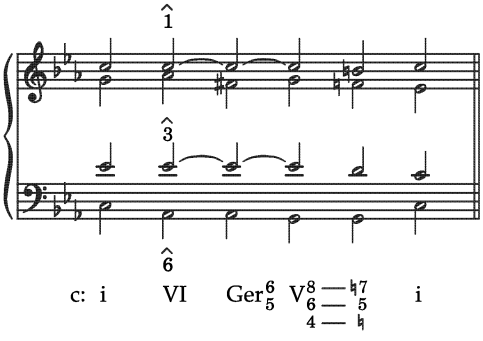
C. Verdi, "Si, la stanchezza m'opprime, o figlio," from *Il trovatore*, no. 19

D. Paganini, Caprice for Solo Violin, op. 1, no. 11

(♭)VI and the Ger_5^6 Chord

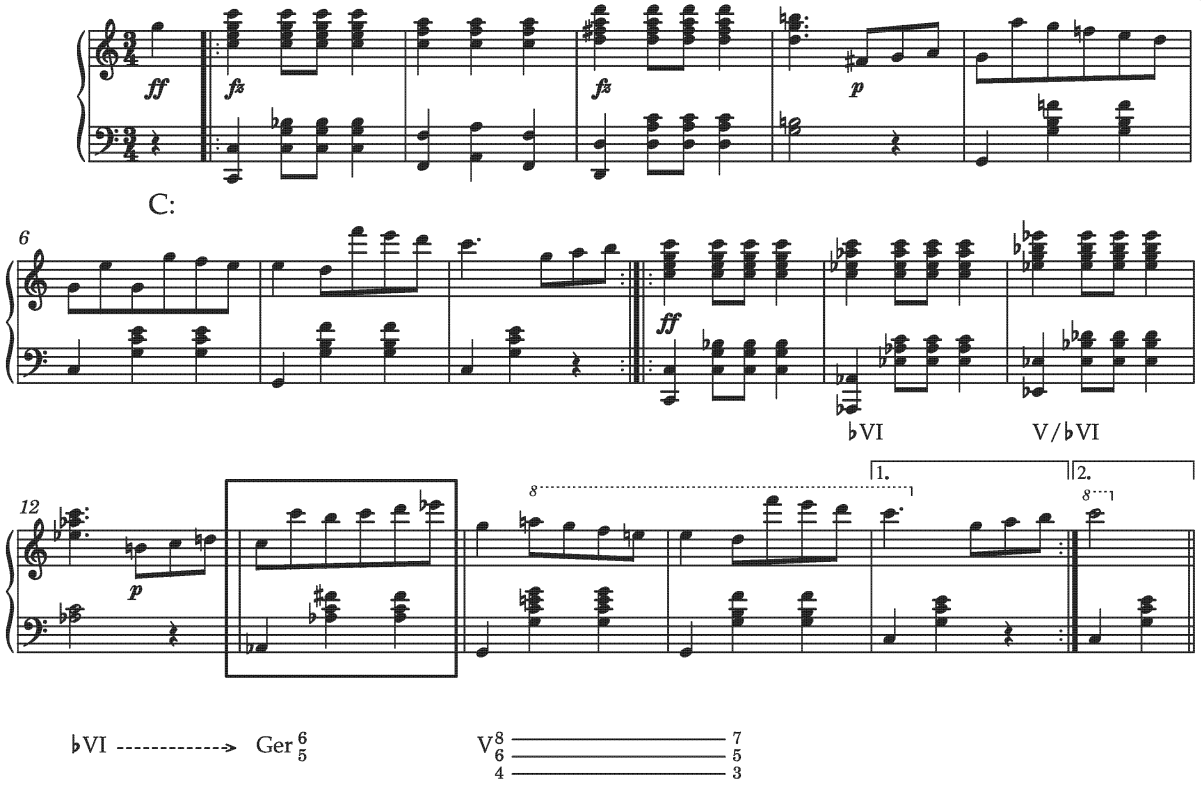
A special relationship exists between VI and Ger_5^6 in a minor key (and between ♭VI and Ger_5^6 in a major key). The Ger_5^6 contains all of the pitches in the (♭)VI chord, plus $\sharp\hat{4}$. This relationship is particularly helpful when VI moves to the dominant. (See the second and third chords of Example 24.7.)

EXAMPLE 24.7 Transforming (♭)VI into an Augmented Sixth Chord



Example 24.8 illustrates a second instance of this process in which a tonicized ♭VI (mm. 10–12) is converted to—and destabilized by—a Ger_5^6 (m. 13), which can then move smoothly to V (m. 14).

EXAMPLE 24.8 Schubert, Waltz in C major, *Valses sentimentales*, D. 779, no. 16



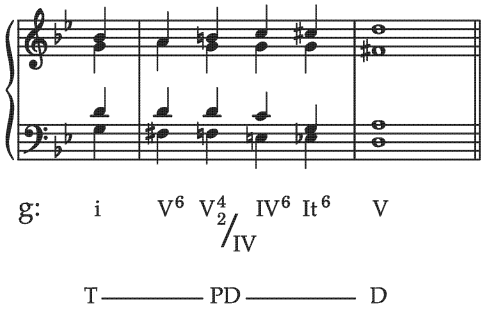
Augmented Sixth Chords as Part of PD Expansions

Augmented sixth chords frequently combine with other pre-dominant harmonies to expand the pre-dominant function (Example 24.9). Given that two of its voices are so goal-directed toward $\hat{5}$, the augmented sixth chord is usually the last event before the dominant, following either $iv^{(6)}$ or VI. In Example 24.9 Beethoven drives home the arrival in B♭ minor by moving from iv^6 to a Ger^6_5 in mm. 129–30 (the $vii^{\circ 6}_5$ appears as a neighbor). The Ger^6_5–V motion is then reiterated seven times in the following nine measures and highlighted by the *sf* marking.

EXAMPLE 24.9 **Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 13 in E♭ major, op. 27, no. 1, *Allegro vivace***

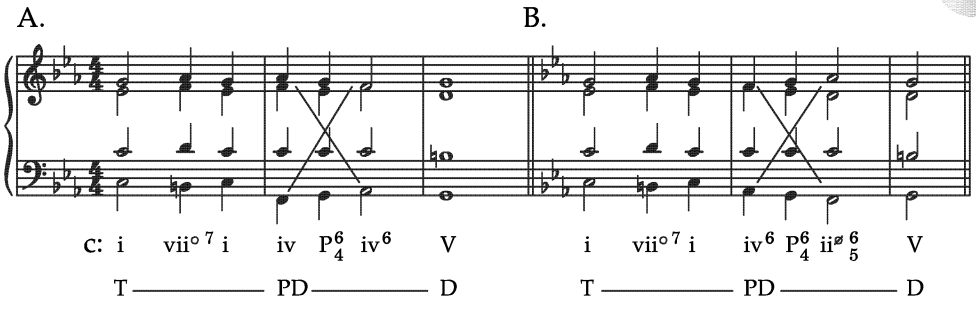
Augmented sixth chords often appear in chromaticized bass descents as the final step before the dominant (Example 24.10).

EXAMPLE 24.10 Chromaticized Bass Descent Expands PD



One of the most important techniques for expanding the PD is to move from iv through a passing $\frac{6}{4}$ chord to iv^6, as in Example 24.11A. It is also common for iv to move to a different PD harmony, such as the ii^{ø} $\frac{6}{5}$ in Example 24.11B. In both cases, the expansion of the PD involves a prominent voice exchange between the bass and one of the upper voices.

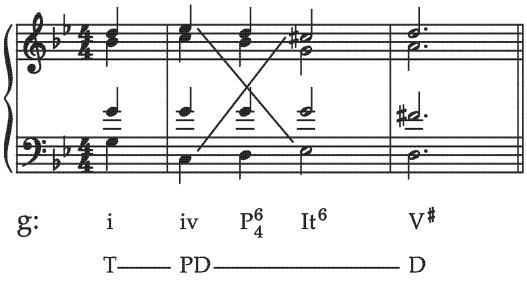
EXAMPLE 24.11 PD Expanded by Voice Exchange



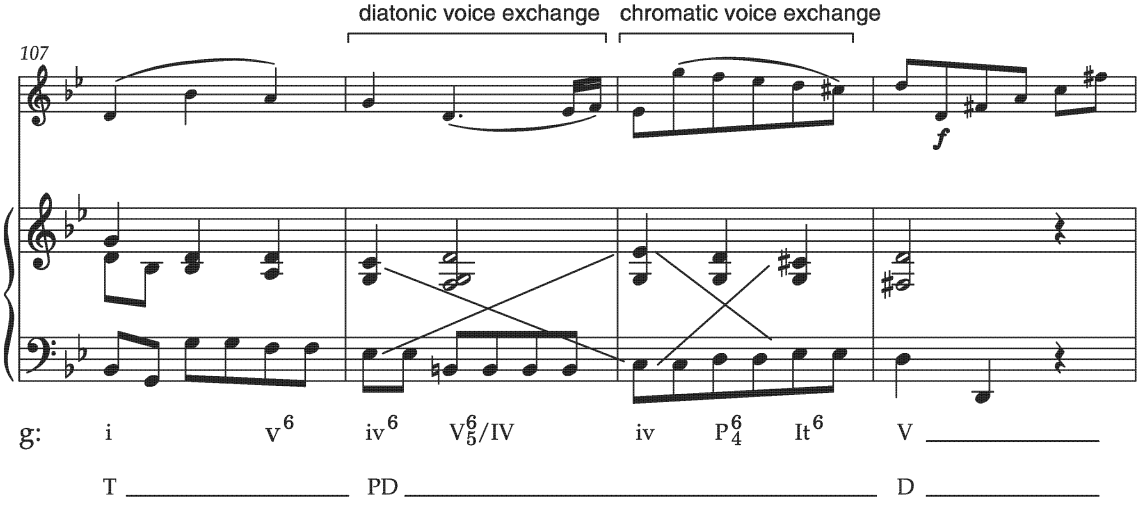
When chromatic augmented sixth chords occur with other diatonic pre-dominants (such as iv and ii^6), the resulting voice exchange is not exact. This can be seen in m. 1 of Example 24.12A, in which the C and E♭ of the iv chord swap to become the E♭ and C♯ of the It^6 chord. This special swapping of cross relations is called a **chromatic voice exchange**. Example 24.12B illustrates both a diatonic voice exchange (m. 108 to downbeat of m. 109) and a chromatic voice exchange (m. 109).

EXAMPLE 24.12 Chromatic Voice Exchange Incorporates Augmented Sixth Chord

A.



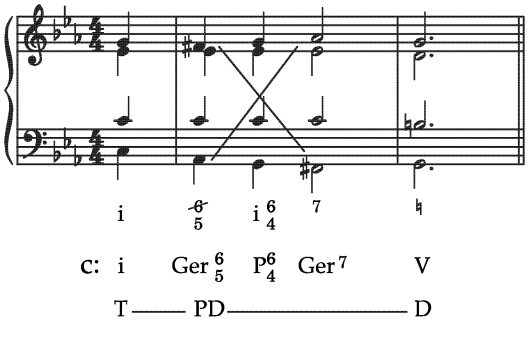
B. C. P. E. Bach, Flute Sonata no. 6 in G, Wq 134 H548, *Allegro*



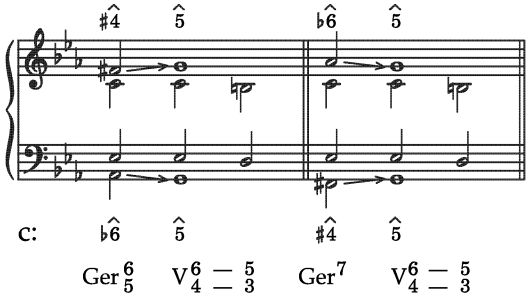
In rarer cases where the PD expansion involves only an augmented sixth chord, the resulting voice exchange is literal, as in Example 24.13. The chord on the downbeat of m. 1 in Example 24.13 is a Ger^6_5. The chord on beat 3 of that measure sounds like—and contains the same pitches as—a Ger^6_5, although the pitches have been reordered such that $\sharp\hat{4}$ appears in the bass and $\flat\hat{6}$ in an upper voice. The resulting chord is therefore an inversion of the augmented sixth and is called a **German diminished third chord**.

Since the figure for this chord would be "7," we label the German diminished third chord as **Ger^7**.

EXAMPLE 24.13 Prolonging the Augmented Sixth Chord



EXAMPLE 24.14 Part Writing the Ger^7 Chord



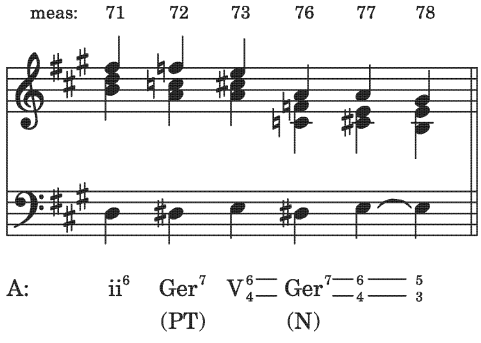
The individual voices of this chord behave identically to those in any augmented sixth chord—$\hat{6}$ descends to $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{4}$ ascends to $\hat{5}$. But given that the pitches are switched from the traditional Ger$^6_5$ arrangement, the voices contract on resolution rather than expand (Example 24.14).

In the first scene of Tchaikovsky's ballet *Sleeping Beauty* (Example 24.15), an extended PD involves IV, ii^6, and Ger^7, which Tchaikovsky marks *ff* in m. 72. The diminished third chord returns in m. 76, elaborating the V^6_4 as its neighbor (see the reduction in Example 24.15B).

EXAMPLE 24.15 Tchaikovsky, *Sleeping Beauty*, scene 1

A.

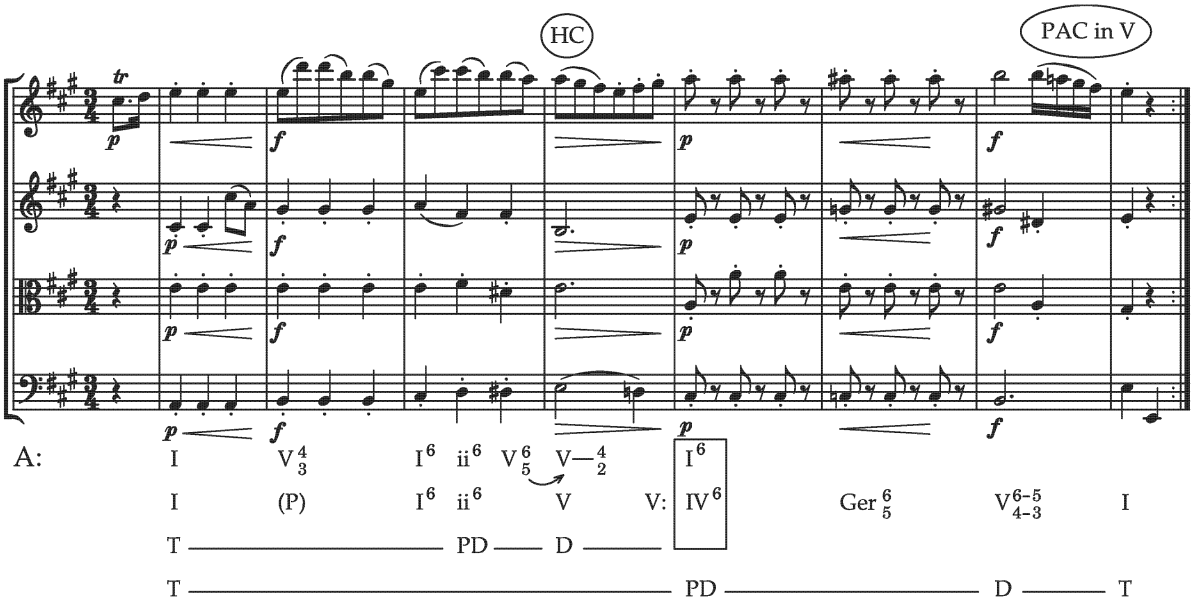
B. Tchaikovsky, *Sleeping Beauty* (reduction)



The Augmented Sixth Chord and Modulation: Reinforcement

Because of its half-step tendencies to $\hat{5}$, the augmented sixth chord contains more linear drive toward the dominant than any other PD harmony. Therefore, its appearance *after* a pivot chord is particularly helpful in securing a new key. Listen to Example 24.16.

EXAMPLE 24.16 Haydn, String Quartet in A major, op. 55, no. 1, Menuetto



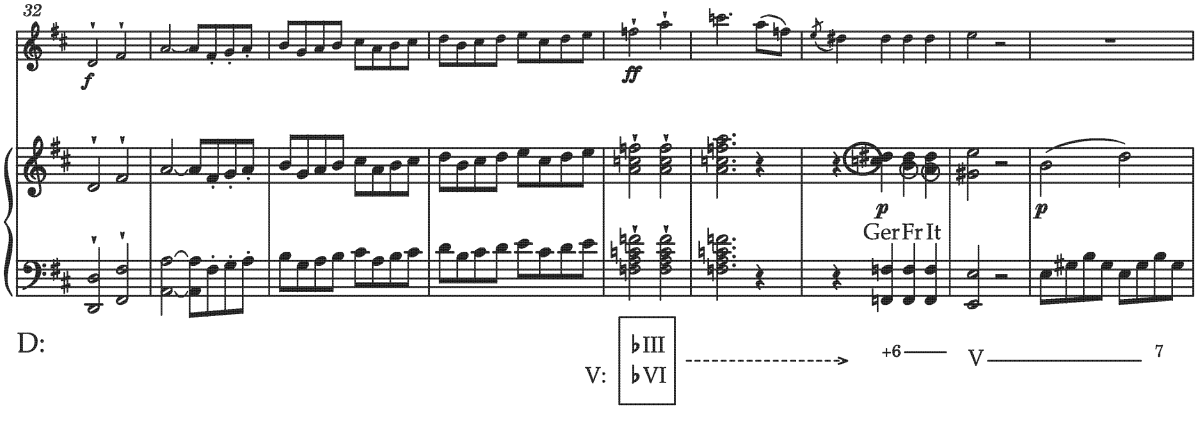
As the analysis of Example 24.16 shows, the excerpt's two phrases form a contrasting progressive period. The first phrase moves from the opening tonic to the dominant on the downbeat of m. 4. After a brief connective passage (over a passing V^4_2), the second phrase restarts on the tonic and modulates to V.

At first glance, it seems there are two possible pivot chords in the excerpt: the tonic that begins the second phrase (m. 5) and the chord that follows in m. 6. Because the chord in m. 6 functions in only one way—as a Ger^6_5 in the key of E (V)—the tonic is best regarded as the pivot chord. Now we can understand why Haydn began the second phrase with the tonic in first inversion. As a pivot, it becomes IV^6 in the key of V, which smoothly moves by step to the Ger^6_5 in m. 6.

In most modulating passages, composers take special care to make the harmonic motion to the new key as smooth as possible. In situations where composers desire a more striking effect, they often juxtapose radically different chromatic harmonies but then confirm the second tonal area by using the augmented sixth chord.

In Example 24.17, Schubert boldly moves from the tonic D major to F (♭III) in m. 36. At this point, he reinterprets F major as ♭VI and converts it into an augmented sixth chord that resolves to V of A (V). (Note that all three types of the augmented sixth chord appear in m. 38 as the alto voice moves by step from C to G♯.)

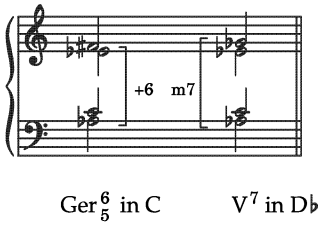
EXAMPLE 24.17 Schubert, Sonatina in D major for Piano and Violin, op. posth. 137, no. 1, D. 384, *Allegro molto*



The Augmented Sixth Chord as Pivot in Modulations

You may have already discovered that the It^6_3 is enharmonically equivalent to an incomplete V^7 chord, and the Ger^6_5, shown in Example 24.18, sounds like a complete V^7 chord.

EXAMPLE 24.18 Sonic Equivalence of Ger^6_5 and V^7



Despite the aural similarity between the augmented sixth chords and their V^7 respellings, their distinct functions are based on their resolutions and voice leading.

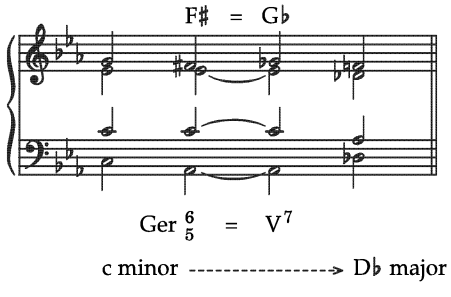
- An *augmented sixth chord is a PD chord and leads to dominant.* The bass descends by half step to $\hat{5}$, and another voice ascends by half step to $\hat{5}$.
- A *V^7 chord is a dominant chord that leads to tonic.* The seventh of the chord descends by step as the bass leaps.

But voice leading aside, the two chords are sonically interchangeable, and their identities differ only by one enharmonic pitch. Look again at Example 24.18. See how the only difference between the Ger^6_5 chord in C and the V^7 in D♭ is the shift of F♯ to G♭? To take advantage of this enharmonic relationship, composers treat this sonority as a pivot chord. Such **enharmonic reinterpretation** permits certain chromatic modulations, as shown in Example 24.19.

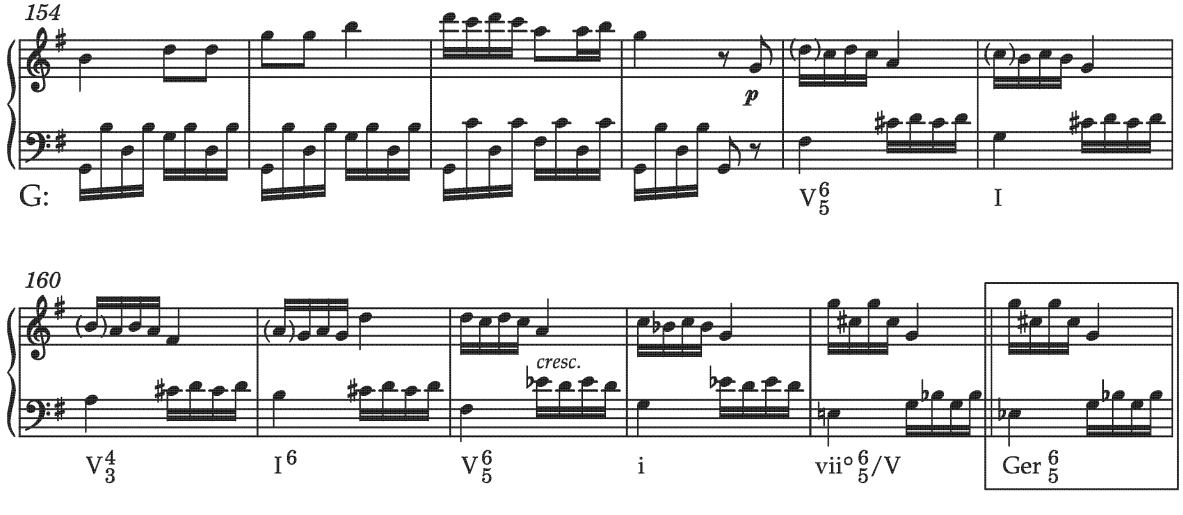
Example 24.19B illustrates how Beethoven's enharmonic reinterpretation allows him to tonicize ♭II effortlessly: A quick modal shift from G major to G minor prepares the Ger^6_5 (mm. 163–165). In m. 167, D♭ appears (rather than the previously notated C♯). As the chordal seventh of the E♭ chord, the D♭ resolves by step descent and leads to the restatement of the theme in A♭ (♭II).

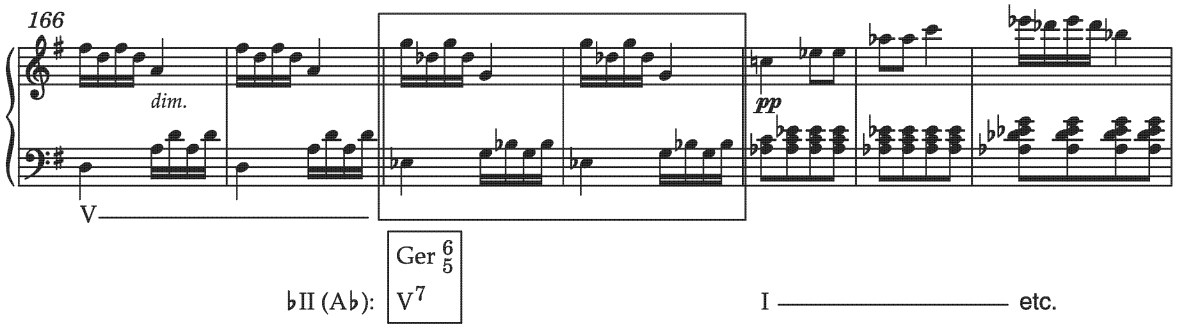
EXAMPLE 24.19 Enharmonic Pivot: $Ger^6_5 \rightarrow V^7$

A.



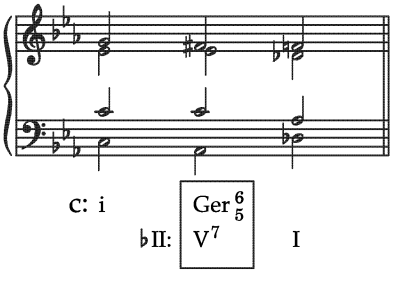
B. Beethoven, "Rage Over a Lost Penny," op. 129





Composers do not always notate the Ger^{6}_{5} and the $V^{7}/\flat II$ successively in their two forms, as in Example 24.19. Rather, they notate one form, which functions as a pivot chord between the two harmonic areas. Example 24.20 shows how to label such a dual-functioning sonority.

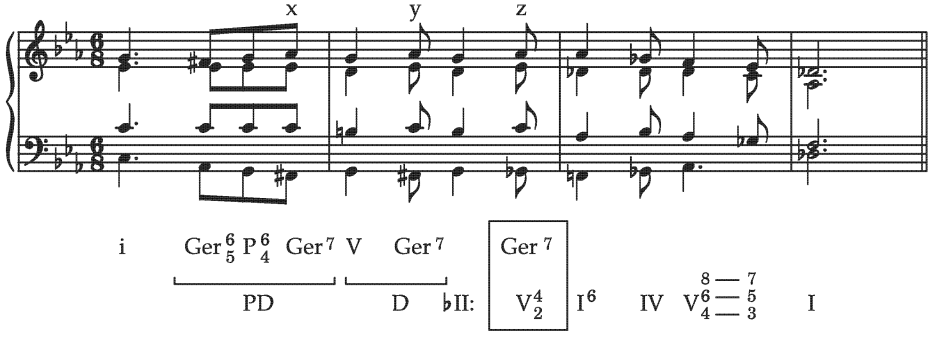
EXAMPLE 24.20 Ger^{6}_{5} as Pivot



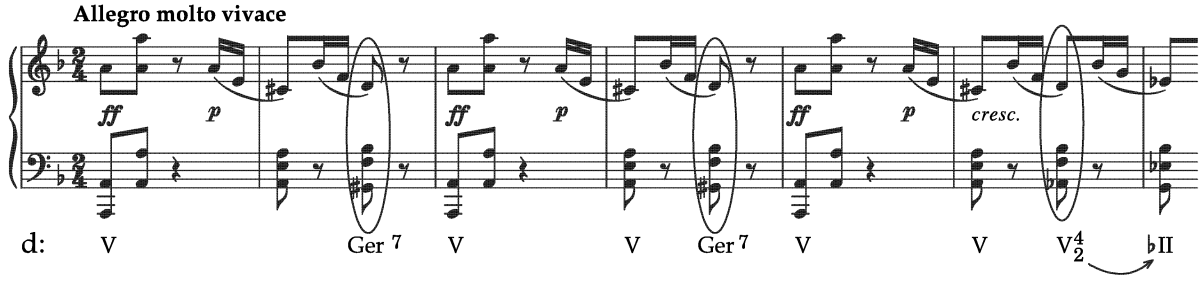
Just as the Ger^{6}_{5} and V^{7} are enharmonically equivalent, so too are the Ger^{7} and V^{4}_{2} chords. Example 24.21 illustrates how these chords can be used interchangeably. In m. 2 of Example 24.21A, the Ger^{7} chord (labeled *x*) functions as part of a PD expansion that leads to V. In m. 2 the Ger^{7} chord (labeled *y*) expands the dominant through chromatic neighbor motion. Its final appearance in m. 2 (labeled *z*) is sonically identical to its previous statement, but G♭ appears in the bass, transforming the chord into a V^{4}_{2} of D♭ (♭II). This enharmonic pivot is boxed to show how it secures the tonicization of ♭II.

EXAMPLE 24.21 Ger^{7} as Pivot

A.



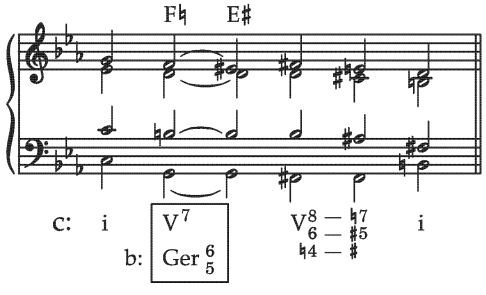
B. Tchaikovsky, *Sleeping Beauty*, Pas de Six, "Violente"



Example 24.21B, from Tchaikovsky's *Sleeping Beauty*, contains many examples of modulations using enharmonically respelled Ger^7 chords. The opening of the "Pas de Six" begins on V of D minor, which is expanded by the Ger^7 chord in mm. 2 and 4. In m. 6, the chord is respelled as a V^4_2 of E♭ (♭II), to which it resolves.

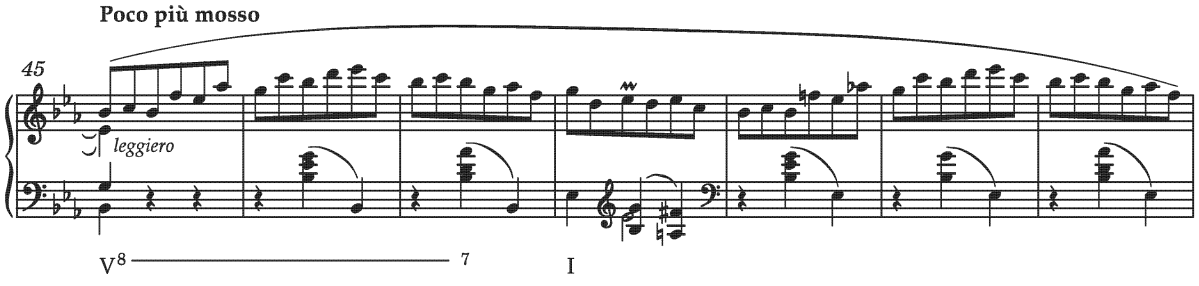
The reverse of this enharmonic reinterpretation is shown in Example 24.22. This procedure is not nearly as common as the move to ♭II, because the new tonic is $\hat{7}$, a scale degree that is rarely tonicized in tonal music.

EXAMPLE 24.22 Enharmonic Pivot: $V^7 \rightarrow Ger^6_5$



In Chapter 18, you will remember that it is possible to precede any consonant triad in a key with its own V^7. With enharmonic reinterpretation, you can now change any of these V^{7}s into augmented sixth chords. This transformation provides composers with easy access to both closely and distantly related keys.

EXAMPLE 24.23 Chopin, Mazurka in B major, op. 56, no. 1, BI 153



Listen to Example 24.23. Notice how B major (I) closes the phrase in m. 44. Immediately, a seventh is added to the tonic, creating the aural expectation that it will function as V^7 in the key of E (IV). Remarkably, this chord is resolved differently: It acts as a Ger^6_5 moving to the dominant of the new key D♯ major (III♯, enharmonically spelled as E♭). The roman numeral analysis below Example 24.23 shows how the pivot functions.

Enharmonic reinterpretation functions just like a pun. Based on traditional syntax, the listener has clear expectations. But a good pun leads the story in an entirely unexpected direction. Consider the following: "I couldn't understand why the ball was getting bigger and bigger. Then it hit me."

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

24.4 Analytical Snapshots from the Literature

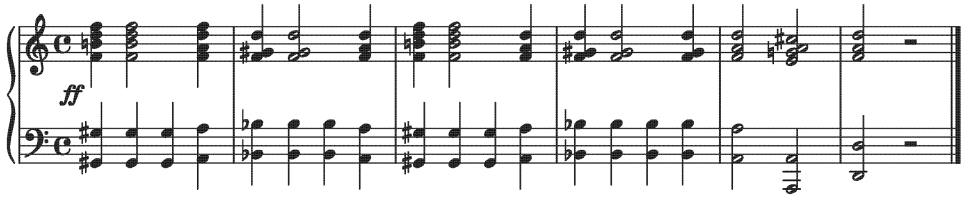
Listen to and then provide roman numerals for the following excerpts, which contain examples of the following techniques:

- converting ♭VI into an augmented sixth chord.
- pre-dominant expansions using augmented sixth or diminished third chords.
- enharmonic modulation using augmented sixth and dominant seventh chords.

WORKBOOK 1
24.4–24.7

A. Mozart, Adagio in C major, K. 356

B. Gluck, Chorus, "Bettet den Vater," from *Alceste*, act 1



C. Mendelssohn, "Weh mir!" Ariette, from *Elijah*, no. 18

D. Beethoven, Andante in F major, WoO 57

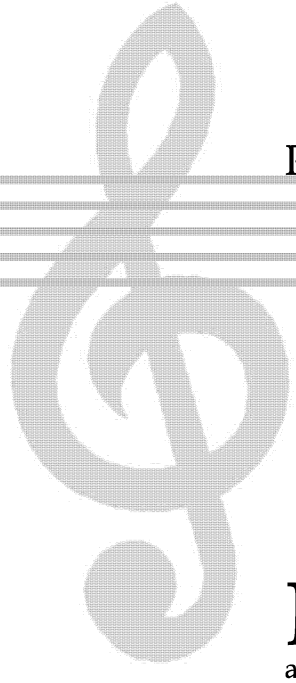
Summary of Part 6

With the examination of modal mixture, the Neapolitan chord, and augmented sixth chords, we have completed our study of common-practice harmony. We have seen that mixture is a procedure through which pitches belonging to the parallel mode can be incorporated and—in the cases of ♭III and ♭VI— tonicized. Such stabilization is one of the hallmarks of nineteenth-century music. These chromatic third tonicizations, so called because the tonicized keys lie a third away from the tonic, function identically to their diatonic counterparts. Furthermore, these new chromatic harmonies are often connected to an underlying musical narrative, or drama, whether or not a text is present. We learned that these chords can function in vocal music as musical analogues that highlight, clarify, or even expand on a text. Finally, we have seen yet again how counterpoint is a central force behind not only mixture sonorities but also both the Neapolitan and augmented sixth chords.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- augmented sixth chord
- chromatic voice exchange
- doubly augmented sixth chord
- enharmonic reinterpretation
- French augmented sixth chord (Fr^{4}_{3})
- German augmented sixth chord (Ger^{6}_{5})
- German diminished third chord (Ger^{7})
- Italian augmented sixth chord (It^{6})

This page intentionally left blank



PART 7

LARGE FORMS: TERNARY, RONDO, SONATA

Now that we have completed our study of common-practice harmony, we begin a journey through three important large forms: ternary, rondo, and sonata. Taken together, these forms fittingly describe the structure of vast numbers of instrumental and vocal works composed throughout the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Learning to recognize these forms and their local and large-scale harmonic procedures is a major step toward comprehending the design of classical works.

In addition to exploring formal strategies in large works, we also look at musical processes that unfold throughout a piece and that provide musical narratives for both listener and performer. Generally these processes are motivic, and they range from simple repetitions that are slightly obscured by the musical surface to significant transformations in which the motive is expanded at the very deepest level of structure.

CHAPTER 25

Ternary Form

Characteristics

Ternary and rondo forms are **composite forms** constructed of multiple sections that are self-contained. The independent sections feature strong melodic contrast and tonal closure; the various sections usually begin and end conclusively in the same key. Binary form is not a composite form, since its sections are tonally dependent on one another and are more organic in construction.

Ternary form has a three-part melodic design (ABA or ABA′) and a *three-part tonal structure* (original key–contrasting key–original key) (Example 25.1A). Contrast the design of ternary form with the rounded binary form of Example 25.1B, which has a three-part melodic design (a–dig.–a′) but a *two-part tonal structure.*

EXAMPLE 25.1 Comparison of Ternary and Binary Forms

A. Ternary Form

A	B	A or (A′)
original material	contrasting material	literal repetition of A (or altered restatement, labeled A′)
original key	contrasting key: (major mode: IV, vi, iv, ♭VI, i) (minor mode: III, iv, VI, I)	original key

B. Rounded Binary Form

: a :	: digression a′ :
in one key I _____V //	I _____V I

Listen to Example 25.2, which is in ternary form. Its three distinct and autonomous parts may be labeled ABA′. The fast, folklike B part in the parallel major key highly contrasts with the brooding A and A′ parts. The piece is in ternary form because each of the three sections is harmonically and thematically closed, and the B section is self-standing.

EXAMPLE 25.2 Grieg, "Hjemve" ("Homesickness"), *Lyric Pieces*, book VI, op. 57, no. 6

Continued

48
fp
fp
51
55
f
58
poco
fp
61
fp
64
fp
fp
A
Tempo I
67
rit.
lunga
p

Continued

If each of the three sections of a ternary form closes in its respective tonic, as in the Grieg example, we call the form a **full sectional ternary form** (A||B||A||). When either the A section (A||BA—not common) or the B section (AB||A—common) closes away from its tonic chord and this closure is integral to the tonal motion of the section, then we refer to the form as a **sectional ternary form**. When both A and B close away from their respective tonic chords, we call the form a **continuous ternary form** (ABA').

Sometimes it is not easy to distinguish a continuous ternary form from a rounded binary form. To decide whether a form is rounded binary or continuous ternary, consider how much the B part is dependent on the A part. If there is little connection, a ternary form is indicated. By contrast, if there is a thematic or motivic connection and little or no change of key, the form is better termed a binary form. Like much of your musical analysis, you must interpret such works according to how you hear them and then support your answer.

Transitions and Retransitions

Composers sometimes write *bridging* sections in order to create a sense of continuity in a ternary form. Material that bridges between tonic and a new key (from A to B in ternary form) is called a **transition**. Bridging material that leads from a contrasting key back to tonic is a *returning transition*, or **retransition**. Note that a ternary form may have a transition and a retransition, a transition without a retransition, a retransition without a transition, or no bridging material at all. Retransitions occur much more frequently than transitions.

Transitions and retransitions make for some of the most exciting music in a piece, because their material is completely unpredictable. They may be as simple as presenting the dominant of the upcoming key, or they may be considerably more involved, delicately foreshadowing motives and harmonies of the upcoming section.

It may be hard to determine whether a piece is in continuous ternary form or in sectional ternary form with a transition or retransition. If there is a conclusive end to a section followed by a modulation with melodic fragmentation, this is most likely a transitional area. By contrast, if a section closes in another key but the closure is integral to the tonal motion of a section, then there is most likely no transitional area.

Consider the relationship between the A and B sections in Example 25.3, a work by Brahms. The outer parts of Brahms's Romanze are in F major, and the contrasting B section (beginning in m. 17) is in the remote key of D major (VI). The B part is further distinguished from A by a faster tempo and a meter change.

EXAMPLE 25.3 Brahms, Romanze in F, *Six Piano Pieces*, op. 118, no. 5

Continued

If we view the transition only as the final measure of the A section (m. 16), then it is present but quite short. Here, a bass arpeggiation of D minor prepares the upcoming D major section: All that is required is a modal shift to the parallel major. But Brahms has done much more than tack on a measure of D minor; examine the A section to see the musical process.

The A section contains four four-measure phrases with the relationship *a*-*a*′-*a*-*a*′. The first *a* (mm. 1–4) closes with a HC, and the first *a*′ (mm. 5–8) moves to vi and closes with a HC in D minor. It is only the quick shift to A minor that prepares the return to F major in m. 9. The second *a* (mm. 9–12) is almost identical to mm. 1–4, but the second *a*′ (mm. 13–16) closes on V of D, which leads nicely to the next section. Thus, the large A section closes in a different key from the one in which it began.

A retransition prepares for the return of A after the B section (Example 25.4). The retransition begins by shifting to the lullaby-like $\frac{6}{4}$ meter of the A section and by reprising the A section's two-note slurred chords in parallel sixths (m. 45). Yet elements of the B part are retained in the retransition, the most obvious of which are the key of D major and the trills that close the retransition. In m. 46, D major moves to D minor, which functions as diatonic vi in F major. This is followed by a cadential six-four chord in F major that resolves directly to the tonic (mm. 47–48). Therefore, Brahms's work is a **sectional ternary form**.

EXAMPLE 25.4 Brahms, Romanze in F

Da Capo Form: Compound Ternary Form

Ternary forms can be found in several genres and style periods, such as a Classical sonata, a da capo aria from the Baroque period, a minuet and trio from the Classical period, and a character piece from the nineteenth century. Ternary forms are found in many more genres and styles than we can explore here. For example, although **da capo form** is the primary form of the Baroque aria, it can be found in almost all genres, style periods, and instrumental combinations of the common-practice era.

The Presto by Haydn in Example 25.5 is in da capo form. The ABA structure of da capo works is realized by following the marking at the end of the score, *Da Capo (al* 𝄐*)*, which in literal translation means "from the head to the fermata sign," telling the performer to return to the beginning of the piece and play to the fermata sign. It is the return that creates the final balancing A section; the da capo instruction merely saves space and ink.

EXAMPLE 25.5 Haydn, Divertimento in G major, Hob XVI.11, *Presto*

Haydn's Divertimento is much like Grieg's work in Example 25.2: Both are full sectional ternary forms, and both include smaller binary forms within the larger ternary form. These are **compound ternary forms**, because larger parts contain smaller *nested* forms (Example 25.6).

EXAMPLE 25.6 Form Diagrams

A. Grieg

measures:	1–8 9–16 19–27	28–35 36–43 44–51 52–59 60–67	68–75 76–85 86–94
large parts:	A _____	B _____	A′_____
small parts:	*a* *dig.* *a′*	*b* *dig.* $\frac{b'}{b}$ *dig.* *b′*	*a* *dig.* a′
	(rounded binary)	*(rounded binary x 2)*	*(rounded binary)*

B. Haydn

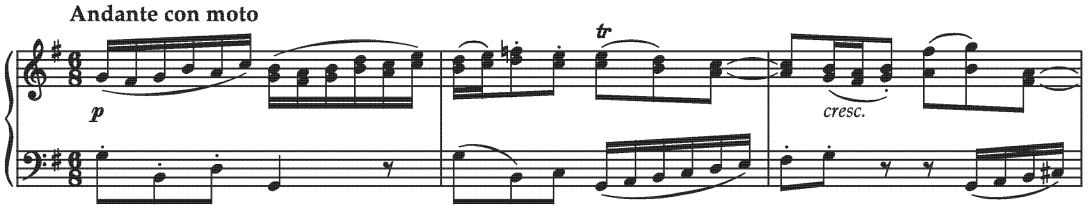
measures:	1–8 9–16 17–24	25–32 33–40 41–48	1–8 9–16 17–24
large parts:	A _____	B _____	A′_____
small parts:	*a* *dig.* *a′*	*b* *dig.* *b′*	*a* *dig.* *a′*
	(rounded binary)	*(rounded binary)*	*(rounded binary)*

Da Capo Aria

Instrumental works are by no means the only type of da capo structures. In fact, the **da capo aria** is possibly the most important ternary structure in the Baroque period. One or more instrumental interludes, called **ritornellos**, usually punctuate formal parts and sections of text. Attempt the following tasks before you listen to Example 25.7.

1. Locate and mark the division between the A and B sections; remember that the third section is a repeat of the A, from the beginning up to the *fine*. What underlying keys control each section? Are the sections divided into subsections? If so, mark them and indicate the prevailing keys in each with roman numerals.
2. What sequential progression unfolds in the opening instrumental passage (called a *ritornello*)? Discuss relationships between the ritornello tune and the soprano's opening melody.
3. What musical events help to distinguish the B section of this aria from the flanking outer parts?

EXAMPLE 25.7 Bach, "Ich will Dir mein Herze schenken" ("Lord, to Thee my heart I proffer"), *St. Matthew Passion*, BWV 244



Continued

4
Soprano Solo
7
mf con espr.
Lord, to Thee my heart I prof - fer, En - ter. Thou, en -
p
tr
10
- ter. Thou, en - - - - ter Thou, and dwell in me,
13
mf poco cresc.
Lord, to Thee my heart I prof - fer, en - - ter Thou,
poco cresc.
16
and dwell in me, O Lord, to Thee my heart I prof - -

19
cresc.
f
fer, en ter Thou, and
22
dwell in me, en ter Thou, and dwell in me.
f
25
f
tr
28
rfz
Fine.
31
mf
All I am or have I of - fer, My - self would I
p

Continued

34
lose in Thee. Know I not, Thy face to see, More than all the world
cresc.
37
f
would be?
f
40
p
All I am, I am
rfz
p
p
43
or have I of - fer, My - self would I lose in Thee. Know I not,
f
46
p
ten.
Thy face to see, more, More than all the world would be?
p
ten.
D.C.

The form in Bach's aria unfolds as shown in Example 25.8. The A part, which remains in the tonic key, markedly contrasts with the B part, which begins after the instrumental ritornello. The B part is more transitory and sequential, similar to the digression of a binary form. The B part closes in B minor, the minor dominant of E minor (or the mediant of the returning G major). Therefore, this is a **sectional ternary form**.

EXAMPLE 25.8 Bach, "Ich will . . . ," Form Diagram

section:	**A**			**B**			**A (da capo)**
measures:	1–6	7–24	25–30	31–37	38–41	42–48	1–30
subsection:	ritornello	voice	ritornello	voice	ritornello	voice	
keys:	G: I (HC)	V–I	I	vi (e)	V–i	PAC in v of vi (b)	I

Minuet-Trio Form

The Baroque **minuet** is a type of dance that remained popular in the following Classical period, when it became a standard inner movement in symphonies and chamber pieces such as serenades, divertimentos, and sonatas. In the hands of first Haydn and then Beethoven, the minuet was often transformed into a more spirited piece called the **scherzo** (or "joke"). The Classical minuet is followed without pause by a companion piece of lighter texture, called a **trio**, after which a *da capo* marking indicates that the minuet is to be repeated. The result is a large ternary form called **minuet-trio form**. As with many composite forms, the minuet-trio form is often a compound ternary, with nested binary forms.

Before listening to Example 25.9—a minuet-trio movement from one of Beethoven's early piano sonatas—review the following points and questions.

1. The minuet and trio are clearly delineated by Beethoven's use of titles. Yet even if no clues were provided, you would still be able to differentiate the A and B sections. Identify at least three features of the trio that distinguish it from the minuet.
2. Identify three features of the trio that are *shared* with the minuet.
3. What nested forms occur within the minuet and trio?
4. What is the underlying harmonic progression in the minuet?

EXAMPLE 25.9 Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 1 in F minor, op. 2, no. 1, Menuetto-Trio: *Allegretto*

Continued

This movement is a **full sectional ternary form**, and both the minuet and trio are rounded continuous binary forms (Example 25.10). The minuet, in F minor, moves from i to III in the first *a* section. The digression is characteristically more transitory, tonicizing iv briefly in mm. 19–25 before the V and interruption in m. 28. The underlying tonal progression of the minuet is i–III–iv–V//i–V–i.

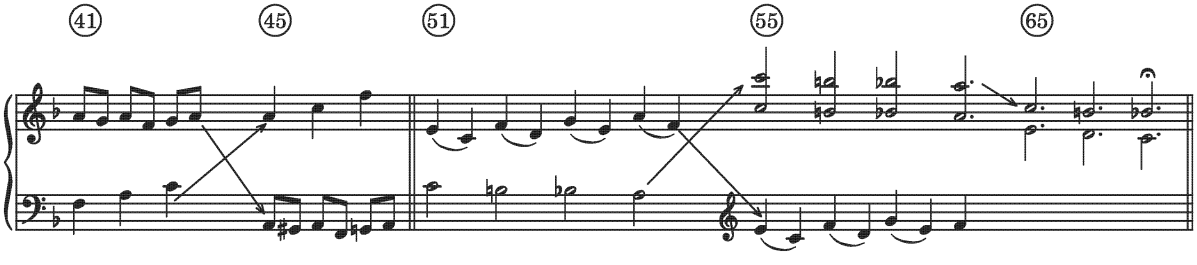
EXAMPLE 25.10 Beethoven, Menuetto-Trio, Form Diagram

section:	**A (minuet)**			**B (trio)**			**A (minuet)**
measures:	1–14	15–28	29–40	41–50	51–65	66–73	1–40
	a	*digression*	*a′*	*b*	*digression*	*b′*	
keys:	i–III	iv–V //	i–V–i	I–V	$-V^7$ //	I–V–I	i

To achieve variety in the rounded binary forms, material from the *a* section is often presented so that what was in the upper voice is now in the lower voice (and vice versa) in the *a′* section. The procedure in which contrapuntal lines are swapped is called **invertible counterpoint** (see Appendix 2 for a detailed presentation of invertible counterpoint). Beethoven uses this contrapuntal technique in both the minuet and the trio; a common procedure thus ties the two together. In the minuet, the reprise of the *a′* section in m. 29 places the initial tune in the left hand rather than in the right. The right hand again takes over the melody in m. 31.

Similar registral shifting takes place in the trio, where Beethoven intensifies the effect by introducing it immediately in back-to-back phrases (mm. 41–44 and 45–48). Invertible counterpoint and registral change become ever more explicit in the digression of the trio, which is shown in Example 25.11: The chromatic line C^4–B^3–$B♭^3$–A^3 begins on C^2 in m. 51 and repeats one and two octaves higher than the tune (m. 55 and m. 65). One can find the seeds of registral shifting and invertible counterpoint planted in the opening of the minuet: The tenor-voice entrance at the end of m. 2 restates the soprano-voice entrance down an octave.

EXAMPLE 25.11 Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 1, Trio



Ternary Form in the Nineteenth Century

Some of the species of ternary forms from the eighteenth century, such as the minuet-trio, continued to serve composers throughout the nineteenth century. Others, such as the da capo, fell out of favor and were replaced with new—or at least hybrid—forms whose very titles suggest the intense Romanticism that gave rise to them.

One new addition, the **character piece**, was a short, expressive work often written for solo piano. Some important nineteenth-century character pieces include the bagatelles of Beethoven and the impromptus and *Moments musicaux* of Schubert; and the ballades, nocturnes, polonaises, and mazurkas of Chopin. In addition, composers who were influenced by the literature of the time wrote entire cycles of piano pieces with highly descriptive titles, such

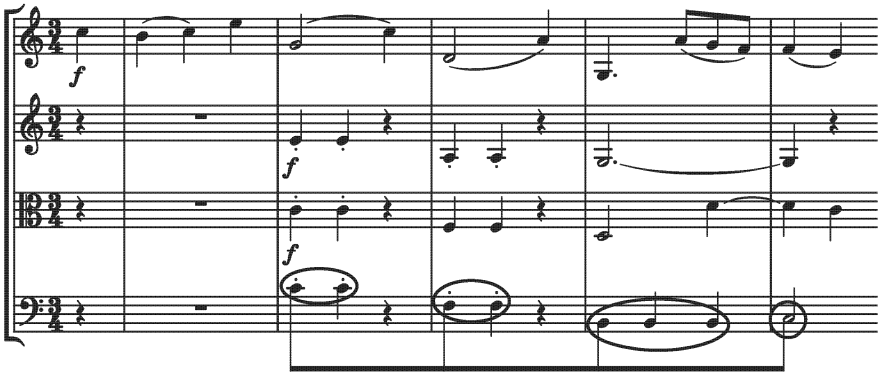
as Robert Schumann's *Papillons* and *Carnival*. Character pieces continued to be composed throughout the nineteenth century by Liszt, Brahms, Scriabin, and Grieg, whose "Hjemve" ("Homesickness") we encountered in Example 25.2.

In the following examples from the cusp of the nineteenth century and onward, we explore how composers used motives to link independent sections of ternary works—in particular, how apparently new musical material actually concealed repetition or a transformation of earlier material. (See Appendix 3 for an extended presentation of motivic structure.) Although it reaches its apogee in the music of Liszt and Wagner, motivic transformation is not new to the nineteenth century. One often encounters instances of transformation in the music of late-Classical composers such as Mozart and Haydn, some of whose string quartets are unified through the recurrence of the same one or two motives in multiple movements.

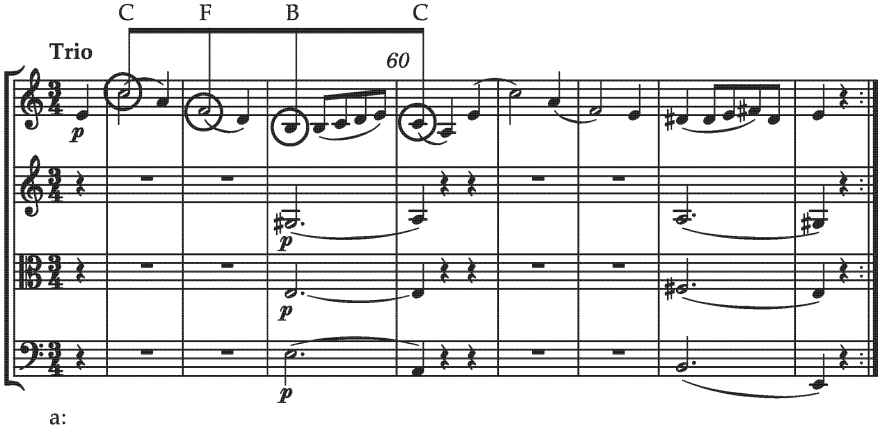
Consider the minuet-trio pair from a Haydn string quartet shown in Example 25.12. At first glance, the minuet and trio seem to be highly contrasting. Not only are there dynamic and key changes (from C major to A minor), but the trio is more sparse in texture than the minuet, with the first violin given the lion's share of melodic material and the lower instruments merely punctuating the tune with an occasional chord. However, even a slightly more detailed look reveals important connections between the minuet and trio.

EXAMPLE 25.12 Haydn, String Quartet in C major, "Emperor," op. 76, no. 3, Hob III.76

A. Menuetto: *Allegro*



B. Trio



The minuet opens in C major with the angular violin falling by ever-increasing large intervals: a sixth, a seventh, and finally a ninth. The other instruments imitate the first violin's jaunty contour, but the cello line (C, F, B, C) is particularly exposed. The opening of the trio reveals a barely hidden repetition of the earlier cello figure in the first violin, even though the trio is cast in the relative minor. See Example 25.12. This important association between the minuet and trio is one that performers should consider, since recognizing such motivic recurrences can render their performances more beautiful and insightful.

EXAMPLE 25.13 Chopin, Mazurka in A minor, op. 17, no. 4

Continued

Consider two of Chopin's mazurkas. Example 25.13 shows the opening A section of a mazurka in A minor, a section that contains a nested small ternary form (*aba*). After an ambiguous four-measure introduction, a wandering melody enters at m. 5. The opening notes of the right hand (B^4–C^5–D^5) help to explain the function of the introduction, where the middle voice moves with this same three-note figure, almost as if it were lying in gestation before flowering into an expressive melody at m. 5.

The next seven measures are filled with chromaticism, including the descending line E^4–$D\sharp^4$–$D\natural^4$–C^4 in mm. 8–13 (Example 25.13). Again, the mood remains somber, such that we crave relief. It arrives in mm. 37–42, as a more sprightly tune unfolds over a dominant pedal—this is the *b* part of the nested *aba* form. Despite the contrast, one discovers a compressed repetition of the chromatic line from mm. 8–13 in mm. 37–42 (Example 25.14).

EXAMPLE 25.14 Chopin, Mazurka in A minor

In his late F-minor mazurka, also cast in ternary form, Chopin juxtaposes the very distant keys of F minor and A major in the two halves of the A section, yet he subtly links these disparate keys with a neighbor motive that he presents at various structural levels in the opening moments of the piece (Example 25.15). Following the initial statement of the neighbor C^5–$D\flat^5$–C^5 ($\hat{5}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) in m. 1, a chromatic descent from C^5 to G^4 (in m. 6) is compensated by an upward leap that recaptures the upper neighbor figure, $D\flat^5$–C^5, in mm. 6–7.

The contrasting melody (starting in m. 15) begins with a stepwise ascending line that balances the more angular, predominantly descending line that characterized the opening. It is not surprising that C♯ is the most prominent pitch in this section, since it functions as a hugely expanded statement of its enharmonic twin, D♭. In fact, given that C♯ occupies the B section and returns to C in the restatement of the A material, Chopin's choice

of A major for the contrasting melody is actually quite logical, given that it nicely harmonizes the expanded neighbor D♭ as C♯.

EXAMPLE 25.15 Chopin, Mazurka in F minor, op. 68, no. 4

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

25.1

Draw a formal diagram for the following pieces. If a piece is a compound form, include the nested, smaller forms. Then answer the accompanying questions on a separate sheet of paper.

WORKBOOK 1
25.1–25.3

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata in C major, Hob XVI.10, Menuet and Trio

1. What type of period opens the minuet?
2. What is somewhat unusual about the harmony in the digression?
3. What harmonic and melodic technique occurs in the bass line that opens the trio?
4. Discuss the pre-dominant that occurs in the first phrase of the trio.
5. What key(s) is/are tonicized after the first double bar of the trio?

6. Why could one support the assertion that the melodic structure of the trio is simple, or rounded, or balanced?

B. Schumann, "Widmung" from *Myrthen*, op. 25

1. Discuss the phrase structure in the A section. How does it differ from Classical-style period structure?
2. The contrasting section while clearly different from the first section in key, texture, rhythm, and so forth, subtly draws on harmonic events from the first section in order to integrate the two sections. Discuss some of these connections.
3. Describe in detail how Schumann accomplishes the return to the tonic, A♭ major.

Translation of Widmung

Du meine Seele, du mein Herz, Du meine Wonn', o du mein Schmerz, Du meine Welt, in der ich lebe, Mein Himmel du, darein ich schwebe,	You my soul, you my heart, You my bliss, oh you my pain, You the world in which I live; You my heaven, in which I float,
O du mein Grab, in das hinab Ich ewig meinen Kummer gab! Du bist die Ruh, du bist der Frieden, Du bist vom Himmel mir beschieden.	Oh, you my grave, into which I eternally cast my grief. You are rest, you are peace, You are bestowed upon me from heaven.
Dass du mich liebst, macht mich mir werth,	That you love me makes me worthy of you;
Dein Blick hat mich vor mir verklärt, Du hebst mich liebend über mich, Mein guter Geist, mein bessres Ich!	Your gaze transfigures me; You raise me lovingly above myself, My good spirit, my better self!

8
du, dar ein ich schwe - be, o du mein Grab, in das hin - ab ich e - wig
12
mei-nen Kum - mer gab!
ritard.
Du bist die Ruh, du
16
bist der Frie - den, du bist vom Him - - mel
20
mir be schie - den. Dass du mich liebst, macht mich mir werth, dein Blick hat
24
ritard.
mich vor mir ver-klärt, du hebst mich lie - bend ü - ber mich, mein
ritard.

Continued

28
ritard.
f
gu - ter Geist, mein bess-res Ich!
Du mei-ne See - le, du mein Herz,
du mei-ne
32
steigen und eilend - - - - -
Wonn', o du mein Schmerz,
du mei-ne Welt, in der ich le - be, mein Him - mel
36
ritard. - - -
du, da - rein ich schwe - be, mein gu-ter Geist, mein bess res Ich!
p
40
ritard.
ritard.

C. Paganini, Caprice no. 20, from *24 Caprices,* op. 1

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- character piece
- composite form
- compound form
- da capo aria
- da capo form
- minuet
- minuet-trio form
- retransition
- ritornello
- scherzo
- ternary form
  - continuous
  - full sectional
  - sectional
- transition
- trio

CHAPTER 26

Rondo

Context

"Variety is the spice of life" and "There's no place like home" are two popular sayings that convey very different meanings. Although most of us desire new experiences to keep life interesting, we also need frequent returns to the familiar so that our lives don't feel like they're becoming too chaotic. This balance of variety and return—so fundamental to human nature—is reflected not only in ternary form but also in **rondo form**.

Ternary form and rondo form are **composite forms**, constructed of multiple self-contained sections. The sections of a ternary form introduce variety (in the B section) and return (in the final A section). Rondo form continues the balance of variety and return as it incorporates more and more sections. We can think of rondo form as an extension of ternary form, or we can consider ternary as a small three-part rondo:

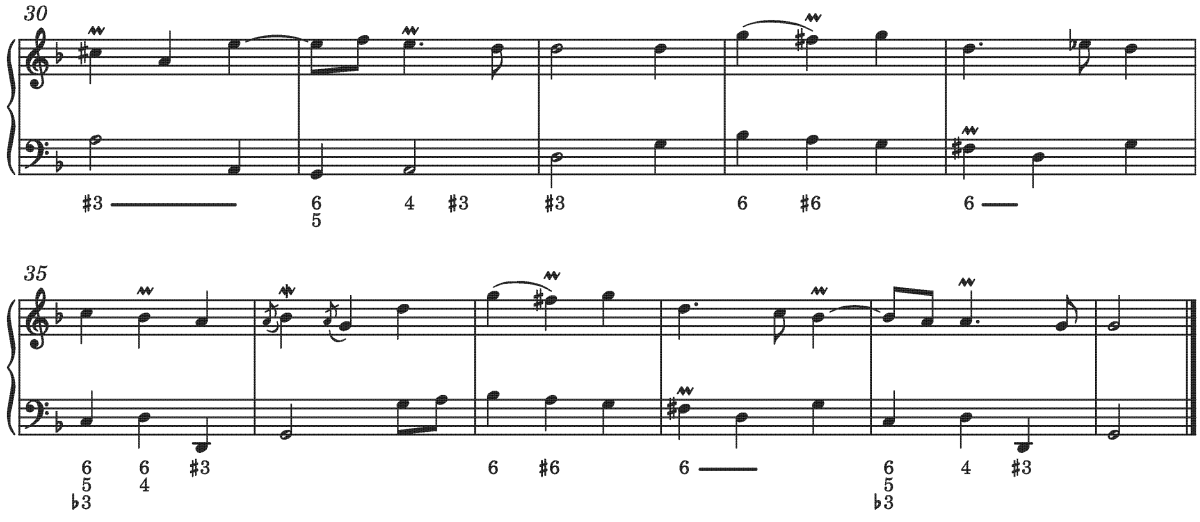
Ternary form (three-part):		A	B	A′			
Rondo form (five-part):	A_1	B	A_2	C	A_3		
Rondo form (seven-part):	A_1	B_1	A_2	C	A_3	B_2	A_4

Rondo form alternates sections of recurring material (A_1, A_2, A_3, etc.), called **refrains**, with sections of contrasting material (B, C, etc.), called **episodes**.

The rondo is a common form in French Baroque instrumental music, where it is called **rondeau**. Works by Louis Couperin (ca. 1626–61), his nephew François Couperin (1668–1733), and Jean-Philippe Rameau (1663–1733) often consist of very short refrains and a variable number of episodes in the form ABACADA, and so on. These early works became the model for later eighteenth- and nineteenth-century compositions, and it is here where we will begin our study of rondo.

Listen to Example 26.1, which contains a rondeau by François Couperin. The refrain is the first thing heard and always occurs in the home key—this is common in most rondos. The refrain occurs three times:

EXAMPLE 26.1 François Couperin, *Les Goûts-réunis*, Concert no. 8, "Air tendre"



measures:	1–8	17–24	33–40
section:	A_1	A_2	A_3
key:	i	i	i

There are two episodes: The first, at mm. 9–16, is in B♭ major (III). This episode begins off-tonic: The C-minor chord of m. 9 is ii in B♭. The second episode begins at the upbeat to m. 25 and moves toward D minor (v) in m. 28. If we order our findings, we see that Couperin's piece follows a five-part structure that is very common in the later Classical period:

measures:	1–8	9–16	17–24	25–32	33–40
section:	A_1	B	A_2	C	A_3
key:	i	III	i	v	i

The Classical Rondo

Rondos in the late eighteenth century often occur at the end of larger multimovement works, such as sonatas, chamber pieces, and symphonies. With themes that are often taken from folk or popular sources—or at least imitate those sources—they provide a light finish and a welcome contrast to the usually more complex first movements and serious slow movements. Moreover, rondos provide an opportunity to demonstrate the player's ability to change style quickly between contrasting sections. We next explore the two most important types of Classical rondos: the five-part rondo and the seven-part rondo.

Five-Part Rondo

Before you listen to Example 26.2, the final movement of a Clementi piano sonatina, glance at the score to familiarize yourself with the key and the melodic shape of the refrain's opening. Now observe how Clementi articulates the beginnings of new sections with double bars. Do you see any significant changes in melodic contour, key, mood, and texture at these locations? Next, listen to the work in its entirety at least twice. On a separate

sheet of paper, start your own form diagram of the piece, indicating refrains with A_1, A_2, and A_3; indicate episodes with the letters B and C. For each section, capture its location and duration in measure numbers and its key with the proper roman numeral.

EXAMPLE 26.2 Clementi, Sonatina in C major, op. 37, no. 3

31
35
p
tr
40
45
p
tr
51
f
p
55
f
tr
60
tr

Continued

Maggiore
97
102
108
112
117
121
125

Continued

Your form diagram should look something like this:

measures:	1–24	25–46	47–70	71–104	105–119	120–end
section:	A_1	B	A_2	C	A_3	Coda
key:	I	V	I	i	I	I

Coda, Transitions, and Retransitions

In listening to Example 26.2, you probably heard one final section that did not sound like a refrain but merely served to confirm the home key and provide a satisfactory ending. Technically, the final return of a refrain is the structural end of a rondo; however, when extra musical material occurs beyond the point at which a piece could have ended, it is called a **coda**.

The foregoing form diagram represents at the large scale how Clementi's five-part rondo is put together (ABACA–Coda), but it misses a lot of detail. First of all, rondo forms can have connecting sections that move from refrain to episode (**transition**) or return from an episode back to the refrain (**retransition**). Look at the end of section A_1: There is no modulation, there is no new theme or thematic development, and the cadence in m. 24 serves as a strong close for the section; therefore, there is no transition section. Contrast this with the end of section B: There is a PAC at m. 40, and the remaining material is fragmented and leads back to the original key. Measures 40–46 form a retransition. A similar retransition occurs at the end of section C, beginning at m. 90, so the form now looks like this:

measures:	1–24	25–40	40–46	47–70	71–90	90–104	105–119	120–end
section:	A_1	B	Retrans.	A_2	C	Retrans.	A_3	Coda
key:	I	V	→	I	i	V→	I	I

Compound Rondo Form

The second important detail missing from the form diagram involves nested forms. As with ternary form, rondo form can be a **compound form** with nested forms. Note that A_1, B, A_2, and C are in rounded binary form.

measures:	1–24	25–40	40–46	47–70	71–90	90–104	105–119	120–end
section:	A_1	B	Retrans.	A_2	C	Retrans.	A_3	Coda
subsection:	*a-dig.-a'*	*b-dig.-b'*		*a-dig.-a'*	*c-dig.-c'*			
key:	I	V	→	I	i	V→	I	I

The rondo in Example 26.3 is composed entirely of nested forms. Use the criteria of repetition and contrast of thematic and tonal materials to help group smaller sections into larger formal units that represent the refrain and

contrasting episodes. Be especially alert to where 16-measure units may be interpreted as small binary forms, and be on the lookout for transitions and retransitions.

EXAMPLE 26.3 **Mozart, Viennese Sonatina in C, *Five Divertimenti for Two Clarinets and Bassoon*, K. Anh. 229, *Allegro***

Continued

The following diagram summarizes both the form and the harmonic structure of the rondo. Note that each part contains two eight-measure units that together comprise a binary form. The refrain is a simple sectional binary form, and the episodes are (balanced) continuous simple binary forms.

measures:	1–16	17–32	33–48	49–64	65–80	81–end
section:	A_1	B	A_2	C	A_3	Coda
subsection:	*a a′*	*b b′*	*a a′*	*c c′*	*a a′*	
key:	I	i→I	I	IV	I	I

Seven-Part Rondo

The seven-part rondo adds another episode and refrain to the five-part rondo. These two added parts create a symmetrical form, which some liken to a musical arch. The following diagram shows the symmetrical form and the typical keys for the seven-part rondo:

	A_1	B_1	A_2	C	A_3	B_2	A_4
in major keys:	I	V, i, or IV	I	i, IV, or vi	I	I or i	I
in minor keys:	i	III or iv	i	iv, IV, III, VI, or I	i	I	i

As in the five-part rondo, the sections of the seven-part rondo are often cast in rounded binary forms.

Distinguishing Seven-Part Rondo Form from Ternary Form

Because of its symmetrical construction and because section C may be longer and distinct from the flanking ABA sections, the seven-part rondo can sound like a large ternary form:

Seven-part rondo:	$A_1\ B_1\ A_2$	C	$A_3\ B_2\ A_4$
Ternary:	A	B	A′

It is possible to confuse a large ternary form with a seven-part rondo, especially if a ternary form contains its own nested binary form in the A section. Generally, the context will help you distinguish between the two.

- Rondos were favored in the eighteenth century and ternary forms in the nineteenth century.
- One is less likely to encounter a slow rondo than a spirited one.
- Seven-part rondos usually contain repeated, nested smaller forms, adding yet another level of structure that is sometimes absent from ternary forms.
- Be aware that seven-part rondos can be shorter than five-part rondos because the latter often have lengthy C sections, transitions, retransitions, and codas that appear less often in seven-part rondos.

Missing Double Bars and Repeats

Keep some additional points in mind as you continue to analyze rondos. First, because double bars demarcating large formal sections or subsections do not always appear in rondos, you may need to appeal to other musical signals (changes in key, motive, or texture) in supporting your formal choices. Remember that transitions and retransitions may or may not be present in rondo form. Also, many rondos end with a coda that restates earlier material. Usually, codas are cadential and emphasize the tonic, but they may sometimes emphasize IV before returning to V and I.

Finally, after the statement of A_1 and B_1, composers often omit the repeats or write out ornamented repeats. An example of the latter may be seen in a comparison of A_1 (mm. 1–16) and A_2 (mm. 33–64) in the rondo from a Haydn string quartet in Example 26.4. Notice that A_2 occupies exactly twice as many measures as A_1. This is because each of the two eight-measure repeated phrases of A_1 have been written out and ornamented in A_2.

EXAMPLE 26.4 Haydn, String Quartet in D major, op. 33, no. 6, Hob III.42, Finale

A. mm. 1–16

B. mm. 33–64

45
49
55
60

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

26.1

For each of the following pieces, study the score then answer the questions on a separate sheet of paper.

WORKBOOK 1
26.1– 26.3

A. Haydn, Piano Sonata in C major, Hob XVI.35, Finale: *Allegro*

1. What is the form? Make a formal diagram that includes section labels and key structure. Make sure to show transitions and retransitions, and include measure numbers.
2. What is the period and formal structure of the opening refrain? Are there any changes in subsequent repetitions of this refrain?
3. Make a reduction of mm. 1–8 of the refrain that shows the contrapuntal relationship between the outer voices. In your analysis, distinguish between contrapuntal expansions and harmonic progressions.
4. Are there any motivic relationships between the refrain and episodes? Focus on contour.
5. If transitions or retransitions exist, describe their content (e.g., sequential) and function (e.g., modulatory, leading back to the refrain).

32
39
poco rit.
f
46
a tempo
p
f
54
p dolce
mf
60
1.
2.
f
p
66
f
p
73
f
p

Continued

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- coda
- episode
- five-part versus seven-part rondos
- refrain
- retransition
- rondo (rondeau form)
- rondo aria
- section
- subsection
- transition

CHAPTER 27

Sonata Form

Historical Context and Tonal Background

Sonata form is a structure on which many of the greatest compositions from the later eighteenth and nineteenth centuries are based. We explore its history, trace the evolution of its form, and analyze examples from the literature.

Originally, in the sixteenth century, the term *sonata* was used as a signal that a given musical work was to be performed instrumentally and not sung. To a large degree, this meaning has held constant for centuries. The term applies to multimovement works for solo instrument or a small ensemble of instruments (there are almost no sonatas for voice). Over the years, musicians also have extended the word *sonata* beyond its original meaning and have applied it to discussion of movements with a very particular form. This form is as important (and just as common) as the other forms we have learned: variation, binary, ternary, and rondo.

Since the 1780s all of the important genres of art music, including symphonies, concertos, operas, and instrumental sonatas, have featured movements cast in sonata form. The two terms often used as synonyms for sonata form—*sonata-allegro form* and *first-movement form*—are misnomers, because movements cast in sonata form may be in any tempo and occur in any movement of larger works. Furthermore, the first movements of these works may not even be cast in sonata form.

At a deeper level, even the term *sonata form* itself is problematic, given that it implies a rigid formal mold governed by a series of compositional rules that composers are required to follow. This most certainly is not the case. We consider sonata form as a way of composing, one that is the outgrowth of a large-scale musical process that is dependent on a powerful yet simple tonal strategy:

1. State the opening material in the tonic.
2. State additional material in a contrasting key.
3. Restate all of the material in tonic.

This very general model is an outgrowth of binary form.

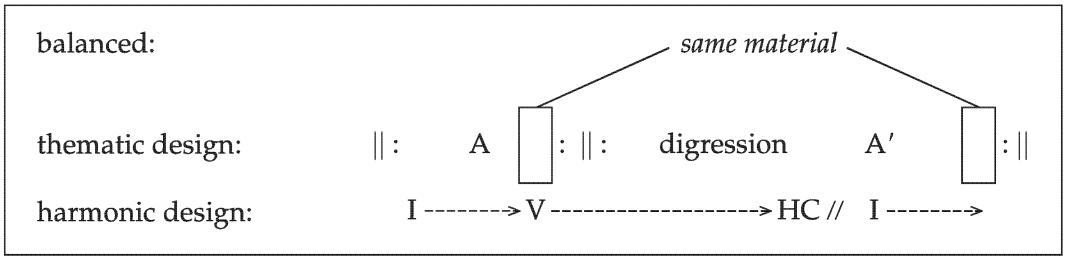
The Binary Model for Sonata Form

Sonata form may be seen as arising from a combination of balanced and rounded continuous binary forms (Example 27.1). In the **first tonal area (FTA)**—the initial part of a sonata's first section (the exposition)—material is presented in the tonic key. In the **second tonal area (STA)**, material is presented in the exposition in a contrasting key (usually V in major mode and III in minor mode).

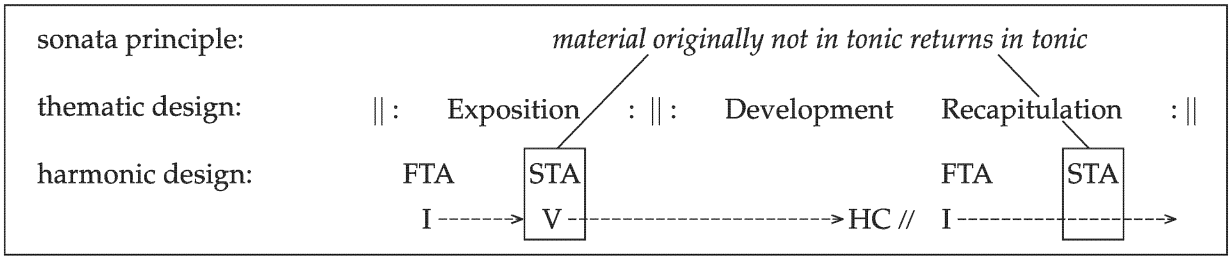
- The FTA is dependent on the *rounded-binary* characteristics, returning with the original material (**recapitulation**) after a digression (**development**) and a HC with an interruption.
- The STA is dependent on *balanced-binary* characteristics: Material (STA, usually with a new theme) presented at the end of the first section (exposition) returns at the end of the piece (recapitulation) in the tonic key. This is the **sonata principle**.

EXAMPLE 27.1 Comparison of Binary Form with Sonata Form

A. Balanced Rounded Continuous Binary Form (major mode)



B. Sonata Form (major mode)



The FTA and STA may contain similar or contrasting thematic material; they may also contain multiple themes. To avoid confusion and ambiguity, each theme will be labeled with its tonal area and a subscript number to indicate the order. For example, given three themes in the FTA and two in the STA, the labels would be FTA_1, FTA_2, FTA_3, STA_1, and STA_2.

Listen to a small sonata movement by Beethoven in Example 27.2 and see if you can label the thematic sections (exposition, development, recapitulation)

and harmonic sections (FTA and STA). Be aware that you will encounter passages that seem not to belong to any of these five sections. For now, we'll ignore the additional passages. Keep the following questions in mind as you proceed. What is the large-scale tonal progression? Does it conform to our model of binary form? If not, what are the differences?

EXAMPLE 27.2 Beethoven, Piano Sonata no. 19 in G minor, op. 49, no. 1, *Andante*

Continued

Beethoven's movement does indeed blend and expand aspects of rounded- and balanced-binary forms, but only the exposition repeats. The following diagram reveals why only the exposition is repeated: The development and recapitulation together are over twice as long as the exposition, and Beethoven achieves a proportional balance by repeating only the exposition. The letter "X" designates a new melody in the development, not based on FTA_1 or STA_1.

measure:		1		16		34		64	80	
thematic design:	‖:	Exposition			:‖	Development		Recapitulation		‖
		FTA		STA		STA x STA		FTA	STA	
harmonic design:	i	⟶	III	⟶	VI	⟶	V//i	⟶		

Transition

Now that we have determined the large-scale tonal and formal sections in Beethoven's movement, let's return to those passages that seem not to belong to the sections in the preceding diagram. Between the FTA and the STA (mm. 9–15) is a passage that begins identically to the opening of the piece. Given that this passage follows a half cadence, we might expect this to be a consequent phrase that makes a period in the FTA. Instead, there is an alteration in m. 13, and the passage modulates to B♭ major (III), ending on a half cadence and preparing for the entrance of the STA. This seven-measure passage that leads to the STA is called a **transition (Tr)**. There are two types of transitions.

1. A **dependent transition (DTr)** begins with a restatement of the initial theme from the FTA.
2. An **independent transition (ITr)** uses new thematic material.

Both types of transition modulate to the STA and end either on the new tonic or the new dominant (in which case the actual statement of the tonic is reserved for the opening of the STA). The pause that very often occurs between the end of the transition and the beginning of the STA and that marks the approximate midpoint of the exposition, is called the **medial caesura**.

In the recapitulation, the FTA and STA remain in the tonic. There is no need for a transition, but transitions often reappear in the recapitulation. Since the ending key for the "transition" is now the original key, this passage is often altered (harmonically and/or melodically) to create a sense of motion. In Beethoven's example, the transition returns at m. 72. This time, there is more activity (in the right hand) and a quicker movement toward III that is deflected; instead, tonic is retained as the phrase closes on a HC in G minor (at m. 79).

Closing Section

The contrasting tune of the STA ends with a PAC (in III) in m. 29 of Example 27.2. The following cadential section, which closes the exposition, is called the **closing section (CL)**. The closing section follows the appearance of contrasting thematic material in the STA and a conclusive cadence of that material.

Because the closing section's purpose is to reinforce the new key, it usually contains multiple cadential figures that are cast in two or more subsections that may even contain new thematic material. As such, the closing section is often longer than the STA, which may occupy eight or even fewer measures. A double bar (or repeat sign) usually marks the end of the exposition, just as it marks the close of the A section in a binary form. Accordingly, the exposition for Beethoven's sonata has the following form:

measure:	1	9	16	29
thematic design:	FTA	DTr	STA	CL
harmonic design:	i	i ——————→	III	III

Development and Retransition

The development is usually the freest section in sonata form and is analogous to the digression in binary form. Material presented in the exposition is

transformed, although composers are free to introduce one or more new themes, explore new and often remote harmonic areas, and develop thematic and motivic material through transformations that include thematic fragmentation and sequence. Given the improvisatory character of the development, there is often a complete absence of regular phrasing and periodicity. Thus, developments are often the most complex and dramatic sections of the movement. Underneath the chaotic surface, however, lies a logical unfolding of tonal and melodic events that imbue the form with a sense of coherence.

Beethoven begins his development with a variation of STA, followed by a new melody in E♭ major (VI) that enters in m. 38. The melody from the closing section enters in m. 46, ushering in a tonally unstable section that drives to the dominant and the interruption in m. 54.

The **retransition (RTr)** is the final area of the development, where the dominant prepares the return of the tonic in the recapitulation. In major-mode sonata forms, the dominant would be secured much earlier (in the STA), and from that point is implicitly prolonged through the development. In this case, the retransition explicitly restates and expands the dominant at the end of the development and moves to the interruption that precedes the recapitulation.

Recapitulation and Coda

Almost always the recapitulation repeats many events of the exposition, but it contains crucial changes, the most important of which is that not only the FTA's material but also that of the STA and CL return in the tonic key. We have also seen how transitions are altered so they lead back to the tonic. In addition, composers often alter the recapitulation by compressing thematic material from the FTA, introducing brief tonicizations using modal mixture, or even reversing the order of themes from the exposition's FTA and STA.

Although the movement could have ended in m. 97, Beethoven instead concludes it with cadential material from the STA in a **coda**. Codas occur after the recapitulation. They also can occur at the end of the exposition, where they are called **codettas**, since they are typically shorter and end away from the tonic key. Codas are optional, as their name implies (in English, "tail" or "appendage"). They serve to confirm the closing key and often incorporate material from the FTA or STA. Material is often stated over a pedal point, which creates a strong cadential feeling. Finally, codas often emphasize the subdominant, which provides a large plagal motion that extends the prevailing key.

The following diagram provides a complete summary of the prototypical events that occur in a sonata form written in either major or minor mode.

Sonata form

thematic design:	‖: Exposition					:‖: Development	Recapitulation				Coda :‖
harmonic design:	FTA	Tr	STA	CL	(Codetta)	RTr	FTA	"Tr"	STA	CL	
keys (major mode):	I	→	V	V	V	——→ V //	I	→	I	I	I
keys (minor mode):	i	→	III	III	III	——→ V //	i	→	i	i	i

Additional Characteristics and Elements of Sonata Form

Monothematic Sonata Form

Example 27.3 illustrates one of Haydn's string quartets, in which the opening of the FTA theme reappears in the STA. Haydn frequently used the same theme (although often varied) in both the FTA and the STA, to create a form called a **monothematic sonata form**. The lack of differentiation between sections plays havoc with attempts to define a first theme and a second theme, but, as you will see, it poses no problem for our analytical labeling system.

EXAMPLE 27.3 Haydn, String Quartet in A major, op. 55, no. 1, *Allegro*

A. FTA

in I (A):

B. STA (using FTA theme)

in V (E):

The Slow Introduction

Some movements cast in sonata form contain slow introductions that touch on foreign harmonic territory and chromatic key areas and incorporate modal mixture. This is particularly common in large works, such as symphonies. Slow introductions usually begin on the tonic (although I is not well established) and eventually move to and close on a half cadence.

Because the slow introduction wanders harmonically before moving to V, and because V is often extended, hovering with its added seventh, in anticipation of leading to the tonic, the introduction can be heard to function as a hugely extended upbeat that resolves to the tonic "downbeat" at the FTA.

Example 27.4 shows the 12-measure introduction to Beethoven's Symphony no. 1 in C. A brief look at the opening four measures reveals Beethoven's game plan. Although the first sonority is a root-position C chord, it contains a seventh; as V^7/IV, it moves to F, conferring on this sonority apparent tonic status. Tonal clarification is not given in the following measure since the V^7 that appears (G^7) moves deceptively to vi. The following crescendo sets up the expectation of tonal stability, but, yet again, Beethoven thwarts our expectations by falling in fifths, as vi moves to V^7/V to V, where a seventh is added. Subsequent attempts to resolve V^7 are thwarted, and the closing cadential gestures in mm. 9–12 reinforce the dominant. At last, in m. 13, V^7 resolves to tonic, which signals the beginning of the exposition.

EXAMPLE 27.4 Beethoven, Symphony no. 1 in C major, op. 21, *Adagio molto*

Harmonic Anomalies

Two harmonic anomalies frequently appear near or at the point of recapitulation. The first is the **false recapitulation**, in which the theme from the FTA appears in the "wrong" key; the real recapitulation, in the tonic,

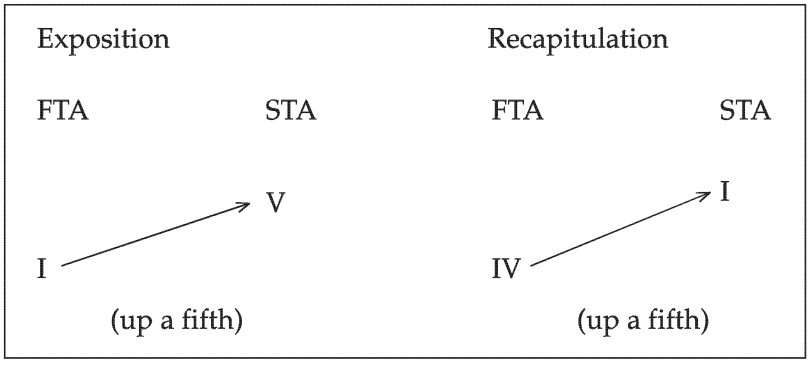
usually follows soon thereafter. Thus, false recapitulations are actually part of the development.

The first movement of Haydn's op. 33, no. 1 quartet contains a false recapitulation (Example 27.5). The movement is in B minor (although tonal ambiguity is present from the movement's beginning, since D major is strongly implied). The apparent retransition strongly suggests a dominant. But rather than its being the V of B minor, it is instead V of F♯ minor. And the joke doesn't stop there. Haydn doubly fools the listener: Rather than the expected (albeit false) recapitulation beginning on F♯ minor, A major boldly enters, stating the original theme. Only the twists and turns leading through an augmented sixth chord and arrival on V of B minor in mm. 56–57 redirect the tonal trajectory to the true recapitulation in m. 59 (not shown).

EXAMPLE 27.5 Haydn, String Quartet in B minor, op. 33, no. 1

The second harmonic anomaly is the **subdominant return**, in which the recapitulation begins not on I but on IV (Example 27.6). This procedure arose to create harmonic interest in the recapitulation since so much of it is traditionally cast only in the tonic. Given the exposition's tonal model of root motion up a fifth from I to V and given that the STA in the recapitulation must appear in the tonic to prepare for closure of the movement, composers begin the recapitulation down a fifth from the eventual tonic. Mozart's Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, is an example of one such work with a subdominant return.

EXAMPLE 27.6



Other Tonal Strategies

Three-Key Exposition

Sonata form remained an important formal structure in the nineteenth century. However, the opening years of the 1800s brought with them tonal innovations of many types, including supplanting the traditional tonic and dominant polarity with other tonal progressions. One of these, the **three-key exposition**, is found in major-mode works in which the STA moves to a diatonic third–related key, which bisects the traditional fifth motion from I to V. The motivation for such procedures may have been the century-old minor-mode binary and sonata forms whose overarching i–III–V || create an arguably more dramatic progression than the I–V——— || characteristic of major-mode works. For example, Bruckner's sixth symphony in A major moves from

I–iii–V in the exposition and I–vi–IV in the recapitulation before returning to tonic. However, notice that the traditional dominant is secured by the end of the exposition.

Extended Third-Related STAs

An even more dramatic tonal strategy is to postpone the structural dominant until the retransition and to remain in the mediant for the entire STA. For example, beginning in 1800, Beethoven explored such motion in his so-called "middle period" works, including his Piano Sonata in G major, op. 31, no. 1 (Example 27.7). The piece begins with a jaunty G-major gesture leading to the dependent transition, which we would assume would nicely place the STA in the traditional key of V (D major). Instead, the surprising arrival on F♯, with its dominant flavor (m. 63), leads us to the chromatic third–related key of B major (III). However, Beethoven quickly downgrades the novelty of this tonal progression by converting the B major to B minor (iii), the diatonic key in which the rest of the exposition unfolds.

EXAMPLE 27.7 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in G major, op. 31, no. 1, *Allegro vivace*

Two years later, in his "Waldstein" sonata (Example 27.8), Beethoven again invokes the tonal tactic of moving from I to chromatic III. But this time, after the opening in C major, he *remains* in E major (III) throughout the exposition (m. 35ff). The development focuses on various forms of IV, and V is really only secured at the retransition.

EXAMPLE 27.8 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in C major, "Waldstein," op. 53, *Allegro con brio*

Continued

Sonata-Rondo Form

Recall that rondo is a sectional ("composite") form that composers use for closing multimovement works, including symphonies, concertos, and sonatas. These often-playful movements provide a good-natured close to what are usually large and serious works.

The seven-part rondo is characterized by the refrain (labeled A_1, with subsequent statements incrementing the number as follows, A_1, A_2, A_3, etc.) that alternates with episodes to produce the following sectional structure: A_1 B_1 A_2 C A_3 B_2 A_4. This model is often modified by the addition of transitions and retransitions, as shown, along with the common tonal framework in which tonic and dominant are used in the first three sections (ABA′), a contrasting (usually plagally related) key used in the C section, followed by the return to and continuation in the tonic for the final A_3 B_2 A_4, creating a large three-part form overall: ABA || C || ABA.

Seven-Part Rondo

A_1	Tr	B_1	RTr	A_2	C	RTr	A_3	Tr	B_2	A_4
I		V		I	IV, i, vi, etc.		I		I	I (coda)

By the later Classical period (1780–1800), composers imbued the rondo with dramatic significance in three ways:

1. increasing its length by extending and developing specific episodes, particularly the C section;
2. varying the refrain (with melodic embellishments, the insertion of sequential material, or modal mixture); and
3. incorporating new themes and keys.

Clearly, first-movement sonata form was a model for such changes. Classical composers were aware of the underlying similarities between the sonata and rondo forms including the tonal structure. For example, the basic sonata design reveals a large three-part form: exposition, development, and recapitulation.

Basic Sonata Form

| ----------Exposition---------- | Development---------- | -----Recapitulation---------- |

FTA		STA	CL	RTr	FTA		STA	CL
I	Tr	V		IV, i, vi, etc.,	I	Tr	I	I

The similarities run even deeper: Sonata form's tonal structure is predicated on a motion from the tonic to the dominant in the exposition, a tonal contrast and loose-knit structure in the development, and a return to the tonic in the recapitulation. This is nearly the same large-scale plan as the rondo, where the appearance of B_1 is usually in the dominant—the difference being that its return (B_2) is transposed to the tonic.

Indeed, a rondo modified by (1) a second B transposed to the tonic and (2) a C section that functions as a development is clearly a hybrid form, effectively combining attributes of both rondo and sonata into what is called **sonata-rondo** form.

Two additional modifications occur in sonata-rondo form that make the connections even stronger. First, transitions and retransitions create a more fluid structure, and, second, the C section unfolds in a more digressive, developmental fashion and may include thematic material from the A and B sections. The diagram that follows shows how the various elements of rondo and sonata form combine to create the sonata-rondo form. The top level of the diagram shows the three large sections (exposition, development, and recapitulation), and beneath these the smaller formal sections of the rondo are illustrated, supported by the underlying tonal structure.

Sonata-Rondo Form

| ----------Exposition ---------- | Development---------- | -------Recapitulation---------- |

A_1 = FTA	Tr	B_1 = STA	A_2 = ?	C (expanded)	RTr	A_3 = FTA	Tr	B_2 = STA	A_4 = Coda
I		V	I !	IV, i, vi, etc.	V^7	I		I	I

Notice the moment in the diagram (marked with a question mark and an exclamation point) that reveals a noncongruency between sonata and rondo: The second statement of the refrain (A_2), which leads to the exposition's close, brings back the initial theme, *but does so in the tonic*. As we know, in sonata form, this would be the closing section and would necessarily remain in the dominant.

Composers often solve this formal tonal problem by modifying A_2, either shortening it, or destabilizing the return to the tonic through modal mixture

or elision, effecting a transition to the developmental C section. Such blurring of the form may lead the listener to think that the return of the refrain is actually the beginning of the development, and that the composer is restating the initial theme in preparation for its development.

On the other hand, the composer may simply repeat the refrain literally, closing it strongly in the tonic. In such a case the listener is led down the wrong path, assuming the movement is in sonata form, and this is the repeated exposition, back in the tonic. But when C immediately follows the A section, the listener realizes they are party to an aural bait-and-switch tactic in which the composer has duped the listener.

Mozart's Piano Sonata in D major, K. 311 (Example 27.9) is a clear example of sonata-rondo form. Listen to and mark the large sections of the movement, keeping in mind the major sections just discussed.

EXAMPLE 27.9 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 311, Rondeau

21
p
f
27
p
f
33
37
41
p
48
55
f
p

Continued

92
p
97
f
102
p
107
p
f
113
p
f
p
120
tr
124
tr
f

Continued

158
163
168
crescendo
171
Andante
tr
Presto
Adagio
(Tempo primo)
174
fp
f
179
p

Continued

219
f
223
p
f
p
p
227
f
231
p
f
p
p
235
f
240
tr
tr
244
p

Continued

The movement is cast in a seven-part rondo as follows:

A_1	B_1	A_2	C	A_3	B_2	A_4
(1–26)	(41–56)	(86–102? 119?)	(102? 119? to 157? 168?)	(173–189)	(206–220)	(249–266)
I----------V----------		I-------?	vi----iv---ii------	I----------		

Notice that the telltale transposition of B_2 to the tonic is an important criterion for sonata-rondo construction.

The question marks in the diagram indicate more than one possibility for determining the beginnings and endings of sections (specifically A_2 and C). Such blurring of sectional boundaries in a rondo form also indicates sonata-rondo form. The formal elision within the A_2 section—where the refrain recurs in tonic—is a monkey wrench thrown into sonata form: the STA and closing should remain firmly in the *new* key and cannot return to the tonic until the recapitulation. However, Mozart has changed the A_2 refrain by tonally *destabilizing* its tonic at m. 104 and even *developing* the cadential material in mm. 112–119 by constantly transposing it, weakening the A_2 to the degree that the listener cannot be sure where it ends and the C section begins. There are many measures not accounted for in this formal summary. These transitions and retransitions create a more fluid, dramatic effect.

A more complete formal diagram follows, detailing the transitional material as well as the refrain and its repetitions. Notice that Mozart has added a cadenza that highlights the crucial retransition that leads from the end of C (development) to A_3 (recapitulation).

Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 311, Rondeau

Exposition----------						Development ----------		
A_1 (FTA)	Tr	B_1/STA	CL	RTr	A_2	C	RTr	cadenza
1–26	27–40	41–56	56–79	79–86	86–102 (or 119?)	102 (or 119?) to 157 (or 168?)		173
1–16 (refrain)								
16–26 (suffix)								
I----------		V----------			I----------????	vi-----IV---ii-----V----------		

Recapitulation ----------						
A_3 (FTA)	Tr	B_2 (STA)	CL	RTr	A_4	cadential tag
173–189	190–205	206–220	221–244	244–248	248–266	266–269
173–189 (refrain only, no suffix)					suffix appears 256–266!	
I----------						

Analytical Synthesis: Sonatas of Haydn and Mozart

To provide analytical models for your own analysis, we will continue with an analysis of two sonata movements, the first by Haydn and the second by Mozart. In addition to exploring the form of these movements, we will see how each composer fleshes out the structure. In the Haydn sonata, we will focus on tonal issues to see how surface events penetrate into deeper musical structures and influence the form. In Mozart's piece, we will discover how an analysis of motivic expansion helps to clarify the meaning behind what appears to be tonal chaos in the development.

Haydn: Piano Sonata no. 48 in C major, Hob XVI.35, Allegro con brio

Haydn's well-known Piano Sonata in C major (Example 27.10) provides a good introduction to analysis of sonata form, although it does not always adhere strictly to traditional procedures. Remember that sonata form is really not a "form" at all, but a dynamic process in which certain conventions of form can often be counted on to appear. In beginning your study, listen to the piece, marking the following events (some may not be present) and providing roman numerals for keys:

Introduction
Exposition: FTA, DTr or ITr, STA, CL, Codetta
Development: RTr
Recapitulation: FTA, DTr or ITr, STA, CL
Coda

EXAMPLE 27.10 Haydn, Piano Sonata no. 48 in C major, Hob XVI.35, *Allegro con brio*

24
28
31
36
40
fz
p
pp
46
f
p
f
52
p
f
p
f
p
f
p
f
56
p
f
tr

Continued

91
95
Adagio Tempo I
99
p
103
fz
110
f
f
fz
114
fz
117

Continued

Exposition

The piece begins without an introduction. At m. 1, the exposition commences with the FTA in the tonic. The opening eight-measure theme begins with simple arpeggiations (mm. 1–4) followed by a mostly stepwise descent with incomplete neighbors (mm. 5–8). A bit of melodic reduction reveals a stepwise motion from the repeated G that descends a fifth to C in m. 8 (Example 27.11). Notice that the final D^5 and C^5 do not really participate in the stepwise descent in m. 6 but wait until the final cadential motion in mm. 7–8; the contrapuntal motion and voice exchange in m. 6 simply prolongs the E^5 in m. 5.

EXAMPLE 27.11 Haydn, Sonata in C, mm. 1–8

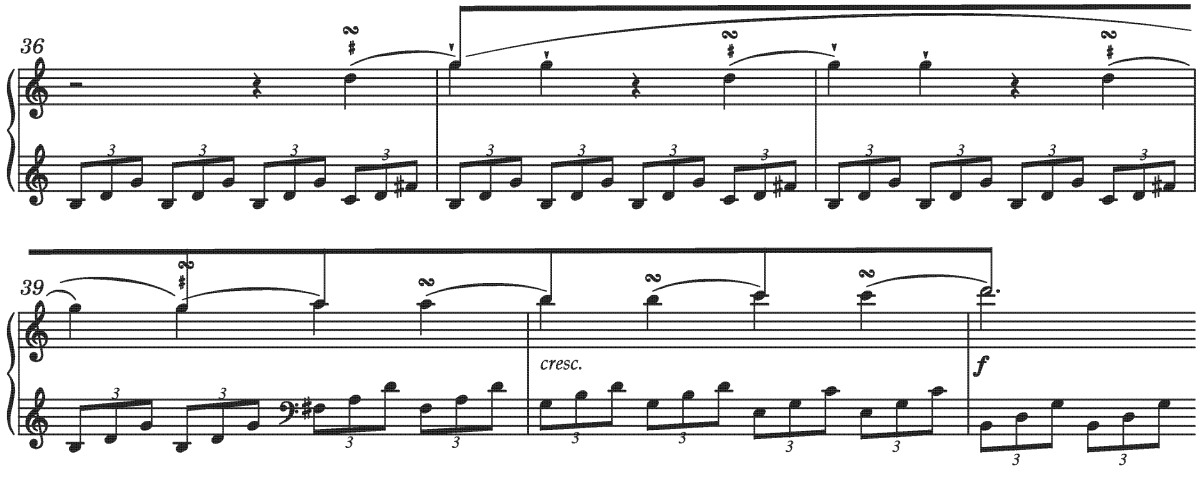
Measures 9–16 are an almost literal repeat of mm. 1–8 except for the triplet accompanimental figure and the more varied harmonic setting in mm. 13–15. Therefore, we are not finished with the FTA until at least m. 16 and the second PAC.

EXAMPLE 27.12 Haydn, Sonata in C, mm. 20–30

A new theme appears in m. 20 (Example 27.12). When F♯^{5} (m. 23) instigates a move to G major (V), we know that we have entered the modulatory transition. So, the proper label for this section is ITr. In general, the use of accidentals in a major-key sonata marks the transition section, and the dominant of the key of the STA marks the end of the transition section (i.e., V/V in m. 35). In minor-mode pieces it is the opposite: The opening minor tonic requires an accidental (raising $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone), but the move to the relative major reinstates the lowered form of $\hat{7}$ since it now functions as $\hat{5}$ in the new key.

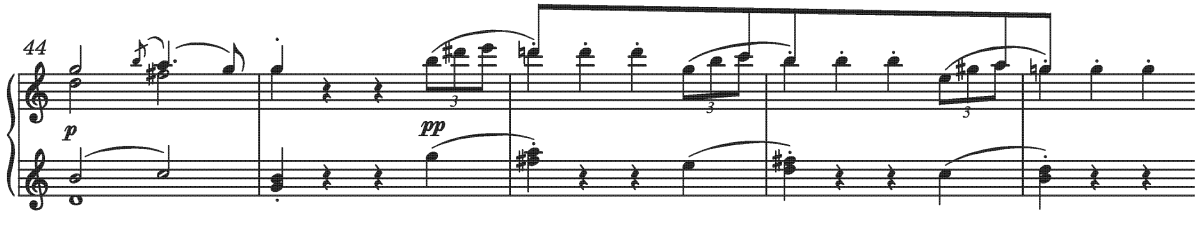
Motivically, the beginning of the transition contains a stepwise ascent, C^5–D^5–E^5, E^5–F♯^{5}–G^5 (Example 27.12); this is reminiscent of the opening arpeggiation (now filled in with passing tones), as well as an inversion of the linear descent from G^5 to C^5. Another correspondence follows when, after G^5 rises a fifth to D^6 (mm. 24–26), D^6 descends a fifth to G^5 (mm. 26–28 and 28–30) in exact imitation of the opening stepwise-fifth descent from G^5 to C^5.

EXAMPLE 27.13 Haydn, Sonata in C, mm. 36–41



The STA begins in m. 36 with a new theme. However, even a cursory examination reveals that the ascending fifth recurs (Example 27.13). A strong cadence in mm. 44–45 closes the STA. The CL, which occupies mm. 46–62, begins with yet another manifestation of the descending fifth (filled-in arpeggiation figure), which releases the tension of the exposition (Example 27.14).

EXAMPLE 27.14 Haydn, Sonata in C, mm. 44–48



A codetta (mm. 62–67) restates the opening theme in V. The following chart presents the exposition's formal and harmonic events.

measures:	1–19	20–35	36–45	46–62	62–67
thematic design:	FTA	ITr	STA	CL	Codetta
harmonic design:	I	——→	V	V	V

Development

The development begins with an apparent return to the tonic, C major. The linear descent of a fifth in the soprano ends in an unexpected half cadence in A minor (vi) in m. 71. Haydn—a composer with a penchant for surprise—does not continue in A minor, but instead sets the opening theme in F major. Only after the theme is completely stated (mm. 71–79) and an A2 (–3/+4) sequence accrues dramatic tension (mm. 80–83) does A minor return, in m. 83.

Haydn next retraces his harmonic steps, using a D2 (–5/+4) sequence to return to F major (mm. 86–90). However, the F harmony continues to descend to E, the same chord that was abandoned in m. 71. A pedal point on $\hat{5}$ usually indicates the retransition, but the pedal here is on E (V/vi) rather than on G (V). A strong circle of fifths moves to the dominant (E–A–D–G in mm. 94–103), so the pedal on E in m. 94 may be regarded as the beginning of the retransition.

Recapitulation

The recapitulation begins in m. 104 with a restatement of the FTA theme, one octave lower than its original presentation. A dramatic change occurs in m. 111 when, just as the listener anticipates a literal restatement of the theme, the initial tonic chord appears in the parallel minor. It is followed by many changes, including modal mixture, all of which suggest that Haydn is redeveloping material (i.e., that the movement has not really left the development and begun the recapitulation). However, in m. 118 he returns to the established model by repeating the FTA material first heard in m. 13.

Suddenly, Haydn skips ahead to the dramatic arpeggiations and half cadence that characterized the end of the transition section, compressing the second part of the FTA and the transition into a 15-measure phrase, nearly half the length it occupied in the exposition.

The STA is stated in the tonic (mm. 126–135), followed by the CL (mm. 136–151), at which point a dramatic diminished seventh chord (m. 141) heralds an extended coda that closes the piece. The following diagram presents a complete formal and harmonic diagram of the movement.

measure:	1	20	36	46	62	68	94	104	111	126	136	152
thematic design:	Exposition					Development		Recapitulation				Coda
harmonic design:	FTA	ITr	STA	CL	Codetta	RTr		FTA	"ITr"	STA	CL	
	I	——→	V	V	V	I–vi–IV–vi–V//		I	——→	I	I	I

This movement generally conforms to our model of sonata form. However, departures from the norm, such as the pedal point at the end of the FTA, the very short STA, the curtailed FTA in the recapitulation, and the dovetailing of the missing material in the transition of the recapitulation, demonstrate how composers might mold the sonata form to accommodate their creative impulses.

Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, Allegro

The first movement of Mozart's Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, appears to be a random series of harmonies in the development section. Our goal is to seek an underlying compositional logic for these curious excursions.

Listen to and study Example 27.15, locating the important formal sections and their controlling key areas. The formal structure is clear in this movement. The exposition, demarcated by the double bar and repeat signs, occupies mm. 1–63. The FTA closes at m. 10, the dependent transition begins at m. 11 and closes on the arpeggiating dominant of the new key, and the STA in F major (V) occupies mm. 23–38. The closing section divides into two smaller sections (mm. 38–50 and mm. 50–59), and a codetta closes the exposition (mm. 59–63). The recapitulation and coda (mm. 94–165) unfold in the same manner as the exposition. The chart following the score shows the main formal sections of the movement. Notice that the harmonic progression in the development (mm. 64–93) remains to be interpreted.

EXAMPLE 27.15 Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, *Allegro*

Continued

42
f
f
p
p
46
50
53
56
tr
59
tr
64
68

Continued

97
100
104
107
111
114
117
tr

Continued

143
147
f
p
151
154
157
159
162

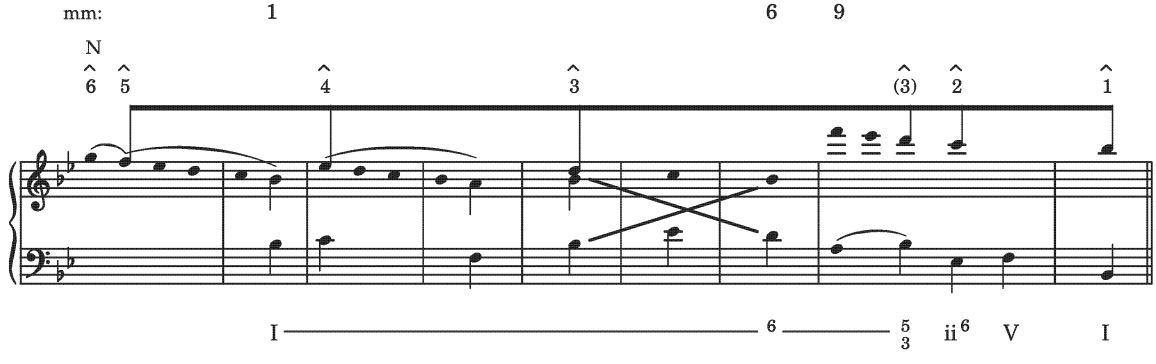
measure:	1	11	23	39	59	64	87	94	104	119	135	161
thematic design:	Exposition					Development		Recapitulation				Coda
harmonic design:	FTA	DTr	STA	CL	Codetta		RTr	FTA	"DTr"	STA	CL	
	I	⟶	V	V	V	???⟶	V//	I	⟶	I	I	I

Exposition

We will now explore the thematic and motivic materials in Mozart's sonata. Let's make a contrapuntal reduction of the outer voices of the FTA theme in order to understand the underlying voice-leading framework from which motivic figures might emerge. A clear I–ii–V^7 progression opens the piece and is followed by a contrapuntal elaboration of the tonic (mm. 5–6). This movement does not initially appear to contain any clear-cut motives based on surface contours, except for the descending scalar sixth (comprising a fifth, preceded by an upper-neighbor grace note that should be played as a sixteenth note) that begins the piece.

Although the $B\flat^4$ in the upper voice of m. 1 is clearly an arrival point, the $E\flat^5$ (m. 2) that eventually moves to D^5 (m. 4) seems to be more important, given those pitches' durational, metrical, and registral prominence. Might the initial scalar descent be emerging and expanded over many measures? This is the interpretation given in Example 27.16. Note that the overall descent of a fifth (the same fifth that opened the movement) is bisected into thirds by range: F^5–$E\flat^5$–D^5 and D^6–C^6–$B\flat^5$. The F^5 in the upbeat to m. 1 is prolonged through the downbeat of m. 2 before it descends to $E\flat^5$ (m. 2) and D^5 (m. 4). The continuing C^4–$B\flat^4$ in mm. 5–6 is not a strong arrival on tonic, because the tonic chord is in inversion and is not preceded by a PD–D motion; the chords in mm. 5–6 act as part of a voice exchange that prolongs tonic, which further indicates the subordinate nature of the $B\flat$ in m. 6. The strong structural arrival of C^6–$B\flat^5$ in mm. 9–10 completes the fifth descent.

EXAMPLE 27.16 Mozart, Sonata, Essential Counterpoint (mm. 1–10)



The initial theme in the STA literally repeats the same fifth-plus-neighbor descent from the FTA, in the key of F major (V). However, this time Mozart develops the upper neighbor to $\hat{5}$ by harmonizing $\hat{6}$ with $B\flat$ major (IV) in m. 24, therefore stabilizing the soprano D^5 (Example 27.17). Notice that just like the FTA's fifth-plus-neighbor descent, the STA's descent is interrupted by a pause on $\hat{3}$ (in F major, m. 26). The complete descent does not occur until m. 38.

EXAMPLE 27.17

Development

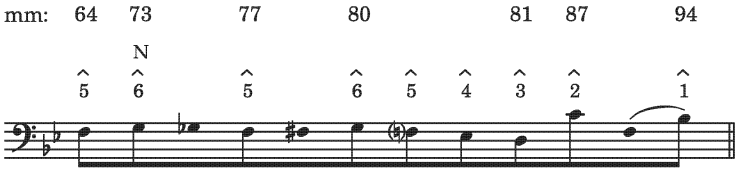
The development contains unusual modal shifts and curious tonicizations that make it difficult to determine any underlying harmonic progression. It begins with a simple right-hand restatement of the initial tune in F major (V), with the upper neighbor, D^5. A bass ascent begins with F^3 in m. 64 and moves through G^3, A^3, $B\flat^3$, and C^4; the line continues with the D^4 (m. 69) and resolves to C^4 (m. 70). This results in another setting of the familiar motive of a stepwise fifth-plus-neighbor, this time in exact retrograde of the opening gesture of the STA and expanded over seven measures. Notice that the chord in m. 69 sounds out of place, as if Mozart has marked it for our consciousness. Could he be preparing us for other hidden statements of the motive? (See Example 27.18.)

EXAMPLE 27.18

The unexpected cadence on F minor (rather than major) in m. 71 and motion to a G^7 harmony in m. 73 imply a tonicization of C minor. However, the "arrival" on C minor is greatly weakened when the bass is left unresolved on G, resulting in a six-four harmony (m. 75). $G\flat^3$ descends to an F^7 harmony (mm. 76–78), implying the beginning of the retransition. However, once again the listener's expectations are thwarted when F^3 rises to $F\sharp^3$ and then resolves to G minor in m. 80. There is no strong cadence in G minor; instead, V^4_3 of V suddenly appears in m. 87 and moves to V in mm. 88–89. The recapitulation begins in m. 93.

We now step back and interpret these events. We know that F major (V) controls the opening of the development and that C minor (ii) and G minor (vi) follow. Accordingly, a series of ascending fifths (F–C–G, and D, as V of G) underlies the development until the motion to F at m. 87. But many questions remain unanswered. For example, why are the tonal areas so weakly tonicized? And how can we explain the odd shift from the unusually long and unresolved D-major harmony that moves to the weak V^4_3/V chord in m. 87. Let's look to the eight-measure motivic expansion of the fifth-plus-neighbor motive for clues.

EXAMPLE 27.19



The bass F^3 ascends to G^3 in m. 73; the sustained G^3 was followed by the chromatic passing tone $G\flat^3$, which returned to F^3 (mm. 76–77). Again, the bass rose to G^3 through $F\sharp^3$, followed this time by a rapid descent to D^3, which was sustained from mm. 81–86. Through registral transfer, D^3 then fell to C^4 (V^4_3 chord in m. 87), leapt to F^3 (m. 88), and finally returned to $B\flat^3$ at the opening of the recapitulation. Example 27.19 presents a notated summary of this progression.

From this bass-line summary, we see that Mozart is projecting the small opening gesture (G–F–E♭–D–C–B♭) over the entire development. Remember that the very first expanded statement of the descent (mm. 1–10) stopped on D for five measures. We now can understand why Mozart extended D major for so long (mm. 81–87) and didn't resolve it to its tonic. We also know why Mozart did not resolve the G^3 to C in m. 75, for to have done so would have obscured the remarkable linear parallelism. Finally, in light of the controlling nature of the motive, we understand why Mozart used the V^4_3 chord in m. 87 rather than the expected and much stronger root position: because the inversion (with C in the bass) preserves the motive's stepwise descent.

The goals of the preceding analyses were to understand the mechanics of sonata form, to show how sonata form is an outgrowth and expansion of binary form, and to demonstrate how sonata form is a flexible and fascinating process that composers employ to express uniquely personal musical statements. Discovering and interpreting hidden and transformed manifestations of motives are some of the rewards of analysis.

Summary of Part 7

WORKBOOK 1
27.1–27.4

We have seen that even though binary form lies at the heart of ternary, rondo, and sonata forms, there is a crucial distinction between sonata and the other two forms: Ternary and rondo are additive, composite forms, whereas sonata is an organic form. That is, ternary and rondo forms—while often demonstrating important motivic and harmonic connections between their various sections—contain tonally closed units, and thus the omission of one or more of these sections would not seriously jeopardize the structural integrity of the piece. Sonata form, by contrast, is a more continuous structure, each part of which depends on every other part, resulting in a single integrated whole.

We also learned that the basic root motions of tonal music, which we first encountered in the chord-to-chord progressions beginning in Chapter 5 and later learned may be expanded by tonicization, also were part of these large forms. Finally, motivic connections between the various strata of a piece create carefully woven webs that make each piece a unique artwork.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

27.1 Platti, Sonata in C Major, *Six Sonatas for Harpsichord*, op. 4, no. 4

Listen to and study the following movement. On a separate sheet of paper, answer the series of questions that follows.

1. Make a formal diagram that includes names of sections and their respective measure numbers as well as the tonal plan (use roman numerals).
2. The phrase lengths in the exposition vary from four to eleven measures. Mark the phrases in the exposition. And when you encounter long ones, explain how they are extended. Consider the possibility that Platti has repeated small subphrases or inserted sequences. For example, the first phrase occupies six measures, but mm. 5–6 are a repetition of mm. 3–4, which help to reinforce the first cadence.
3. Bracket and label all sequences in the piece.
4. What contrapuntal technique is used in mm. 22–24?
5. The transition in the exposition prepares not only the new key but also the motivic and thematic material in the STA. Discuss at least two examples of how Platti achieves this preparation.
6. The development begins much the same way the exposition does. However, an important change occurs that sets into motion the fragmentation and tonal adventures that are characteristic of development sections. Discuss the relationship of the opening of the development to the opening of the exposition, and then focus on the changes that follow. Include in your discussion the motives used and the harmonic areas explored.
7. There appears to be no retransition that would prepare the recapitulation. However, a slight ritard into the recapitulation just might allow one to hear an implied dominant that leads to the recapitulation. Develop this idea in a few sentences.
8. Given that the tonic key is maintained throughout the recapitulation, you might assume that transitions are not necessary. In fact, they might be viewed as hindrances, for they must give the impression of motion, only to lead eventually back to the tonic, in which the tune from the STA is cast. However, Platti has written a transition that is much more interesting than the usual fare. List at least three differences between this transition and the transition in the exposition.

Allegro
7
13
19
25
30
36
42
48

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- closing section (CL)
- false recapitulation
- first tonal area (FTA)
- monothematic sonata form
- second tonal area (STA)
- slow introduction
- sonata form
  - exposition
  - codetta
  - development
  - recapitulation
  - coda
- subdominant return
- three-key exposition
- transition (Tr)
  - dependent transition (DTr)
  - independent transition (ITr)

This page intentionally left blank

PART 8

INTRODUCTION TO NINETEENTH-CENTURY HARMONY: THE SHIFT FROM ASYMMETRY TO SYMMETRY

Far too often, people rely on general proclamations to characterize the new developments of nineteenth-century music. There is some truth both in effusive and subjective statements such as "It is a period evincing a lush hodgepodge of thick, wandering harmonies" and in technical and clinically objective statements, such as "the chromatic tonal system replaces the diatonic system." The music of nineteenth-century composers is indeed lush, and it features thick, rapidly changing harmonies built from novel combinations of four and five voices. And later nineteenth-century music is more chromatic than eighteenth- and early-nineteenth-century music. But neither proclamation provides us with examples of these new attributes or with tangible explanations of how early-nineteenth-century harmonic practice influences the music of the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

These final four chapters explore some of the innovations of tonal composition that occurred from the early nineteenth century through the first decade of the twentieth century. These developments were naturally suited to the artistic sensibilities of the nineteenth century, an era in which sharp social, philosophical, political, and artistic changes took place. We start by tracing the seeds for these new harmonic tendencies in the music of composers such as Mozart, Beethoven, Schubert, and Chopin. From there, we witness the flowering of these harmonic techniques in the music of composers such as Wagner, Liszt, Brahms, Tchaikovsky, Wolf, Grieg, Scriabin, and Berg.

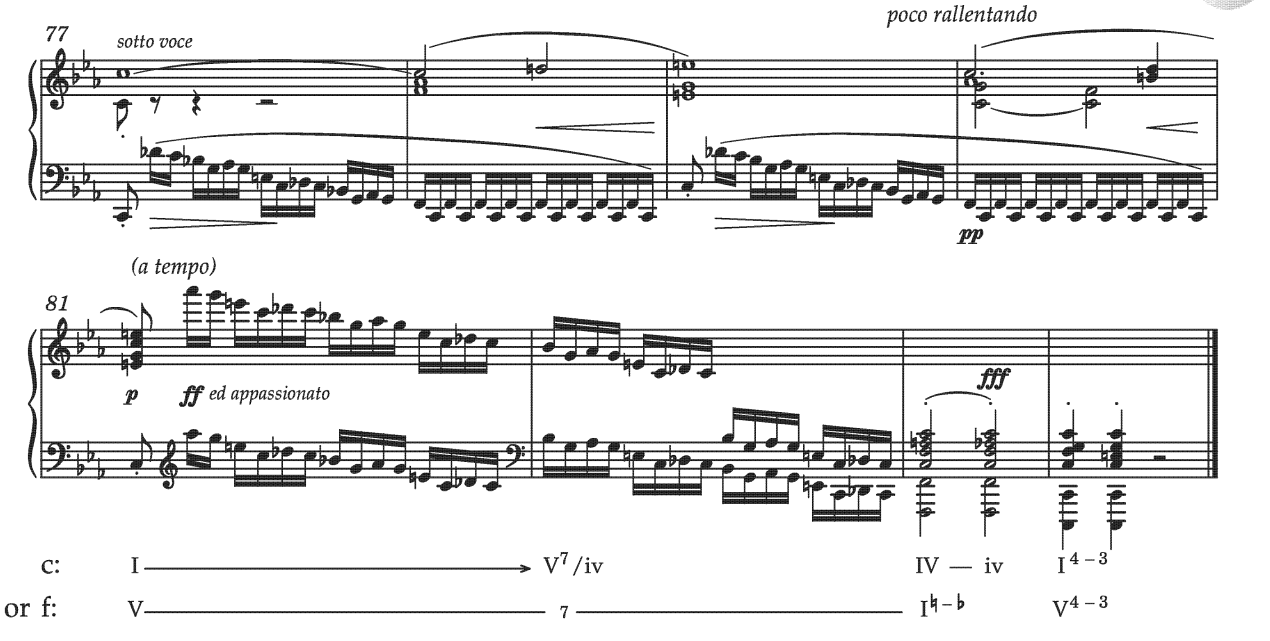
CHAPTER 28

New Harmonic Tendencies

Tonal Ambiguity: The Plagal Relation and Reciprocal Process

Modal mixture (Chapter 21) and tonicization (Chapter 19) allow chromaticism to permeate deeper levels of music. The free interchange of major and minor modes results in a compression from 24 major and minor keys to 12 "major-minor" keys. Such compression allows composers easy access to chromatically related keys such as ♭III and ♭VI. In the nineteenth century, this weakened the dominant function. As a result, the final structural cadence of pieces incorporated harmonies such as iv and $ii^{ø6}_{5}$—chords that substitute for the dominant—and moved directly to the tonic in a technique called the **plagal relation**. Paradoxically, this caused the dominant to become much more important as it retained its ability to signal where the tonic should be.

EXAMPLE 28.1 Chopin, Etude in C minor, "Revolutionary," op. 10, no. 12

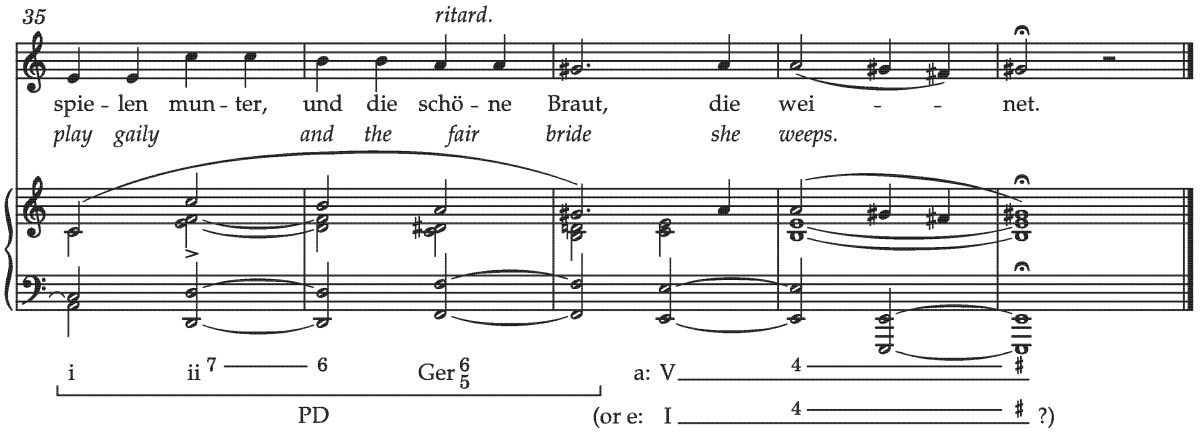


The rise of the plagal relation contributed to **tonal ambiguity**, an important aesthetic in the music of the nineteenth century. An example of this deliberate obscuring of the location of the tonic may be heard at the end of Chopin's Etude in C minor (Example 28.1). Note how the final section of the piece sounds like a coda, because the major tonic functions as an applied chord of F minor (iv). Because this coda-like section treats the tonic as an applied chord of iv, you might have heard the piece close not on a tonic harmony but rather on the dominant of iv. If, after careful listening, you can discern both functions of the progression, then you are being sensitive to an important type of nineteenth-century tonal ambiguity called the **reciprocal process**. The reciprocal process occurs when the listener loses tonal grounding because of conflicting tonal implications that confuse the three harmonic functions (T, PD, and D).

Composers such as Robert Schumann and Johannes Brahms were fond of incorporating the reciprocal process in their compositions. Study the close of Schumann's song "Auf einer Burg," which begins in E minor (Example 28.2); then listen carefully to the excerpt. Although the song *looks* like it ends in E major, does it *sound* like it ends in that key?

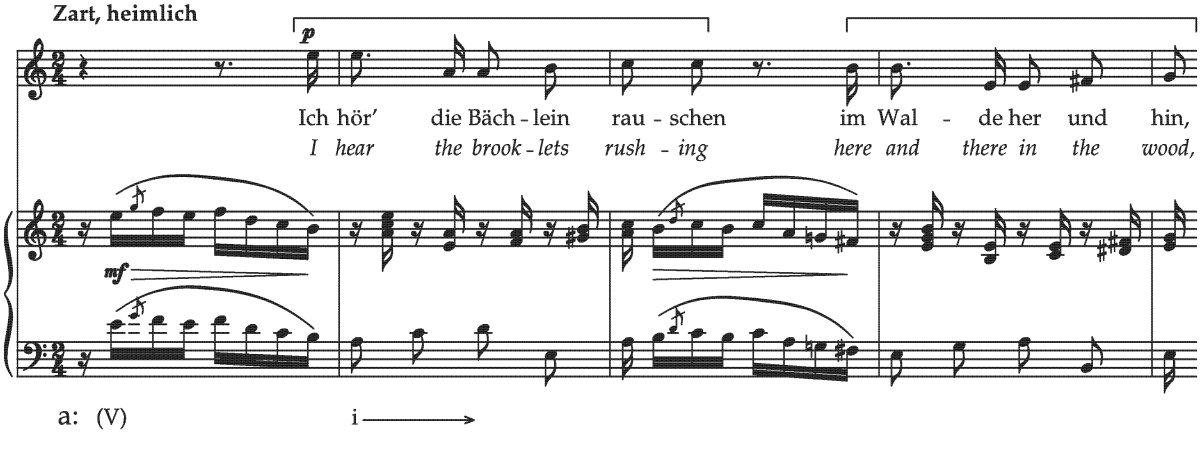
EXAMPLE 28.2 Schumann, "Auf einer Burg" ("In a Castle"), *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 7

Continued



The closing five measures use augmented sixth and cadential six-four chords to tonicize a minor (iv), effectively transforming the E major into the V of A minor. Consistent with this transformation, the E-major triad that closes "Auf einer Burg" functions as a dominant preparation leading to the start of the next song of the cycle, "In der Fremde" (Example 28.3). Notice that the songs are linked not only by their large-scale dominant–tonic motions but also by the melodic motive that permeates both songs (marked by brackets in Examples 28.2 and 28.3).

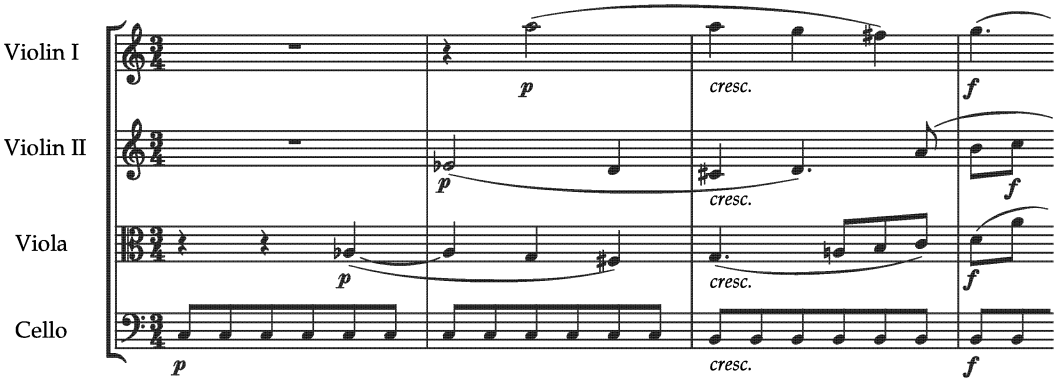
EXAMPLE 28.3 "In der Fremde" ("In a Foreign Land"), *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 8



Tonal Ambiguity: Semitonal Voice Leading

Nineteenth-century composers often connected distantly related chords or tonal areas with a technique that transforms one chord chromatically into the next. **Semitonal voice leading** moves two or more voices by a half step while usually keeping one common tone in another voice.

EXAMPLE 28.4 Mozart, String Quartet in C major, "Dissonant," K. 465, *Adagio*

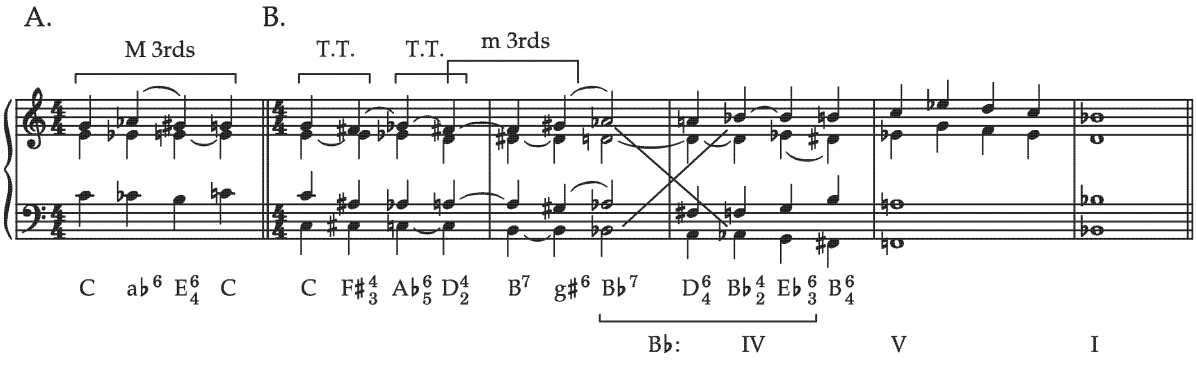


A good introduction to semitonal voice leading can be seen in the slow introduction of Mozart's "Dissonant" Quartet, shown in Example 28.4. Here, the sinuous motion of all the voices clouds the tonic of the piece, C major. The repeated C^3s in the cello that open the piece imply the key of C. But the entrance of the viola's A♭ calls into question the possibility of C major, especially given that the first complete sonority is an A♭-major triad in first inversion on the downbeat of m. 2. On the next beat, however, violin I boldly enters with $A♮^5$. The resulting pungent cross relation with $A♭^3$ thwarts our expectations that A♭ major might be the key. Only at the downbeat of m. 4, when a G-major triad (in first inversion) occurs, is there any evidence to support our initial expectation that C major is the key. In retrospect, we can understand that both the A♭ and the A♮ displace G, postponing its arrival.

Semitonal Voice Leading and Remote Keys

Example 28.5A illustrates a harmonic succession that involves chords whose roots lie a major third away from one another: C major–A♭ minor–E major–C major (note the presence of intense enharmonicism, shown by slurs that indicate retention of common tones). The chord-to-chord connections sound relatively smooth, given their consistent step motion, yet tonal stability evaporates; there is no sense of tonic, pre-dominant, or dominant. In fact, one might say that tonal function is suspended so that the harmonic motion is more a chordal succession than a functional progression. This sense is corroborated by the lack of cadence. See how the return to C major is not satisfying as an arrival, even though the opening voicing returns.

EXAMPLE 28.5 Semitonal Voice Leading and Distant Harmonic Relations



Example 28.5B illustrates the same principle as Example 28.5A but works by transforming major-minor seventh chords. Note the recurring two-chord pattern of the succession, in which each pair of chords juxtaposes the most distantly related root possible—a tritone. A series of minor-third root relations follows. The chord succession in mm. 3–5 is based on contrary motion that resolves to the new key, B♭ major. Overall, B♭ is secured by a stepwise chromatic descent from C (m. 1) to the new dominant (m. 4). Although the modulation could have been accomplished much more simply, its present form creates tonal ambiguity and demonstrates how its arrival on ♭VII of C is but one of any number of potential tonal destinations.

Analytical Interlude

Let's look at a longer stretch of a slow introduction to see how modal mixture and semitonal voice leading create tonal ambiguity. In the opening of Beethoven's Fourth Symphony, the octaves strongly imply that B♭ is the tonic (Example 28.6). Just as in the introduction to Mozart's "Dissonant" Quartet, Beethoven uses $\hat{\flat 6}$; to displace $\hat{5}$ and create tonal ambiguity. The interval of a sixth between B♭ and G♭ could imply the parallel minor or even a first-inversion G♭ harmony. The motion in the alto voice through E♭ and F to D♭ strongly implies the key of B♭ minor.

By contrast, the melodic sequence of falling thirds in mm. 2–4 (G♭–E♭, F–D♭, E♭–C, D♭–B♭) takes us to the first stable, complete root-position harmony—on G♭ major (m. 5). The listener is therefore confronted with two possibilities. Is the melodic motion sufficient to establish the key of G♭ major? It is only when G♭ descends a semitone to F in a half cadence (m. 6) that the listener understands its role as a $\hat{\flat 6}$, pre-dominant, and hears B♭ as the prevailing key, but B♭ minor, not major. This is reinforced in the subsequent measures when both G♭ and E♮ form double neighbors around the dominant F. From there, G♭ makes a last appearance, in m. 12, as the ninth of a dissonant chord, which finally moves to the tonic B♭ octaves in m. 13.

EXAMPLE 28.6 Beethoven, Symphony no. 4 in B♭ major, op. 60, *Adagio*

Continued

The tonal battle is far from over, however. At m. 13 the restatement of the material from the opening measures sets up the listener for a direct repeat, which will be denied. The difference this time is that G♭ is sustained in m. 17 and expanded by its upper neighbor, G♮, in m. 19. The G♭ is converted to F♯ in the following measures and the addition of flanking double neighbors implies B minor, a sort of minor Neapolitan of B♭. The motion to G major (m. 25) then sounds like a deceptive progression (V to ♭VI in B major) that recalls the underlying V–♭VI motion of F–G♭ in the tonic, B♭ major. Next, an A2 (−3/+4) sequence climbs to d minor (mm. 25–29). A major, (mm. 32–35) the back-relating dominant of D minor, yields to the dominant of B♭ major, the key of the symphony. It takes 39 long measures to establish the key, thus postponing the tonic for nearly two minutes.

A good place to look for moments that exhibit the power and potential ambiguity of semitonal voice leading are pieces that employ enharmonic transformations of the augmented sixth chord and dominant seventh chord. Example 28.7 illustrates this common procedure. Because Brahms's song begins on a C-major sonority, the first-time listener will most likely assume C major to be the tonic. However, the addition of A♯^{3} in m. 3 destabilizes the C-major triad. The attentive listener will probably hear the chromaticism as the lowered seventh (B♭), rather than the augmented sixth (A♯), and thus assume that C has become V^7/IV. The semitonal movement to the cadential six-four chord in m. 6 requires the listener immediately to revise this expectation. At m. 6 we head to E minor rather than C major; the following PAC in m. 9 confirms this key.

EXAMPLE 28.7 Brahms, "Parole" ("Password"), op. 7, no. 2

WORKBOOK 1
28.1

The listener, in an attempt not to be misled by the C major-minor seventh chord when it returns at m. 9, is likely to interpret it this time as an augmented sixth chord. Brahms, however, fools the listener again by making the chord a V^7, which moves to an F-major sonority and a dominant pedal in ♭II rather than to the expected dominant of E minor. Only in m. 14 does the augmented sixth return. The ambiguity of the dominant seventh and augmented sixth chords, paired with semitonal voice leading, allows Brahms to fool the listener again and again.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

28.1

Study the following excerpts, which contain ambiguities resulting from mixture, semitonal voice leading, the reciprocal process, and enharmonic puns. Bracket the area or areas in which ambiguity plays an important role. Then describe in prose the type of ambiguity involved.

A. Brahms, "Dämmrung senkte sich von oben" ("Twilight sank from high above"), op. 59, no. 1

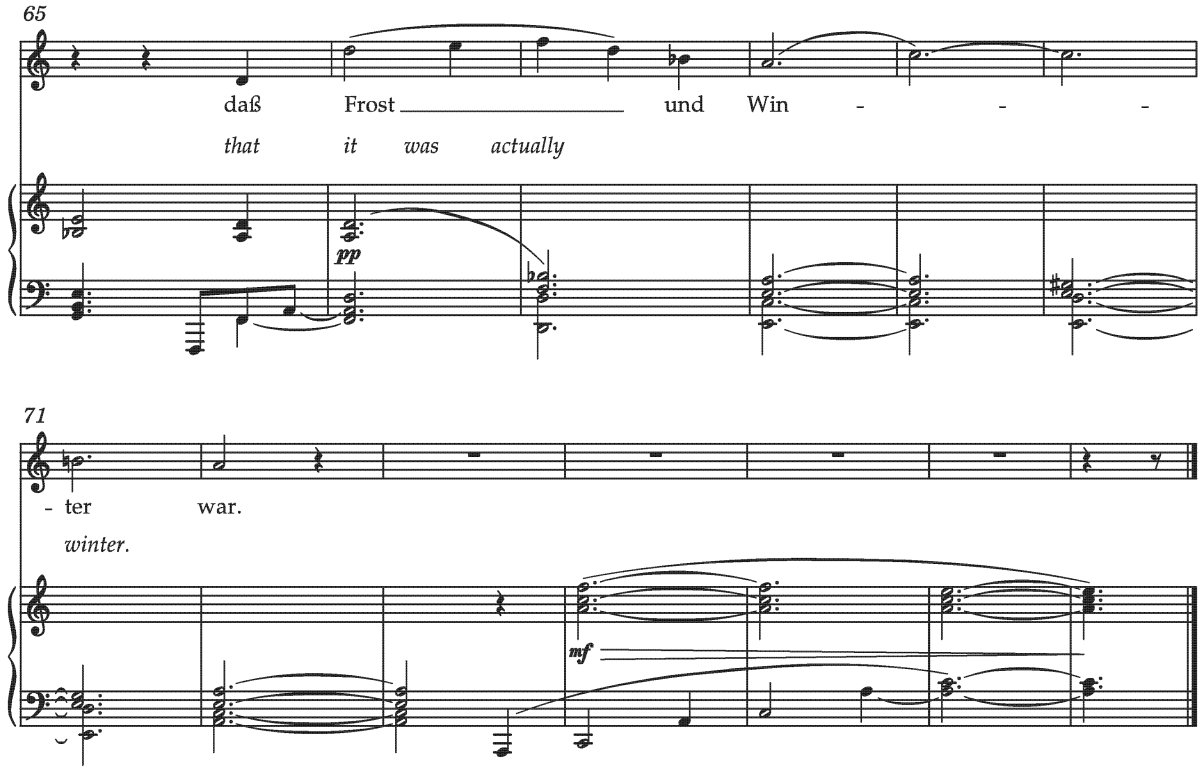
While tonal ambiguity in this excerpt is minimal, a harmonized melodic motive appears in the introduction that somewhat obscures the surface harmony. What is this motive? Consider also the metric placement of the motive (i.e., where do the embellishing tones occur in relation to the chord tones? Is Brahms consistent in their metric placement?).

B. Dvořák, Symphony no. 9, "New World," *Largo*

C. Brahms, "Es hing der Reif" ("Hoarfrost was hanging"), op. 106, no. 3

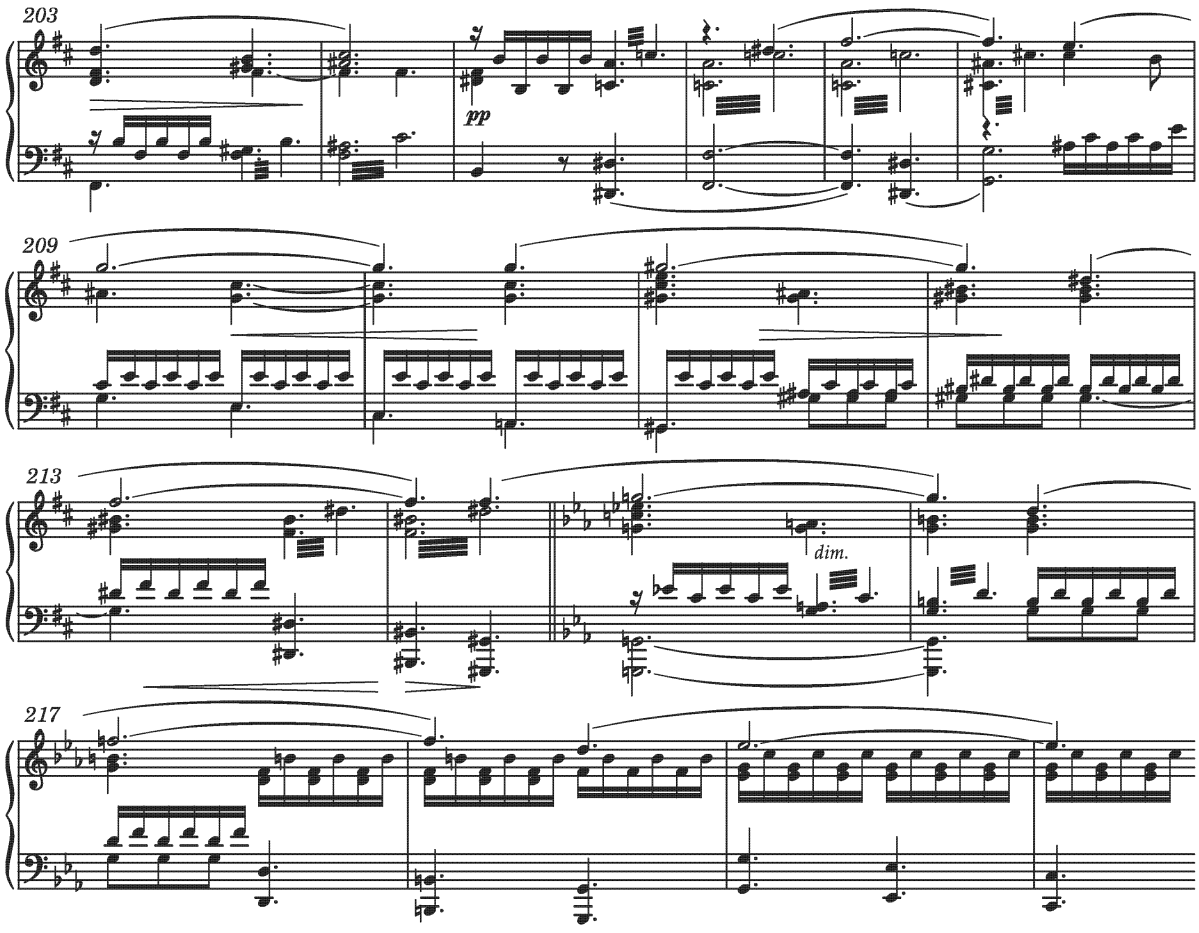
Brahms implies two tonal areas simultaneously. What are they? Discuss how these keys are implied, juxtaposed, and discarded. For example, does the excerpt begin with a cadential six-four in A minor or with a simple 6–5 motion in C major? By the end of the excerpt, which key controls? Compare this excerpt with the final measures of the song. Why do these closing measures come as a surprise?

Continued



D. Brahms, Symphony no. 1 in C minor, op. 68, *Allegro*

This excerpt, from the beginning of the development, starts in B major but ends in C minor. Make a bass-line reduction of the progression to determine how Brahms secures this harmonic motion.



WRITING

28.2 Writing Progressions Involving Mixture, Reciprocal Process, Semitonal Voice Leading, and Enharmonic Reinterpretation

On a separate sheet of manuscript paper, complete the following tasks.

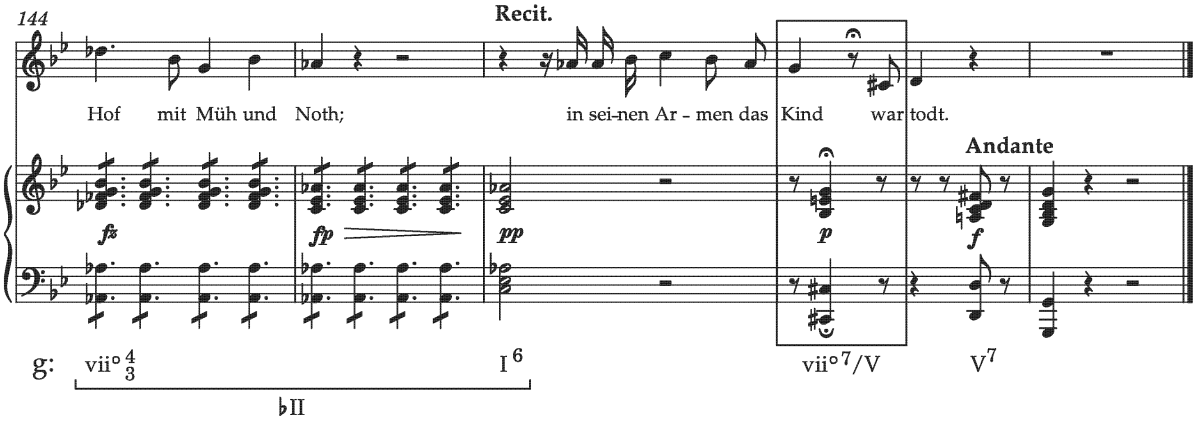
A. In B minor, write a chromatic voice exchange incorporating pre-dominant harmony and any augmented sixth chord.
B. Using a German sixth chord as your pivot, modulate in five chords or less from F minor to F♯ minor.
C. In D major, move to ♭VI, briefly stabilize (prolong) it, and then destabilize it by turning it into a Fr $\frac{4}{3}$ that resolves to V.
D. Modulate from F major to its relative minor using an enharmonic pivot. (*Hint:* The chord is a pre-dominant in both keys.)
E. Given the key of G major, write short progressions in which the D dominant seventh chord functions as:
   1. a German augmented sixth chord
   2. part of an A2 (−3/+4) applied chord sequence
   3. a German diminished third chord

F. Write a progression in D minor in which the closing D tonic sounds more like a dominant than a tonic. (*Hint:* A Picardy third alone does not imply a reciprocal process.)
G. Write a progression in C major that opens with a plagal progression, tonicizes E♭ major, and closes in E♭ major with a different plagal progression.

The Diminished Seventh Chord and Enharmonic Modulation

Beginning in the eighteenth century, composers used the diminished seventh chord both as a powerful goal-oriented applied chord and as a dramatic signpost. For example, a strategically placed diminished seventh chord could underscore a particularly emotional image from the text of a song. A vivid and painful example is heard in the last moment of Schubert's "Erlking." Immediately before we learn of the fate of the sick child ("and in [the father's] arms, the child . . ."), the previous 145 measures of frantic, wildly galloping music come to a halt. The fermata that marks this moment, and which seems to last forever, is accompanied by a single sustained diminished seventh, underscoring this crucial moment (Example 28.8). We learn immediately thereafter that in spite of his valiant attempts to rush his sick son home by horseback, the father was too late: The child was dead.

EXAMPLE 28.8 Schubert, "Erlkönig," D. 328

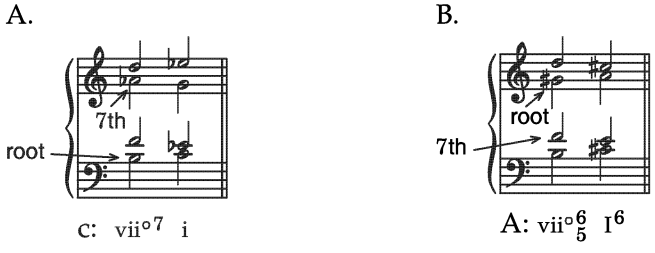


Even before the time of Bach, composers also used the diminished seventh chord to create tonal ambiguity. Ambiguity is possible because the chord in any of its inversions partitions the octave into four minor thirds (using enharmonicism). For example, given the diminished seventh chord in Example 28.9A, its three inversions produce no new intervals. This is not the case for other sonorities, such as the major triad, which contains six intervals through its inversions (m3, M3, P4, P5, m6, M6). See Example 28.9B. Chords that possess this special ability to partition the octave into identical intervals are known as **symmetrically constructed harmonies**.

EXAMPLE 28.9 Intervallic Characteristics of Symmetrical Harmonies

Composers exploit the potential of symmetrically constructed harmonies by using them to access both close and distant key areas. Example 28.10 contains a diminished seventh chord that implies C minor or C major. When we spell the same chord a bit differently (Example 28.10), it leans toward a different tonic: A minor.

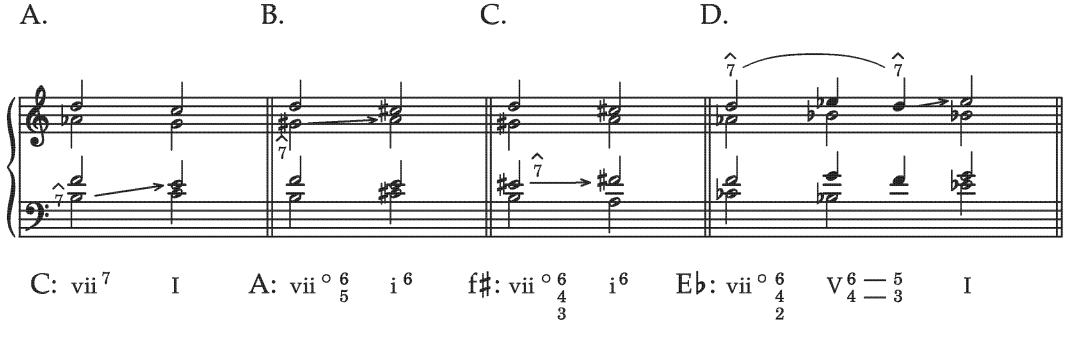
EXAMPLE 28.10 vii°7: Symmetry and Enharmonicism



Consider the ramifications of what we've just seen: Within a given chord, *the inaudible enharmonic alteration of a single note (here, A♭ becomes G♯) allows the chord to function in two remotely related keys*. C minor and A major (six accidentals apart) both become instantly accessible by virtue of this single respelled pitch. In fact, through **enharmonic reinterpretation**, the vii°7 becomes a vehicle that can modulate to many other key areas. This technique is similar to the reinterpretation of the German augmented sixth chord (respelled as a V7 in Chapter 24); given that the German sixth is not symmetrical, its access to remote keys is limited.

Example 28.11 shows four different spellings of our diminished seventh chord, along with its resolutions. The diminished seventh is a remarkable pivot chord that can access distant tonal areas, even keys that lie a minor third or a tritone away from each other. A good way to determine the four accessible keys is to interpret each of the four pitches in the diminished seventh chord as a leading tone, as shown in Example 28.11.

EXAMPLE 28.11 Enharmonic Reinterpretation of vii°7

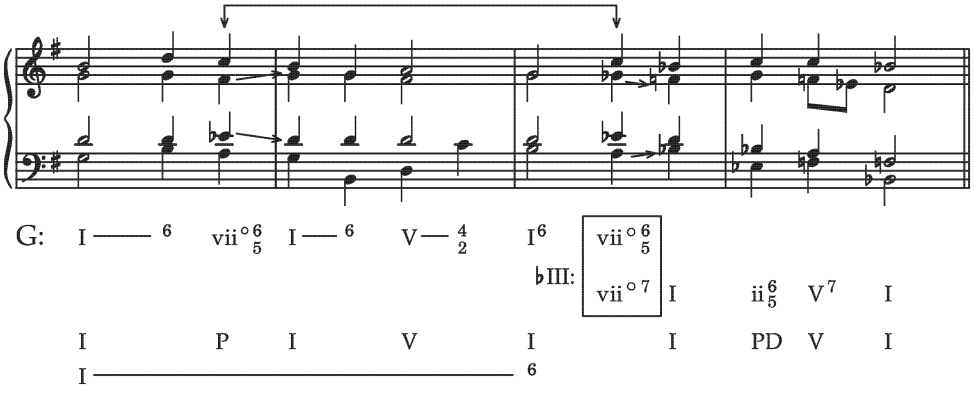


Analysis

When analyzing tonicizations that result from the enharmonic reinterpretation of a diminished seventh chord, use the same pivot chord technique that we employed in Chapters 19 and 22. It is important to show how the chord functions in both the original key and the new key. Example 28.12 begins in G major and ends with a tonicization of B♭ major (♭III). Note that the first appearance of the diminished seventh chord functions as a passing chord (m. 1). Arrows reveal the resolution of the root (F♯) and seventh (E♭). The enharmonically transformed diminished seventh chord in m. 3 is initially still heard as vii$^{\circ 6}_{5}$; but because of where it progresses, it actually functions and is notated as a root-position vii$^{\circ 7}$ in the new tonal area.

Be aware that composers are not consistent in the way they notate enharmonic modulations using diminished seventh chords. They may notate the chord either as it functions in the new key or as it functions in the old key (in which case it would appear to have an unusual resolution).

EXAMPLE 28.12 Analyzing Enharmonic Modulations Using vii$^{\circ 7}$



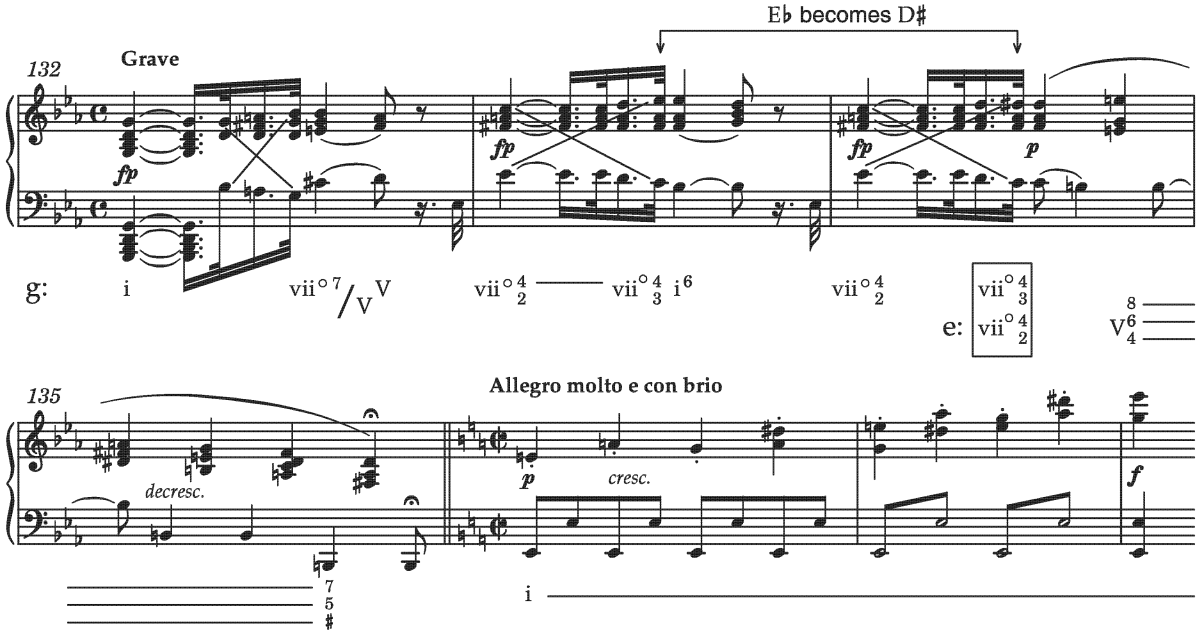
Analytical Interlude

Example 28.13 illustrates two distant modulations from the literature that rely on the enharmonic potential of the diminished seventh chord. Example 28.13A, from the first movement of Beethoven's "Pathetique" sonata, is the passage that leads from the exposition to the development. The excerpt begins in G minor, yet it moves with little effort quickly into the remote key of E minor. Notice how m. 134 begins identically to the previous measure; but as the voice exchange unfolds, C^5 leads not to E♭^{5} but to D♯^{5}. This inaudible change has powerful ramifications, for the resulting enharmonic spelling sets the stage for E minor to enter. What was vii$^{\circ 4}_{3}$ in G minor has become vii$^{\circ 4}_{2}$ in E minor.

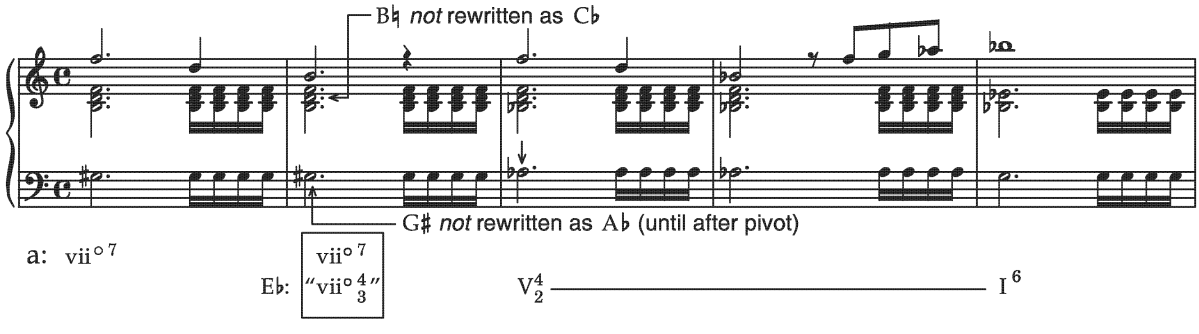
Example 28.13B contains a particularly bold modulation using vii$^{\circ 7}$ enharmonically in A minor that allows a tonicization of the tritone-related key, E♭ major. This example is particularly intriguing, given that not only is the enharmonic conversion inaudible, it is also not visible to the players! The excerpt begins with vii$^{\circ 7}$ that apparently continues in the next measure. However, the motion to V$^4_2$ of E♭ major in m. 3 indicates that we have already made it to E♭. We not only didn't hear the modulation, but we didn't see it. The pivot, then, must be in m. 2. To be sure, Schubert has transformed the vii$^{\circ 7}$ of A minor into vii$^{\circ 4}_{3}$ in E♭ major, only implying the correct spelling of the vii$^{\circ 4}_{3}$ chord.

EXAMPLE 28.13 Sample Analyses

A. Beethoven, Sonata in C minor, op. 13, i



B. Schubert, String Quartet in A minor, D. 804, I



Tonal Clarity Postponed: Off-Tonic Beginning

Nineteenth-century composers often postpone tonal stability to create a sense of ambiguity and heightened expectation. Rather than beginning a piece (or an important subsection) with the tonic and its prolongation, composers may begin on a harmony other than the tonic. We have already seen examples of such an **off-tonic beginning**.

For example, Brahms's song "Parole" in Example 28.7 began on an extended PD that occupied the entire introduction. In the Classical period, off-tonic beginnings were approximated in the slow introductions of works in which a weakly stated initial tonic was quickly displaced by chromatic harmonies that veered into distant regions, as in the Beethoven excerpt in Example 28.6. The tonal goal of the slow introduction was almost always the dominant, and the strong arrival on the tonic was postponed until the following allegro section.

Off-tonic beginnings were often a mainstay of popular music in the twentieth century. The G-major refrain of "Sweet Georgia Brown" (Example 28.14) begins far away from the tonic; a series of applied dominants (E^7–A^7–D^7) finally leads to G in m. 33.

EXAMPLE 28.14 Pinkard, "Sweet Georgia Brown"

Double Tonality

Sometimes you may encounter pieces in which two keys vie for supremacy simultaneously. Often the ambiguity is acute, and the analyst has little choice but to interpret the piece in the key in which it ends. Some analysts conclude that highly ambiguous pieces are being controlled not by a single key but by the two keys juxtaposed throughout the piece. Such pieces display **double tonality**. For example, some of the songs by Schubert, scenes and acts of operas by Wagner, and orchestral works of late nineteenth-century composers, including Liszt, Mahler, and Strauss, fall into the double-tonal category. Most of the time, double-tonal pieces are better interpreted as being in a single key: the key in which the piece closes. One might consider Brahms's song "Es hing

der Reif" (see Exercise 28.1C) to be a double-tonal example, given that C major and A minor are set in conflict throughout. Although the interior cadences and tonicizations are all in C major, the closing key of the piece suggests that the song might best be interpreted in A minor.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

WORKBOOK 1
28.2–28.5

28.3 Enharmonic Modulations Using the Diminished Seventh Chord

Complete the following tasks on a separate sheet of manuscript paper.

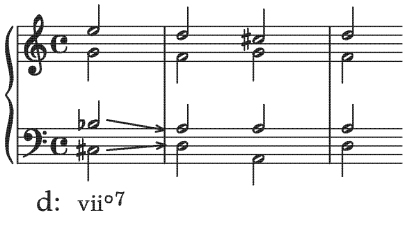
A. Given the diminished seventh chord B–D–F–A♭, list the possible keys in which it and its enharmonic spellings can function. Then write and analyze (using pivot notation) two progressions, each of which employs the diminished seventh chord as an enharmonic pivot that helps move to a distantly related key. Begin the first progression in C major or C minor and the second in A major or A minor.

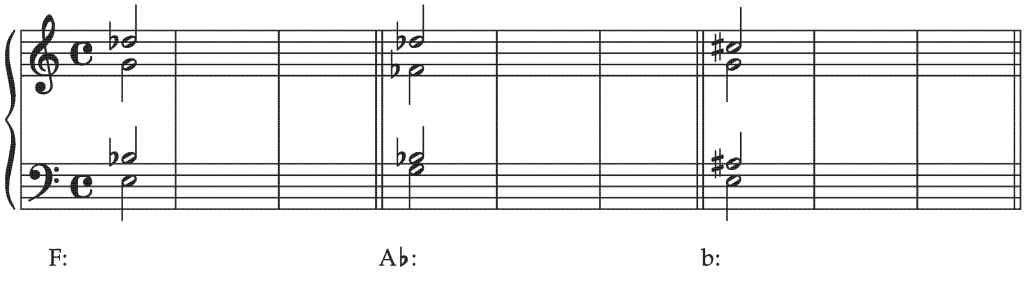
B. Begin three progressions in A minor and include a vii$^{\circ 7}$ chord. Then enharmonically reinterpret the diminished seventh chord in order to move to the three distantly related keys that lie minor thirds and a tritone away from A minor.

C. Harmonize the following soprano fragments, each using an enharmonically reinterpreted diminished seventh chord on the pitch that occurs in boldface print in order to modulate to a distantly related key.
   1. Begin in F major: A–B♭–A–**G**–G–F♯–E
   2. Begin in D: D–C♯–D–**G**–F–E♭–D

D. Complete the following enharmonic modulations, based on the given key and the harmonic model (vii$^{\circ 7}$–I–V^7–I). See the sample solution.

Sample solution:





ANALYSIS

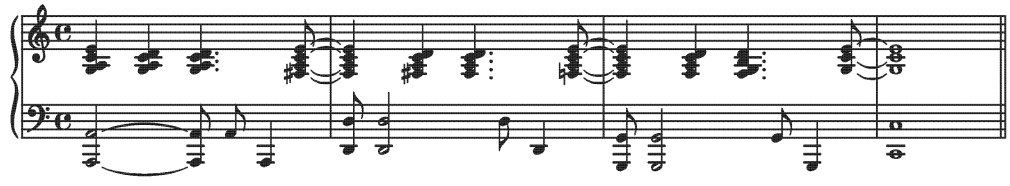
28.4

Following are excerpts that either modulate using enharmonically reinterpreted diminished seventh chords or begin off-tonic. Analyze each. Mark the pivot in enharmonic modulations.

A. Schumann, Symphony no. 2, op. 61, *Allegro Vivace*
Be aware of the possibility of enharmonically reinterpreted Ger $\frac{6}{5}$ chords.

B. Tchaikovsky, *Sleeping Beauty*, act 1: *La Fee des Lilas*

C. Lamm, "Saturday in the Park"



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- enharmonic modulation
- enharmonic pun
- enharmonic reinterpretation
  - vii°7
  - V^7/Ger^6_5
- off-tonic beginning
  - double tonality
- plagal relation
- reciprocal process
- semitonal voice leading
- symmetrically constructed harmonies
- tonal ambiguity

CHAPTER 29

The Rise of Symmetrical Harmony in Tonal Music

The use of compositional techniques such as modal mixture and semitonal voice leading to evoke a sense of ambiguity precipitated a rise in the use of **symmetrically constructed harmonies** and **symmetrical tonal motions**. We have already explored one of these structures—the diminished seventh chord—and the way its potential for harmonic ambiguity could be realized through enharmonic reinterpretation. In this chapter, we learn how the interaction of symmetrical structures with traditional asymmetrical structures influenced other nineteenth-century compositional techniques.

A Paradox: "Balanced" Music Based on Asymmetry

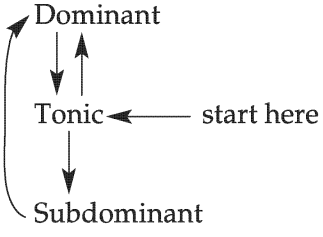
Balance characterizes tonal music—especially Classical music, where the idea of symmetry pervades most aspects of composition. Melodically, the music moves in predictably proportioned patterns. Formally, we usually think of Classical musical units at all levels as structures featuring regularly recurring measure lengths, such as four-measure phrases and eight-measure periods. Metrical and formal symmetries allow a deeper level of periodicity to arise, in a phenomenon called *hypermeter.* At the level of whole works, the idea of perfect symmetry is replaced by tonal balance, as can be seen in both binary and sonata forms, which can be heard as harmonic arches progressing from tonic to dominant and back again.

It is consequently curious that the "well-balanced" tonal system itself is predicated on asymmetrical structures that contain unequal and asymmetrical intervallic divisions. Major and minor triads and dominant seventh chords are asymmetrical structures that consist of a mix of major and minor thirds. Even harmonic progressions in tonal music are asymmetrical. Root motions divide the octave unequally—V to I (ascending perfect fourth) answers I to V (ascending perfect fifth)—and common descending and ascending arpeggiations move in a mix of major and minor thirds. Most significantly, diatonic sequences are also highly asymmetrical. For example, the common D2 (–5/+4) sequence does not move exclusively by perfect fifths; a tritone occurs within the sequence in order to maintain the scale degrees of the key. Indeed, it is precisely the breaking of the perfect-fifth pattern by the diminished fifth that makes the progression so goal oriented, for without the

tritone, the symmetrical sequence would wander over the entire 12 chromatic steps before returning to its beginning point.

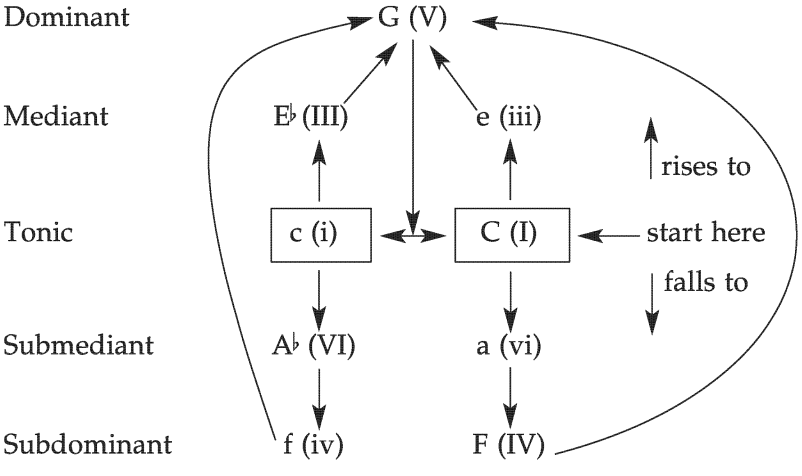
Just as asymmetrical structures such as major and minor triads help to create tonality, the use of symmetrically constructed harmonies and harmonic progressions results in tonal ambiguity, an important feature of nineteenth-century music. But how does symmetry fit into our asymmetrical harmonic models? Actually, the tonal system contains the seeds for symmetry: Harmonic motions up to the dominant and down to the subdominant symmetrically flank the tonic by perfect fifths. However, common-practice music will not usually permit the subdominant to lead directly back to the tonic, but rather to the dominant (Example 29.1).

EXAMPLE 29.1 Dominant and Subdominant Flank Tonic



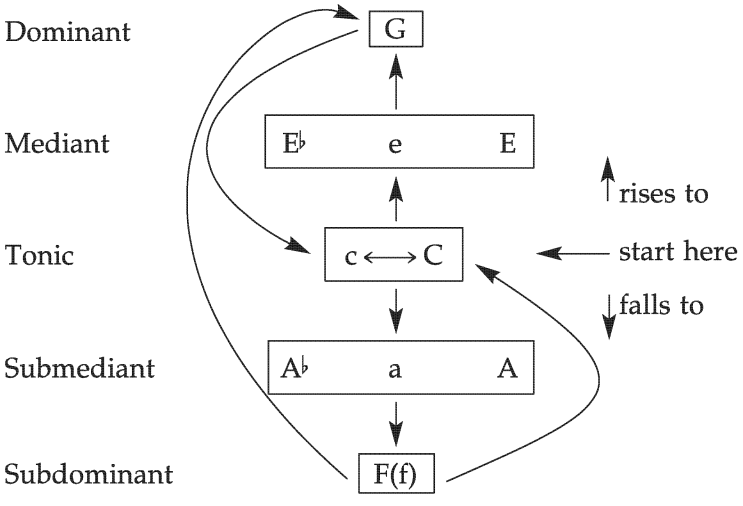
The model in Example 29.2 represents eighteenth-century diatonic motion, with the symmetrical perfect fifths asymmetrically divided by major and minor thirds.

EXAMPLE 29.2 Eighteenth-Century Tonal Paths



We have learned that chromatic third relations can emerge from the combination of parallel modes through mixture. The model in Example 29.3 represents the rise of chromatic third relations from the end of the eighteenth century to the first half of the nineteenth century. Notice that the combinations of major and minor thirds continue to form asymmetrical tonal progressions. Notice also that the subdominant need not progress to the dominant; rather, it may move directly to the tonic (through the plagal relation).

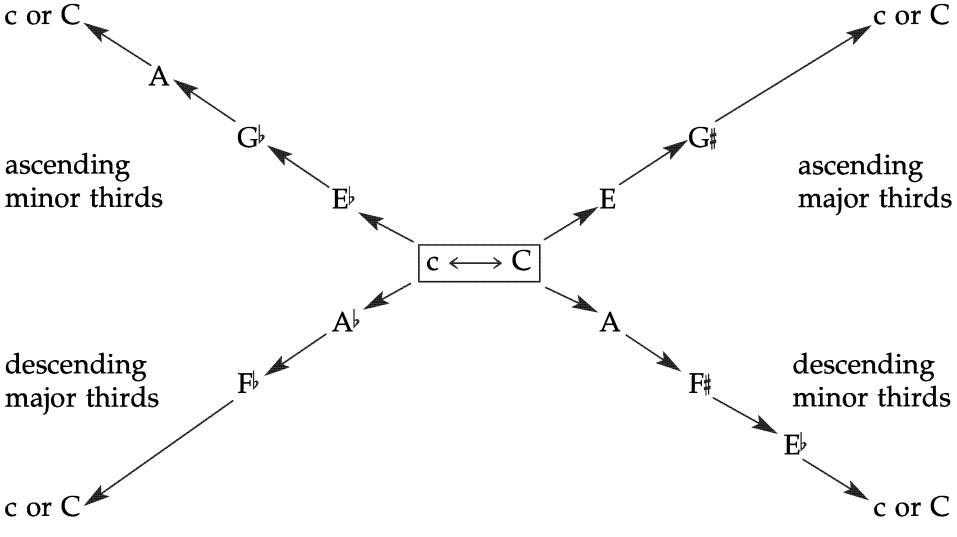
EXAMPLE 29.3 Late-Eighteenth- and Nineteenth-Century Tonal Paths: Mixture Incorporated



Symmetry and Tonal Ambiguity

The model in Example 29.4 is fundamentally different from the preceding models. The long diagonal lines represent symmetrical paths that circumvent both the dominant and the subdominant. Notice that root progressions move by a single repeating interval of either a major third or a minor third (or their enharmonic equivalents) until these intervallic cycles reach a perfect octave.

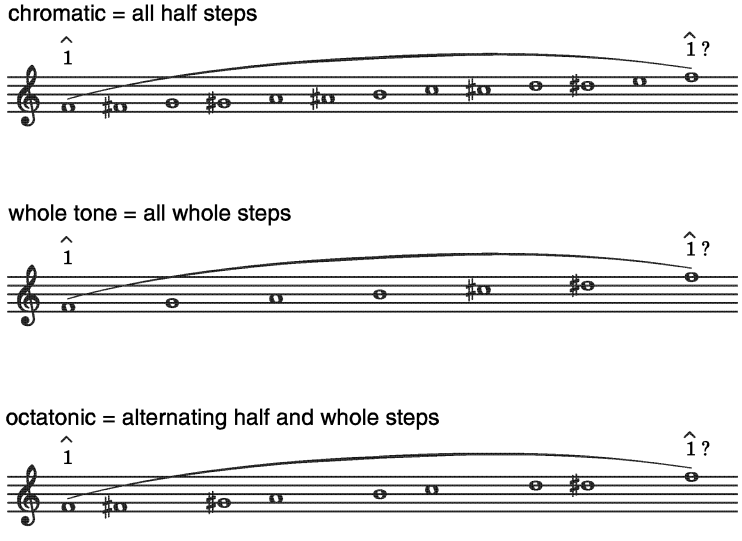
EXAMPLE 29.4 Late-Nineteenth-Century Tonal Paths: Symmetrical Third Relations Replace Asymmetrical Fifth Relations



We can understand that the basis of tonality's gravitational field, which pulls scale degrees and harmonies toward tonic, is predicated on asymmetry—specifically the asymmetry associated with major and minor

scales. Imagine what would happen to tonality if scales were composed solely of whole steps or half steps or of consistently alternating half and whole steps. If you try singing the scales in Example 29.5, you will soon discover that a sense of goal-directed motion and tonal grounding disappears because every scale step is as stable (or as unstable) as every other step.

EXAMPLE 29.5 Symmetrical Scales



Just as asymmetrical structures (major and minor triads) help to create tonality, the use of symmetrically constructed harmonies and harmonic progressions results in tonal ambiguity, an important feature of nineteenth-century music. Symmetrical harmonies and symmetrical tonal progressions develop from two late-eighteenth-century precedents: chromatically altered dominant harmonies and chromatic sequences. We devote the rest of this chapter to the exploration of chromatically altered harmonies.

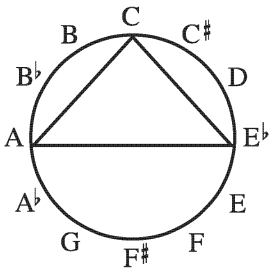
The Augmented Triad

So far, we have considered only one symmetrical triad—the diminished triad. It has a symmetrical construction because its two component intervals are both minor thirds (Example 29.6A). It does not, however, equally partition the octave (since it spans a tritone, it only partitions half of the octave evenly). By contrast, the diminished seventh chord partitions the octave symmetrically (Example 29.6B).

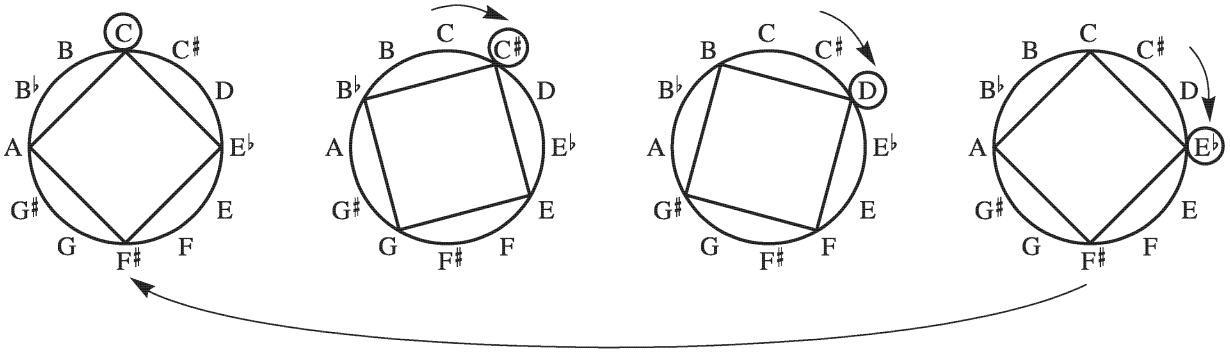
Notice how the lines connecting the pitch classes that make up a diminished seventh chord symmetrically partition the octave. Moving the diminished seventh chord up by one half step (i.e., starting the next "square" on C♯) does not, of course, alter its symmetrical structure. Transposition by three semitones (i.e., starting the chord on E♭) results in a restatement of the same pitch classes, therefore revealing how there are only three distinct diminished seventh chords.

EXAMPLE 29.6 Properties of vii°7: Only Three Distinct Transpositions

A. Diminished Triad Clock



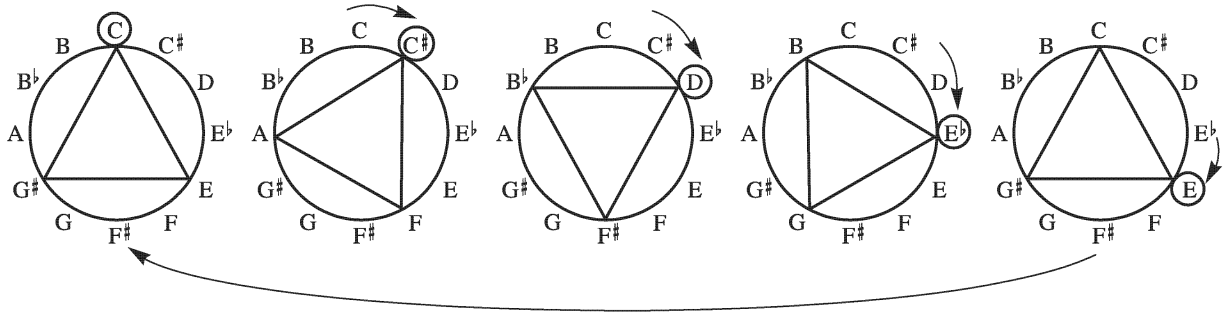
B. Diminished Seventh Chord Clocks



Like the diminished triad, the highly dissonant **augmented triad** (shown in Example 29.7) is symmetrical, consisting of two major thirds and spanning an augmented fifth. Moreover, like the diminished seventh chord, the augmented triad also partitions the octave equally. Unlike every other triadic structure, the augmented triad retains its major third and augmented fifth intervals (or their enharmonic equivalents) under inversion.

Compare the inversions of the minor triad to the inversions of the augmented triad. A minor triad in root position contains a minor third (e.g., C–E♭) and a major third (E♭–G), which together span a perfect fifth (C–G). Its first inversion yields a major third (E♭–G) and a perfect fourth (G–C), which together span a major sixth. Its second inversion yields a perfect fourth (G–C) and a minor third (C–E♭), which together span a minor sixth. But when we invert an augmented triad (such as C–E–G♯), no matter how many times we cycle the three pitches, only major thirds (or diminished fourths) and minor sixths (or augmented fifths) result. Consequently, there is no way aurally to distinguish inversions of the augmented triad. Its symmetrical construction is harmonically ambiguous and well suited to the experimental works of the late nineteenth century.

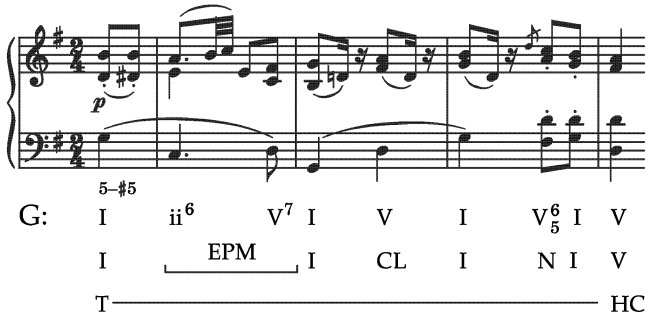
EXAMPLE 29.7 Augmented Triad Clock: Only Four Distinct Transpositions



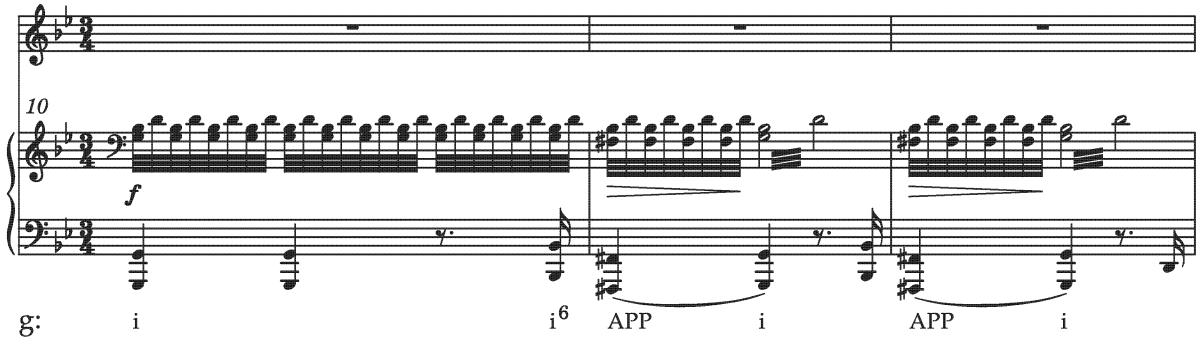
The augmented triad originally was a by-product of melodic motion before becoming an independent sonority. Listen to Example 29.8. It is likely that you heard an augmented triad (G–B–D♯) on the upbeat to m. 1. It is metrically weak, with the D♯s arising from passing motion; therefore, it is not an independent harmonic entity.

Now listen to Example 29.9, and note the function of the augmented triads. Again, the augmented triad in m. 2 is not an independent triad, because F♯ is functioning simply as an appoggiatura to the chord tone G.

EXAMPLE 29.8 Beethoven, Theme and Variations in G major, WoO 77, Thema: *Andante, quasi Allegretto*

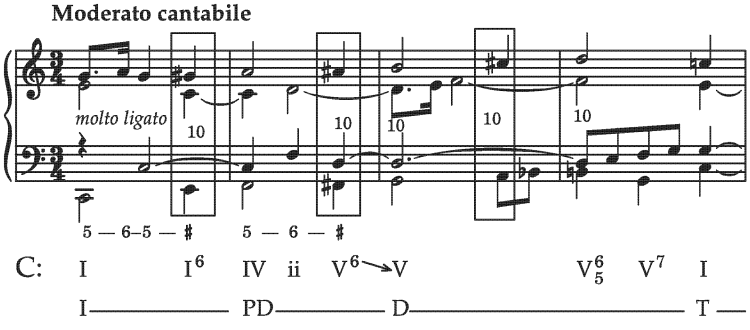


EXAMPLE 29.9 Schubert, "Der Atlas," from *Schwanengesang*, D. 957, no. 8



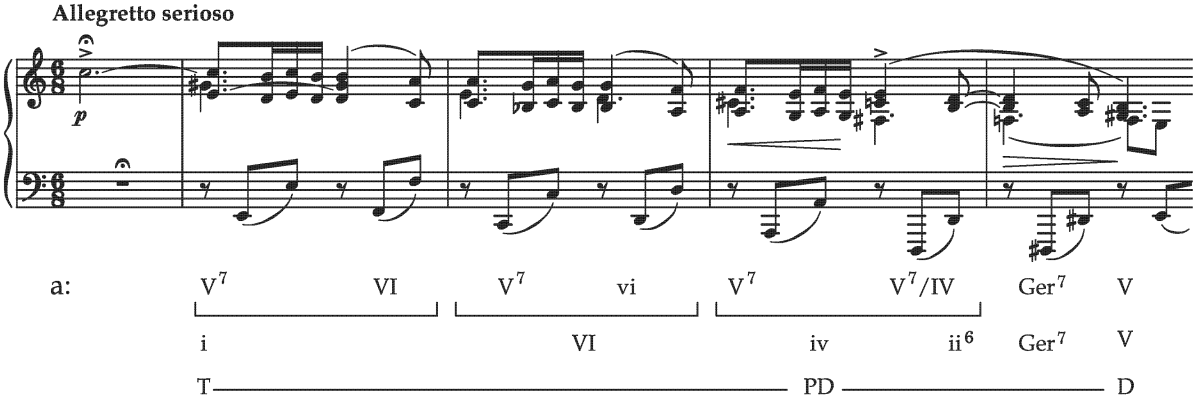
Often, augmented triads participate in sequential progressions, filling in the whole steps with chromatic semitones. Listen to Example 29.10 and identify all the augmented triads. Here is an example that plays on the augmented triad's harmonic ambiguity: The chromatic passing tone G♯ creates an augmented triad. At the same time, the tonic is extended to its first inversion on beat 3. An interesting effect results from the parallel-tenth motion between the bass and the soprano voices, where the G♯^{4} begins to sound a bit like a leading tone to A. This "applied dominant" to A minor is intensified by the fact that E is in the bass. Although it is customary to label this sonority as a C–E–G♯ chord (C-major triad with a raised fifth), there is no reason it cannot be called an E-major chord with raised fifth (E–G♯–B♯, with B♯ as an enharmonic respelling of C).

EXAMPLE 29.10 Beethoven, Bagatelle in C major, op. 119



Some late-nineteenth-century composers exploited the harmonic ambiguity of the augmented triad. Listen to the opening of "Illusion" in Example 29.11 and determine the key, the location where the key is explicitly stated, and how Grieg earlier implies the key. What musical devices make the opening tonally ambiguous?

EXAMPLE 29.11 Grieg, "Illusion," *Lyric Pieces VI*, op. 57

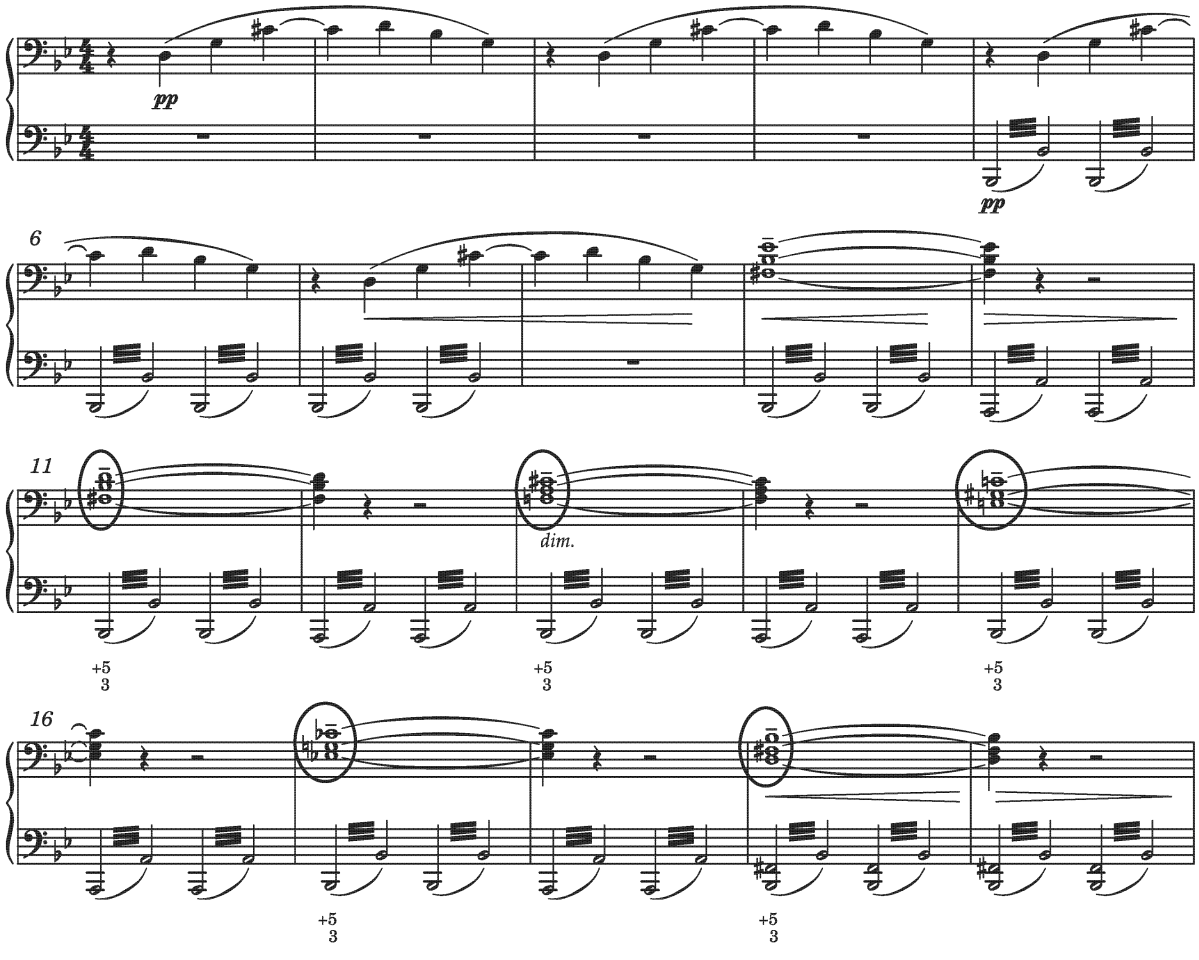


The excerpt closes on V of A minor, the tonic of the piece. The opening's unharmonized and ambiguous C^5 could imply the key of C major or the

dominant of F or any number of other keys. However, C^5 turns out to be a dissonance that is first heard as the minor sixth above the dominant of A minor. (Note that the first sonority, E–G♯–C, is identical to the chord in the previous example, which we hypothesized could work just as well in A minor.) The V^7 resolves deceptively to VI; this pattern begins again in m. 2, transposed down a third. Only in m. 3 does a goal-directed progression begin, leading to a half cadence in A minor. It is difficult to miss the explicit connection between the meaning of the song's title and Grieg's musical setting.

Finally, the augmented triad can become an independent sonority. Listen to the opening of Liszt's "Nuages gris" (Example 29.12), in which all of the chords but the first take the form of augmented triads. As Liszt obscures all sense of tonality with chromatically descending augmented chords (m. 11), he brings to life the image of visible yet amorphous gray clouds.

EXAMPLE 29.12 Liszt, "Nuages gris" ("Gray Clouds"), S199, LW 305

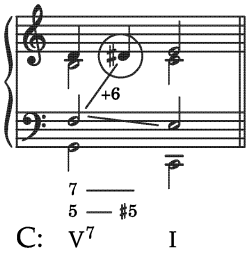


Altered Dominant Seventh Chords

The fifth of the V^7 chord, $\hat{2}$, is a weak tendency tone when compared to the leading tone ($\hat{7}$) and the chordal seventh ($\hat{4}$). But when $\hat{2}$ is raised—creating an **altered dominant seventh chord**—it forms an augmented sixth interval

with $\hat{4}$, and, as a strong tendency tone, it must rise to $\hat{3}$ (Example 29.13). Because of the proper resolution of the chordal seventh, the following tonic chord has a doubled third.

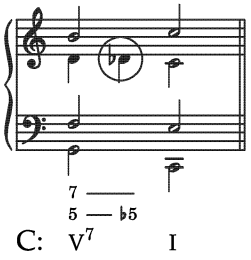
EXAMPLE 29.13 $V^7_{\sharp 5}$



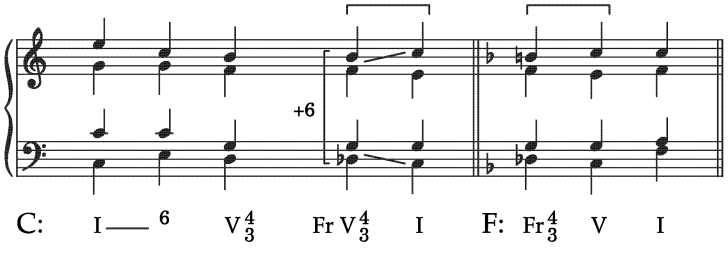
It is also possible to alter V^7 by lowering $\hat{2}$ a half step; this chord often plays a crucial role in late-nineteenth-century music (Example 29.14A). When $\hat{2}$ is lowered it forms an augmented sixth with the leading tone; composers place the chord in second inversion so that $\flat\hat{2}$ is in the bass. This inversion, shown in Example 29.14B, produces a chord that is identical to a French augmented sixth chord. Therefore, the altered dominant seventh chord functions in a reciprocal process (Chapter 28): The chord sounds like it participates in a half cadence ($Fr^4_3 \rightarrow V$), but it actually functions as part of an authentic cadence (altered $V^4_3 \rightarrow I$). For now, we will label this type of altered dominant as Fr V^4_3, which shows its function as a dominant and its intervallic properties that are similar to the regular Fr^4_3.

EXAMPLE 29.14 $V^7_{\flat 5}$ **and Fr** V^4_3

A.



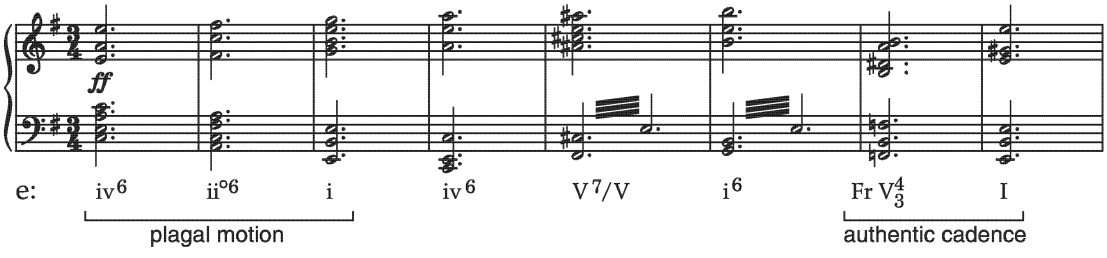
B.



Listen to the opening of the last movement of Brahms's Symphony no. 4 (Example 29.15). What is ambiguous about the cadence? Perhaps you were

once again struck by a disparity between what you saw and what you heard at the cadence in m. 8. There are two reasons why what looks like a weak authentic cadence—in which V^4_3 (F replaces F♯) resolves to I—actually sounds like a half cadence. First, the altered V^4_3 chord (m. 7), with F♮ prominently placed in the bass (F♮–A–B–D♯) is identical to a Fr^4_3 chord in the key of A minor. Second, the Picardy third (G♯) in the final chord sounds like it participates in a half cadence (Fr^4_3–V) rather than an authentic cadence (V^4_3–I). This altered dominant seventh therefore functions in a reciprocal process. We will learn more about the wide-ranging enharmonic potential and other special properties inherent in this sonority when we look at the music of Alexander Scriabin and Alban Berg in Chapter 31.

EXAMPLE 29.15 Brahms, Symphony no. 4 in E minor, op. 98, *Allegro energico e passionato*

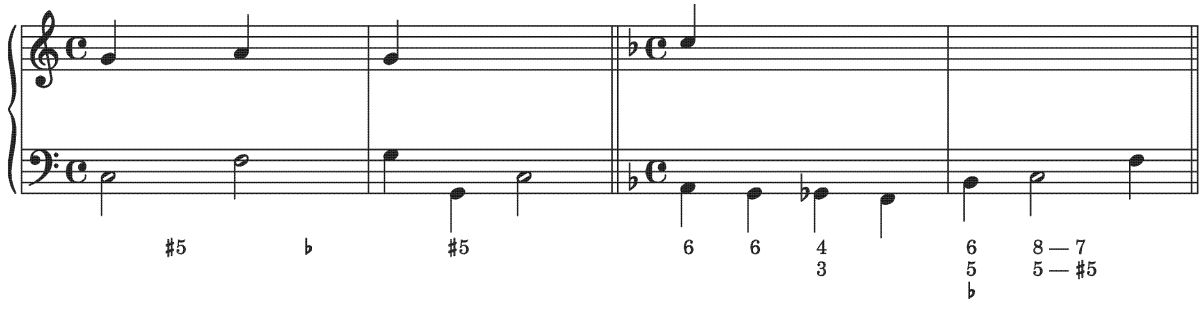


EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
29.1–29.2

29.1

Realize the figured basses in chorale style. Analyze using two levels.



The Common-Tone Diminished Seventh Chord

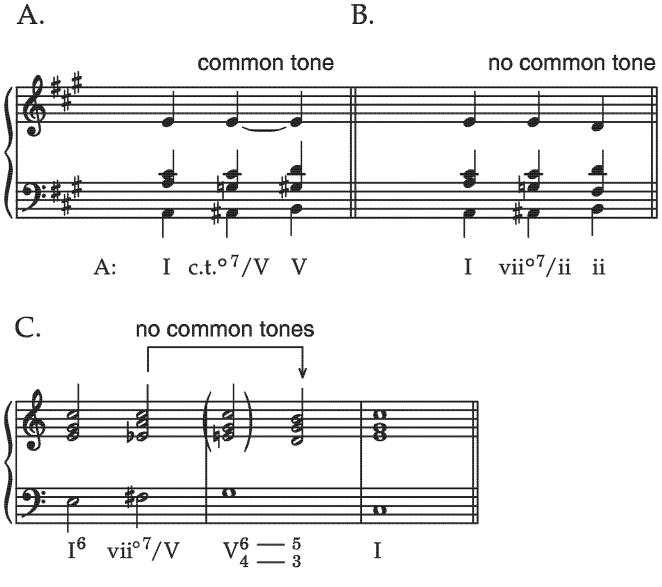
We have encountered a number of ways to extend an underlying harmony contrapuntally. In addition to embedded phrase models (EPMs), we have learned about passing and neighboring chords, such as vii^{o6}, P^6_4, Ped^6_4, vii^{o6}_5, and IV^6, which usually occur in first or second inversion so as to allow them smoothly to connect structural harmonies in root position.

Two additional harmonies can prolong I and V through neighboring and passing motions. These new chords contain chromaticism and *maintain the root of the harmony they extend.* Example 29.16 shows the first type of harmony: The lower neighbors on beat 3 of m. 1—together with the 5–6 motion (A–B) in the left hand—create a diminished seventh chord. Notice that the root of the tonic chord (D) is sustained as a common tone. Contrapuntal diminished seventh chords such as this one are called **common-tone diminished seventh chords**, labeled "c.t.$^{\circ 7}$."

EXAMPLE 29.16 Schubert, Waltz in D major, *34 Valses Sentimentales*, op. 50, no. 12, D. 779

We now have two functions for diminished seventh chords: They can be tonicizing (as a vii$^{\circ 7}$ or an applied vii$^{\circ 7}$) or contrapuntal (as a c.t.$^{\circ 7}$ or an applied c.t.$^{\circ 7}$) (Example 29.17). The following guiding principles may be useful when attempting to determine the function of a fully diminished sonority.

EXAMPLE 29.17 vii$^{\circ 7}$: Common Tone Versus Applied Forms



- Common-tone diminished seventh chords share a common tone with the following chord of resolution (Example 29.17A).
- vii^{o7} and applied vii^{o7} chords have no common tones with the following chord of resolution (Example 29.17B).
- Beware of the progression vii^{o7}/V to cadential $\frac{6\text{-}5}{4\text{-}3}$. The vii^{o7}/V chord shares common tones with the cadential $\frac{6}{4}$ chord. The common tones, however, are misleading, for they are not chord tones but suspensions that fall to the $\frac{5}{3}$ chord, which shares no pitches with the applied vii^{o7} chord (Example 29.17C).

It can be difficult to distinguish between the different types of diminished seventh chords. The chromatic bass line in Example 29.18 suggests that the diminished seventh chord will function as a vii^{o7}/ii. However, B is not the root of the chord on the downbeat of m. 2; it is a V^4_3 chord. Further evidence against viewing the diminished seventh chord as vii^{o7}/ii may be seen in the octave E, which is a common tone of both the diminished seventh chord and the following V^4_3 chord. As you know, there are no common tones between an applied vii^{o7} chord and its resolution, so this diminished seventh cannot be applied. Rather, it is a contrapuntal chord (c.t.^{o7} of V) that connects I and V^4_3 by means of a chromatic passing tone in the bass.

EXAMPLE 29.18 Brahms, "Heimweh III" ("Homesickness III"), op. 64, no. 9

vii$^{o\,7}$/ii ? (no)
c.t.$^{o\,7}$/V ? (yes)

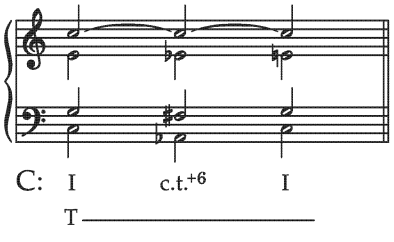
Common-Tone Augmented Sixth Chords

Example 29.19 contains another chromatic common-tone harmony over a tonic pedal that arises from contrapuntal motion, but it is not a diminished seventh chord. Look at the figure for the first chord. Does the presence of both flat and sharp accidentals remind you of any other chords we have learned? The sonority sounds and looks like a Ger^6_5 chord, since it contains an augmented sixth (A♭–F♯). It is a bit peculiar, however, not to have the ♭6–5 motion in the bass, for we expect an augmented sixth chord moving to its resolution. Instead, the bass voice sustains a common-tone C. The result of this voice leading is a chord that extends the tonic rather than leading strongly to the dominant. Such a chord is referred to as a **common-tone augmented sixth chord** (c.t.$^{+6}$).

EXAMPLE 29.19 Schubert, "Am Meer" ("By the Sea"), *Schwanengesang*, D. 957, no. 12

The bass in c.t.$^{+6}$ chords may skip down a major third to what would be the usual bass of an augmented sixth chord (Example 29.20). The fact that the augmented sixth chord returns to the tonic, however, demonstrates its common-tone function. Nineteenth-century music contains a variety of chromatic third–related vacillations.

EXAMPLE 29.20 Common-Tone Augmented Sixth



Analytical Interlude

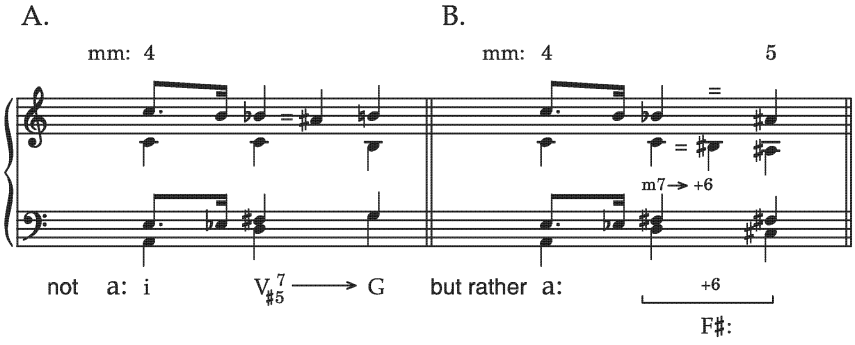
We have learned that composers do not choose harmonies in a capricious manner. Chords both progressive and prolongational play important roles in the harmonic and melodic domains, where they project motives at deep structural levels. We also have seen how harmonic and melodic choices in *Lieder* are often made to project images from the texts. Let's see what new effects are created in late-nineteenth-century songs by the incorporation of these common-tone chromatic harmonies (Example 29.21).

EXAMPLE 29.21 **Wolf, "Man sagt mir, deine Mutter woll' es nicht" ("They tell me your mother doesn't approve of it"), *Italienisches Liederbuch*, no. 21**

The story is simple: A girl teases her lover, saying that because his mother disapproves of their relationship, he should simply stay away. But in the next phrase, the girl contradicts herself and says that her lover should ignore his mother's wishes so that he may secretly visit her even more often. The following analysis reveals how Wolf's musical setting reflects the text.

The key of the song is clearly A minor, in spite of the c.t.$^{+6}$ on beat 2 of the first measure, which creates a neighbor figure above and below the fifth of the tonic harmony. When the first harmonic change occurs in m. 4, an apparent altered V^7 of G major (Example 29.22A) actually functions as an altered augmented sixth chord when it leads to F♯ major (Example 29.22B).

EXAMPLE 29.22 Wolf, "Man sagt . . ." Augmented Sixth Chord Resolution in m. 4, beat 4



The key of F♯ major, with its six sharps, vividly contrasts with A minor's zero sharps. In fact, F♯ major and A minor are nearly as tonally distant as two keys can be. This unusual and very sudden shift occurs at the very point where the girl says, "den Willen" ("do what she wants"). In the very next phrase the girl reverses her proclamation, saying that the boy should ignore his mother's desires and visit her daily. The unexpected tonal shift from A minor to F♯ major could be Wolf's imaginative way of creating a musical analogue that reflects the girl's sudden change of mind.

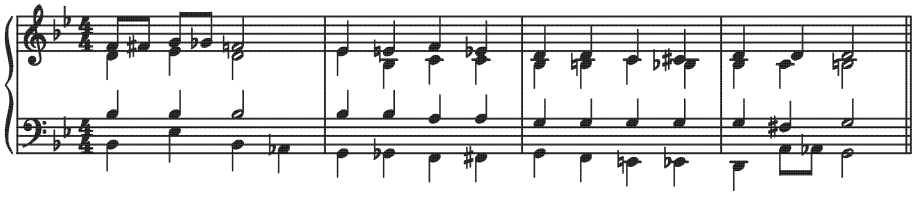
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

29.2

Analyze the following excerpts, which contain augmented triads, altered dominant seventh chords, common-tone diminished seventh chords, and common-tone augmented sixth chords.

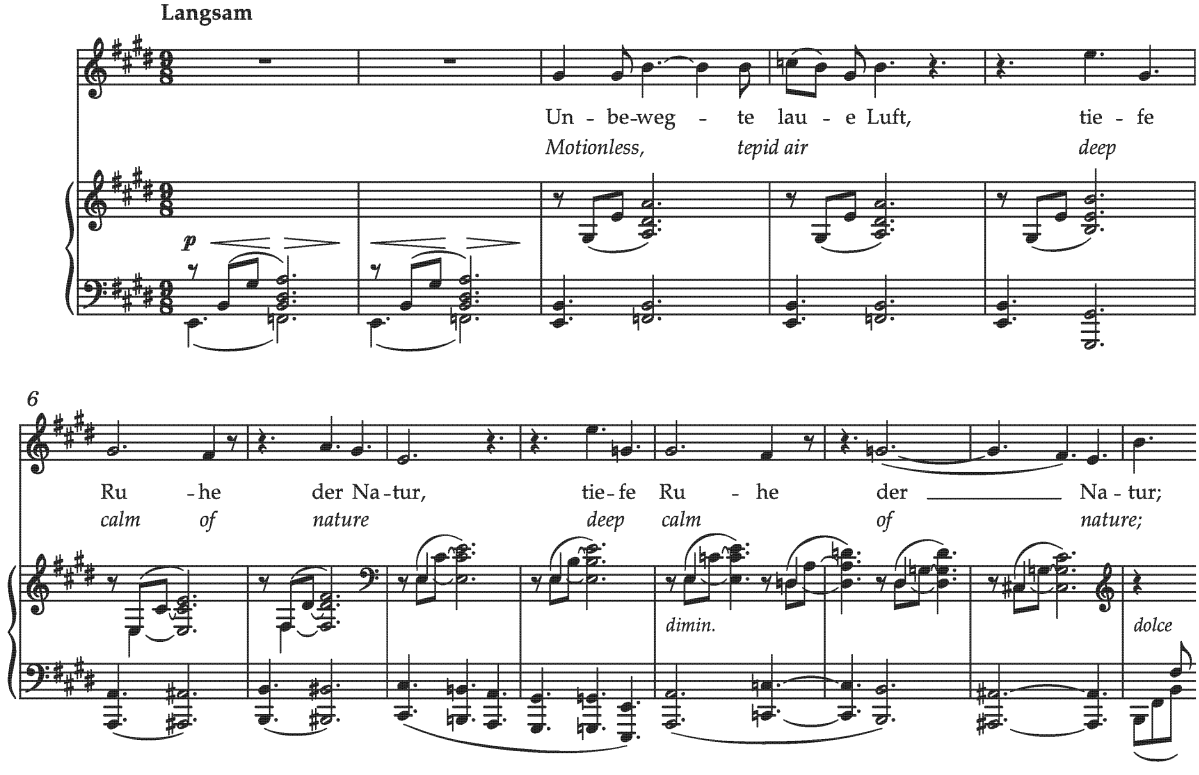
A. The ending of this exercise is tonally ambiguous. Discuss.



WORKBOOK 1
29.3–29.5

B. Chopin, Nocturne in A♭ major, op. 32, no. 2

C. Brahms, "Unbewegte laue Luft" ("Motionless, Tepid Air"), op. 57, no. 8



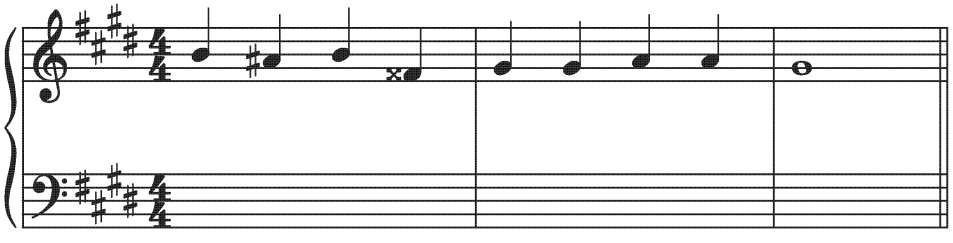
D. Brahms, Symphony no. 3 in F major, op. 90, *Allegro con brio*

29.3 Melody Harmonization

Set each soprano fragment in four voices, including at least three chromatic chords in Exercise A. You may use modal mixture, applied chords, common-tone harmonies, altered dominant and dominant seventh chords, ♭II chords, and augmented sixth chords. Analyze. For Exercise B, include one of each of the following (but not necessarily in this order): altered dominant, applied dominant, Fr V_3^4, and common-tone diminished seventh chords. Analyze.

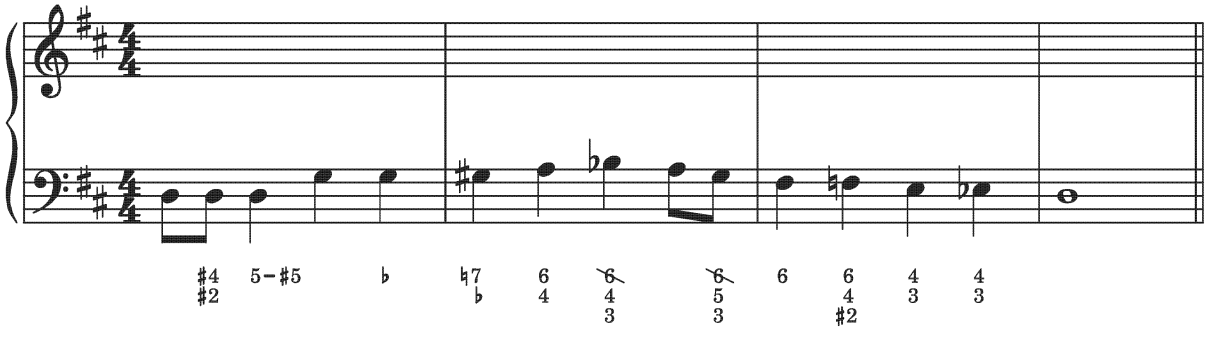
A.

B.



29.4 Figured Bass

Realize the figured bass in chorale style. Provide a two-level analysis.



29.5 Composition

Based on the given antecedent phrase, compose a consequent phrase to create a parallel progressive period. Use the diminished seventh in m. 6 enharmonically to modulate to a minor-third-related key of your choice. This example is taken from Haydn's Divertimento in G major, Hob XVI.11, mm. 33–40.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- altered dominant seventh chords
- augmented triad
- chromatic common-tone harmonies
  - common-tone augmented sixth chords
  - common-tone diminished seventh chords
- symmetrical versus asymmetrical relationships

CHAPTER 30

Melodic and Harmonic Symmetry Combine: Chromatic Sequences

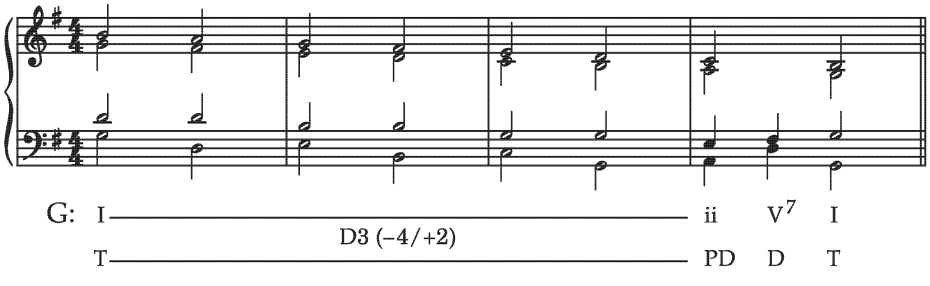
Distinctions Between Diatonic and Chromatic Sequences

Sequences are paradoxical musical processes. At the surface level they provide rapid harmonic rhythm, yet at a deeper level they function to suspend tonal motion and prolong an underlying harmony. Tonal sequences move up and down the diatonic scale using scale degrees as stepping-stones. In this chapter, we will explore the consequences of transferring the sequential motions you learned in Chapter 17 from the asymmetry of the diatonic scale to the symmetrical tonal patterns of the nineteenth century.

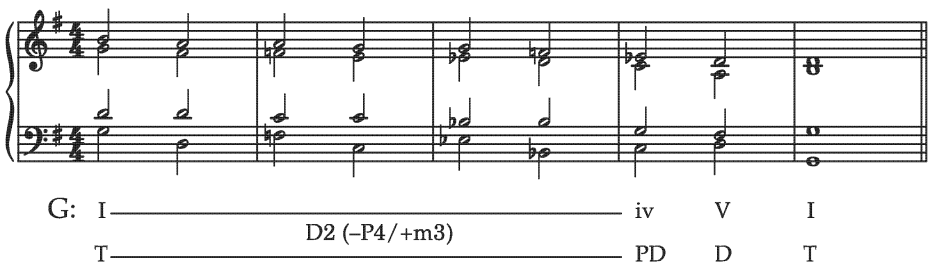
You will likely notice many similarities of behavior between these new chromatic sequences and the old diatonic ones, but there are differences as well. For instance, the stepping-stones for chromatic sequences are no longer the major and minor scales. Furthermore, the chord qualities of each individual harmony inside a chromatic sequence tend to exhibit more homogeneity. Whereas in the past you may have expected major, minor, and diminished chords to alternate inside a diatonic sequence, in the chromatic realm it is not uncommon for all the chords in a sequence to manifest the same quality.

EXAMPLE 30.1 Comparison of Diatonic and Chromatic Forms of the D3 ("Pachelbel") Sequence

A.



B.



Consider Example 30.1A, which contains the D3 (−4/+2)—or "descending 5–6"—sequence. The sequence is strongly goal directed (progressing to ii) and diatonic (its harmonies are diatonic to G major). Chord qualities and distances are not consistent, since they conform to the asymmetry of G major. For example, see how the first chord of the model, G major, repeats down a minor third on E minor, while the next repetition begins down a major third on C major.

Example 30.1B illustrates a new chromatic sequence, and its sense of harmonic ambiguity and lack of direction might unsettle you as you hear it. The sequence is ambiguous (its harmonies do not fit into one key), and it is not goal directed (it ends on B♭ major, whose function as ♭III becomes clear only after the final strong cadence in G major). The two-chord model is identical to that of Example 30.1A, but the copies contain numerous chromatic alterations that result in harmonies foreign to G major. The model and its repetitions contain all *major* triads and each repetition occurs down a *major* second. It is as if the copying mechanism has been perfected so that every repetition reproduces exactly the harmonic pattern of the model.

The sequence in Example 30.1B is a type of **chromatic sequence**. Chromatic sequences are distinguished from diatonic sequences by the fact that their main chords—those chords we use to reckon the first portion of a sequence label such as D2 or D3—contain altered scale degrees. (*Note*: The designation *chromatic* has nothing to do with the mere presence of accidentals; many of the applied-chord sequences seen in Chapter 18 contain accidentals, yet they are still diatonic sequences because their main chords are diatonic.)

Furthermore, chromatic sequences maintain strictly both chord quality and intervallic distance between repetitions, whereas diatonic sequences conform to the whole-step and half-step characteristics of the diatonic key. Because these chromatic sequences divide the octave into the same-sized intervals (such as the major seconds in Example 30.1B), they avoid the shifting whole steps and half steps that precipitate the goal-directed motion of traditional, diatonic sequences.

In studying the chromatic forms of the three common sequences we learned in Chapter 17, we shall see that the basic contrapuntal motion remains the same but that the overall root movements are often altered. For example, the diatonic sequence in Example 30.1A is labeled D3 (−4/+2) since the root movements change to conform to the diatonic key. The chromatic sequence in Example 30.1B differs in that the root motion always contains a

P4 and a m3 in a repetition; this creates a M2 descent between repetitions, which is reflected in the label D2 (−P4/+m3). *We distinguish chromatic sequences from diatonic sequences by including the specific interval motions within the parenthetical portion of the label.*

Chromatic Sequence Types

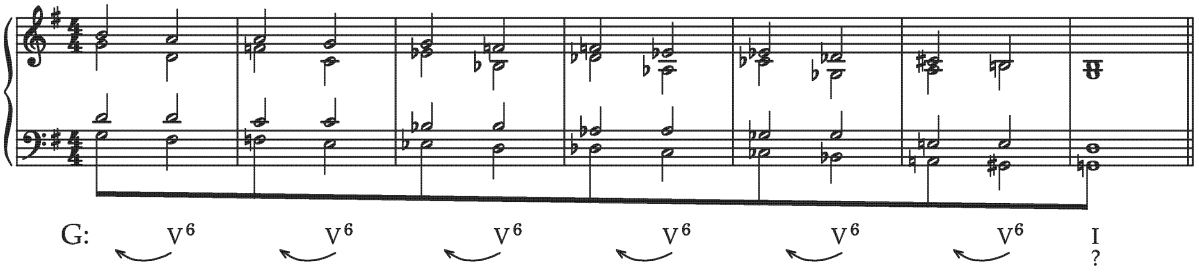
The D2 (–P4/+m3) Sequence

Both the diatonic D3 (−4/+2) sequences and the chromatic D2 (−P4/+m3) sequences are related by the underlying 5–6 motion that holds each sequence together. In Chapter 17 we learned that the diatonic form most often occurs with alternating six-three chords that clearly reveal the underlying 5–6 motion.

Example 30.2 contains the D2 (−P4/+m3) sequence in its alternating $\frac{6}{3}$ form. The "?" that appears under the tonic indicates that it does not sound like an arrival because of the remarkable ambiguity of the sequence.

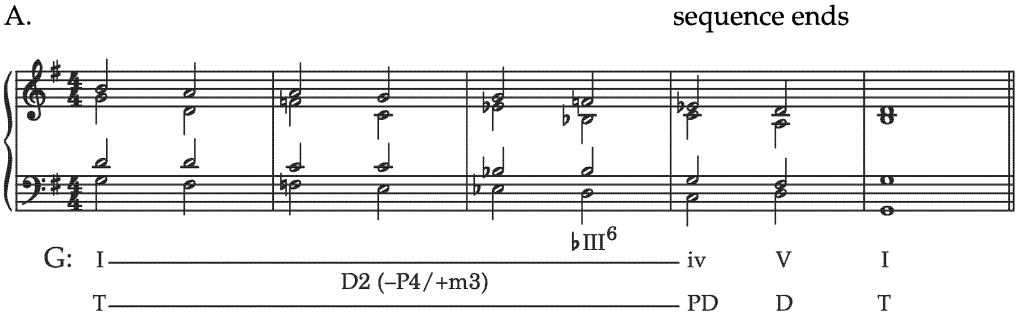
This sequence carves out an intervallic path consisting exclusively of whole tones (or their enharmonic equivalent) and divides the octave symmetrically into six major seconds (G–F–E♭–D♭–C♭–A–G). Note especially how the whole-tone path of this sequence skips over the dominant D as the line moves from the E♭ to D♭ in mm. 3–4. As it stands, the sequence is barely tonal. To reintroduce tonal focus, one must break off the sequence after the repetition of the pattern on ♭VI. From here it will lead to the pre-dominant function. (Example 30.3 shows two ways of doing this.)

EXAMPLE 30.2 Chromatic D2 (−P4/+m3) Sequence

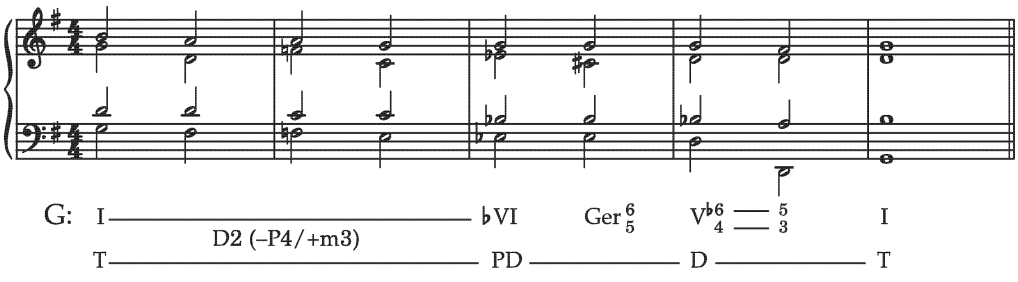


EXAMPLE 30.3 Chromatic D2 Sequence in Context

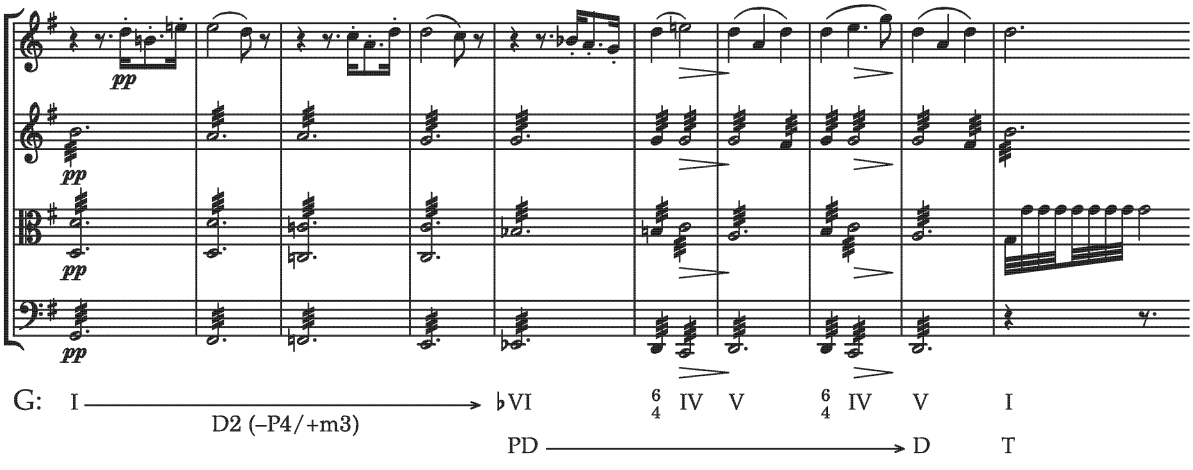
A.



B. sequence ends



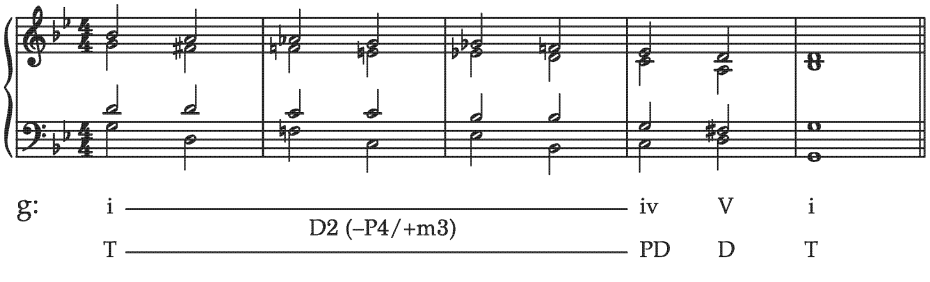
C. Schubert, String Quartet in G major, D. 887, *Allegro molto moderato*



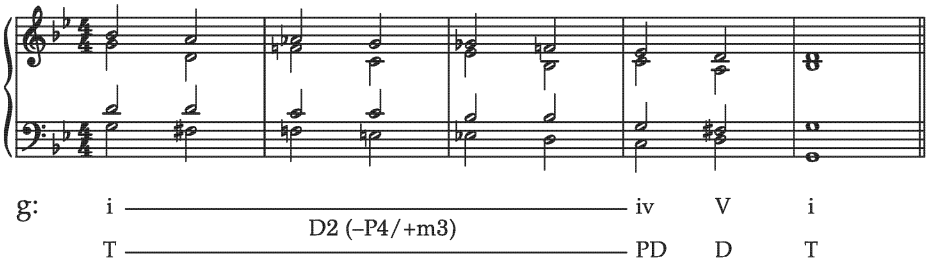
In general, chromatic sequences occur more often in the major mode than in the minor. Example 30.4 demonstrates the minor-mode form of the chromatic D2 (−P4/+m3) sequence. Example 30.4C, from a particularly evocative passage from a Franz Liszt piano piece, contains a phrase and its repetition down one octave using the chromatic D2 sequence. Each phrase begins and ends on I^6 (with B♮ in the bass), but between these stable points, the chromatic falling pattern etches out a whole-tone pattern filled in by passing tones (**B**–B♭–A♭–F♯–E–D–C–**B**). Notice that the second half of each phrase is diatonic, but Liszt is able to maintain the whole-tone motion in spite of the prevailing harmonic asymmetry.

EXAMPLE 30.4 Chromatic D2 in Minor

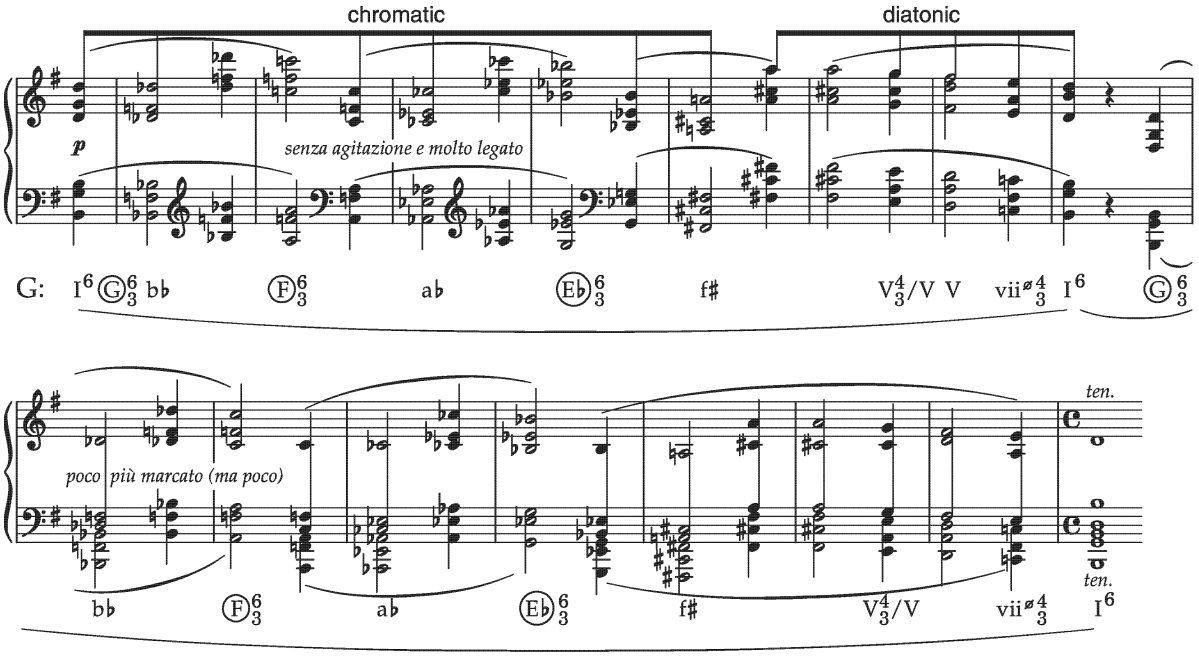
A. Root Position



B. Alternating Six-Three Chords



C. Liszt, "Aux cypres de la Villa d'Este I: Threnodie" ("To the cypresses of the Villa d'Este"), from *Anneés de Pèlerinage* (*Years of Pilgrimage*); Third Year



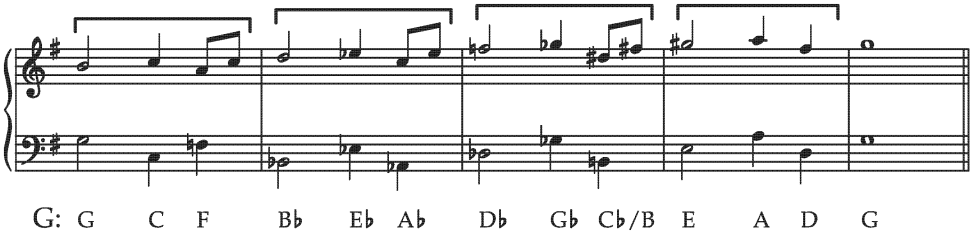
The Chromatic Forms of the D2 (–5/+4) Sequence

Recall that the D2 (−5/+4) (falling-fifth) sequence is asymmetrical because it contains perfect fifths and a single tritone. To become symmetrical, the chromatic D2 (−P5/+P4) sequence contains exclusively perfect fifths. A secondary difference between the two forms of the sequence concerns length of time required to cycle back to tonic: A complete statement of the *diatonic* D2 (−5/+4) sequence requires seven diatonic steps, while a complete statement of the *chromatic* form requires 12 chromatic steps. This provides a compositional problem of sorts for the D2 (−P5/+P4) sequences, given that a complete statement of the sequence requires so many repetitions.

Composers use two techniques to avoid sequential stasis: (1) partial statements of the series (only one or two repetitions) and (2) three or more fifth-related chords within the model, (rather than two) in order to reduce

the number of repetitions. For example, a three-chord model would require only three repetitions to make it all the way through this chromatic sequence's 12 chordal members (Example 30.5).

EXAMPLE 30.5 Chromatic D2 (Falling-Fifth) Sequence (three-chord model)



Now, let's compare this falling-fifth sequence to the other chromatic D2 sequence we have just studied. Both the D2 (−P4/+m3) and the D2 (−P5/+P4) fall by major second, but the latter is more goal directed, because it moves more naturally by descending perfect fifths. The D2 (−P4/+m3) sequence contains back-relating dominants, and the sequence itself never lands on the dominant V chord. To feel this distinction, try playing Examples 30.2 and 30.6 while noting the direction of the arrows.

EXAMPLE 30.6 Chromatic D2 (Falling-Fifth) Sequence (two-chord model)

It is also possible to have a chromatic sequence descending by *minor seconds*, D2 (−P5/+A4). This is accomplished by following the perfect-fifth descent by a tritone ascent. For example, the perfect-fifth bass pattern of a whole-tone D2 (−P5/+P4):

C F **B♭** E♭ **A♭** D♭ **G♭** C♭/B **E** A **D** G C

would become:

C F **B** E **B♭** E♭ **A** D **A♭** D♭ **G** C

Example 30.7 contains such a pattern, beginning on B. Members of the stepwise chromatic descent are circled; the tritone leaps between them are bracketed.

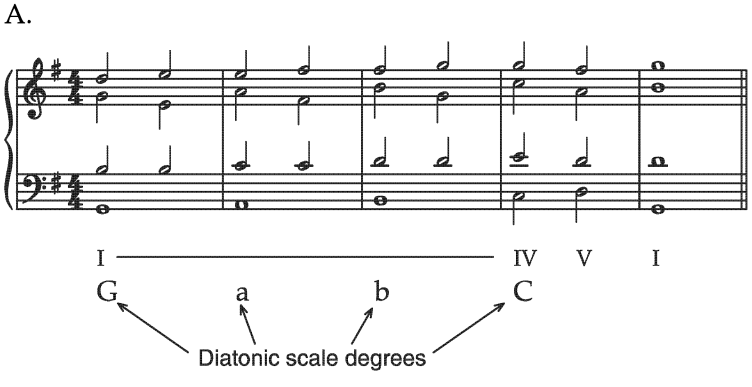
EXAMPLE 30.7 Chopin, Mazurka in A minor, op. 59, no. 1, BI 157

The Chromatic Forms of the A2 (–3/+4) Sequence

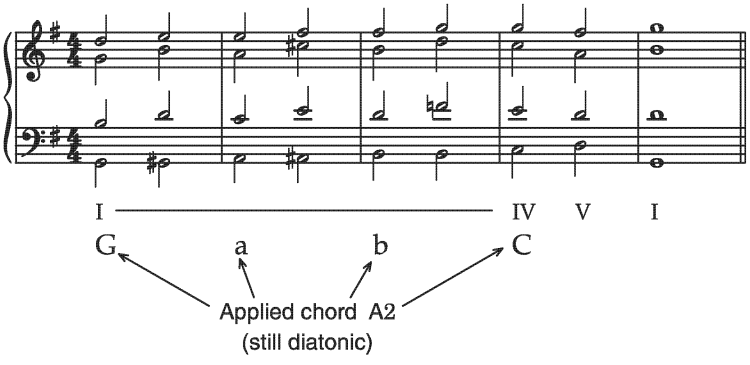
Like the diatonic A2 (−3/+4) sequence, the chromatic forms derive from the contrapuntal 5–6 motion. Let's examine how the diatonic form evolved into the chromatic, symmetrical form. Example 30.8 reviews two forms of the diatonic A2 sequence: the simple diatonic form and a variation that uses alternating applied chords to tonicize briefly each diatonic scale degree. These sequences are diatonic because the structural chord of each two-chord repetition falls on a diatonic scale degree that is diatonically harmonized.

EXAMPLE 30.8 Diatonic and Applied A2 Sequences

A.



B.



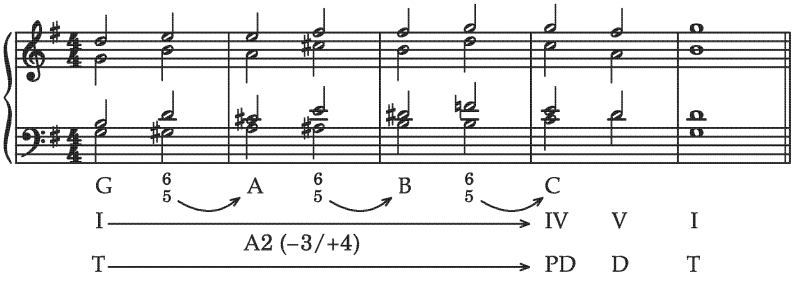
Two chromatic variants of this sequence are shown in Example 30.9.

Variant 1: The first sequence lies somewhere between standard diatonic sequences and chromatic sequences: The root of every chord is diatonic (asymmetrical), but the structural chord of each repetition is chromatically altered (symmetrical).

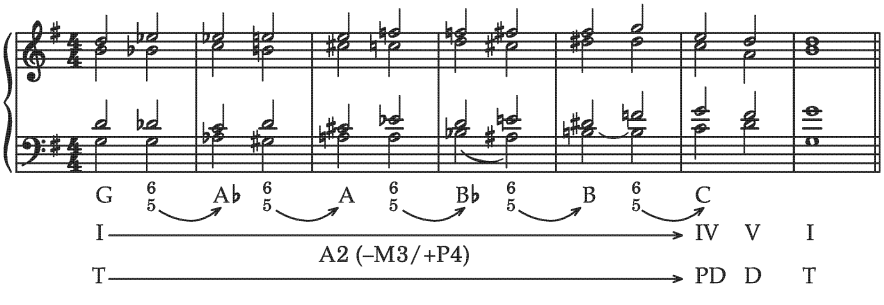
Variant 2: The second sequence is fully chromatic, A2 (−M3/+P4): The structural first chord of every repetition is major, and the sequence ascends by half step. Although the bass is sustained through the two-chord repetition, every second chord is transformed into an applied $\frac{6}{5}$ chord. This is reflected in the enharmonic respelling of the bass in mm. 2 and 4, showing the leading-tone function of the bass.

EXAMPLE 30.9 Chromatic A2 Sequences

Variant 1:

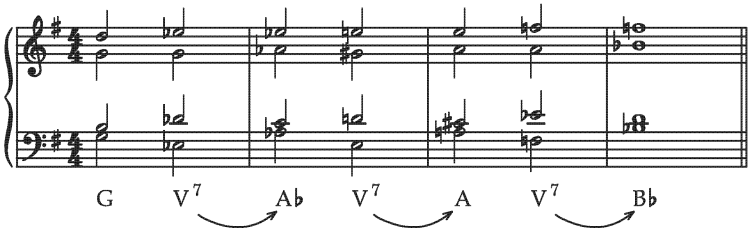


Variant 2:



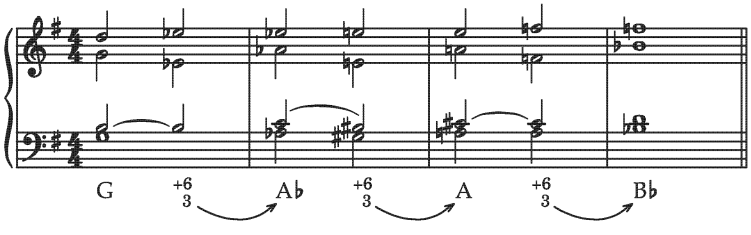
Example 30.10 demonstrates how the applied chords may appear in root position, a technique often used in popular music and at baseball games.

EXAMPLE 30.10 Chromatic A2 in Root Position



Finally, a second sustained common tone between the first chord and its transformation into a dominant results in an augmented triad on the second chord (Example 30.11).

EXAMPLE 30.11 Chromatic A2 with Augmented Triads



Other Chromatic Step-Descent Basses

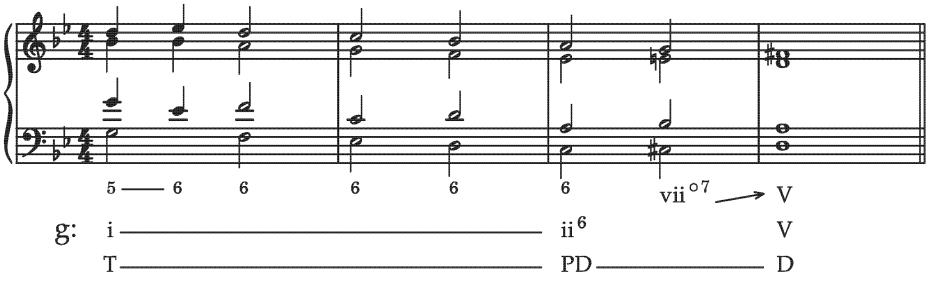
In addition to the usual two-chord sequential models that become chromatically descending sequences, it is possible to descend chromatically using a one-chord pattern, although such descents are not true sequences (as we learned in Chapter 17). Three common sonorities are used in such chromatic descents: six-three chords, diminished seventh chords, and augmented sixth chords.

Six-Three Chords

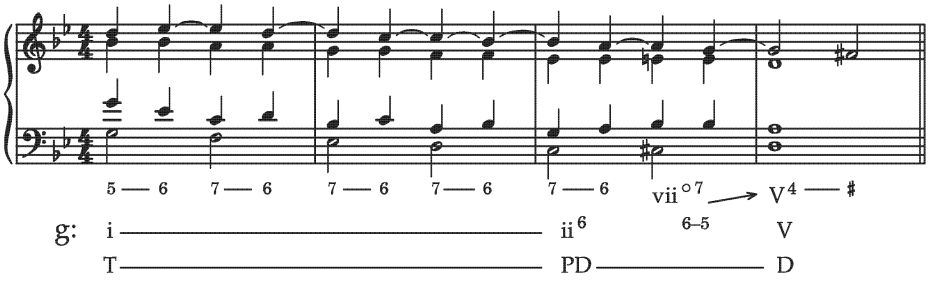
The diatonic descending six-three chord pattern (Example 30.12A), with 7–6 suspensions (Example 30.12B), can be transformed into a chromatic motion (Example 30.12C). The dissonant seventh usually occurs over a chromatic bass note and resolves over a diatonic bass note. This alignment of dissonance with chromaticism (and consonance with diatonicism) is common. Furthermore, the metrically emphasized beats on which the suspensions occur are harmonized by various types of seventh chords, making this pattern particularly expressive and useful in slower tempo pieces with emotional texts. In Chopin's *Impromptu*, a chromatic six-three motion extends tonic before leading to the pre-dominant (Example 30.12D).

EXAMPLE 30.12 Chromatic Step-Descent Bass Sequences

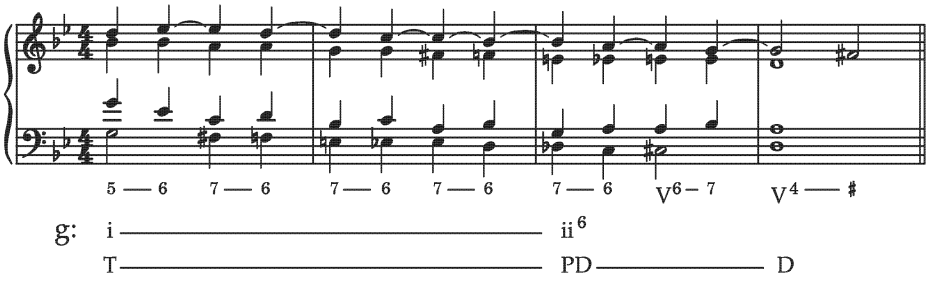
A.



B.

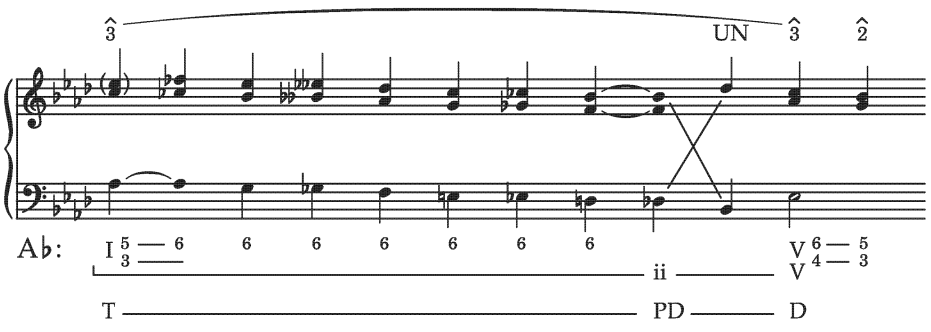


C.



D1. Chopin, Impromptu in A♭

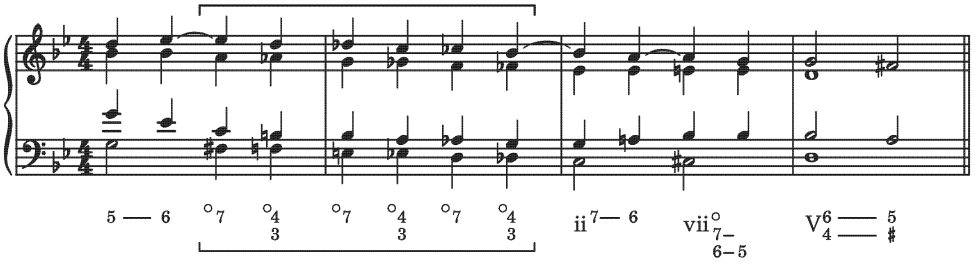
D2. Reduction of Chopin



Diminished Seventh Chords

The diminished seventh chord may be used in descending chromatic sequences, such as the DM2 (+P4/−P5) sequence in Example 30.13. The notation in this example reflects careful voice-leading practice, but it is not possible aurally to differentiate root-position and inverted diminished seventh chords (due to the symmetry of the chord). Rather, the sequence sounds like a stream of root-position diminished seventh chords.

EXAMPLE 30.13 Parallel Diminished Seventh Chords

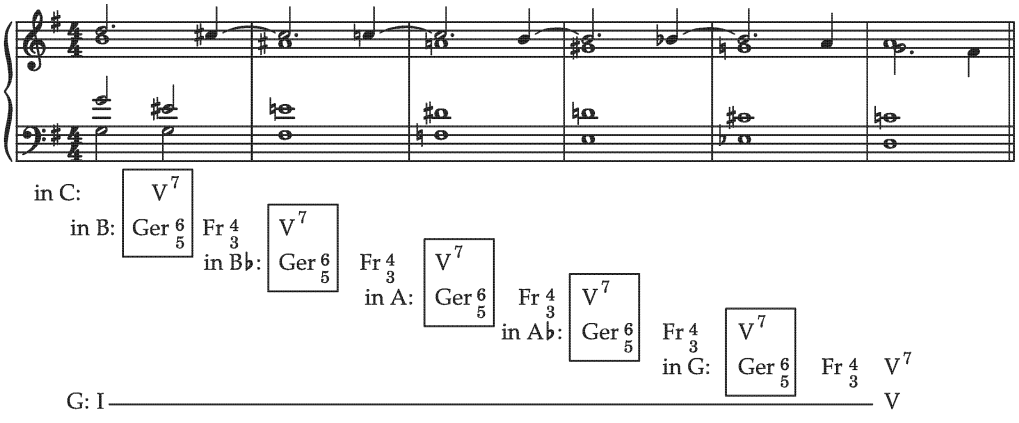


Augmented Sixth Chords

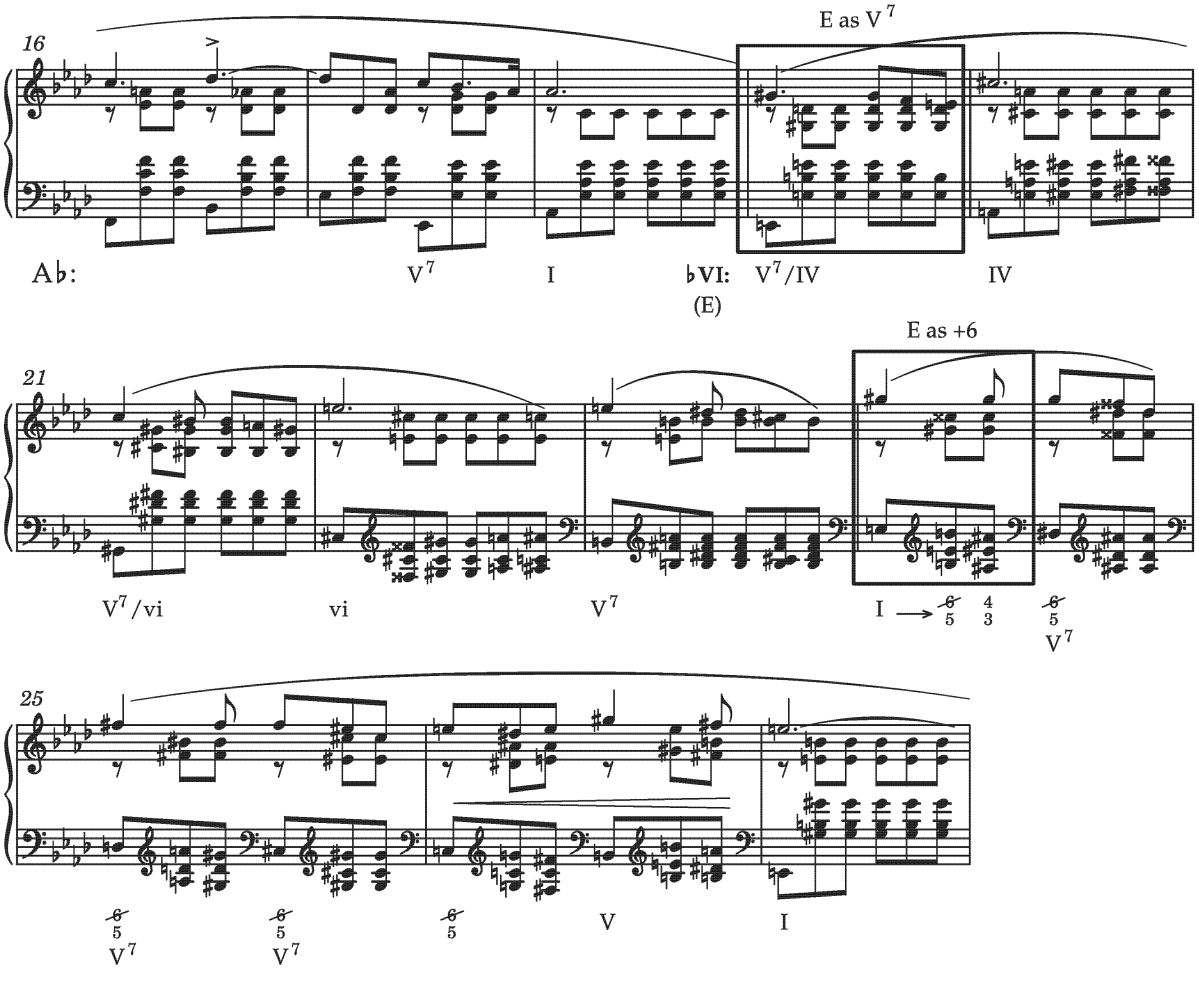
Example 30.14A illustrates the potential ambiguity between the German sixth and the dominant seventh chords. Without seeing the score, the listener will probably assume that these are streams of dominant seventh chords with an anticipation in the soprano voice. Yet one might also hear a descending PD–D progression, resulting in a descending series of keys related by half step. The analysis below Example 30.14A shows how V^7/IV (C) becomes a German sixth, a technique that we already know effectively lowers the temporary tonal center a half step. Notice that this PD–D progression is clarified at the end of each measure by the transformation of the ambiguous German sixth to the harmonically clearer French sixth. The French sixth's lowered fifth also avoids parallel fifths, in that it anticipates the perfect fifth of the following dominant seventh. Through all of this sequencing, the real underlying motion is from tonic to dominant in G major. Chopin uses this pattern in Example 30.14B.

EXAMPLE 30.14 Descending Augmented Sixth and Dominant Seventh Chords

A.



B. Chopin, Prelude in A♭ major, op. 28



Writing Chromatic Sequences

WORKBOOK 1
30.1–30.3

Although there are no new guidelines for writing chromatic sequences, the following issues arise.

1. Use enharmonic notation instead of writing double flats or double sharps.
2. Like diatonic sequences, chromatic sequences usually break off at the pre-dominant, whether the sequences rise or fall.
3. Chromatic sequences require that copies maintain the model exactly—both the chord quality and voicing.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

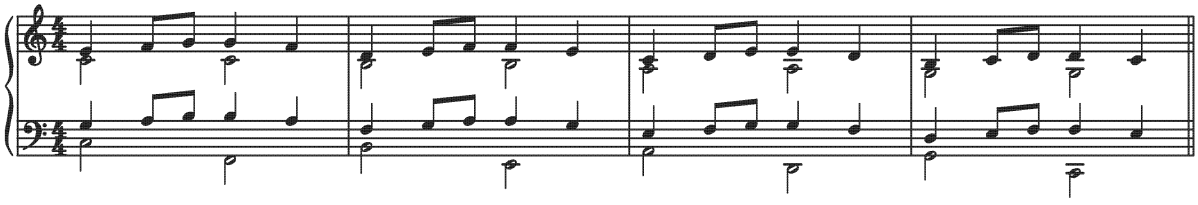
30.1

Analyze the following sequences. Your choices are:

1. descents by seconds, thirds, and streams of six-threes, diminished sevenths, and augmented sixths
2. ascents by seconds

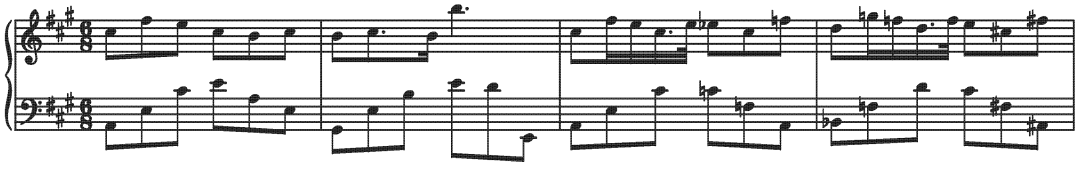
You may also encounter examples of diatonic asymmetrical sequences. Bracket each sequence and label it. Then circle the notes of the outer-voice model and each repetition, ignoring any embellishing tones.

A.



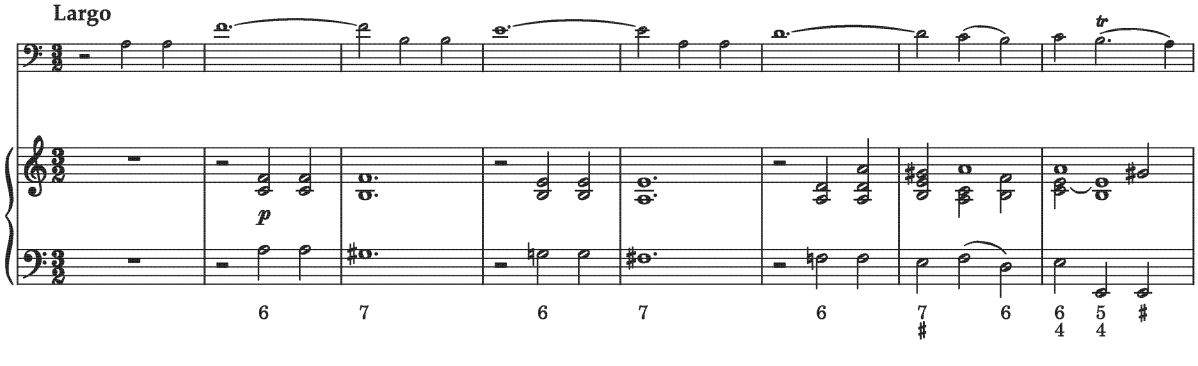
B.

C.

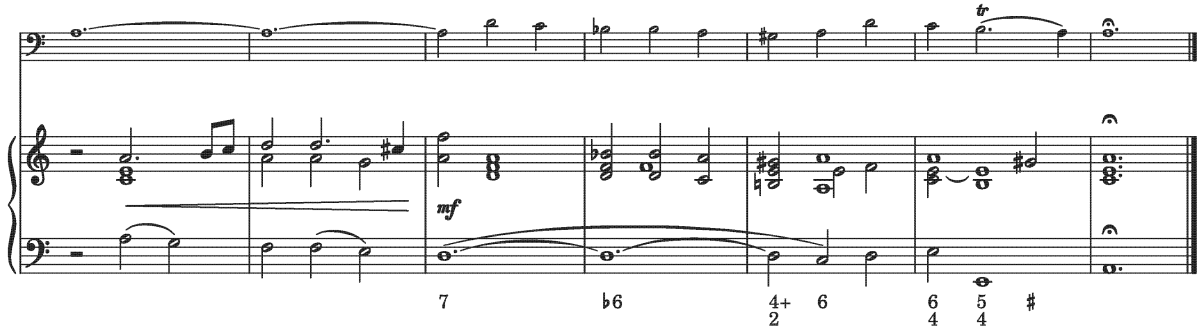


D. Beethoven, Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, "Eroica," op. 55, *Allegro con brio*

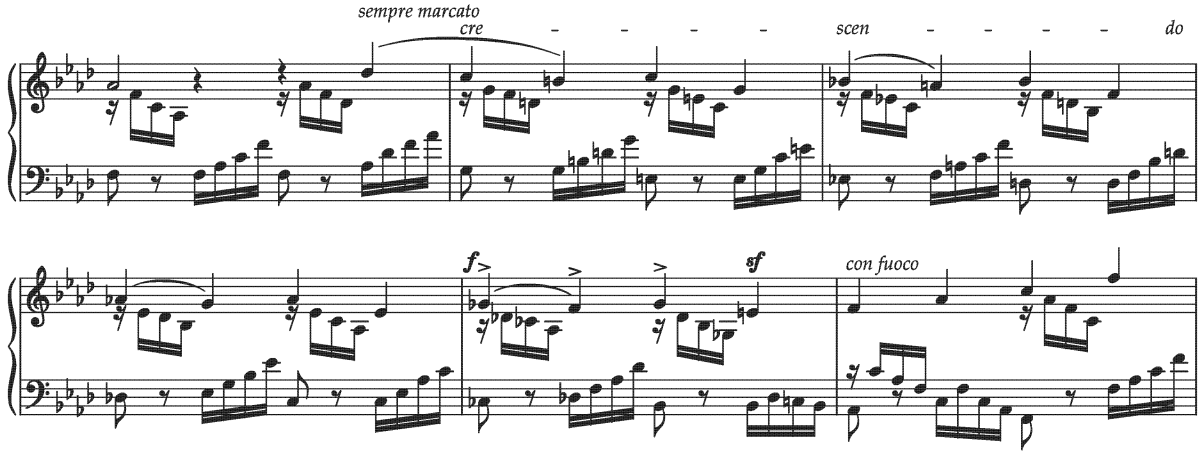
E. Marcello, Lament in G minor for Cello and Continuo



Continued



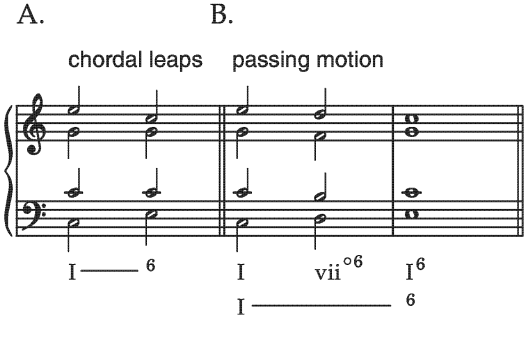
F. Mendelssohn, Etude in F minor, WoO1



Chromatic Contrary Motion

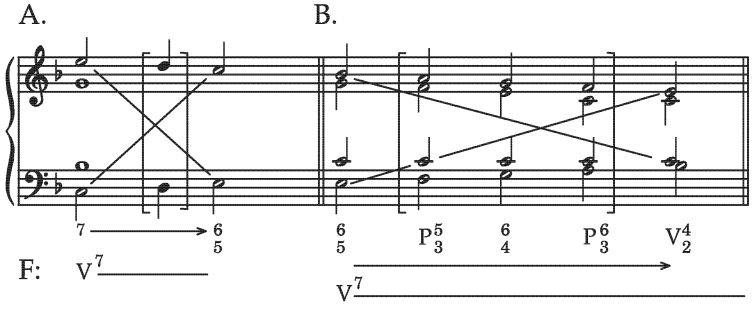
We have learned many ways to extend an underlying harmony using contrary motion. We began with the chordal leap, which results in a voice exchange with no intervening chords (Example 30.15A). Next we added passing chords, such as vii°^{6}, V$^{4}_{3}$, and vii°$^{6}_{5}$ (Example 30.15B).

EXAMPLE 30.15 Diatonic Voice Exchange



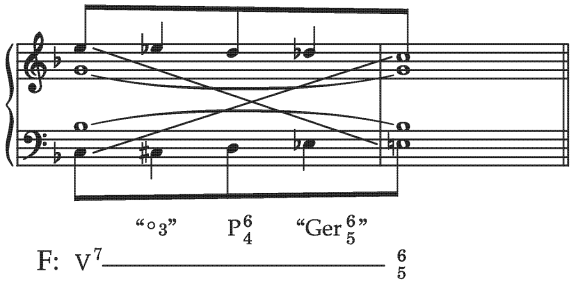
We can extend not only consonant triads but also dissonant harmonies—most often a dominant seventh chord—by contrary motion. The **dissonant prolongation** spans a third in Example 30.16A and a tritone in Example 30.16B. Notice how little the inner voices move.

EXAMPLE 30.16 Voice Exchange Using Diatonic Passing Chords



In these preliminary examples, it is easy to see what harmony is prolonged because the outer-voice counterpoint is diatonic. Contrary-motion expansions containing chromaticism, in contrast, manifest a larger degree of tonal ambiguity. Example 30.17, demonstrates the prolongation of a dominant seventh chord with outer voices moving by half step. The beams show the underlying diatonic stepwise motion; the nonfunctional Ger^7 and Ger^6_5 act as passing chords filling the space between the diatonic chords. This densely chromatic progression works well because the inner voices are able to remain stationary.

EXAMPLE 30.17 Voice Exchange Using Chromatic Passing Chords

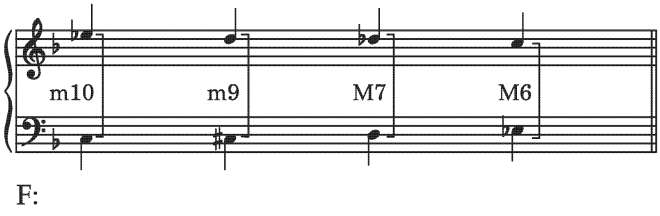


It is not a matter of luck that these particular soprano and bass lines work well together in contrary motion. For comparison, let's consider two lines that move in contrary motion starting from a minor tenth rather than a major tenth (Example 30.18). Almost from the beginning, the counterpoint is flawed. There is no suitable way to harmonize the minor ninth or the major seventh. In contrary-motion chromatic lines, the intervals with an even number of half steps are best harmonized: unison, M2, M3, tritone, m6, m7, and their compound-interval counterparts.

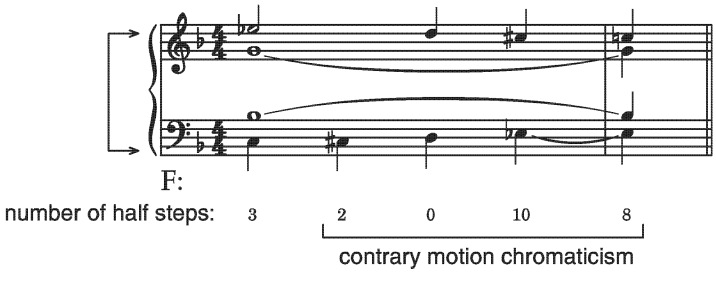
Of course, it is still possible to use contrary-motion chromaticism even if the initial interval does not comprise an even number of half steps. All it

requires is a bit of compositional adjustment: Sustain one of the voices while the other ascends or descends by half step, which will form an even interval that can continue in contrary motion (Example 30.19).

EXAMPLE 30.18 Problematic Contrary Motion Resulting from "Odd" Intervals

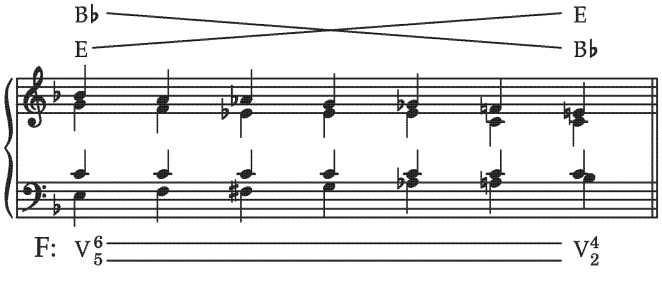


EXAMPLE 30.19 Transforming Odd Intervals into Usable Even Intervals



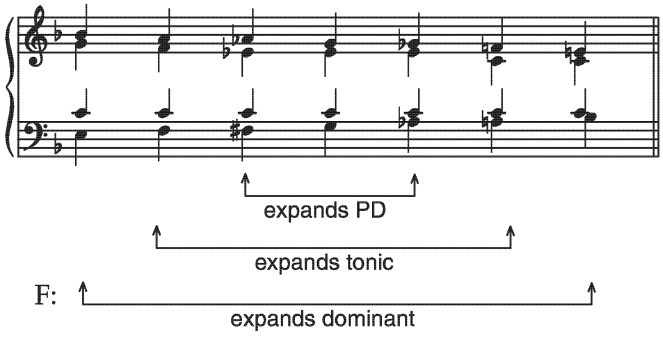
Examples 30.16 and 30.17 showed expansions of a dominant seventh chord—from $\frac{6}{5}$ to $\frac{4}{2}$ and from 7 to $\frac{6}{5}$ respectively. Example 30.20 expands the previous models by demonstrating how a $\frac{6}{5}$ to $\frac{4}{2}$ tritone can be expanded chromatically in a seven-chord progression.

EXAMPLE 30.20 Tritone Voice Exchange Using Chromatic Passing Chords



Notice that when we use these sequences, it is possible to begin and end the contrary motion at any point in order to prolong different diatonic entities. Example 30.21 shows how we can prolong tonic or a °3/+6 complex by using different spans of the sequence; depending on which portion is used, the chromatic contrary motion can prolong tonic, pre-dominant, or dominant.

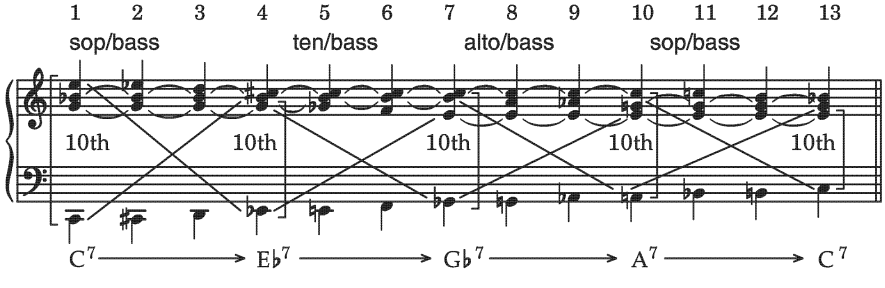
EXAMPLE 30.21 Expanding Tonic, Pre-Dominant, and Dominant Functions



The Omnibus

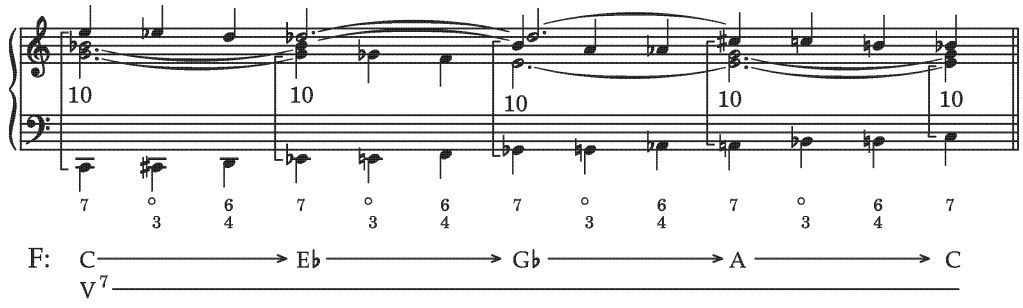
In a final expansion, the same chromatic contrary motion that prolongs dominant (V^7 to V^6_5) can be stretched so that it traverses an entire octave (ascending or descending). In Example 30.22, the bass ascent partitions the octave into minor thirds: Different root-position dominant seventh chords appear on every third sonority (the dominant seventh chords are sometimes spelled enharmonically as Ger^6_5 chords). At each dominant seventh chord, a remarkable enharmonicism is invoked, allowing the contrary chromatic motion to begin anew. The soprano and bass start a major tenth apart and work in contrary motion. At the next dominant seventh chord, the tenor and bass start with the M10 and work in contrary motion. At chord 7, the alto and bass are on a M10 and start a voice exchange; the bass and soprano return to a M10 at chord 10. The bass arrives on C^3 at chord 13 to complete its one-octave ascent.

EXAMPLE 30.22 Chromatic Contrary Motion Parses the Octave into Minor Thirds



Example 30.23 reproduces the motions of Example 30.22 and demonstrates how the entire passage acts as a prolongation of a single harmony. In total, this prolongation is called the **omnibus**. The omnibus, first described by Viennese music theorists around 1800, was used by composers throughout the nineteenth century (such as Beethoven, Schubert, Chopin, and Liszt). In practice, composers generally used only part of the omnibus.

EXAMPLE 30.23 The Omnibus Expands V^7



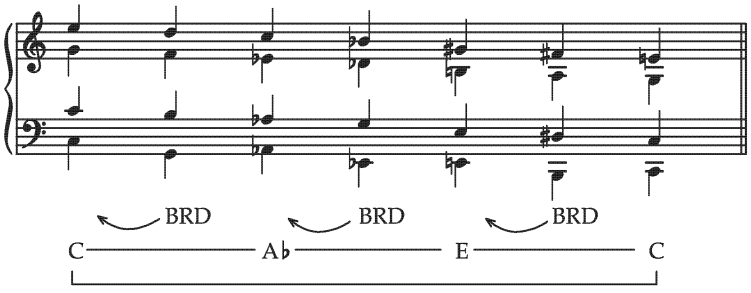
A Final Equal Division of the Octave

We have seen that chromatic parallel-motion sequences and contrary-motion progressions partition the octave into equal-sized intervals.

Descending minor seconds:	D2 (−P5/+A4)
Descending major seconds:	D2 (−P4/+M3) and DM2 (−P5/+P4)
Ascending minor seconds:	A2 (−M3/+P4)
Ascending and descending minor thirds:	Omnibus

We consider one more interval that can symmetrically divide the octave: the major third. Example 30.24 presents a slight variation of the diatonic D3 (−4/+2) sequence that partitions the octave into major thirds, D3 (−P4/+m2). The voice-leading irregularities result from maintaining the sequential progression exactly. The overall progression, which prolongs C major, contains descending major thirds (C–A♭–E–C) in the bass and a whole-step descent in the soprano.

EXAMPLE 30.24 Major-Third Division of the Octave



Chromatic sequences all create the temporary effect of tonal ambiguity. It was but a short and natural step for composers to begin to use autonomous symmetrical progressions independent of sequential motion. Such progressions, which we take up in the next chapter, extend ambiguity to deep structural levels of the music.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

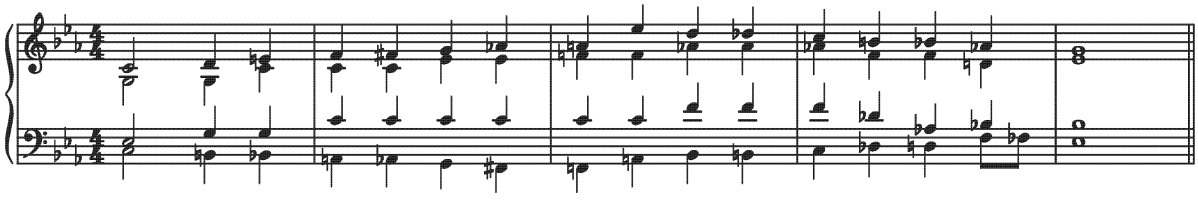
ANALYSIS

WORKBOOK 1
30.4–30.5

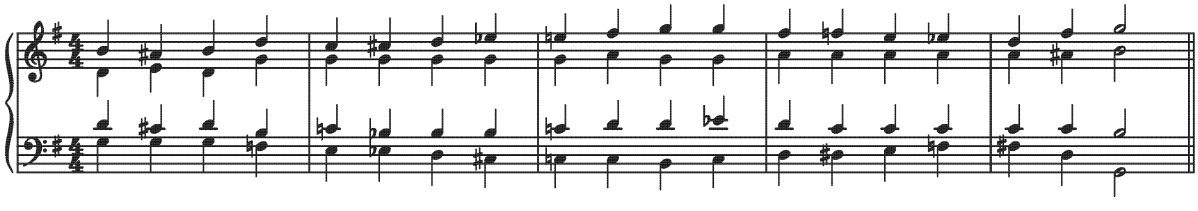
30.4 Contrary-Motion Progressions

Given are progressions that employ contrary-motion chromaticism. Determine the harmonic function that the chromaticism extends; then bracket and label that function (tonic, dominant, or pre-dominant). Circle the pairs of pitches involved in the contrary-motion chromaticism; for more extended examples, the pairs will change between voices. Is there a deeper harmonic pattern that emerges?

A.



B.



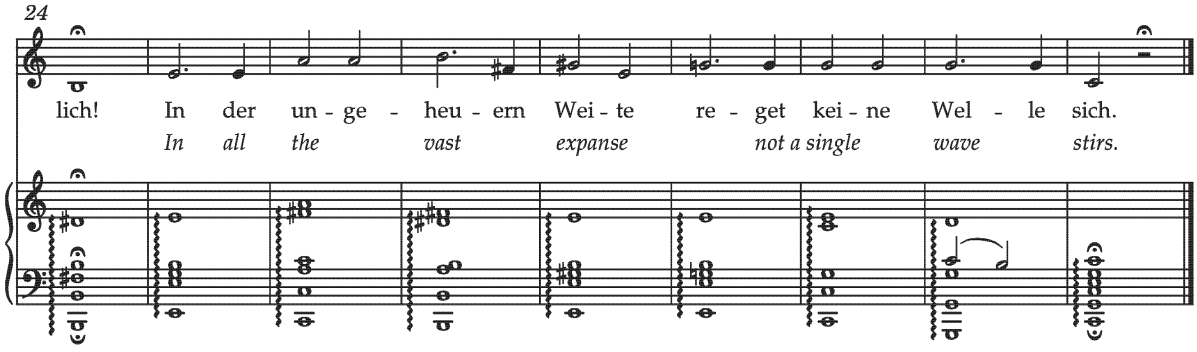
C.

D. Tchaikovsky, Symphony no. 5 in E minor, op. 64, *Allegro con anima*

Continued

30.5 Analysis Project

Schubert's song "Meeres stille" ("Still Sea," op. 3, no. 2, D. 216) contains part of an omnibus that expands (that is, moves outward in contrary motion) and a chromatic third relation that usurps a structural dominant. Both of these harmonic techniques project the poetry. Listen to the song and study the translation.

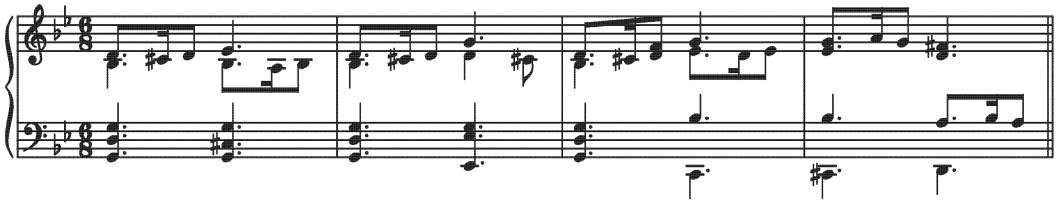


1. The subject of the poem is a sailor on a placid sea. The "deep calm" that "rules the water," however, carries with it the sailor's anxiety. Why? What is the sailor ultimately afraid of?
2. How does Schubert's accompaniment support the text? Do you think the sailor lands safely, or not?
3. Determine the key areas in the song. You will need to consider how E major functions. Is it an applied chord or a mixture chord? (Remember, an applied chord is subordinate to the following harmony, but a mixture chord participates in the underlying tonal motion.)
4. Is there an underlying harmonic progression in these key areas?
5. In spite of the clear cadences, how might the tonal structure reflect the uncertainty of the sailor becalmed at sea?
6. One might expect the dominant to appear somewhere after m. 16. Why? Instead, a chromatic passage follows. How does this chromaticism reflect the text? The text in this chromatic passage divides into two parts. What key is implied at the end of the first part (on the word *Seite*)? Based on what immediately follows (*Todesstille*, meaning "deadly calm"), what different key does Schubert imply? What is the relationship between this key and the song's primary key? Could the placement of this particular sonority influence your interpretation of the sailor's fate?

COMPOSITION

30.6

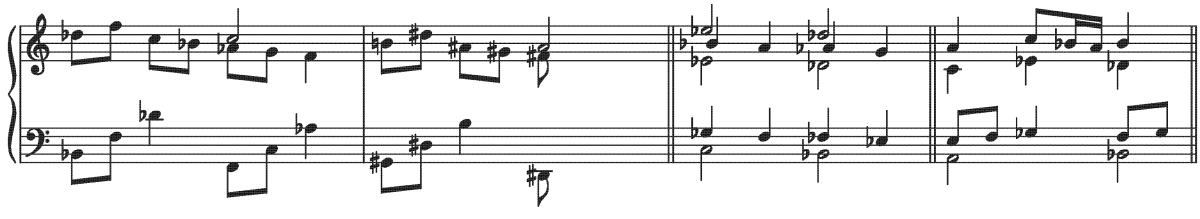
Write two consequents to the given antecedent to create a parallel interrupted period and a contrasting progressive period. Label your periods and analyze the harmonies.



30.7

1. Continue the given patterns until you return to the tonic. By what interval does each sequence partition the octave? Be able to perform your solutions with one or more of your colleagues.
2. Write a 16–20 measure piece that uses two or three of the patterns. Choose a single, underlying key, and employ primarily diatonic harmonies in the opening of phrases and in cadences.

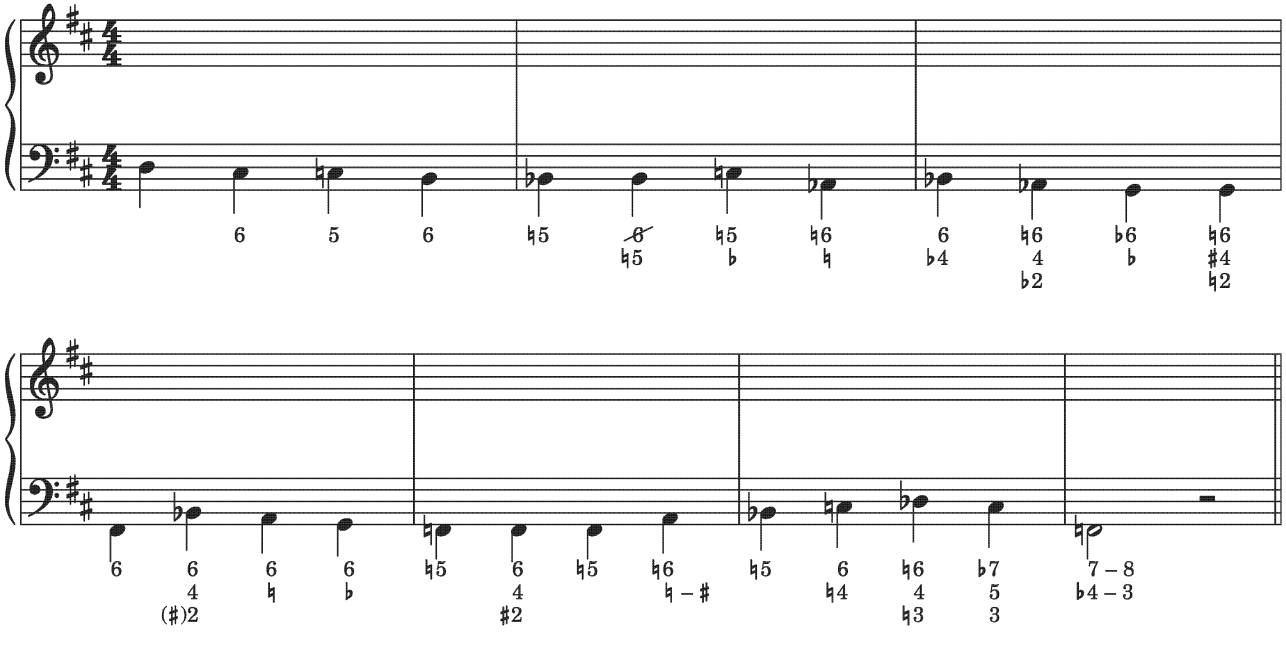
A. B. C.



D. E. F. G.

30.8

Realize the following figured bass in four voices. Analyze.



TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- chromatic versus diatonic sequences
- chromatic A2 (−M3/+P4) sequence
- chromatic D2 (−P4/+m3) sequence
- chromatic D2 (−P5/+P4) sequence
- contrary-motion chromaticism
- dissonant prolongation
- omnibus

CHAPTER 31

At Tonality's Edge

In this final chapter, we conclude our study of the interaction of symmetry and ambiguity. The musical structures we examine here will lead us to the very frontier dividing tonal music from nontonal music. We continue working from the premise that a work is tonal and organized by the subtle play of counterpoint and hierarchy. At this point, you may have doubts about using anachronistic terms such as *tonality*. Our definitions, however, will still equip us with tools that unlock the underlying structural principles behind music that remains within the tonal tradition but whose construction looks forward to nontonal practices. Our analyses permit us to see this music as part of a long historical tradition.

Sequential Progressions

The increased use of mixture resulted in the increased use of chromatic third relations in the late eighteenth century. Motion to the fifth above and below the tonic was often divided by chromatic thirds (I–♭III–V and I–♭VI–IV, for example). Although these progressions were goal directed, they were asymmetrical because they contained root motions that were a mixture of major and minor thirds.

It is possible to incorporate two or more identical intervals into progressions that segment the octave into equal intervals, called **equal divisions of the octave**. See Example 31.1, which shows how intervals of one, two, three, four, or six half steps can equally divide the octave.

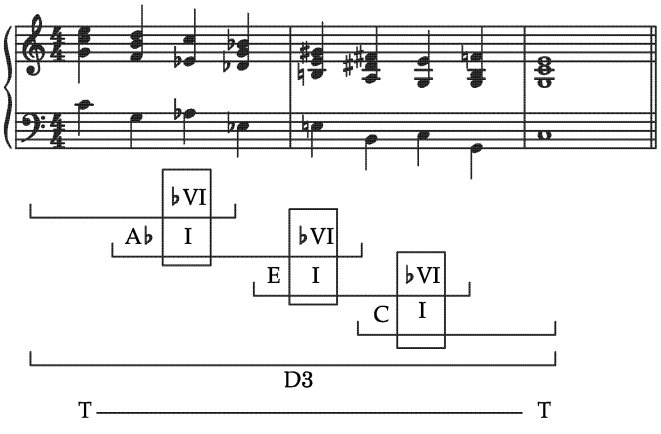
EXAMPLE 31.1 Equal Divisions of the Octave

by six half steps (tritone)	C						F♯						C
by four half steps (M3)	C				E				G♯				C
by three half steps (m3)	C			E♭			F♯			A			C
by two half steps (M2)	C		D		E		F♯		G♯		B♭		C
by one half step (m2)	C	C♯	D	E♭	E	F	F♯	G	G♯	A	B♭	B	C
half steps	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	0

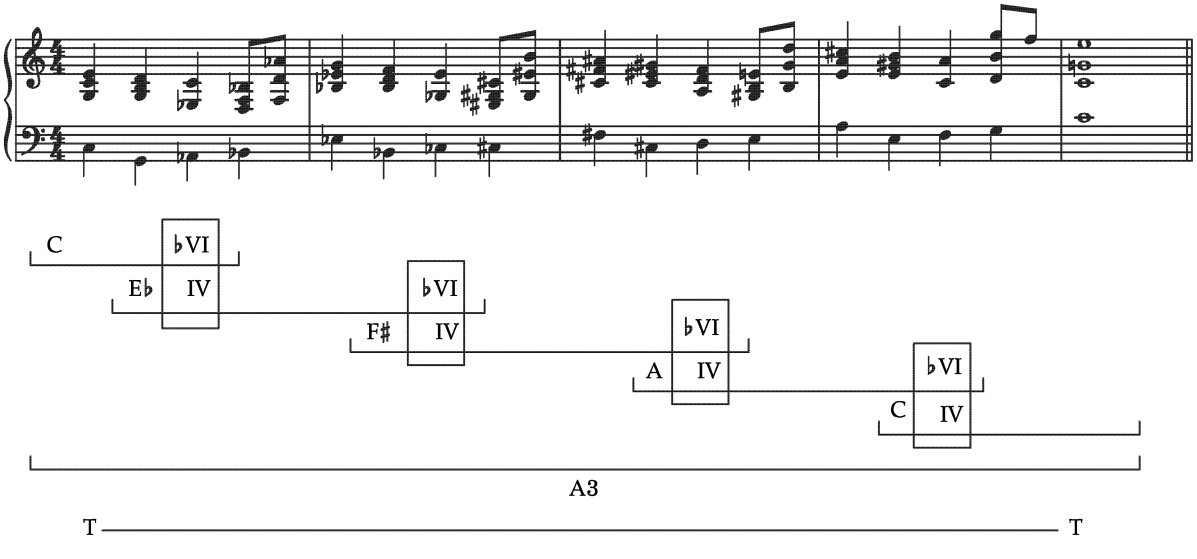
Example 31.2 contains two important symmetrical progressions. Example 31.2A moves by descending major thirds from C major to A♭ major (♭VI), to E major (III or ♭IV), and back to C major. The two-chord model is exactly copied by two-chord repetitions that preserve the motion of each voice. Notice how each major-third-related key is secured when the pivot (♭VI) becomes I in the new key.

EXAMPLE 31.2 Division of the Octave by Major Third

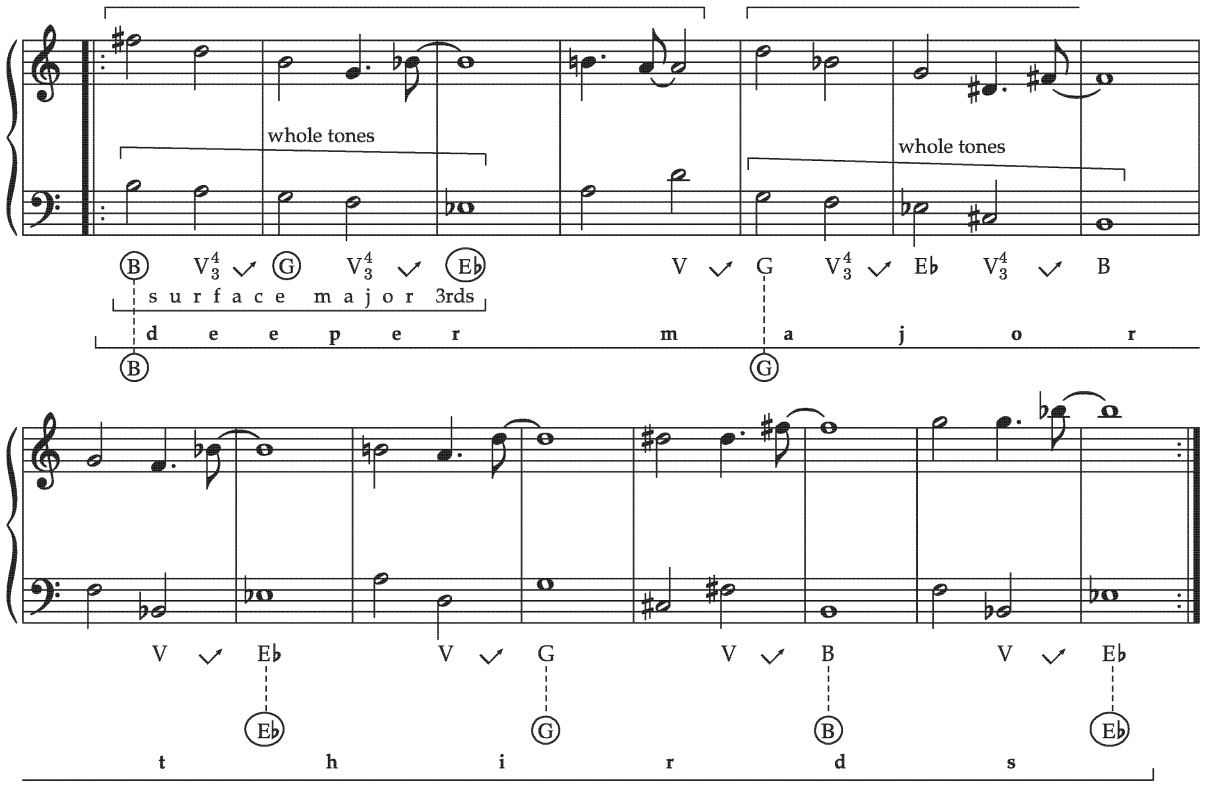
A.



B. Division of the Octave by Minor Third



C. Coltrane, "Giant Steps"



Example 31.2B ascends by minor thirds: C major (I)–E♭ major (♭III)–F♯ major (♯IV)–A major (VI)–C major (I). Given the progression's consistent transposition and sequential behavior, we call it a **sequential progression**. The sequential progression is symmetrical because it ascends by minor thirds. Roman numerals are not helpful in Example 31.2, because labels such as "♯IV" and "♭IV" reveal nothing about the interdependence within the progression. Each part of the progression is like a spoke on a wheel, supporting the final shape yet nearly meaningless when examined separately.

John Coltrane's piece "Giant Steps," from the legendary 1960 album by the same title, is a model for major-third divisions of the octave (Example 31.2C). In fact, asymmetrical and symmetrical divisions of the octave occur simultaneously at different levels. The first half of the tune (mm. 1–7) is characterized by falling motion: major and minor thirds outline major seventh chords, first on G and then on E♭. The supporting chord changes on each downbeat also fall, but symmetrically by major thirds, traversing the octave with the following cycle in mm 1–3: B–G–E♭. After a transitional ii–V motion (m. 4) the pattern is repeated down a major third (mm. 5–8): G–E♭–B.

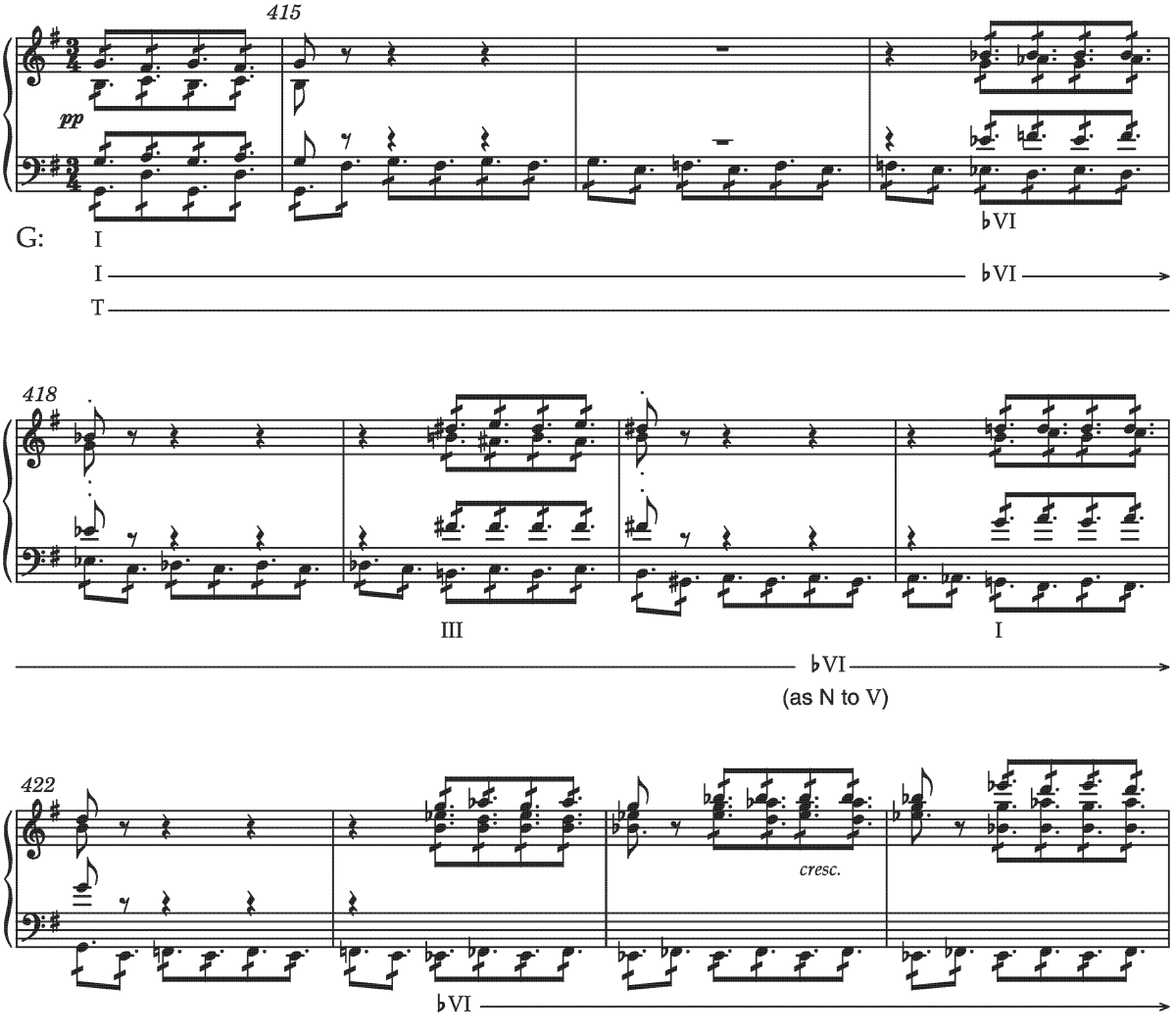
The second half of the tune (mm. 8–15) rises by major thirds, balancing the previous falling-major-third gestures: the ii–V–I motions lead from E♭ (m. 9) to G (m. 11) and (m. 13), returning to E♭.

Finally, each applied V^7 chord in mm. 1–7 appears in second inversion. As we know, such four-three chords create a stepwise line, but in this case the steps are all major seconds. By using this specific progression and inversional pattern, Coltrane has created yet another level and type of intervallic symmetry to "Giant Steps," a title that one can now see is particularly appropriate.

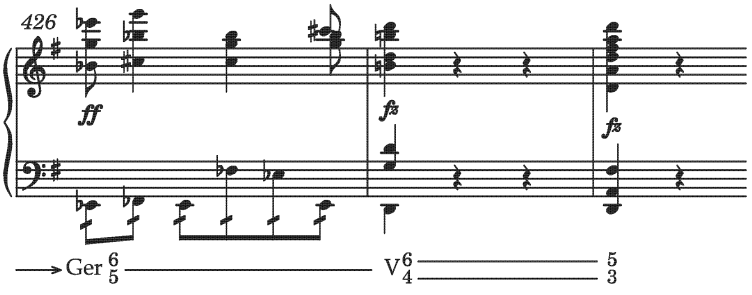
When you encounter these kinds of progressions, do not focus solely on the roman numeral analysis but look instead for a larger pattern: Bracket sequential progressions, label the interval of transposition, and try to determine whether the chords prolong an underlying harmony or whether they progress to a new harmony.

Composers will not always use sequential progressions at deep structural levels. Example 31.3 contains a sequential progression that prolongs a surface harmony within a larger asymmetrical tonal progression. This passage is sequential and contains an ambiguous descending major-third sequential progression. One may interpret the descending major thirds either as prolonging the tonic (**I**–[♭VI–III♯]–**I**–♭VI–V–I) or the pre-dominant (I–♭**VI**–[III♯–I]–♭**VI**–V–I). Given that the sequence ends on ♭VI, the latter interpretation is more convincing.

EXAMPLE 31.3 Schubert, String Quartet no. 14 in G major, D. 887, *Allegro molto moderato*



Continued

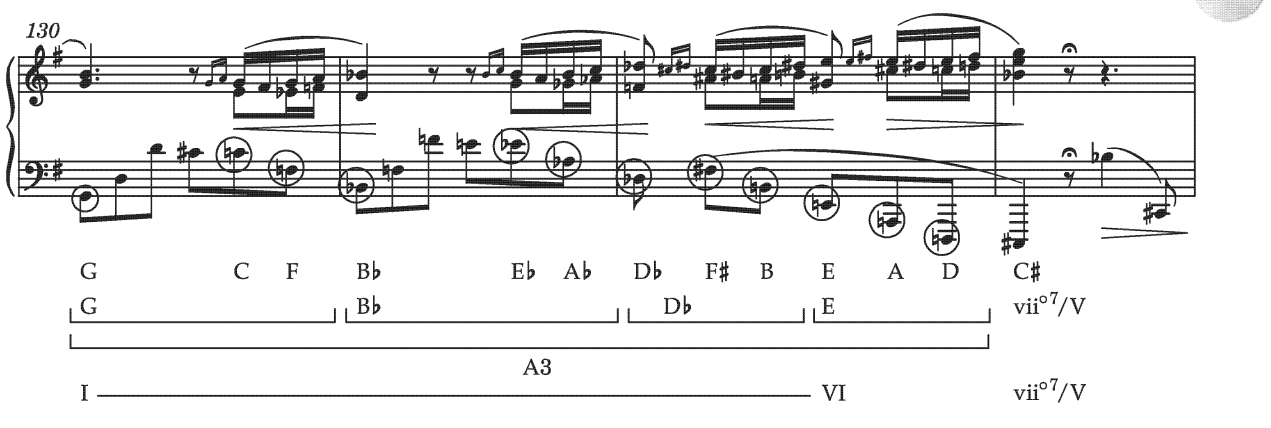


The Chopin nocturne in Example 31.4 contains a more complexly crafted sequential progression. You may have heard the sequential pattern unfolding in one of two ways.

- If you focused on the larger musical gesture, you probably discovered an ascending m3 sequential progression that occurred on metrically accented beats and partitioned the octave.
- If you focused on the smaller musical gesture, you probably found a chromatic D2 (−P5/+P4) sequence (see the circled pitches on the score).

You may recall that a complete statement of a 12-chord chromatic D2 sequence would require six repetitions of two-chord units (refer to Example 30.5). To avoid this sequential stasis, Chopin has cleverly grouped the sequence into three-chord units in mm. 130–131. In m. 132 the harmonic rhythm accelerates when Chopin includes a six-chord unit. As the acceleration intensifies the drama, the listener expects the inevitable arrival on the tonic, G major. Chopin, however, derails the progression by the completely unexpected return of motion to the dominant through the vii^{o7}/V. The effect is heightened by the following silence. Therefore, this nocturne contains a particularly artistic juxtaposition of two sequences: A D2 sequence metrically unfolds in a manner that reveals a more global ascending m3 sequential progression.

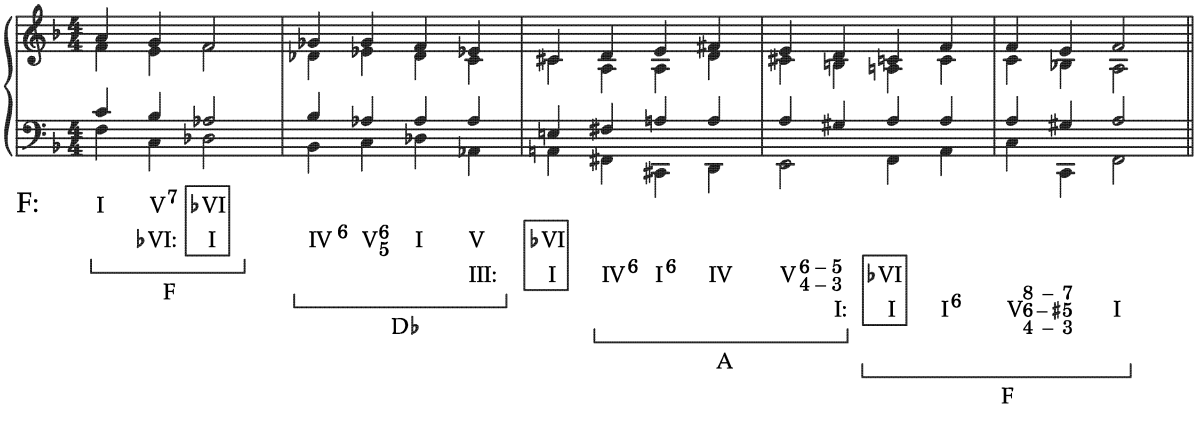
EXAMPLE 31.4 Chopin, Nocturne in G major, op. 37, no. 2, Bl 127



Nonsequential Progressions and Equal Divisions of the Octave

Example 31.5 demonstrates that equal divisions of the octave also occur in progressions that are not sequential. Notice that each tonicized area contains a different harmonic progression. Such progressions often occur over large spans of music, with intervening tonicizations of independent musical sections. Again, when analyzing such passages, you will need to interpret the tonal structure both within each section and between sections in order to see the deeper-level progression.

EXAMPLE 31.5 Nonsequential Progression That Divides the Octave in Major Thirds



A series of falling major thirds divides the octave into three segments. The brief tonicization of each segment disrupts our sense of tonal orientation. D♭ major is easily accessed through mixture when ♭VI functions as the tonic in m. 1. Similarly, both the tonicization of A major and the return to F major are secured when ♭VI of the preceding key functions as the tonic.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
31.1–31.2

ANALYSIS

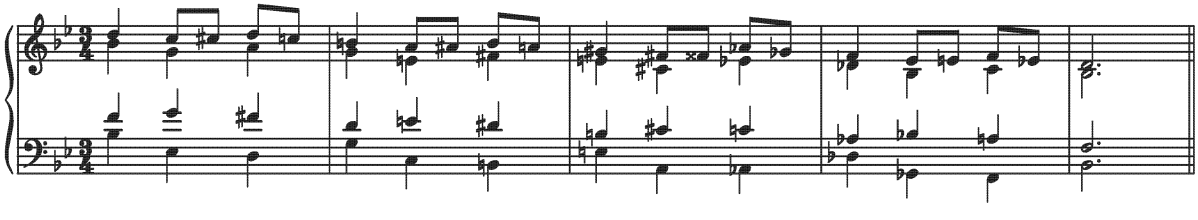
31.1 Sequential Progressions That Symmetrically Divide the Octave

Analyze the following sequential progressions, which divide the octave symmetrically into major and minor thirds, by bracketing the transpositions of material and labeling the tonicized area with key names (e.g., A major). Then label the interval of transposition between each statement of material.

A.

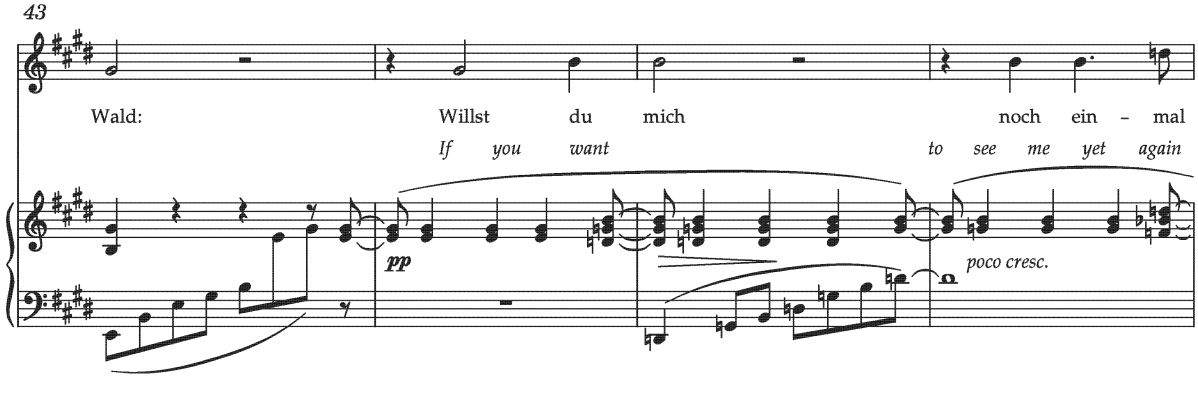
B.

C.



D. Brahms, "Immer leiser wird mein Schlummer" ("Ever More Peaceful Grows My Slumber"), op. 105, no. 2

You will encounter several $\frac{6}{4}$ chords. Some are cadential; others are consonant.



WRITING

31.2 Illustrations

Complete the following tasks on a separate sheet of manuscript paper.

A. Modulation. Compose a two-phrase period (either AA′ or AB) that modulates from D major to its relative minor.
   1. Phrase 1 must include a common-tone diminished seventh and any chromatic sequence.
   2. Phrase 2 must include an example of mixture in the original key, a clear pivot chord, and a Ger^6_5 chord in the new key.

B. In D major, accomplish the following in approximately 10 to 12 chords:
   1. Establish D major.
   2. Employing the enharmonic relation $\text{Ger}^6_5 = \text{V}^7$, tonicize ♭II (E♭) in D major.
   3. Return to D using the Neapolitan as pre-dominant.
   4. Once back in D, employ any fully chromatic sequence that cadences on the dominant.

C. Beginning in any major key, write two sequential progressions that divide the octave into major thirds, and tonicize each of those thirds.
   1. In the first progression, the pivot chords must be either an enharmonic diminished seventh chord or an enharmonic $\text{Ger}^6_5 = \text{V}^7$.
   2. In the second progression, use any of the chromatic sequences in a transitional capacity to move from one major-third-related key to another.

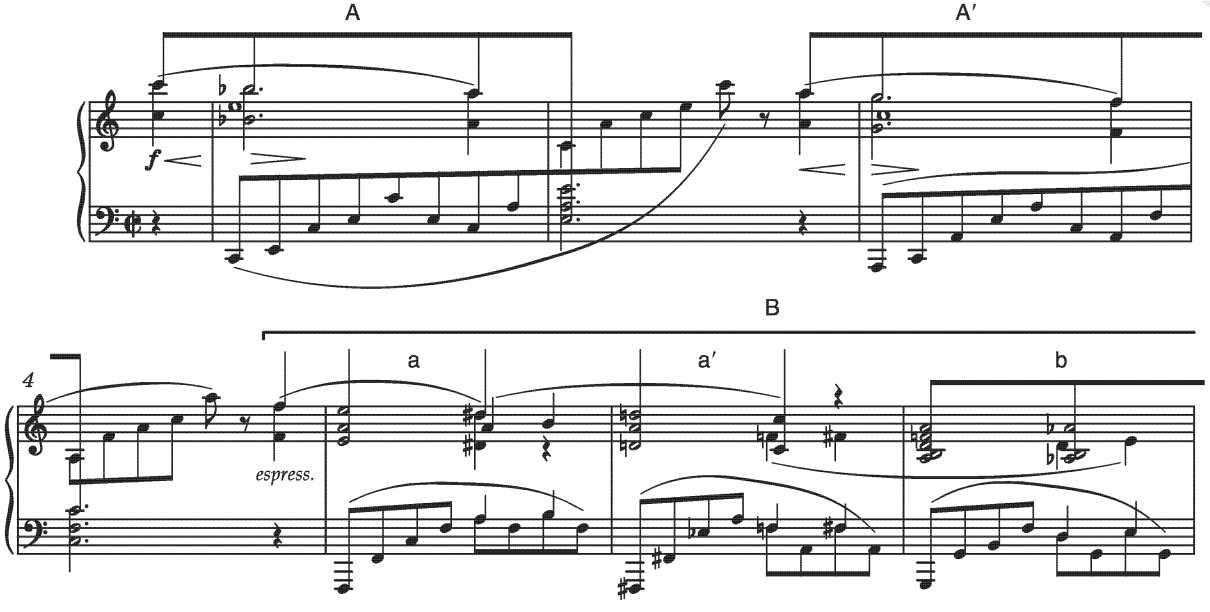
The Intervallic Cell

Mixture and the structuring of passages based on symmetry are two of the three processes that create ambiguity and that underlie much late-nineteenth- and early-twentieth-century music. The third process involves a subtle yet unmistakable shift from easily singable, periodic melodies to more-abstract collections of pitches that are defined by their intervallic structure and contour rather than by their melodic design. These malleable and motivic structures are called **intervallic cells**, or just **cells**.

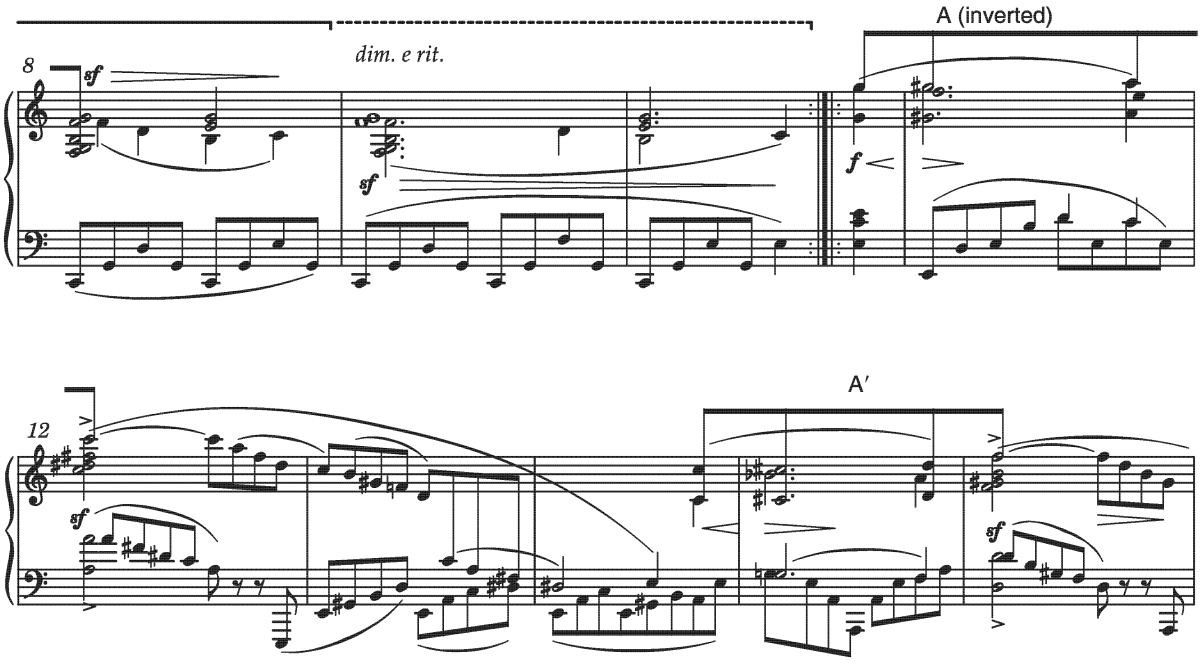
Cells can easily be developed in both the melodic and the harmonic domains, and there is a close relationship between musical events that unfold in time (melodies, which occupy the horizontal domain) and events that unfold in space (harmonies, which occupy the vertical domain). Such an emphasis on the intervallic aspect of music was a central focus of composers writing music between 1900 and 1920.

As the nineteenth century unfolded, melodic cells became more common because of their capacity for diverse harmonizations and because of their potential ambiguity. Like motives, cells appear early in a composition and are developed and transformed at various levels of the musical structure.* Such transformations include *transposition, inversion* (reversing the contour of each interval of the cell), *interpolation* (adding pitch elements between some or all of the members of the cell), *rhythmic diminution* (shortening the rhythmic value of members of the cell), and *rhythmic augmentation* (lengthening the rhythmic value of members of the cell).

EXAMPLE 31.6 Brahms, Intermezzo in A minor, op. 118, no. 1



*See Appendix 3 for a detailed discussion of motives.



Listen to Example 31.6. It initially appears that much of Brahms's piece is composed of a descending three-note cell (C^6–$B\flat^5$–A^5). This cell is transposed down in thirds in mm. 2–3 (A^5–G^5–F^5) and mm. 4–5 (F^5–E^5–$D\sharp^5$). After the double bar (m. 10), the cell reverses direction and ascends chromatically (G^5–$G\sharp^5$–A^5). This contour inversion is enhanced by the descending broken-chord figure in the bass, which balances the opening ascending figure. Note that the cell appears to be longer after the double bar: The chromatic fragment is followed by a leap to C^6. The added length is confirmed in mm. 14–16, in which a chromatic fragment is followed by a leap (C^5–$C\sharp^5$–D^5–F^5).

At the beginning of the piece, as the right hand takes over the broken-chord figure in m. 2, the left hand attacks octave Es on the downbeat. The decrescendo that occurs on the downbeat of m. 1 allows this octave to be heard above the broken-chord figure. Brahms's application of the pedal on m. 1, beat 2^1_2, and the accent on the left-hand octave at m. 2 reinforce this interpretation. Played this way, the left-hand E^4 is heard as a continuation of the right-hand cell C^6–$B\flat^5$–A^5, making the opening cell a four-note figure, rather than a three-note figure that is lengthened to four notes in the second half of the piece. Example 31.7 shows these figures.

EXAMPLE 31.7

Analytical Interlude: Chopin, Prelude, op. 28, no. 2

EXAMPLE 31.8 Chopin, Prelude, op. 28, no. 2

Let's now analyze a short prelude by Chopin that incorporates intervallic cells. Listen to Example 31.8 with the following issues in mind.

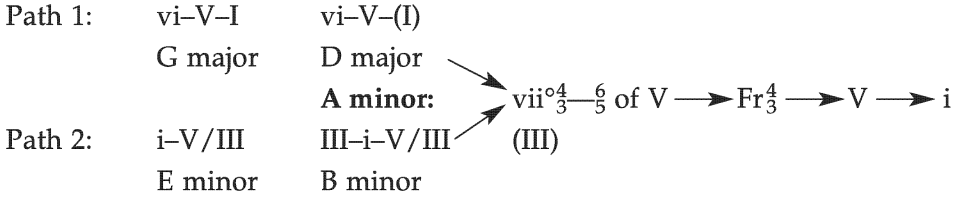
1. Is this piece in a key? If so, which one or ones?
2. Is there an underlying harmonic progression? If so, what is it?
3. Is there a tune? If so, compare it to tunes we have encountered before.
4. Discuss the structure of the accompanimental figure that underlies the entire piece.

The prelude begins ominously in E minor but ends clearly in A minor. We may immediately wonder if this piece is double tonal (in both E minor and A minor) or progressive (moving from E minor to A minor). Or is it merely an off-tonic piece that begins on minor v and moves to the tonic, A minor? We must seek answers through analysis.

The first phrase (mm. 1–6) moves from E minor to G major (i to III in E minor). But could E minor simply function as vi in G major? Because E minor is not strongly established as a tonal area and because the progression works well in G major (vi–V–I), the prelude might begin off-tonic. The restatement of the opening tune abruptly begins in B minor. Given its relation to the opening, the listener accordingly anticipates that B minor will yield to D major, just as E minor led to G major. However, only the melody confirms our expectations. The left hand continues to repeat the bass note A^2 (mm. 9–12), which is sustained through a half-diminished seventh chord that is transformed into a fully diminished seventh chord (D♯–F♯–A–C) until it falls to an $F♯^2$ in m. 13. In m. 14, when $F♯^2$ yields to $F♮^2$, the Fr^4_3 chord (F–A–B–D♯) foreshadows the eventual resolution to A minor.

We must base our overall structural interpretation on how we view the first phrase and its modified repetition up a perfect fifth. In Example 31.9, path 1 illustrates the goal-oriented tonal progression G major–D major–A minor, in which the cadence of each phrase is considered to be more important than the opening harmony. This interpretation suggests that two large-scale fifth motions propel the music toward the tonal goal, A minor. Path 2 illustrates the progression E minor–B minor–A minor, in which the opening harmonies take precedence over the cadential harmonies. In this case, we might decide that the piece contains a large-scale modal shift from the minor to the major dominant. Neither interpretation is particularly revealing. All we know is that the large-scale progression is atypical, but we understand little about what motivates this progression.

EXAMPLE 31.9



Let's look to the melodic domain for more answers. The opening right-hand melody is curiously disjunct, built of a three-note segment (E^4–B^3–D^4) in mm. 3–4, which is followed by a modified repetition (D^4–A^3–B^3) (mm. 5–6). Because this melodic figure consists of only three notes, is repeated (with slight changes) down a major second, and appears consistently throughout the remainder of the piece, it can be said to function as a melodic cell.

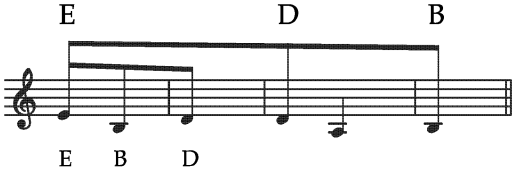
While melodic contours are defined hierarchically with terms like *neighbor* and *passing* that render certain tones subordinate to others, ambiguous cells are often defined by their intervallic content. For example, the opening two-measure cell of Chopin's prelude comprises a falling fourth

and rising third, with the result that the first and third pitches are a major second apart. (Therefore, the perfect fourth contains a second within it.) Given that the intervals of the repetition recur, we can establish a close connection between the cell's model and its copies.

Note, as in Example 31.10, that a copy need not be exact for it to be considered a melodic cell. If we compare E–B–D to D–A–B, we see that the position of the second has changed within. The overall intervallic content, however—a fourth, a third, and a second—remains constant. We can easily relate the two statements by simply saying that a small skip or step follows a larger leap.

If we look at the pitches that are strongly articulated at phrase beginnings and endings, we see that E^4 falls to D^4, which in turn falls to B^3. This expanded statement of the initial cell now occupies almost half of the prelude. Example 31.10 illustrates how the two statements of the cell in mm. 3–6 combine to make one super cell at a deeper level.

EXAMPLE 31.10



For further influence of the melodic cell, let's examine the left-hand ostinato that begins the piece. It comprises two voices. The lowest voice, which leaps a tenth (E^2–G^3), is counterpointed against a moving voice (B^2–$A\sharp^2$–B^2–G^2). It seems that Chopin is investing the moving voice with the generative potential of the intervallic cell, because it is composed of a small step (B^2–$A\sharp^2$) and a larger interval (B^2–G^2). Yet another manifestation of the cell, this time harmonic, appears in the bass in mm. 1–6: E^2–D^2–G^2 spans a perfect fourth (D^2–G^2) and contains a second (D^2–E^2) within the fourth. In fact, recognition of the existence of the cell helps to explain the deep-level parallel octaves (E–D) that occur between the outer voices, which are especially strange given that Chopin's counterpoint is impeccable and that such obvious voice-leading errors would never escape his perceptive ears and eyes.

Let's continue this method of hearing the cell at ever-deeper levels of the musical structure. The melodic pattern is restated up an octave, on B (B^4–$F\sharp^4$–A^4) in mm. 8–9; the same expansion of those pitches also occurs over mm. 8–11. The anticipated arrival on D is derailed at the $F\sharp^4$, and the progression moves instead toward A minor. Thus far, the structural melodic units are the opening E^4 and the highly marked $F\sharp^4$: E^4–D^4–B^3, B^3–A^3–$F\sharp^4$. The next four statements of the melodic cell are accompanied by a traditional harmonic progression in which Fr^4_3 moves to V and then resolves to i. The beginning and ending points of these statements both occur on A: A^4 in m. 14 and A^3 in m. 23. The overall beginning and ending points (**E–F♯** and **A**) combine to create a final statement of the cell, one that lies at the deepest structural level of melody.

In addition to the connection we have drawn between different functions of the cell across Chopin's prelude, we also may consider extramusical factors in

our analysis. For example, the inner line of the left-hand ostinato clearly invokes the opening portion of the well-known religious chant "Dies irae" (Example 31.11). The hymn, which appears in Berlioz's *Symphonie fantastique*, written around the same time as Chopin's prelude, is part of the Mass for the Dead, and its use here is particularly poignant, given that at the time of composing these preludes Chopin was sick with tuberculosis, a disease that eventually killed him.

EXAMPLE 31.11

A.

B.

Dies irae, dies illa (Day of wrath, day of doom)

Let's ask two more questions before leaving this piece. Why is there harmonic ambiguity between relative minor and major modes, and why is the second phrase transposed up a perfect fifth? If we extend our analysis to consider that this is but one of a set of 24 preludes, the large-scale tonal plan reveals that each of the 12 major and minor pieces is connected by a pattern. The preludes are paired: A major-key piece is followed by one in the relative minor. The pattern continues by ascending a fifth through each of the keys (e.g., **C**/a, **G**/e, **D**/b). Notice that this pattern corresponds to both of our harmonic interpretations of the A-minor prelude, the second of the set. The opening is harmonically ambiguous because of the juxtaposition of the relative minor and major modes (e/G), which are repeated up a fifth (b/D). Might Chopin be giving the listener a glimpse of the harmonic model that will unfold over the next 22 pieces?

This analysis enables us to see that a short, three-note cell influences both surface and deeper-level melodic and harmonic events in this piece. Most important, exploring the generative role of the intervallic cell provides us with insight into a compositional process that transcends roman numeral analysis.

Analytical Interlude: Wagner, Tristan und Isolde, Prelude

We will now examine the Prelude to Wagner's opera, *Tristan und Isolde* (Example 31.12).

EXAMPLE 31.12 Wagner, *Tristan und Isolde,* Prelude

35
f
dim.
p
sotto
p
p
belebt
belebt
40
Belebend.
sf
cresc.
molto cresc.
rallent.
ff
45
a tempo
zart
dim.
p
dim.
p cresc.
sf
p
51
sf
sf
p cresc.
f
dim.
p cresc.
56
f
61
più f
ff
meno f
mf
f
espress.

Continued

65
sempre più f
f
f
f
68
cresc.
f
molto cresc.
71
più f
73
ff
76
80
più f
ff
espress.

This brooding, enigmatic and intensely romantic prelude introduces a work that many believe to be the single most important musical impetus to help launch the twentieth century. In fact, it is on the prelude's first chord that much of the analytical energy over the last 150 years has been expended. The heart of the analytical quandary rests on a single question: distinguishing chord tones from embellishing tones. That is, after the initial leap of a sixth and chromatic descent, are the components of the chord that appear in m.2 (spelled up from the bass as F–B–D♯–G♯) all chordal members, or is the G♯ an embellishing tone that resolves to A? If A were a chord tone, the progression would consist of either a French augmented sixth chord resolving to V in m. 3,

or an altered V^7 (Fr $\frac{4}{3}$ of V) of E resolving to V (B–D♯–F♮–A). If we were to continue manipulating the sonority, we would discover that many interpretations are possible. Rather than continue with chordal labeling, let's dig into the piece to see if Wagner presents hints that might recommend one analysis over another.

The opening of the work (mm. 1–17) is filled with descending and complementary ascending chromatic lines, abrupt stops and restarts, two- or three-measure subphrases that close on what sound like dominant functions and an overall feeling of harmonic and melodic sequence. These are not unimportant observations in spite of the fact that they might be obvious. Remember to begin an analysis with what you *hear*. Let us examine each of these observations in turn and see where they lead us.

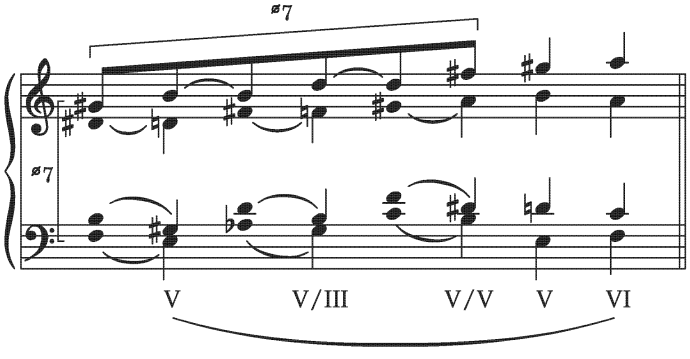
An initial ascending leap of a minor sixth is followed by a stepwise chromatic descent of a minor third from F to D. By itself, this gesture is tonally ambiguous: Are we in F major (with E as a passing tone) or A minor (with F as a neighbor to E) or even C major? Midway through the chromatic descent the upper voice begins its chromatic ascent from G♯, its minor-third rise balancing the previous minor-third descent in the alto voice. Because we hear this chromatic line in various settings throughout the composition, we call it a cell. And while many of the harmonic progressions in this work are traditional, just as many, if not more, are perplexing; acknowledging the role of a melodic cell not only helps to explain the problematic harmonies as by-products of cell statements, but it also helps us to at least sidestep our initial problem of whether G♯ or A is a chordal member—they are both members of the cell. In fact, it is almost as if the tenuous vertical structure belongs to and is determined by the unfolding of the cell. Even the bass's descent from F to E seems motivated by the opening chromatic descent in the alto which begins on these very pitches; the bass statement clarifies for the first time that F is an upper neighbor to E, harmonized as an augmented sixth to dominant progression.

The tenor voice is the only part with which we have not grappled. Like the upper voices, it moves by minor third, from B to G♯. In fact, this third mirrors precisely the soprano's third G♯ to B. The resulting voice exchange reveals not only the importance of the chromatic minor-third motive, but also that the initial harmony, the half-diminished sonority, is perhaps the "chord" and that G♯, rather than A, is the true chord tone.

There is no resolution to A minor, the key implied in mm. 2–3. Rather, a lengthy pause is followed by a transposition up a minor third of the opening idea, the boundary interval of the initial chromatic cell. Once again, the phrase closes on the dominant, this time in C major. In fact, writers have pointed out that this Prelude and even the entire first act turn on the conflict between—and interaction of—the keys of A minor and C major. We will see this occur throughout the introduction. Wagner once again transposes the phrase up a third, this time implying the key of E. Overall, an arpeggiation of an underlying A-minor triad occurs in mm. 1–11: A–C–E (i–III–V). Octave transfer and fragmentation of the cell occupy mm. 12–15, at which point the cell continues to rise by yet another minor third, from F♯ to A, leading to the first tonal arrival and climax. Yet the arrival is tenuous given that the expected tonic (A minor) is circumvented by a deceptive progression to VI: Once again, the E–F half-step motive—originally introduced by solo winds and transferred to the bass—gains stature as it appears as the generating root.

If we stand back and detail the overall progress of the soprano melody, we notice two important things. First, the soprano line begins on G♯, ascends through a series of thirds, searching, as it were, for a home; it moves to B, then D and F♯. Then, after overshooting its mark, the tune lands on A (m. 17). One might point to this restless line as one of the sources that creates the yearning affect in mm. 1–17 and why the arrival on A in m. 17 is so powerful: It is the point at which the longing, opening G♯ is resolved. Second, the "stepping-stones" in the melody's chromatic climb to A outline a half-diminished seventh chord—G♯–B–D–F♯—the same type of sonority that opens the piece, a transposition of the infamous "Tristan chord." Example 31.13 is a representation of these events.

EXAMPLE 31.13



The next section begins with a tonicized C major (m. 18). A new, more diatonic tune is introduced in a correspondingly diatonic setting. Yet, one could draw parallels between the two apparently disparate tunes by examining their contours: The descending minor-seventh leap from C to D balances the opening tune's ascent of a sixth and the ascending third C–D–E balances the opening tune's descending third, F–E–D♯–D, resulting in an arch effect (contour of opening tune: ^; contour of m. 18 tune: ˅). One might also relate the falling minor seventh with opening rising seventh that is broken into minor and major thirds that create the half-diminished seventh chord.

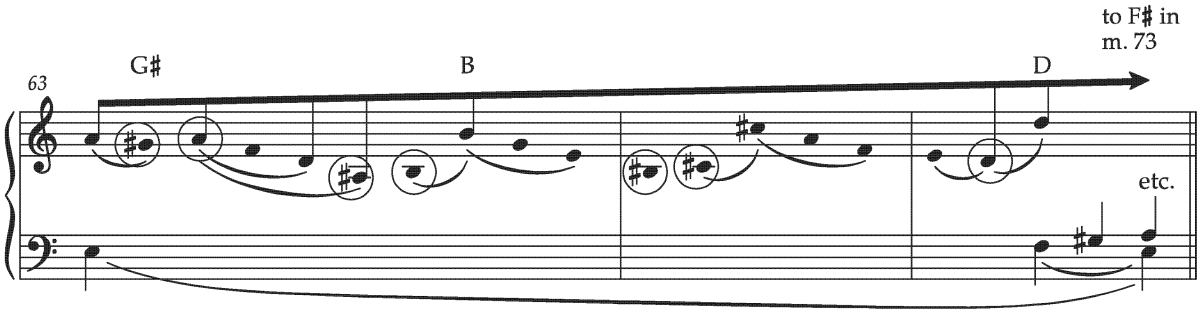
From mm. 20–24 Wagner begins a chromatic drive that leads to a cadence on A major. We understand the opening C major in m. 18 and the subsequent tonicizations of D minor (mm. 20–21) and B major (m. 23) as part of a larger motion controlled by A major: III–iv–V/V–V–I. Once again, allusions to the opening cell occur. For example, within the tonicization of D minor in mm. 21–22 the soprano voice contains the notes F–E–E♭–D–C♯, a reharmonization of the chromatic descent that opens the piece.

The following phrase, beginning in m. 25, is a transposed restatement of the phrase that began in m. 18 with C♯ falling a minor seventh to D♯. This and the preceding phrase are linked by the chromatic ascent from D♯ in m. 23, which rises toward C♯, the very pitches that open the phrase in m. 25. The harmony in this phrase gives the impression of a descending-fifths progression with its combination of bass and harmony: D♯–G♯–C♯–F♯–B.

Two additional observations must suffice for this large section that closes in m. 63. One might be tempted to consider that a new formal section begins in m. 43 given the new tempo marking, the key change, and the double bar. This might be a mistake, however, given the hidden, yet quite literal restatement (up one octave) of the material we heard beginning in m. 25. Further, the harmony that precedes the *Belebend* marking and that which occurs after the double bar is the same diminished seventh chord with a clear voice exchange in the outer voices. In fact, one might consider mm. 25–63 a single large section given that the material beginning in m. 49 is sequential, intensifying the arrival on the dominant that is secured in m. 63. This ascending 5–6 sequence (in the bass) begins on D♯ in m. 49 and rises chromatically to C♯ in m. 56, outlining once again the same pitches of the minor seventh that has permeated this section.

The arrival on the dominant of A in m. 63 begins an extended climactic section that reaches its high point in m. 83. One could divide this twenty-measure section into two ten-measure phrases; the first prolongs the dominant of A, the second begins on a deceptive cadence on F major, at which point the prevailing sharps of mm. 1–74 are replaced by predominantly flats in preparation for the Prelude's close on the dominant of C minor. Writers have referred to this new tune, or, when discussing motives and tunes in Wagner's music *Leitmotif* ("leading motive"), that begins in m. 62 as the "deliverance by death" motive, characterized by a falling suspension and balancing ascending appoggiatura that closes the motive. Notice how the arpeggiated central part of the tune falls from A to B, an instance of the minor seventh that characterizes the second motive from m. 18. Further, G♯—the consonant arrival in m. 63—is followed by a rapid scalar ascent to A, similar to the large-scale ascent from the Prelude's opening G♯ to the A in m. 17. Could there be some association with the opening gesture, which we already know helped to generate the motive in m. 17? In fact, G♯ does move in m. 63 to what sounds like a passing A in the second half of that measure, and A passes on to B in m. 64 where the pattern restarts. And A falls a seventh to B rather than rises a second, thus projecting another instance of the descending-seventh motive. Further, B is then extended in m. 64 followed in m. 65 by C♯ and by D in m. 66. At this point, the opening tune unfolds in the bass but is cut short in m. 71. The tune continues in the upper voice in m. 73, where it concludes on ♭VI in m. 74, exactly as it did in mm. 1–17. Yet, recall that the section began on E in m. 63, with the tune—in spite of its octave transfers—slowly rising from G♯ to B to D; consequently, the arrival on F♯ in m. 73 continues the thirds: *the very thirds and subsequent half-diminished seventh chord that we encountered in mm. 1-17.* And, a glance at the subordinate notes in this half-diminished seventh chord reveals that they function as passing tones connecting the chordal thirds: **G♯**–A–A♯–**B,** **B**–B♯–C♯–**D**–D–D♯–E–E♯–**F♯**. This hidden note-for-note restatement of the tune that occupies mm. 1–17 might be referred to as a **developing variation** of the opening tune. And, the falling sevenths that help to obscure the tune are derived from those that occur in mm. 18 and following. A graphic summary of this transformation follows.

EXAMPLE 31.14



Before we take leave of Example 31.12, we mentioned earlier that from m. 74 forward, the material is cast in flats in order to prepare for the first scene in C minor. Notice that the climax that takes place in m. 83 occurs on the following sonority (spelled from the bass up): F–C♭–E♭–A♭, *the very spacing and enharmonic spelling of the opening Tristan chord, F–B–D♯–G♯*. In this context it functions as $ii^{\circ 6}_{5}$ in C minor. Notice also the restatement of the opening material is redirected in m. 94 toward C minor, which leads toward the close of the work on its dominant. Finally, the closing bass gesture contains a final melodic statement of the Tristan chord: A♭–E♭–B–F. Wagner's Prelude to *Tristan und Isolde*, whose depths we have only started to plumb, is a study in the potential of double tonality, cell structure, ambiguity, modal mixture, and sequence. Further, given that the crucial "Tristan chord" is transformed and appears in various guises (both melodically and harmonically) reveals the malleability of musical cells. Such "developing variation" was called by Arnold Schoenberg (some fifty years later) the "unity of musical space," a conception of music in which both the horizontal (or melodic) dimension of music is inextricably merged with the vertical or harmonic dimension. Schoenberg simply takes the next step and avoids a tonic completely, the result of which has been termed "atonality."

By 1880 an unprecedented explosion of radically different compositional aesthetics and styles flourished that boldly contrasted with all previous musical styles. During the preceding three centuries, for example, no matter what the stylistic changes, there were still basic points of intersection, not the least important of which was tonality. But during the closing years of the nineteenth century and the opening decade of the twentieth, a remarkable number of composers were writing highly contrasting music. In the year 1910, divergent composers such as Gustav Mahler, Maurice Ravel, Claude Debussy, Richard Strauss, Carl Nielsen, Alban Berg, Anton Webern, Sergei Rachmaninoff, Paul Hindemith, Arnold Schoenberg, Belá Bartók, Igor Stravinsky, and Alexander Scriabin were creating some of their greatest works, but each took a unique path, with far-reaching consequences that greatly influenced the rest of the twentieth century.

Yet these same composers who carved their own niches in the twentieth century owed a tremendous debt to the past and, in particular, to the harmonic techniques that we have explored in this chapter. While any extended or even cursory treatment of these composers' contributions is beyond the scope of this text, we shall examine a single short piano piece by

Alexander Scriabin, a transitional composer who bridges the tonal tradition and newly developing twentieth-century techniques. The musical materials and techniques found in Scriabin's Prelude, op. 39, no. 2, provide a summary of the trends we have explored in the previous three chapters—specifically, the notions of ambiguity, asymmetrical versus symmetrical structures, double tonality, and cells.

Analytical Interlude: Scriabin, Prelude, op. 39, no. 2

EXAMPLE 31.15 Scriabin, Prelude, op. 39, no. 2

This prelude (Example 31.15) is the most difficult work to analyze that we encounter in this book. Written in 1903, it lies midway between Scriabin's earlier compositions (ca. 1890–1900), which are in the style of Chopin, and his final works (ca. 1908–1912), which are often characterized as atonal. In its short 28 measures, the listener is flung into a sea of confusion, thrust this way and that with thwarted expectations brought about by nonstop chromatic shifts and misbehaving harmonic progressions. Listen to the piece with the following questions in mind.

1. Is this piece tonal? Why or why not? If it is in a key, what is it, and how and where is it established? Are there other important keys (either literally stated or only implied)? Do they support or undermine the main key? Do any of these keys compete with the overall tonic such that this work might be viewed as double tonal?
2. What is the form? Consider repetition of material as your main criterion.
3. Label phrases. Do they combine into periods?
4. Are there any motives or cells? If so, what are they? You should first focus on the opening musical idea and determine its length. (Composers usually invest great importance in the initial moments of a work.)
5. Are there focal points where events become either clarified or more ambiguous?

Pieces written in the nineteenth century often postpone harmonic clarity until the ends of musical units (phrases, periods, sections, or, as we saw in Chopin's Prelude in A minor, entire pieces). In Scriabin's prelude, an authentic cadence in the structural key, D major, is postponed until the final two measures of the piece. Why does Scriabin project the tonic only after going to great pains to obscure it? Could he have only frivolously tacked on the authentic cadence in a moment of wild abandon? It is likely that deliberate ambiguity is Scriabin's compositional premise and that this piece does not progress along a straight and clear path.

Both the prelude's form and harmonic motion are unusual. The material from mm. 1–12 is literally repeated and transposed down a major second in mm. 13–24. Measures 25–28 contain a cadential area in which E♭ major functions as the pre-dominant (♭II) that moves to the dominant. Why would Scriabin structure a piece in which the second half is a transposed restatement of the material from the first half?

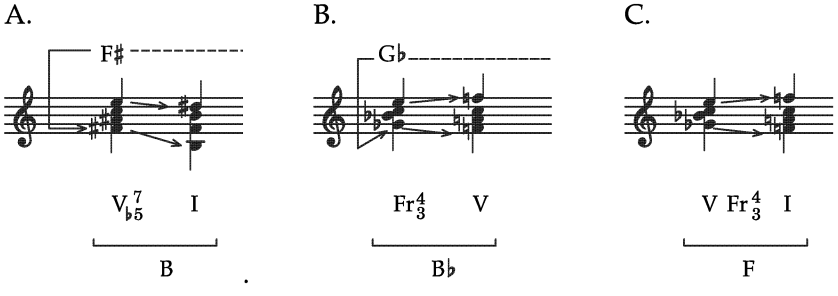
Let's analyze the harmonic structure to make sense of the form. The opening progression (mm. 1–3) is ambiguous, but it eventually moves to a dominant seventh (in D major) with a 9–8 suspension in the uppermost voice (m. 3). In m. 2, a IV^7 moves to a modified Neapolitan on E♭, which functions as a pre-dominant (♭II). (The ♭II in m. 25 also moves to the final dominant of the piece.) Scriabin is moving harmonically by fifth (V–I) and by tritone (♭II–V).

Intervallic Properties of Key Sonorities

Now let's consider the opening sonority of the piece. Spelled in thirds, the chord is F♯–A♯–C–E. Such a chromatically altered chord is an unusual way to begin a piece. However, given its ambiguity and potential to imply any number of keys, Scriabin has chosen the perfect sonority to cloud his prelude in mystery. Let's look briefly at this chord's potential to function in several keys.

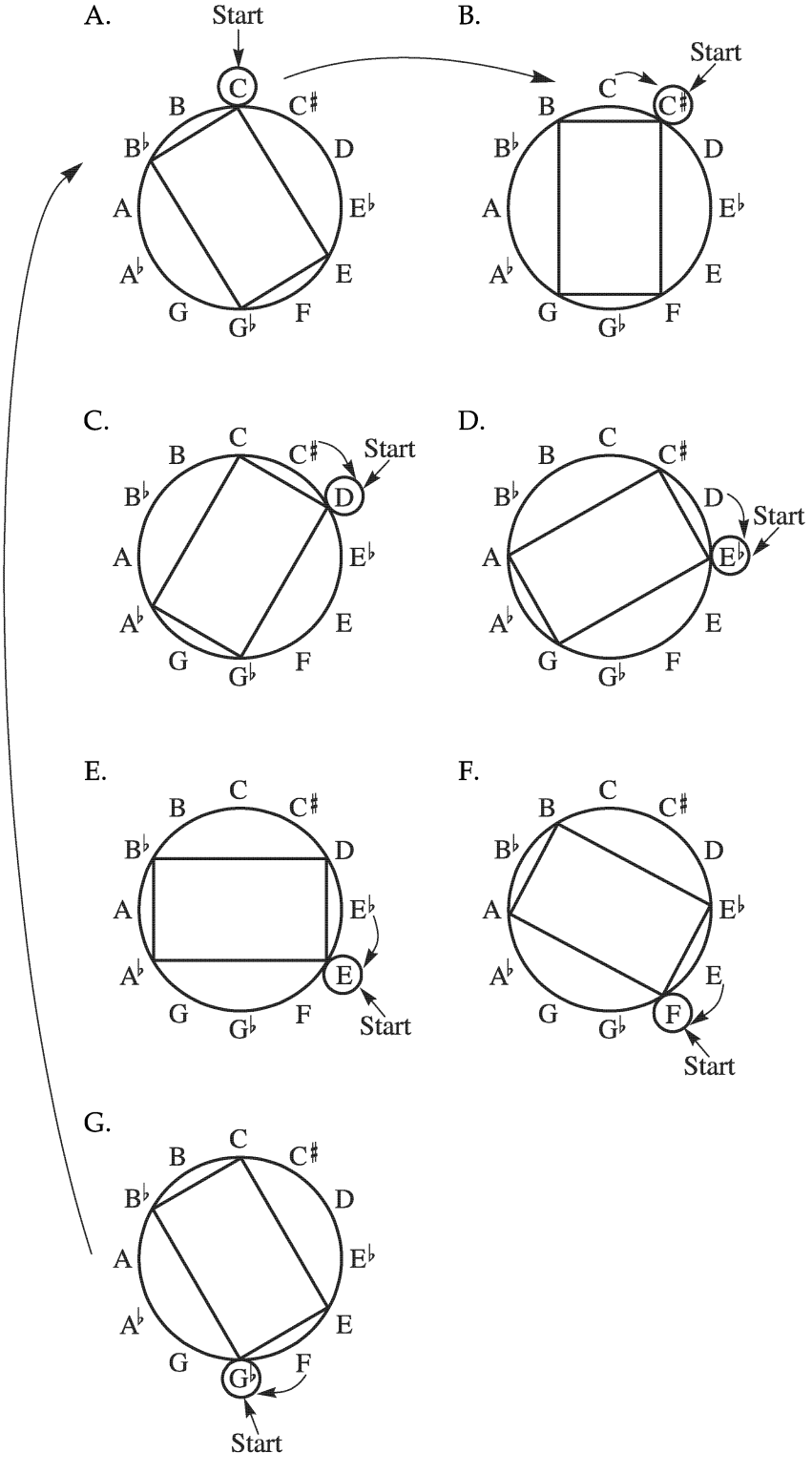
- F♯–A♯–C–E can function as an altered V^7 chord in B (major or minor). See Example 31.16A.
- F♯–A♯–C–E can be heard as a French augmented sixth chord in A♯ (major or minor) (notated, for convenience, in B♭: G♭–B♭–C–E). Its bass note, G♭, would fall by half step to F, which in turn is V of B♭. See Example 31.16B.
- F♯–A♯–C–E can also function as a FrV^4_3 in F (that is, as the altered V^7: C–E–G♭–B♭. See Example 31.16C.

EXAMPLE 31.16 Harmonic Potential of the Opening Sonority



The reason that such diverse keys as B, B♭, and F are possible tonics is this chord's symmetrical intervallic structure. The chromatic clocks in Example 31.17 plot the chord's pitches, which are connected by lines that result in a rectangle shape.

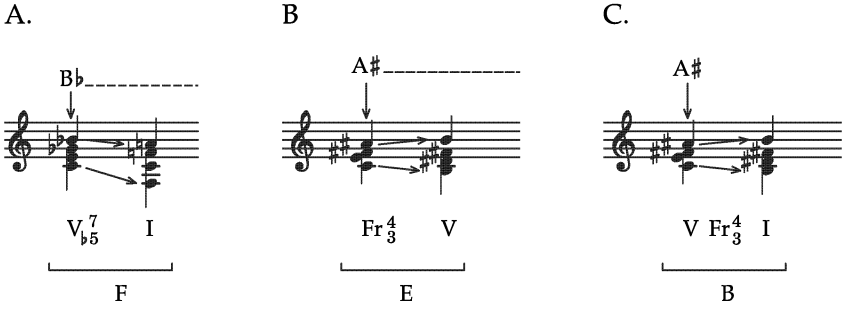
EXAMPLE 31.17



By transposing the sonority up by semitone (clockwise around the circle), we discover that all of the pitches return when we transpose the sonority at the tritone (i.e., F♯–A♯–C–E → C–E–F♯–A♯). Given that all of the pitches return, we can treat C as the bass note and derive another new set of tonal relationships, all a tritone away from the first set. For example:

- C–E–F♯–A♯ can function as an altered V^7 chord in F (major or minor) (Example 31.18A).
- C–E–F♯–A♯ can be heard as a French augmented sixth chord in E (major or minor) (Example 31.18B).
- C–E–F♯–A♯ can also function as a Fr V^4_3 in B major (that is, as the altered V^7: F♯–A♯–C–E) (Example 31.18C).

EXAMPLE 31.18



Notice that the first and third functions from each list are mirror images of one another, a tritone away. This is because when a tritone is transposed by a tritone (six semitones), the pitches are preserved. Accordingly, four of the 12 possible keys are implied by this single sonority: B♭, B, E, and F. They stem from hearing the sonority either as a PD (augmented sixth) or as a dominant (altered V^7) at two different pitch levels that lie a tritone apart.

Finally, we could imagine the chord functioning as a six-five chord with an implied root of D. This is possible, given that this would be an altered tonic triad, rather than a PD or D function, as described earlier. If the sonority were to function as an altered applied dominant of IV (with an implied root on D, a raised fifth, and a raised ninth, [D]–F♯–A♯–C–E), it would lead to a G-major chord, which, in fact, it does, in m. 2.

Notice that every pitch in the sonority is a member of the whole-tone scale that begins on C: [**C**–D–**E**–**F♯**–G♯–**A♯**]. (There are only two whole-tone tracks: one that begins on C and one that begins on C♯: [C♯–D♯–F–G–A–B].)

Compositional Processes: A Traditional View

So far, we cannot tell what the root of the initial chord is because of its inherent symmetry. We now explore the rest of the piece to determine whether Scriabin provides any hints for what the first chord is, and, if he does, whether this knowledge will help us to understand other curiosities in the piece. Let's study the harmonic progression in the first half of the piece (mm. 1–12). The dominant A^2 in m. 3 is prolonged by its upper neighbor $A♯^2/B♭^2$ until m. 10. The chromatic line $D♯^4$–E^4–$E♯^4$ in m. 4 creates an interesting effect. Traditionally, the weak second beat would contain the dissonant passing tone. But our expectations are thwarted when the lowered fifth of the dominant

harmony, E♭, spelled enharmonically as D♯[4], appears on the downbeat and the raised fifth, E♯[4], appears on the third triplet. The consonant E[4] sounds dissonant because of its location between the raised and lowered fifth.

In the bass of mm. 11–12, B♭[2] moves to C[3] through the chromatic passing tone B♮[2], in a gesture reminiscent of the chromatic ascent in m. 4. In m. 12, C[3] sounds like V of F major, and the harmony in m. 13 sounds like an altered V⁶/F that resolves to F major in m. 14. Recall that m. 13 is the point at which the opening material appears transposed down a step. Because m. 13 contains a first-inversion extension of the C-major harmony that appeared in m. 12, we can retrospectively conclude that the opening sonority of the piece is also a first-inversion chord. As the harmony in m. 13 functions as a V^6_5, so the tonic harmony in m. 1 functions as a V^6_5 that moves to IV. Consequently, we can answer our earlier question: The opening sonority is an altered D-major tonic that functions as V^6_5 of IV.

The second part of the piece is a literal transposition of the material in mm. 1–11, but a significant change occurs in m. 24, which one might have expected to correspond to m. 12. Rather than transposing the material down a step again, Scriabin moves by fifth to E♭ major (♭II). If we step back and view the harmonic motions in the piece, we discover a traditional pattern based on root motion by fifth:

form:	part 1	part 2	cadence
harmonies:	(D)–G–C–|	F–B♭–|	E♭–A–D

The underlying progression descends by step, from D major to C major (which ends the first section and begins the second section) and finally to B♭ major (the end point of the second section's repetition of the first section). Thus, the tonic moves to ♭VI, whereupon the final cadence reestablishes D major (♭II–V–I):

harmonies:	D	—	G	—	C	— |	F	—	B♭	— |	E♭	—	A	—	D
functions:	I	———	PT	———	♭VI	——	♭II	——	V	—	I				

Compositional Processes: A Radical View

This interpretation relegates much of the chromaticism to the periphery and illuminates the underlying traditional diatonic plan. However, the question of whether the chromaticism also plays a structural role remains unresolved. Before ending our explorations of this prelude, let's try a more radical approach that embraces the work's anomalies.

We can see that the opening sonority is a tonic chord (D) in first inversion with raised fifth (A♯) and an added ninth (E). Let's now consider the chord's spacing: F♯[2] occurs in the lowest register and A♯[4] in the highest, and the chord is sustained for one measure. The next sustained arrival point occurs on the F♯-major triad in first inversion in m. 5. Comparison of the opening sonority with the sonority in m. 5 reveals striking aural similarities. Scriabin emphasizes this association through the identical duration of the harmonies and by the voice exchange between F♯ and A♯. The next sustained harmony that occurs is in m. 9, where the same F♯-major chord again appears in first inversion. Now the A-major harmony appears to function as a lower neighbor to $F♯^6_3$, an interpretation that contradicts our previous, more conservative interpretation in which the bass A♯[1] was the upper neighbor to the A-major harmony.

WORKBOOK 1
31.3–31.5

The bass A♯²/B♭² rises first to C³ (m. 12) and then to E² (m. 13). We can now discover that the structural bass notes in mm. 1–13 comprise, note for note, the prelude's opening sonority, F♯–A♯–C–E. This projection of a dissonant, ambiguous, surface sonority over a considerable span is analogous to traditional motivic parallelisms. Remember that motivic parallelisms occur when a surface motive emerges in the harmonic domain and controls the unfolding musical events of a larger span of the work. (This technique has influenced many of the works we have explored in this book.) What distinguishes Scriabin's piece is the expansion of a dissonant harmonic structure rather than a diatonic, consonant harmonic structure.

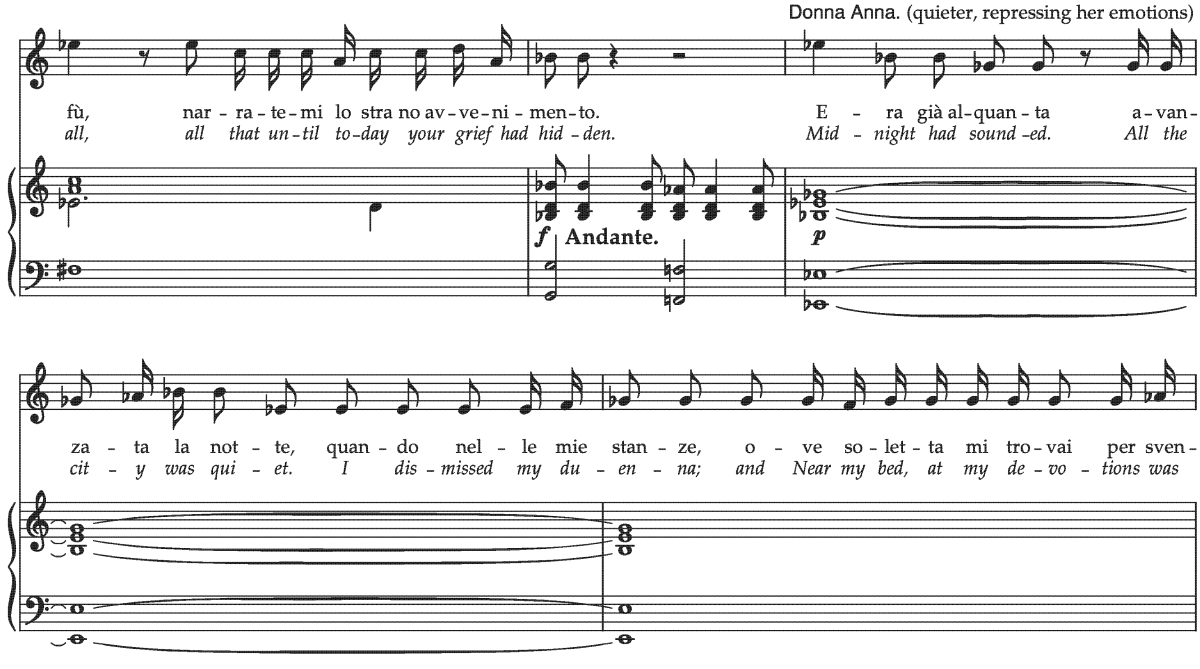
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

31.3 Nonsequential Symmetrical Progressions

Analyze the following passages. Mark the keys using letters of the alphabet; then summarize the interval used to subdivide the octave evenly.

A. Mozart, "Don Ottavio! Son morta!" from *Don Giovanni*, act 1, no. 10



tu - ra, en - trar io vi - di in un man - tel - lo av - vol - to un uom che al pri - mo i -
kneel - ing, When there ap - peared a man, his cloak a - bout him I thought him you a
stan - te a - vea pre - so per vo - i; ma ri - co - nob - bi poi, che un' in -
mo - ment And I gent - ly re - proached him; but then I saw how dread - ful - ly
Don Octavio. (agitated)
Donna Anna.
gan - no e - rail mi - o! Stel - le! se - gui - te! Ta - ci - to a me s'ap -
I was mis - tak - en. Quick - ly! Con - tin - ue! Si - lent - ly he ap -
p Andante
pres - sa, e mi vuo - le ab - brac - ciar; scio - glier mi - cer - co, ei più mi
proached me. I was dragged to my feet, pulled to him rough - ly. He tried to
stringendo il tempo
cresc.

B. Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 5 in F major, "Spring," op. 24, *Adagio molto espressivo*

Summary of Part 8

We have come to what appears to be the end of a long journey, along a road well traveled for centuries. Our journey began modestly, with no more than an introduction to the fundamental components of tonal music. We immersed ourselves in a sort of basic training that allowed us to develop the skills and to learn the concepts and terminology necessary for the journey. Soon we discovered why music is an art form: because, like any art, it must be not only perceived but also interpreted. We must examine music, as we do life itself, from various points of view. We had to make choices based on the context in which musical events took place and on our ever-growing knowledge of tonal norms. Our own interpretation might very well be quite different from someone else's.

We learned that music has depth and that this depth can be measured in levels, ranging from the surface all the way to the undergirding of an entire piece. And we discovered not only that the same principles were at work in each level but also that certain musical features, such as motives, actually provided the means to connect the various levels. For example, the surface-level chord-to-chord connections were precisely mirrored at successively deeper levels, and apparent departures from a key based on chromatic alterations or tonicizations merely turned out to be way stations—places that composers stopped at to view the harmonic terrain before returning to the main highway to continue their journey.

We learned that composers plant seeds early in a piece and that those seeds grow in various and wonderful ways. By creating a narrative or a dramatic story, composers then punctuate the piece with cadences, thwart expectations, clarify that which was ambiguous, and allow harmonic motion to be drawn out almost to a standstill or accelerated and intensified in order to create a natural ebb and flow common to all life.

We learned that theoretical concepts—whether voice-leading tendencies, compound melody, or sonata form—are drawn from musical practice, which in turn is motivated by human modes of perception. If we become aware of and develop these basic modes of perception by singing, playing, hearing, and seeing, then we have greatly deepened our understanding of what is taking place in a piece.

We learned that the tonal system and the principles it embodies are powerful enough that composers to this day continue to find it a source for developing musical ideas. Therefore, whether the piece is written by Bach or Brahms, Mozart or Rachmaninoff, Beethoven or Ennio Morricone, a consistent set of core principles is at work. With our understanding of these principles, we are now able to negotiate these pieces with considerable success.

But it turns out that our journey hasn't concluded at all and that the road, which we thought finally ended, instead forks. Take one fork and we'll enter the world of twentieth-century and twenty-first-century music, a world of wonderful new sonorities, unique expressive gestures, innovative instruments and orchestration, and the importation of non-Western traditions. We will need to listen with different ears and to learn new sets of compositional and analytic principles in order to appreciate and grapple with this music. Take the other fork, and we will have many choices, one of which is to embrace earlier music, written between 1200 and 1600.

Music allows us to experience feelings that would otherwise have lain dormant. Thus, it plays a crucial role in one's development, as it reveals who and what we are. And, just as the study of music is an ongoing process, self-knowledge takes a lifetime to acquire. We must allow music to accompany us throughout this journey.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

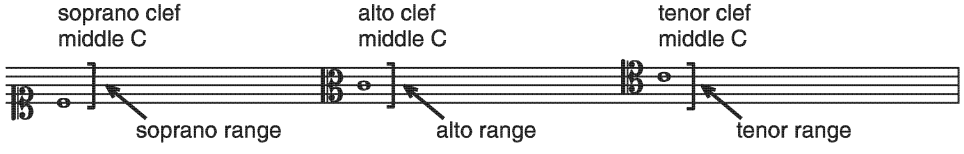
- sequential progression
- equal divisions of the octave
- intervallic cell
- whole-tone track

The Pitch Realm

Charting Musical Sound: Staff and Clef

Tonal music is often written down in order to preserve it and to ensure that its **pitches** (the musical sound generated by a vibrating body) and their placement in time—**rhythm**—receive relatively consistent performance. Such musical **scores** begin with several defining elements, including the staff and clef, which make it possible to fix pitches and define the relationships between them. The modern **staff** (plural: **staves**) contains five horizontal lines and four spaces, each of which, in conjunction with a **clef,** represents a specific pitch, thus permitting the performer to see exactly how much higher or lower a given pitch is in relation to some other pitch. The earliest clefs indicated the location of what has become middle C. Example 1A.1 shows what the C clef looks like in modern notation.

EXAMPLE 1A.1 C Clefs

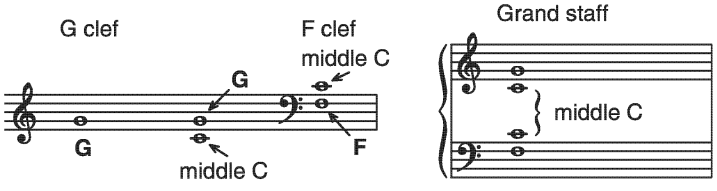


C clefs may occur on any of the five lines of the staff. Notice that the names of the sample C clefs in Example 1A.1 correspond to the names of the voice ranges, which indicate why C clefs are useful: The range of the vocal melodies written in these clefs rarely exceeds the range of the staves. Today, only two C clefs are commonly in use: the alto (in which viola music is written) and the tenor (in which some trombone, bassoon, and cello music is written).

Two other clefs came into prominence centuries after the C clefs were well established; and they represent a good compromise for notating all vocal music because they can accommodate both the bass and soprano voices at their extremes, and the alto and tenor within. The **treble** (or G clef) indicates the location of G above middle C, and the **bass** (or F clef) indicates the location of F below middle C. The G clef encircles the G staff

line, and the two dots of the F clef define the F line. These two clefs have become the most widely used in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries; it is imperative that you can read them both fluently. Bass and treble clefs often appear one above the other, in the **grand staff** (Example 1A.2).

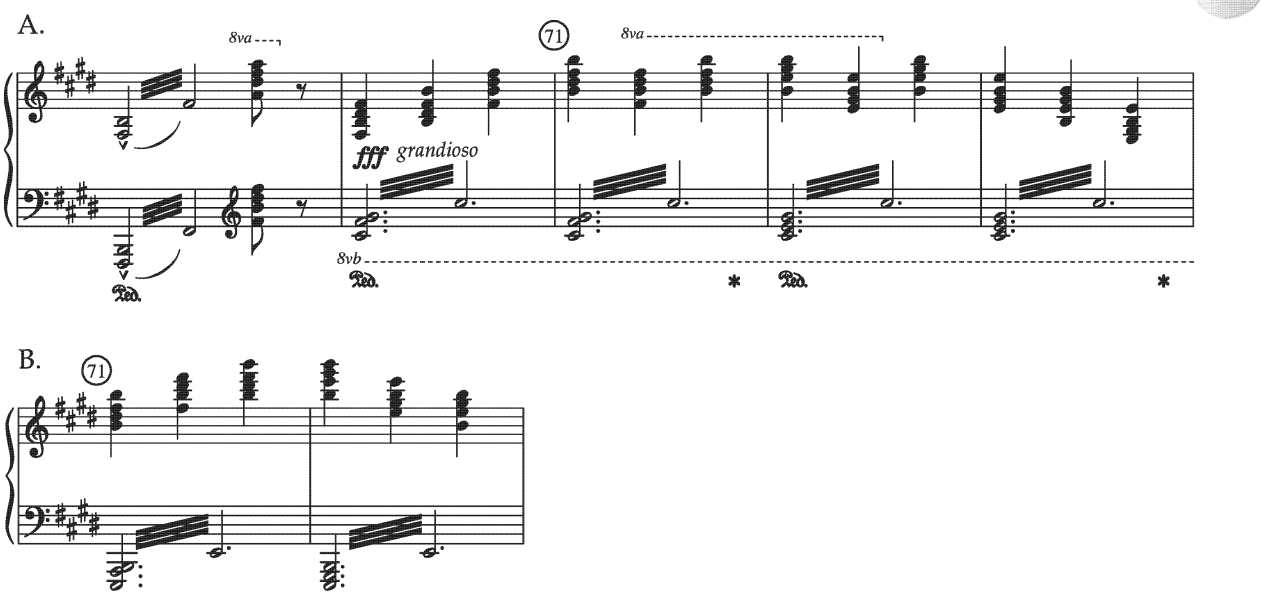
EXAMPLE 1A.2 Grand Staff



Ledger lines extend a staff in order to accommodate pitches that exceed its range. Since so many instruments and voices are now commonly written in either the bass or treble clef, ledger lines are commonplace. When composers write extended passages of music that would require a performer to navigate numerous pitches above or below the treble or bass staves, they often notate them comfortably within the staff and simply add the **octave sign** ("ottava," ***8va*** or ***8vb***), which specifies that the pitches that follow are to be performed one octave higher or one octave lower than written ("8va" above a pitch indicates performing the pitch one octave higher; "8vb" [or "8va" *below*] or "8va bassa" indicates performance one octave lower).

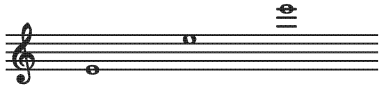
Example 1A.3A contains ottavas in both the bass and treble clefs because Liszt takes advantage of the piano's huge range, yet the use of the ottavas makes it much easier to read than the alternate version, notated without the octave signs (Example 1A.3B). In vocal music, octave indications are shown most often in the treble clef and are intended for the tenors; the "8" appended to the bottom of the treble clef indicates performance of pitches one octave lower.

EXAMPLE 1A.3 Liszt, "Sursum corda" from *Années de Pèlerinage*, Year 3



Pitch and Pitch Class

EXAMPLE 1A.4 Pitch Versus Pitch Class



In Example 1A.4, the note E appears in various locations relative to the staff: low, middle, and high. By referring to specific Es that are higher or lower than one another, we are referring to each E as a distinct **pitch**. Pitch refers to the relative highness or lowness of sound, and it allows us to specify both the name and placement of a specific E in relation to other Es. This placement, called **register**, refers to the specific pitch area in which musical activity takes place. Seated at the middle of the piano keyboard, you change register as you play the Cs above and below middle C.

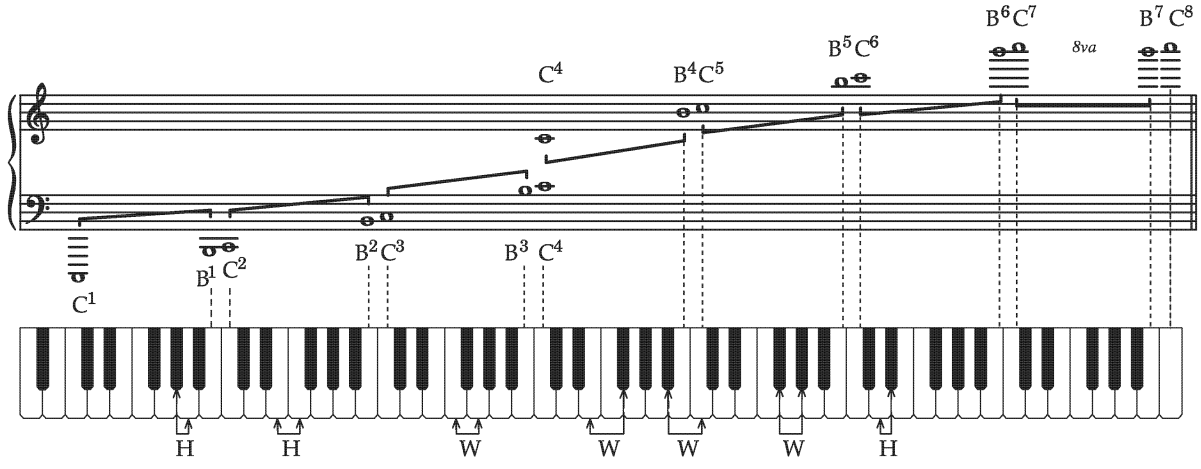
The term **pitch class** refers to all pitches with the same letter name. Pitches with the same name are separated by the distance of an **octave** (from *ottava*, or "eight"). When played together, pitches at a distance of one or more octaves sound very similar, which is why they have the same letter name. In Example 1A.4, all of the Es are represented by the pitch class E, no matter how high or low it is located in the score. Still, the registral distinctions between the various representatives of pitch class E can mark important musical moments.

The Division of Musical Space: Intervals

The distance between any two pitches is called an **interval**. Musicians have been exploring different-sized intervals for more than two millennia. They universally considered the octave to be a crucial interval, for it marks an important sonic boundary. With the octave in place, musicians divided this distance in various ways, most of which were attempts to distribute pitches rather evenly over the octave's span. Eventually, the music created by Western (European) musicians used pitches that divided the octave into seven **steps**, each of which was given its own name, corresponding to the first seven letters of the alphabet (A through G).

These steps are two different sizes, one exactly twice as large as the other. The smaller step is called a **half step** (half steps on the keyboard occur between any two adjacent keys, such as E and F or B and C). The larger step is called a **whole step**, defined as two half steps (whole steps on the keyboard occur between any two keys separated by one intervening key, such as between C and D or A and B). See Example 1A.5, which marks various half (H) and whole (W) steps on the keyboard.

EXAMPLE 1A.5 Half and Whole Steps, Musical Registers, Octave Designations, and the Keyboard



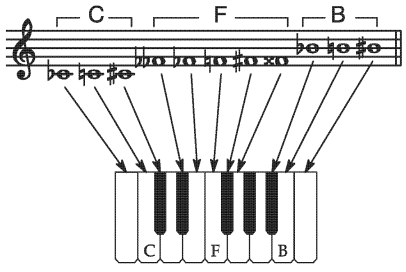
Example 1A.5 also shows a common way of describing pitches: Each octave, moving upward from C to B, is assigned a number. We use the piano keyboard to illustrate these names and numbers because of its large range (88 pitches) and clarity of pitch representation (each key represents a single pitch). The lowest C on the piano is designated C^1, and each higher octave is incremented by 1: middle C is C^4. C is the lowest pitch in each octave; pitches above C in that octave will have the same octave designation, as shown in Example 1A.5.

Accidentals

There are seven different pitch names within an octave (A–G), but the piano keyboard reveals twelve different keys: seven white and five black. In order to name each of the 12 keys, we refine the names of the seven basic (or *natural*) keys by adding various modifiers called **chromatic alterations** or **accidentals**. Two common accidentals are the flat (♭), which lowers a pitch one half step, and the sharp (♯), which raises it one half step. Another common accidental is the **natural** (♮), which cancels a previous accidental. For example, an F♮ following an F♯ removes the sharp, resulting in a pitch that is one half step lower.

Two more accidentals complete the alteration family. A **double sharp** (𝄪) raises a pitch by two half steps (or an already-sharped pitch by one half step). Similarly, a **double flat** (𝄫) lowers a pitch by two half steps (or an already-flatted pitch by one half step). A chromatic alteration applies only in the octave register in which it occurs and will remain in effect until the end of the measure. That is: accidentals operate on pitches, not on pitch classes. Composers often add **courtesy accidentals** in parentheses to clarify ambiguities. If a composer wishes to continue the alteration, he or she must repeat it in subsequent measures. Example 1A.6 summarizes all the accidentals and demonstrates how various notated examples correlate with the keyboard. Note that each of the five possible accidentals has been applied to F.

EXAMPLE 1A. 6 Accidentals

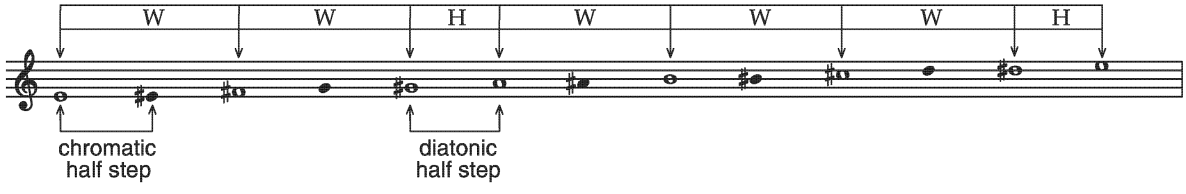


♯ sharp	raises a pitch a half step
♭ flat	lowers a pitch a half step
♮ natural	cancels a previous accidental or indicates an unaltered pitch
𝄪 double sharp	raises an unaltered pitch two half steps or a sharped pitch one half step
𝄫 double flat	lowers an unaltered pitch two half steps or a flatted pitch one half step.

Scales

The piano keyboard shows us that the octave has been divided into 12 pitches, each equidistant from the next by the interval of a half step. We refer to the entire collection of 12 possible pitch classes as the **chromatic system**; arranged in order, these pitch classes form the **chromatic scale**, as shown in Example 1A.7. This ordering looks like a staircase or ladder, thus giving us the Latin term for scale, *scala*. However, the large, 12-pitch-class chromatic system is really more a collection of *possible* pitches; composers tend to use a seven-pitch-class scale that mixes half and whole steps. Consider the pitch classes E–F♯–G♯–A–B–C♯–D♯ (notated as unfilled pitches in Example 1A.7). Notice that there are five whole steps (W) and two half steps (H) (occurring between G♯/A and D♯/E).

EXAMPLE 1A.7 The Chromatic and Diatonic Scales



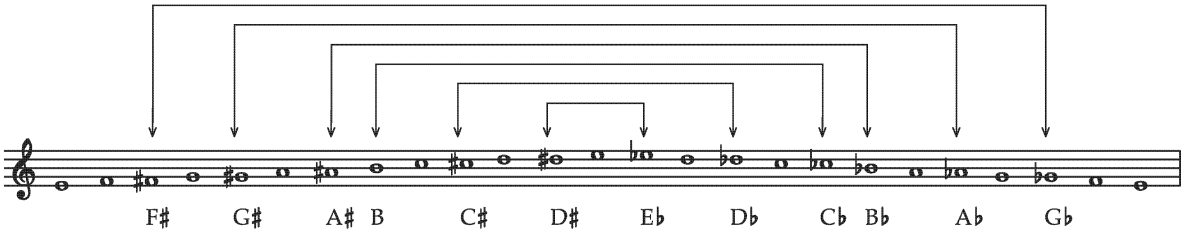
This scale, based on the ordered succession of the seven different letter names, is the foundation of Western music. A composition based on such a scale is said to be in a specific **key**. For example, a composition is in the key of E if it is based on a scale generated from the pitch class E. Since each letter of the musical alphabet is represented once and only once, we refer to this type of scale as **diatonic** (or "through the tones"). A diatonic scale may begin on any of the 12 different pitch classes and may ascend or descend. Pitches that are members of the seven-pitch-class scale are **diatonic** (shown in Example 1A.7 as unfilled pitches), and pitches that lie outside the scale are **chromatic** (from the Latin, *chroma*, or "color").

Half steps have two different names: **diatonic half steps**, which include two different letter names (e.g., G♯ and A, as in the E scale in Example 1A.7) and **chromatic half steps**, which share the same letter name (e.g., A♭ and A). See Example 1A.7.

Enharmonicism

Example 1A.6 illustrates that, on the keyboard, pitches such as C♭ and B, and B♯ and C are the same key and therefore sound the same. Pitches and pitch classes that have the same location on the keyboard but have different names or "spellings" are **enharmonically equivalent**. Since enharmonically related pitches sound the same, we consider them to be in the same pitch class.

EXAMPLE 1A.8 Enharmonically Equivalent Pitches



Example 1A.7 lists B as a member of the E diatonic scale, yet it is enharmonically equivalent to C♭ (and the same pitch class). The specific name given to a pitch is determined by how it functions within a musical context. There are two general principles for determining when to use one enharmonically equivalent pitch rather than another.

1. Use the note name that represents membership within the prevailing key; this explains why we use B rather than C♭ in Example 1A.7.
2. In a chromatic environment, employ the notation convention in which sharps (or naturals) are used in ascending lines and flats (or naturals) are used in descending lines. Example 1A.8 contains an ascending and descending chromatic scale. The pitch F♯ is used when the line ascends to G, while G♭ is used when the line descends. Enharmonic pitches in Example 1A.8 are connected with arrows (e.g., F♯ and G♭).

Enharmonicism is more abstract than real. For fixed-pitch instruments, such as the piano, enharmonically related pitches are identical; but for moveable-pitch instruments, players will slightly alter, or *temper*, the pitches according to the context (e.g., string players would most likely play a G♯ somewhat higher than an A♭ in order to intensify the expected ascending motion to A).

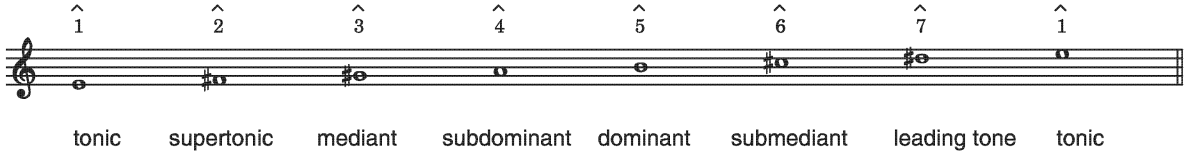
Common-practice composers draw most of their pitch material from the diatonic scale, but they also incorporate elements from the chromatic system. When most of the pitch material comes from the seven pitch classes of a scale, we refer to the music as *diatonic*. As more nondiatonic pitches are used in a composition, it becomes increasingly *chromatic*. Later, we will learn how composers incorporate chromatic elements into their music.

Scale Degree Numbers and Names

As shown in Example 1A.9, each of the seven members—or **scale degrees**—of the scale can be numbered in ascending order, beginning with the tonic. Such **scale degree numbers** are distinguished by the caret, or cap, that is placed above each number in order to avoid confusion with other numbers with different meanings.

Scale degrees may also be identified by names that reflect their relationship to the tonic pitch class. In order of importance, the next scale members are the **dominant** and the **mediant**. If the tonic is the first step, the dominant lies four steps above the tonic and the mediant lies two steps above the tonic. The mediant's name is logically derived from the fact that it lies midway between the tonic and the dominant. The **supertonic**, as the name implies, lies immediately above the tonic. The **subdominant**, the fourth scale degree, is so called because it lies four steps below the tonic, just as the dominant lies four above. Similarly, the **submediant**, the sixth scale degree, lies two steps below the tonic, just as the mediant lies three above. Finally, the **leading tone**, scale degree 7, lies one step below the tonic, to which it usually leads.

EXAMPLE 1A.9 The E Scale with Scale Degree Numbers and Names

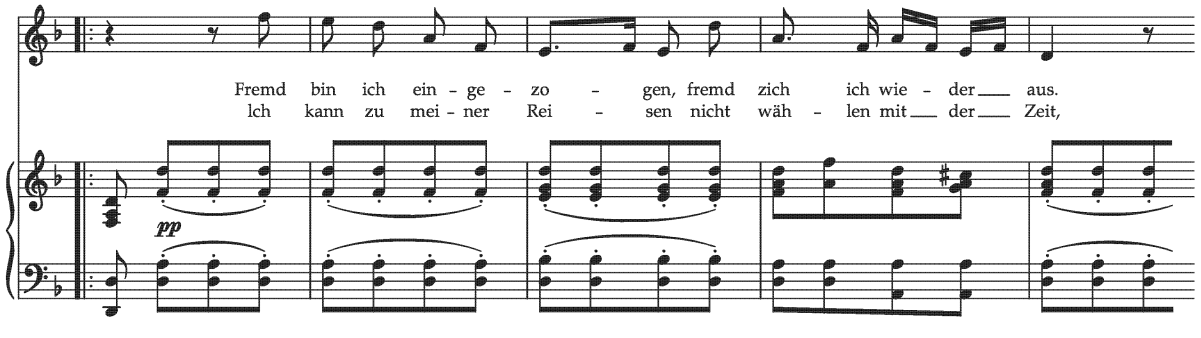


Specific Scale Types: Major and Minor

An easy way to memorize scale patterns is to arrange the pitch classes in ascending order. It is crucial that this ordering use *every pitch letter name once and only once*. A major scale consists of a collection of seven different pitch classes with the intervallic order W–W–H–W–W–W–H. **Major** and its companion, **minor** (which has a slightly different intervallic ordering), refer to the **mode** of the piece. The major mode is sometimes considered brighter than the minor mode and more stable. Example 1A.10A illustrates a passage in D minor from Schubert's "Gute Nacht," followed by the passage cast in the major mode (Example 1A.10B).

EXAMPLE 1A.10 Schubert, "Gute Nacht" from *Winterreise*

A.



Although the term *mode* has been used since antiquity to refer to many different scalar constructions, nowadays we also use *mode* to refer to the two types of scales that occur regularly in tonal music: major and minor. The name of a key provides two kinds of information: It identifies both the tonic pitch and the mode (major or minor).

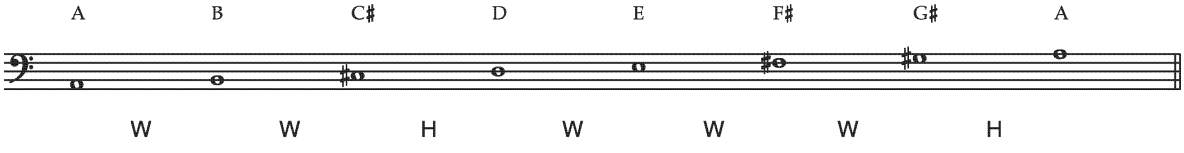
Building Scales in the Major Mode

We can generate a major scale on each of the remaining 11 pitch classes by using the same pattern of half and whole steps found in the E-major scale. Moving any pitch pattern so that it begins on a different pitch is called **transposition**. Let's build a major scale on A.

First, since a scale consists of stepwise motion, we must use every letter name in turn, and end our scale by repeating the tonic pitch one octave higher in order to create closure: A–B–C–D–E–F–G–A.

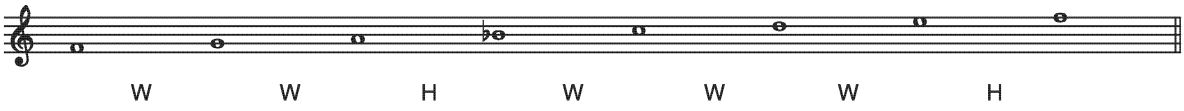
Next, we refine our scale and create the sound of the major mode by using the appropriate pattern of half and whole steps (W–W–H–W–W–W–H). A to B, the first interval, is a whole step, so we move on to the next, which must also be a whole step. However, B to C is only a half step, so we must increase its size by adding a sharp to C, raising the pitch a half step (C♯). The next interval should be a half step, and, indeed, C♯ moves a half step to D. Continuing this process, we determine that the pitches of the major scale on A are A–B–C♯–D–E–F♯–G♯–A (Example 1A.11). Since the scale of A major contains three sharped pitches, we say that "the scale of A major contains three sharps."

EXAMPLE 1A.11 The A-Major Scale



Using the same process to create the F-major scale, we begin with the ordering F–G–A–B–C–D–E–F. Applying our formula of whole and half steps to the first two intervals, we find that F to G and G to A are both whole steps, as they should be. Moving ahead, the distance from A to B is another whole step, rather than the requisite half step. Therefore, we must lower B one half step by adding a flat, changing B to B♭. Next, we need another whole step, which B♭ to C provides. By continuing this process, we see that the major scale on F requires just one flat: F–G–A–B♭–C–D–E–F (Example 1A.12).

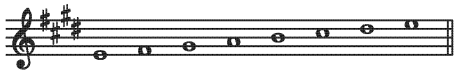
EXAMPLE 1A.12 The F-Major Scale



Key Signatures and the Circle of Fifths

The **key signature** is a symbol that appears at the beginning of each musical staff, to the right of the clef. It presents a pattern of either sharps or flats, conveying the pitch classes of a key. Indeed, the key signature often implies the key of the composition (keys are made explicit by how the pitches are actually used). Imagine the notational nightmare of writing a piece in C♯ major without a key signature: Every pitch in the piece would need a sharp sign. Example 1A.13 shows the four-sharp key signature for E major. Note that there is only one F♯, one C♯, one G♯, and one D♯ shown in the key signature; when you indicate a sharp or flat in a key signature, the accidental applies to the entire pitch class (if you write a sharp for one F♯, then all Fs become F♯s).

EXAMPLE 1A.13 The Key Signature for E Major



G major has one altered pitch (F♯), so its key signature has one sharp; D major has two altered pitches (F♯, C♯), so its key signature has two sharps. The complete list of major keys with sharps is: G (1 sharp), D (2), A (3), E (4), B (5), F♯ (6), C♯ (7). Note that the tonic note for each key on the list is five steps (or a "fifth") higher than in the previous key. The sharps in a key signature—when read from left to right—are also a fifth apart: F♯, C♯, G♯, D♯, A♯, E♯, B♯.

An easy way to remember the relationship between the key signature and the tonic is to note that the pitch one half step above the final sharp in the key signature is the tonic. For example, if the last sharp is F♯, the tonic is G; if the last sharp is B♯, the tonic is C♯.

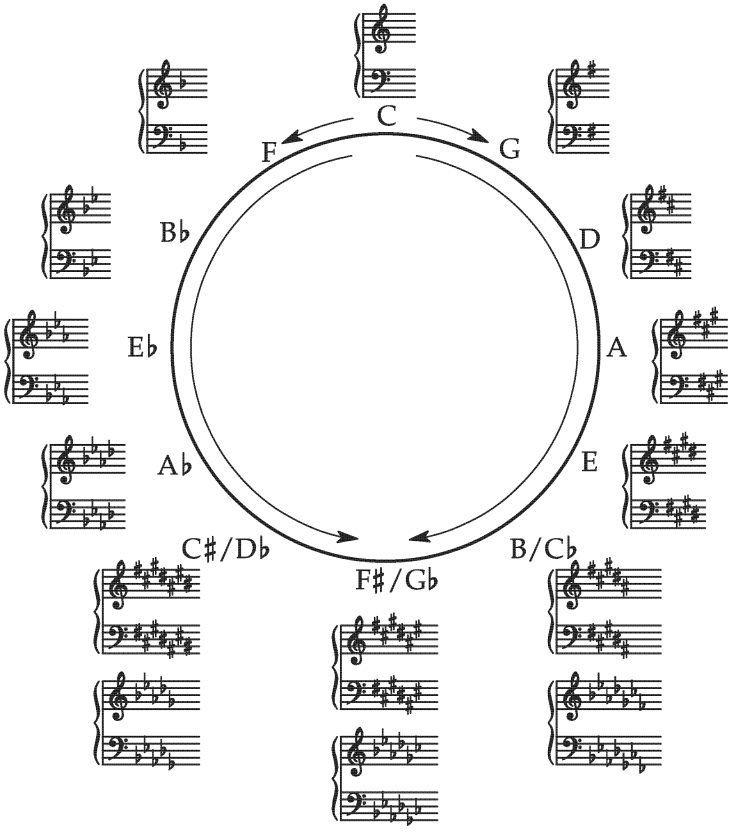
The flat keys follow the same pattern of fifths but in the opposite direction from C: F, B♭, E♭, A♭, D♭, G♭, C♭. Flats are added in a specific order of descending fifths: B♭, E♭, A♭, D♭, G♭, C♭, F♭. For flat keys, the tonic can be determined by reading the penultimate flat in the key signature. If the key signature contains B♭ and E♭, the second-to-last flat, B♭, is the tonic. Likewise, if the key signature contains B♭, E♭, A♭, and D♭, then the tonic is A♭. Note that when we ascend by fifths, we end with C♯ major; when we descend by fifths, we end with C♭ major.

The opposing process of flat and sharp key relations may be represented graphically as in Example 1A.14, using a circle that illustrates both the key signatures and their relationships to one another. This diagram is called the **circle of fifths**, since each key on the circle lies a fifth above the preceding key (if you move clockwise around the circle) or a fifth below the preceding key (if you move counterclockwise around the circle).

Notice that there are 15 keys listed, although there are only 12 chromatic pitches. This is because of three enharmonic keys that occur at the bottom of the circle: B/C♭, F♯/G♭, and C♯/D♭.

Keys that are adjacent to one another on the circle—that is, their key signatures differ by one sharp or flat—are called **closely related keys** (e.g., A♭ major is closely related to both D♭ major and E♭ major).

EXAMPLE 1A.14 The Circle of Fifths



WORKBOOK 1
App. 1A.1–1A.2

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

1A.1 Writing Scale Fragments

Study each scale fragment that follows and determine in which major scales the fragments could be members; write out the complete scales and include scale degrees.

For example, given the fragment A and B♭ and the instruction to list the major scales to which the pitches belong, the answer would be F major and B♭ major.

List as many major scales as would fit each fragment; there may only be a single solution or there may be multiple solutions.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. D–E B. A–B C. C–D♭ D. B♭–D

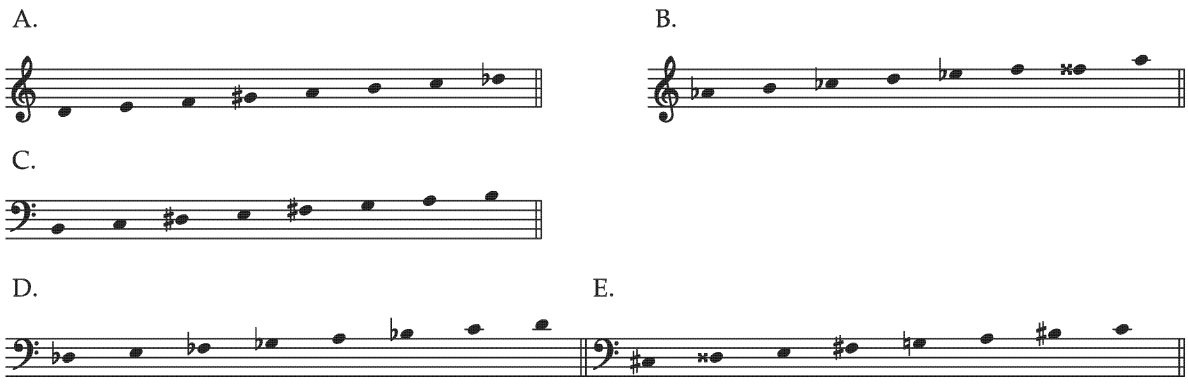
E. G–C F. E♭–G G. F♯–A♯

1A.2 Scale Practice: Error Detection

Below are misspelled major scales; correct the errors by adding the appropriate accidentals and/or pitch.

Extra credit: Transpose scales that appear in the bass clef down a whole step and scales that appear in the treble clef up a fifth.

SOLVED/APP 6

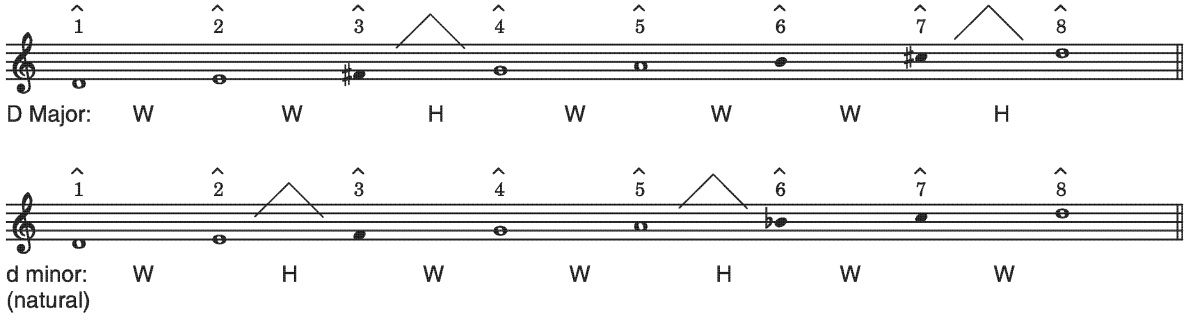


Building Scales in the Minor Mode

The **minor mode** is the other mode commonly used in tonal music, and, like its major counterpart, it comprises a particular sequence of half steps and whole steps. The minor mode is distinguished primarily by its mediant ($\hat{3}$), which lies one half step lower than the third scale degree of the major mode. For example, in the key of D major, the third scale degree is F♯, while in the key of D minor, the third scale degree is F-natural. Another important difference between the major and the minor modes is that $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ in the minor mode are variable; depending on the melodic line's direction, their scale degrees may be raised or lowered, which is why the minor mode is often considered to be more flexible than the major mode. The minor mode is characterized by a darker sound, in contrast to the bright sound of the major scale. Listen again to Example 1A.10.

Example 1A.15 presents D-major and D-minor scales. Notice that the minor scale has a different pattern of half and whole steps than the major. Pitch differences are shown as filled-in notes. We refer to this form of the minor scale—with a half step between $\hat{2}$ and $\hat{3}$ and between $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{6}$—as the **natural minor scale**. Notice that both $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ are a half step lower than in major.

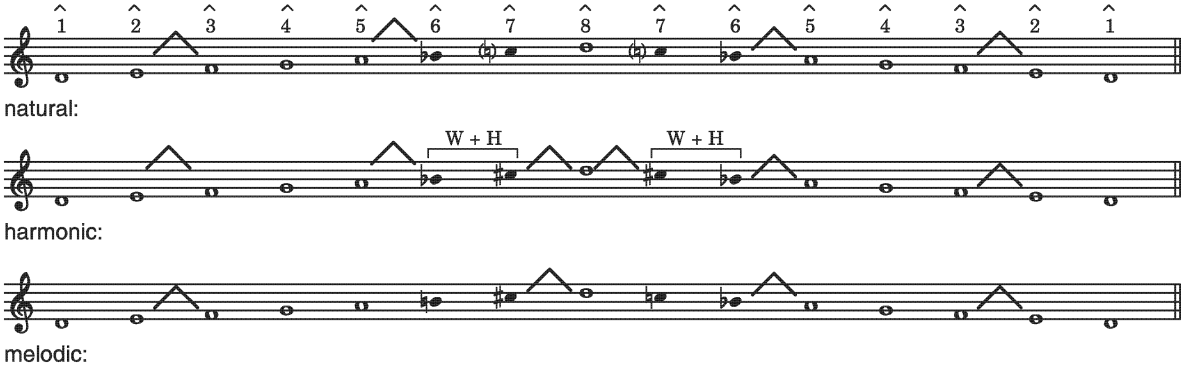
EXAMPLE 1A.15 Major and Natural Minor Scales



Composers often intensify melodic motion in the minor mode, resulting in the slight rearrangement of half steps and whole steps in the final three pitches. These variations take two forms and result in what are traditionally called the **harmonic minor scale** and the **melodic minor scale**.

Example 1A.16 presents the three forms of the minor scale: natural, harmonic, and melodic. The differences are based on the natural tendency for melodic lines to move toward a goal. That is, raising pitches enhances the pull of an ascending line, and lowering pitches enhances the direction of a descending line.

EXAMPLE 1A.16 Natural, Harmonic, and Melodic Minor Scales



One can view these two variations of the minor scale as a means of creating both this goal-directed motion and a smooth melodic line, because forward motion in tonal music is generally enhanced by half-step motion. For example, the natural minor scale, with its smooth stepwise motion from $\hat{5}$ to $\hat{8}$ does not possess much goal-oriented motion in its ascent because it does not contain a leading tone.

The **harmonic minor scale** remedies this situation by raising $\hat{7}$ to create a leading tone. Notice in Example 1A.10A that Schubert adds the leading tone (C♯) in the piano accompaniment (m. 4) in order to create a sense of musical closure that complements the end of the first line of text. However, as shown in Example 1A.16, the addition of the leading tone sacrifices the smooth melodic motion between $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ by producing a gap of one and a half steps.

The **melodic minor scale** contains both smooth stepwise motion and the leading tone, since $\hat{6}$ as well as $\hat{7}$ are raised, which leads nicely upward to $\hat{1}$, the primary tonal pillar and point of stability. The descending version of the melodic minor scale is different from its ascending version: $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ are lowered to enhance the descent toward $\hat{5}$, the secondary tonal pillar. We call the lowered $\hat{7}$ the **subtonic** rather than the leading tone; the subtonic does not rise to the tonic as the leading tone does; rather, it is the crucial first step in a falling line that leads toward the dominant.

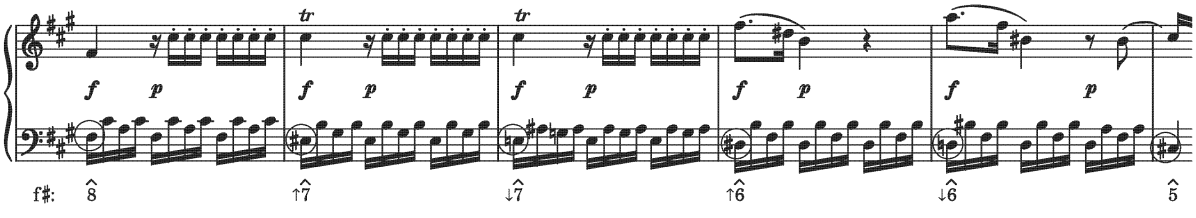
The three forms of the minor scale should be viewed more as slight variations of a single "minor collection" than as three different scales, because of their constant circulation within a musical context. Thus, the minor scale is really a nine-pitch-class repository from which the composer draws material. Indeed, as shown in Example 1A.17A, Mozart's descending chromatic line touches on both forms of $\hat{7}$ and $\hat{6}$ on its way to an arrival on $\hat{5}$; the

musical "point" is less what form of minor is used than what musical procedure creates the most dramatic tension. *To avoid potential ambiguity, up and down arrows will represent raised and lowered scale degrees, respectively.*

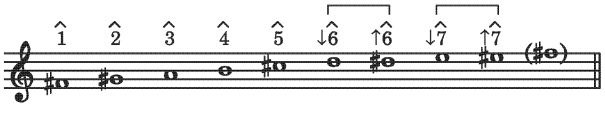
Example 1A.17B arranges the entire minor collection in ascending order. Example 1A.17C illustrates how the minor collection is really a by-product of the melodic requirements of individual lines. For example, the opening descending bass line is intensified by the lowered forms of $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ while the following ascent is supported by using their raised forms. Notice that the unwieldy interval of three half steps, that occurs between lowered $\hat{6}$ and raised $\hat{7}$ of the harmonic form of minor, is actually moot, since this interval rarely occurs within a single melodic line. In the Bach chorale, $\uparrow\hat{7}$ (E♯) arises either from a stepwise ascent through $\uparrow\hat{6}$ (D♯) or from the half-step descent from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{7}$ and return to $\hat{1}$ (F♯–E♯–F♯); E♯ is not in any way connected to $\downarrow\hat{6}$ (D natural). Similarly, $\downarrow\hat{6}$ arises from an upward movement from $\hat{5}$ to which it returns. Thus, $\downarrow\hat{6}$ gravitates toward $\hat{5}$ and $\uparrow\hat{7}$ gravitates toward $\hat{1}$.

EXAMPLE 1A.17 Melodic Tendencies in the Minor Mode

A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, Polonaise en Rondeau



B. Scale



C. Bach, "Verleih' uns Frieden gnädiglich"

Key Signatures in Minor

Minor keys are represented by key signatures derived from the natural minor scale. The order of minor key signatures proceeds in exactly the same pattern as the major key signatures. See Example 1A.18, which summarizes the number and names of the sharps or flats for all major and

minor keys; C, with no flats or sharps, is in the middle, with added sharps and flats fanning out above and below C. That is, one sharp is added to the key signature for each scale that lies a fifth higher than the previous scale (i.e., from $\hat{1}$ up to $\hat{5}$). One flat is added to the key signature that lies a fifth lower than the previous scale (i.e., from $\hat{1}$ down to $\hat{4}$).

EXAMPLE 1A.18 Sharps and Flats in Major and Minor Keys

MAJOR KEY	MINOR KEY	NUMBER OF ACCIDENTALS	ACCIDENTALS IN KEY
C♯	a♯	7 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯ E♯ B♯
F♯	d♯	6 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯ E♯
B	g♯	5 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯ A♯
E	c♯	4 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯ D♯
A	f♯	3 sharps	F♯ C♯ G♯
D	b	2 sharps	F♯ C♯
G	e	1 sharp	F♯
→ C	a	0	
F	d	1 flat	B♭
B♭	g	2 flats	B♭ E♭
E♭	c	3 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭
A♭	f	4 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭
D♭	b♭	5 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭
G♭	e♭	6 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭ C♭
C♭	a♭	7 flats	B♭ E♭ A♭ D♭ G♭ C♭ F♭

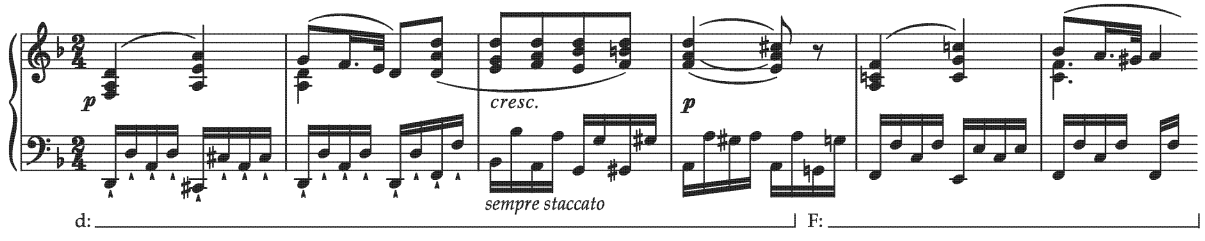
Relative Major and Minor Keys

We refer to major and minor keys with the same key signatures as **relative**. The relative major key of a minor key lies three half steps (i.e., skipping one letter name) above the tonic of the minor key; we also can think of relative minor keys as lying three half steps below the tonic of the major key.

Example 1A.19A, from one of Beethoven's piano sonatas, illustrates the relative major relationship between D minor and F major. Usually, however, such literal restatements of material in a different harmonic area are not as common as the use of contrasting material, as illustrated in another example from Beethoven's piano sonatas (Example 1A.19B). Here, the relative relationship works the other way: from a major key (D major) to a minor key (B minor). Beethoven's dramatic statement of the D-major opening theme in octaves is followed by a tumultuous theme in B minor.

EXAMPLE 1A.19 Relative Key Relations

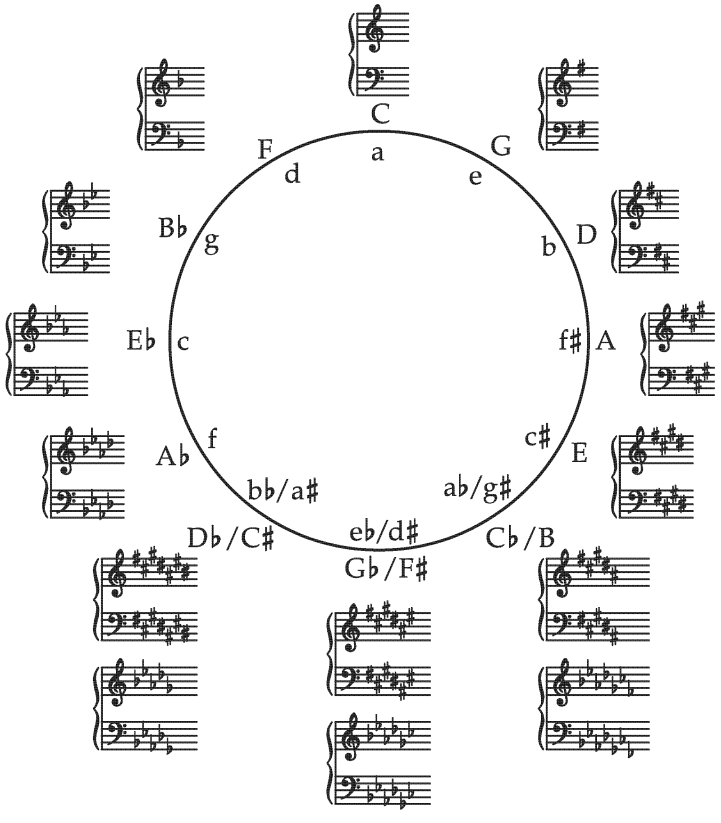
A. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D major, op. 28, *Andante*



B. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D major, op. 10, no. 3

Such dramatic harmonic shifts, however, are uncommon. The diagram in Example 1A.20 illustrates the pairing of relative major and minor keys around the circle of fifths. Major keys are represented by uppercase letters and minor keys by lowercase letters on the circle of fifths.

EXAMPLE 1A.20 Relative Major and Minor Key Signatures



Parallel major and **parallel minor** scales and keys are those that share the same tonic but do not share the same key signatures. For example, the parallel minor of D major is D minor, and the parallel major of B♭ minor is B♭ major. The key signatures of parallel keys differ by three accidentals (e.g., the D major and d minor of Schubert's "Gute Nacht" in Example 1A.10 contain two sharps and one flat respectively [i.e., two sharps plus one flat equals three accidentals]). Example 1A.21 illustrates back-to-back statements of material in the parallel keys of G major and G minor.

EXAMPLE 1A.21 Mozart, Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1A.3–1A.4

WRITING

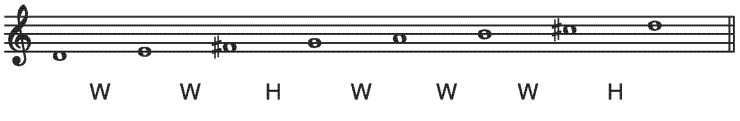
1A.3 Writing Scales (I)

Notate the following scales on manuscript paper. Use accidentals instead of key signatures, and mark each half and whole step. Begin by writing the first scale (B♭ major) in bass clef and the next in treble clef. Continue alternating clefs for each scale.

SOLVED/APP 6

A. Major:

1. D (sample solution):



2. B♭ 3. E♭ 4. G 5. B 6. E 7. D♭

B. Melodic minor:

1. F 2. A 3. B

C. Harmonic minor:

1. G 2. B♭ 3. C♯

D. Natural minor (ascending and descending):

1. D 2. E♭ 3. E

1A.4 Writing Scales (II)

SOLVED/APP 6

Write the following scales on manuscript paper, using accidentals instead of key signatures.

A. The major scale in which:

1. G♯ is $\hat{3}$ (sample solution):

2. C is $\hat{4}$ 3. G♯ is $\hat{6}$ 4. C♯ is $\hat{6}$ 5. B♭ is $\hat{2}$ 6. B♭ is $\hat{4}$ 7. B♭ is $\hat{7}$

B. The major scale in which:

1. A is supertonic 2. D is mediant 3. F is submediant 4. B is dominant
5. E is supertonic 6. E is subdominant 7. E is leading tone

C. The harmonic minor scale in which:

1. A is $\hat{3}$ 2. C♯ is $\hat{7}$ 3. E is $\hat{5}$ 4. E is $\hat{6}$

D. The relative major scale of:

1. G minor 2. C♯ minor 3. B♭ minor 4. G♯ minor

E. The relative minor scale (melodic form) of:

1. F major 2. A major 3. E♭ major

F. The parallel major scale of:

1. E minor 2. A minor 3. A♭ minor

1A.5 Scale Fragments

SOLVED/APP 6

Study each scale fragment that follows and determine in which minor scales the fragments could be members; write out the complete scales and include scale degrees. For example, given the fragment A and B♭ and the instruction to list the minor scales to which the pitches belong, the answer would be B♭ melodic and harmonic minor, G minor, and D harmonic minor. Make sure that you specify the form of minor.

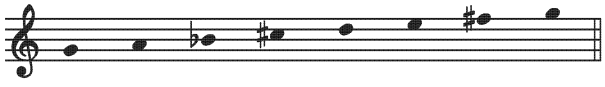
A. D–E B. A♭–C C. A♭–B D. F♯–G
E. B–F F. F–A G. C♯–F

1A.6 Scale Practice: Error Detection

Below are misspelled minor scales; correct the errors by adding the appropriate accidentals and/or pitches.

Accidentals apply only to pitches they precede; they do not carry over.

A. Harmonic minor



SOLVED/APP 6

B. Melodic minor

C. Natural minor

SOLVED/APP 6

D. Harmonic

E. Melodic

Pulse, Rhythm, and Meter

The time, or temporal (horizontal), aspects of music and the pitch (vertical) aspects of music are intimately intertwined and complement each other. This chapter concentrates on the essential concepts and terminology related to temporality. First, some basic terminology. Undifferentiated (e.g., same quality, loudness, and length) and equally spaced clicks or taps are called **pulses**. When you nod your head or tap your foot at a steady rate when listening to music, these pulses are called **beats**, because they now occur within a context that differentiates them; for example, some beats feel stronger than others. The **tempo** is the speed of the beat; that is, how fast or how slowly you nod or tap. **Meter** refers to the grouping of both strong and weak beats into recurring patterns. **Rhythm** refers to the ever-changing combinations of longer and shorter durations and silence that populate the surface of a piece of music. Rhythm is often patterned, and rhythmic groupings may divide the beat, align with the beat, or extend over several beats. The following discussion proceeds from temporal events that take place on the rhythmic surface of a piece to the metric grid that regulates the rhythmic surface.

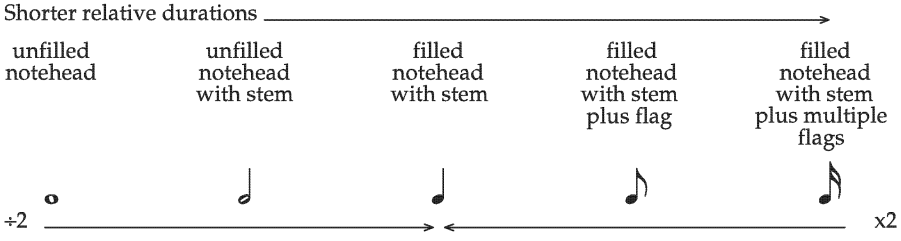
Rhythm and Durational Symbols

We use two basic notational devices to provide rhythmic information to performers (Example 1B.1): the **notehead**, which may be unfilled or filled (blackened), and the stem, which is added to the notehead. One or more **flags** may be added to stems of filled noteheads. Each added element—stem, filled-in notehead, and flag—shortens a pitch's duration. The unfilled notehead may occur by itself, but in the common-practice period, the filled notehead is always accompanied by a stem. In order to balance notehead and stem on the staff, we use the following notational convention: If the notehead appears on or above the third line of any staff, the stem points down. Conversely, if the notehead appears on or below the third line of any staff the stem points up.

By itself, rhythmic notation does not indicate how long a note lasts, but it always precisely identifies the proportional relationships among notes. For example, each successive note in Example 1B.1 has a duration precisely half

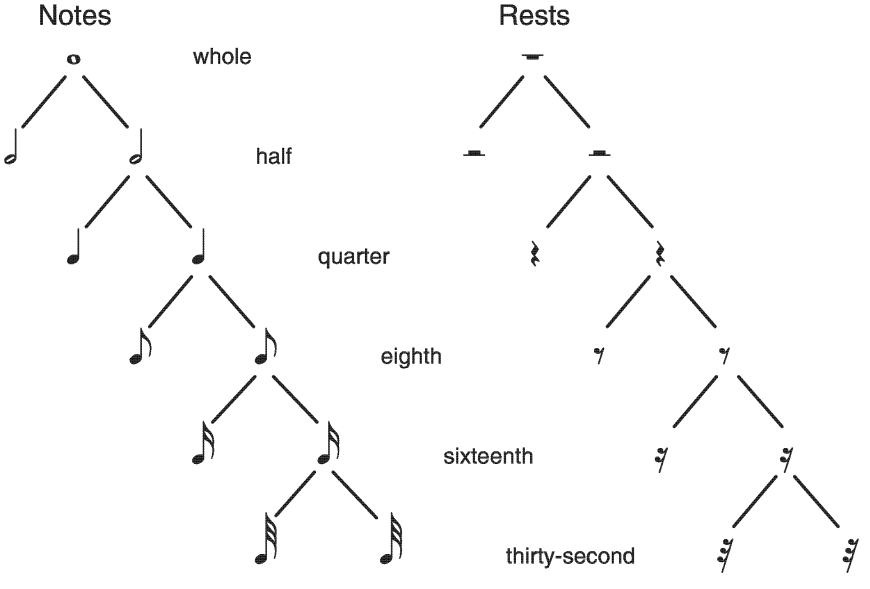
that of the preceding note. Each additional flag decreases a pitch's duration by half. But it is only when rhythms occur in a context regulated by meter and tempo (described later)—that performers know the actual rhythmic durations.

EXAMPLE 1B.1 Rhythmic Notation



In contrast to notes, **rests** indicate a silence in music, and shown in Example 1B.2, they correspond exactly to the durational symbols for notes. For example, the quarter rest (𝄽) indicates a silence that occupies the duration of a quarter note. The "hook" characterizes the eighth rest. Like the flag that characterizes the eighth note, each successive hook shortens the rest's duration by half. Example 1B.2 summarizes the relationships between notes and rests. Notice that each durational symbol is twice as long as the symbol directly below it.

EXAMPLE 1B.2 Notes and Rests



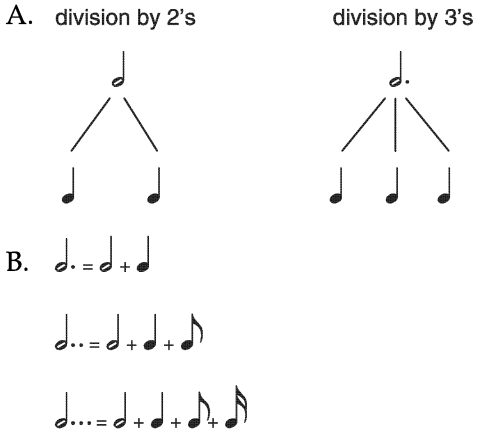
Dots and Ties

The use of additional features, dots and ties, fine-tune the rhythmic system to permit more subtle rhythms. The **dot** occurs after a pitch or rest, and it lengthens the value of the pitch or rest by half. For instance, if a half note is

equivalent to two quarter notes, a dotted half is equivalent to three; a dotted quarter rest is equivalent to a quarter rest plus an eighth rest.

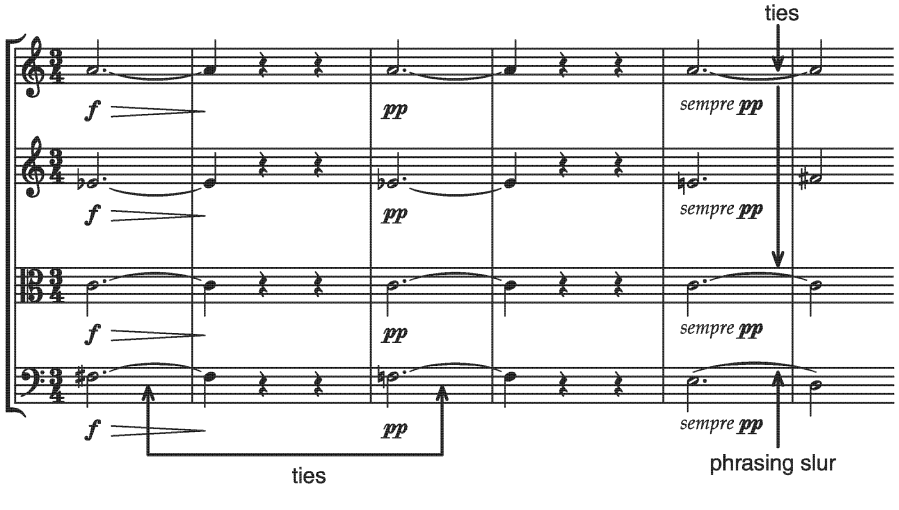
In general, undotted notes and rests are divided evenly into twos—a quarter note is divided into two eighth notes. Dotted notes and rests are usually divided evenly into threes; a dotted half note is divided into three quarter notes (Example 1B.3A). Each successive dot adds one-half the duration of the preceding dot, as shown in Example 1B.3B.

EXAMPLE 1B.3 Dotted Notes and Their Divisions



Like dots, **ties** lengthen the duration of a pitch. The tie's curved line combines the duration of two or more adjacent identical pitches. Ties are commonly used in two musical contexts: to sustain a pitch whose duration would exceed the normal length of the measure and to clarify rhythmic groupings in a measure. Listen to Example 1B.4, which illustrates the use of dots and ties.

EXAMPLE 1B.4 Beethoven, String Quartet no. 9, op. 59, no. 3, *Andante con moto*



As you heard in Example 1B.4, the tie sustains the first note by extending its duration without rearticulating it. Ties are distinguished from **phrasing slurs**, which are also shown by curved lines but connect two or more *different* pitches. Phrasing slurs indicate that the grouped pitches should be played as a single musical idea. This is usually accomplished by playing the notes smoothly connected and uninterrupted, or *legato*. A phrasing slur is labeled near the end of Example 1B.4.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1B.1

1B.1 Matching

Match each rhythm in column X with one or more examples in column Y that have the same total duration. The first example in column Y is completed for you.

X			Y
1.	=	c,d	A.
2.	=	_____	B.
3.	=	_____	C.
4.	=	_____	D.
5.	=	_____	E.
6.	=	_____	F.
7.	=	_____	G.
8.	=	_____	H.
9.	=	_____	I.
10.	=	_____	J.

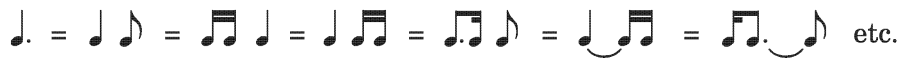
WRITING

1B.2 Rhythmic Values

Subdivide each of the rhythmic series (A–D) into various rhythmic groupings, each of which sums to the original value. Follow the instructions provided for parts A–D. You have at your disposal the following devices: shorter note values, ties, dots, and rests.

Sample solution:

Given is a dotted quarter note, followed by various divisions:



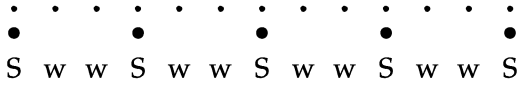
A. Given a half note and dotted quarter note: write six different rhythmic solutions for the given half note and the dotted quarter note, each of which contains ever-shorter note values.
B. Given a half note: write four different solutions for the half note, each of which includes the use of at least one dotted-note value.
C. Given a quarter note: write six different solutions, each of which includes the use of ties.
D. Given a dotted quarter note: write four different solutions, each of which displays the use of rests.

Meter

Meter provides the framework that organizes groups of beats and rhythms into larger patterns of **accented beats** and **unaccented beats**. The patterns—commonly found in groups of two, three, or four beats—are collected into **measures**, which are demarcated by **bar lines**. But what creates meter? A series of identical pulses does not group into larger units but remains an undistinguished stream that simply punctuates the passage of time. For example, the following dots represent a series of pulses; tap them out with your right hand:

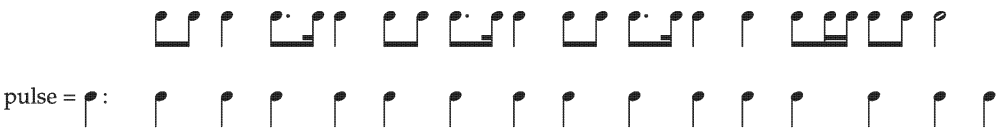
You can hear and feel that each pulse is the same as every other; there is no differentiation between them. It is impossible to establish a meter because the pulses do not form groups. But if we add another level of pulse, one that moves proportionally faster or slower, then meter arises based on the interaction of the two hierarchical levels. *Meter* means "to measure," and the regularly recurring strong beat, separated by a consistent number of weaker beats creates a **metrical accent**.

Perform the following series of pulses, the right hand tapping the faster pulses and the left hand tapping the slower pulses:



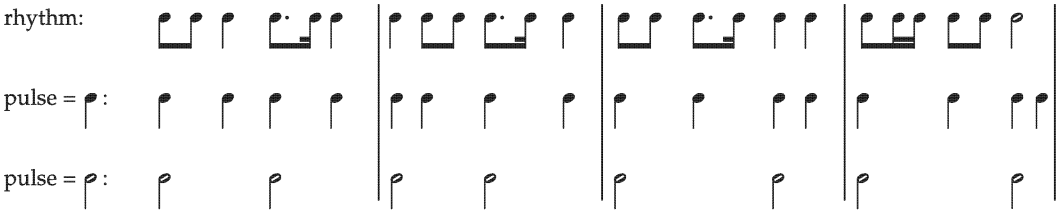
Now the faster pulses are grouped into regularly recurring units of three beats. Notice the distinction between accented, or strong (*S*), beats and unaccented, or weak (*w*), beats, as illustrated. Accented beats occur when both hands tap at the same time; unaccented beats occur when only the right hand taps. This hierarchy is crucial in creating meter. A clear meter emerges only through the addition of a second level of pulse. Perform Example 1B.5 and identify the prevailing meter. It includes a pattern of repeating quarter notes around which rhythms of quarter notes, eighth notes, and sixteenth notes occur.

EXAMPLE 1B.5



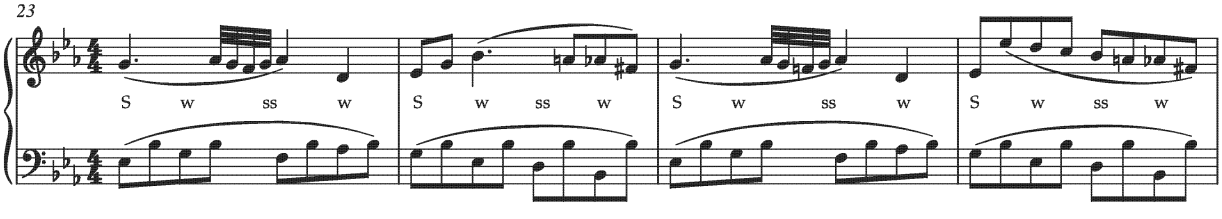
This example does not have a strong sense of meter, even though there are two levels of activity. This is because only one level of a pulse *regularly recurs*, instead of the minimum of two. Once we add another level of pulse in the form of a half note, the hierarchical relationship is clarified. With the third line added in Example 1B.6, the rhythmic irregularity does not undermine the prevailing meter. Notice that bar lines—which identify the beginning of a metric group as well as the span—have been added, since there is now a clear metric patterning.

EXAMPLE 1B.6



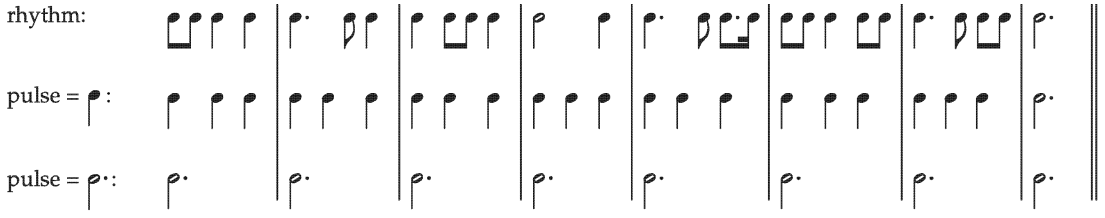
Now we can sense either a **duple** (strong–weak) or **quadruple** (strong–weak–semistrong–weak) meter. You can usually distinguish between a two-beat or four-beat measure by rhythmic patterning. In Example 1B.6, the dotted eighth–sixteenth pattern recurs every four beats in the first part of the example, creating four-beat, rather than two-beat, patterns. Further, in duple meter, a simple alternation of strong and weak occurs; but in quadruple meter, an intermediate type of metrical accent occurs on the third beat—one that is weaker than the downbeat but stronger than the second or fourth beat, as shown in Example 1B.7.

EXAMPLE 1B.7 Mozart, Piano Sonata in C minor, K. 457, *Allegro*



Example 1B.8 shows how using a dotted half note can create a different level of pulse. Here the quarter notes are grouped into threes to create a triple meter (strong–weak–weak).

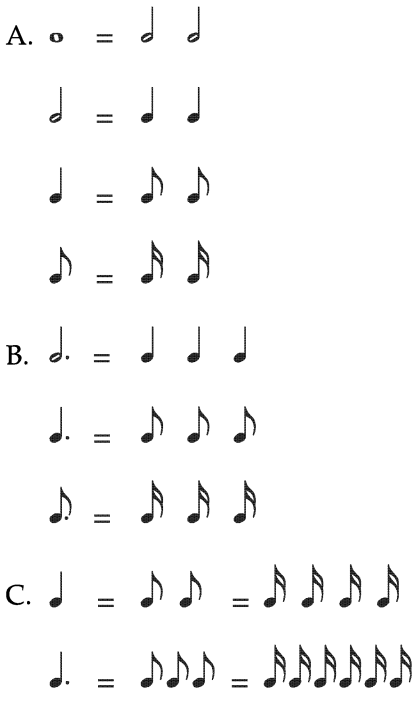
EXAMPLE 1B.8



Beat Division and Simple and Compound Meters

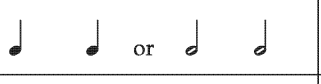
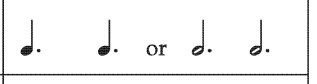
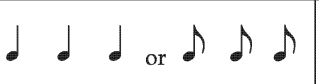
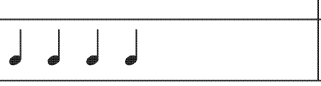
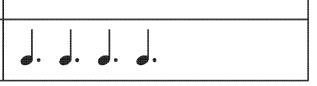
Most music contains note values that are shorter than the basic beat. **Beat division** refers to the equal division of the beat into either twos or threes. Recall that undotted note values divide naturally into twos (Example 1B.9A) and that dotted note values divide equally into threes (see Example 1B.9B). We refer to further division of the beat as a **subdivision of the beat**. At the level of the subdivision, beats divide naturally only into twos (Example 1B.9C).

EXAMPLE 1B.9



Meters in which the beat is divided into twos are **simple meters**, while **compound meters** are meters in which the beat is divided into threes. Recall that there are three basic metrical accent patterns: duple (strong–weak), triple (strong–weak–weak), and quadruple (strong–weak–semistrong–weak). Example 1B.10 shows the six possible types of meters (with the most common beat values shown).

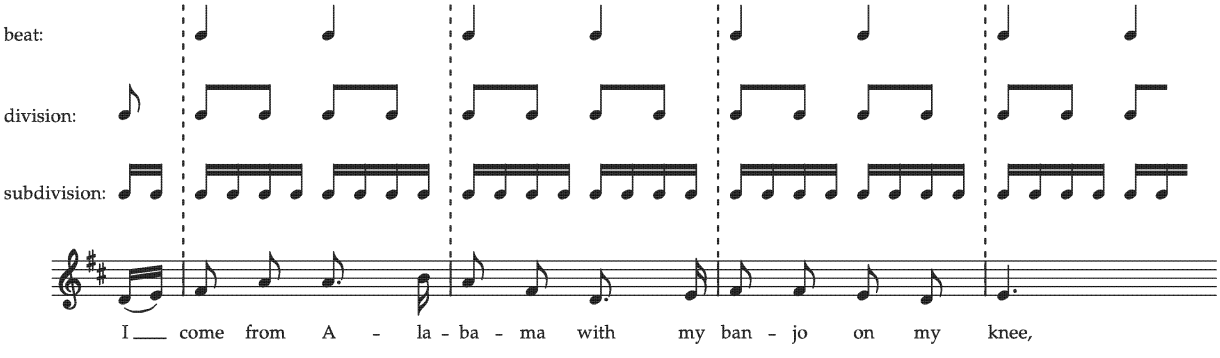
EXAMPLE 1B.10

	Simple	Compound
Duple		
Triple		
Quadruple		

Using duple as a model, we see in Example 1B.11 the two ways that the beat can be divided. Examples of both simple and compound triple and quadruple meters are shown in Example 1B.12.

EXAMPLE 1B.11

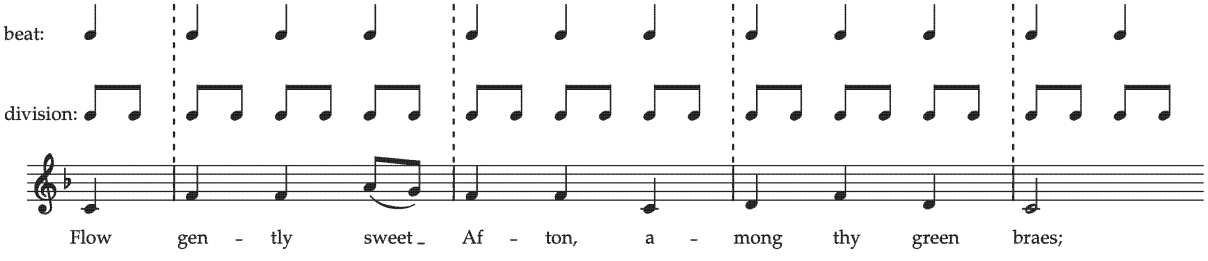
A. "Oh, Susanna"



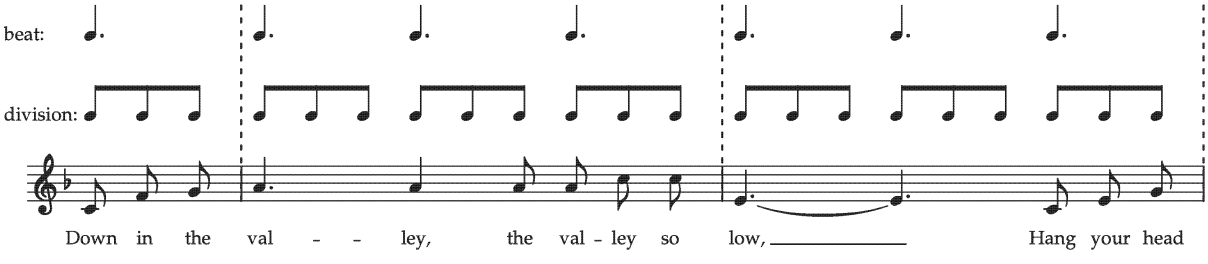
B. Bach, Flute Sonata no. 2 in E♭ major, BWV 1031, *Siciliano*

EXAMPLE 1B.12

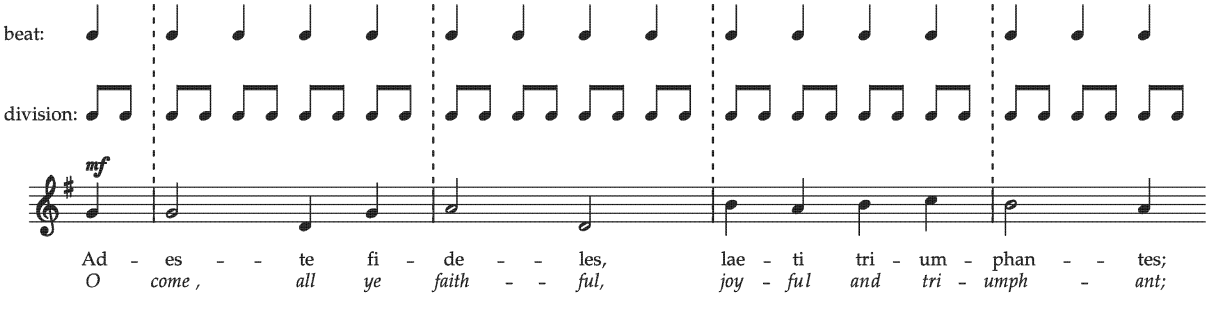
A. Simple Triple ("Flow Gently")



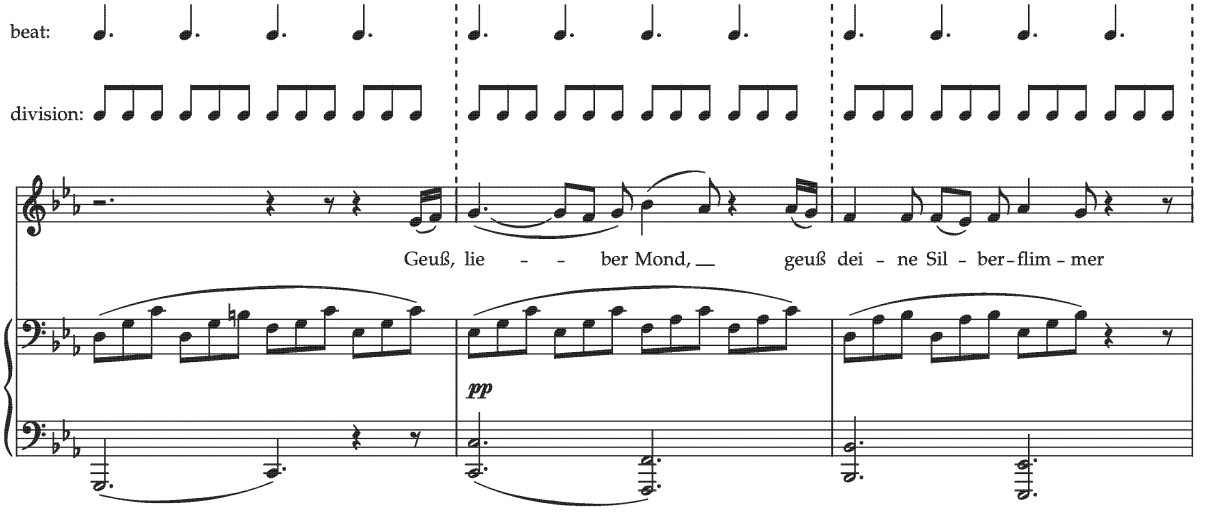
B. Compound Triple ("Down in the Valley")



C. Simple Quadruple ("Adeste")



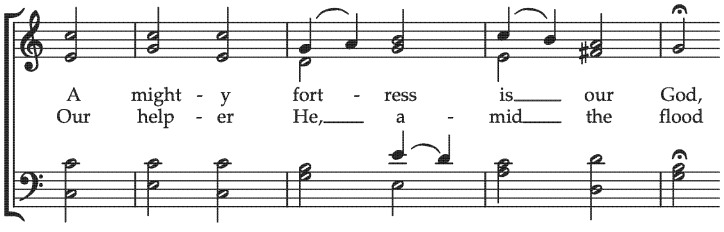
D. Compound Quadruple (Brahms "An den Mond")



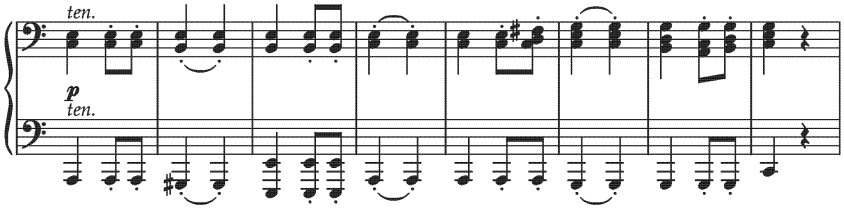
Note that simple meters can have beats of any duration that are *not dotted*; compound meters have beats that are *dotted*. For example, both excerpts in Example 1B.13A are in simple duple. However, the beat in "A Mighty Fortress" is the half note, while that in the slow movement from Beethoven's seventh symphony is the quarter note. Similarly, Example 1B.13B shows two examples in simple triple: The quarter note is the beat unit in B1 and the eighth note is the beat unit in B2.

EXAMPLE 1B.13

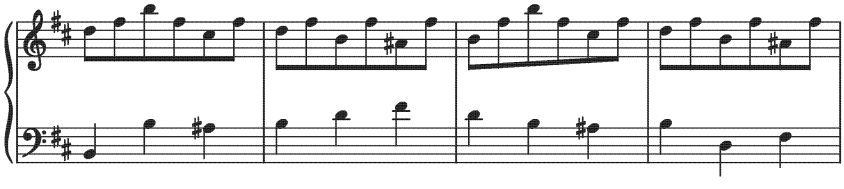
A1. "A Mighty Fortress Is Our God"



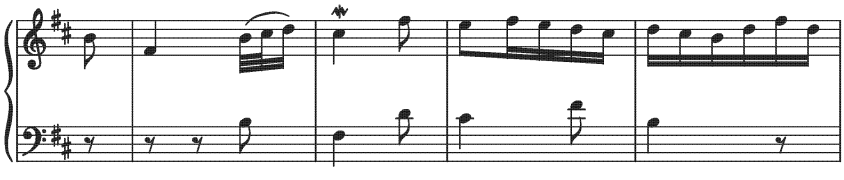
A2. Beethoven, Symphony no. 7 in A major, *Allegretto*



B1. Bach, French Suite in B minor, *Menuet*



B2. Bach, French Suite in B minor, *Gigue*



The Meter Signature

Composers indicate the *number of beats* in a measure (accented and unaccented), the *beat unit* (the rhythmic value that is assigned to the beat), and the *beat division* (i.e., whether the beat value is divided into twos or threes) in the **meter signature**. The meter signature, or *time signature*, appears once, at the beginning of the piece, immediately after the key signature. A composer may change the meter within a piece or section, in which case the new meter signature will appear at the point of change.

The meter signature takes the form of two numbers, one on top of the other (Example 1B.14).

EXAMPLE 1B.14 Meter Signatures for Simple Meters

Top number	2 = *two* beats per measure 3 = *three* beats per measure 4 = *four* beats per measure
Bottom number	2 = one *half note* makes up the beat unit 4 = one *quarter note* makes up the beat unit 8 = one *eighth note* makes up the beat unit 16 = one *sixteenth note* makes up the beat unit *and so on*

A meter signature of $\frac{3}{4}$ indicates three beats in each measure and that the quarter note is assigned the beat. Since Example 1B.13B1 is felt strongly in three, a "3" would appear as the upper number. The basic beat is the quarter note (the piece begins with three quarter notes in the left hand (and attendant division by eighth notes); thus a "4" would appear as the lower number. Similarly, since Example 1B.13B2 is also felt in three, albeit a fast three, and the eighth note is the basic pulse, the meter signature would be $\frac{3}{8}$.

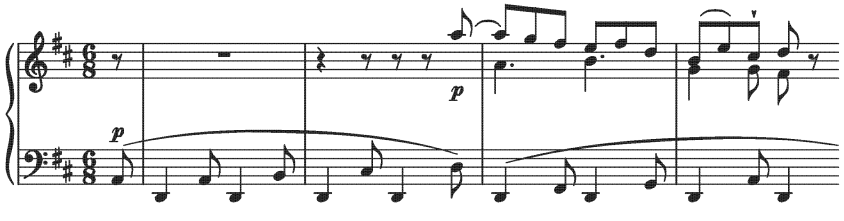
Common simple meter signatures include $\frac{3}{8}$, $\frac{4}{8}$, $\frac{2}{4}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, and $\frac{4}{4}$; $\frac{2}{2}$, $\frac{3}{2}$, and $\frac{4}{2}$; where the eighth note, the quarter note, and the half note, respectively, are the beat unit and measures contain two, three, and four beats. Two simple meter signatures do not use numbers: C and ¢. C stands for $\frac{4}{4}$ and is sometimes known as **common time**. The ¢ stands for $\frac{2}{2}$ and is known as **cut time** or ***alla breve***. Both these symbols were used before meter signatures with numbers were established.

Meter Signatures for Compound Meters

One determines the meter signature for compound meters in a slightly different way than one would determine simple meter signatures. Because we do not have numbers that can represent dotted notes, we choose to represent *beat divisions* (rather than beats) in the meter signature.

Consider Example 1B.15, where Beethoven employs the dotted quarter as the beat unit (two per measure to create the duple meter). Its three eighth-note divisions create a lilting effect that contributes to the *pastorale*, outdoors feeling.

EXAMPLE 1B.15 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in D major, op. 28, "Pastorale," *Rondo, Allegro ma non troppo*



Beethoven's meter signature of $\frac{6}{8}$ seems quite unable to represent the actual two-beat measures (and compound division). The disparity arises because it is not possible to represent the dotted-value beat units that characterize compound meters (e.g., dotted quarter and dotted half). The

solution, then, is to *show the total number of beat divisions per measure, in the time signature, leaving the performer the job of determining the actual number of beats within a measure.* This is accomplished by dividing the upper number by three (since compound meters divide the beat into threes). To determine the beat unit, divide the lower number by 2: the 8 (of $\frac{6}{8}$) would be 4. However, one must remember that this quarter note is dotted (Example 1B.16).

EXAMPLE 1B.16 Meter Signatures for Compound Meter

Top number	6 = *two* **dotted** beats per measure 9 = *three* **dotted** beats per measure 12 = *four* **dotted** beats per measure
Bottom number	2 = three *half notes* make up the beat unit (𝅗𝅥.) 4 = three *quarter notes* make up the beat unit (♩.) 8 = three *eighth notes* make up the beat unit (♪.) 16 = three *sixteenth notes* make up the beat unit (𝅘𝅥𝅯.) *and so on*

The chart in Example 1B.17 shows the most common simple and compound meters for duple, triple, and quadruple accent patterns. Notice that all meters with an upper number of 4 or smaller are simple (e.g., 2, 3, 4) and that all compound meters contain an upper number of 6 or larger (e.g., 6, 9, 12).

EXAMPLE 1B.17

Common duple meters:

simple: $\frac{2}{4}$ and $\frac{2}{2}$ compound: $\frac{6}{8}$ and $\frac{6}{4}$

Common triple meters:

simple: $\frac{3}{4}$ and $\frac{3}{2}$ compound: $\frac{9}{8}$ and $\frac{9}{16}$

Common quadruple meters:

simple: $\frac{4}{4}$ and $\frac{4}{2}$ compound: $\frac{12}{8}$ and $\frac{12}{4}$

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1B.2–1B.3

1B.3 Beat Groupings in Simple and Compound Meters

A. Provide the note value for divisions of the following beats, and specify whether the meter is simple or compound.

Solution: beat = ♩. division = compound / simple or compound

1. beat = ♪ division = ☐ _____ simple or compound?

SOLVED/APP 6

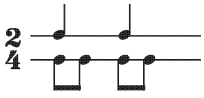
2. beat = ♪. division = ☐ _____ simple or compound?

SOLVED/APP 6

3. beat = 𝅗𝅥 division = ☐ _____ simple or compound?

4. beat = 𝅝· division = ☐ _____ simple or compound?

B. The meter type and beat are given. Provide a meter signature, and notate one full measure of the given rhythm and the division of the given beat.

Sample solution: simple duple: ♩ = 1 beat 

1. compound duple: ♩. = 1 beat _____

SOLVED/APP 6

2. simple triple: ♪ = 1 beat _____

3. simple quadruple: ♩ = 1 beat _____

4. simple quadruple: 𝅗𝅥 = 1 beat _____

SOLVED/APP 6

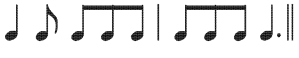
5. compound triple: ♪. = 1 beat _____

1B.4 Determining Meter

Supply an appropriate meter signature for each of the following examples. Consider both the number of beats in each measure and their division and subdivision. *Hint:* Consider the beaming patterns.

SOLVED/APP 6

A.

B. 

C.

D.

SOLVED/APP 6

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

J.

Intervals

In our discussion of scales in Appendix 1A, we explored various relationships between pairs of pitches. We call a pair of pitches a **dyad**, and the distance between the pitches in a dyad is an **interval**—the basic building block of tonal music. The one-measure excerpt in Example 1C.1A contains dozens of intervals, some formed between pitches in the same voice, others formed between pitches sounding simultaneously between different voices. Example 1C.1B shows the six intervals in the first beat.

EXAMPLE 1C.1 Handel, Concerto Grosso in C minor, op. 6, no. 8, HWV 326, *Allegro*

A. B.

Naming Generic Intervals

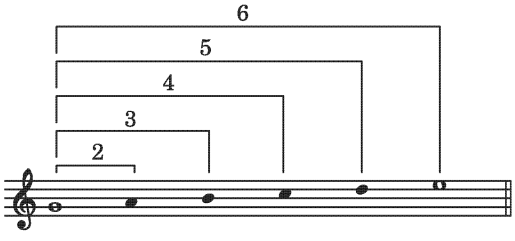
The distance between one pitch and any other pitch is represented by a number derived from the number of pitch letter names that separate the two notes. The distance is measured by the number of lines or spaces on the staff that are spanned. (When we *speak* of intervals, we use the ordinal number, such as third, fifth, and seventh. When we label intervals, we use cardinal numbers, such as 3, 5, and 7.) The numerical label that identifies the distance between letter names is called the **generic** name.

We have focused on those intervals that are formed by successive scale degrees in major and minor scales. The distance between adjacent scale degrees, or steps, is called a second because it involves two successive letter names (for example, A up to B or E down to D). Example 1C.2A presents the interval from G^4 up to E^5. Given that there are six different letter names involved, G–A–B–C–D–E, we refer to the interval as a sixth. *Notice that we compute the generic size by including both the first and last notes.* Further, contour

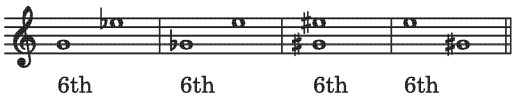
and accidentals do not change an interval's generic size. For example, whether you ascend from G^4 to E^5 or descend from E^5 to G^4, the interval remains a sixth; and no matter what combination of G (G♮, G♯, G♭) up to E (E♮, E♯, E♭), all are sixths (Example 1C.2B).

EXAMPLE 1C.2 Generic Sixths

A.



B.



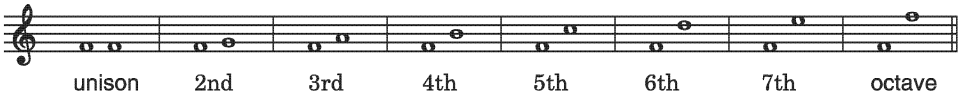
Melodic and Harmonic Intervals: Simple and Compound

When one pitch follows another in time, the interval is called a **melodic interval**, or linear interval. We specify the direction, or **contour**, of the interval by reading from left to right. For example, the first interval in Example 1C.2B is an "ascending sixth" and the last interval is a "descending sixth." If the two pitches sound simultaneously, as in the sixth formed by G♯ and E♯, the interval is called a **harmonic interval**. You cannot specify contour for harmonic intervals because they sound together.

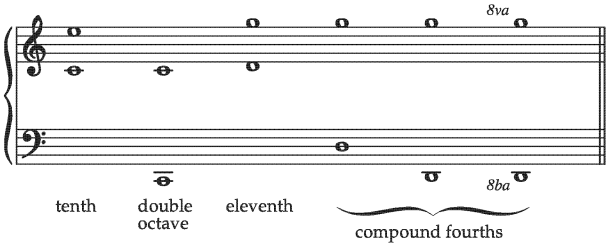
The smallest interval is the **unison**, or **prime**; it is the interval from a pitch to the same pitch—for example, the distance from middle C to middle C. The **octave** is the interval from a pitch to the pitch with the same letter name that lies seven steps away.

Intervals no larger than the octave are called **simple intervals** (Example 1C.3). Intervals larger than the octave are called **compound intervals**. Since the labeling of compound intervals can become cumbersome (for example, the distance from C^2 to C^4 would be an unwieldy "fifteenth"), we use the names of these larger intervals only up to the distance of a twelfth. We use the simple form names for intervals larger than the twelfth, but append the adjective "compound" before the generic size. Thus, the interval from C^4 to E^5 is a tenth, while the interval from C^2 to C^4 is a compound octave. (You can also use "octave plus" instead of "compound"; the distance from D^4 to B^5 is either a "compound sixth" or an "octave plus a sixth.") See Example 1C.4.

EXAMPLE 1C.3 Simple Intervals



EXAMPLE 1C.4 Compound Intervals

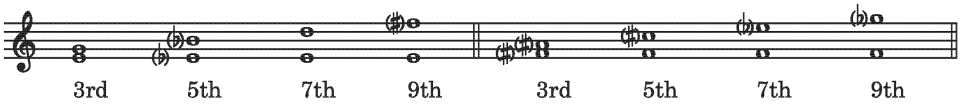


Tips for Identifying Generic Intervals

Here are some techniques for quickly determining intervals up to a twelfth for pitches in the treble or bass clef. If the pitches are both on lines or both on spaces, they will form an odd-numbered interval (i.e., 1, 3, 5, 7, 9). For example, a third is formed when pitches are on adjacent lines or spaces, and a fifth is formed when one line or one space separates the two pitches. This technique works when accidentals precede the notes (Example 1C.5).

EXAMPLE 1C.5 Odd-Numbered Intervals in Various Clefs and with Accidentals

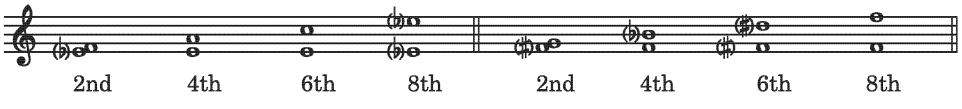
(*Note:* Both pitches on lines or both pitches on spaces form odd intervals: 3, 5, 7, 9.)



By contrast, if one of the pitches falls on a line and the other falls on a space, the result will be an even-numbered interval (i.e., 2, 4, 6, 8, 10). For example, pitches on an adjacent line and space form a second, and an interval occurring on a line and a space that is separated by one line is a fourth. Two lines separating an interval will result in a sixth, and three lines separating an interval produce an octave (Example 1C.6).

EXAMPLE 1C.6 Even-Numbered Intervals in Various Clefs and with Accidentals

(*Note:* One pitch on a line and one pitch on a space form even intervals: 2, 4, 6, 8, 10.)



Naming Specific Intervals

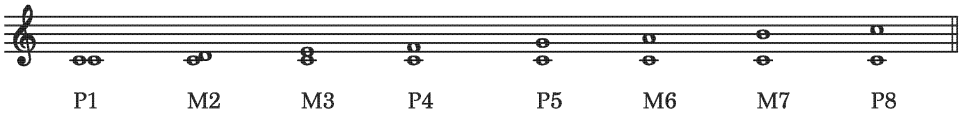
A generic label is usually not specific enough to be of much use. For example, the label *second* does not differentiate between what we already know from our scale studies to be an interval that comes in three different sizes, spanning one half step (between $\hat{3}$ and $\hat{4}$ in major), two half steps (between $\hat{1}$ and $\hat{2}$), and even three half steps (between $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ in harmonic minor). Further, and more importantly, a generic label in no way reflects the audible differences in sound between these various forms of a second.

Comparing the sound of a harmonic second with only one semitone against seconds with two or three semitones is striking, since the smaller second sounds more unstable and harsher than the larger seconds. We must identify intervals not only by their generic name, but also by their **quality**; together, the generic name and quality produces their **specific size**.

Using the major and minor scales, we can identify intervals precisely. We group intervals into two basic categories: **perfect** (P) and **major** (M)**/minor** (m). In Example 1C.7, each interval of the C major and C natural minor scale above $\hat{1}$ is identified by a generic name in conjunction with a modifier (here, uppercase P or uppercase M or lowercase m):

EXAMPLE 1C.7

A. Specific Intervals Above $\hat{1}$ in the Major Scale



B. Specific Intervals Above $\hat{1}$ in the Minor Scale

- P designates a perfect interval (which includes the unison (P1), the fourth (P4), the fifth (P5), and the octave (P8). *Perfect intervals retain their specific size in both major and minor modes.*
- Uppercase M designates major intervals, and lowercase m designates minor intervals; major and minor are applied to seconds, thirds, sixths, and sevenths. *Major intervals occur above the tonic in the major scale, and minor intervals occur above the tonic in the minor scale* (except for the second from $\hat{1}$ to $\hat{2}$, which is major).

Note that not all intervals are generated from $\hat{1}$ in major and natural minor scales. We will investigate other **diatonic intervals** (intervals found in either major or minor mode) later in this appendix.

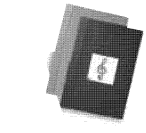
To find the specific size of a diatonic interval, follow this two-stage process:

1. Determine the generic size of the interval.
2. Determine whether the interval's upper pitch is a member of the major or the minor scale of the lower pitch.

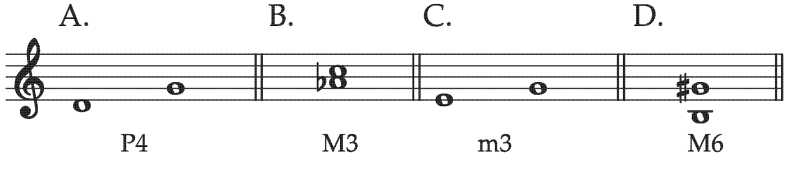
Example 1C.8 presents several examples.

- In Example 1C.8A, the generic interval size is a fourth (D–E–F–G). The upper pitch, G, lies in the scale of D (major and minor), so the interval is a perfect fourth.
- In Example 1C.8B, C is a third above A♭ (A♭–B–C) and C is a member of the A♭-major scale, so the interval is a major third.
- In Example 1C.8C, G lies a third above E, and G is a member of the E-minor scale, so the interval is a minor third.
- In Example 1C.8D, G♯ lies a sixth above B, and since G♯ is a member of the B-major scale, the interval is a major sixth.

EXAMPLE 1C.8



WORKBOOK 1
App. 1C.1



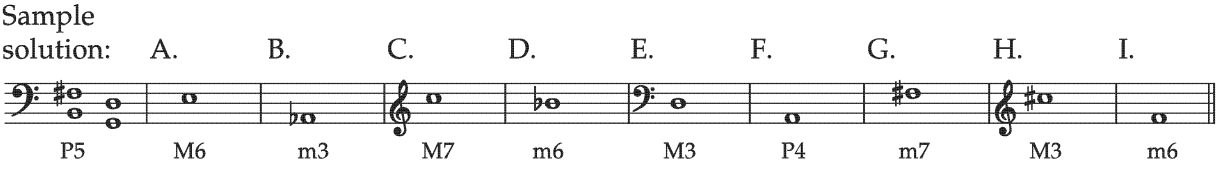
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

1C.1 Generating Diatonic Intervals

- Notate the required interval above each given pitch.
- Transpose each interval a major third lower than written.

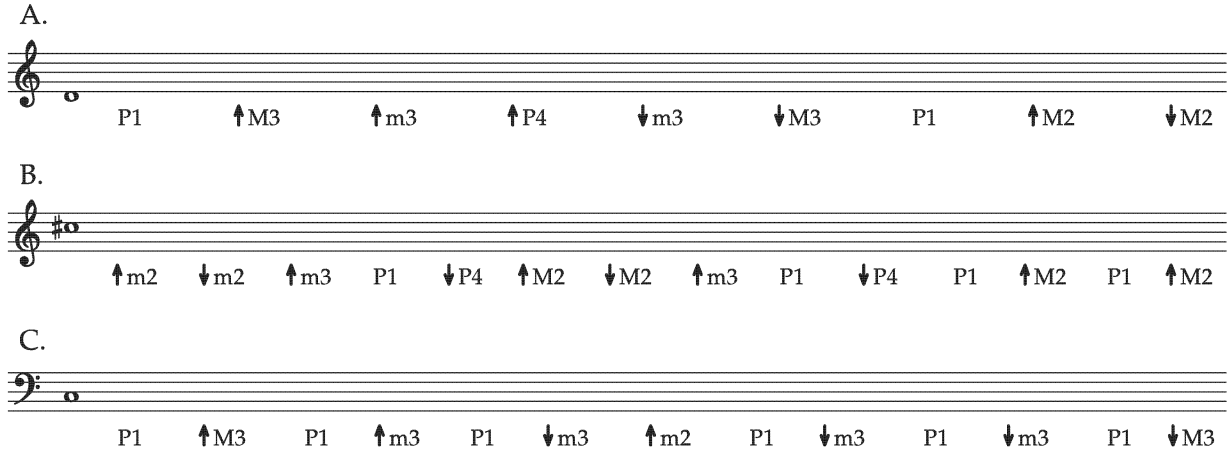
Sample solution:



1C.2

Given the following series of intervals, notate the pitches, beginning on the given pitch. You will create a melody that you probably know. Arrows indicate the direction of the interval. Once you recognize the tune, add appropriate key and meter signatures and rhythmic values. Finally, transpose

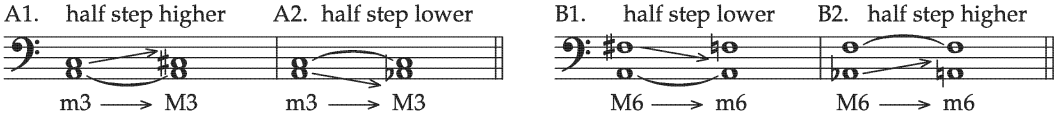
each tune up a major third using two methods. The first method is by scale degree (e.g., if you are in D major and find yourself on the pitch A, you know that it is $\hat{5}$ in D. If you wish to transpose a line that contains this pitch up a major third, then you would be in the key of F♯, and $\hat{5}$ in F♯ is C♯). The second method is by interval (e.g., given the pitch A in the key of D, the pitch a major third higher than A is C♯).



Transforming Intervals: Augmented and Diminished Intervals

Because minor intervals are a half step smaller than major intervals, you can transform any minor interval into a major interval by *increasing* its size by a half step, by either raising the upper note or lowering the bottom note. Example 1C.9A increases the size of a m3 to a M3 by raising the upper note a half step (A1) or lowering the bottom note a half step (A2). Likewise, a major interval can be transformed into a minor interval by *decreasing* the size of the major interval by a half step. In this case, the upper note can be lowered by a half step or the lower note can be raised by a half step. Example 1C.9B1 decreases the size of a M6 to a m6 by lowering the upper note, and B2 decreases the M6 to a m6 by raising the lower note a half step.

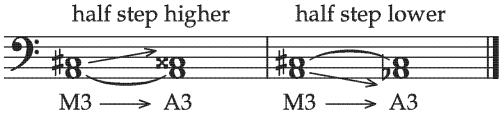
EXAMPLE 1C.9 Increasing and Decreasing the Size of Minor and Major Intervals



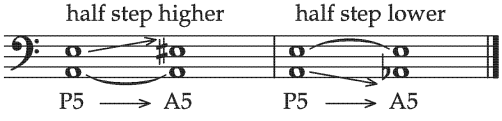
Further, it is possible to *increase* the size of major and perfect intervals by a half step (Example 1C.10A and B), resulting in **augmented intervals**. We can also *decrease* the size of minor and perfect intervals (Example 1C.10C and D), resulting in **diminished intervals** (Example 1C.10A–D). We find several augmented and diminished intervals in major and minor scales (Example 1C.10E).

EXAMPLE 1C.10 Augmenting and Diminishing Intervals

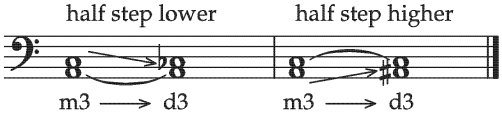
A. Augmenting a M3



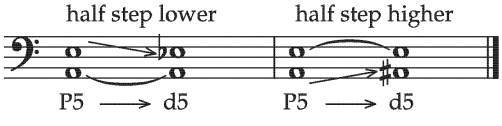
B. Augmenting a P5



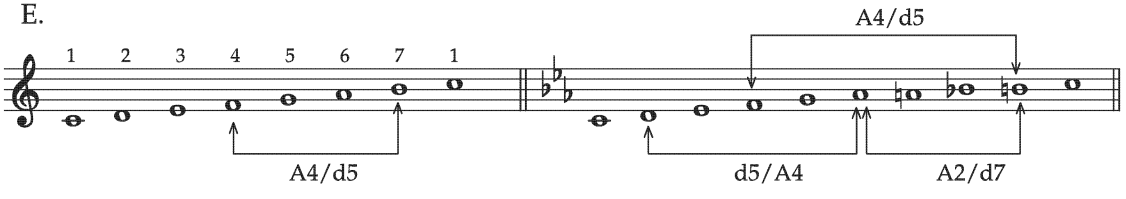
C. Diminishing a m3



D. Diminishing a P5



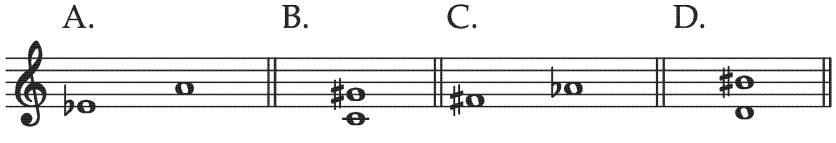
E.



Major, minor, and perfect intervals can all become augmented or diminished (except for the unison, which can only be augmented). *However, major and minor intervals can never become perfect, and perfect intervals can never become major or minor.*

The complete list of labels and abbreviations that reflect an interval's quality are as follows: *P* for perfect, *M* for major, *m* for minor, *A* (or +) for augmented, and *d* (or °) for diminished. Let's work through four intervals for practice (Example 1.C11).

EXAMPLE 1C.11



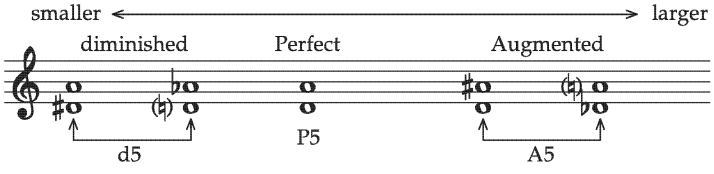
- In Example 1C.11A, the fourth (E♭ up to A) is not perfect, since A♭, not A♮, lies in the E♭ scale. Since the interval is a half step larger than a perfect fourth, it is an augmented fourth (A4 or +4).

- In Example 1C.11B, the fifth (C up to G♯) is also not perfect, since G, not G♯, lies in the C scale. The interval is a half step larger than a perfect fifth; therefore, the interval is an augmented fifth (A5 or +5).
- In Example 1C.11C, A♭ is not a member of either the F♯-major or F♯-minor scale; it is a half step smaller than a minor third, so the interval is a diminished third (d3 or °3).
- In Example 1C.11D, B♯ is a half step higher than B♮, which lies in the D-major scale. Since D to B♮ is a major sixth, D to B♯ would be an augmented sixth (A6 or +6).

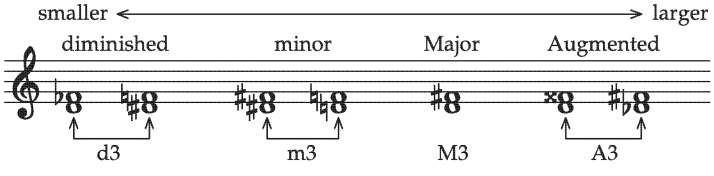
Example 1C.12A shows how perfect intervals may be increased or decreased in size and Example 1C.12B summarizes how major and minor intervals may be increased or decreased in size.

EXAMPLE 1C.12

A. Transforming **Perfect** Intervals (P1, P4, P5, P8)



B. Transforming **Major** and **Minor** Intervals (M/m2, M/m3, M/m6, M/m7)



Interval Inversion

When we move the lower pitch of a simple interval up one octave so that it is placed above the higher pitch, we have **inverted** the interval. Inversion also occurs when we place the higher pitch of a simple interval below the lower pitch. Example 1C.13A shows what happens when we invert generic intervals; Example 1C.13B does the same for an interval's quality. Arrows represent the inversion process; the inversion process can move in either direction (e.g., a second becomes a seventh, or vice versa). Notice that the inversion of *generic* intervals always sums to 9 (e.g., a third becomes a sixth: 3 + 6 = 9). Also notice in Example 1C.13B that perfect intervals retain their quality when inverted. However, quality is swapped for augmented/diminished and major/minor intervals.

EXAMPLE 1C.13 Inverting Intervals

A. Generic Interval Inversion

unison ⟷ octave (1 + 8 = 9)

second ⟷ seventh (2 + 7 = 9)

third ⟷ sixth (3 + 6 = 9)

fourth ⟷ fifth (4 + 5 = 9)

B. Quality

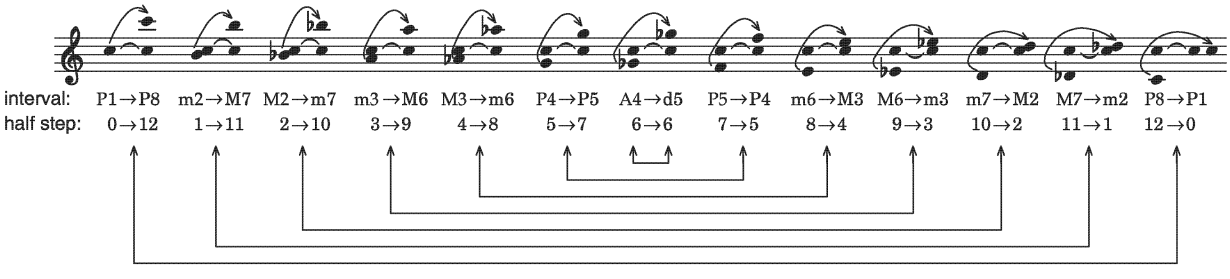
Perfect ⟷ Perfect

Augmented ⟷ diminished

Major ⟷ minor

Finally, the number of *half steps* between inversionally related intervals always sums to 12 [for example, the single half step of the minor second becomes 11 half steps when inverted as a major seventh (1 + 11 = 12)]. Example 1C.14 shows the resulting pattern. There is only one inversional pair of intervals whose number of half steps remains the same following inversion: both the diminished fifth and the augmented fourth contain six half steps. The augmented fourth is a **tritone**, since it contains three whole steps; we also refer to the diminished fifth as a tritone, even though it actually spans five letter names (e.g., B–C–D–E–F). Notice also how inversionally related pairs of intervals in effect "repeat" themselves in reverse order from the center point A4/d5; for example, the P4/P5 pair becomes a P5/P4 pair.

EXAMPLE 1C.14



WORKBOOK 1
App. 1C.2–1C.3

Play each inversionally related pair of intervals, noticing how their sound quality and level of stability remain relatively the same. For example, the inversional pair of a minor second and a major seventh are both very unstable sounding, while a major third and a minor sixth are much more stable, and the octave and unison are absolutely stable.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

1C.3 Intervallic Transformations

A. Identify the following intervals when you increase their size by one half step without changing their generic name (e.g., a major second would become an augmented second, not a minor third).

1. M3
2. M2
3. P4
4. M6
5. d3
6. m7

B. Identify the following intervals when you decrease their size by one half step without changing their generic name.
1. m2
2. P5
3. A2
4. M6
5. A4
6. A3

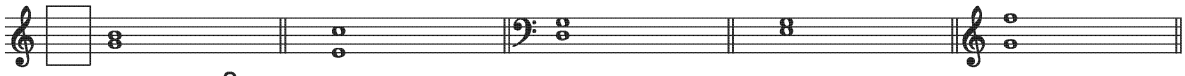
C. Identify the following intervals when you increase their size by two half steps without changing their generic name.
1. m2
2. d3
3. d5

D. Identify the following intervals when you decrease their size by two half steps without changing their generic name.
1. M6
2. A5
3. A2
4. M3

1C.4

Label the following intervals as they would occur in the given keys. You will need to consider the key signature of each key. An uppercase key name indicates major mode; a lowercase key name indicates minor mode. The first exercise is solved for you: in f♯ minor, there is a G♯, and G♯ up to B is a minor third.

Consider the key signature for each example.



f♯: m3	B: _____	B♭: _____	d: _____	D: _____
A: _____	A♭: _____	d: _____	D: _____	A♭: _____
C♯: _____	D: _____	A: _____	A: _____	F♭: _____
F: _____	F: _____	E♭: _____	f: _____	g♯: _____

Generating All Intervals

So far we have generated intervals only *above* a given pitch, a process based on (1) the generic size of the interval and (2) the quality (the specific size of the interval, based on whether the upper pitch lies in the major or minor scale of the lower pitch). When we create an interval *below* a given pitch, we still begin by calculating the generic size. However, to determine the

quality (i.e., whether any accidentals are needed) use one of the two following methods.

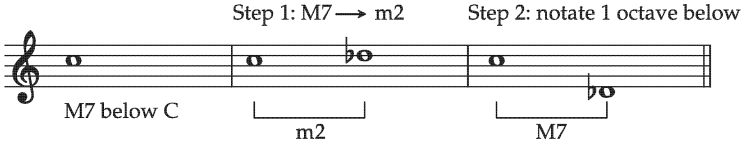
Method 1

This method draws on our knowledge of inversion and is especially helpful in constructing large intervals.

1. Take the requested interval and invert it so that you are looking for a note above the given pitch.
2. Find the appropriate note above the given pitch, using scale membership (i.e., determine if the upper note is a member of the major or minor scale of the lower pitch).
3. Transpose this inverted pitch down one octave.

For example, to find the pitch that lies a major seventh below C, first determine the inversion of a M7, which is a m2. Then, generate a m2 above C, which is D♭. Finally, notate D♭ one octave lower to create a major seventh below C. You may wish to check your work using our method of scale membership: C is indeed a seventh above D♭, since C is a member of the D♭-major scale. See Example 1C.15.

EXAMPLE 1C.15 Generating Intervals Through Inversion



Method 2

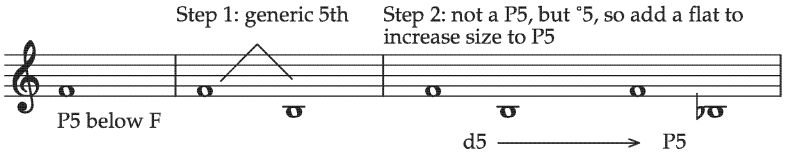
This method requires adjusting the lower pitch.

1. Count down by generic interval from the given pitch—do not worry about accidentals yet.
2. Determine the resulting specific interval using the scale membership.
3. If the interval you have constructed is the requested interval, you are finished! If not, add an accidental to the lower pitch to change the specific interval. If the interval is too small, add a flat to the lower pitch (which increases the size of the interval). If the interval is too large, add a sharp to the lower pitch (which decreases the size of the interval).

For example, given the pitch F, construct the interval of a perfect fifth below it. First, determine the generic fifth, which is B. Second, ask yourself whether or not F is a perfect fifth above B. If it is, you're done. However, F is a diminished fifth above B. Thus, we must lower B to B♭ to increase the diminished fifth to a perfect fifth. Again, check your work: F is indeed a perfect fifth above B♭. See Example 1C.16.

EXAMPLE 1C.16 Generating Intervals Through Chromatic Adjustment

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1C.4–1C.5



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

1C.5

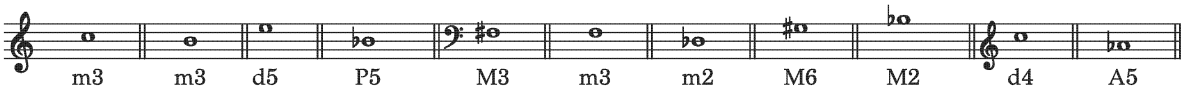
Name all possible intervals requested in the given key. For example, "In A major, name all possible perfect fifths." *Answer:* A–E, B–F♯, C♯–G♯, D–A, E–B, and F♯–C♯.

A. In F major, name all possible major seconds.
SOLVED/APP 6 B. In B♭ major, name all possible minor seconds.
SOLVED/APP 6 C. In the C harmonic minor scale, name all possible major thirds.
D. In F♯ major, name all possible minor sixths.

1C.6

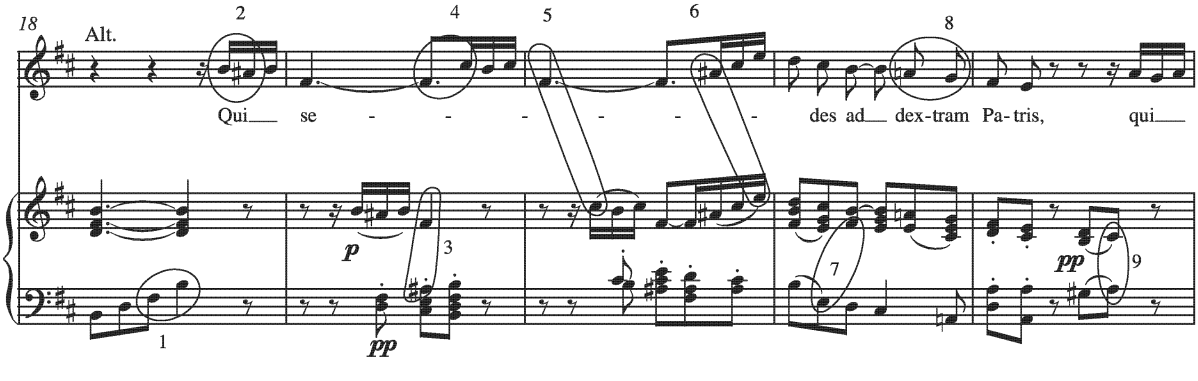
Notate the requested intervals *below* the given pitch, and label each interval's inversion.

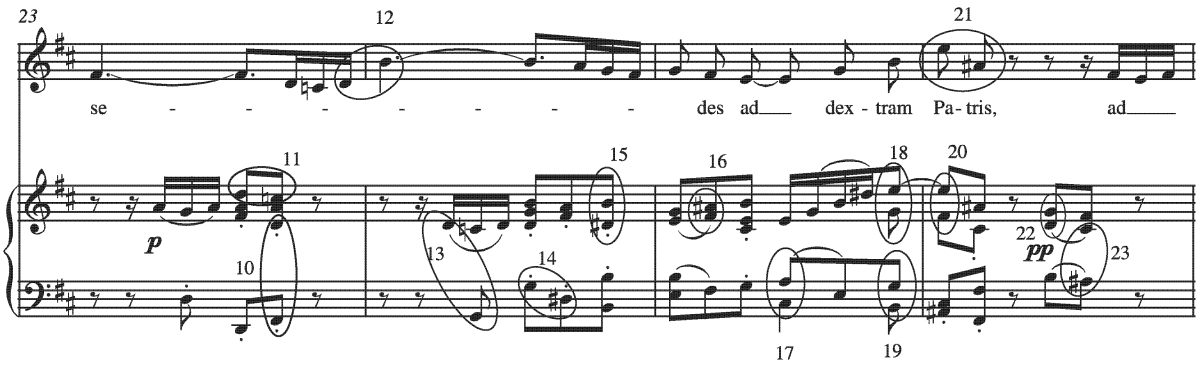
SOLVED/APP 6



ANALYSIS

1C.7 Identify the interval formed by each circled pair of pitches.





1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____
17. _____
18. _____
19. _____
20. _____
21. _____
22. _____
23. _____

Triads, Inversions, Figured Bass, and Harmonic Analysis

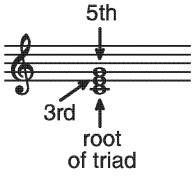
So far, our studies have led us through basic pitch and rhythmic concepts. We now move into the third building block of tonal music: harmony.

Triads

The combination of three or more different pitches creates a **chord**, the basic unit of harmonic organization in music. Although the combination of any three different pitches can create a chord, certain combinations—specifically those based on the interval of a third—are of special importance in tonal music. Chords that comprise three distinct pitches stacked in thirds are called **triads**, while chords that have four distinct pitches stacked in thirds are called **seventh chords**. We discuss triads in this appendix, seventh chords in Appendix 1E.

Triads are identified by the lowest pitch name in a stack (Example 1D.1). When a triad is stacked in thirds as in Example 1D.1, we say that the chord is in **root position**, and the lowest pitch is called the **root** of the chord. The note a third above the root is called the **third**; the note a fifth above the root is called the **fifth**.

EXAMPLE 1D.1 A Triad on C



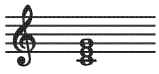
Using the diatonic thirds—major and minor—we can build four types (or **qualities**) of triads above a given root (Example 1D.2A). **Major** (**M**) and **minor** (**m**) triads are so called because of the quality of the interval between the root and third. Both major and minor triads are **consonant triads**, because they span a consonant interval: a perfect fifth. By contrast, augmented and diminished triads are **dissonant triads**, because of their dissonant fifth: an

augmented (**A**) triad spans an augmented fifth; a **diminished** (**d**) triad spans a diminished fifth (Example 1D.2A). Example 1D.2B orders the four triad types from smallest intervals spanned (diminished) to largest (augmented).

EXAMPLE 1D.2 Four Types of Triad

A.

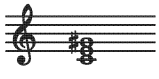
Major triad: M3 + m3



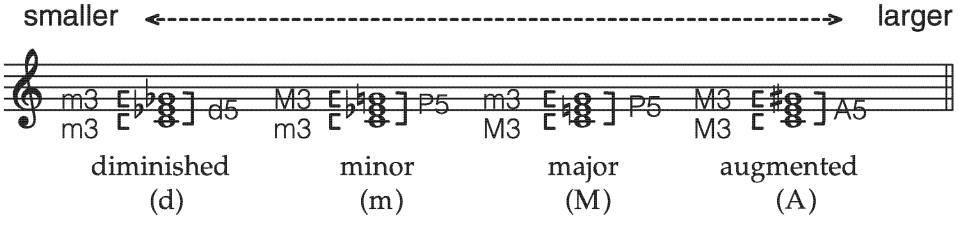
Minor triad: m3 + M3

Diminished triad: m3 + m3

Augmented triad: M3 + M3



B.

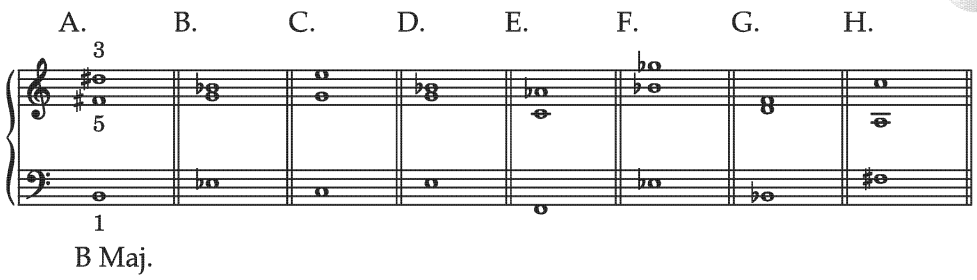


Only major, minor, and diminished triads are used as units of harmony in common-practice music. The augmented triad is not an independent sonority, but one that results from the convergence of contrapuntal lines; we explore this triad more fully in Chapter 29.

Voicing Triads: Spacing and Doubling

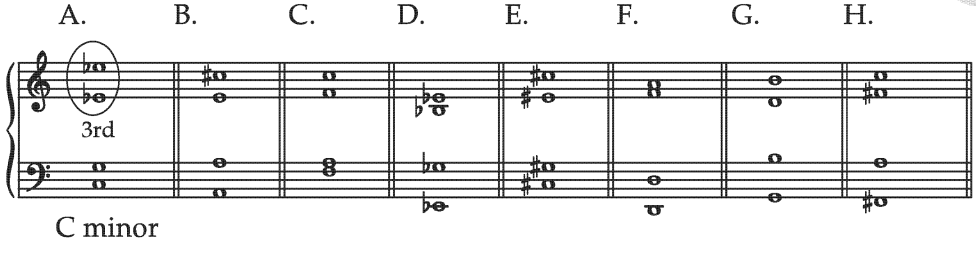
In Example 1D.2 the third and the fifth of each triad are arranged directly above the root. This tight **spacing** (or *voicing*) of chordal members—specifically between the three upper voices (soprano, alto, and tenor) of a four-voice structure—is called **close position**. However, the pitches of a triad do not always appear in close position. Instead, they might be variously distributed in register in order to create a different effect. When this occurs, the triad is in **open position**. Such spacing is generally wider between the lowest-sounding pitch and the pitches that appear above it because tightly spaced triads in the bass are hard to hear clearly. Listen to the sound of the root-position major, minor, and diminished triads in Example 1D.3. Carefully study each example, and label each triad's members using 1, 3, or 5 for root, third, or fifth. Notice that in Example 1D.3A, by placing the third above the fifth, a new interval (a sixth) arises between the notes of the upper voices.

EXAMPLE 1D.3 Triads in Open Spacing



Composers can thicken the sound of triads by increasing the number of voices and **doubling** one or more members of the triad. Doubling one member increases the number of sounded notes from three to four. The most stable member of the triad, the root, is the note most often doubled, though doubled fifths and thirds are also common. Example 1D.4 illustrates root-position triads in a four-voice texture with one member doubled. Identify the triad type, circle doubled pitches, and label their chordal membership.

EXAMPLE 1D.4 Root-Position Triads in Four-Voice Texture



Triad Inversion

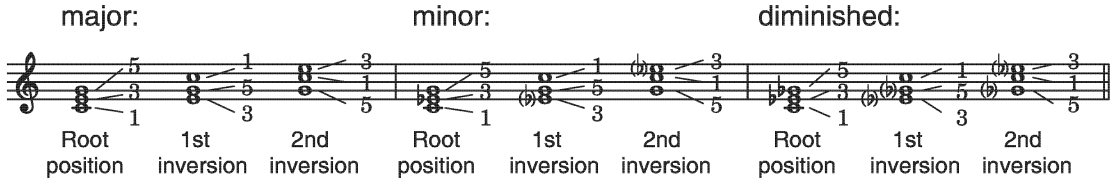
A triad is said to be **in root position** if the root is the lowest-sounding pitch, that is, if the root is in the bass. However, the root of a triad need not be the lowest-sounding note.

Either the third or the fifth may appear in the bass. When the third or the fifth of a triad appears in the bass, the triad is said to be in **inversion**. When the third of the triad appears in the bass, the chord is in **first inversion**. When the fifth is in the bass, the triad is in **second inversion**. Thus, *when triads are in first or second inversion, the root of the chord appears somewhere above the bass.*

Example 1D.5 contains examples of major, minor, and diminished triads in root position, first inversion, and second inversion. *It doesn't matter how the pitches above the bass are distributed; it is only the pitch in the bass that determines root position or an inversion.*

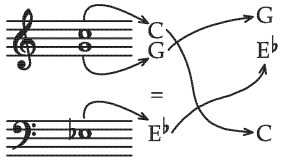
Root-position major and minor triads are stable by virtue of their perfect fifths (perfect consonances), while inverted triads are less stable because they are bound by sixths (imperfect consonances). This results in the listener desiring to hear them move forward toward a cadence, which usually arrives on a root-position triad.

EXAMPLE 1D.5 Triads and Their Inversions



Note

The *root* is the generating pitch on which a triad is built and the *bass* is the lowest-sounding pitch in a sonority. For example, in the sonority E♭–G–C, E♭ is the bass and C is the root. In order to identify a triad, stack its members in thirds.



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1D.1–1D.2

WRITING

1D.1 Writing Triads

Complete the following tasks on manuscript paper. Write odd-numbered exercises in treble clef, even-numbered exercises in bass clef.

A. Notate root-position major triads based on the following pitches:
1. A
SOLVED/APP 6 2. B
3. D
4. F
SOLVED/APP 6 5. B♭
6. F♯

B. Notate root-position minor triads based on the following pitches:
1. C
2. B
SOLVED/APP 6 3. G
4. E♭
5. B♭

C. Notate root-position diminished triads based on the following pitches:
1. D
SOLVED/APP 6 2. E
3. B♭
4. F♯
SOLVED/APP 6 5. B

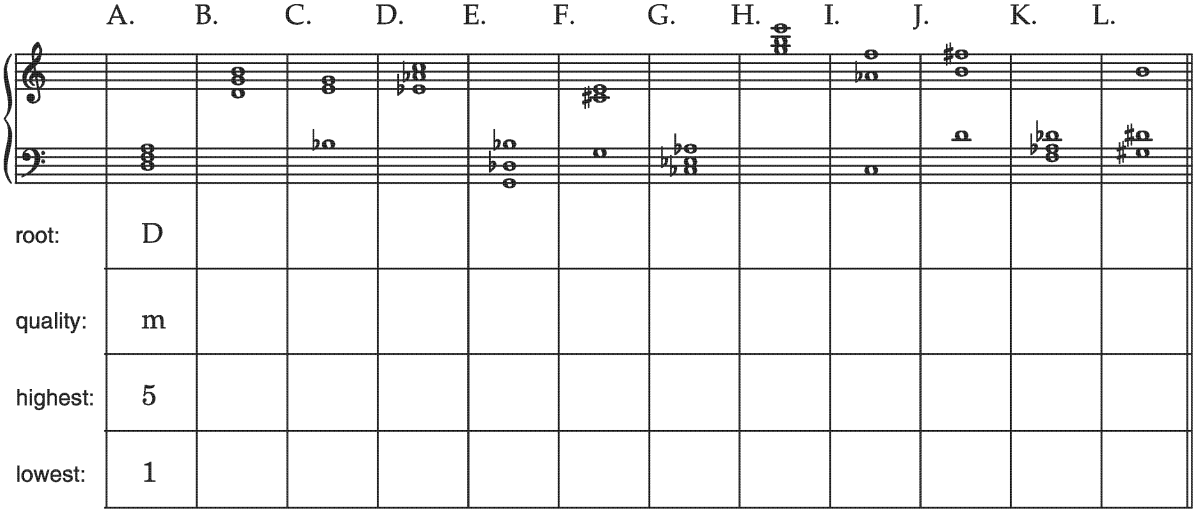
D. Given the triad quality of one member of the triad (root, third, or fifth), notate the complete triad in root position.

1. C is the third of what major triad? the fifth of what minor triad?
2. A♭ is the third of what major triad? the fifth of what diminished triad? SOLVED/APP 6
3. E is the third of what minor triad? the fifth of what major triad?
4. G is the third of what diminished triad? the fifth of what diminished triad?
5. F♯ is the third of what minor triad? the fifth of what minor triad? SOLVED/APP 6

ANALYSIS

1D.2

Each of the following triads appears in root position or inversion. Identify the root of the chord, quality (major, minor, or diminished), and the member of the chord that appears as the lowest and the highest pitch (root [1], third [3], or fifth [5]). SOLVED/APP 6



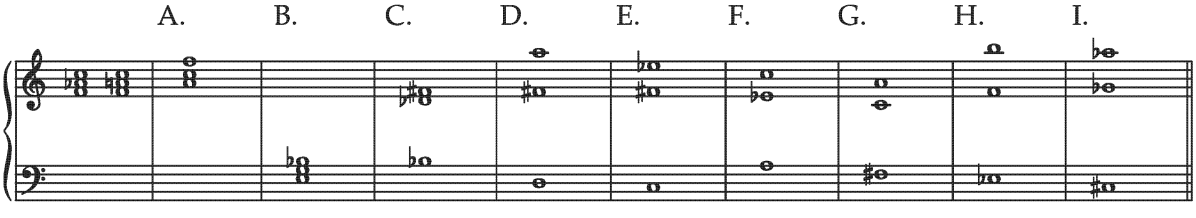
	A.	B.	C.	D.	E.	F.	G.	H.	I.	J.	K.	L.
root:	D											
quality:	m											
highest:	5											
lowest:	1											

ANALYSIS AND LISTENING

1D.3 Error Detection and Notation

The labels that appear beneath the following root-position and inverted triads do not agree with the pitches above each label. Renotate the pitches in order to agree with each label. SOLVED/APP 6

Sample solution:



A.	B.	C.	D.	E.	F.	G.	H.	I.
F Major	A Major	E minor	B♭ Major 1st inversion	D minor	C diminished	A♭ Major 2nd inversion	F♯ minor	E♭ Major	C♯ minor 1st inversion

Figured Bass

Many composers who were writing between 1600 and 1800 used a shorthand notation to describe the intervals above bass notes. This type of shorthand, known as **figured bass** (or sometimes *thoroughbass*), is a useful way of understanding chordal construction as well as the melodic movement between chords. Today, the lead-sheet symbols of jazz and popular music serve a similar purpose.

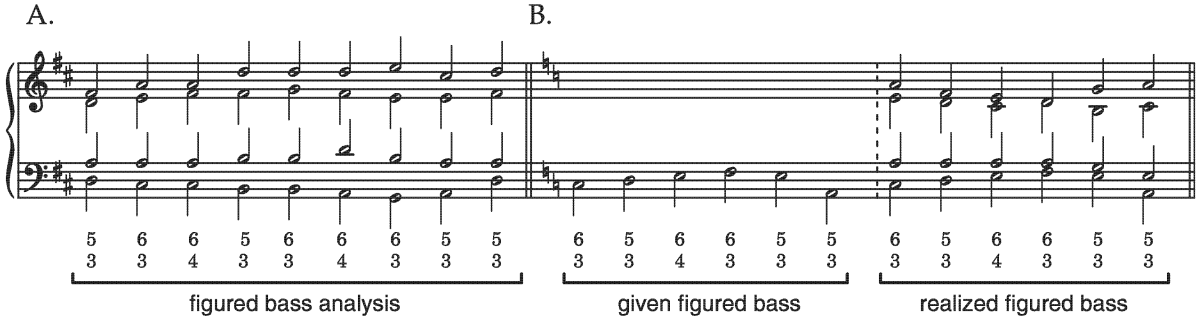
Analyzing and Composing Using Figured Bass

Figured bass is founded on the fact that the bass, the lowest-sounding voice, is harmonically the most important voice of any texture. To create a figured bass, count the generic (numerical) intervals that appear between the bass and the upper voices, from the top to the bottom, and list them from the largest to the smallest. For example, in a root-position triad, a third and a fifth sound above the bass; ordering these two intervals from the larger to the smaller gives a figured bass of $\frac{5}{3}$. Chords in first inversion are labeled $\frac{6}{3}$; chords in second inversion are $\frac{6}{4}$.

By convention, we place the larger number above the smaller one, so the numbers do not necessarily reflect the specific placement of the notes above the bass. Rather, they represent how the chord members would appear in close position. Using this system, a composer writes a bass note with figures, and the performer knows what notes are needed above the bass. The performer builds a chord with the specified intervals while always observing the prevailing key signature. For example, in the key of E major, an E in the bass with the figure $\frac{6}{3}$ would tell the performer to add C♯ and G♯, since these notes appear in the key signature.

Example 1D.6A shows how to analyze a given chordal structure in the key of D major using figured bass; Example 1D.6B shows how to fill out, or **realize**, a given bass with figures to create a succession of four-voice chords. (Notice the greater incidence of root-position triads as compared with inverted triads.) You will learn to work in both directions, *analytically* (from full harmony to figured bass) and *compositionally* (from figured bass to full harmony).

EXAMPLE 1D.6 Figured Bass: Analysis and Realization



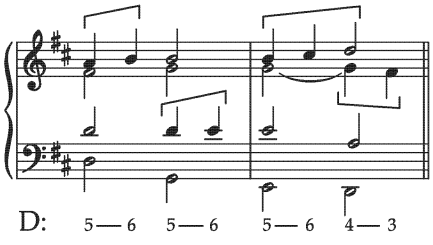
Additional Figured Bass Conventions: Abbreviations and Chromaticism

Because root-position and first-inversion triads are so common, their figured bass notation is often assumed or abbreviated. Normally the symbol $\frac{5}{3}$ is omitted entirely; thus the absence of a figure under a bass note signifies root

position. Similarly, 6 by itself is often used instead of $\frac{6}{3}$ for first inversion. However, second inversion is always written $\frac{6}{4}$.

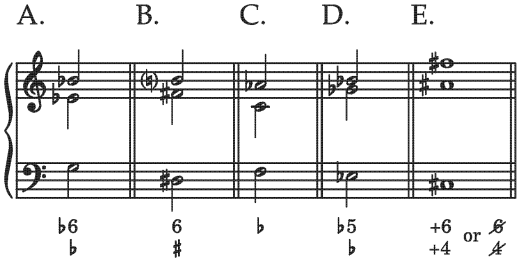
Figured bass also shows the melodic motion of individual voices, especially voices that move by step. For example, some of the triads that appear in Example 1D.7 seem to do so through melodic motion, which is shown in the figured bass: The D-major triad that begins the excerpt moves to a G-major triad on beat 3. However, the melodic motion A–B in the soprano can be shown in the figured bass: The A (a fifth above the bass) moves to B (a sixth above the bass). The figures "5—6" capture that motion, and the dash makes this melodic motion explicit. There are two more of these 5—6 motions in the example. In fact, we can even show dissonant melodic motion in a figured bass, as illustrated by the alto's G that is sustained past the change to the D chord. The G is a dissonant fourth above the bass, so we label its melodic behavior 4—3.

EXAMPLE 1D.7 Figured Bass Identifies Melodic Motion



If there is an accidental on a pitch above the bass, the same accidental is attached to the corresponding interval in the figured bass. These accidentals are called **chromatic alterations**. For example, a composer writing in the key of C major would indicate the E♭-major and B-major triads as shown in Example 1D.8. In Example 1D.8A, the "♭6" in the figured bass indicates that the E (a sixth above the bass) should have a flat; the "♭" by itself refers to the third above the bass (B, which becomes B♭). You need not indicate an accidental in the figured bass (such as the D♯ in Example 1D.8B); the figures apply only to the notes *above* the bass. Chromatic alterations in the figured bass are applied only to the pitches that appear directly above; they do not carry through the measure, as do accidentals that appear in the score.

EXAMPLE 1D.8 Chromatic Alterations



In the key of C major we would write the figured bass for a root-position F-minor triad and an E♭-minor triad as in Example 1D.8C and D. Since these are root-position triads, the figured bass $\frac{5}{3}$ normally would be assumed.

However, because of the chromatically altered third, we must show the accidental in the figured bass. Since the third is one of the assumed intervals, we simply abbreviate this figure with the accidental alone (although it is not uncommon to see the redundant "♯3" or "3♯"). Additional symbols include the plus sign (+) and the slash through a number (/), which raise the pitch to which the number refers one half step (Example 1D.8E).

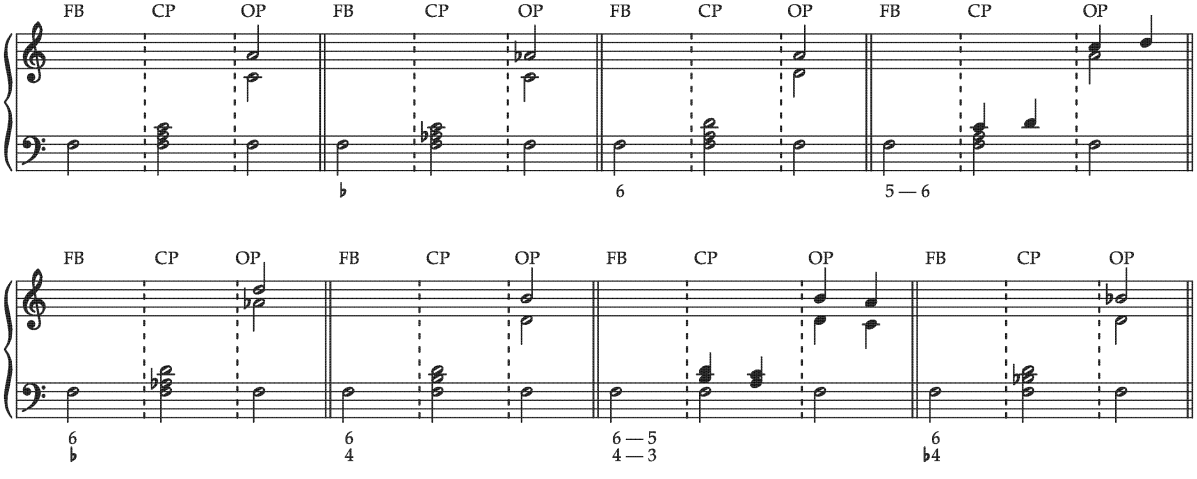
Following is a summary of the most common figured bass symbols for triads, followed by their shorthand abbreviations. Note that there is some redundancy, given that many of these notations are alternate ways to indicate the same thing.

- Accidentals that appear next to the figure:
  - ♭ the specified pitch has a flat accidental (this can also have the generic meaning of "lower by a half step")
  - ♯ the specified pitch has a sharp accidental (this can also have the generic meaning of "raise by a half step")
    - /, + raise by a half step
  - ♮ the specified pitch has a natural sign on it
- Accidentals appearing alone refer to the third above the bass.
- Chromaticism in the bass voice cannot—and need not—be shown in figured bass notation.
- The figures do not determine the registral placement of notes in the upper voices.
- Chromatic alterations in the figured bass apply only to the pitches that lie directly above the chromaticism—they do not carry through the measure.
- The dash (—) indicates that a single voice moves by the intervals indicated on each end of the dash.

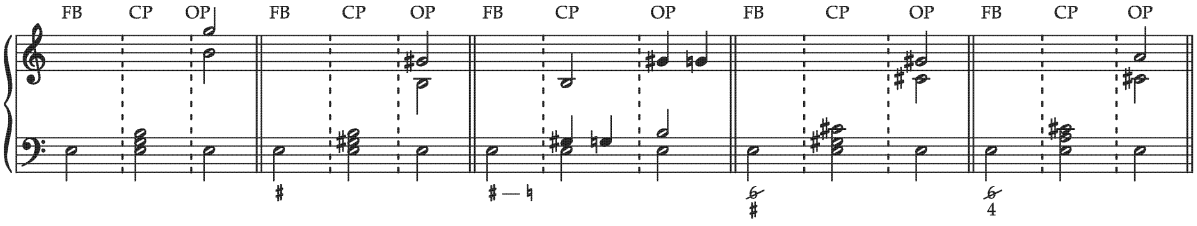
Example 1D.9 shows a sample of figured bass symbols and their realization using F^3 and E^3 in the bass, including various transformations of those bass notes.

EXAMPLE 1D.9 Figured Bass

(*FB* = figured bass; *CP* = close position; *OP* = open position)



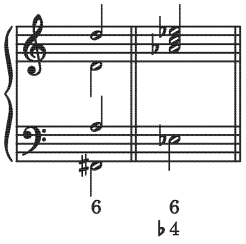
Continued



In keeping with the practice of abbreviations, compound intervals larger than a ninth are represented in figured bass notation by their smaller representative (for example, a tenth would be shown as a third). Usually it is not necessary to indicate doublings, and it is never necessary to indicate a chromatically altered octave, since it would be apparent from the given bass pitch (Example 1D.10). There are two Ds and one A written above the lowest note of the first chord (F♯), forming a sixth and a third above the bass. It is not necessary to account for the duplicate D. This is a $\frac{6}{3}$ chord with D as its root. In the next chord, the lowest note (E♭) supports the intervals of a fourth, a sixth, and an octave above. Again, we ignore the octave, which duplicates the bass. It is a $\frac{6}{4}$ chord with A♭ as its root.

EXAMPLE 1D.10 Chromatically Altered Bass Notes

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1D.3–1D.4



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

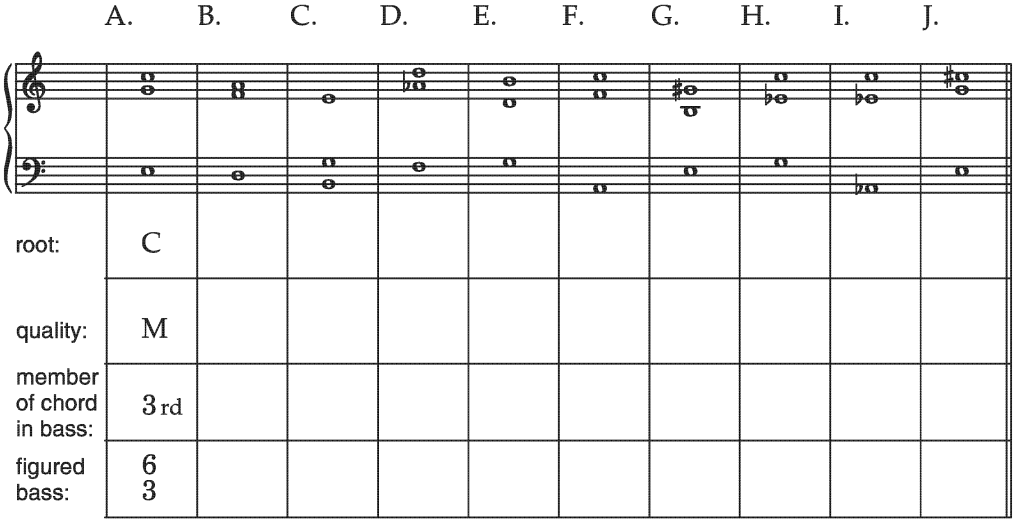
1D.4 Figured Bass Practice

The following triads are in root position or inversion. For each one, identify the following:

- the root
- the triad quality (major, minor, or diminished)
- the member of the chord that is in the bass—root (1), third (3), or fifth (5)
- the complete figured bass symbols. Remember that the figures reflect generic sizes of intervals, not exact sizes, and that they are written with the largest interval above the bass on top and smaller intervals below.

SOLVED/APP 6

Show chromatic alterations (consider there to be no key signature).

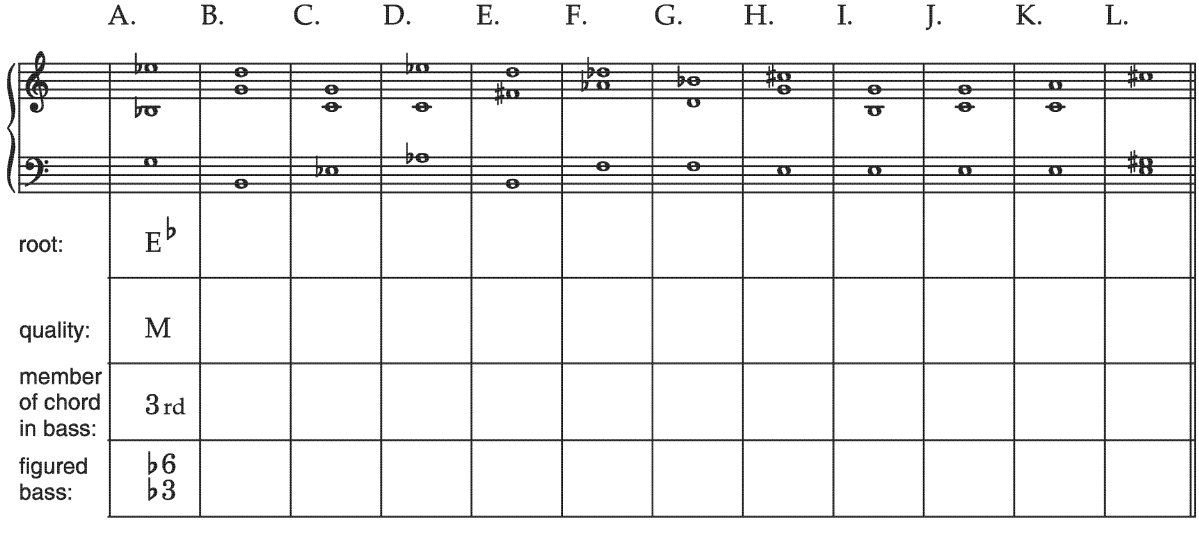


1D.5 Triads in Various Spacings

The three voices of the following root-position and inverted triads appear in various registers. For each one, identify:

- the root
- the quality of each
- the member of the chord that is in the bass—root (1), third (3), or fifth (5)

Also provide a complete figured bass analysis that shows any chromatic alterations (consider there to be no key signature).

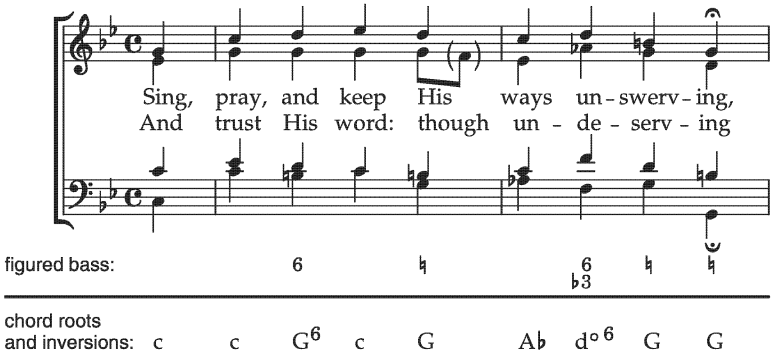


1D.6

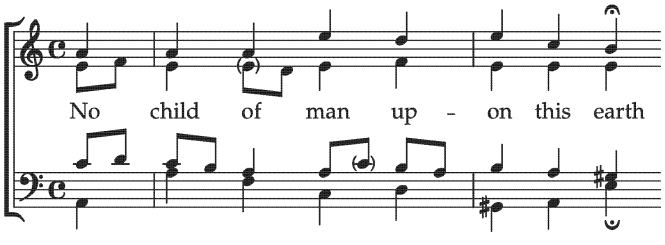
In this exercise, you will provide two pieces of information:

1. a figured bass (chromaticism above the bass must be shown);
2. the root of each chord. If the chord is inverted, include the appropriate inversion. Ignore pitches in parentheses.

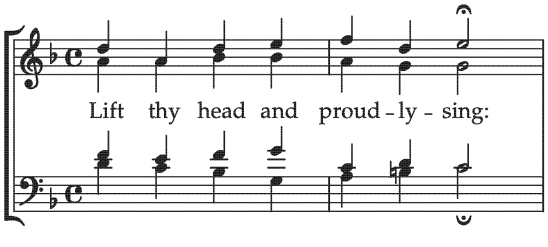
Sample solution:



A. Bach, "Kommt her zu mir, spricht Gottes Sohn"



B. Bach, "Schwing' dich auf zu deinem Gott"



C. Bach, "Nun lasst uns Gott dem Herren"

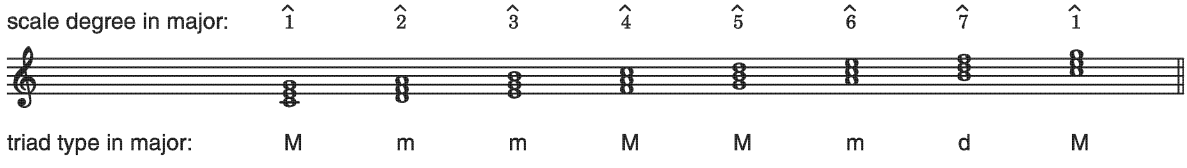
Triads and the Scale: Harmonic Analysis

Each scale degree of a major or minor scale can support a triad constructed of pitches from that scale. In all major keys, for example, $\hat{4}$ supports a major triad and $\hat{2}$ supports a minor triad. In C, these end up being F major and D minor. In the key of A♭, they would be D♭ major and B♭ minor.

Example 1D.11 illustrates which type of triad—major, minor, or diminished—occurs on each scale degree in the major mode. As you learn to recognize the sound of each individual triad, it is also important that you memorize the types of triads generated from each scale degree in major and minor scales. Note that the triads built on:

- The tonic ($\hat{1}$), the dominant ($\hat{5}$), and the subdominant ($\hat{4}$) are all major triads.
- The supertonic ($\hat{2}$), the mediant ($\hat{3}$), and the submediant ($\hat{6}$) triads are minor.
- The leading tone triad ($\hat{7}$) is the only dissonant chord; it is diminished.

EXAMPLE 1D.11 Scale Degrees and Triad Types in Major

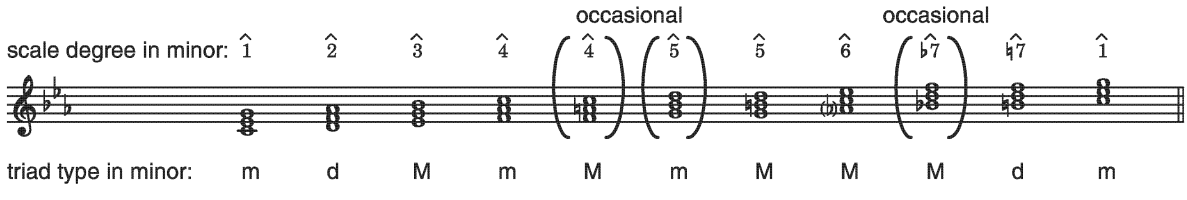


Because there are various forms of the minor scale (natural, harmonic, and melodic) many more possibilities result from the raised and lowered forms of $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$. Example 1D.12 summarizes the most common types of triads that occur in the minor mode. The submediant, $\hat{6}$, usually occurs in its lowered form in the minor scale, thereby affecting the triads in which it is used (that is, triads built on $\hat{2}$, $\hat{4}$, and $\hat{6}$). Although triads built on $\hat{5}$ and $\hat{7}$ are found in both their lowered and raised forms, the most common forms incorporate the leading tone.

In minor scales:

- Triads built on the tonic ($\hat{1}$) and the subdominant ($\hat{4}$) are minor.
- Triads built on the mediant ($\hat{3}$), the dominant ($\hat{5}$), the submediant ($\hat{6}$), and, occasionally, the subtonic (or lowered form of $\hat{7}$) are major.
- Diminished triads result from chords built on the supertonic ($\hat{2}$) and the leading tone (raised $\hat{7}$).

EXAMPLE 1D.12 Scale Degrees and Triad Types in Minor

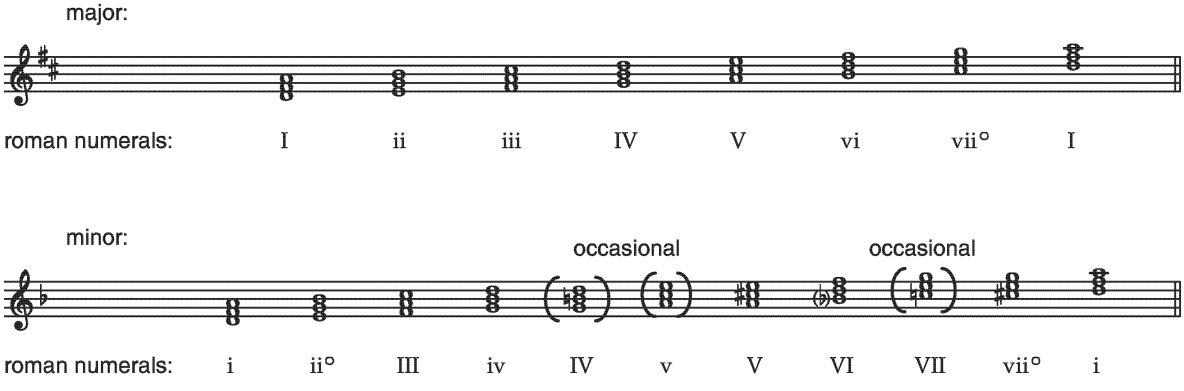


Roman Numerals

Individual pitches can be represented using scale degree numbers that identify their function within a given scale. Similarly, triads are represented by roman numerals that indicate the scale degree on which they are built. For example, a B♭-major triad in the key of F major is written as IV to show that it is built on the fourth scale degree in that key. Uppercase roman numerals are used for major triads; lowercase roman numerals are used for minor triads. Diminished triads are represented by lowercase roman numerals, with the addition of a small degree sign, "°."

Example 1D.13 shows the triads that occur on each scale degree for the keys of D major and D minor, with the appropriate roman numerals. Note that, given the various forms of the minor scale, it is possible to build two different triads on both $\hat{4}$ and $\hat{5}$ and two different triads (with two different roots) on $\hat{7}$.

EXAMPLE 1D.13 Roman Numerals in Major and Minor



Introduction to Harmonic Analysis

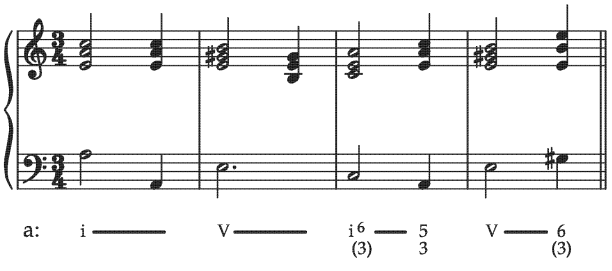
A complete harmonic analysis combines roman numerals and figured bass; we use a roman numeral to identify the root (by scale degree) and quality of a chord, and we use the figure from figured bass (usually without accidentals) to identify the inversion of the chord and melodic motion (such as 5–6 or 4–3). Here is a step-by-step procedure to follow:

1. *Determine the key of the exercise*, because the key signature alone implies two possible keys: either the major or the relative minor. A helpful hint is provided by chromatic alterations of pitches that often indicate leading tones in minor.
2. *Write out the letter name of the key*, immediately followed by a colon, at the beginning of the exercise, under the bass staff. Use uppercase letters to represent a major key and lowercase to represent a minor key (except for C major and minor, for which you will write "C maj." and "c min."
3. *Identify triad roots, using roman numerals under each harmony*. Note that in most cases, you do not have to calculate the quality of a chord; most of the diatonic chords have one distinct quality (e.g., IV in major usually appears as a major triad; review Example 1D.13). In minor keys, chords with $\hat{6}$ and $\hat{7}$ have different forms; you must determine which quality of chord is being used.

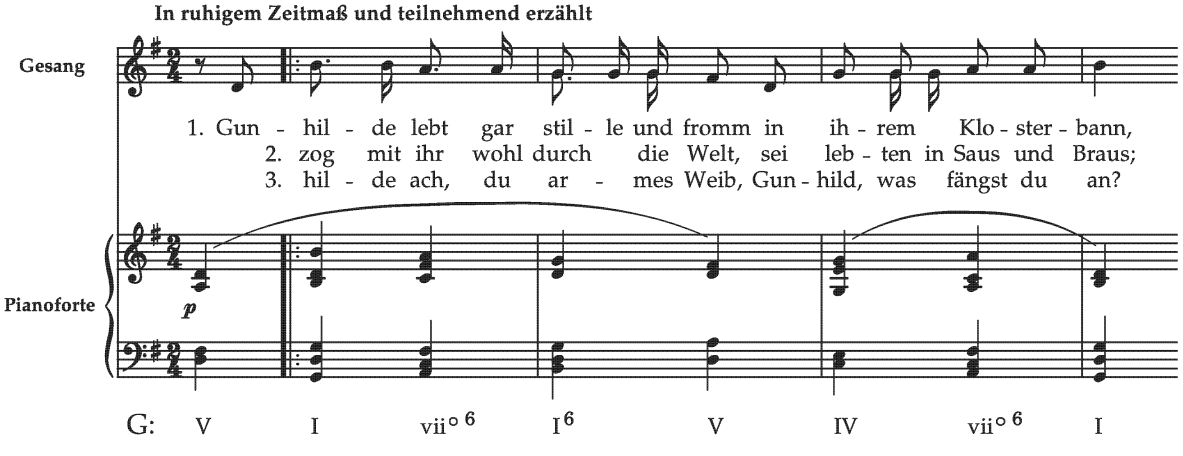
4. *Do not renotate the roman numeral if a chord is immediately repeated*; you can simply draw a horizontal line that indicates the harmony is repeated.
5. If the triad is in root position, you need do nothing more. If the triad is inverted, supply a figured bass. Use the abbreviation "6" for the figure "$\frac{6}{3}$." Example 1D.14 shows sample harmonic analyses.

EXAMPLE 1D.14

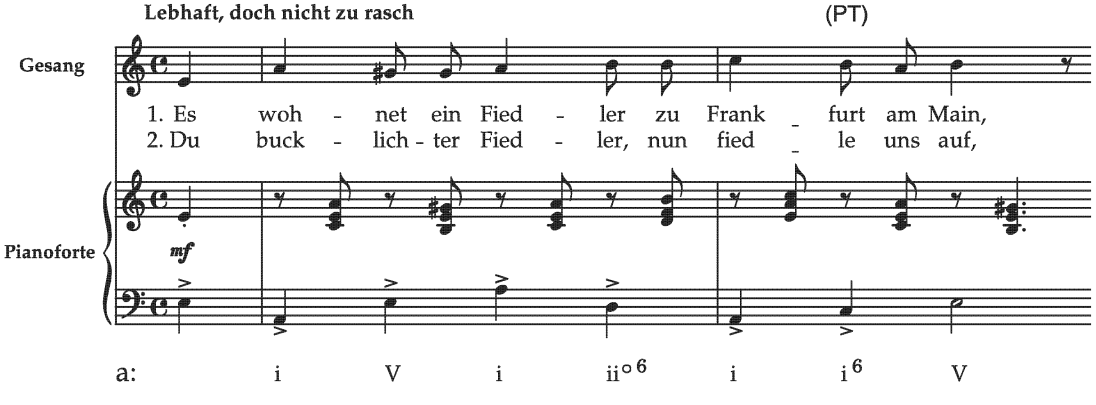
A.



B. Brahms, "Gunhilde," *German Folk Songs*, vol. 1



C. Brahms, "Es wohnet ein Fiedler," from *German Folk Songs*, vol. 6



WORKBOOK 1
App. 1D.5–1D.6

While roman numerals relate harmonies to a tonic (and can be considered a hierarchical analytical system), figured bass reveals how intervals connect one harmony to another (and is considered to be a highly context-sensitive analytical system).

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

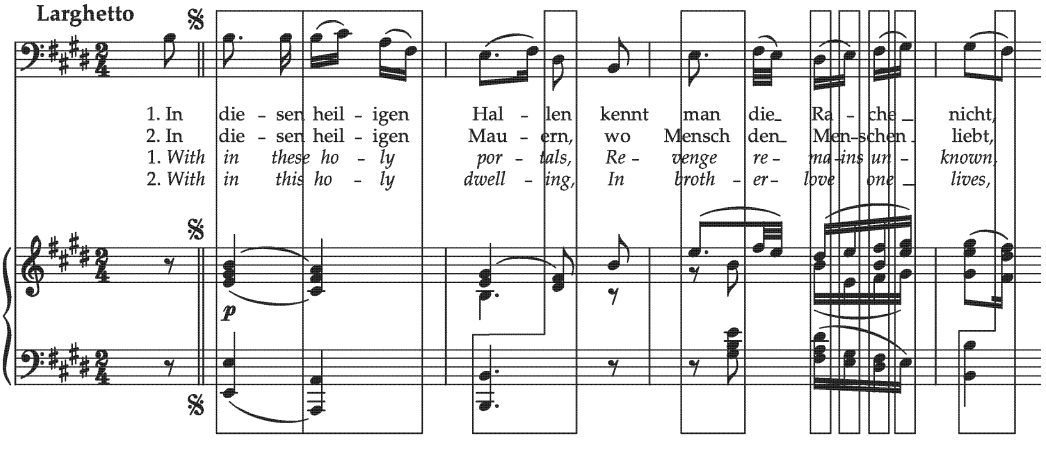
1D.7

Analyze using roman numerals, and provide a figured bass for each boxed chord.

Mozart, from *The Magic Flute*:

A. "Drei Knäbchen"

B. "In diesen heiligen Hallen"



SOLVED/APP 6

C. "Wie? Wie? Wie?"

SOLVED/APP 6

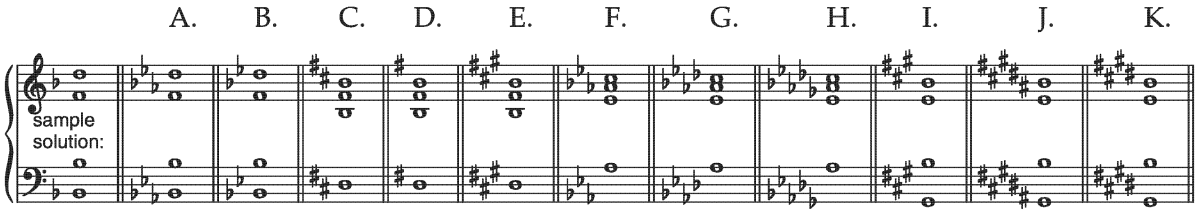
D. Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 458, *Allegro vivace assai*

ANALYSIS

1D.8

SOLVED/APP 6

For each of the following, label the *major* key, the roman numeral, and the figured bass of the given chord within that key.



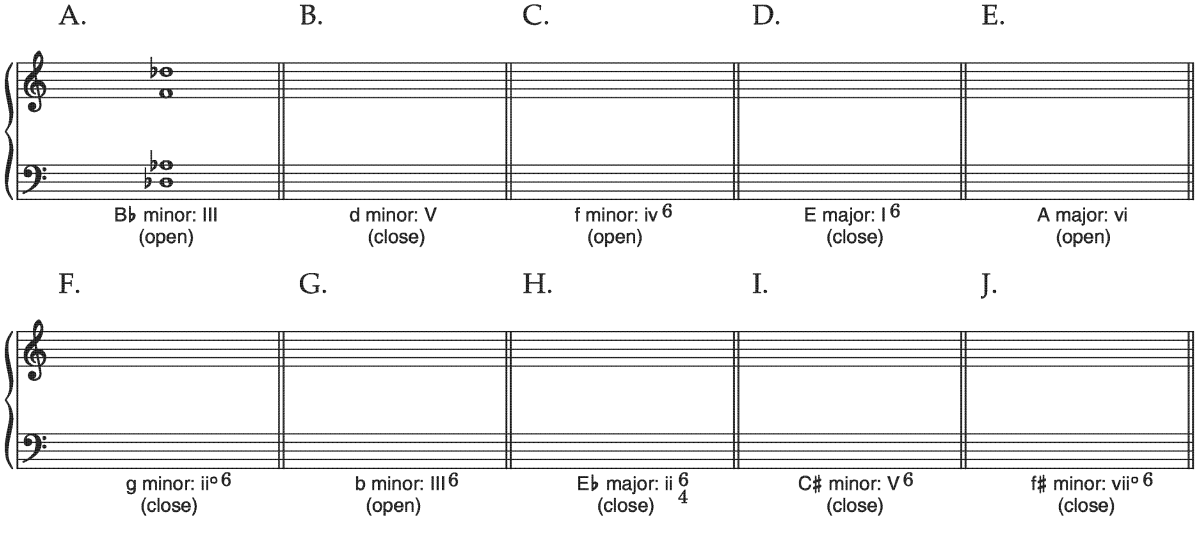
F: IV

WRITING

1D.9

SOLVED/APP 6

Notate triads based on the given key and the roman numeral. Use accidentals, not key signatures. Voice chords in close or open spacing as required. Create a four-voice setting by doubling the root for open-spacing chords. Exercise A is solved for you.



1D.10 Illustrations

SOLVED/APP 6

Complete the given writing tasks on a separate sheet of manuscript paper and analyze your work.

A. In D minor, write the following root-position triads in four voices, close position (tightly compressed), doubling the bass: i, III, V, VI.

B. In B♭ major, write the following root-position triads in four voices, using a wide spacing and doubling the bass note: ii, IV, vi, vii°.
C. In C minor, write the following root-position and inverted triads in a spacing of your choice, doubling the root: i^6, ii°, III, iv^6, V, V^6, VI, $vii°^6$. For vii° and ii°, double the chordal third.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- chord versus triad
- chromatic alterations
- close position and open position
- consonant triad
- dissonant triad
- doubling
- figured bass, figured bass realization
- harmonic analysis
- inversion, triadic [root position, first inversion ($\frac{6}{3}$); second inversion ($\frac{6}{4}$)]
- keyboard style versus chorale style
- quality
- roman numerals
- root position ($\frac{5}{3}$)
- root, third, fifth
- spacing, voicing (open position, close position)
- triad

Seventh Chords and Harmonic Analysis

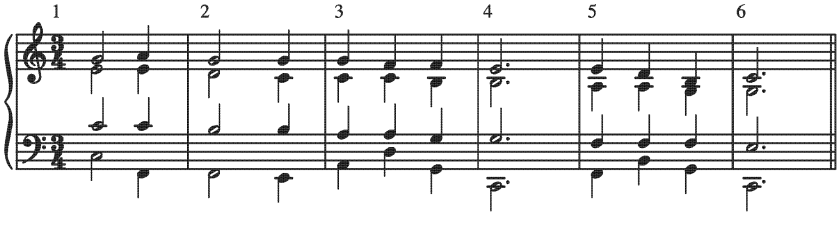
In this appendix we conclude our studies of theory fundamentals by exploring common four-note sonorities, called *seventh chords*. Listen to the chords in Example 1E.1A and then play them on the piano. Identify the different pitch classes in each chord. Describe sound quality of these chords and their effect in terms of stability and instability.

Only the first and last chords are triads. The majority of the remaining chords contain four different pitches, which can be stacked in thirds. The few three-pitch class sonorities are not triads, but they can still be stacked in thirds, although there is a "gap" between the second and third pitches (see Example 1E.1B, which stacks each of the chords in thirds, with the root as the lowest pitch).

Finally, all but the first and last chords contain the dissonant interval of a seventh (again, see Example 1E.1B). Because the chord spans the interval of a seventh, this sonority is known as a **seventh chord**. And because a seventh is a dissonant interval, all seventh chords are dissonant—though to varying degrees, as we shall see.

EXAMPLE 1E.1 A Progression with Seventh Chords

A.



B.

Definitions and Types

We label seventh chords by their two most audible features: the type of triad (major, minor, diminished) and the type of seventh above the root (major, minor, diminished). Composers use five important types of seventh chords, though, like the triad types, they are not used with equal frequency. Seventh chords are named according to the quality of the triad and the size of the seventh:

1. major-major seventh chord (MM 7th), called a major seventh chord
2. major-minor seventh chord (Mm 7th), called a major-minor seventh chord
3. minor-minor seventh chord (mm 7th), called a minor seventh chord
4. diminished-minor seventh chord (dm 7th), called a half-diminished seventh chord
5. diminished-diminished seventh chord (dd 7th), sometimes called a fully diminished seventh chord but most often simply called a diminished seventh chord

Example 1E.2 shows an example of each type of seventh chord built on the root C.

EXAMPLE 1E.2 Five Types of Seventh Chord

Musical Characteristics of Seventh Chords

The *major-minor seventh chord (Mm 7th)* is the most common seventh chord used in tonal music. It can be found regularly in music written from the early seventeenth century, and it is commonplace in popular music to this day, particularly the blues. The Mm 7 is often called the **dominant seventh chord** because it so regularly appears on the dominant scale degree ($\hat{5}$). For example, in the key of C major, V^7 is G–B–D–F.

The *major seventh chord (MM 7th)*, with its major seventh, is more strident than the major-minor seventh chord. It appears occasionally in common-practice music but more regularly in twentieth-century popular music and jazz. The *minor seventh chord (mm 7th)*, on the other hand, is a very soft-sounding chord, because its minor seventh creates a less dissonant sound than that of the major seventh.

The *half-diminished seventh chord (dm 7th, or ø7)* is a mix of effect. The dissonant triad is balanced with a less dissonant minor seventh. The chord occurs in both common-practice music—especially in Romantic vocal music, where it is often associated with anguish—and twentieth-century popular music.

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1E.1

The *diminished seventh (fully diminished) chord (dd 7th, or °7)* is the most dissonant of these seventh chords. It is found in late-Baroque works and throughout the Classical and Romantic eras. In addition, the diminished seventh chord is an asset to silent movie scores, where it often signals trouble, such as the train quickly approaching the maiden tied to the tracks. It is the only seventh chord that contains all the same types of thirds and fifths: three minor thirds and two diminished fifths.

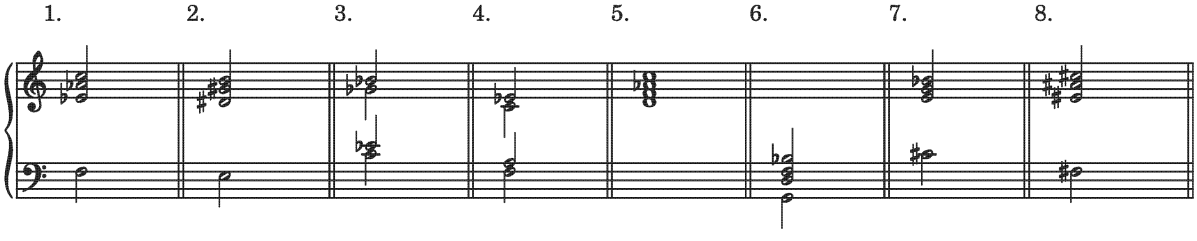
EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

1E.1 Aural and Visual Analysis of Root-Position Seventh Chords

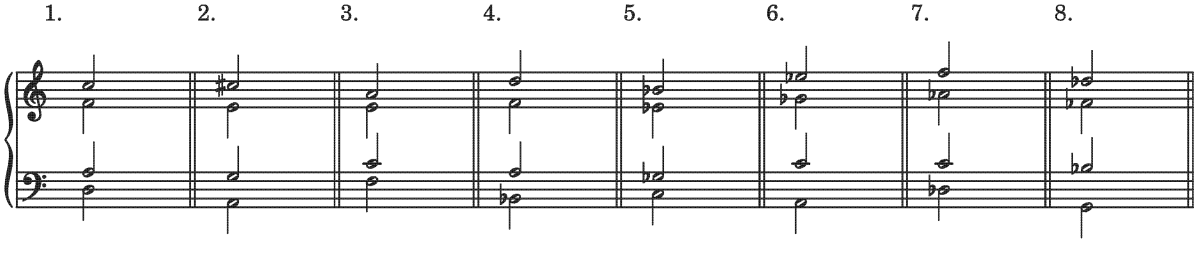
SOLVED/APP 6

A. Identify the root and the type of root-position seventh chord, choosing among Mm (major-minor), MM (major), mm (minor), dm (ø7), and dd (°7). Identify the chord member in the soprano (1, 3, 5, or 7). Circle the chordal seventh in each example.



SOLVED/APP 6

B. Listen to and study the following series of root-position seventh chords that are written in open position. Identify the type of seventh chord from among the choices listed in part A. Circle each chordal seventh.



WRITING

1E.2 Writing Seventh Chords

Complete the following tasks on a separate sheet of manuscript paper. Write even-numbered exercises in treble clef, odd-numbered exercises in bass clef.

SOLVED/APP 6

A.
1. Notate root-position Mm seventh chords with the following roots: A, D, E♭
2. Notate root-position mm seventh chords with the following roots: G, B♭, D♭
3. Notate root-position dd (°7) seventh chords with the following roots: C, F, A
4. Notate root-position MM seventh chords with the following roots: B, E, B♭
5. Notate root position dm (ø7) seventh chords with the following roots: G, F, A♯, G♯

B.
1. F is the third of which Mm seventh chord? the fifth of which Mm seventh chord? the seventh of which Mm seventh chord?

SOLVED/APP 6

2. D is the third of which dd seventh chord? the fifth of which mm seventh chord? the seventh of which MM seventh chord?
3. B♭ is the third of which mm seventh chord? the fifth of which Mm seventh chord? the seventh of which MM seventh chord?

1E.3

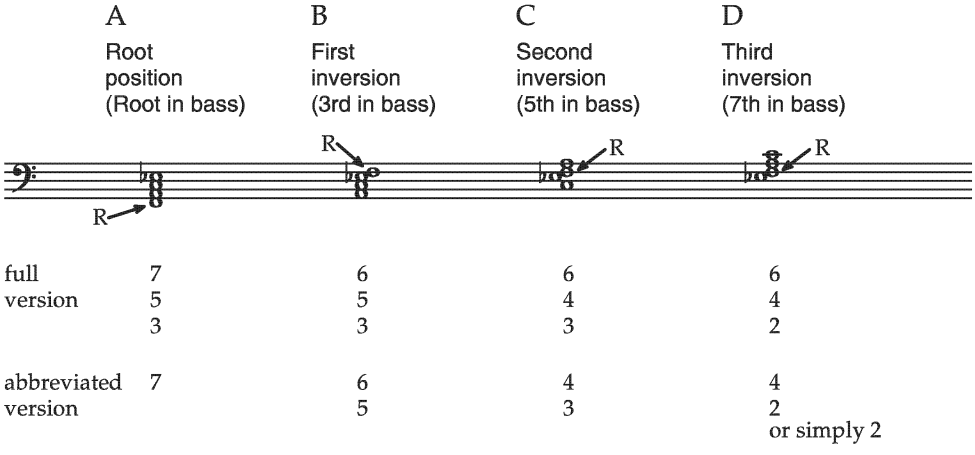
Fill in the following chart by spelling the type of seventh chord requested using letter names.

		Root	*Third*	*Fifth*	*Seventh*
	A. Mm:	_____	F♯	_____	_____
	B. mm:	B♭	_____	_____	_____
SOLVED/APP 6	C. dd:	_____	_____	A♭	_____
	D. dm:	_____	D	_____	_____
SOLVED/APP 6	E. MM:	_____	_____	C♯	_____
	F. dd:	_____	_____	_____	G♭
	G. MM:	_____	_____	_____	G
SOLVED/APP 6	H. Mm:	_____	_____	E♭	_____
	I. dm:	E	_____	_____	_____
SOLVED/APP 6	J. mm:	_____	_____	_____	A

Inverted Seventh Chords

Seventh chords often appear in inversion. Example 1E.3 shows the three inversions of a major-minor (Mm) seventh chord with the root F. For each inversion, both the full and the abbreviated figures are given.

EXAMPLE 1E.3 Seventh Chord in Root Position and Inversion



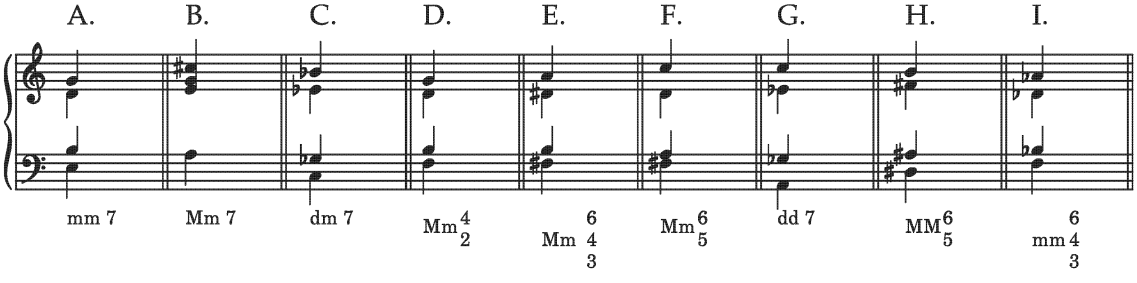
Analytical Tips

Determining the root of an inverted seventh chord is not difficult if you look first for the seventh—the defining interval of the chord—or its inversion, the second. The root of the chord will be the lower note of the seventh or the

upper note of the second. For example, in Example 1E.3A, the lower note of the seventh F–E♭ is the root. In Example 1E.3C, the upper note of the major second (E♭–F) is the root.

As the chords move from root position up through the inversions, their numbers steadily decrease: 7–6–5–4–3–2 (7 = root position; $\frac{6}{5}$ = first inversion; $\frac{4}{3}$ = second inversion; 2 = third inversion). Composers writing root-position seventh chords may omit the chord's fifth and double the stable root for reasons such as ease of singing (this occurred in Example 1E.1A). When composers write inverted seventh chords, however, they almost always use complete harmonies, with no doubled pitches. Example 1E.4 shows various notated seventh chords with their figured bass notation. Play and study each chord. Try playing three of the four voices and singing the fourth voice.

EXAMPLE 1E.4 Seventh Chords in Root Position and Inversions



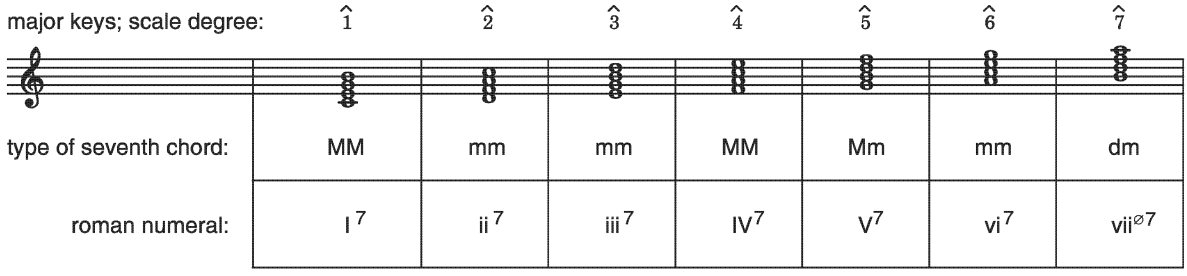
Seventh Chords and Harmonic Analysis

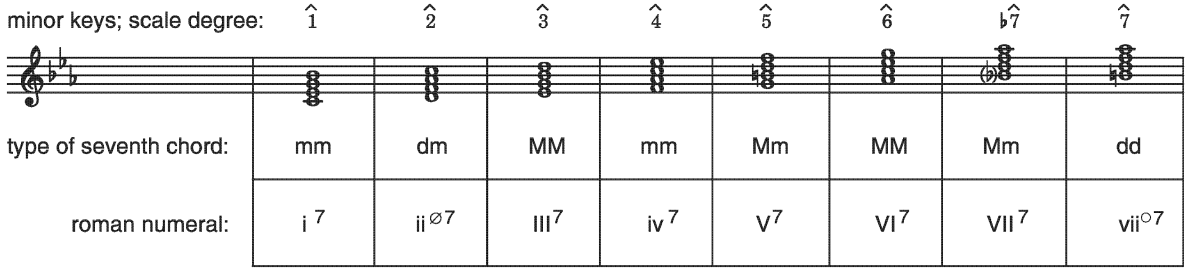
All five principal types of seventh chord arise in the major and minor scales, and, just as with triads, particular seventh chord types are associated with particular scale degrees. As you listen to progressions within the context of a key, you should be able to identify instantly the quality of each chord and the scale degree from which each is built. When analyzing seventh chords using roman numerals, follow a procedure similar to that used for analyzing triads:

- Mm and MM seventh chords require uppercase roman numerals.
- mm, dm, and dd seventh chords require lowercase roman numerals.
- dd seventh chords also require a degree sign (°) to indicate a diminished triad and seventh.
- dm seventh chords require a slash through the degree sign (ø) to indicate that the sonority is half diminished.

Example 1E.5 shows the most common types of seventh chords that occur in major and minor keys. Example 1E.6 demonstrates the harmonic analysis of seventh chords in root position and inversion.

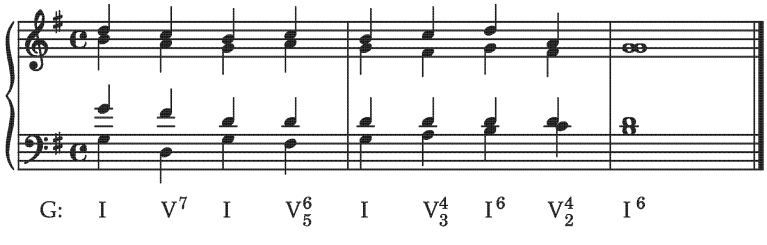
EXAMPLE 1E.5 Seventh Chords in Major and Minor Keys





EXAMPLE 1E.6

WORKBOOK 1
App. 1E.2–1E.5



EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

1E.4 More Seventh-Chord Writing

On a separate sheet of manuscript paper, construct seventh chords according to the following instructions. For example, given D as the third of a major-minor seventh chord, you would write B♭–D–F–A♭. Another example: Given D as the fifth of a half-diminished seventh chord, you would write G♯–B–D–F♯.

A. Spell seventh chords in which E functions as the:
1. root of a dd seventh
2. fifth of a mm seventh
3. seventh of a Mm seventh
4. third of a MM seventh

SOLVED/APP 6

B. Spell seventh chords in which A functions as the:
1. seventh of a mm seventh
2. third of a dd seventh
3. fifth of a Mm seventh
4. seventh of a MM seventh
5. fifth of a dm seventh

C. Spell seventh chords in which F♯ functions as the:
1. fifth of a Mm seventh
2. third of a MM seventh
3. seventh of a MM seventh
4. third of a dm seventh

1E.5 Inversions of Seventh Chords

On a separate sheet of manuscript paper, construct the required seventh chords. For example, given the bass note D and the instruction to spell a Mm $\frac{6}{5}$, you will write D–F–A♭–B♭. You know this because the third of the chord is in the bass in first-inversion chords; and since a major third occurs between the bass and the root of a Mm $\frac{6}{5}$ chord, then B♭ is the root.

A. With a given bass note of C, spell the following chords:
1. a MM seventh chord
2. a mm $\frac{6}{5}$ chord
3. a dd seventh chord
4. a Mm $\frac{4}{2}$ chord

SOLVED/APP 6

B. With a given bass note of F, spell the following chords:
1. a Mm $\frac{6}{5}$ chord
2. a MM seventh chord
3. a mm $\frac{4}{3}$ chord
4. a dm $\frac{4}{2}$ chord

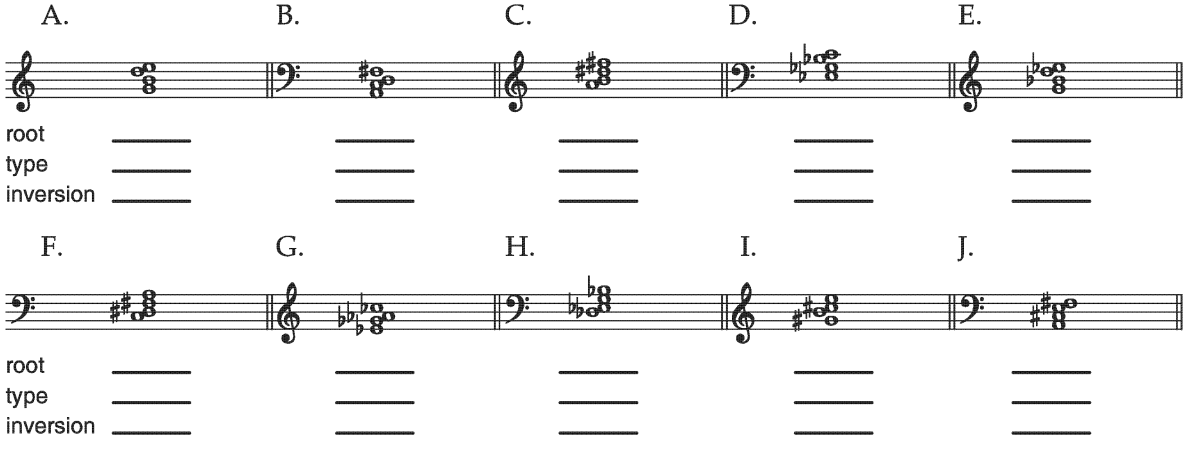
C. With a given bass note of E♭, spell the following chords:
1. a dd seventh (°7) chord
2. a Mm $\frac{4}{3}$ chord
3. a mm $\frac{4}{2}$ chord
4. a MM $\frac{6}{5}$ chord

ANALYSIS

1E.6

SOLVED/APP 6

Identify root, type, and inversion of each of the following seventh chords. Circle each chordal seventh.



1E.7 Distinction Between Scale Degrees, Figured Bass, and Chordal Members

In each of the examples, determine the following:

1. full figured bass
2. type of seventh chord
3. member of chord that is circled
4. member of chord in the bass
5. scale degree in the bass

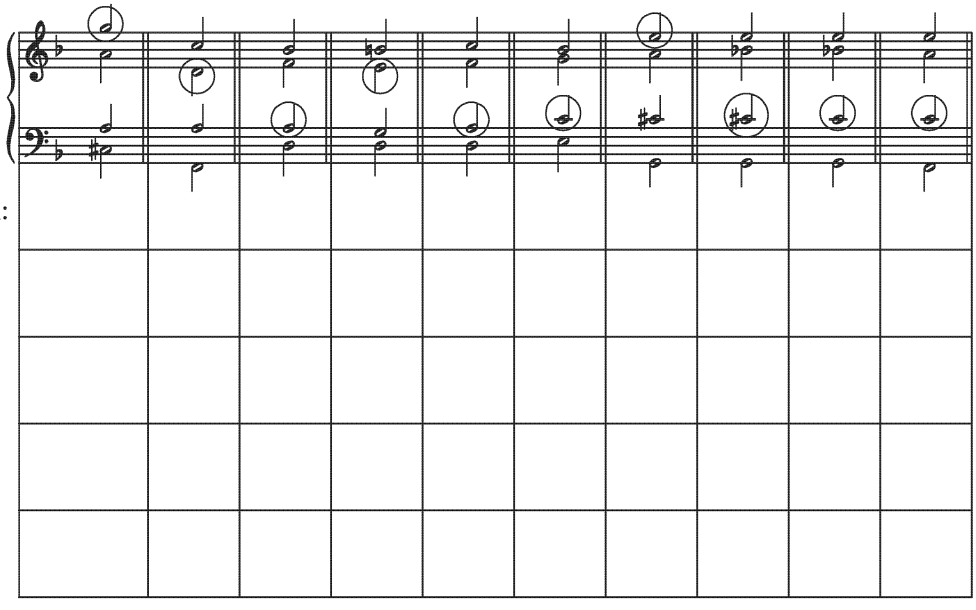
SOLVED/APP 6

A.

full figured bass F:	7 5 3								
type of 7th chord	MM								
member of chord that is circled	3								
member of chord in the bass	1								
scale degree in the bass	$\hat{4}$								

SOLVED/APP 6

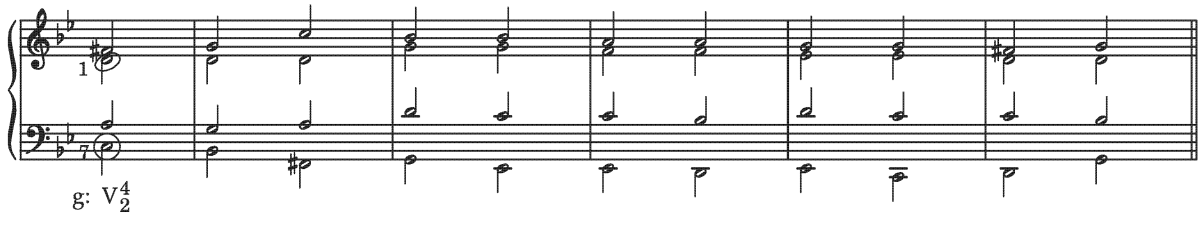
B.



1E.8 Functional Analysis of Seventh Chords

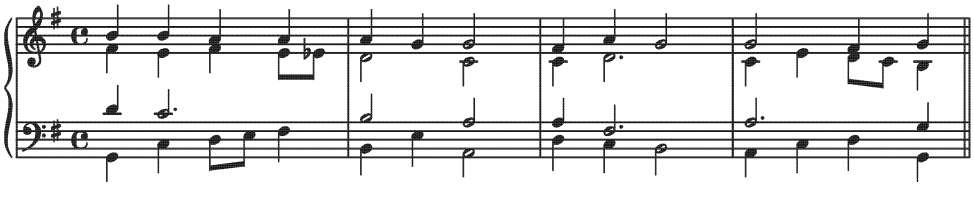
First, circle and label the root (1) and the seventh (7) in each chord. Then, after identifying the key of each exercise, provide a harmonic analysis (using roman numerals and figured bass). (Recall that root-position seventh chords need not contain a fifth.)

A.



SOLVED/APP 6

B.



1E.9 Close and Open Position

SOLVED/APP 6

On manuscript paper, notate the triads and seventh chords that are represented by the roman numerals that follow. Write each chord twice, first in close position and then in open position. Use complete chords and a key signature. Be aware that in minor, both V and V^7 require a chromatic alteration in order to create a leading tone.

Sample solution: G major: V^7

A. D major: vi
B. c minor: V^7
C. B♭ major: ii^7
D. f minor: iv^7
E. A♭ major: V^7
F. b minor: iv^7
G. E major: iii^7
H. e♭ minor: V^7
I. f♯ minor: $vii^{\circ 7}$

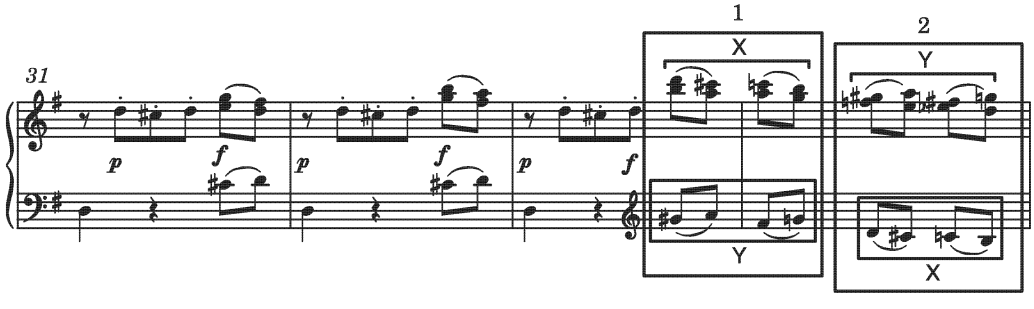
Invertible Counterpoint, Compound Melody, and Implied Harmonies

Invertible Counterpoint

Definitions and Effects

We have already learned that the intimate contrapuntal relationship between the bass and the soprano is the foundation of the standard four-voice harmonic texture. Composers take advantage of an important aspect of this contrapuntal relationship that allows them to spin out their musical material.

EXAMPLE 2.1 Mozart, Piano Sonata in G major, K. 283, *Allegro*

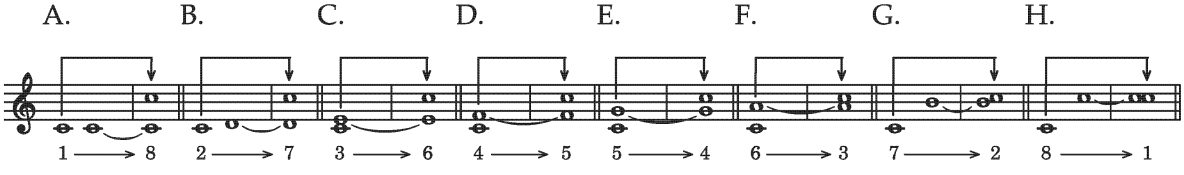


Listen to Example 2.1. The sections marked "1" and "2" have similar sounds, and, in fact, there is a very strong relationship between them. If you compare the outer-voice counterpoint in section 1 with that of section 2, you will discover that the soprano and bass melodies swap places: What was on top is now on the bottom, and vice versa. Therefore, even though the lines trade places, they retain their original contour. This swapping of parts between voices is called **invertible counterpoint** or **double counterpoint**, and it is an important compositional procedure, for two reasons. First, economically, it allows composers to reap twice as much musical value from a single idea. Second, it allows the music to remain clearly unified because the listener is repeatedly exposed to material in different ways. The registral exchange of figures in invertible counterpoint creates sections of music that, although strongly related, have their own distinctive sound. The result is a perfect mix that satisfies the listener's

desire for variety and contrast. Listen to the example several more times so that you are able to sing fragments X and Y and their transfer to the opposite register.

In the music of Example 2.1, Mozart has inverted his tunes at the octave (or its compound, the double or triple octave); that is, the rearrangement of upper and lower material is accomplished solely by octave leaps in one or both voices. This octave switching is called **invertible counterpoint at the octave**. It is also possible to invert two-voice counterpoint at other intervals, most commonly the twelfth, but we will restrict the following discussion to the octave.

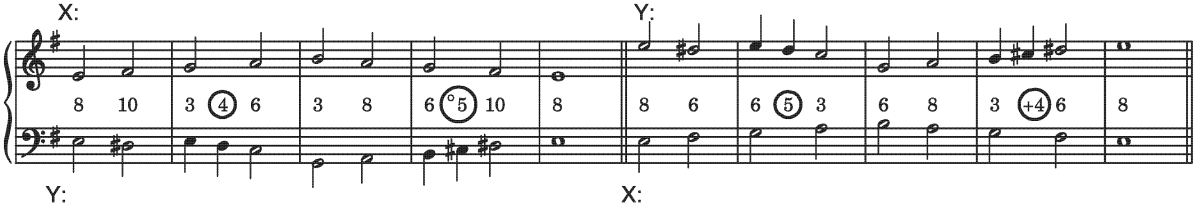
EXAMPLE 2.2



Remember from Chapter 1 and Appendix 1C that when intervals are inverted *at the octave*, they maintain their consonant or dissonant characters (see Example 2.2). This retention of consonance and dissonance is what allows for invertible counterpoint. For example, any dissonant seventh in an upper voice that properly resolves downward to a sixth will in inversion resolve in the same way; a second will resolve to a third because the moving voice is now in the bass. Dissonances can be treated correctly in inversion if they were treated correctly in the original version. The only potential danger is the interval of a fifth, which turns into a dissonant fourth when inverted. Consequently, composers writing invertible counterpoint must be careful to treat all perfect fifths as potentially dissonant intervals (by preparing and resolving them and by generally placing them on the weak beats). Example 2.3 presents two instances of invertible counterpoint. Example 2.3A is written in one-to-one counterpoint that includes a few examples of two-to-one counterpoint. Example 2.3B is written in two-to-one counterpoint, but the faster-moving notes are distributed across both voices.

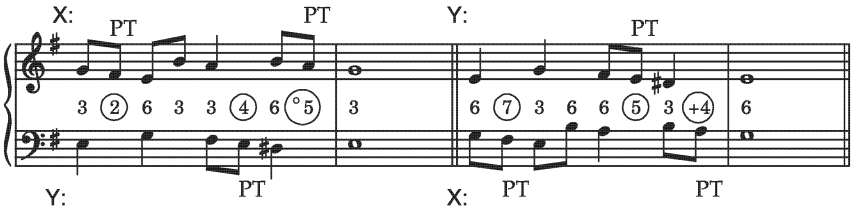
EXAMPLE 2.3 Invertible Counterpoint Procedures

A.



Continued

B.



Of course, the use of invertible counterpoint is not restricted to piano music, but is found in all genres, including large symphonies, as illustrated in Example 2.4, which is taken from the developmental section of one of Haydn's late symphonies.

EXAMPLE 2.4 Haydn, Symphony no. 91 in F major, Hob I.98, *Allegro assai*

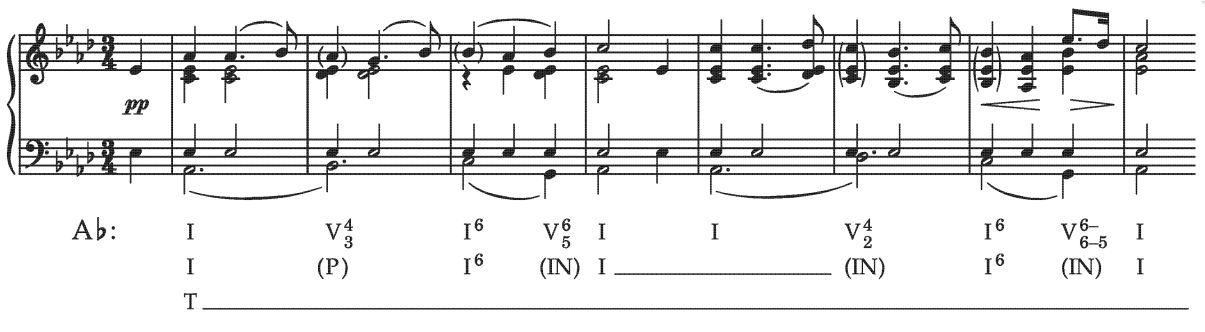
The technique of invertible counterpoint is found throughout common-practice music. In fact, the late-nineteenth-century composer Johannes Brahms, regularly employed invertible counterpoint in his older-style imitative pieces (such as fugues and chorale preludes) and in his forward-looking piano works, such as the intermezzi. When Brahms was in his mid-twenties he invited his close friends Clara Schumann (arguably the most famous pianist in Europe at the time and the wife of Robert Schumann) and Joseph Joachim (the leading violinist in Europe) to form a "counterpoint club" in which each musician would write various contrapuntal exercises and pieces. Needless to say, invertible counterpoint was at the center of their activities. Example 2.5 presents a passage of one of Brahms's later pieces for piano, in which recognition of the inversion of melodies (at the octave) is far more revealing of his compositional procedure than trying to determine roman numerals. That Brahms both closes and begins the passage on C major indicates that the invertible counterpoint is there in order to extend that underlying harmony contrapuntally.

EXAMPLE 2.5 Brahms, Intermezzo in A minor, op. 76, no. 7

Invertible Counterpoint Below the Music's Surface

Occurrences of invertible counterpoint are often far subtler than the literal contrapuntal switch seen in the previous examples. Through various embellishing processes, composers camouflage their use of invertible counterpoint as a structural agent, in which it becomes the backbone of the harmonic progression itself. In Example 2.6, Schubert uses a full, homophonic texture that disguises the invertible relationship between the soprano and the bass.

EXAMPLE 2.6 Schubert, Impromptu in A♭ major, D. 935



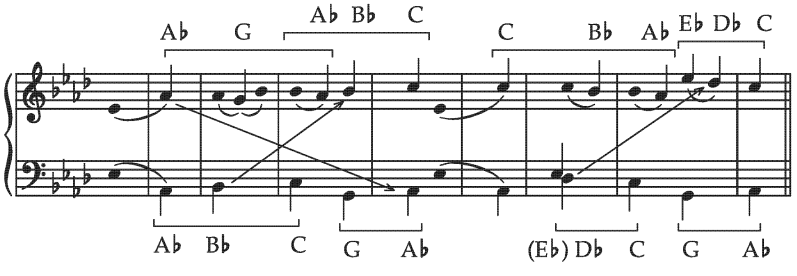
The first six measures serve to expand tonic, first by V_3^4, then V_5^6, and finally by V_2^4. But one might go so far as to say that identifying roman numerals in this context identifies symptoms more than causes as to what motivates this passage's unfolding. Indeed, we seem to be missing the forest for the trees here, since an important melodic relationship between the bass

and the soprano governs these measures. Example 2.7A shows a two-voice contrapuntal reduction that reveals a large neighbor figure (1̂–7̂–1̂) occurring over a large passing motion (1̂–2̂–3̂). These figures can be seen in the stemmed pitches, which represent the structural counterpoint. Unstemmed pitches, such as the suspension A♭4 on the downbeat of m. 2, do not participate in the large-scale voice leading. The swap is literal, except that the neighbor (N) in mm. 1–3 of the soprano is followed in the bass by an incomplete neighbor (IN) in m. 3.

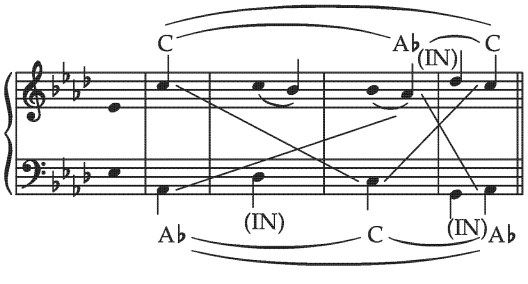
An understanding that invertible counterpoint holds together mm. 1–4 can bring new meaning to how we hear mm. 5–8 (Example 2.7B). First, the large A♭4–C5 passing motion in the soprano from mm. 1–4 reverses direction in mm. 5–7. The descending portion is loosely mirrored by the bass (A♭2–C3), creating a large-scale voice exchange. Second, the use of V_2^4–I6 in the bass (mm. 6–7) brings out the D♭3–C3 motive, which is immediately imitated two octaves higher in the soprano.

EXAMPLE 2.7 Schubert, Impromptu: Outer Voice Counterpoint

A. Mm. 1–8



B. Mm. 5–8



WORKBOOK 1
App. 2.1–2.2

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

ANALYSIS

2.1 Analysis of Invertible Counterpoint

In the following excerpts, label any invertible counterpoint by using brackets and *X* and *Y* for the material in the upper and lower voices, showing how they are exchanged in the repetitions. Do *not* analyze with roman numerals.

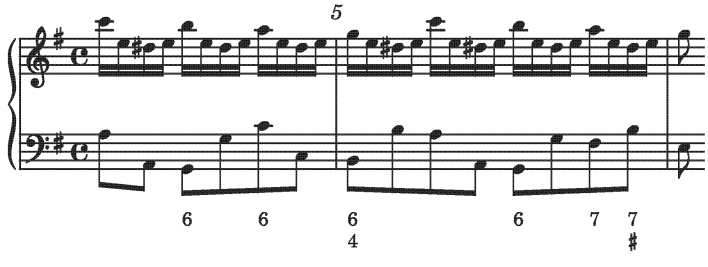
A. Handel, Suite no. 7 in G minor, HWV 255, Passacaglia

B. Bach, Two-Part Invention no. 6 in E major, BWV 777

C. Giardini, from *Six Duos for Violin and Cello*, op. 14

D. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in E major, op. 109, "Gesangvoll, mit innigster Empfindung," Variation 3

E. Handel, Sonata no. 1 in E minor, for Flute and Continuo, op. 1, HWV 359b, *Allegro*



F. Mozart, Piano Concerto in E♭, K. 482

WRITING

2.2 Writing Chord Progressions That Create Invertible Counterpoint

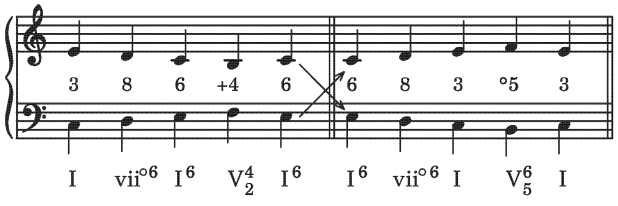
From the following models, on a separate sheet of manuscript paper:

1. Provide an outer voice to complement the given voice, such that the voices will produce invertible counterpoint at the octave.
2. Swap the voices to create invertible counterpoint.
3. Determine the contrapuntal/harmonic progression that is implied from the outer-voice counterpoint.
4. Add roman numerals and inner voices.

The first exercise presents one possible solution. Write at least one more for the first exercise and two solutions for B and C. Play solutions, first the outer voices only and then in four voices.

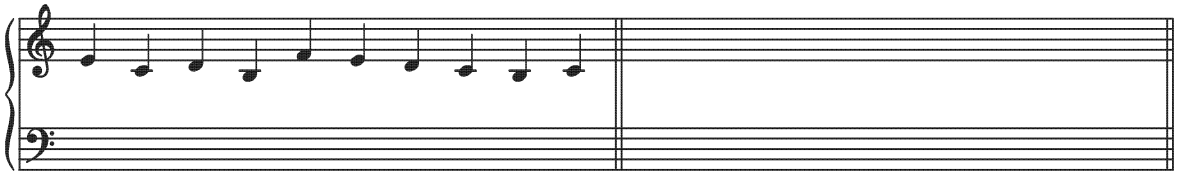
Optional: In a meter and a rhythmic setting of your choice, string together two or three of the progressions to create a four- to eight-measure piece.

A. Given: bass scale degrees $\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$



B. Given: bass scale degrees $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$

C. Given: soprano scale degrees $\hat{3}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{4}$–$\hat{3}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$



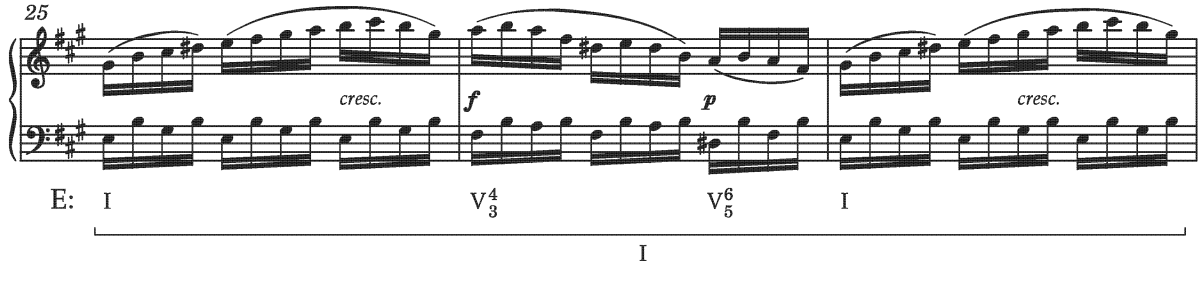
Harmonic Implications of Single Melodic Lines: Compound Melody

Definitions

You often will encounter compositions written for one or two voices that do not present explicit harmonies (triads and seventh chords). Indeed, much Baroque music, particularly that of Johann Sebastian Bach, is presented linearly rather than harmonically. Even though such pieces are written for three or fewer voices, their construction strongly implies a clear harmonic structure, as in the most traditional homophonic compositions.

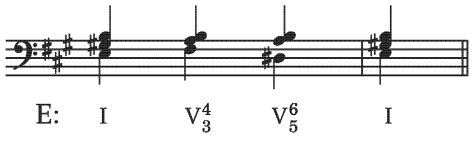
Numerous compositional techniques allow composers to imply harmonies without using a fully voiced chord. The most important of these is called **compound melody**. A compound melody occurs when a single melodic line implies two, three, or even four voices. A composer achieves this illusion by means of registral leaps in the melody so that a single line splits into multiple voices delineated by register. When performing such music, it is important to consider the possibility that two or more voices are implied by a single melodic line. An understanding of compound line will help you hear the implied chord progression, thus allowing you to control and shape more effectively the energy of the music you play (Example 2.8).

EXAMPLE 2.8 Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, *Andante* (Polonaise en Rondeau)



If you were to analyze the chord progression in Example 2.8 simply by moving from note to note, the result would be unmusical, in that you would be forced to label the second sixteenth note in m. 1 as a dominant chord and the third sixteenth note as a six-four chord on C♯. Such an approach ignores the fact that three voices, which group together to form harmonies, unfold *temporally* rather than *spatially* in the left hand. Therefore, a single tonic harmony unfolds in m. 1. The tonic is then contrapuntally expanded in m. 2 by upper and lower neighbor harmonies (V^4_3 and V^6_5), only to return in m. 3. The accompanimental figure seen in the left hand of Example 2.8, called an *Alberti bass*, is an important type of compound melody seen in much music of the high Classical period. Beyond this, each of its voices follows standard voice-leading rules to progress to the next harmony. See Example 2.9 for a reduction of the excerpt's left hand, which shows the smooth connections between each chord and its voices.

EXAMPLE 2.9 Reduction of Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284



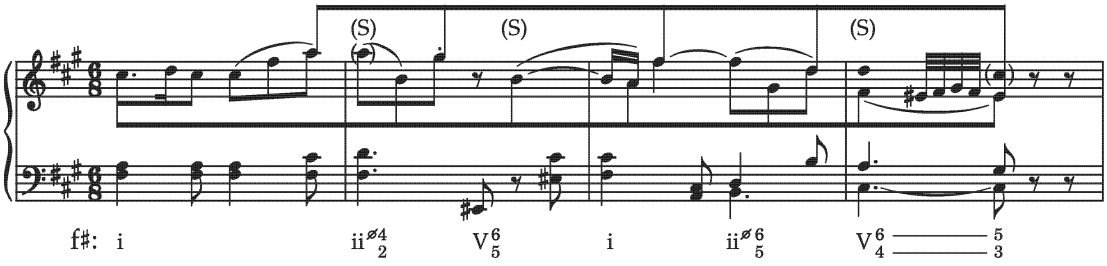
A second example illustrates the role of compound melodies in the upper voices. Listen to Example 2.10. As you can hear, the right-hand voice is partitioned into two clear voices that move primarily in parallel sixths. The procedure provides the sensation of full three-note triads in a two-voice texture, and it rhythmically animates a one-to-one bass–soprano framework composed of the circled pitches in Example 2.10.

EXAMPLE 2.10 Handel, Suite no. 3 in D minor, HWV 428, "Air and Variations," Variation 5

So far we have considered only instances of compound lines that emerge from broken-chord formations where all voices play harmonic tones. Sometimes the effect of two-voice counterpoint can be disguised through arpeggiations and nonchord tones, as in Example 2.11. Although it may not appear so at first, Mozart constructs the compound melody in the opening of this remarkable movement similarly to the previous example. Again, this example illustrates a soprano melody that is composed of parallel sixths in descending motion (Example 2.12).

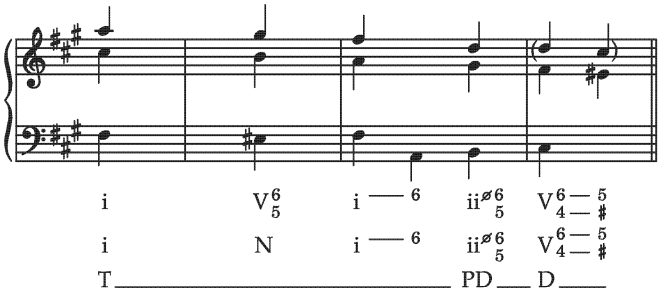
EXAMPLE 2.11 Mozart, Piano Concerto in A major, K. 488, *Andante*

EXAMPLE 2.12 Mozart, Piano Concerto (analysis of compound melody)



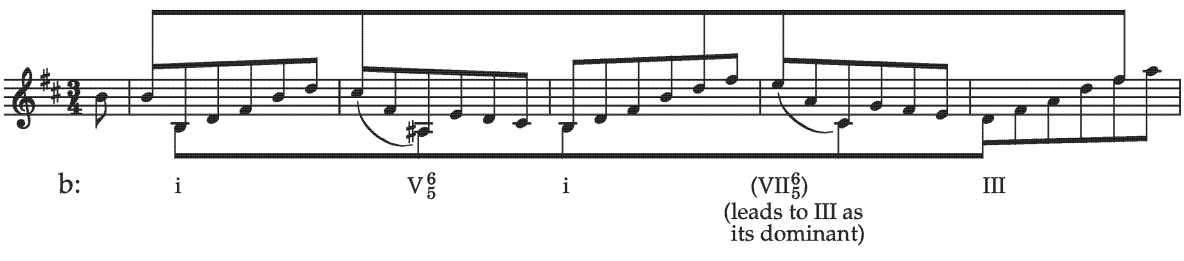
In Example 2.13 the voices are stacked to show the three-part harmonic structure.

EXAMPLE 2.13 Mozart, Piano Concerto (reduction)

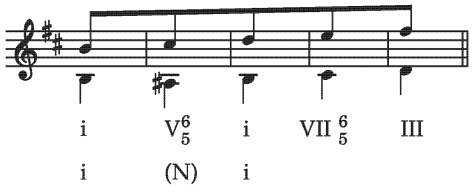


Some of the most interesting examples of compound melody occur in music written for solo melody instruments, in which knowledge of the harmonic structure is essential for effective performance and listening. And, perhaps, the best examples of this type of writing appear in Bach's solo violin and solo cello works. Listen to Example 2.14. The solo violin plays an arpeggiated pattern with a few passing tones. As the analysis of the example shows, the harmonic rhythm moves at the speed of one chord per measure, unfolding a tonic in m. 1, a lower neighbor V^6_5 in m. 2, and a return to tonic in m. 3. In m. 4, an A dominant seventh chord in $^6_5$ position is followed by a D-major harmony. What is remarkable about this passage is not so much the logical harmonic progression that unfolds but, rather, that the chord members move by strict voice leading from harmony to harmony. The highest and lowest of these independent melodic strands form "outer voices," which move in note-against-note counterpoint (see the reduction in Example 2.15).

EXAMPLE 2.14 Bach, Partita for Solo Violin in B minor, BWV 1002, Corrente



EXAMPLE 2.15 Bach, Partita (reduction)



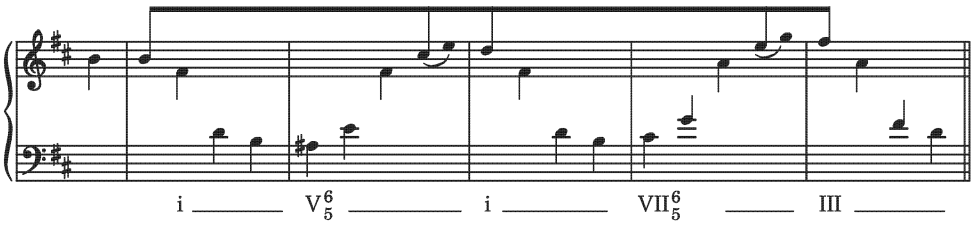
Analysis of compound melody is an essential tool that allows performers to understand the underlying harmonies and to communicate their meanings in performance through the informed and inspired projection of melodic line. Such knowledge of how a piece works will also necessarily affect their rendering of dynamic shape, influence their decisions to use contrast and color, and help them coordinate the ebb and flow of rubato. This type of analysis also illuminates important motives as well as parallel elements within and even between movements.

EXAMPLE 2.16 Bach, Partita for Solo Violin in B minor, BWV 1002, Corrente, Double

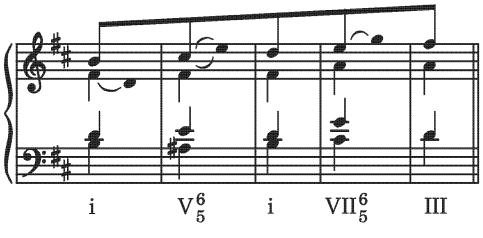
Now listen to Example 2.16. Notice that the Double's line (an elaboration on the original Corrente) consists mostly of stepwise motion, a dramatic contrast to the arpeggiations of the preceding Corrente (Example 2.14). Also different are the melodic contours of the two openings: The descent and ascent of mm. 1 and 2 in the Double are the opposite of the ascent and descent that characterize mm. 1 and 2 of the Corrente. A look at the compound line at the opening of the Double will help us discover important similarities between the movements that we missed by considering only the surface figurations. Once again, the harmony unfolds at the rate of one chord per measure, and, again, the tonic harmony is prolonged in mm. 1–3, with m. 2 functioning as a lower neighbor V^6_5, exactly as we saw in the Corrente. The similarity continues in the following measures with the A dominant seventh harmony moving to D major in m. 5. The similarities do not stop with the chord progression; the voice leading confirms the connection. After extracting the structural pitches in all the voices (Example 2.17A), Example 2.17B verticalizes this structure for comparison. Notice that the compound melody, pacing, and harmonic implications are identical. Yet the surface rhythm and contours are wildly different. Bach creates a perfect blend of variety at the surface and organic consistency below.

EXAMPLE 2.17 Bach, Partita, Double (reduction)

A.



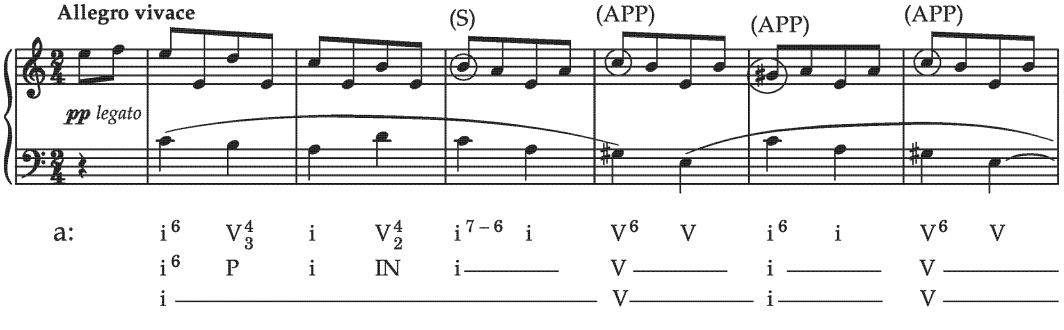
B.



Implied Harmonies

In analyzing works using compound line, discerning the harmonic progression is often only a matter of locating all the voices. Once you do, you frequently find that full triads and seventh chords are literally present in the music. But sometimes you will encounter compound melodies in which the harmonies—even when all voice-leading strands are considered—are still incomplete. Then you will need to infer missing chord members.

EXAMPLE 2.18 Schubert, Piano Sonata no. 16 in A minor, op. 42, D. 845, Rondo



Listen to Example 2.18. The right-hand compound melody implies two voices, the lower of which is essentially a pedal. The combination of this compound melody with the single line in the left hand results in a three-voice texture. As you can see, many of the chords are incomplete, and harmonies must be determined by implication. A cursory glance at m. 1 reveals that the harmony is ambiguous. We may suspect initially that the

implied harmony is C major, yet this intuition is contradicted in m. 2, when we discover that the key is A minor. Therefore, the opening sonority is i^6_3, not an uncommon occurrence in the Romantic period. Now, because the entire example expands the tonic, we can apply our knowledge of what usually occurs in such a situation to decipher other partial harmonies. For example, a i^6 in m. 1 moves to i^5_3 in m. 2. The intervening chord with B^3 in the bass also contains E^4 and D^5 in the treble. Although the chord is incomplete, we can easily deduce that it is a seventh chord with a missing third (G♯). Thus, the contrapuntal chord on beat 2 of the first measure implies V^4_3. A similar situation occurs on beat 2 of m. 2, in which we suspect that the chord with D^4, E^4, and B^4 is a dominant sonority with a missing third (G♯): an implied V^4_2. In m. 3, the 7–6 suspension (B^4 to A^4) disguises the move back to tonic, but the bass resolution of the seventh (D^4) to the third of the tonic (C^4) confirms our suspicions that we've heard a V^4_2 properly resolve to i^6.

WORKBOOK 1
App. 2.3–2.4

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- compound melody
- invertible counterpoint (double counterpoint)
- invertible counterpoint at the octave

The Motive

In this chapter we explore music's smallest units, called *motives*. These units provide substance, logic, coherence, and dramatic energy in music. As building blocks of larger structures, motives are the manifestation of our basic human need to organize and group, and we will see how the multilevel melodic, contrapuntal, and tonal events in music owe their very existence to these modest, often-overlooked musical elements.

Introduction

Music is an art form whose making depends on the temporal domain. That is, the element of time is required in order to play and perceive music, and, therefore, music's content is utterly governed by time. Dance is another such art form. The plastic arts, such as painting and sculpture, are in stark contrast to the temporal arts, given that they rely on the spatial domain and that our perception of these art forms depends on their occupying a physical space.

Given that individual musical sounds are fleeting, quickly being replaced by ever-new sounds, composers are saddled with the task of ensuring that each new event is heard as a logical consequence and development of previous events. They must consider not only their own interests in creating a dramatic narrative but also the listeners' abilities to perceive such a drama. Composers must maintain the delicate balance between repetition and its many degrees of variation, on the one hand, and the introduction of new material on the other.

It is within the melodic domain that we tend to find the most helpful clues that guide us through a developing musical drama. We know that a melody is constructed of a number of phrases, each of which is generally a self-contained unit that expresses a musical idea, is supported by a tonal progression, and closes with a cadence. However, we have yet to focus on the actual building blocks of melodies, those recurring pitch, intervallic, and rhythmic patterns that lie both on and below the music's surface. In this chapter we explore **motives**, which we define as the smallest formal units of musical organization. A motive, like its cousin

motif, indicates a distinctive idea that unifies an object, whether the paisley wallpaper pattern that pulls together a room or the famous opening of Beethoven's Fifth Symphony. The term *motive*, however, actually comes from the Latin *motus*, meaning "motion," so even though music borrows the term from everyday language, it seems to have its origin in the musical notion of time and in a pattern's development over time. One might liken motives to the amino acids that are the basic building blocks of our bodies. Indeed, motives combine to form phrase members, which in turn combine to form complete phrases. Phrases, by extension, combine to form periods. This hierarchical process can continue all the way to the piece level.

Motives must be audible, so composers imbue them with a clear identity and profile unique to the piece. Thus, motives are short, ranging in length from one beat (in a slow tempo) to one or more measures (in a faster tempo). They are composed of characteristic pitch contours (shapes) and/or rhythms. Since they are restated in different contexts, they must be flexible enough to permit various transformations. However, in order for these transformations to remain linked to the motive, its original statement must be defined well enough to withstand elaborations and transformations. Since motives are important to the development of a piece, they are given a prominent position: at the work's beginning. Pieces may, and usually do, contain more than a single motive. In such cases, they might all be presented near the beginning, or they may enter later at strategic places—often as components of new thematic material—and they may or may not be related. Motives are powerful enough to be able to represent specific characters, events, or situations, as we hear in the music of Wagner, where the appearance of *Leitmotiven*, or "leading motives," immediately conjures up images, whether the specific image is onstage or not. Indeed, weary music students on spring break in south Florida might think twice about going into the water should they hear wafting from someone's boom box a motive comprising only the following two-note figure in the low register: D–E♭ . . . D–E♭ . . . D–E♭–D–E♭–D–E♭ . . .

Motive Types

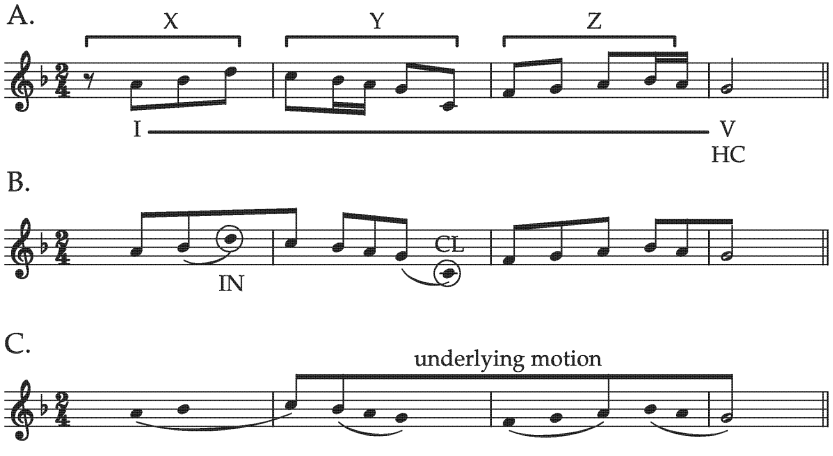
We begin by distinguishing two types of motive: those that are independent figures and those that are components of themes.

Listen to Example 3.1. Beethoven opens his first string quartet with a unison statement of the work's central motive, a four-beat gesture comprising both pitch and rhythmic elements. The pitch motive involves a turn figure around F followed by a falling skip. The rhythmic element includes two longer note values, which, given that they appear at the beginning and end of the motive, provide a frame that is filled with shorter note values. The motive itself is set off by rests. The recurrences of the motive are rarely identical to its initial presentation. Rather, they are transformed in a variety of ways, which we will soon explore and generalize. Beethoven's motive is self-standing, an independent pitch-and-rhythm construction that generates much of the piece.

EXAMPLE 3.1 Beethoven, String Quartet in F major, op. 18, no. 1, *Allegro con brio*

Beethoven also combines motives to create themes. The main tune of his "Pastorale Symphony" provides an example (Example 3.2). The three motives that comprise the thematic components of the tune are marked *X*, *Y*, and *Z* (Example 3.2A). Each is articulated by metric placement (they all are the first events in successive measures) and duration (they all occupy one measure). Thus, while they are distinct (and later in the movement each motive appears separately and is developed) and therefore identifiable, they share musical features. To be sure, the motives relate to one another not only in length, but also in general contour—X rises a fourth, Y falls by a fourth (not counting the large leap at the end), and Z rises a fourth and then falls. Such close relationships make sense, since unrelated motives would jeopardize the logical unfolding of the tune. A quick look at the harmony reveals a single F-major tonic harmony. If we separate the chord tones from the nonchord tones, we see that each motive outlines the interval of a third, with motive Z outlining two thirds, the second of which leads directly to the final pitch, G (Example 3.2B). And if we consider the melodic fluency of this opening tune in conjunction with the underlying tonic harmony, we can see the underlying descending stepwise line from C^5 to G^4. Therefore, multiple motives that are components of longer thematic motions are no haphazard stringing together of ideas; rather, they are carefully ordered members in the linear unfolding of the tune.

EXAMPLE 3.2 Beethoven, Symphony no. 6 in F major, op. 68, *Allegro ma non troppo*



Since motives are characterized by a striking profile in either or both of the pitch and rhythmic domains, would you consider the recurring patterns in Example 3.3 to be a motive? Again, we see a pitch pattern, this time a broken-chord figure, and a rhythmic pattern of nonstop sixteenth notes. However, this recurring gesture is not regarded as a motive. Rather, we refer to it as a **figure**, since it recurs unchanged throughout the piece as part of the texture and general patterning. We are not able to distinguish it from other pitch and rhythmic events since it is the basis of them all. In effect, this undifferentiated figure becomes a background on which other—more striking—events would be set into bold relief.

EXAMPLE 3.3 Bach, Prelude in C major, from *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book I

Motivic Repetition

There are three main types of motivic repetitions, based on the degree of change between the initial statement of the motive and successive statements. Exact, or **strict motivic repetition** means that the same pitch-and-rhythm structure is maintained between statements of a motive. However, strict repetition is much less common than **modified motivic repetition**, in which repetitions of the motive's pitches and/or rhythms are varied. Modified repetitions can usually be traced back to the initial motive without difficulty. **Developmental repetitions** involve significant transformation. They often require the most effort to uncover, yet at the same time they are often the most important, having far-reaching consequences in the unfolding of the piece. We now examine each of these types of motivic repetition.

Strict Repetition

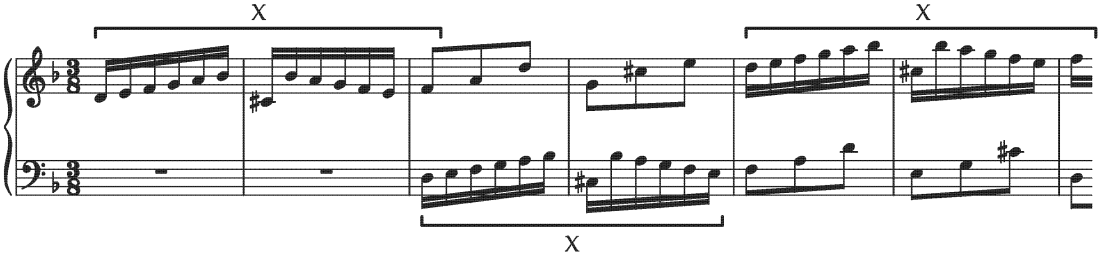
Strict motivic repetitions preserve both the pitch and the rhythm of the original motive. Obviously, such repetitions impose significant limitations on the way a composer can shape a piece, and for this reason strict repetitions are relatively rare. One place where strict repetition works well, however, is in the initial moments of a piece, when a listener must grapple with the diverse stimuli of meter, texture, instrumentation, and so forth. Literal repetition of various elements lessens the potential for information overload. Example 3.4 contains the initial statement of a two-measure motive that is strictly repeated immediately thereafter.

EXAMPLE 3.4 Loeillet, Sonata for Oboe in A minor, op. 5, no. 2

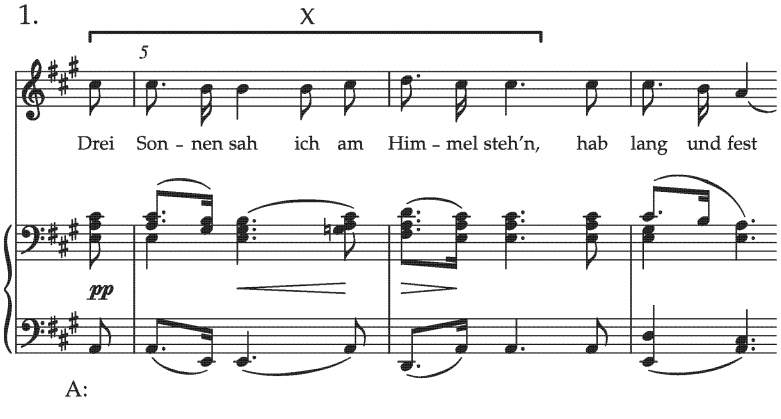
Composers use several different techniques when repeating a motive strictly. They may state the motive first in one voice and then in one or more different voices, a procedure called **imitation**. Clearly, the pacing, density, and overall musical drama are intensified when the imitation occurs in distinct registers and especially in different instruments. See Example 3.5A.

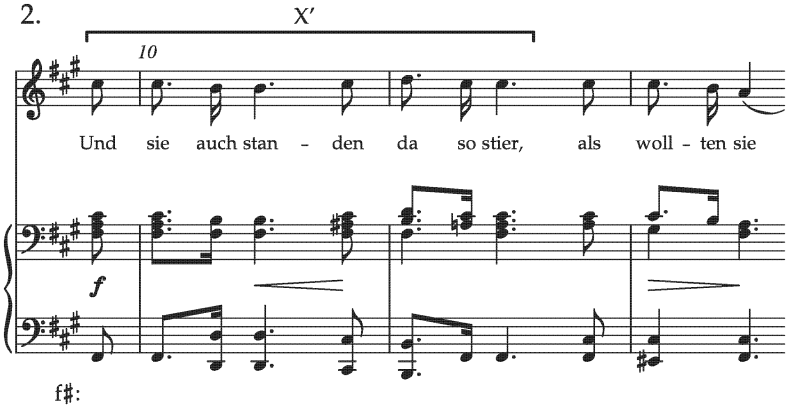
EXAMPLE 3.5 Imitation

A. Bach, Invention in D minor, BWV 775



B. Schubert, "Die Nebensonnen," from *Winterreise*





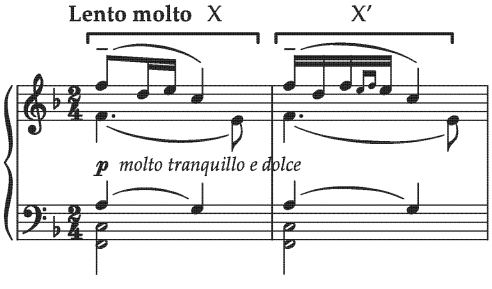
Another way composers avoid the potential monotony of strict repetition is to repeat (at pitch) the melodic motive but to cast it in a new harmonic environment, a technique called **reharmonization**. Example 3.5B illustrates. The first appearance of the C♯–B–(C♯)–D–C♯ double-neighbor motive occurs in the home key of A major, where C♯ = $\hat{3}$. Soon thereafter, Schubert reharmonizes the motive in the dark and tragic-sounding key of F♯ minor, in which C♯ = $\hat{5}$.

Modified Repetition

Modified motivic repetitions, a large and varied category, transform a motive in both degree and kind. One of the most important transformations is **embellishment**, defined as the process of adding one or more pitches to a motive. Depending on the context in which the added pitches appear, the transformations can range from being barely noticeable to actually distorting the motive beyond recognition. In Example 3.6A, Grieg opens his piano piece "Erotikon" with a two-beat motive whose immediate repetition contains a repeated F and a neighbor-note figure. However, given compensating factors such as the motive's length and that the addition of pitches leaves the overall contour unaffected, the listener easily hears a relationship between the original form of the motive and its modified repetition.

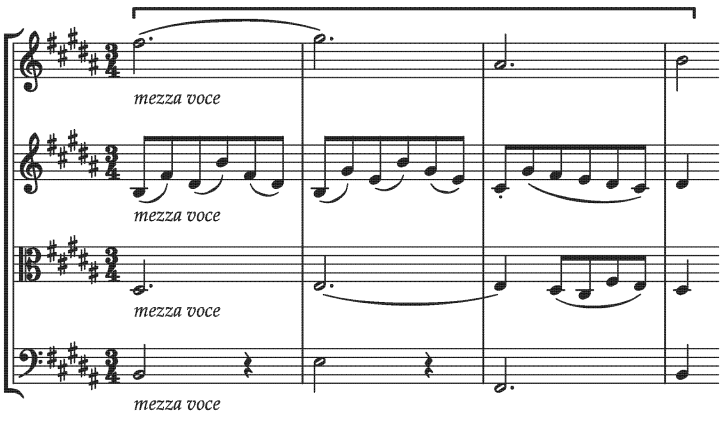
EXAMPLE 3.6 Modified Motivic Repetition

A. Grieg, "Erotikon," from *Lyric Pieces*, op. 43, no. 5



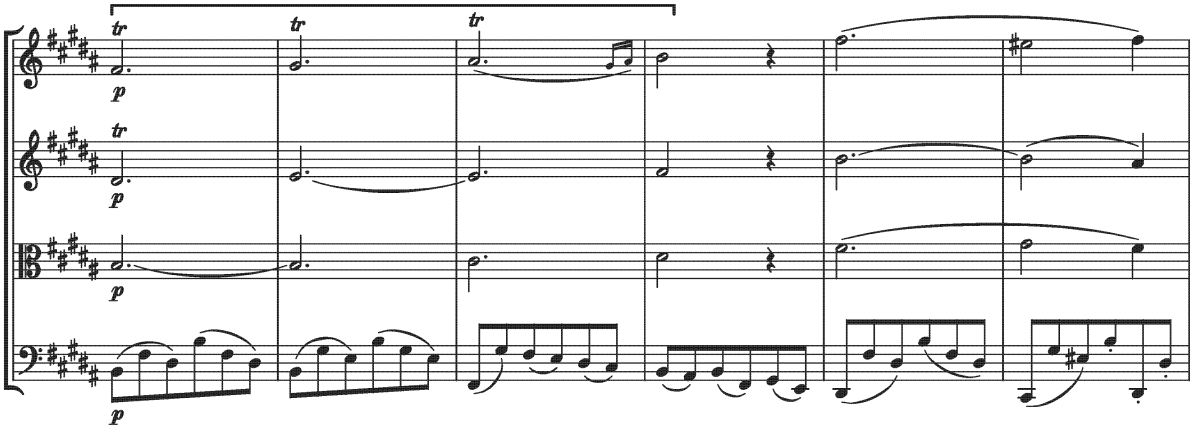
B. Haydn, String Quartet in B minor, op. 64, no. 2, *Adagio ma non troppo*

1.



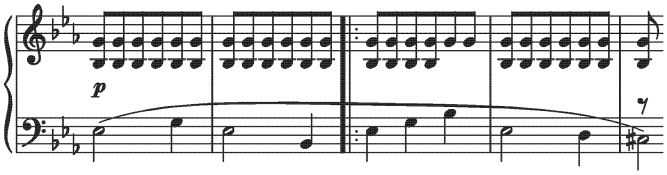
2.

3.



C. Beethoven, Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, "Eroica," op. 55, *Allegro con brio*

1.



2.

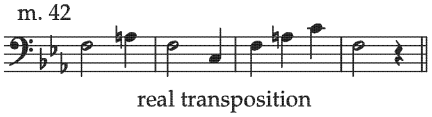
Composers often embellish motives by adding diminutions, such as chordal skips and passing tones, which risk compromising the motive's integrity and audibility. For example, Haydn uses a simple four-note scalar figure (F♯–G♯–A♯–B) as the primary motive in one of his string quartet movements, and, in order to create a more distinctive contour, he displaces the final two pitches one octave lower, resulting in the angular minor-seventh leap from G♯ to A♯ (Example 3.6B1). Haydn then embellishes the motive in its next statement by filling in not only the falling seventh with stepwise motion, but also the whole step between F♯ and G♯ (with the chromatic passing tone F𝄪 [Example 3.6B2]). Note that this rather substantial modification does not jeopardize the audible connection between this version of the motive and its initial presentation. Later, Haydn humorously recasts the increasingly embellished motive in an almost precompositional form: as a simple stepwise ascending fourth (Example 3.6B3).

On the other hand, what one might think would be the subtlest alteration of a motive—the simple transposition of one pitch up an octave—can actually undermine the character and connection between a motive and its repetition, as in the opening of Beethoven's "Eroica" Symphony and the following contrived repetition (Example 3.6C).

Although shifting a portion of a motive (e.g., a single pitch) by an octave weakened the Eroica theme, the most common form of modified repetition is **transposition**, in which the *entire* motive is restated on different pitches. Example 3.7A again presents the opening gesture of Beethoven's "Eroica," but this time the entire motive is transposed up a major second. Notice that the relationship between motive and repetition is not compromised when the entire structure is transposed by a consistent interval to a different pitch level. Examples 3.7B and C present two motives by Mozart, each of which he transposes up by a second.

EXAMPLE 3.7 Transposition

A. Beethoven, Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, "Eroica," op. 55, *Allegro*



B. Mozart, Symphony no. 40 in G minor, Trio

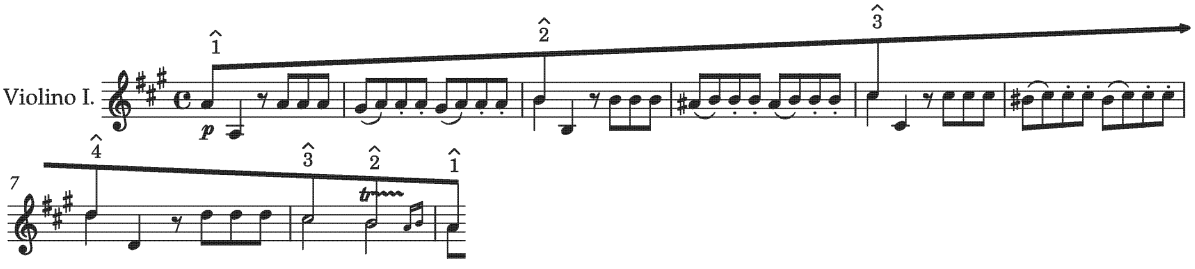
C. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegro*

There are two types of transposition, tonal and real. **Tonal transposition** maintains the generic (numerical) size of the intervals but alters the quality of the intervals in order to remain within the key. **Real transposition** maintains the specific (both generic and quality) interval size between each member of the motive and the transposed repetition of the motive. For example, given the motive E–F–G in the key of C major, a *tonal transposition* up a third would yield the pitches G–A–B; we sacrifice the exact intervals of the original (m2 followed by M2) in order to stay firmly in the key of C major. A *real transposition* would yield the pitches G–A♭–B♭. Here, the exact intervals are maintained (m2 followed by M2), but we sacrifice the underlying key of C major. See Example 3.7A for an example of real transposition and Examples 3.7B and C for tonal transposition.

When a motive is transposed two or more times successively *and* at a consistent interval (e.g., each repetition occurs at the tonal transposition of a second), we refer to the process as **sequence.** Example 3.8 reproduces the opening theme of Mozart's A-major symphony, comprising the sequential repetition of a two-measure motive. The motive is restated in rising steps from A to D (Î–4̂), followed by the rapid return to Î to close the eight-measure theme. Since most transposition of motives is by step, the resulting melodic

fluency—coupled with the restatement of the unifying motive—creates a powerful musical unity and forward motion.

EXAMPLE 3.8 Mozart, Symphony no. 29 in A major, K. 201, *Allegro moderato*



Imitation—the restatement of material in different voices—is not limited to the octave (or its compound), but it can occur at any interval, the fifth being the most common (Example 3.9A). The movement begins with a simple neighbor motion (C–D♭–C), which is imitated at the fifth above, on G (although stated a fourth lower). The next statement of the motive is at the original pitch level. Notice that a trill opens the movement. Since most trills occur in cadential gestures rather than as the first-sounding melodic event, we might wish to explore its possible significance. Since trills alternate the given note and the diatonic pitch that lies a second above the main note, we understand Mozart's reason for beginning the movement with this ornamental neighboring gesture: It prepares for the series of upper-neighbor motivic figures that appears in each of the voices. In fact, the falling-neighbor gesture, heard first in the soprano and subsequently in alto and tenor, is actually continued in the bass, albeit much more slowly. And because it alternates D♭ and C twice, we see that it is actually a written-out version of the trill that begins the movement.

EXAMPLE 3.9 Imitation

A. Mozart, Sonata in F major, K. 280, *Adagio*

B. Bach, G minor Fugue, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1

1.

2.

Composers often combine techniques, such as imitation and sequence. One favorite device of composers is to overlap imitative statements of the motive so that another voice enters with its statement before the previous voice has completed its own statement, a process called **stretto** (see Example 3.9B). In Example 3.9B1, Bach presents his motive, which in this piece is called a "subject." He immediately transposes the motive up a fifth (except for the first pitch, which enters on G rather than A). In Example 3.9B2, near the end of the piece, Bach states the motive three times in three voices and in as many octaves, each statement entering before the previous statement is completed.

Additional Pitch Transformations

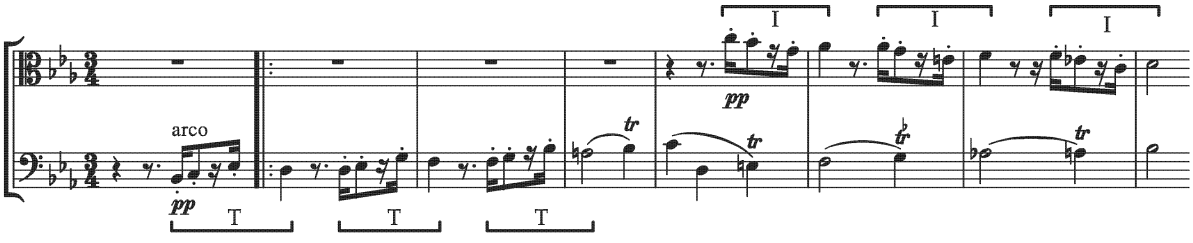
Some of the most important motivic repetitions transform contour. However, motives are able to withstand many types of transformation without ill effect. An example of one such transformation is the **change of interval**, which was heard in Example 3.1; the first statement of the motive closed with a falling fourth, the second statement with a falling third. Yet the listener is still able to hear the kinship between the statements, given their contour and especially their rhythmic identity. And in the violin's solo statement of the motive (m. 5), which closes with an *ascent* rather than the expected descent, we still hear a strong connection. In fact, later sequential statements of the motive incorporate the modified, rather than the original, version of the motive.

Like transposition—which raises or lowers to the same degree every pitch of a motive—the alteration of contour and order that affects every element of a motive is common. **Inversion** is a transformation that projects the interval between pitches in the opposite direction. For example, if an interval between two pitches is an ascending major third, the inversion would be a descending major third. Since this procedure creates an intervallic reflection, it is often called **mirror inversion**. Inversion is a common compositional device because of its audibility: The contour is maintained, albeit in mirror form. Example 3.10A begins with three

statements of the four-note motive, each of which is transposed by a third to traverse the tonic (B♭ major) triad. The viola follows suit; however, its inverted statements balance the cello's ascent with a descent.

EXAMPLE 3.10 Transposition and Inversion

A. Beethoven, String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 127, *Scherzando vivace*

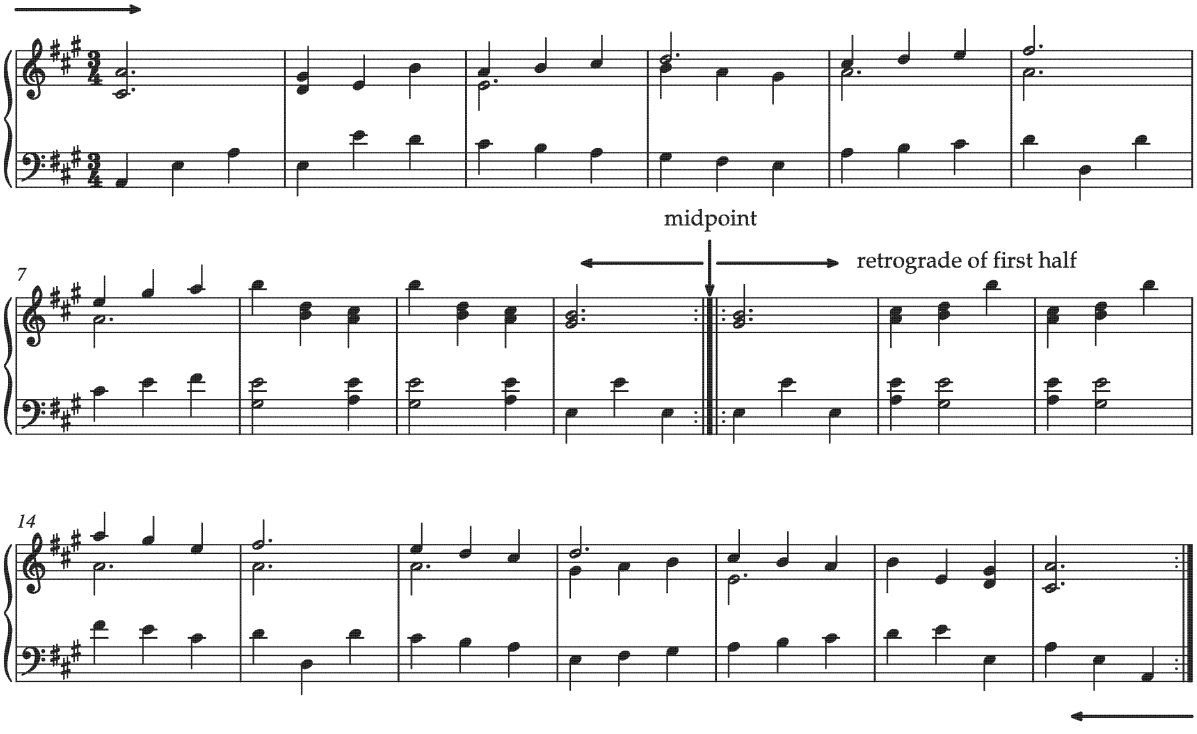


B. Haydn, String Quartet in B minor, op. 64, no. 2, *Adagio ma non troppo*

Usually the rhythm and contour of a motive are strong enough to withstand even drastic intervallic change. Indeed, the predominantly rising whole-step motion that we encountered earlier in the opening of Haydn's op. 64 String Quartet (Example 3.6B) is recast in an inverted form that is composed exclusively of half steps; but the aural relationship between the two versions is maintained (Example 3.10B).

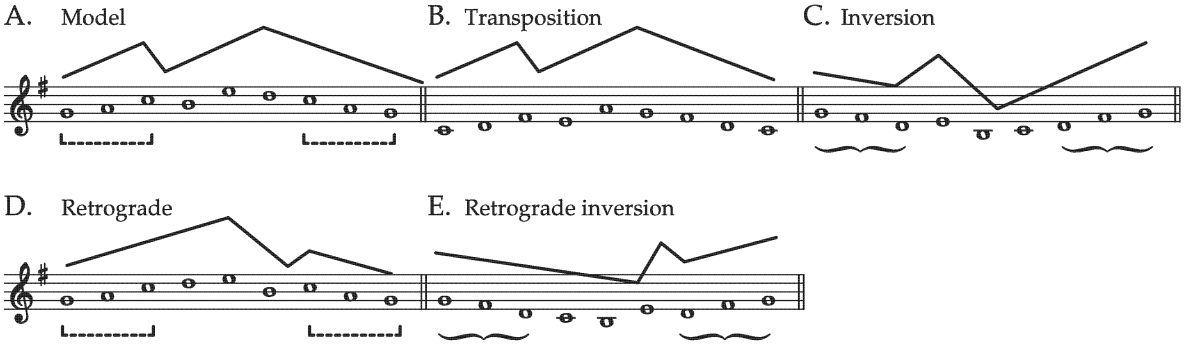
Retrograde reverses the order of the motive's pitches: what was the first pitch becomes the last, and vice versa. As you can imagine, recognizing that a melodic line has been played backwards is not easy, since contour, rhythm, and pitches are significantly altered between the original presentation and that of the retrograde. Thus, retrograde is not nearly as common a transformation as inversion. In order to project a retrograde relationship, composers provide visual clues for the performer and aural cues for the listener in the form of accents, rests, and leaps, as Haydn does in his "Minuet in Reverse" (Example 3.11). Such palindromic structures occur occasionally in music, but not nearly as often as they do in language, which include such gems as "step on no pets" and "doc note, I dissent, a fast never prevents a fatness; I diet on cod."

EXAMPLE 3.11 Haydn, Piano Sonata in A major, no. 41, Hob XVI.27, Menuet al rovescio



Retrograde inversion is a transformation that combines inversion and retrograde. Thus, one performs an inverted form of the motive backwards. Composers rarely employ retrograde and retrograde inversion, given how difficult they are to aurally recognize. We can summarize these transformations using a contour diagram such as the one shown in Example 3.12. Notice that since the model (taken from one of the *cantus firmi* in Chapter 2) creates an arch (ascent followed by descent) and that the first three pitches (G–A–C) are reversed at the end (C–A–G), the retrograde version and the model are quite audibly related. Study each of the transformations, all of which are tonal (as opposed to real, and thus remain within G major), and notice how pitches and intervals are related in each of the transformations.

EXAMPLE 3.12 Contour Transformations



Rhythmic Transformations

To this point, we have focused primarily on motivic transformations that involve pitches. However, rhythm is certainly as important as pitch, at least in terms of aural recognition of repetitions. For example, one need hear only the rhythmic component from the three pieces of Example 3.13A to be able instantly to identify them as excerpts from Mozart's "Eine Kleine Nachtmusik," Rossini's "William Tell Overture," and Bernstein's "America" (from *West Side Story*). Indeed, pitch change over a recurring rhythmic pattern does not undermine the integrity of the motive (Examples 3.13B1 and B2). The reverse, however—rhythmic change over a recurring pitch pattern—often will (Example 3.13B3).

EXAMPLE 3.13

A1. Mozart, "Eine Kleine Nachtmusik," K. 525, *Allegro*

A2. Rossini, "William Tell Overture"

A3. Bernstein, "America," from *West Side Story*

B. Schubert, "Aufenthalt," from *Schwanengesang*

1.

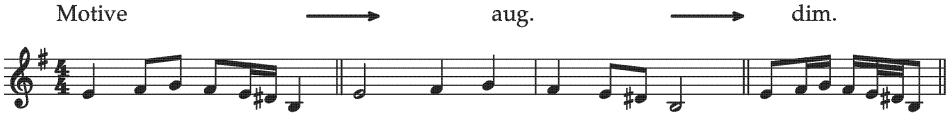
2.

3.

Composers often increase or decrease proportionately the overall duration of motivic repetitions. A proportional increase is called **augmentation**, and a decrease is called **diminution**. Instances of each are shown in Example 3.14A. Example 3.14B presents the opening of the *Adagietto* movement from Mahler's Symphony no. 5. The first statement of the well-known main motive occurs in the first violin. The subsequent restatement of the tune in the cello is augmented by a factor of 2.

EXAMPLE 3.14 Rhythmic Transformations

A.



B. Mahler, Symphony no. 5, *Adagietto*, mm. 1–4 and 10–14

1.

2.

Both augmentation and diminution (and other transformations, such as inversion and transposition) may occur simultaneously. When they do, the listener is treated to what amounts to a "motivic saturation." Brahms is particularly fond of juxtaposing, often simultaneously, multiple, transformed versions of a motive that include augmentation, diminution, stretto, and transposition, examples of which all occur in his song "Mein wundes Herz" (Example 3.15). Since the piano introduction's texture is already quite dense (four voices), we first focus on the initial single-line vocal melody and then return to the more complicated introduction. The vocal line opens with a falling figure that outlines the tonic triad (B–G–E), embellished by the passing tone F♯. Brahms balances this descent with a dramatic arpeggiation that spans an ascending tenth (E–B–G). The phrase closes by step descent to B.

EXAMPLE 3.15 Brahms, "Mein wundes Herz," op. 59, no. 7

Returning to the introduction, we see this motivic contour in the right hand, which begins on C: C–A–G–F♯. Brahms shadows this line a sixth above in imitation (A–F♯–E–D♯) at the eighth note, which begins a process that culminates in motivic saturation. The piano accompaniment echoes the soprano's initial pitches one octave lower, but in diminution, as eighth notes. This imitation extends through the balancing leaping gesture E–B–G–E. Immediately following, in m. 7, the piano restates the motive, this time beginning on D.

The following piano interlude (mm. 11–12) presents three versions of the motive, the first of which includes several preliminary falling thirds. The second and third statements present exact repetitions of m. 1; however, the voices that formed the sixths that open the piece have now swapped places, resulting in falling parallel thirds. This *intervallic* inversion sets up *contour* inversion that is explicitly stated in m. 13 and prepares the vocal line's entrance with its statement of the inversion of the motive, against which the accompaniment returns to its original falling contour.

Developmental Repetitions

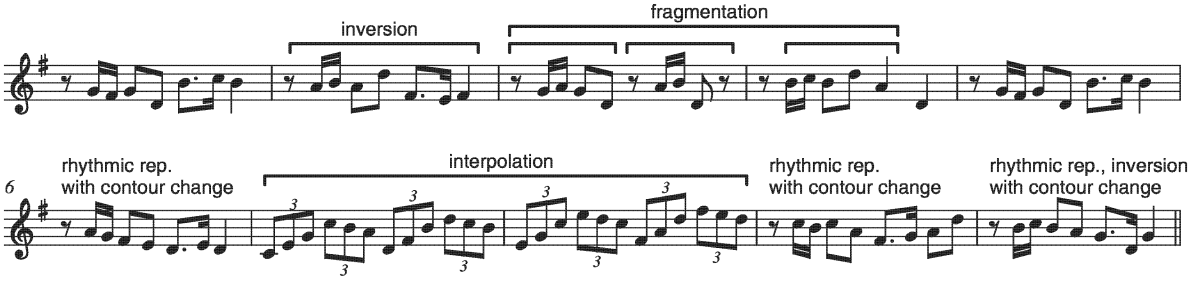
The third category of motivic repetition—which we refer to as **developmental repetitions**—includes motivic repetitions whose pitch and/or rhythmic content are significantly altered. We will see that although developmental repetitions may not be as readily audible as modified repetitions, they often ultimately prove to be more important, given their ability to operate at different levels of the musical structure. Further, such motives can be transformed to the degree that they spawn new motives. We will limit our discussion to three procedures, the first two of which are interpolation and fragmentation. The third type, called *hidden motivic repetitions*, is particularly important, given the ability to operate within a musical texture to the degree that the repetitions determine not only the motivic, but also the harmonic trajectory of the music. We will also explore how a motive can migrate not only from one section of a piece to a contrasting section, but also from one movement to another.

Interpolation involves the substantial addition of pitches to a motive, creating the effect of an insertion rather than a mere embellishment. The effect is equivalent to parentheses or an independent clause in language. Musical interpolations can actually appear at a variety of musical levels within a piece, from the phrase level all the way to structures such as the cadenza in a concerto. **Fragmentation** develops only a portion of a motive, such as a neighbor gesture or even a single interval. Often it is the opening, or the "head," of the motive that is fragmented, given its prominent placement and relative memorableness. Further, composers often repeat the fragments sequentially.

Example 3.16A presents a one-measure motive followed by various transformations. First, the motive is inverted (and transposed up a step). The following two measures fragment the motive, stating only its first two beats in rising seconds, with the last note (D) acting as a pedal. The motive is restated in its original form in m. 5; m. 6 maintains the rhythm but alters the contour. A two-measure interpolation begins in m. 7 as a new rhythmic figure (triplets) and pitch motive (broken-chord figure and passing motion) unexpectedly enters. Measures 9–10 return to the original motive's rhythm, which supports a new contour that leads to the final cadence.

EXAMPLE 3.16 Additional Transformations

A.



B. Haydn, String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 33, no. 2, Scherzo

The Haydn example (Example 3.16B) contains one phrase (the addition of the chordal seventh of V, A♭, "undoes" the cadential effect of the preceding V triad); the first phrase closes with a HC in m. 4 and the second a PAC in m. 10. The first phrase presents the one-measure motive: an incomplete-neighbor figure followed by a descending leap of an octave, with two chords that punctuate the end of the motive. The motive is repeated over the ii^6 chord and the V chord (although the descending leaps are smaller). What follows is an interpolation that prolongs the dominant, in echo fashion, of mm. 3–4. Haydn clarifies the function of this material as an insertion by changing the prevailing dynamic level from *forte* to *piano* (returning to *forte* in m. 6) and by stating only the neighboring portion of the motive several times, with the addition of a chromatic pitch. The second phrase, then, does not begin until m. 6.

EXAMPLE 3.17 Bach, Invention in B♭ major

Listen to Example 3.17. The opening motivic gesture consists of two parts: an ascending broken-chord figure followed by a balancing descending figure. However, given that these two parts each contain the exact same rhythmic figure (thirty-second notes followed by sixteenth notes), we can refine our analysis and claim that the second part of the motive, the descending form, is a literal inversion of the first, thus altering our interpretation of what constitutes the actual motive: Rather than a single four-beat ascending and descending entity, the motive is better interpreted as a two-beat rising figure whose first repetition occurs in inversion. The first fragmentation of the motive occurs in m. 4, where only the opening thirty-second-note figure appears. Bach also states the inverted form of the thirty-second-note figure to create both imitation and, given that he repeats the figure down a step each time, sequence.

Inter-section and Intermovement Motivic Repetitions

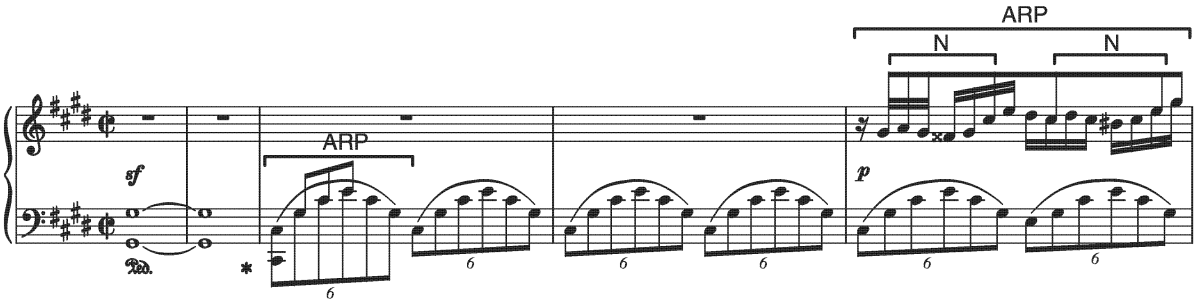
Composers unify their multisection and multimovement works in many ways, but one of the most important is through motivic connections. However, for a motive to migrate from one section of a piece (or from one movement to a contrasting movement), it must be highly malleable. For example, Mozart's Sonata in B♭ begins with the unharmonized upbeat incomplete upper-neighbor on $\hat{6}$ which falls to $\hat{5}$ which is followed by the stepwise descent to $\hat{1}$ (Example 3.18A). We hear a contrasting theme in the new key of F major in m. 23. However, a brief glance reveals that the opening gesture has migrated to this new section. This time the upper neighbor to $\hat{5}$ is complete, and the faster sixteenth-note D–C ($\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) mimics the grace-note figure G–F (again $\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$) that began the piece (Example 3.18B). The first phrase of this new theme closes with a HC. The modified repetition that follows (mm. 31–38; not shown) carries the melodic line all the way down to F ($\hat{1}$ in F major).

EXAMPLE 3.18 Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333

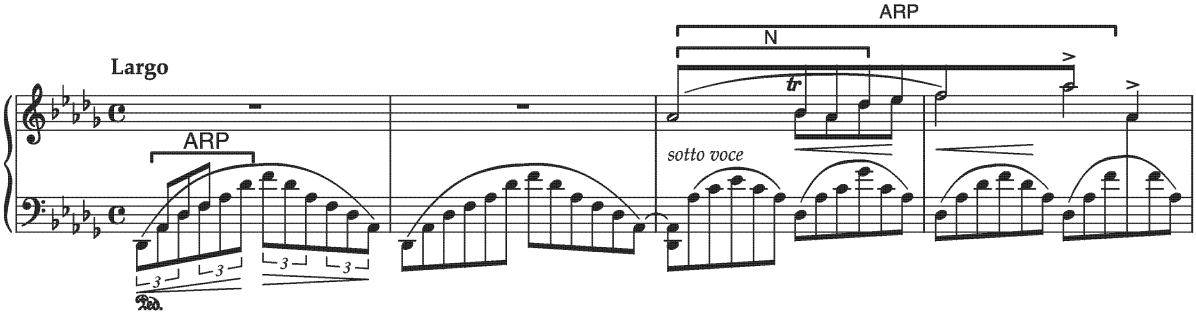
Another, more dramatic example of motivic migration and development is found in Chopin's *Fantasie Impromptu*, a work that is cast in a large three-part form: The first and third related parts are virtuosic and tumultuous, while the second part is lyrical and restrained. However, a transformed motivic repetition connects the two sections and unifies the piece (Example 3.19). The right-hand figure that opens the piece (m. 5) is composed of a rising one-octave arpeggiation of the tonic triad: G♯–C♯–E–G♯. This ascent is embellished by two turn figures, the first around G♯ (G♯–A–G♯–F𝄪–G♯) and the second around C♯ (D♯–C♯–B♯–C♯).

EXAMPLE 3.19 Chopin, *Fantasie Impromptu*, op. 66

A.



B.



The contrasting section in the parallel major (notated enharmonically in the easier-to-read key of D♭ major) opens with a slow-moving tune that also begins on $\hat{5}$ (A♭) (Example 3.19B). Again, the melody sweeps upward, unfolding a tonic triad: A♭–D♭–F–A♭. Notice that this tune uses the nearly identical pitch classes and the order of the opening tune (save for the F^5, which, substitutes for the E in this major-mode section). To cement the motivic relationship, the D♭-major tune contains both the upper neighbor (B♭) and even the E♭, which was the repeated accented dissonance in the first theme. We may in turn work backwards from the work's opening right-hand material to the left-hand accompanimental figure, which contains the very pitches and contour that spawn the later themes. Note that Chopin reminds us of the left hand's importance by recycling it as the accompanimental figure in the D♭-major section.

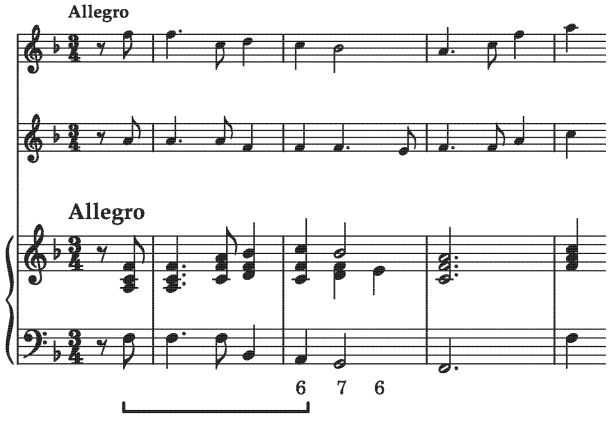
Intermovement connections were common in the nineteenth century, yet such connections occur earlier in many Classical and even Baroque pieces, including the work of Italian Baroque composer Arcangelo Corelli. The movements within his trio sonatas are often linked by both melodic and rhythmic shapes; see Example 3.20. The Allemande opens with a dotted-note figure that arpeggiates the F-major triad, which is immediately imitated by the bass instruments (Example 3.20A). The second part of the movement recasts the tune in a modified inversion and places the bass instrument in the role of leader, with the first violin following close behind (Example 3.20B).

EXAMPLE 3.20 Corelli, Trio Sonata in F major, op. 2, no. 7

A. Allemande

B. Allemande

C. Corrente



D. Gigue

E. Prelude

F. Gigue

The Corrente uses this inverted form of the motive, filling in the leap that would have been from D down to A with steps (Example 3.20C). The Gigue returns to the imitative procedure first heard in the Allemande, in which Corelli restates the original ascending arpeggiated form of the motive (Example 3.20D). The added F in m. 2 and the skip to B♭ rather than C do not compromise hearing a connection between the original motive and the Gigue's restatement.

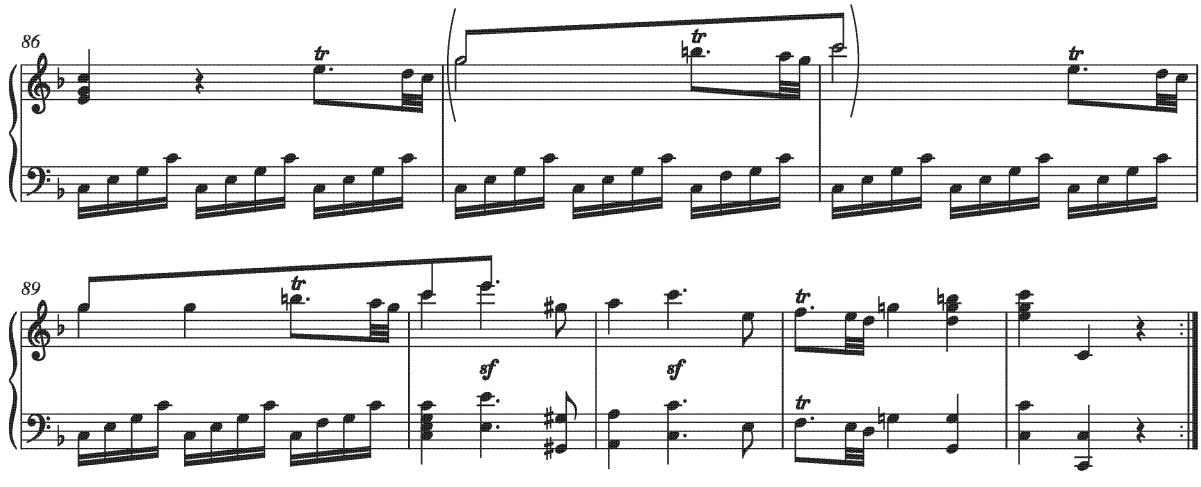
What remains intact in each movement is the dotted rhythmic figure that accompanies the fifth and fourth leaps. A brief glance at the sonata's opening Prelude reveals an emphasis on these very motives (Example 3.20E). They appear following each dramatic fermata: F–B♭, C–F, G–C. Note that the transposition of these leaps of a fourth and a fifth is by perfect fifths. That there may be a connection between these fourths and their expansion into the initial motive of each of the following movements, we can look at how Corelli develops the melody in the final movement. Beginning in m. 18, and just before the end of the Gigue, the rising perfect intervals occur in sequence: C–F, D–G, E–A, F–B♭, G–C, in effect explicitly announcing that the everyday interval of a perfect fourth/perfect fifth is a generating force in both the melodic and harmonic realms of the sonata.

In order to smooth the connection between contrasting sections of a piece, composers employ a technique referred to as **linkage**, whereby a motivic element is retained in both sections but is necessarily transformed in order to fit into the new musical environment (Example 3.21). Three formal areas are shown in Example A: the end of the tumultuous development section, characterized by sixteenth notes and off-beat *sforzandi* (through m. 132), a retransition whose function is to dissipate the energy of the development and prepare for the return of the opening material (mm. 132–143), and the restatement of the opening material in E minor (mm. 144ff). Notice how Beethoven converts the development's broken-chord figure into a scalar motive (G–F♯–E–D♯) that he repeats in rhythmic augmentation, first with sixteenth notes, then with eighths, then with quarters, and finally with half notes (mm. 132–137), all of which occurs in imitation at the octave, in stretto, and falling in register. Notice that the lowest note of the motive, D♯, is removed during this process and that the remaining pitches, G–F♯–E, begin to accelerate and regain the higher register and then rush headlong into the restatement of the original motive, which relies on this very third, G–F♯–E.

EXAMPLE 3.21 Linkage Technique

A. Beethoven, Piano Sonata in E minor, op. 90, *Allegro*

B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in F major, K. 332, *Allegro*



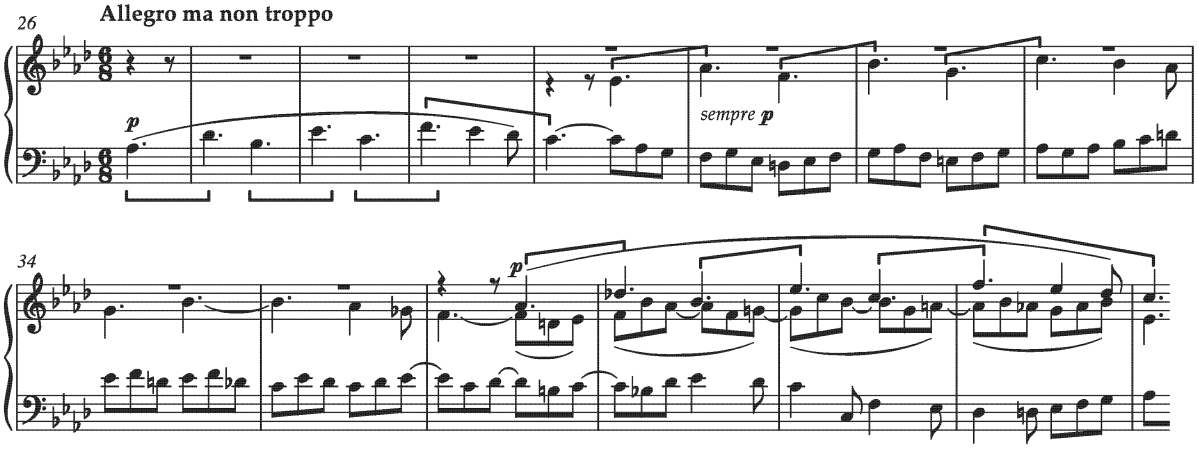
Mozart's use of linkage in his F-major sonata is a bit more concealed. The rising broken-chord figure that begins the development (G–C–E) has been subtly prepared in the preceding virtuosic cadential section (Example 3.21B).

Single-Interval Motives

The motives we have discussed so far possess distinct melodic and rhythmic profiles. Clear pitch contours supported by characteristic rhythmic settings help us to recognize the many transformations to which they are subjected. However, by the late eighteenth century, composers began to explore the power of a single interval. This type of motive can generate both melodic and harmonic material throughout a piece. When one stops to think about it, a single interval is highly versatile and can be employed in multiple musical environments. Consider the perfect fourth A♭–D♭, which can fit into any number of tonal contexts. At the same time, this perfect fourth is also ubiquitous in tonal music and therefore may not be motivic at all, but just a by-product of melodic and harmonic motions. Composers such as Beethoven were drawn to single-interval motives because they could be used as the impetus to create longer and more involved motives. Indeed, this very perfect fourth is the seed Beethoven uses to generate the theme in the last movement of his Piano Sonata in A♭ (Example 3.22A). He also subjects the motive to various transformations, including inversion (Example 3.22B) and augmentation and diminution, *simultaneously* (Example 3.22C).

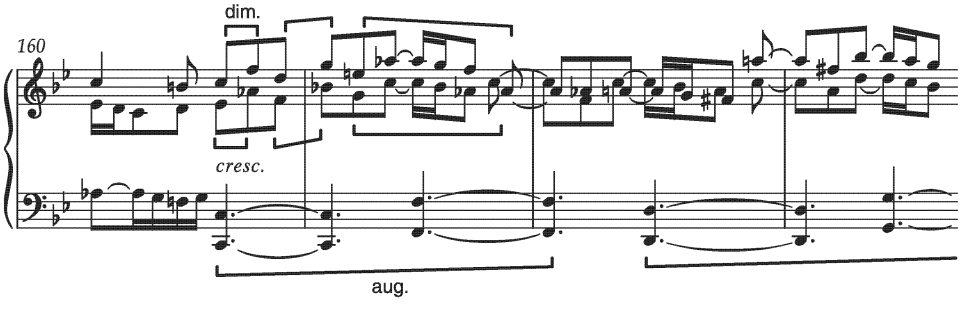
EXAMPLE 3.22 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in A♭ major, op. 110 (fugue theme)

A.



B.

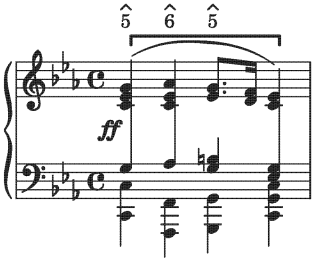
C.



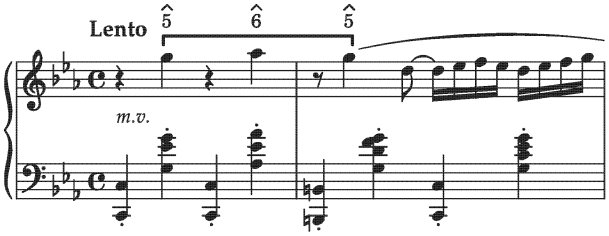
In order to create a motive composed of only a single interval or a pair of like intervals, composers often combine a more generic interval, such as the third or the fifth, with a more striking and immediately audible interval, such as the half-step neighbor. Example 3.23 presents the opening gestures of several well-known Chopin pieces, all of which depend on the upper-neighbor motive $\hat{5}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$.

EXAMPLE 3.23 $\hat{5}$–$\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$ as Motive

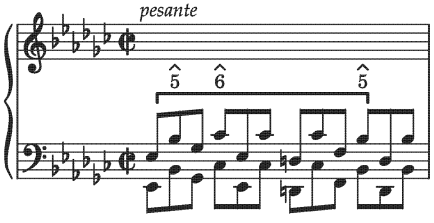
A. Chopin, Prelude in C minor, op. 28



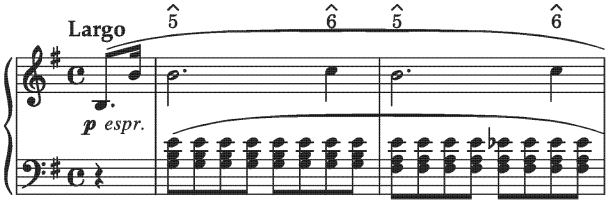
B. Chopin, Nocturne in C minor, op. 48, no. 1



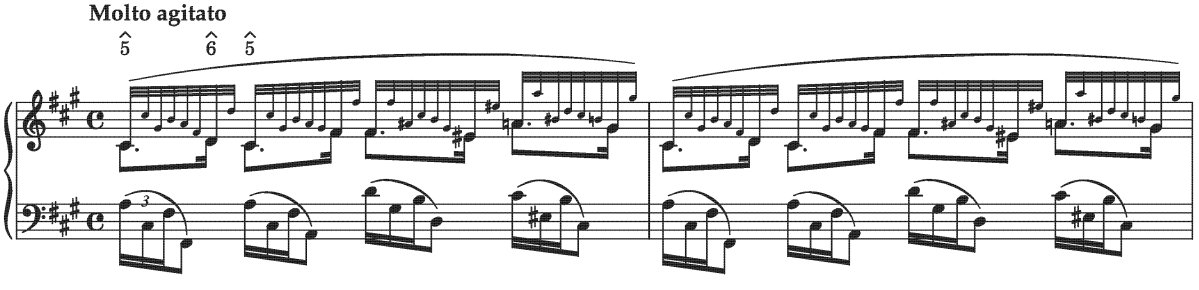
C. Chopin, Prelude in E♭ minor, op. 28



D. Chopin, Prelude in E minor, op. 28



E. Chopin, Prelude in F♯ minor, op. 28



Finally, composers often combine a single-interval motive, such as the half-step neighbor, with a transformed version of itself, as seen in the Clementi excerpt in Example 3.24. The incomplete rising neighbor E–F ($\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$) is combined with its inversion: D♭–C ($\hat{6}$–$\hat{5}$). Clementi subjects the motive not only to transposition and inversion, but also to **octave displacement**, in which a portion of the motive is shifted up or down by an octave. This procedure occurs early in the movement and coincides with the movement's first *crescendo*. Notice that the motive is dramatically augmented, occupying a full, rather than a half, measure. The following phrase opens with the motive in

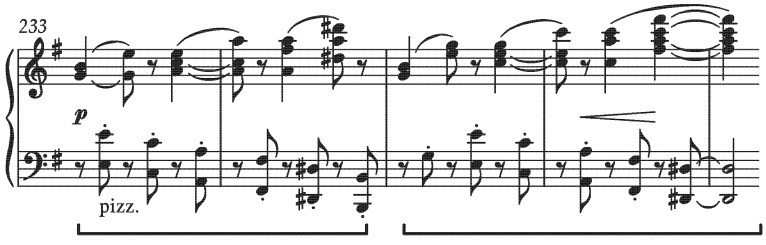
imitation, and from here Clementi develops it even further. The relentless motivic saturation, including many transposed versions, culminates in the final gesture of the movement, in which the motive appears at its original pitch level and with its characteristic half-step members tightly juxtaposed. However, its final statement in the piano's lowest register and at *pianissimo* dynamic seems to reflect the motive's utter exhaustion after its nonstop development throughout the movement (Example 3.25).

EXAMPLE 3.24 Clementi, Sonata in F minor, op. 13, no. 6

EXAMPLE 3.25 Clementi, Sonata in F minor, op. 13, no. 6

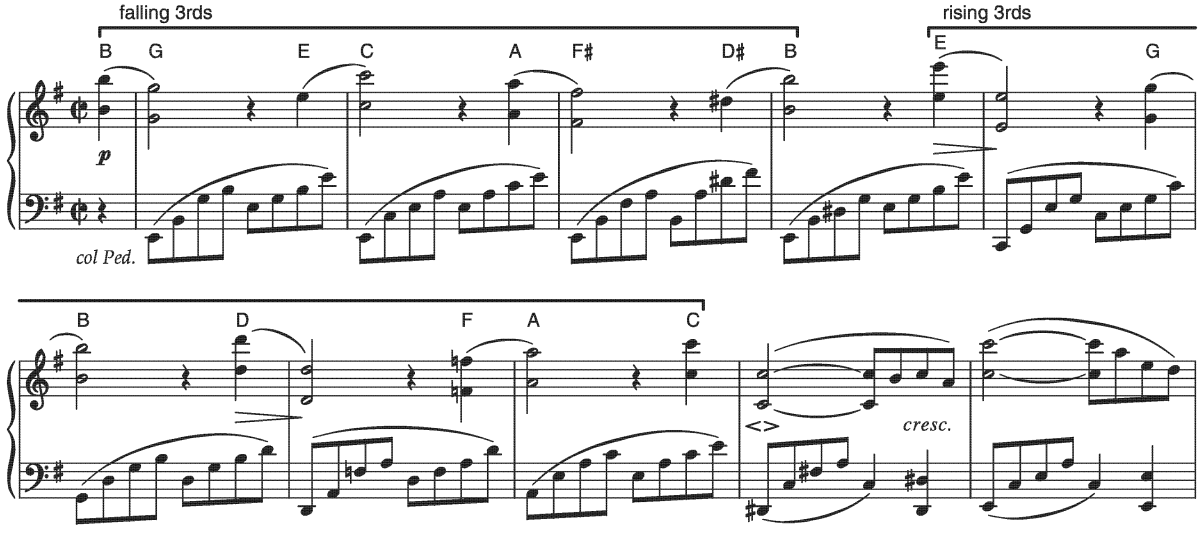
Octave displacement can transform a single-interval motive to the degree that it becomes unrecognizable. This technique, a favorite of Brahms, can be heard in his Fourth Symphony (Example 3.26). The interval of a falling third is prominent throughout the symphony. And in its closing moments, Brahms summarizes the motive's importance by dramatically stating these thirds in unison and in octaves, one after the other, in the following long series: E–C–A–F♯–D♯–B–G–E–C–A–F♯–D♯.

EXAMPLE 3.26 Brahms, Symphony no. 4, op. 98



Notice that the pattern of falling thirds is broken only once, apparently because of range limitations. However, the nearly two-octave leap from the low B to the high G draws attention to this now-compound sixth. If we were to take advantage of the invertibility of sixths and thirds, we can keep this falling-third pattern within a more restricted tessitura. A glance at the melody that opens the symphony's first movement reveals this exact structure. In Example 3.27, after B^5 falls a third to G^5 and E^5, C^6 appears a sixth above, not a third below, E^5. Similarly, A^5, $F\sharp^5$, and $D\sharp^5$ fall by thirds from C^6, but B^5 rises a sixth from $D\sharp^5$. That Brahms subjects his tunes to such manipulation is clear from the following measures, where he changes direction and *ascends* through a series of hidden thirds.

EXAMPLE 3.27 Brahms, Symphony no. 4, *Allegro non troppo*

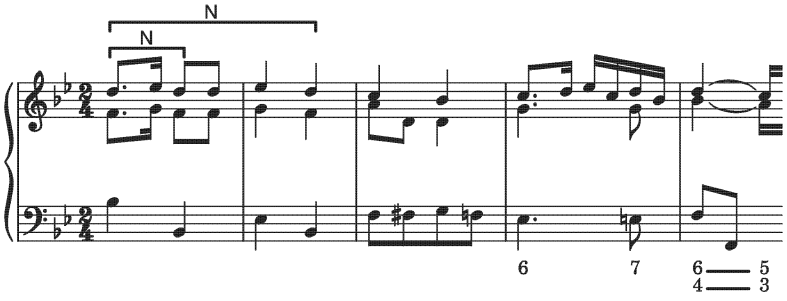


Hidden Motivic Repetitions

Developmental motives are the musical world's equivalent to the animal world's chameleons; motives are modified in order to fit within their musical environment. As such, they are remarkably powerful compositional tools. One reason that developmental motives are so important and interesting is that they are able to exist at various levels of musical structure (Example 3.28). Haydn

begins his piece with the upper-neighbor figure D–E♭–D. The motive is innocuous, given its brevity (one beat) and that the E♭ (a dissonant fourth) is metrically unstressed. However, already in the next measure, the neighbor motive is expanded: E♭ is four times longer, occupying an entire beat, and now it is harmonically supported by the E♭ harmony (IV). Motives often gain structural importance as a piece unfolds. Recognition of such processes allows the performer to follow what amounts to a motivic path through a composition.

EXAMPLE 3.28 Haydn, Divertimento, "St. Anthony Chorale"



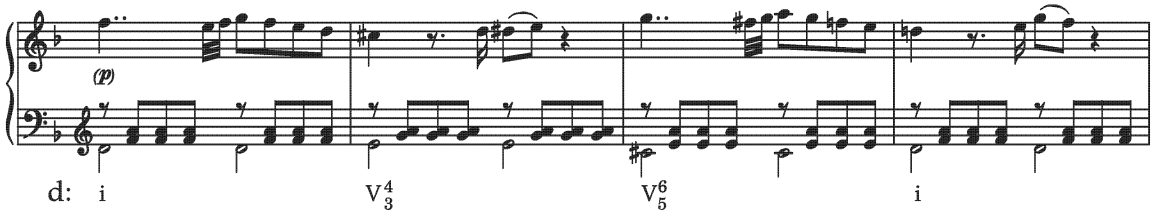
Sometimes composers state motives at various levels simultaneously. Beethoven begins one of his late bagatelles with what sounds like an accompanimental figure in the right hand: a gently rocking figure in parallel thirds supported by a pedal on G (Example 3.29). The left-hand gesture that enters two beats later (above the right hand, in the high register) also sounds more accompanimental than thematic; as a triplet-sixteenth-note filigree, it is more commentary on the rocking figure than it is theme. Examination of the contours of both figures is revealing: The right-hand eighth-note figure outlines a double neighbor (E–F–D–E), and so does the triplet-sixteenth figure, transformed by inversion and transposition: G–F♯–A–G. Thus, in spite of their contrasting surface presentations, both figures are intimately related and, as such, should be given motivic, rather than accompanimental, status. This interconnection between large-scale and small-scale motives is called a **motivic nesting**.

EXAMPLE 3.29 Beethoven, Bagatelle, op. 126

Depth and Surface: Motivic Parallelism

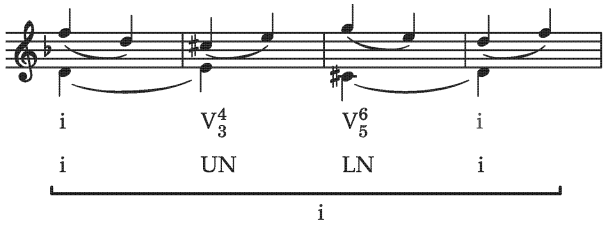
We have seen the importance of motives and how through transformation they can operate in any number of musical contexts. The most interesting transformations allow motives to migrate to different sections of a piece or to different movements and even to be hidden. We now explore the migration of motives to the harmonic domain, seeing how they control the composer's choice of chords. That is, we will see that the outer-voice counterpoint can project, at deep structural levels, the melodic figurations we hear at the musical surface. Listen to Example 3.30, an excerpt by Mozart, and consider the given roman numeral analysis. Note that there is no real harmonic progression in these four measures; rather, weak dominant harmonies expand the tonic.

EXAMPLE 3.30 Mozart, Piano Fantasy in D minor, K. 397, *Adagio*



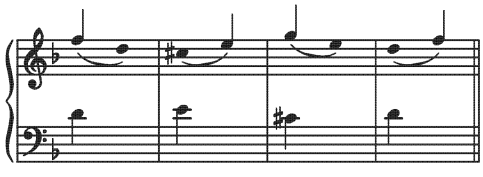
Tonic harmony is expanded by an upper and a lower neighbor in the bass, harmonized by V^4_3 and V^6_5 (Example 3.31). This static double-neighbor expansion of tonic is aligned with an equally static melodic framework that begins and ends on F ($\hat{3}$). The controlling upper-voice F is prolonged by the same double-neighbor melodic figure, mirroring the bass in inversion.

EXAMPLE 3.31 Mozart (reduction no. 1)



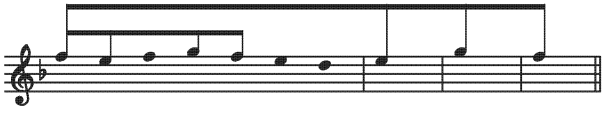
Example 3.32 summarizes the outer-voice counterpoint; stemmed notes represent structural notes.

EXAMPLE 3.32 Mozart (reduction no. 2)



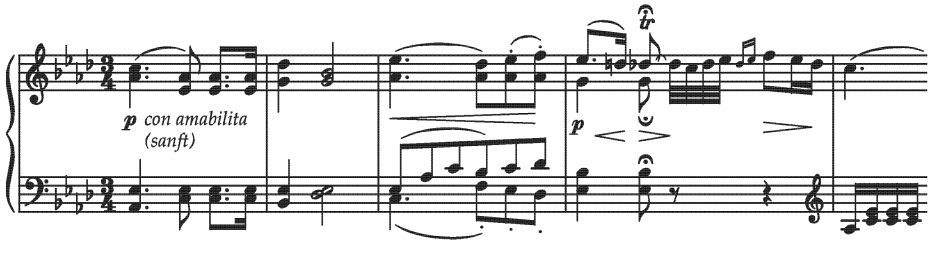
An association links the surface tune to the underlying counterpoint. Example 3.33 shows how Mozart uses the same double-neighbor figure over two different time spans, both as a tiny figure in the melody (m. 1, beats 1–3) and as a large gesture controlling the melodic path of the first phrase (mm. 1–4). The result is an audible connection between the surface and the underlying counterpoint, made real through the ubiquitous presence of the motive. Consequently, the initial melodic gesture becomes a shaping force not only over the entire melody but also in the bass, where it influences the harmony. The transformed repetitions of a motive and its harmonization at different structural levels is called **motivic parallelism**. Given that Mozart's initial motive occurs within the longer, more structural, version of the motive, this motivic parallelism is also nested.

EXAMPLE 3.33 Mozart, Motivic Parallelism



Let's examine how motive works in conjunction with harmony, tonic expansions, counterpoint, and motivic parallelism in the opening of a late piano sonata by Beethoven (Example 3.34). Unlike Mozart's Fantasy, the first phrase of Beethoven's sonata contains a harmonic progression that unfolds in the standard phrase model (T–PD–D–T) as well as the expected tonic expansion. Beethoven uses inverted V^7 chords to expand the tonic, effectively surrounding the upcoming $\hat{3}$ in the bass of m. 3 from below and above. Examination of the pitch material and its interaction with the meter reveals yet another layer of structure. The underlying bass line is $A\flat^2$–$B\flat^2$–C^3 ($\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$) thus prolonging the tonic by movement from I to I^6.

EXAMPLE 3.34 Beethoven, Piano Sonata in A♭ major, op. 110, *Moderato cantabile molto espressivo*



A♭: I I^6 V^4_3 V^4_2 I^6 ii^4_3 I^6_4 IV V^{8-7} I

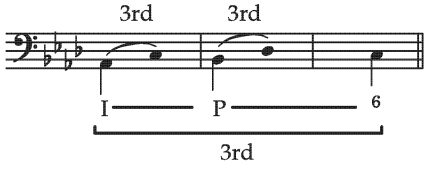
I — V^4_3 — I^6 ii^4_3 P IV V^7 — I

I — P — I^6 ii — IV V^7 — I

T — PD — D — T

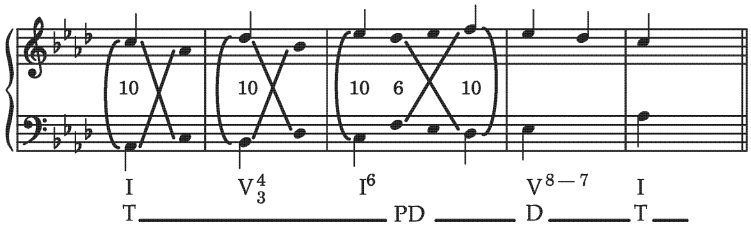
The motive in this passage appears to be the third, given the large-scale third in mm. 1–3 and the smaller third in the opening interval in the bass ($A\flat^2$ to C^3). Example 3.35 summarizes the bass motion for this passage.

EXAMPLE 3.35 Beethoven, Motivic Thirds



The two-voice contrapuntal scheme resulting from soprano and bass supports the assertion that the main motive is the third, for, at the surface, the melody in m. 1 mirrors the bass in contrary motion with the voice exchange of A♭ and C (Example 3.36). The pattern is continued in m. 2 with another voice exchange, this time involving D♭ and B♭. In m. 3 the voice-exchange pattern stops and $E\flat^5$ is extended with a double neighbor. The soprano plays C^5–$D\flat^5$–$E\flat^5$ while the bass moves in parallel tenths over the first three measures. A final tenth (and another voice exchange) occurs at the pre-dominant, followed by a rapid descent that creates the balanced arch of the soprano line, C^5–$D\flat^5$–$E\flat^5$–F^5–$E\flat^5$–$D\flat^5$–C^5.

EXAMPLE 3.36 Beethoven, Motivic Voice Exchanges



We have skirted over the short cadenza-like flourish in m. 4 that links the dominant back to the tonic. Indeed, pianists are often baffled by this curious figure. But if we review the structural contents of the soprano line in Example 3.36, we see a note-for-note correspondence between the structural soprano notes in the opening four measures and the thirty-second-note flourish (Example 3.37).

EXAMPLE 3.37 Beethoven, Motivic Parallelism

Indeed, it seems as if Beethoven has provided the listener with a summary of exactly what took place in the first four measures, much in the same way that Mozart gave the listener an introduction to what was to follow in his Fantasy. Finally, lest the reader think that Beethoven limits the use of his motive to this one movement, let us return to Example 3.22 (reproduced here as Example 3.38), which presents the theme to the last movement. Comparing both themes based on their rhythms and metrical placement suggests that they are highly contrasting: The first movement is all "about" thirds and their transposition up seconds, while the last movement projects rising perfect fourths. However, comparing only their pitch content, we see a note-for-note correspondence between the two themes. The last movement's theme, then, can be considered a recomposition of the first movement's. Beethoven has omitted the initial C, beginning the last movement's theme on A♭, which allows the unarticulated perfect fourths of the first movement's theme to emerge as the controlling interval. To cinch the connection between movements, both the high point of the first movement's theme, the F, and its stepwise return to C, recur in the last movement.

EXAMPLE 3.38 Beethoven, Inter-Movement Parallelism

WORKBOOK 1
App. 3.1–3.7

Clearly, analysis can reveal important musical correspondences that will help performers gain insight into a work's inner logic and structure. If a brief investigation yields such important findings, imagine what truths you'll discover in music through a lifetime of careful investigation.

EXERCISE INTERLUDE

WRITING

3.1

Transform the given motives as required.

A. D-minor example:

1. Transpose up a minor third (tonal transposition).
2. Invert (begin on D).
3. Retrograde.
4. Transpose down a minor second plus augmentation at 2:1 (real transposition).
5. Embellish using neighbor figures.

6. Embellish the motive to at least twice its length through fragmentation.

B. G-major example:

1. Invert (begin on G).
2. Sequence down by step at least twice; cadence on $\hat{1}$.
3. Add a one-measure interpolation.
4. Invert; then transpose down a major third (real transposition).
5. Retrograde plus diminution by 50 percent; then sequence the result up by step two times.

3.2 Prose Writing

Write a one- to two-page essay in which you define *motive* in your own words. Support your ideas with examples from the repertoire for your instrument.

TERMS AND CONCEPTS

- motivic processes
  - motivic nesting
  - motivic saturation
- motivic types
  - hidden motivic repetitions
  - inter-section and intermovement types
  - motive versus figure
  - motivic parallelism
  - strict, modified, developmental
  - tonal versus real transposition
- motivic transformations
  - augmentation versus diminution
  - change of interval, change of meter
  - embellishment
  - fragmentation
  - imitation
  - interpolation
  - inversion
  - octave displacement
  - reharmonization
  - retrograde
  - sequence
  - stretto
  - transposition (real and tonal)

APPENDIX 4

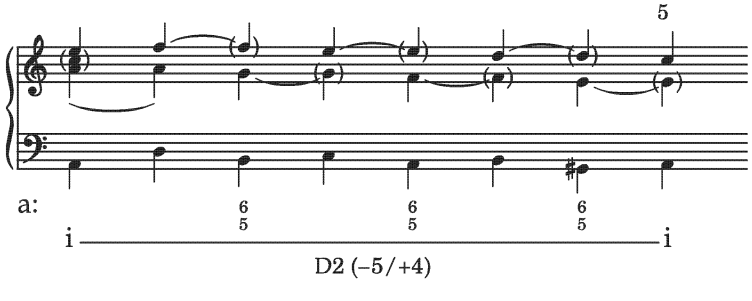
Additional Harmonic-Sequence Topics

Compound Melody and Implied Seventh Chord Sequences

We have observed how composers write single melodic lines that give the impression of two or more independent voices. This compositional technique, *compound melody*, is common in sequential passages. In many cases, there is a subtle play between consonance and dissonance. The reduction in Example 4.1 shows how one might hear the treble voice split into two voices, creating an implied three-voice texture. Taken together, a D2 (−5/+4) sequence with alternating triads and $\frac{6}{5}$ chords results. This is possible since (1) the two voices are in separate registers, (2) each voice maintains its independence by descending in stepwise motion, and (3) the voices combine to make good counterpoint.

EXAMPLE 4.1 **Handel, Sonata for Flute and Continuo in A minor, op. 1, no. 4, HWV 362, *Adagio***

Reduction:

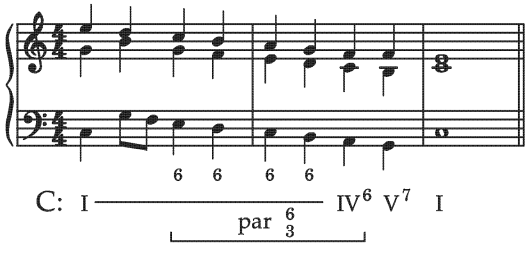


Parallel First-Inversion Triads

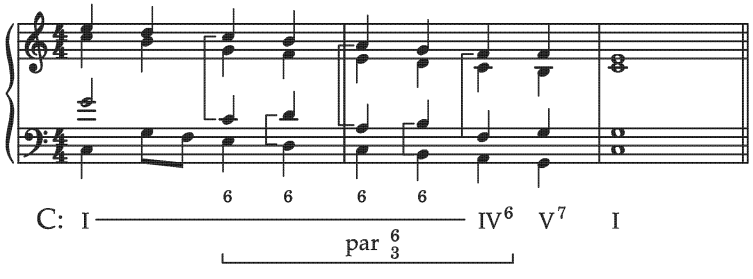
We know that the second chord in the model for a sequence often helps voice leading by avoiding potential parallels. Sometimes composers wish to use a parallel-motion chord stream. The only way to write a series of triads that move in strict parallel motion is to employ first-inversion chords (in three voices). This is the solution that composers have used since the fifteenth century. As with sequences, a series of parallel first-inversion triads serves either to prolong a harmony or as a transition between harmonic functions (Example 4.2A).

EXAMPLE 4.2 Parallel Six-Three Chords

A. In Three Voices



B. In Four Voices

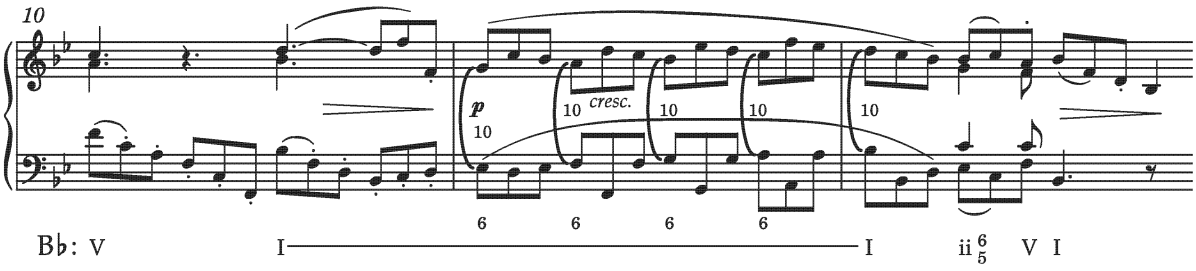


Composers who wished to write parallel first-inversion triads in four voices were faced with the problem of parallels. The solution is to have three voices in parallel motion and an inner voice use the following pattern: double the soprano, double the bass, double the soprano, double the bass, and so forth. (You can also start by doubling the bass.) Example 4.2B presents the voice leading and doublings (shown with brackets).

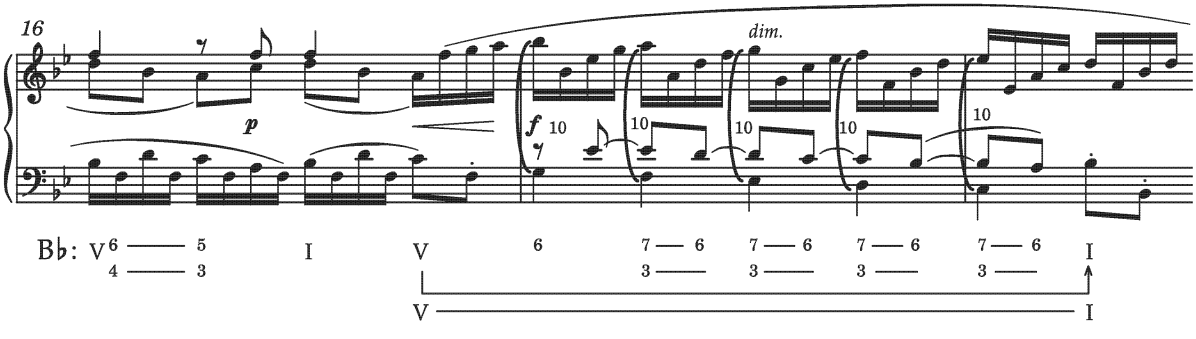
Passages that are written in parallel six-three chords are not strict sequences. Yet such passages function the same as sequences, especially when embellishing tones, such as suspensions, occur on every other six-three chord. Thus, in some sense, this approximates the two-chord model necessary for true sequences. Parallel six-three chords sound more like musical insertions or interpolations than sequences. Although, like true sequences, they prolong a harmonic function or lead to a new harmonic function and create an impression more of stalling for time than of goal-directed motion. Let's examine two examples of parallel first-inversion triads from Handel's keyboard works (Example 4.3).

EXAMPLE 4.3 Parallel Six-Three Chords in Context

A. Handel, Suite IX in G minor, Gigue



B. Handel, Suite XIII in B♭ major, Allemande

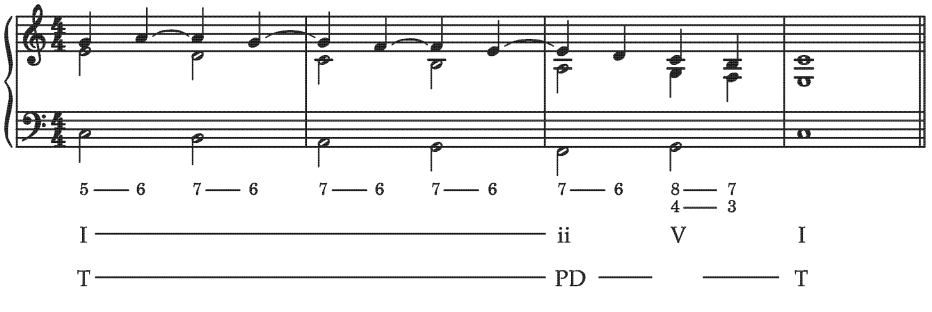


In Example 4.3A, the parallel first-inversion triads *ascend* and are part of a tonic expansion; ascending lines occur, but descending lines are more common. In Example 4.3B, the parallel first-inversion triads contain 7–6 suspensions, a common procedure in descending lines, and it provides a remarkable link to the D2 (−5/+4) sequence with sevenths.

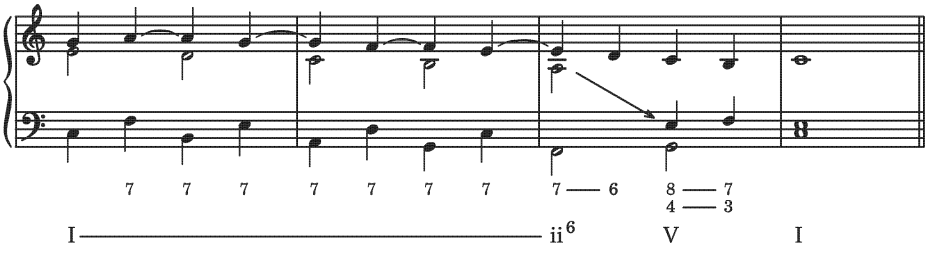
Consider Example 4.4A, which starts with descending parallel first-inversion triads that include 7–6 suspensions. By changing the bass notes as the suspensions resolve—as seen in Example 4.4B—the parallel first-inversion triads transform into the D2 (−5/+4) sequence with interlocking sevenths.

EXAMPLE 4.4

A. Descending Six-Three Sequence with 7–6 Suspensions



B. D2 (−5/+4) Sequence

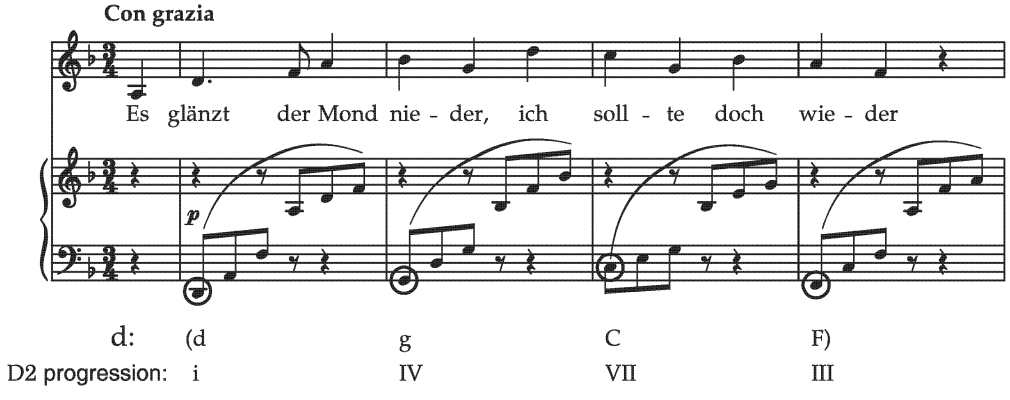


Sequences Versus Sequential Progressions

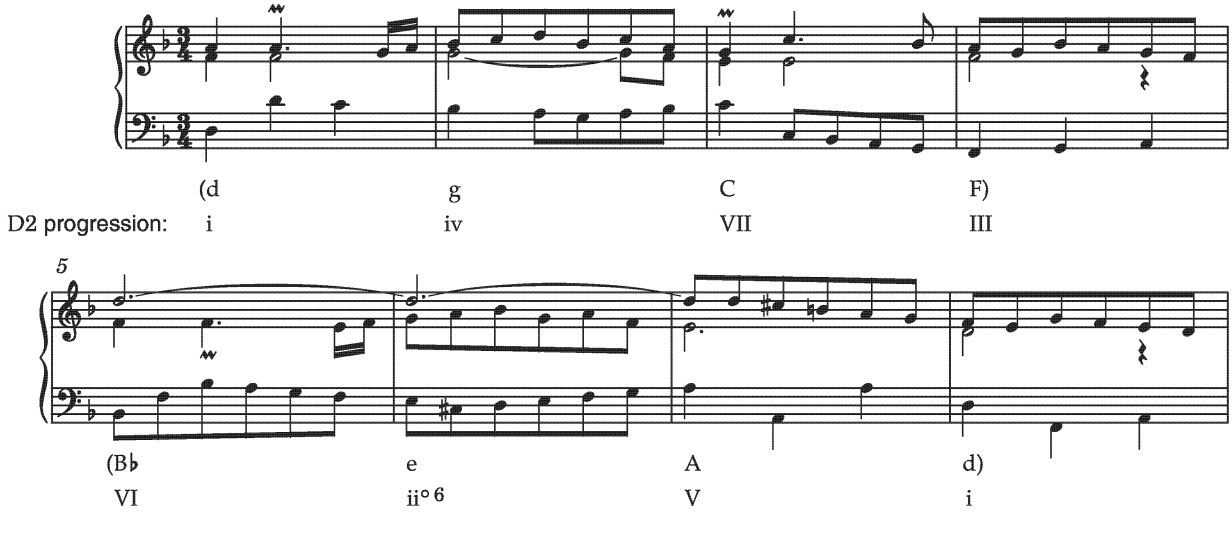
Composers often write passages in which the harmonic structure follows a sequential pattern but the melodic structure does not. Such passages are referred to as **sequential progressions**. Sequential progressions are common because the root motions of three of the four basic sequence types are also common, and the D2 (−5/+4) sequential progression is particularly popular. Listen to Example 4.5, which presents two D2 (−5/+4) sequential progressions. We label sequential progressions by root, for example, "D2 progression."

EXAMPLE 4.5 Sequential Progressions in Context

A. Brahms, "Der Gang zum Liebchen" ("The Way to His Sweetheart"), op. 48, no. 1



B. Bach, French Suite in D minor, BWV 812, Menuet II



Composing Sequences Within the Phrase Model

Sequences arise from the delicate balance that exists between counterpoint and harmony. Sequences are easily inserted into phrases. There are **prolongational** sequences (which expand one function, such as T–T) and **transitional** sequences (which move from one function to another, such as T–PD). Generally, sequences occur after a tonic expansion and before the PD and D functions, thereby extending the phrase model.

When we compose sequences within phrases, we must consider harmonic rhythm, balance, and proportion so that the sequence will fit logically within a musical context. First, we need to determine how long it will take for a sequence to unfold.

Example: Write a four-measure phrase that establishes tonic, contains a D2 (−5/+4) sequence, and ends with a PAC.

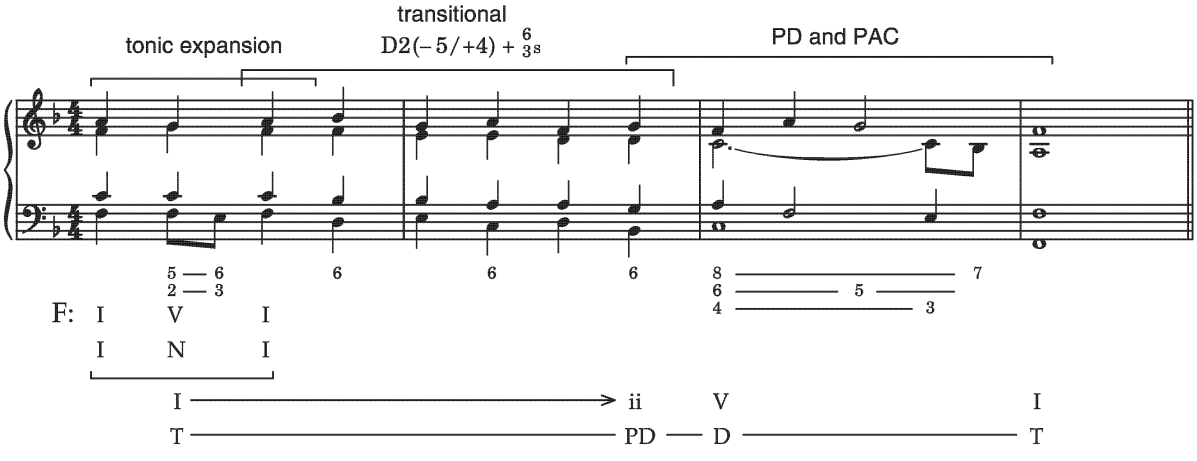
Given that the short tonic expansion before the sequence will occupy at least the first measure and that the PD–D–T will occupy mm. 3 and 4, the sequence must fit into the second measure—a tall order even for an accomplished composer. There are at least three solutions to the problem, albeit not necessarily equally effective.

1. You might use much faster rhythmic values for the chords of the sequence. However, this solution creates the very impression you are trying to avoid: an unmotivated insertion of chords, tightly wedged into a context in which they do not musically fit. Yet there are instances in which the acceleration of harmonic rhythm in sequential passages can be used effectively.
2. A better solution is to use only part of a sequence. For example, you might start the sequence on iii rather than on I, to reduce its length by almost half: I(–IV–vii°)–iii–vi–ii–V–I. You can also end the sequence early, perhaps on iii, which would immediately move to a PD. How you want your sequence to function will determine whether or not the sequence begins on tonic and where the sequence ends. That is, will the sequence prolong one harmonic function (T–T, for example), or will it transition, leading to a new function?
3. A common solution is to increase the length of the phrase, perhaps to six measures. Many longer phrases, with expanded interiors, result from inserted sequences.

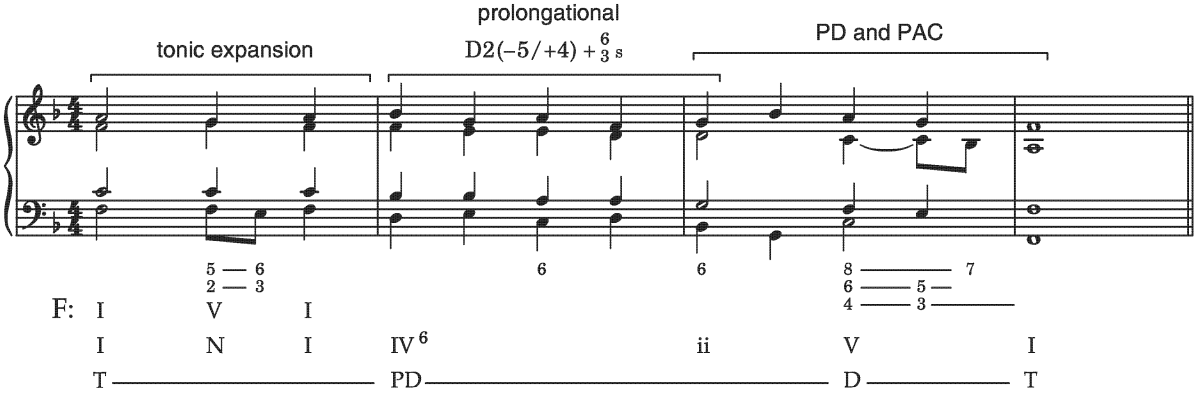
We will merge the first two solutions as we write sequential phrases. Let's return to our original problem: writing a four-measure phrase that contains a D2 (−5/+4) sequence. We can partially solve the space problem by using a meter that accommodates more harmonic changes per measure, such as $\frac{4}{4}$ or $\frac{6}{8}$. We also can overlap the end of the tonic expansion with the beginning of the sequence, and we can end the sequence with the PD, leading to the PAC. This creates a transitional sequence, as seen in Example 4.6A.

EXAMPLE 4.6 Incorporating Sequences Within the Phrase Model

A.



B.

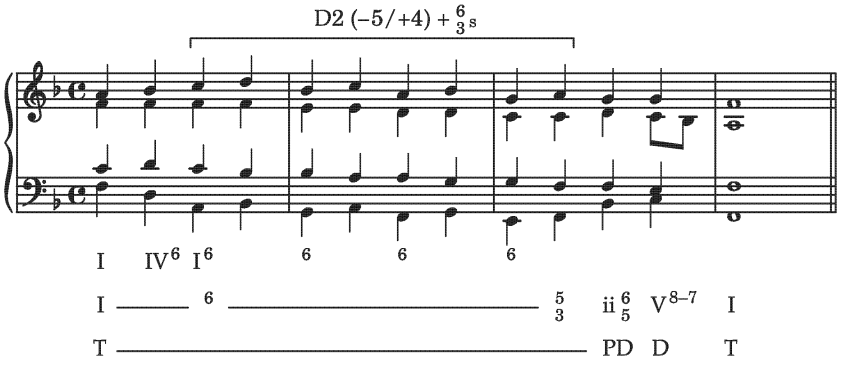


Composers often blur the distinction between prolongational and transitional sequences in order to create a seamless musical structure. Consider Example 4.6B. By simply changing the rhythm of Example 4.6A, the transitional sequence (T–PD) becomes a prolongational sequence (PD–PD). The repeating pattern still begins with the I chord, but because we hear a change to PD in m. 2 due to the strong metric placement of the IV^6 chord, the second-level analysis shows that the sequence expands the PD.

The four-measure phrase model can contain an enormous amount of material, as demonstrated in Example 4.7: A complete D2 $(-5/+4)$ + $\frac{6}{3}$ sequence prolongs the tonic, yet there is also an initial tonic expansion that precedes the sequence. Note that the first-inversion chords are used in the sequence. Also observe how the sequence leads back to the tonic in m. 3, followed by a strong cadential progression.

EXAMPLE 4.7 Phrase Model with Sequence

WORKBOOK 1
APP. 4.1–4.2



Abbreviations and Acronyms

A	ascending; augmented
AC	authentic cadence
ACN	accented chromatic neighbor
AIN	accented incomplete neighbor
AN	accented neighbor
ANT	anticipation
AP	accented passing
APP	appoggiatura
ARP	arpeggiation
BRD	back-relating dominant
C	consonance
CCP	contrasting continuous period
CF	cantus firmus
CIP	contrasting interrupted period
CL	consonant/chordal leap; closing section
CN	chromatic neighbor tone
CPP	contrasting progressive period
CPT	chromatic passing tone
CSP	contrasting sectional period
c.t.	common tone
D	dissonance; descending; dominant
d	diminished
dig	digression
DN	double neighbor tone
DTr	dependent transition
EC	embellishing chord
EPM	embedded phrase model
Fr	French (augmented sixth chord)
FTA	first tonal area
Ger	German (augmented sixth chord)
HC	half cadence
IAC	imperfect authentic cadence
IC	imperfect consonance
IN	incomplete neighbor
It	Italian (augmented sixth chord)
ITr	independent transition
LN	lower neighbor

M	major
m	minor
N	neighbor
P	passing; preparation; perfect
PAC	perfect authentic cadence
PC	perfect consonance
PCP	parallel continuous period
PD	pre-dominant
PED	pedal
PIP	parallel interrupted period
PPD	pre-pre-dominant
PPP	parallel progressive period
PSP	parallel sectional period
PT	passing tone
R	resolution
RTr	retransition
S	suspension
SATB	soprano, alto, tenor, and bass
STA	second tonal area
T	tonic
Tr	transition
UN	upper neighbor

Notational Equivalents

	BRITISH	SPANISH	FRENCH
whole note	semi-breve	la redonda	la ronde
half note	minim	la blanca	la blanche
quarter note	crotchet	la negra	la noire
eighth note	quaver	la corchea	la croche
sixteenth note	semiquaver	la semicorchea	la double croche
thirty-second note	demisemiquaver	la fusa	la triple croche
half step	semitone	el medio tono	le demi-ton
whole step	tone	el tono entero	le ton entier
rest		el silencio	la pause

	GERMAN	SPANISH	FRENCH
C	C	do	ut
D	D	re	ré
E	E	mi	mi
F	F	fa	fa
G	G	sol	sol
A	A	la	la
B-flat	B	si bemol	si bémol
B	H	si	si
flat	-es (except for B)	bemol	bémol
sharp	-is	sostenido	dièse
natural		becuadro	bécarre
major	dur	mayor	majeur
minor	mol	menor	mineur

Octave Designations

A0–B0	A_2–B_2	AAA–BBB
C1–B1	C_1–B_1	CC–BB
C2–B2	C–B	C–B
C3–B3	c–b	c–b
C4–B4	c^1–b^1	c′–b′
C5–B5	c^2–b^2	c′′–b′′
C6–B6	c^3–b^3	c′′′–b′′′
C7–B7	c^4–b^4	c′′′′–b′′′′
C8	c^5	c′′′′′

Cadences

authentic cadence	perfect cadence; closed cadence; standard cadence
half cadence	semicadence; imperfect cadence; open cadence
plagal cadence	Amen cadence; church cadence
deceptive motion	deceptive cadence; interrupted cadence
evaded cadence	interrupted cadence; irregular cadence
contrapuntal cadence	inverted cadence

Chord Qualities

major triad	M, maj
minor triad	m, min, −
augmented triad	aug, +
diminished triad	dim, °, min(♭5)
major seventh chord	major-major seventh chord, M7, maj7, Δ7, Δ
dominant seventh chord	major-minor seventh chord
minor seventh chord	minor-minor seventh chord, m7, min7, −7
half-diminished seventh chord	dim.-minor seventh chord, ø7, min7♭5
(fully) diminished seventh chord	dim.-dim. seventh chord, °7, dim7

Chord Inversions

I, I^6, I^6_4	I(a), Ib, Ic
V^7, V^6_5, V^4_3, $V^{(4)}_2$	V^7(a), V^7b, V^7c, V^7d

Harmonic Function

Major key:	**I**	**ii**	**iii**	**IV**	**V**	**vi**	**vii°**	**vii**
	T	Sp	Dp, Tl	S	D	Tp, Sl	~~Đ~~7	Dl
Minor key:	**i**	**♭II**	**ii°**	**III**	**iv**	**v, V**	**VI**	**VII**
	t	sL	S7	tP, dL	s	d, D	sP, tL	dP

Applied chord: V/x Secondary dominant: (D)x
V/V DD (overlapping)

Other

applied chord	applied dominant; secondary chord/ dominant/function
cross relation	false relation
embellishing tones	nonharmonic tones; nonessential tones
Ger $\frac{4}{3}$ chord	doubly augmented fourth chord; Swiss/English augmented sixth chord
incomplete neighbor	appoggiatura or escape tone (échappée)
leading tone	leading note
measure	bar
modal mixture	modal borrowing; borrowed chords; modal interchange
neighbor tone	auxiliary tone
parallel minor	tonic minor
Picardy third	tièrce de Picardie
pre-dominant	subdominant
similar octave/fifth	direct octave/fifth; exposed octave/fifth
step-descent bass	lament bass
submediant	superdominant
unison	prime
voice exchange	voice interchange

Ternary and Rondo Labels

episode	contrasting theme; couplet; digression
five-part rondo	second rondo form
refrain	principal theme; rondo theme; reprise
seven-part rondo	third rondo form
ternary form	first rondo form

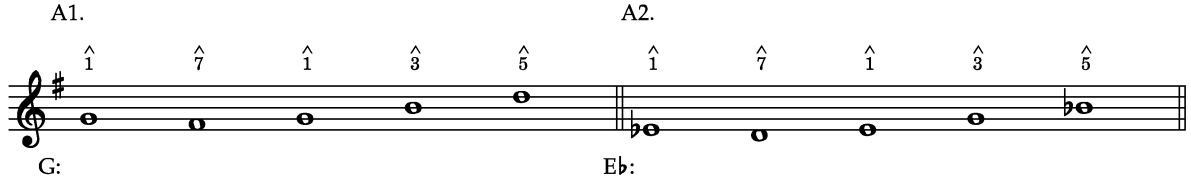
Sonata Labels

first tonal area (FTA)	**transition (Tr)**	**second tonal area (STA)**	**closing section (CL)**
primary theme (P)	transition (T)	secondary theme (S)	closing section (K)
theme 1 (Th. 1)		theme 2 (Th. 2)	
A		B	

Selected Answers to Textbook Exercises

This appendix provides answers to selected exercises in the text (by chapter). Answers are also given for selected exercises in Appendix 1A–E.

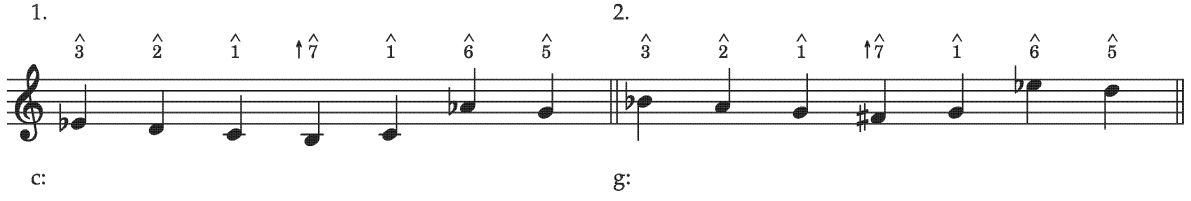
Exercise 1.1



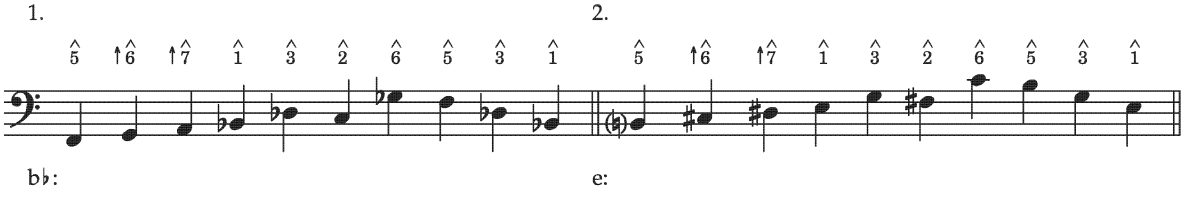
E.

Exercise 1.2

A.

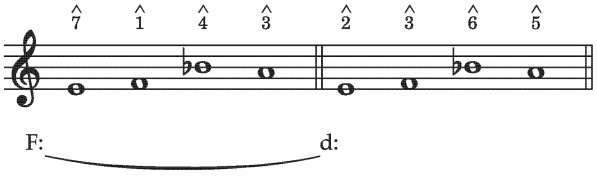


E.

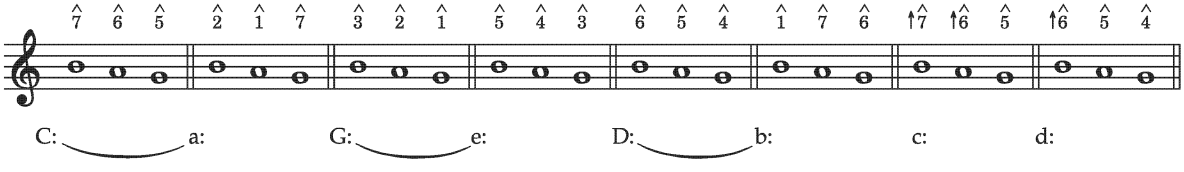


Exercise 1.3

A.



F.



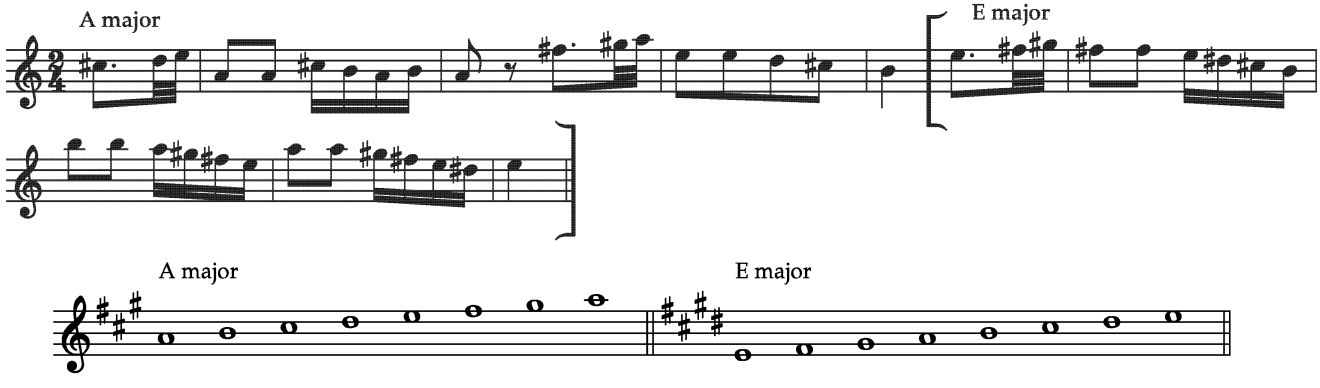
Exercise 1.4

A.

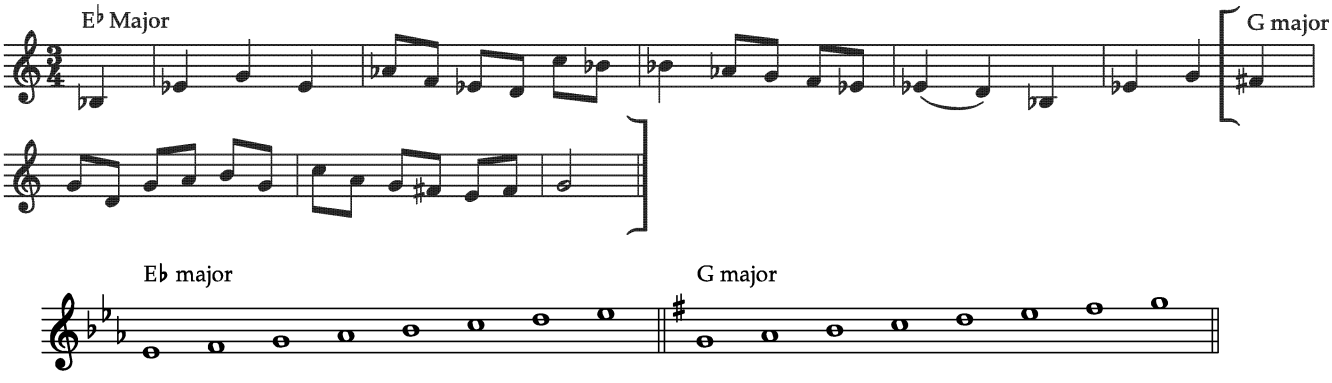
B.

Exercise 1.5

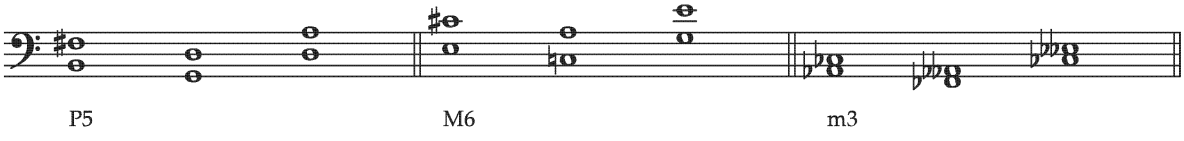
B. After Haydn, *Scherzando*, Piano Sonata in C♯ minor, Hob XVI.36



D. After Haydn, Symphony no. 38 in C major, Hob I.38

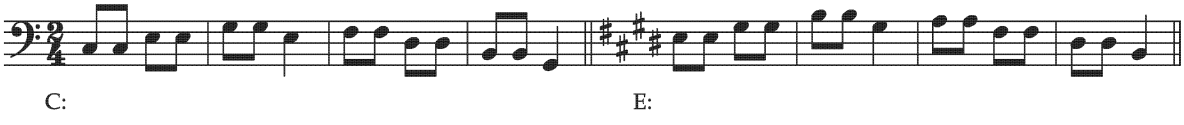


Exercise 1.6



Exercise 1.7

C.

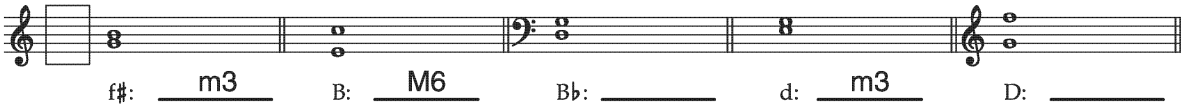


Exercise 1.8

A.	B.	C.	D.
1. A3	1. d2	1. A2	3. m2
3. A4	4. m6		

Exercise 1.9

Consider the key signature for each example.

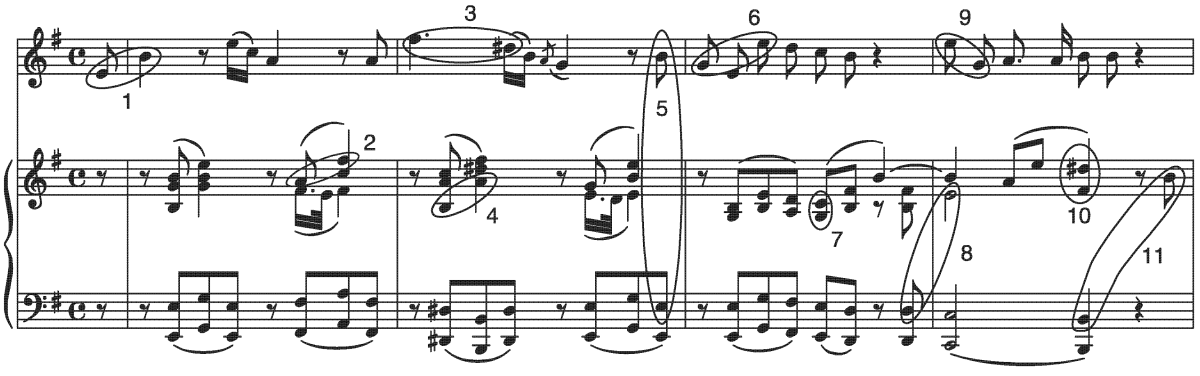


f♯: m3	B: M6	B♭:	d: m3	D:
A:	A♭: M6	d:	D: m3	A♭:
C♯:	D: M6	A:	A: M3	F♭:
F:	F: m6	E♭:	f: M3	g♯:

Exercise 1.10

Analysis: Handel, "And He Came to His Disciples," from *Messiah*

Identify the interval of each circled pair of pitches, label its inversion, and specify whether the interval is a perfect consonance (PC), imperfect consonance (IC), or dissonance (DISS).



	Interval	Inversion	PC/IC/DISS
1.			
2.			
3.	m3	M6	IC
4.	m7	M2	DISS
5.			
6.			
7.	P4	P5	DISS
8.			
9.			
10.			
11.			

Exercise 1.11

3. I
6. D
9. E

Exercise 1.12

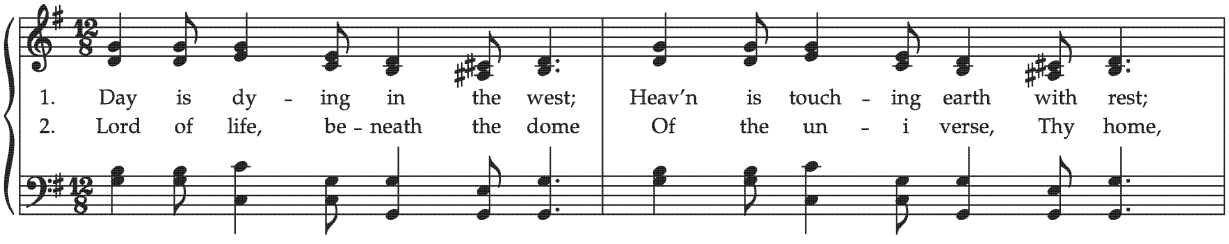
C.

F.

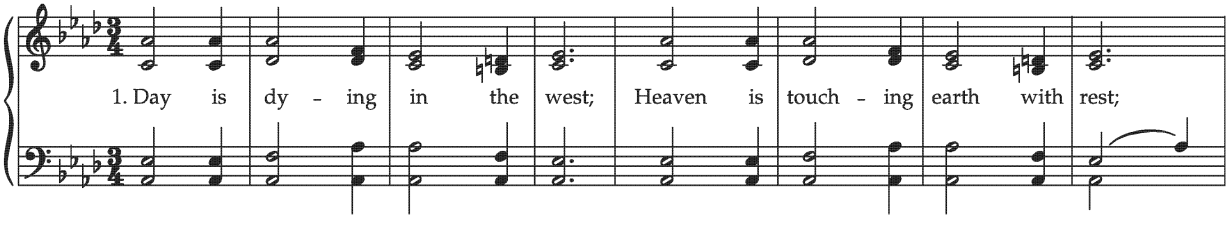
I.

Exercise 1.13

A. William F. Sherwin, Day Is Dying in the West (version 1)

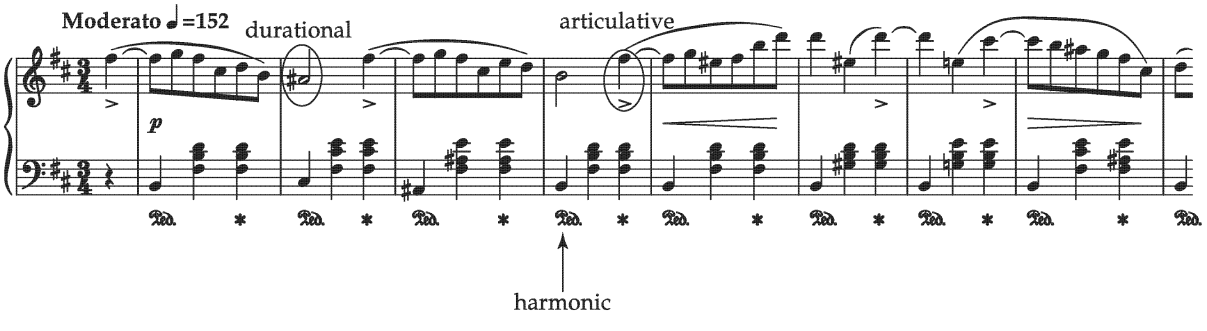


E. William F. Sherwin, Day Is Dying in the West (version 2)

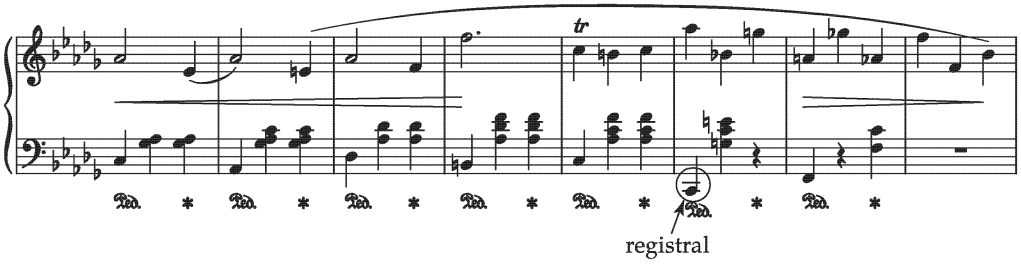


Exercise 1.14

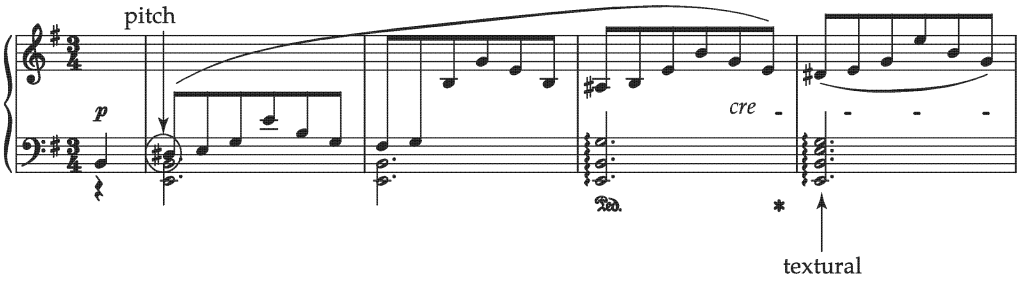
A. Waltz in B minor, op. posth. 69, no. 2



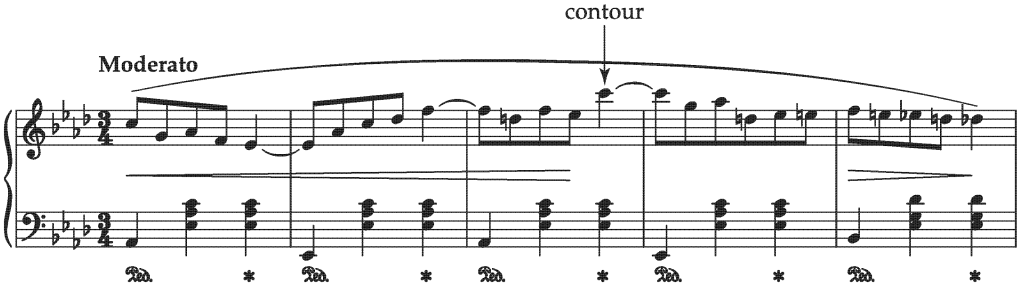
B. Waltz in D♭ major, op. 64, no. 1



C. Waltz in E minor, B1 56



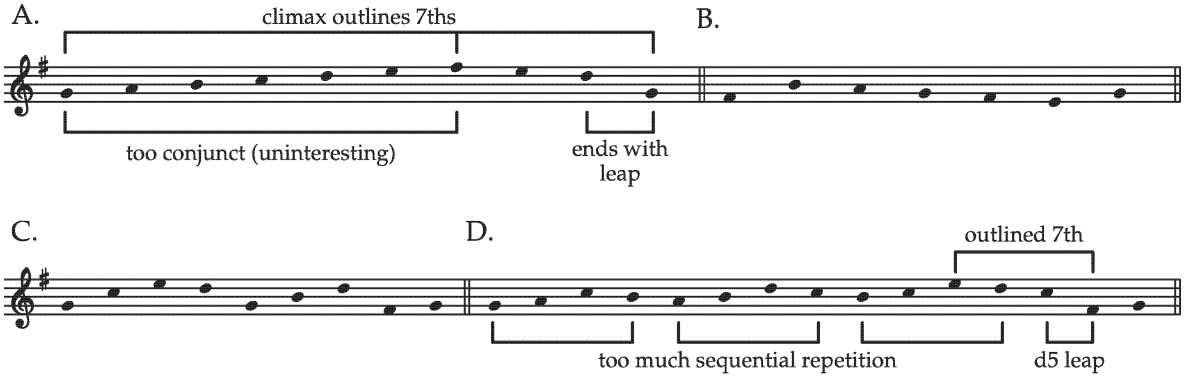
D. Waltz in A♭ major, op 64, no. 3



Exercise 2.1

Answers will vary.

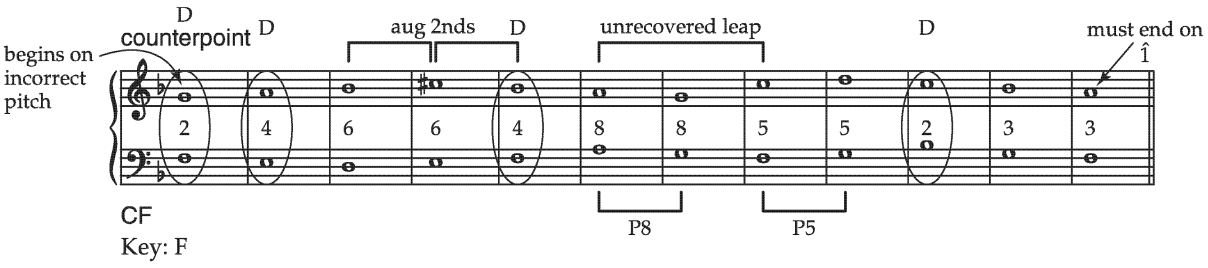
Exercise 2.2



Exercise 2.3

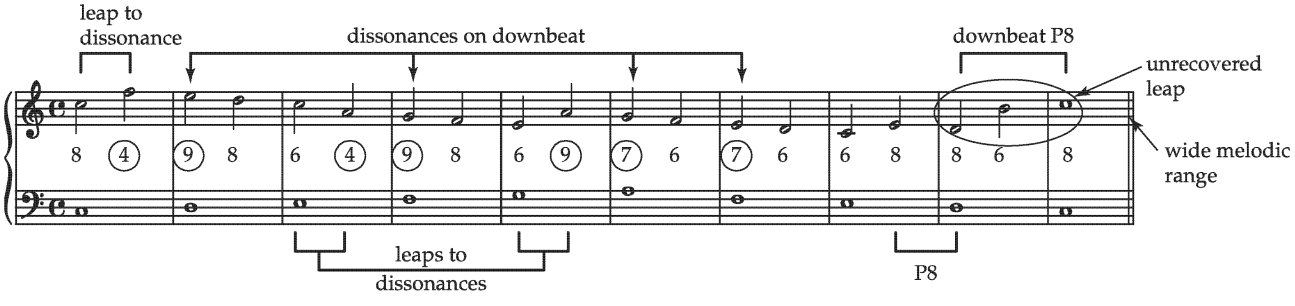
C. Schumann, "Wichtige Begebenheit," from *Kinderscenen*, op. 15

Exercise 2.4



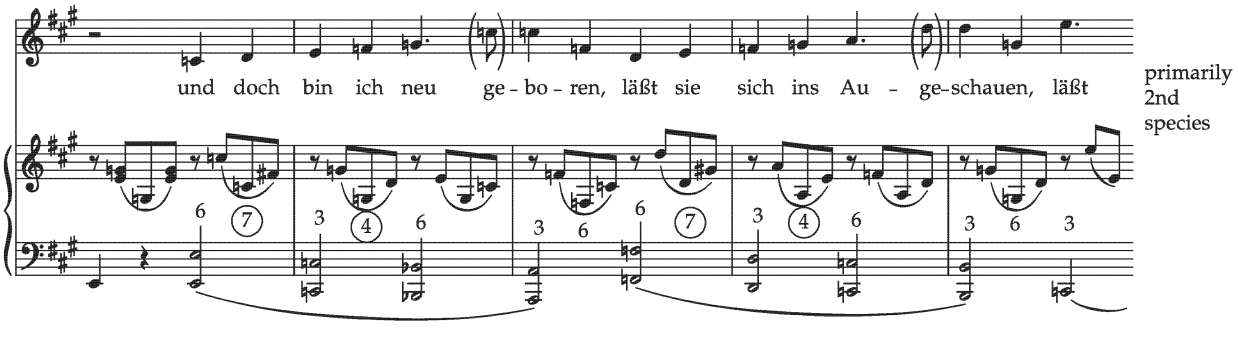
Exercise 2.5

B.

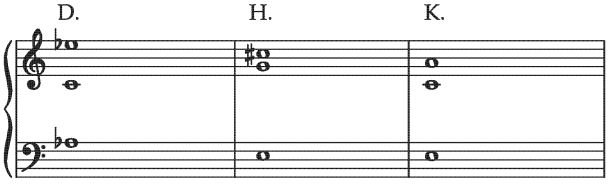


Exercise 2.6

D. Brahms, "und doch bin ich neu geboren" (Ignore the two pitches in parentheses.)



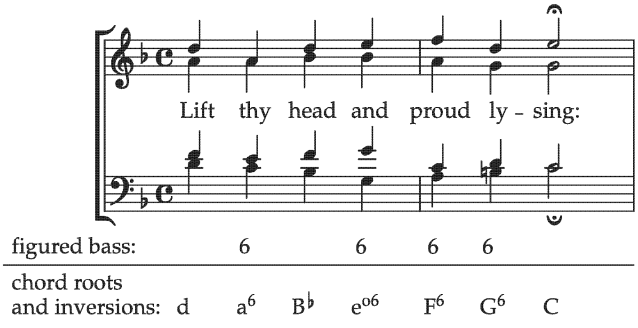
Exercise 3.1



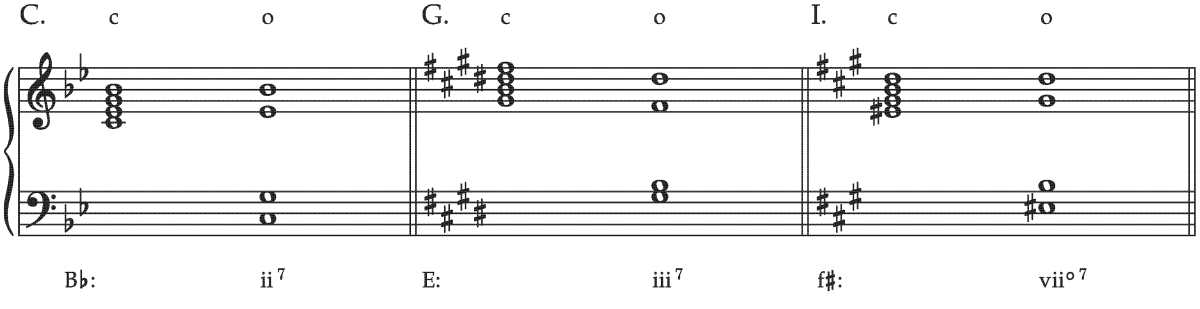
root	A♭	C♯	A
quality:	major	diminished	minor
member of chord in bass	root	3rd	5th
figured bass:	$\flat\frac{5}{3}$	$\sharp\frac{6}{3}$	$\frac{6}{4}$

Exercise 3.2

B. Bach, "Schwing' dich auf zudeinem Gott".

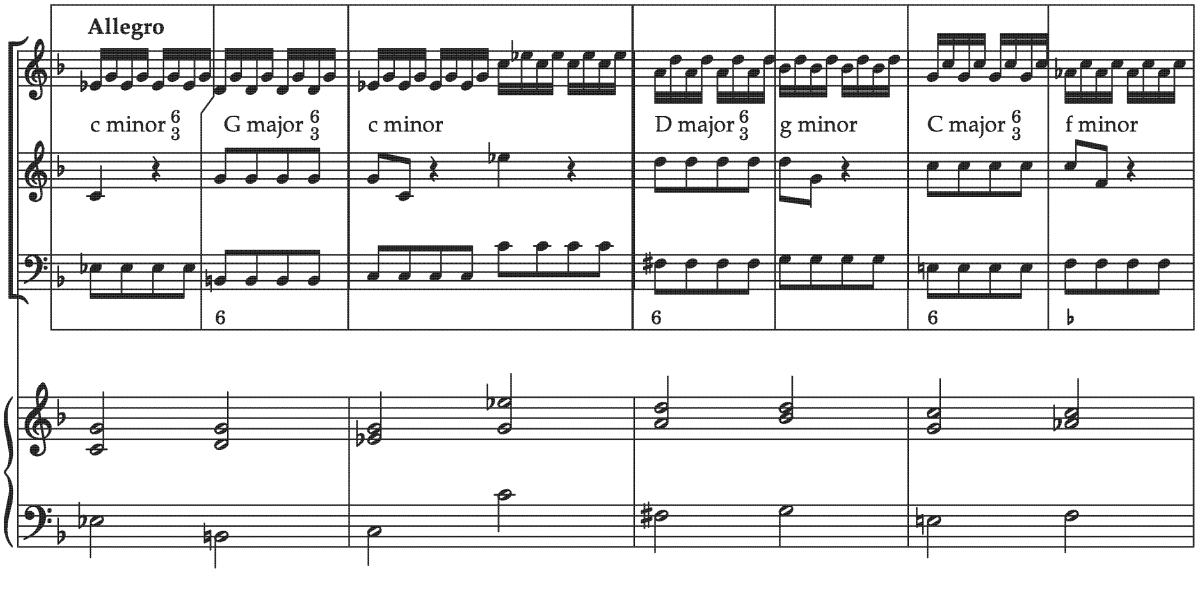


Exercise 3.3



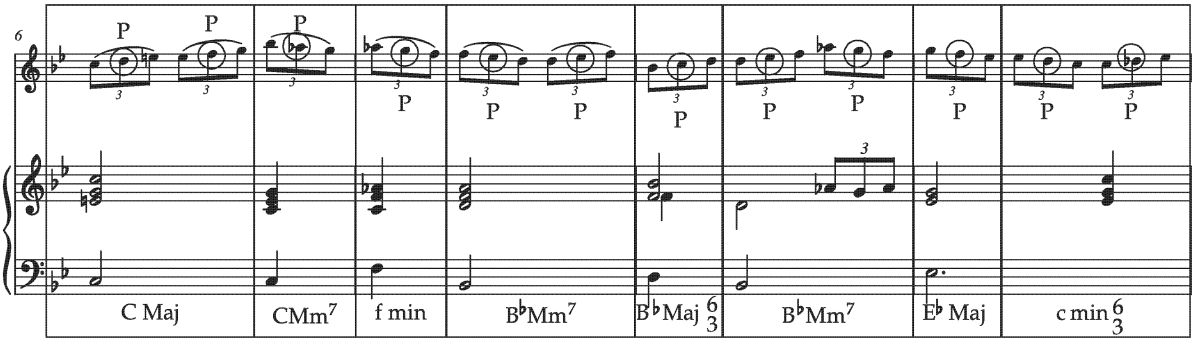
Exercise 3.4

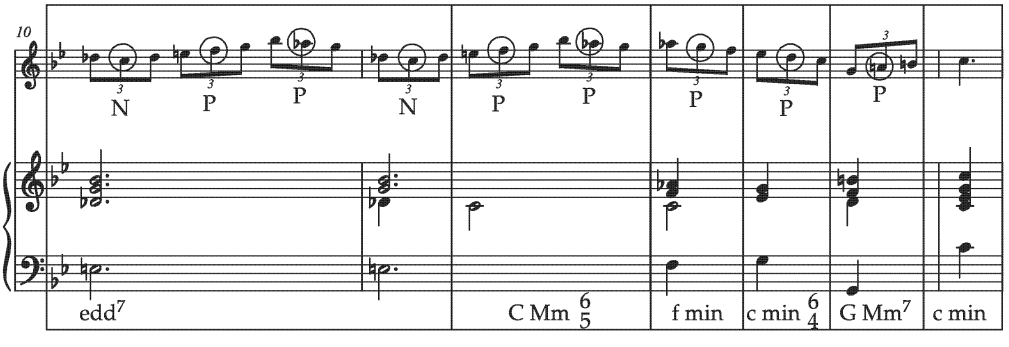
A. Corelli, Concerto Grosso in G minor, op. 6, no. 8, *Allegro*



Exercise 4.1

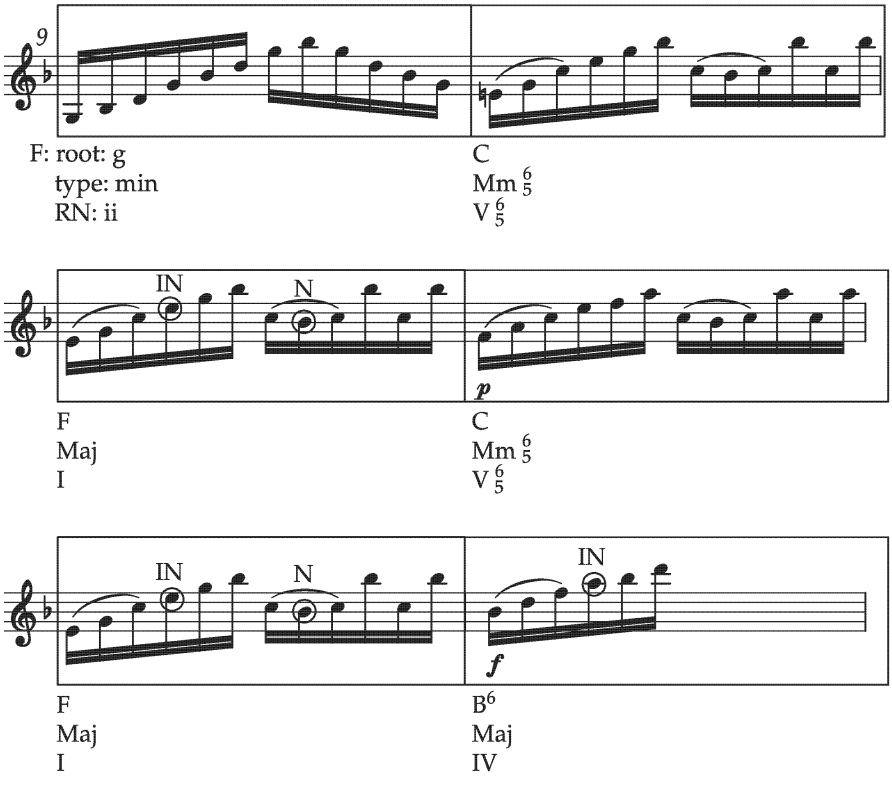
A. Vivaldi, Sonata in C minor for oboe





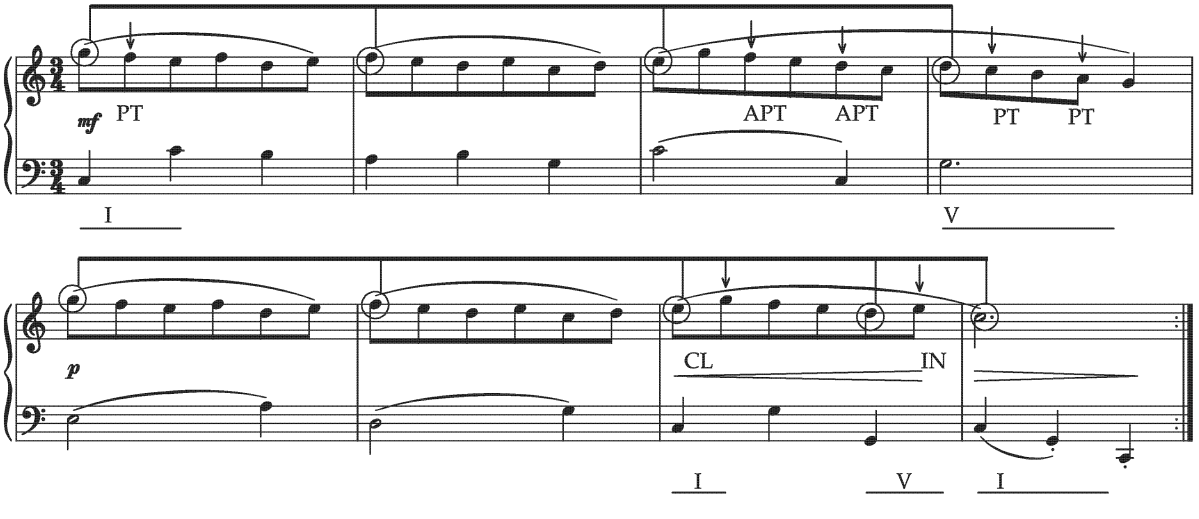
Exercise 4.2

B. Violin Partita in D minor, BWV 1004, Giga



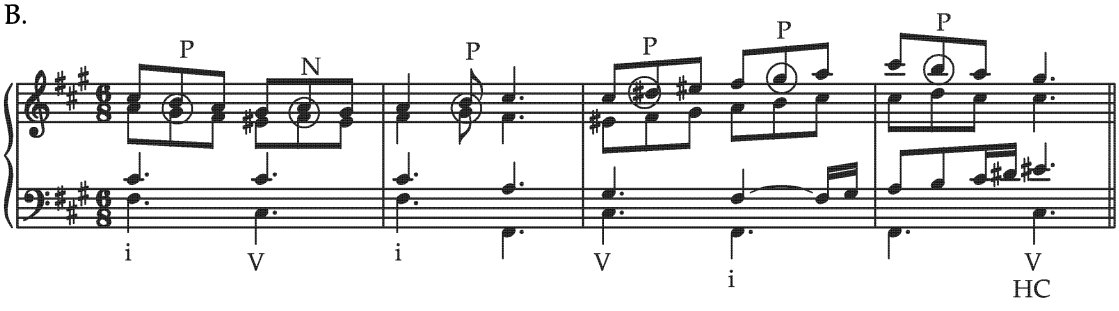
Exercise 4.3

B. Rameau, Rondino

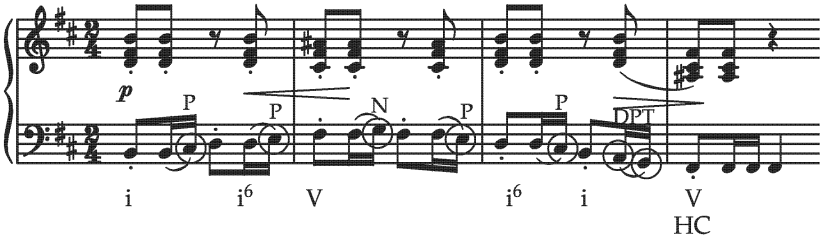


Exercise 5.1

B.

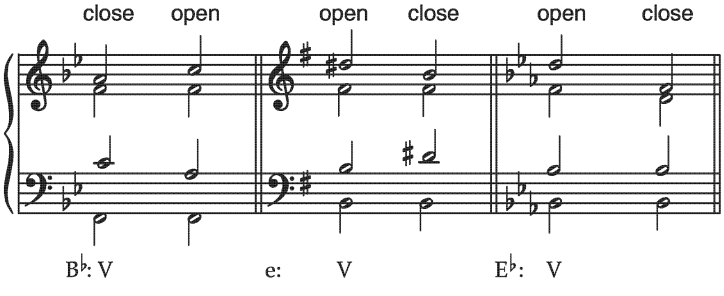


D. Clara Schumann, "Les Ballet des Revenants," from *Quatre pieces caracteristique*, op. 5



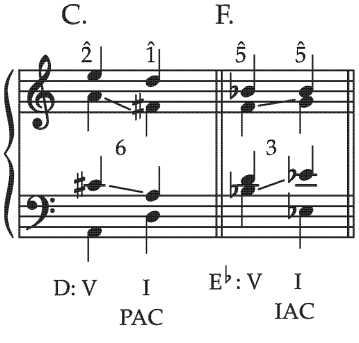
Exercise 5.2

B. E. I.



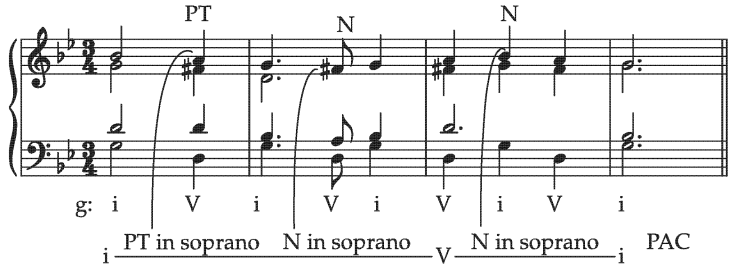
Exercise 5.3

C. F.

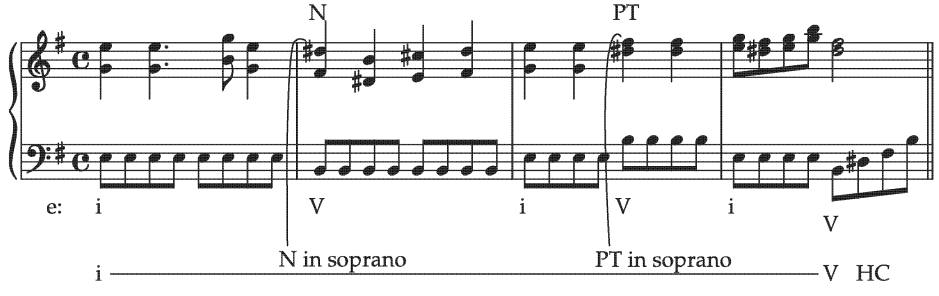


Exercise 6.1

A.

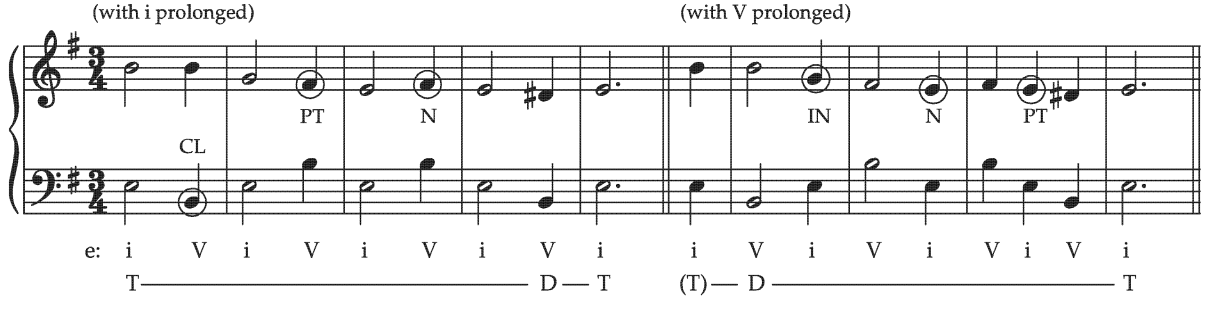


C.



Exercise 6.2

A.

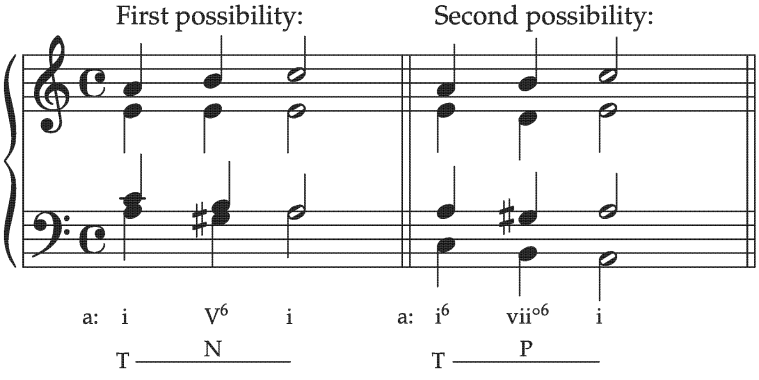


Exercise 7.1

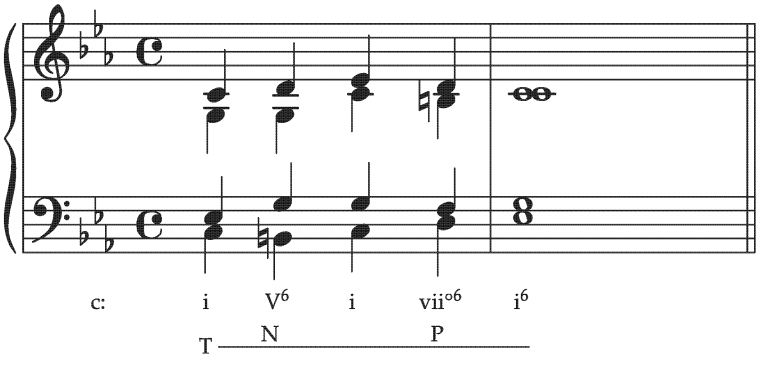
B. Mozart, String Quartet in D minor, K. 173, *Menuetto*

Exercise 7.2

Soprano SDs $\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$ in a minor

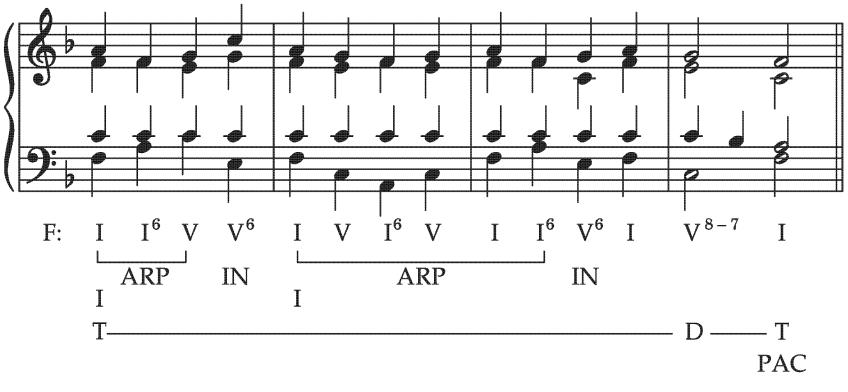


Bass SDs $\hat{1}$–$\hat{7}$–$\hat{1}$–$\hat{2}$–$\hat{3}$ in c minor



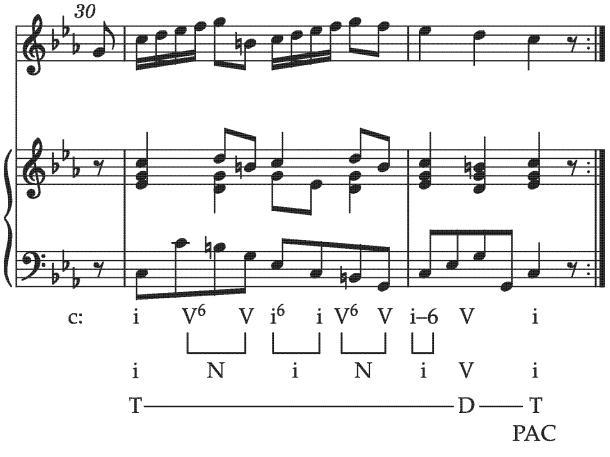
Exercise 7.3

This is one possible solution. Other solutions may be correct as well.



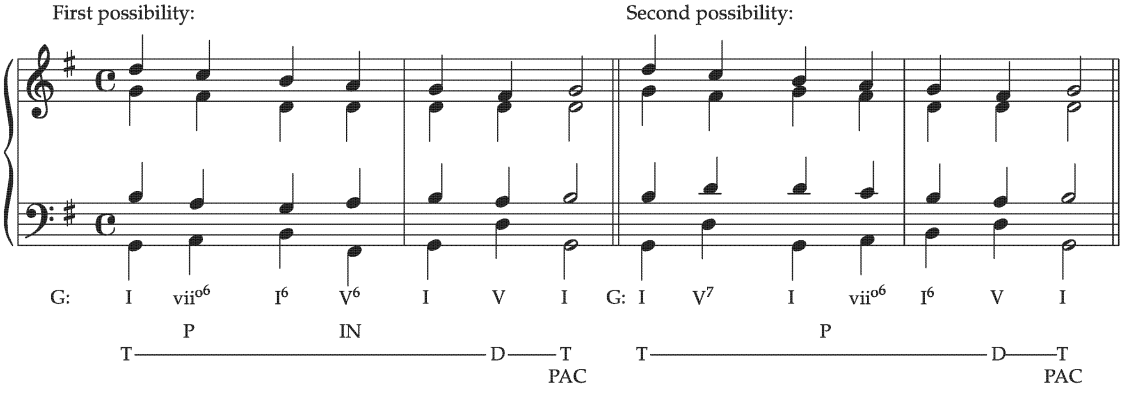
Exercise 7.4

A. Johann Jacob Bach, Flute Sonata in C minor, *Allegro*



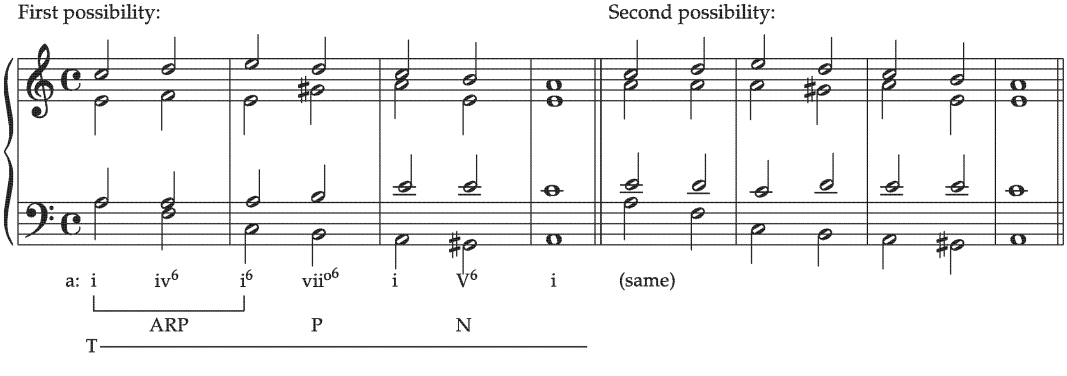
B. Haydn, String Quartet in D major, op. 76, no. 2, *Andante o piú tosto allegretto*

Exercise 7.5 Show two possibilities. Other solutions may be correct as well.



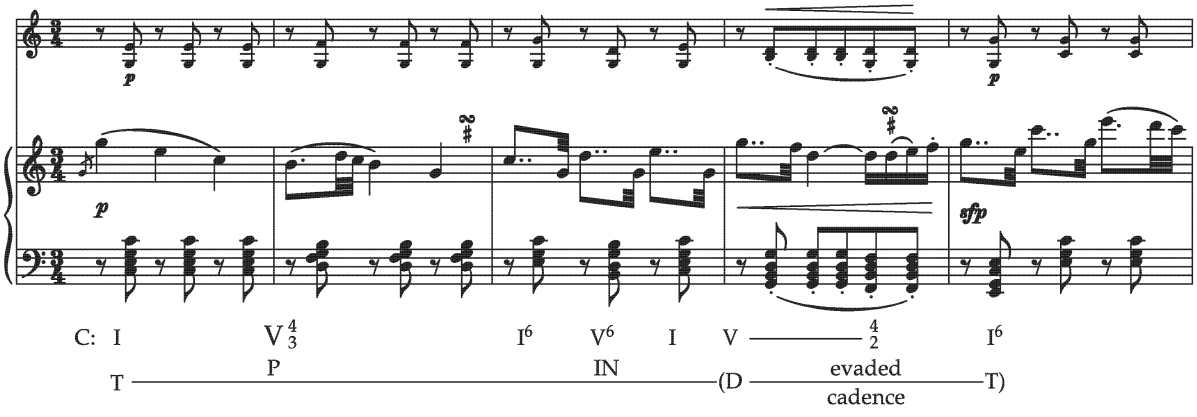
Exercise 7.6 Answers may vary.

Exercise 7.7 Show two possibilities.

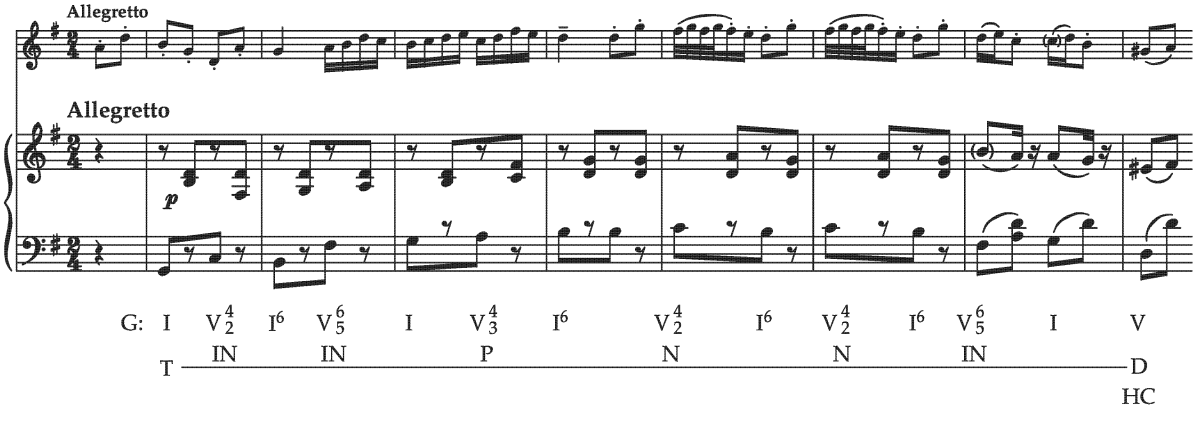


Exercise 8.1

C. Beethoven, Violin Sonata no. 3 in E♭ major, op. 12, no. 3, *Adagio con molta espressione*



E. Thomas, Gavotte, from *Mignon*



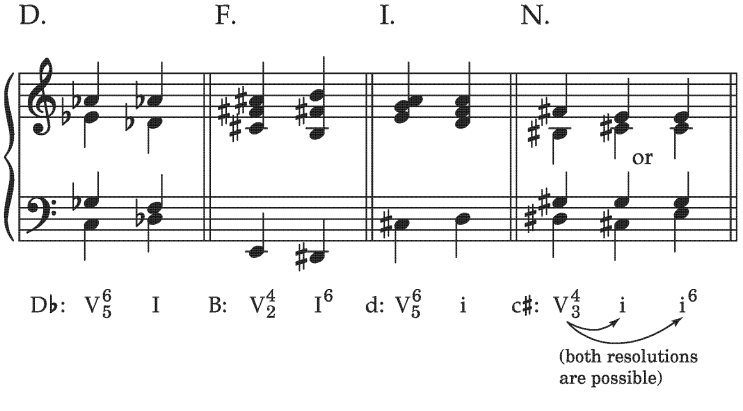
Exercise 8.2

D. G♭ Major, V^4_3

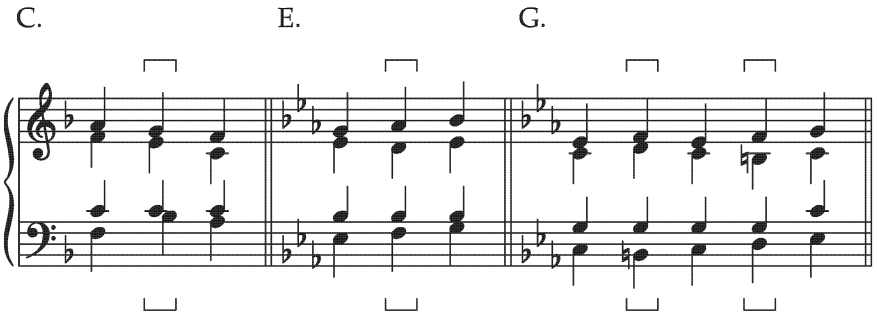
F. B♭ Major, V^6_5

H. E Major, V^4_2

Exercise 8.3

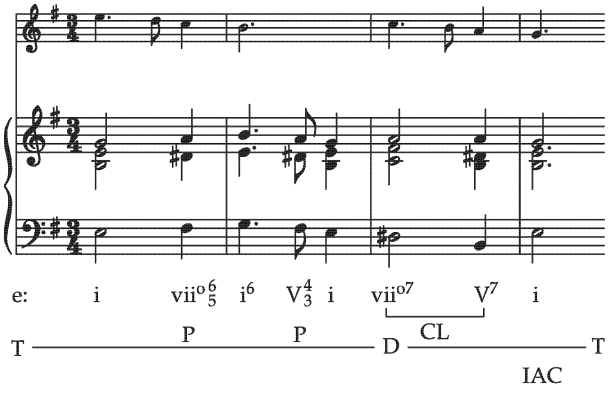


Exercise 8.4

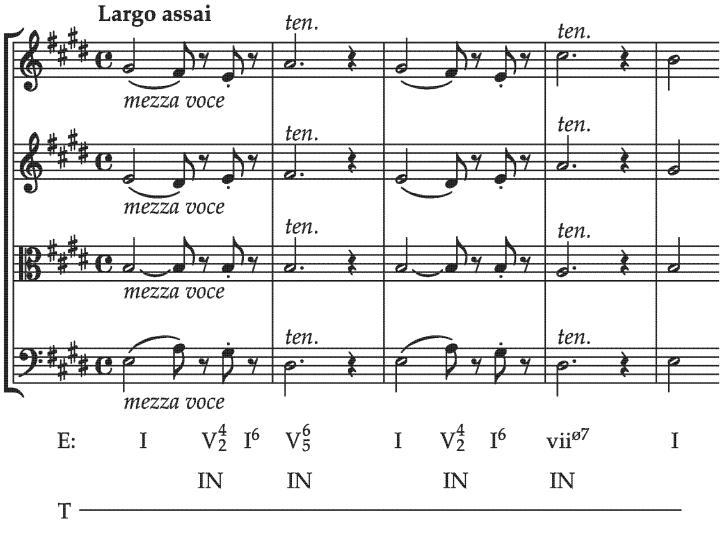


Exercise 8.5

B. Johann Helmich Roman, Flute Sonata in B minor, op. 1, no. 6, *Grave*



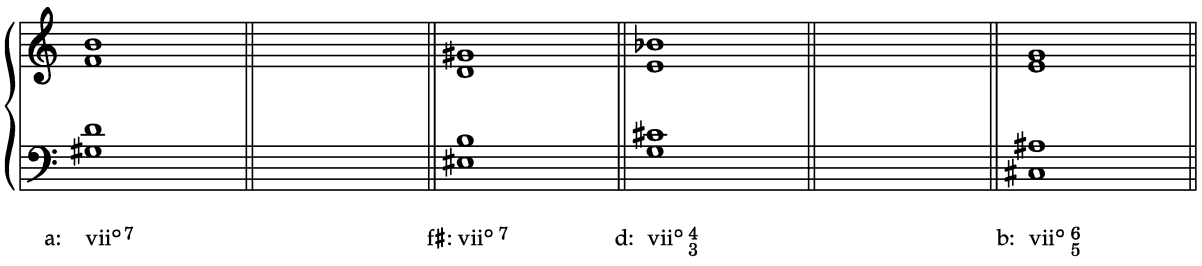
C. Haydn, String Quartet in G minor, op. 74, no. 3, ii, *Largo assai*



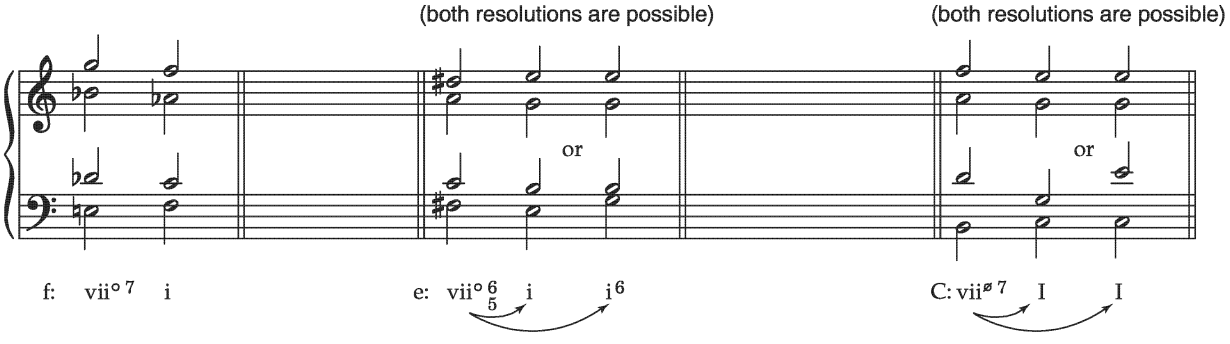
Exercise 8.6

In f minor:	vii°6/5:	G	B♭	D♭	E
In A major:	viiø6/5:	B	D	F♯	G♯

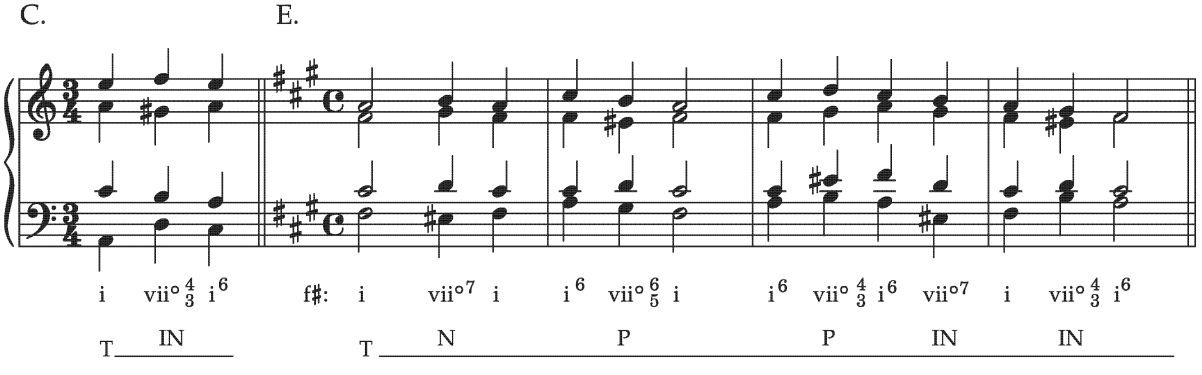
Exercise 8.7



Exercise 8.8

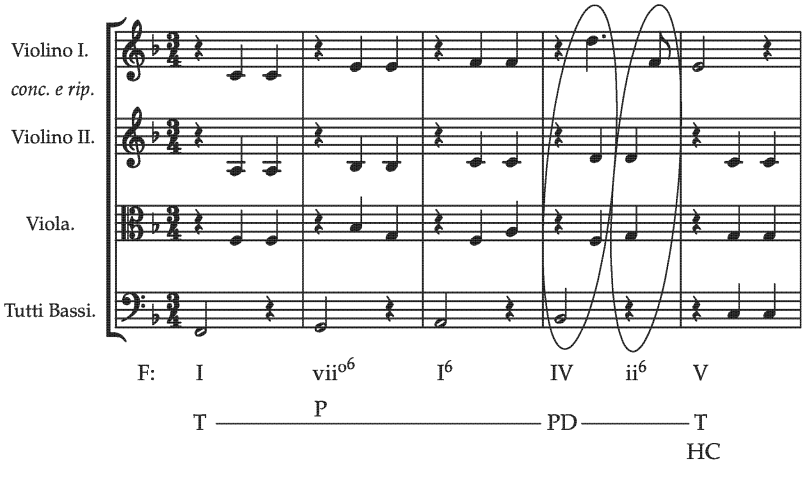


Exercise 8.9



Exercise 9.7

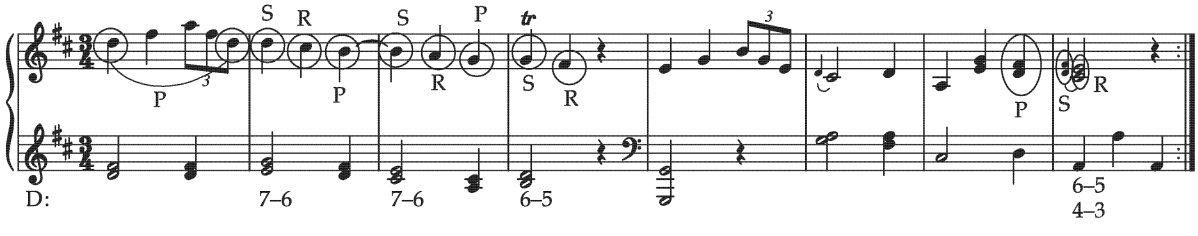
B. Handel, Concerto Grosso, op. 6, no. 9, *Largo*



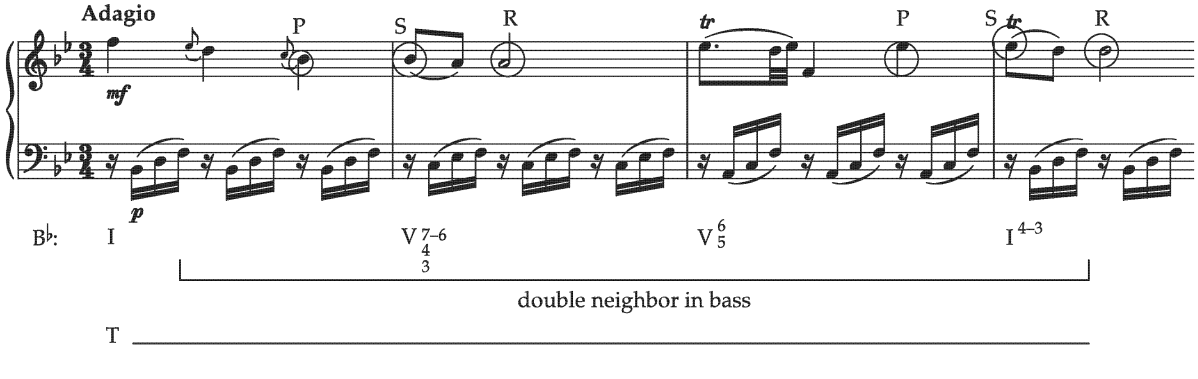
C. Haydn, String Quartet in G major, op. 33, no. 5, Hob III.42, *Largo cantabile*

Exercise 10.1

B. Haydn, Piano Sonata in D major, Hob XVI.4, Menuetto

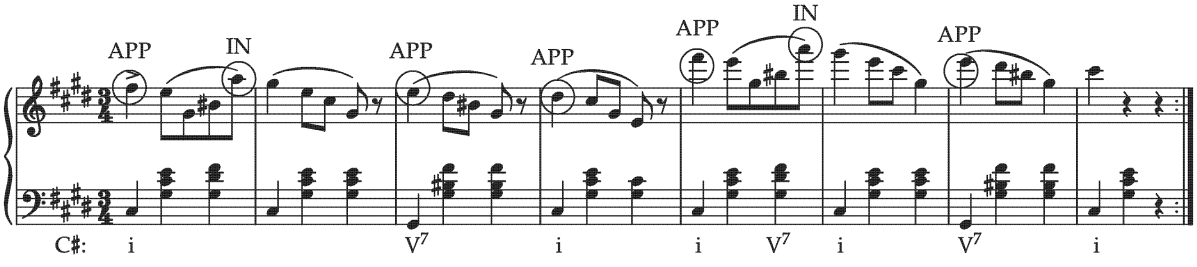


C. Giardini, Six Duos for Violin and Cello, no. 2

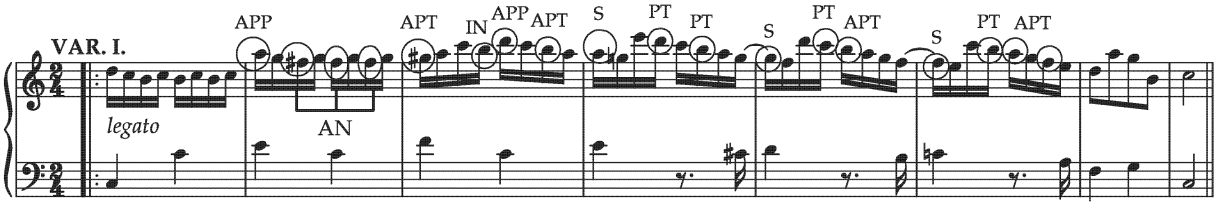


Exercise 10.2

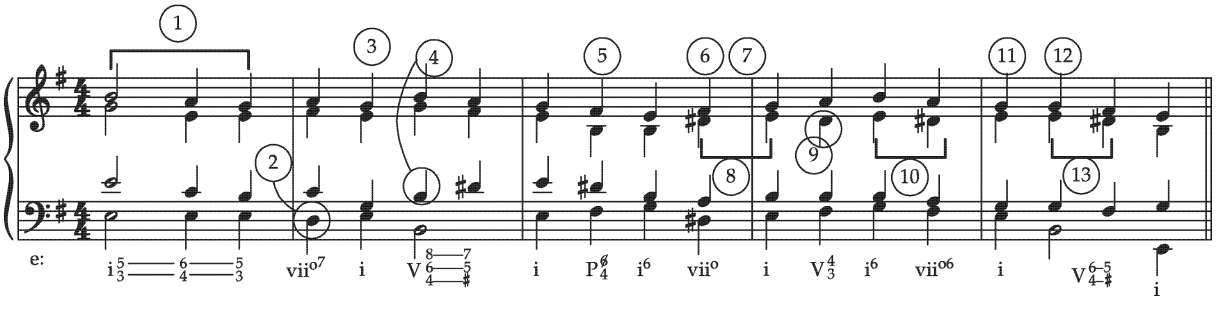
A. Schubert, Waltz in C♯ minor, no. 27, from *36 Original Dances*, D. 365



C. Mozart, Variations on "Ah vous dirais-je, Maman," K. 265

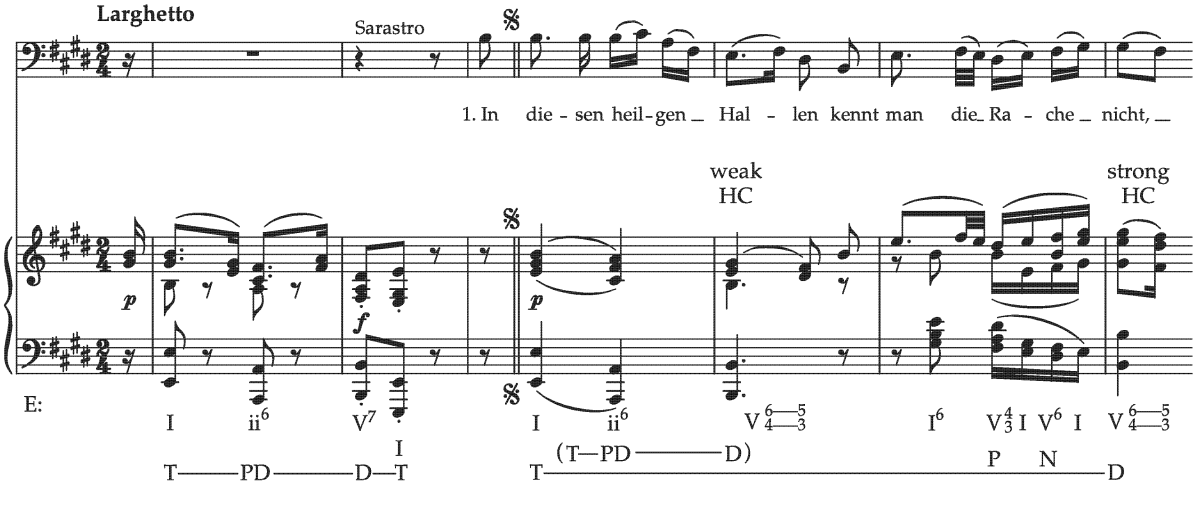


Exercise 11.1

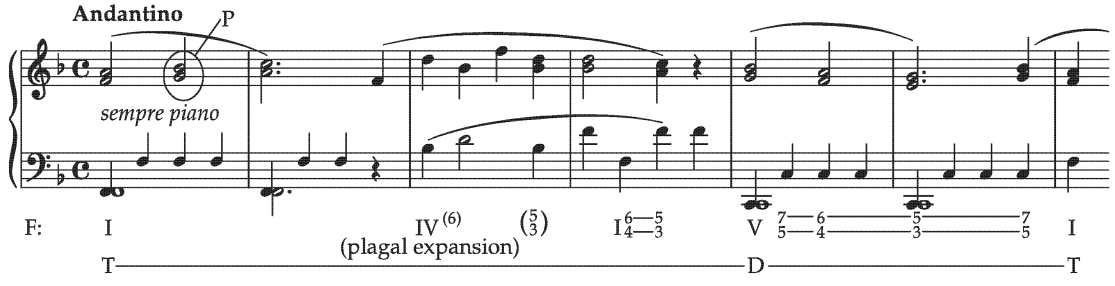


Exercise 11.3

A. Mozart, "In diesen heiligen Hallen," from *The Magic Flute*

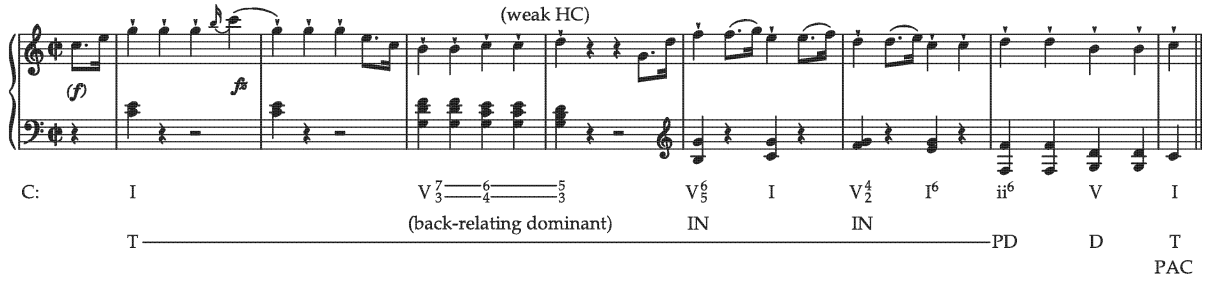


C. Turk, *Serenade*

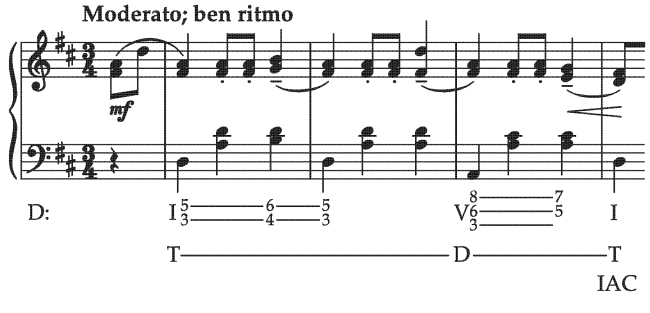


Exercise 11.4

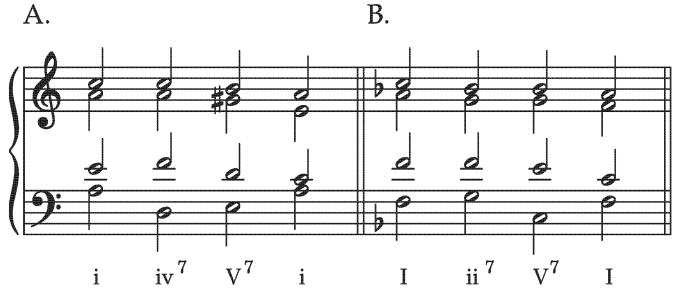
A. Haydn, Piano Sonata in C major, Hob XVI.35, *Allegro con brio*



C. Schubert, Waltz in D major, from *Belles Viennoises*

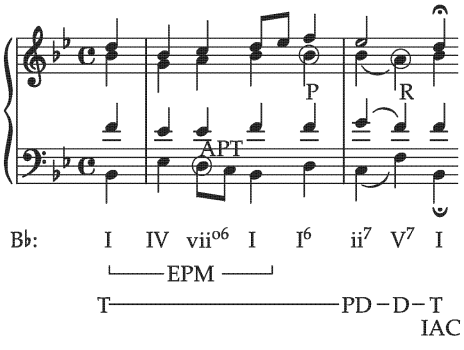


Exercise 12.1

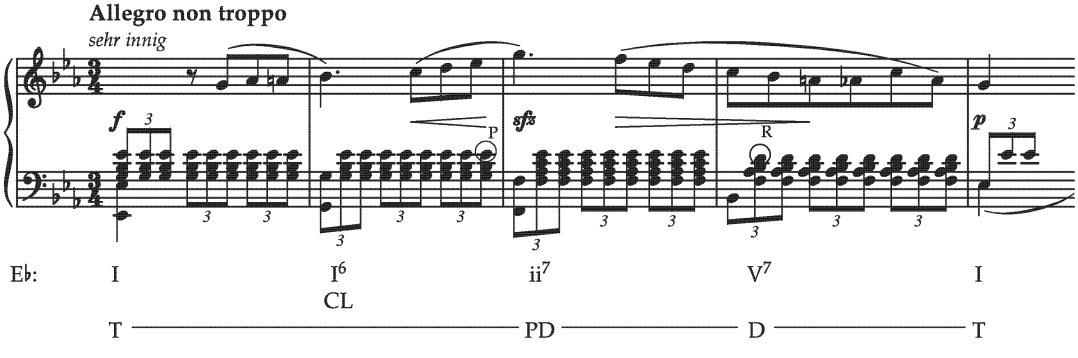


Exercise 12.2

A. Bach, "O Welt, ich muss dich lassen"

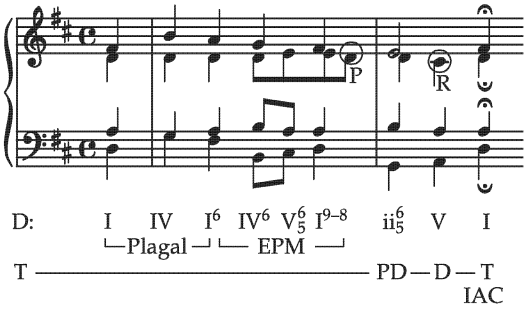


C. Mendelssohn, *Lieder ohne Worte* ("Songs Without Words"), no. 20 in E♭ major, op. 53

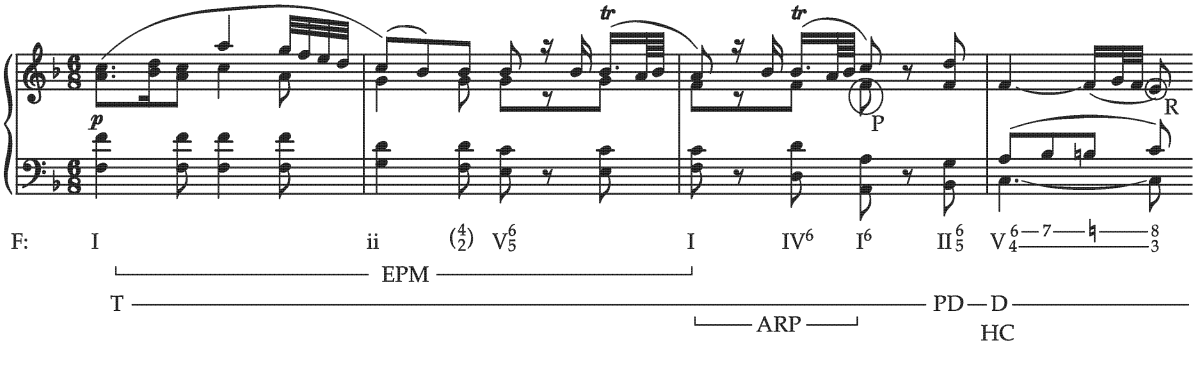


Exercise 12.3

B. Bach, "O Haupt voll Blut und Wunden"



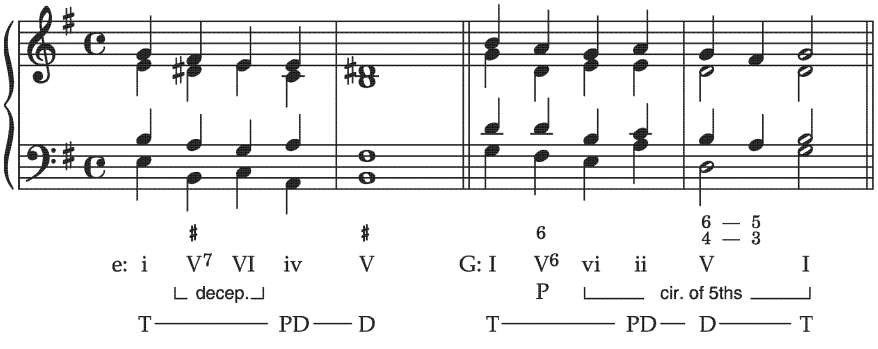
E. Mozart, Symphony no. 36 in C major, "Linz," K. 425, *Poco adagio*



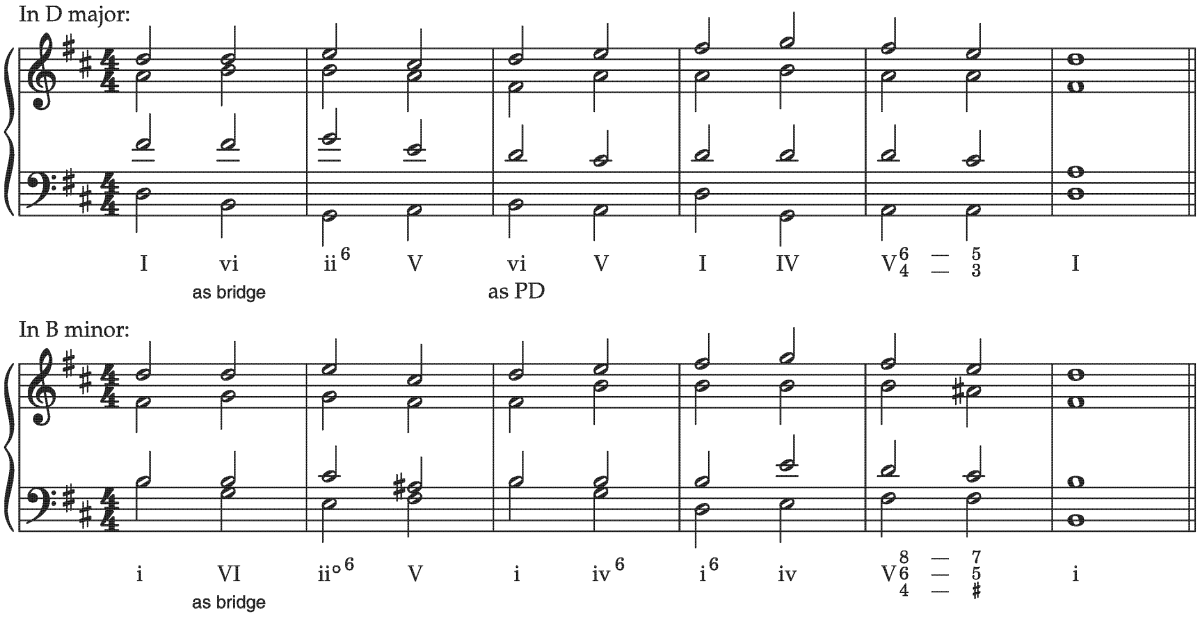
Exercise 12.4

C. Haydn, Symphony no. 92 in G major, "Oxford," Hob I.92, *Andante*

Exercise 13.1

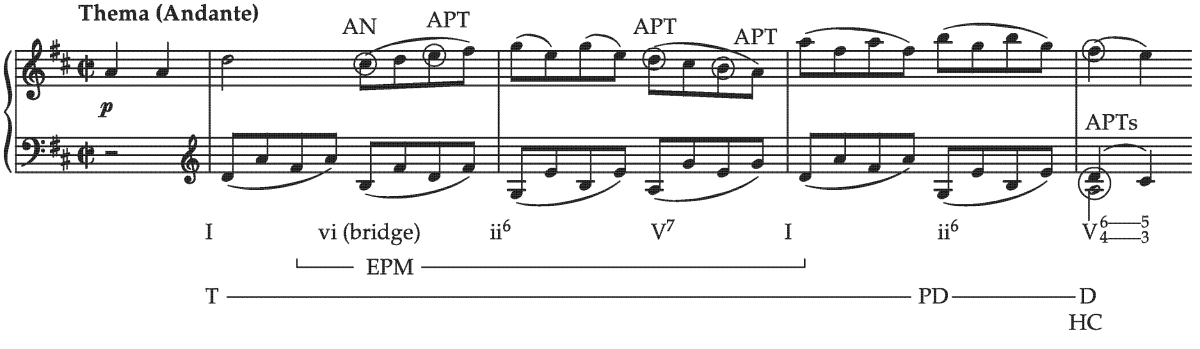


Exercise 13.2 Answers may vary. Here is one possible solution each in D major and B minor.

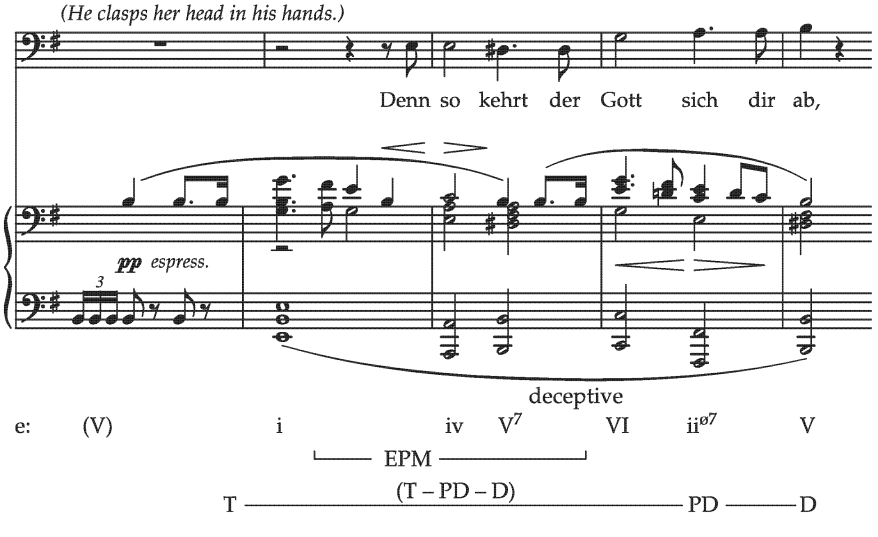


Exercise 13.3

B. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, *Andante*

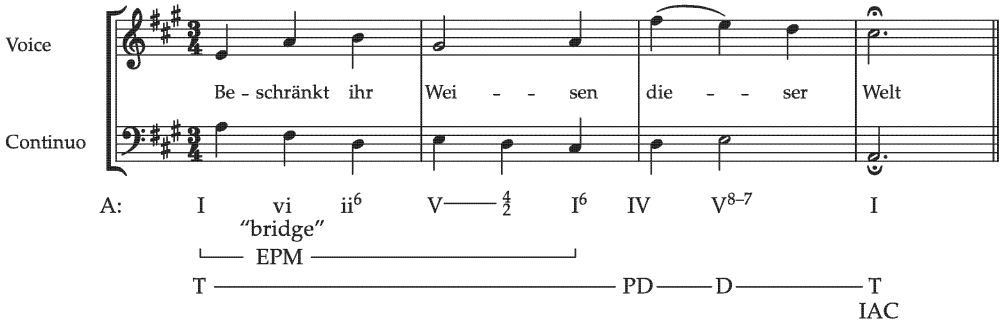


C. Wagner, "Der Augen leuchtendes Paar" ("Those eyes so lustrous and clear") (Wotan's Farewell), *Die Walküre*, act 3, scene 3

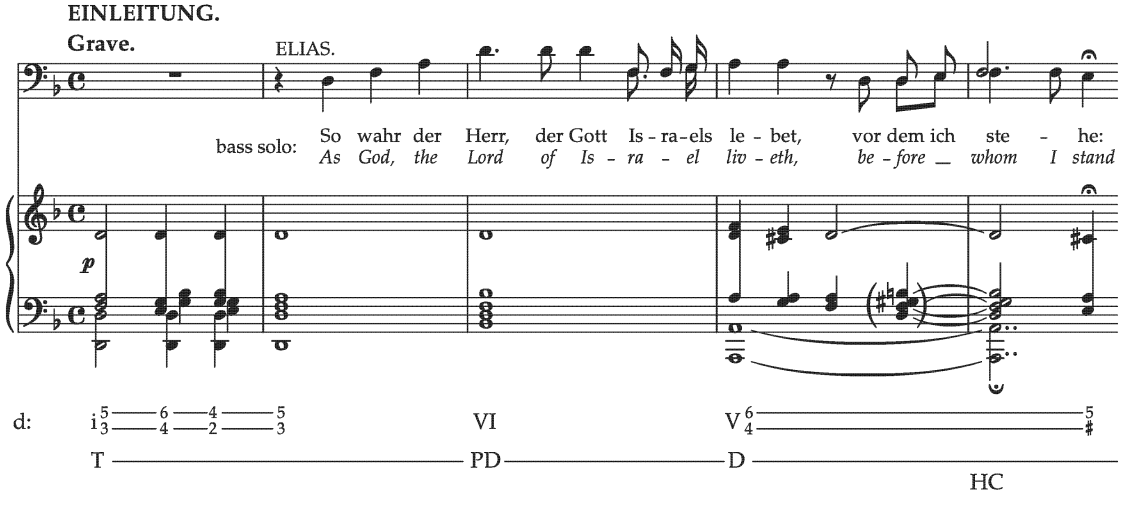


Exercise 13.4

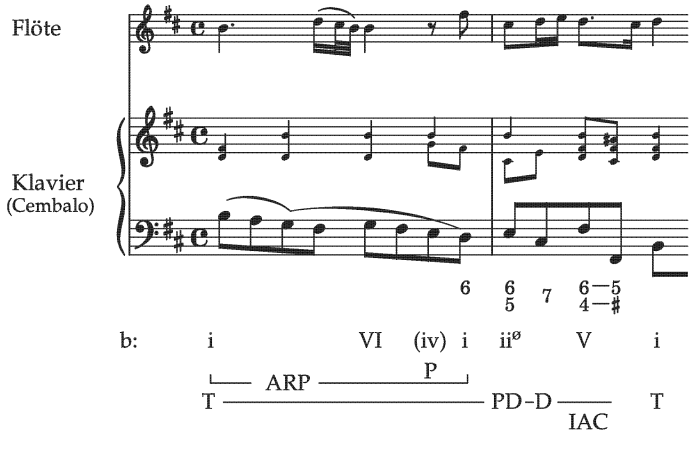
A. Bach, *Geistliches Lied*, "Beschränkt ihr Weisen"



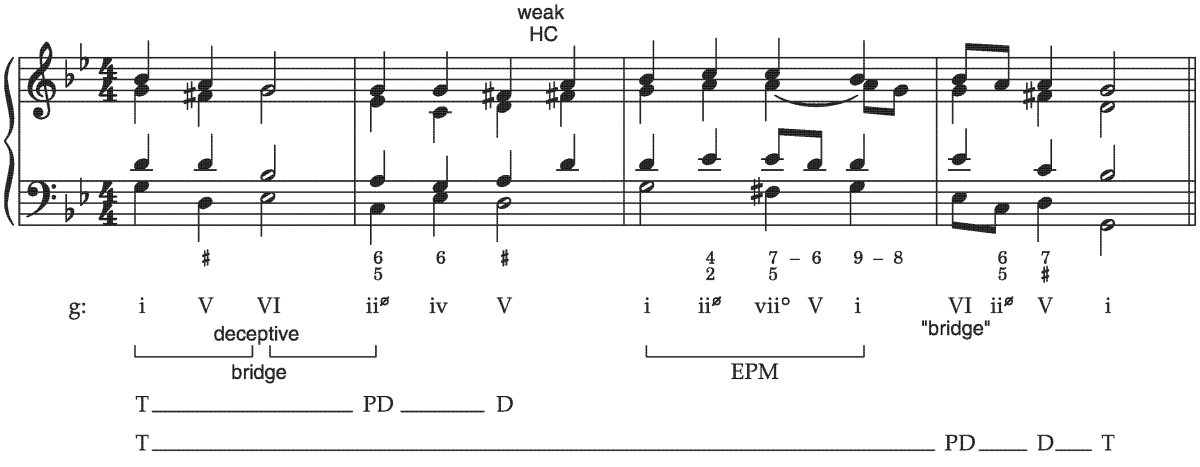
D. Mendelssohn, *Elijah*, opening of Part I



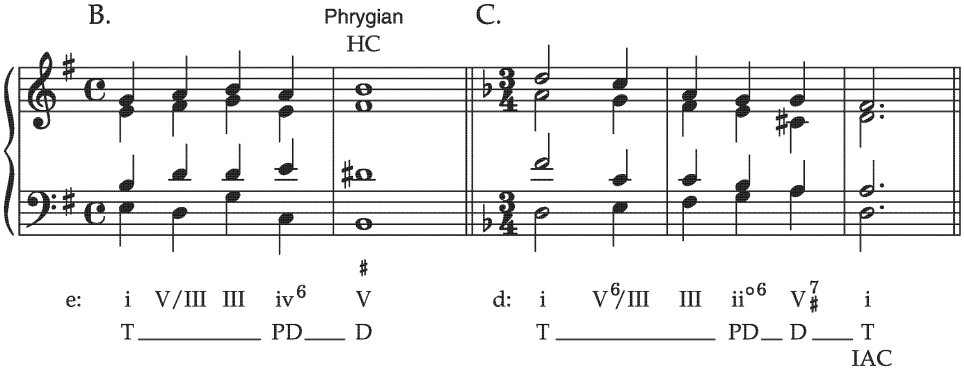
E. Bach, Flute Sonata in B minor, *Largo*



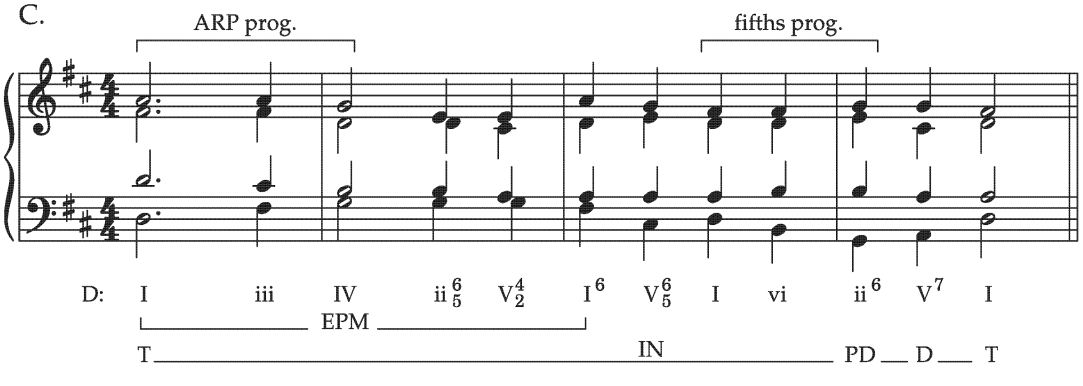
Exercise 13.5



Exercise 14.1

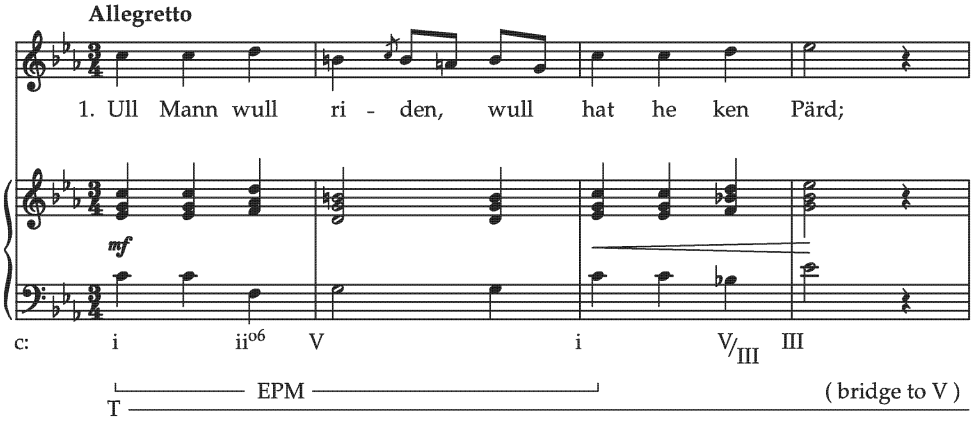


Exercise 14.2

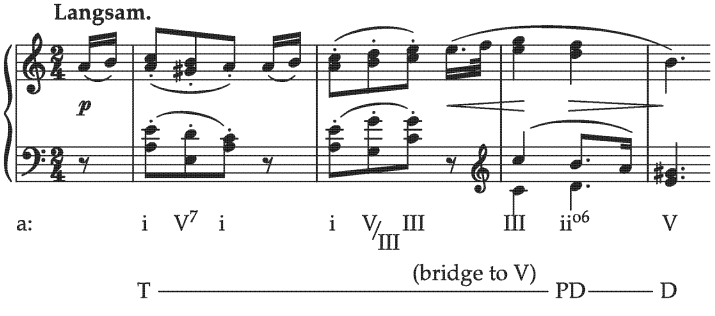


Exercise 14.3

B. Brahms, "Beim Ritt auf dem Knie," Volks- und Kinderlieder, WoO 31, no. 8

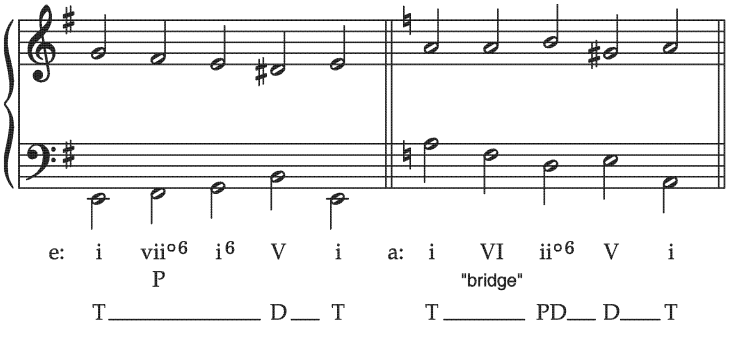


D. Schumann, "Armes Waisenkind," from *Children's Pieces*, op. 68, no. 6

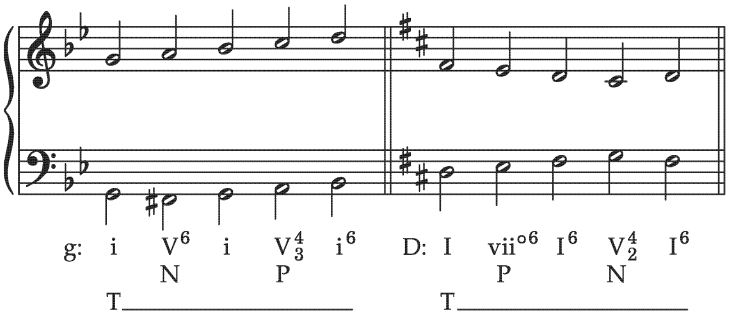


Exercise 14.4

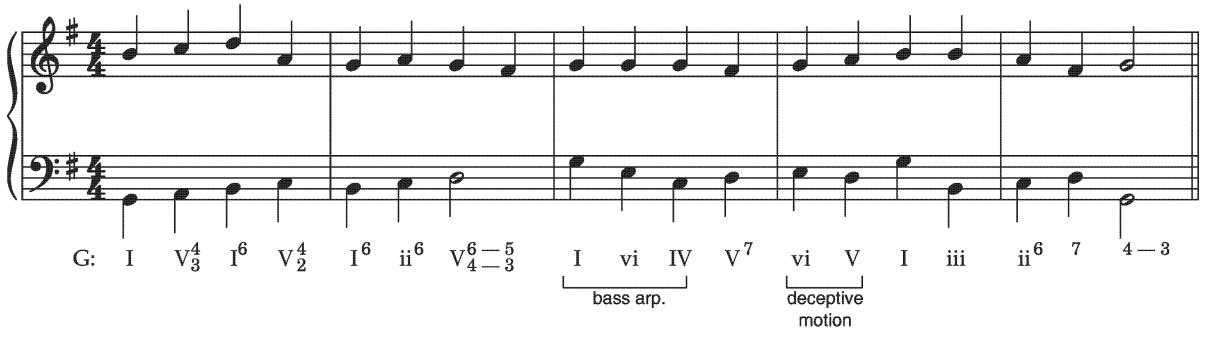
A.



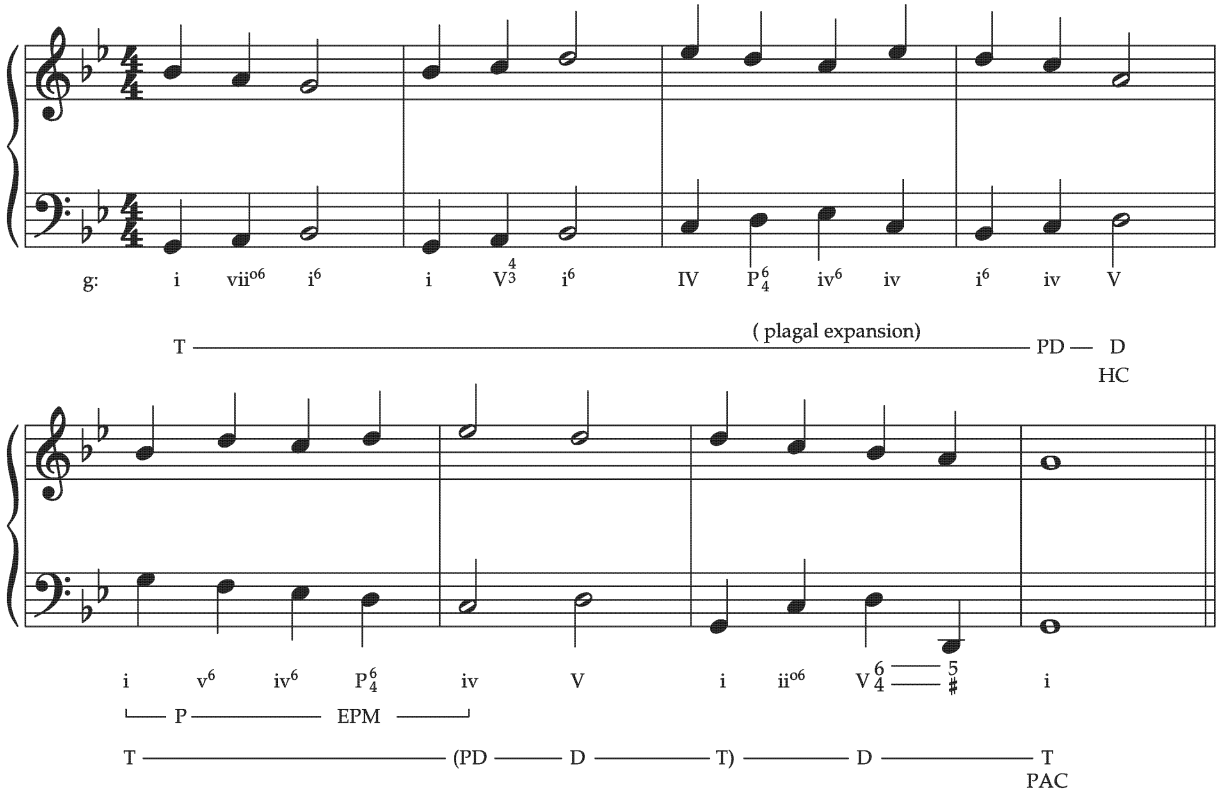
B.



Exercise 14.5

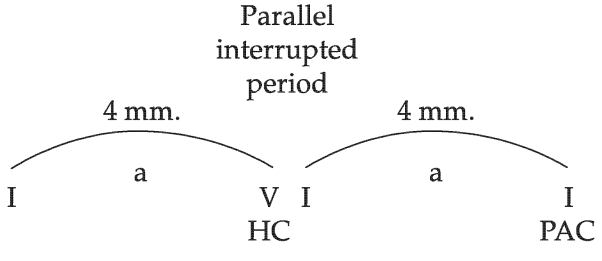


Exercise 14.6

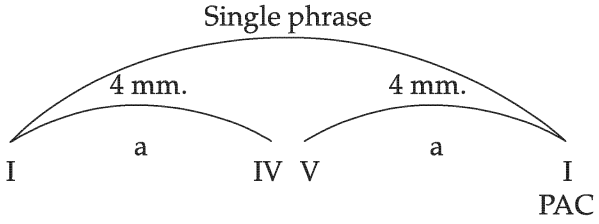


Exercise 15.1

A. Mozart, Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 333, *Allegretto grazioso*



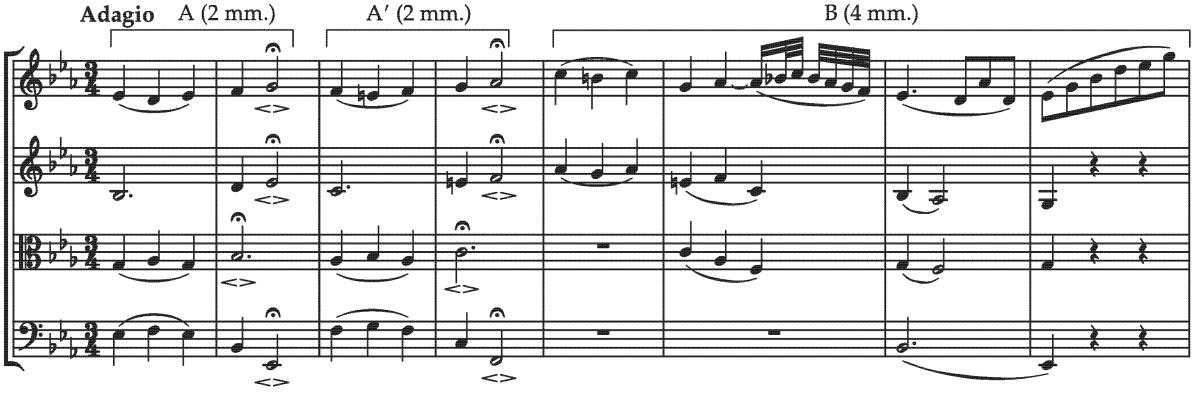
B. Mozart, Symphony no. 39 in E♭ major, K. 543, *Allegretto*



Exercise 15.2 Answers may vary.

Exercise 16.1

B. Haydn, String Quartet in D minor, "Quinten," op. 76, no. 2, Hob III.76, I, *Adagio*



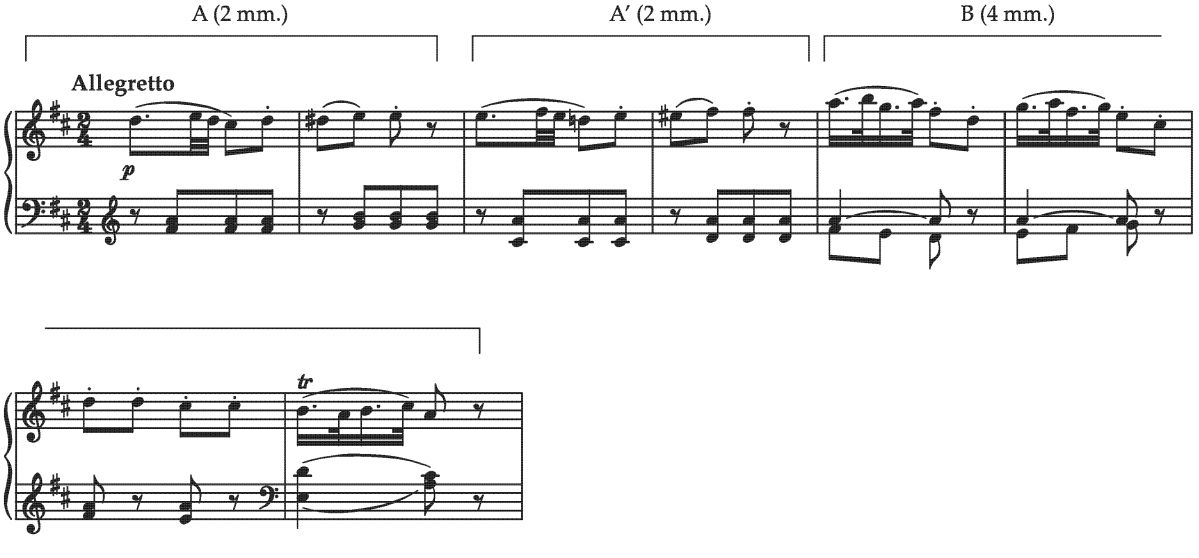
F. Chopin, Nocturne in F minor, op. 55, no. 1

Exercise 16.2

B. Brahms, Intermezzo in A minor, op. 116, no. 2
Asymmetrical parallel interrupted period with nested sentences

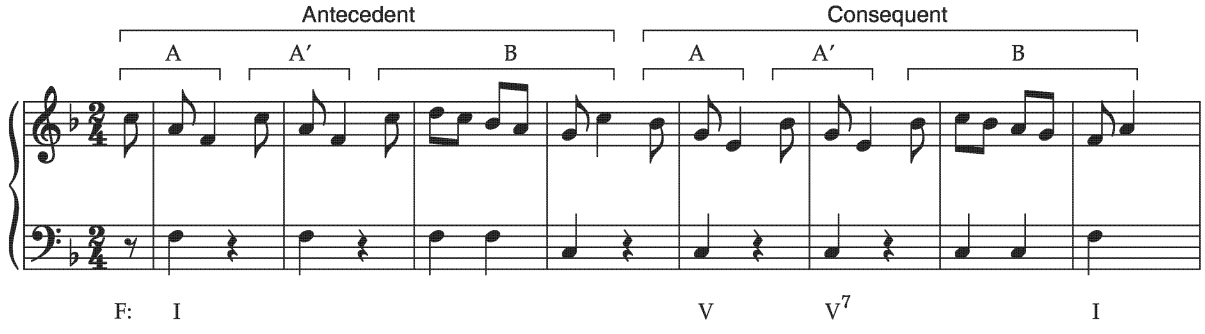
C. Mozart, Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegretto*

Sentence

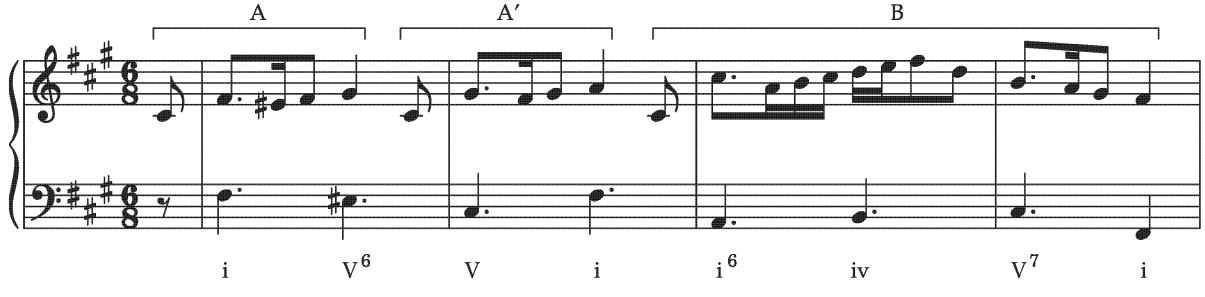


Exercise 16.3 Answers may vary.

B. Parallel continuous period



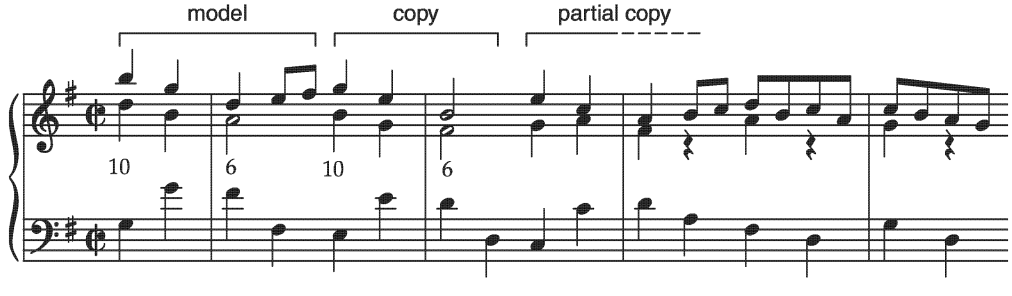
D. Sentence



Exercise 17.1

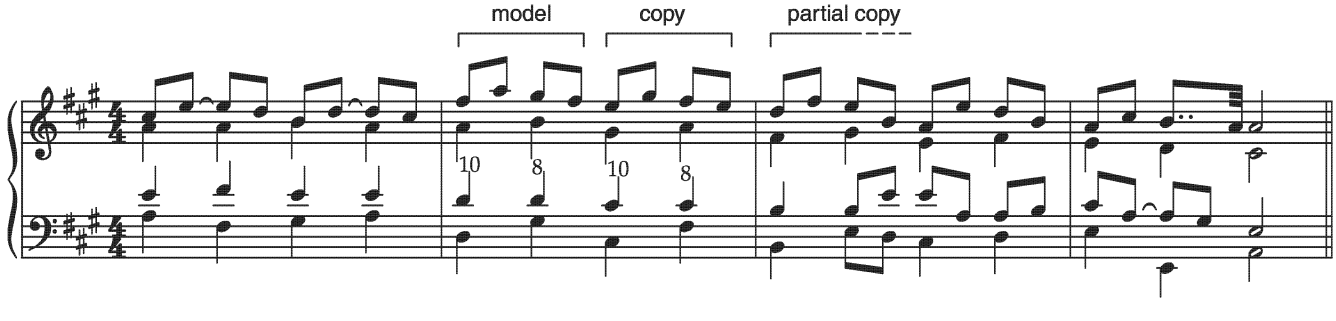
B. Bach, Gavotte, French Suite no. 5 in G major, BWV 816

D3 $(-4/+2)+^{6}_{3}$



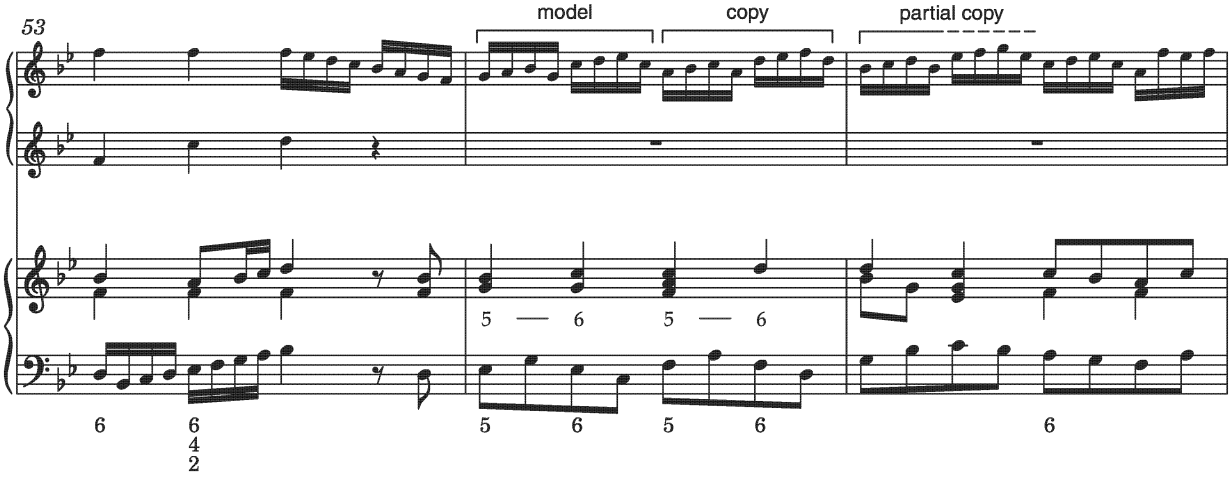
C.

D2 $(-5/+4)$



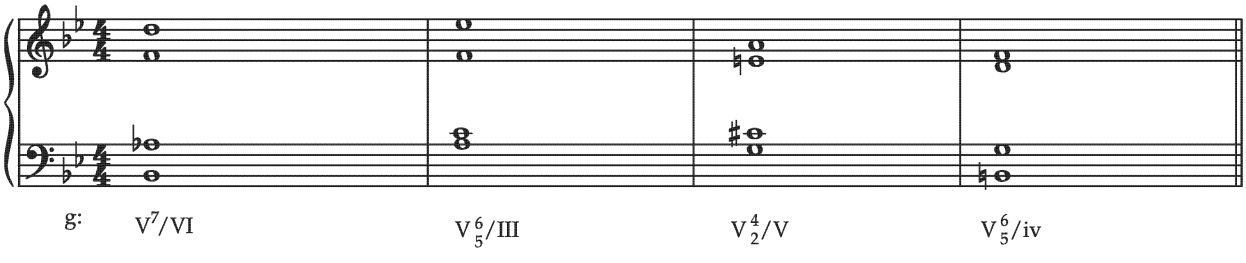
Exercise 17.2

A2 (−3/+4)



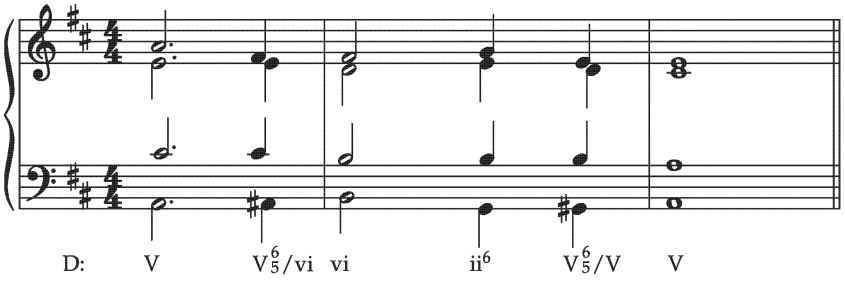
Exercise 18.1

A3.



Exercise 18.2

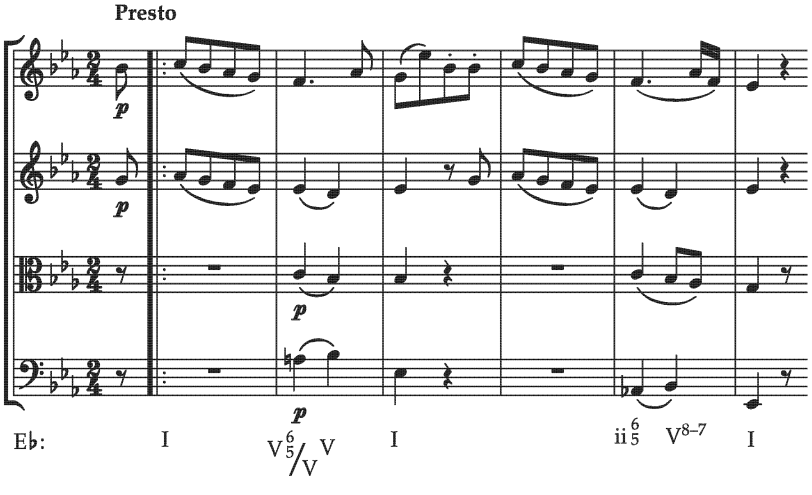
C.



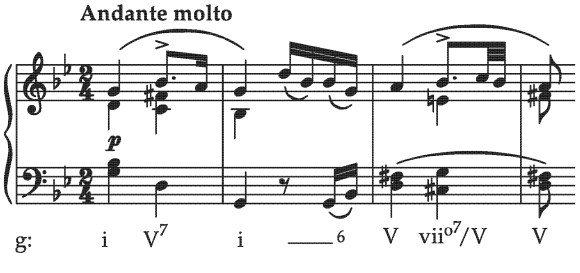
Exercise 18.3

A. Haydn, String Quartet in F minor, op. 55, no. 2, Hob III.61

D. Haydn, String Quartet in E♭ major (Finale), op. 20, no. 1, Hob III.31

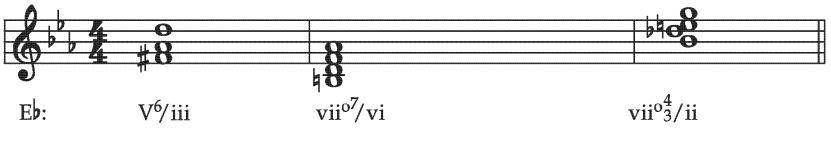


E. Schubert, Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 122, D. 568

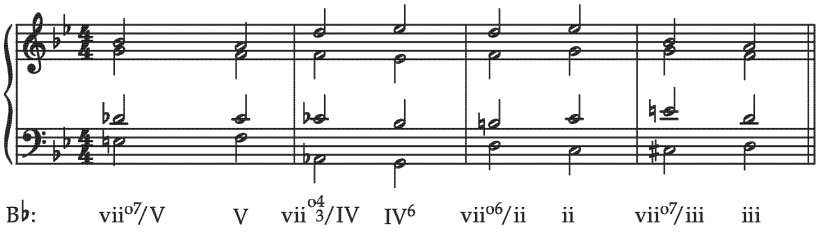


Exercise 18.4

A4.

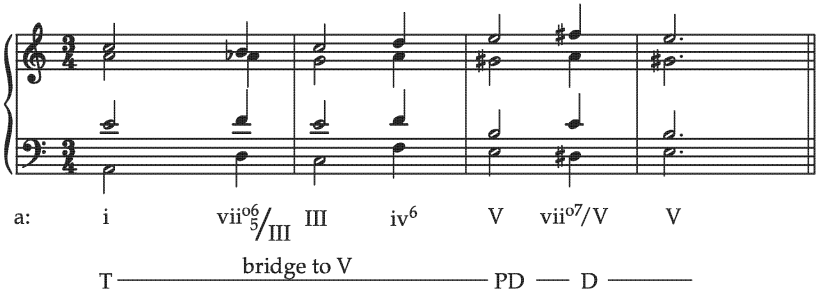


B1. Answers may vary.



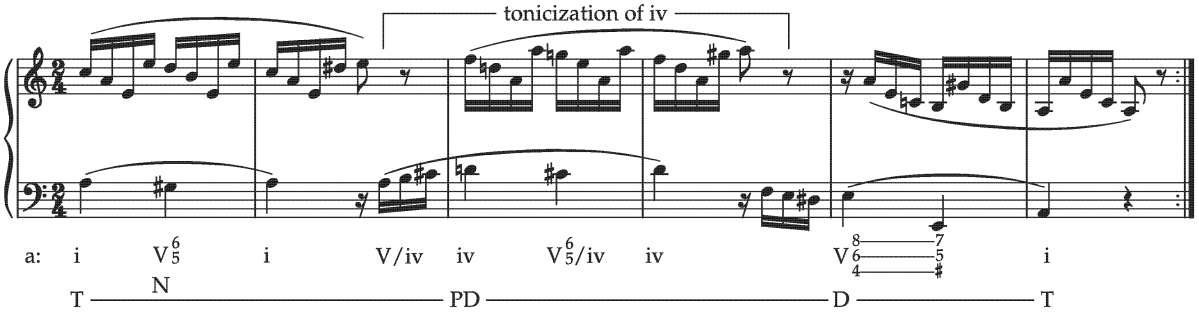
Exercise 18.5

B.



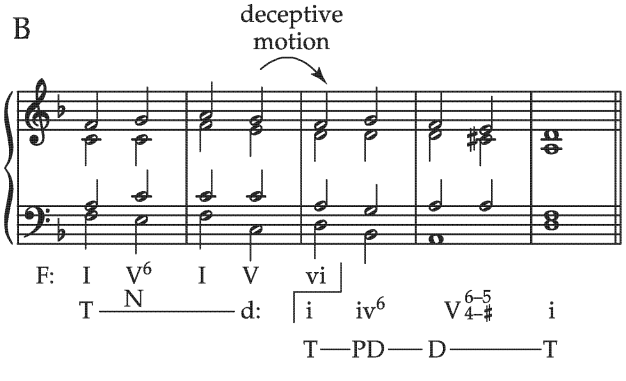
Exercise 19.1

A. Clementi, Prelude in A minor, op. 19



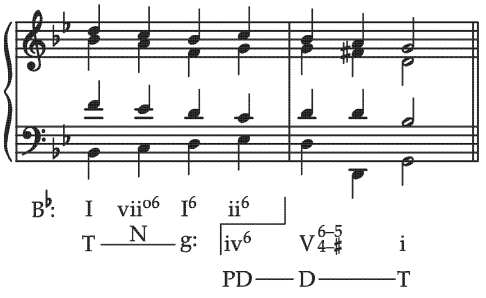
Exercise 19.2

B

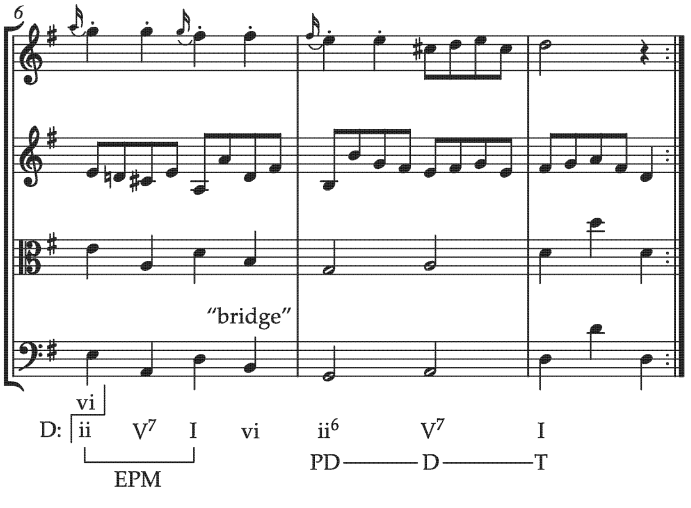


Note: The following chord could also be understood as a pivot. F: ii6 / d: iv6

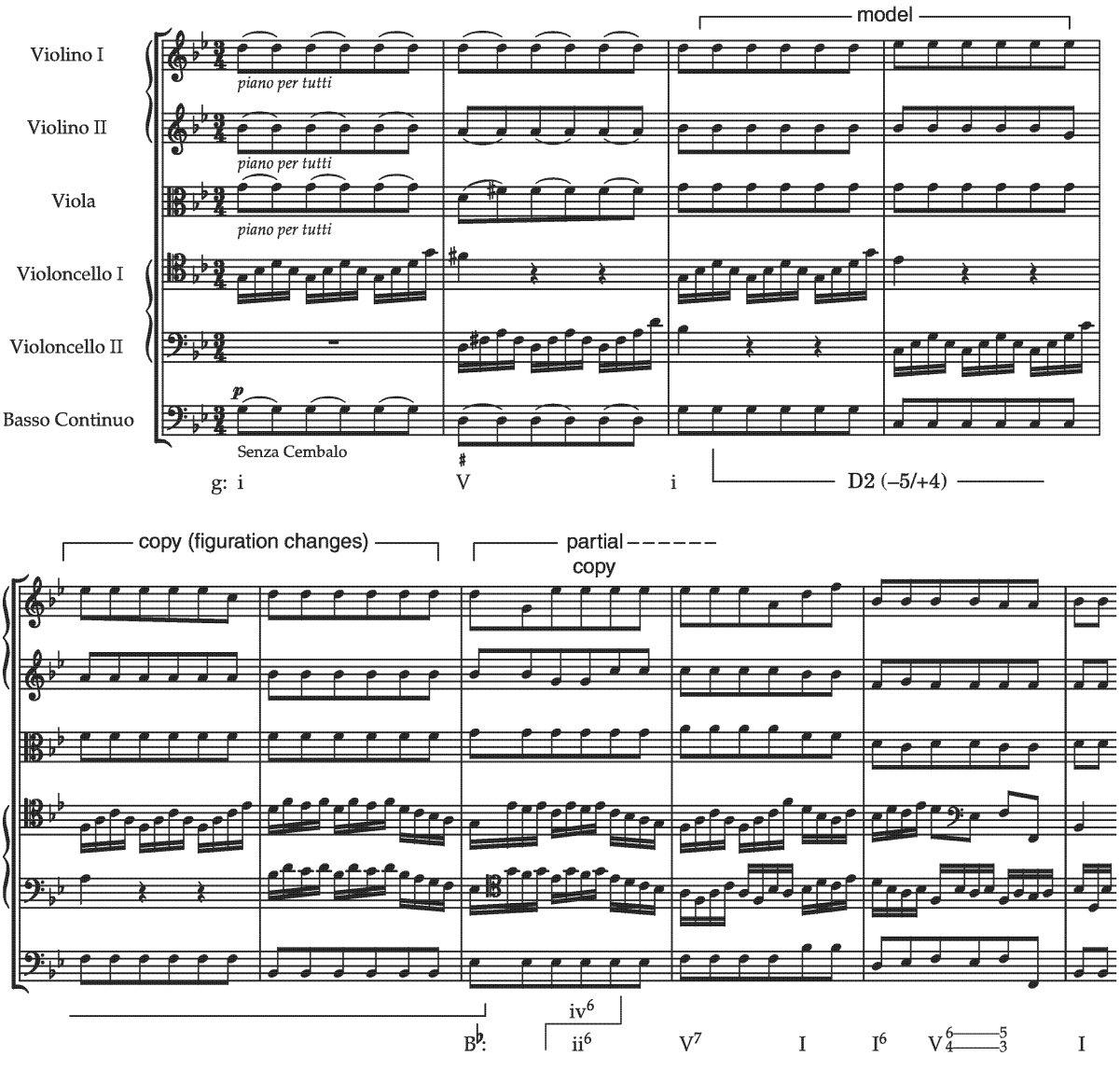
E.



G. Mozart, Piano Concerto in G major, K. 453, *Allegretto*



Exercise 19.3 Handel, Concerto Grosso in B♭ major, op. 3, no. 2, HWV 313, *Largo*



Exercise 19.4

C.

Possible pivot chords from i to III in G minor are:

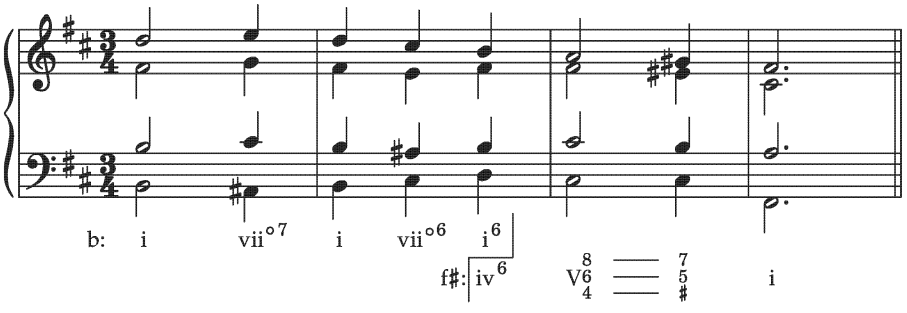
i becoming vi (G–B♭–D)
ii°⁶ becoming vii°⁶ (A–C–E♭)
III becoming I (B♭–D–F)
iv becoming ii (C–E♭–G) X
VI becoming IV (E♭–G–B♭)

D.
Possible pivot chords from I to V in A major are:

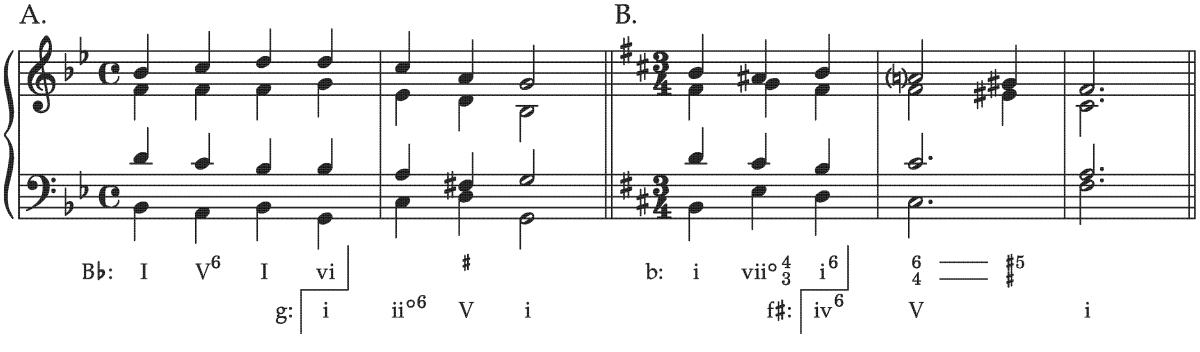
I becoming IV (A–C♯–E)
iii becoming vi (C♯–E–G♯)
V becoming I (E–G♯–B)
vi becoming ii (F♯–A–C♯) X

Exercise 19.6

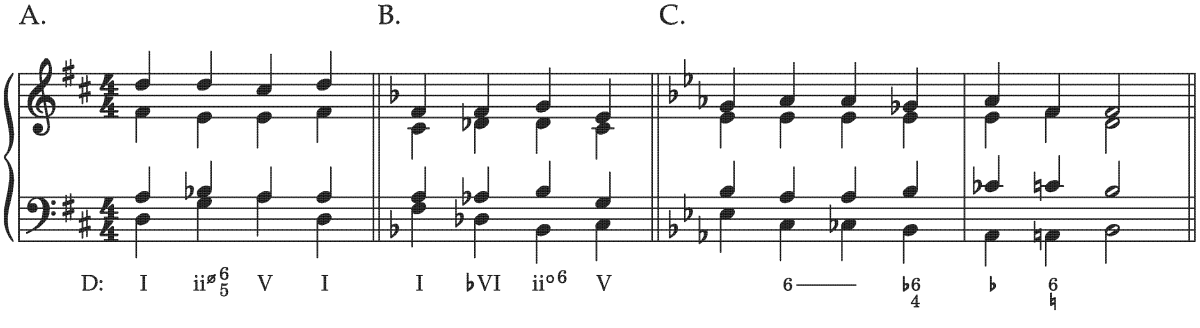
E. Modulation from i to v in B minor



Exercise 19.7

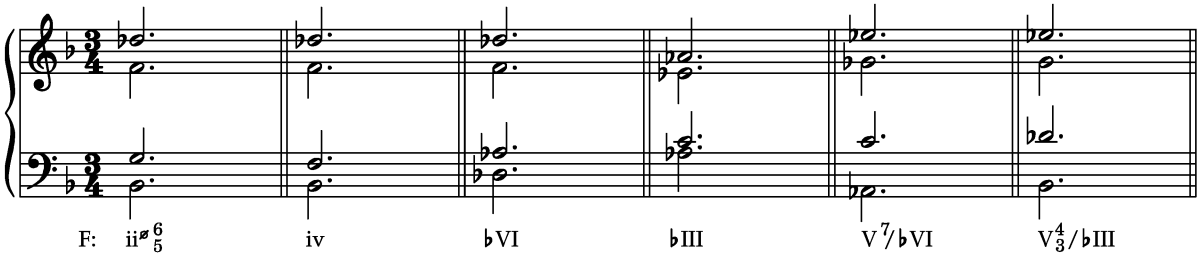


Exercise 21.1 Answers may vary.

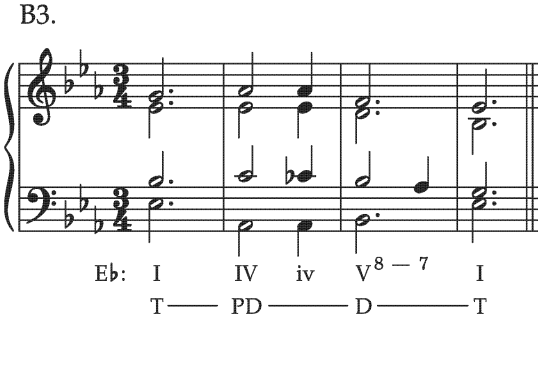


Exercise 21.2

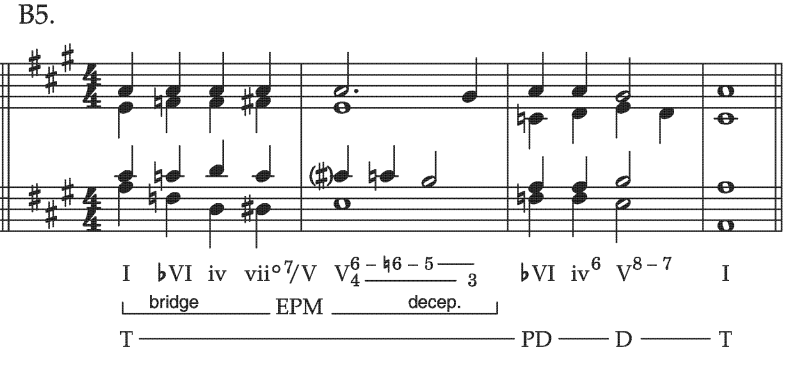
A.



B3.

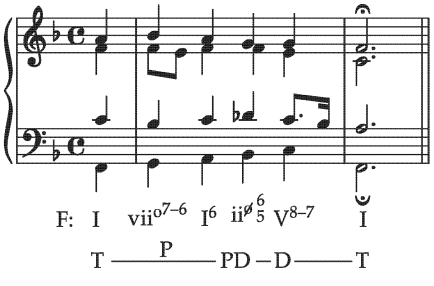


B5.

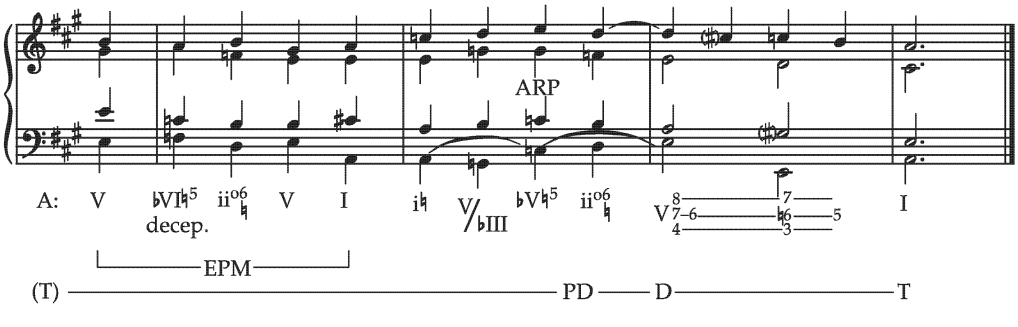


Exercise 21.3

C. J. S. Bach, "Christus, der ist mein Leben"

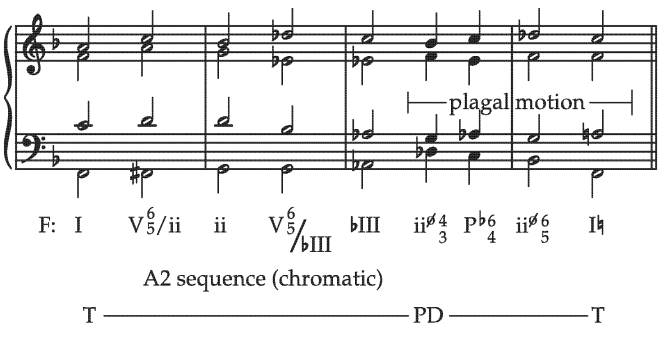


D.

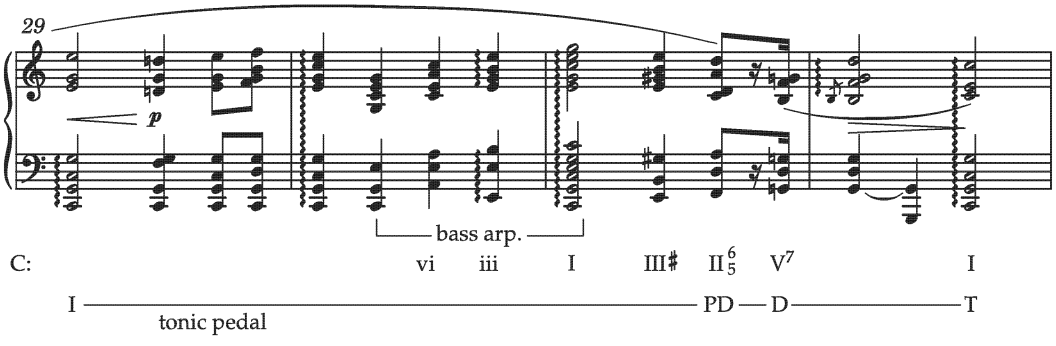


Exercise 21.4

B.

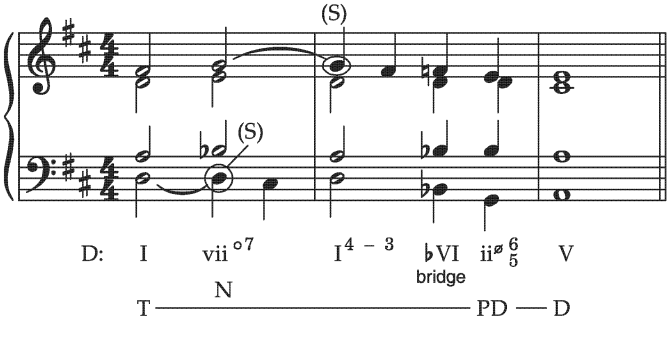


D. Chopin, Nocturne in C minor, op. 48, no. 1



Exercise 21.5

A.



Exercise 22.1

Answer the following questions.

1. Given the following major-key modulations, what pivot chords are possible?

a. D to F (♭III)

i♮	ii°6	♭III	iv♮	♭VI
vi	vii°6	I	ii	IV

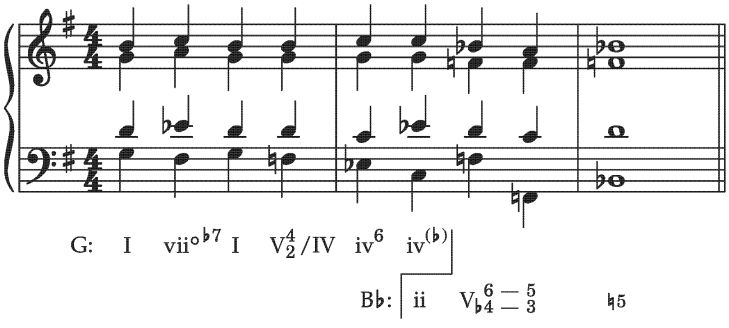
d. A to F (♭VI)

i♮	♭III	iv♮	♭VI
iii	V	vi	I

2. Complete the following chart.

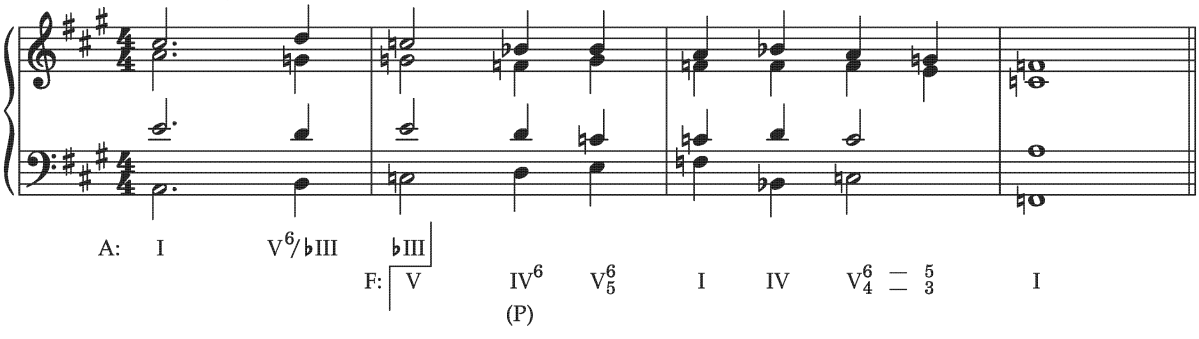
	In what key is the triad . . .				
triads	I	III	IV	V	♭VI
D major	D major	B♭ major	A major	G major	F♯ major
C major					
E major	E major	C major	B major	A major	G♯/A♭ major
B♭ major					
F major					
A major					

Exercise 22.2

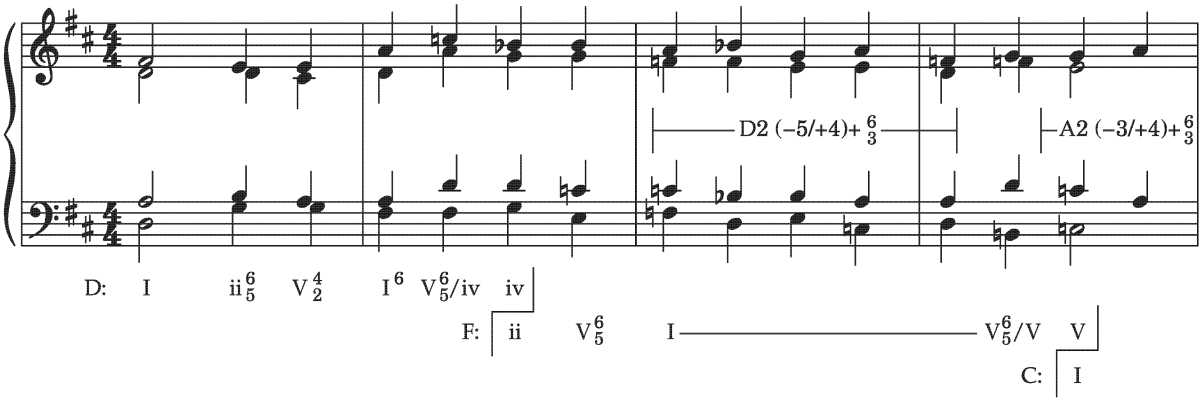


Exercise 22.3

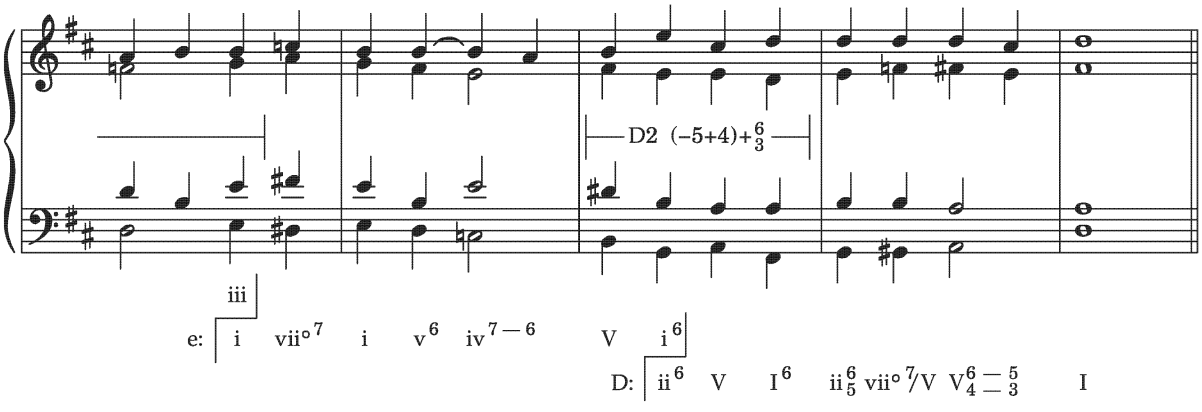
♭III in A major can be I in C major (♭III) or V in F major (♭VI). The latter is realized here (answers may vary).



Exercise 22.4 Answer may vary. Here is one possible solution.

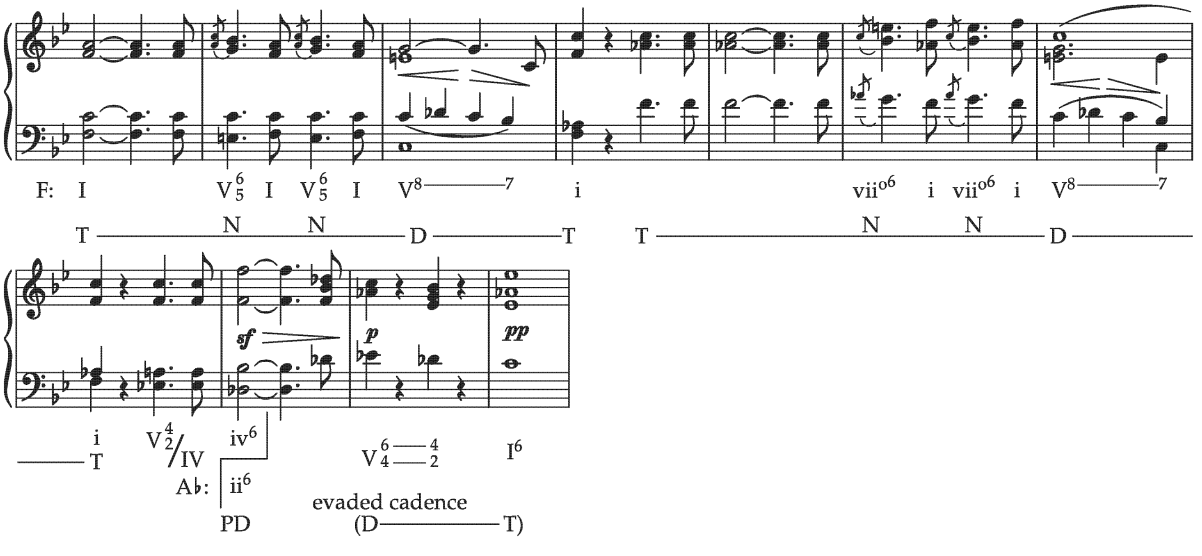


Continued

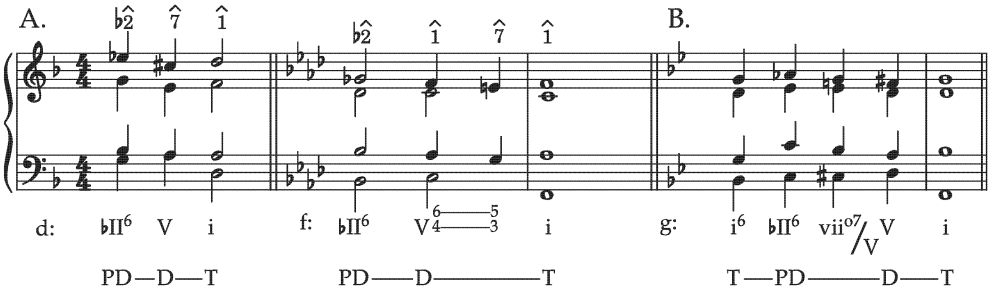


Exercise 22.5

C. Beethoven, String Quartet, op. 18, no. 6, *Allegro con brio*



Exercise 23.1

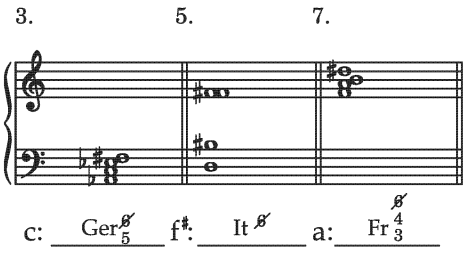


Exercise 23.2

A. Beethoven, Bagatelle, op. 119, no. 9. Make a formal diagram.

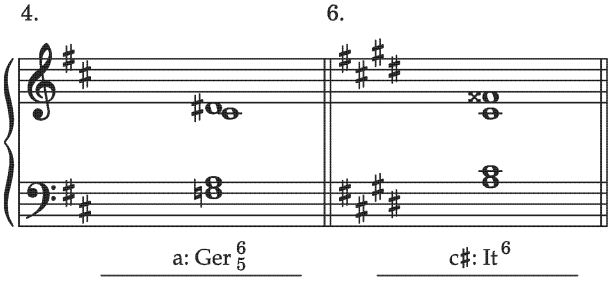
C. Chopin, Mazurka in C♯ minor, op. 30, no. 4, BI 105
Include in your discussion the underlying harmonic progression in the excerpt.

Exercise 24.1

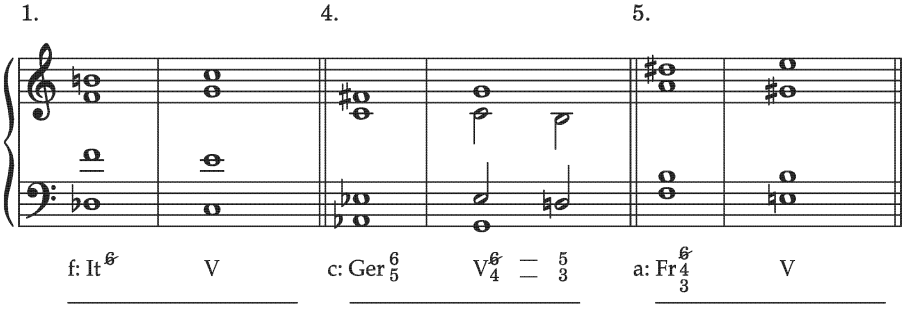


Exercise 24.2

A.

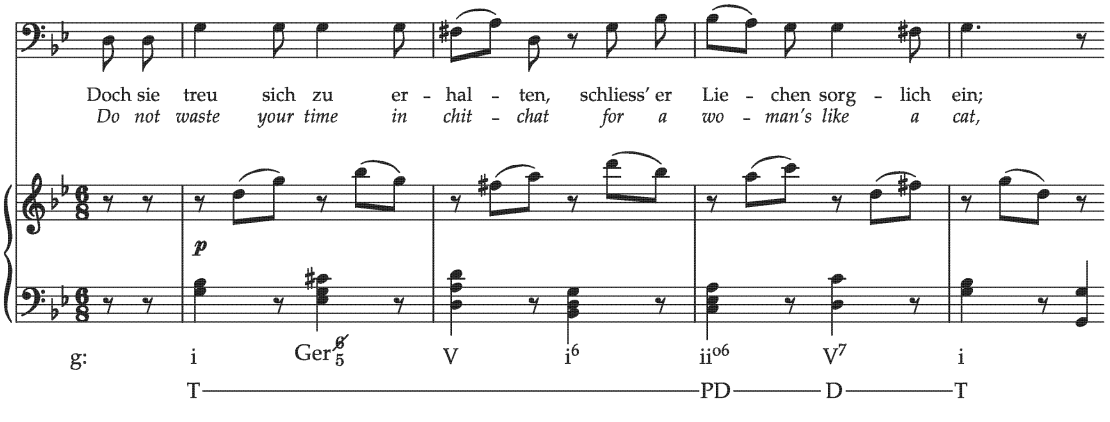


B.



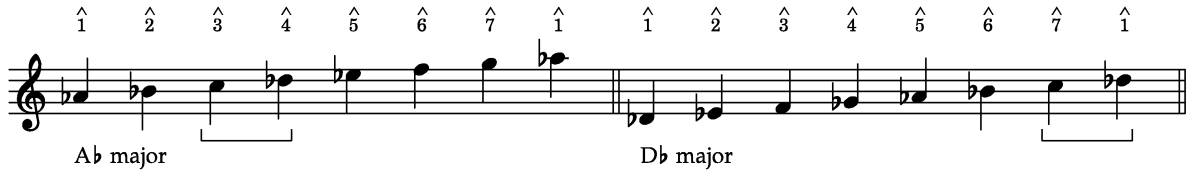
Exercise 24.3

A. Mozart, "Wer ein Liebchen," from *Abduction from the Seraglio*



Exercise 1A.1

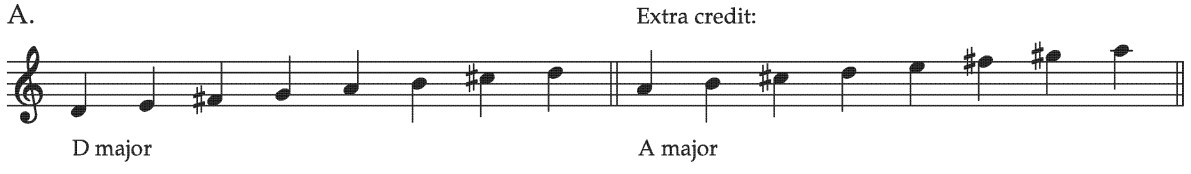
C.



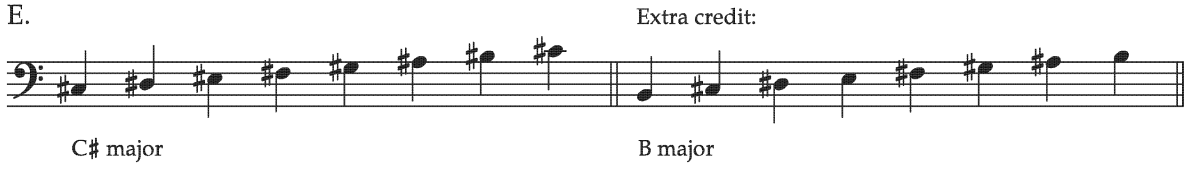
F.

Exercise 1A.2

A.



E.



Exercise 1A.3

Half steps are shown in bold. Step-and-a-half intervals (i.e., augmented seconds) are underlined. All others are whole steps.)

A2. B♭–C–**D**–**E♭**–F–G–**A**–**B♭**

B2. A–**B**–**C**–D–E–F♯–**G♯**–**A**–G–**F**–**E**–D–**C**–**B**–A

C2. B♭–**C**–**D♭**–E♭–**F**–**G♭**–**A**–**B♭**

D2. E♭–**F**–**G♭**–A♭–**B♭**–**C♭**–D♭–E♭

Exercise 1A.4 (Writing Scales)

A2. G–A–B–**C**–D–E–F♯–G (C is $\hat{4}$ in G major.)

B.2 B♭–C–**D**–E♭–F–G–A–B♭ (D is the mediant in B♭ major.)

C2. D–E–F–G–A–B♭–**C♯**–D (C♯ is $\hat{7}$ in D harmonic minor.)

D2. E–F♯–G♯–A–B–C♯–D♯–E (The relative major of C♯ minor is E major.)

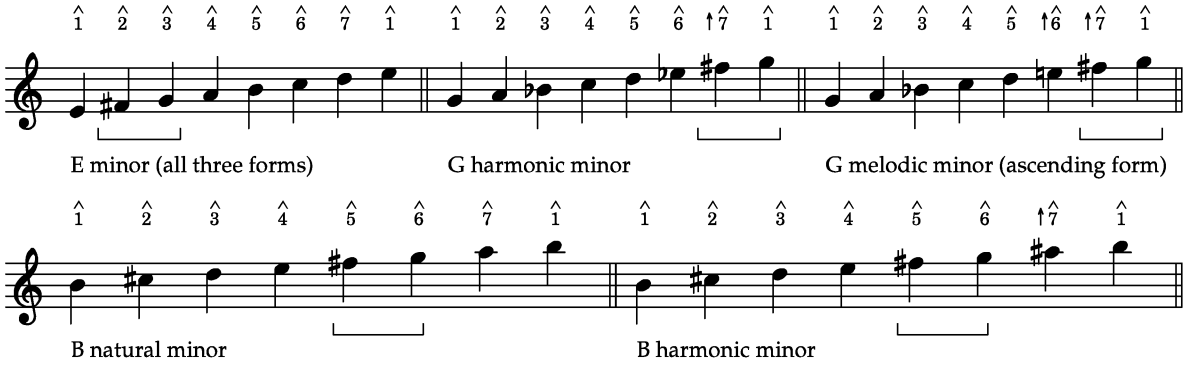
E2. F♯–G♯–A–B–C♯–D♯–E♯–F♯–E–D–C♯–B–A–G♯–F♯ (The relative minor of A major, in melodic form, is F♯ melodic minor.)

F2. A–B–C♯–D–E–F♯–G♯–A (The parallel major of A minor is A major.)

Exercise 1A.5

C.

D.



Exercise 1A.6

B. Melodic minor D. Harmonic minor

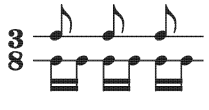
Exercise 1B.3

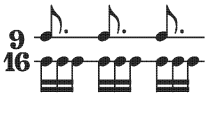
A.

2. beat = ♪. division = compound / simple or compound?

3. beat = 𝅗𝅥 division = simple / simple or compound?

B.

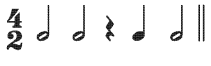
2. simple triple: ♪ = 1 beat 

5. compound triple: ♪. = 1 beat 

Exercise 1B.4

B.

G.

E. 

Exercise 1C.5

B. Minor seconds in B♭ major: D–E♭, A–B♭.
C. Major thirds in the C harmonic minor scale: E♭–G, G–B, A♭–C.

Exercise 1C.6

Exercise 1D.1

A2. B–D♯–F♯

A5. B♭–D–F

B3. G–B♭–D

B4. E♭–G♭–B♭

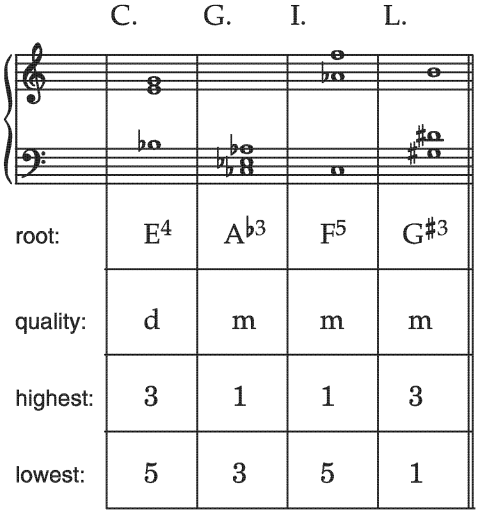
C2. E–G–B♭

C5. B–D–F

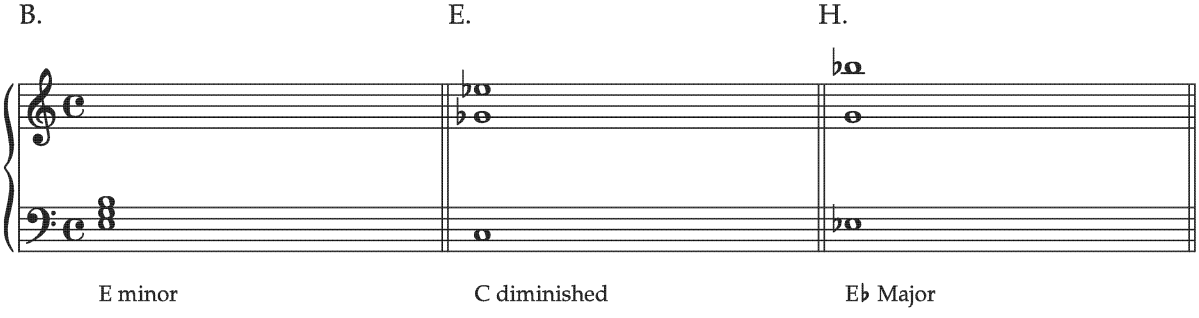
D2. A♭ is the third of an F♭ major triad and the fifth of a D diminished triad.

D5. F♯ is the third of a D♯ minor triad and the fifth of a B diminished triad.

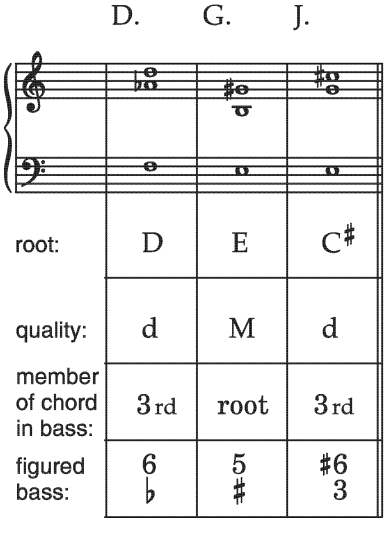
Exercise 1D.2



Exercise 1D.3

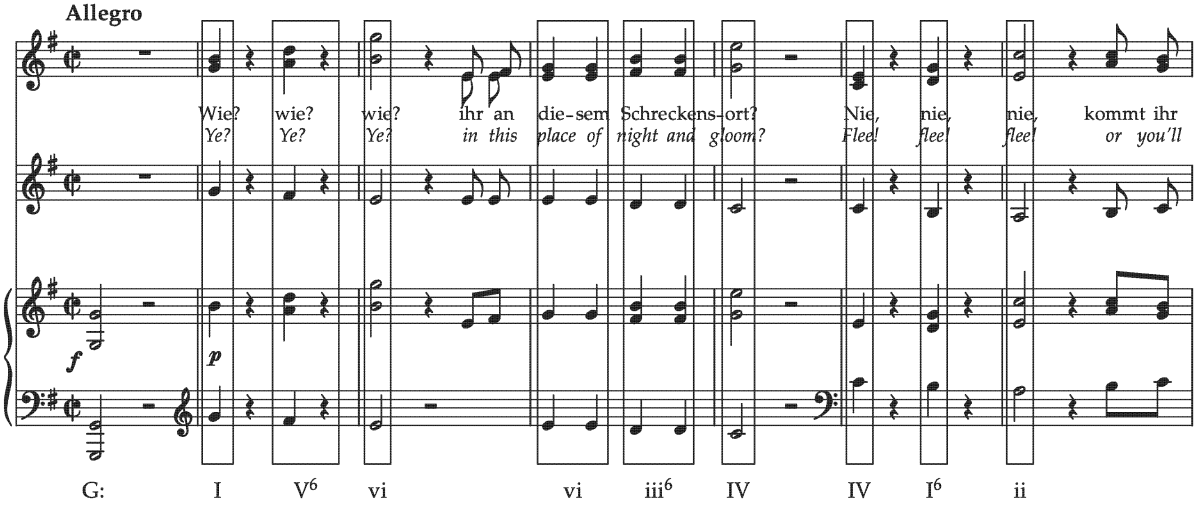


Exercise 1D.4

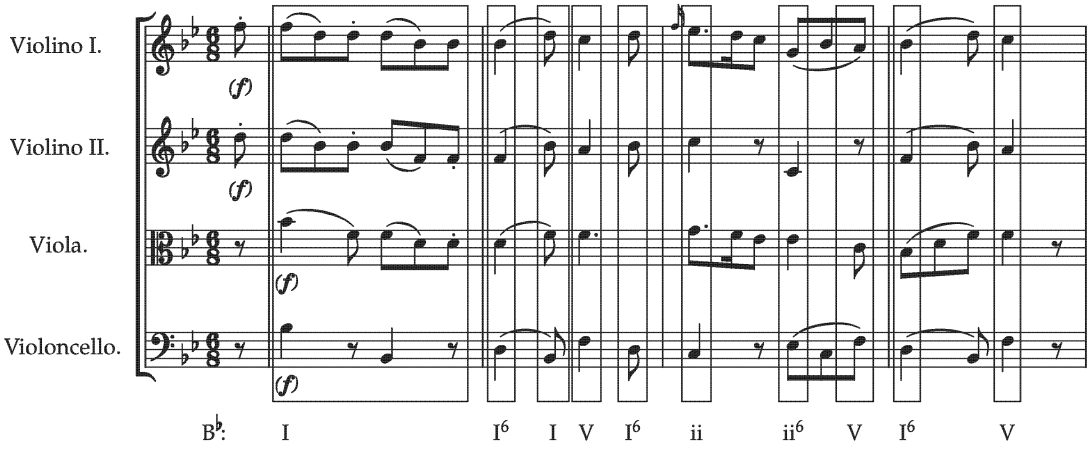


Exercise 1D.7

C. "Wie? Wie? Wie?"

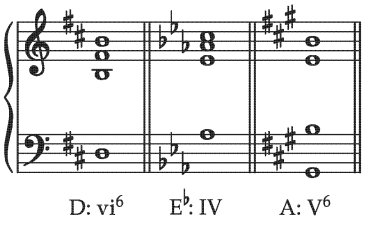


D. "Mozart, String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 458, *Allegro vivace assai*

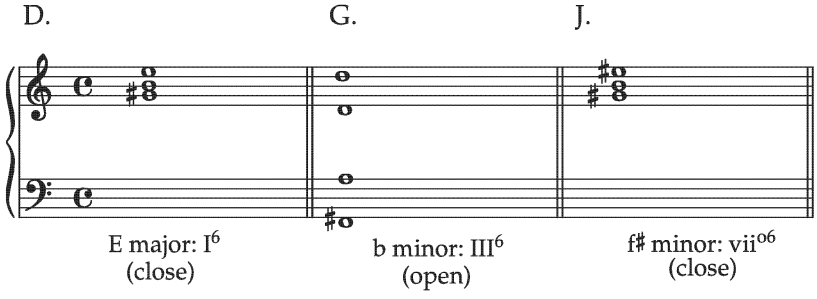


Exercise 1D.8

C. F. I.

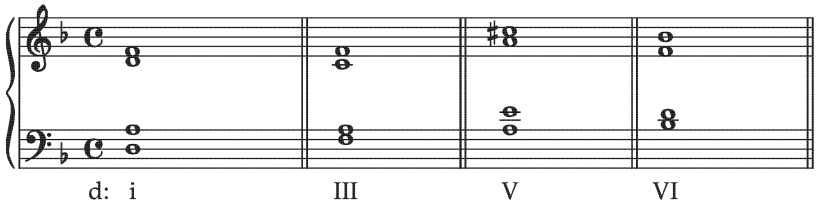


Exercise 1D.9



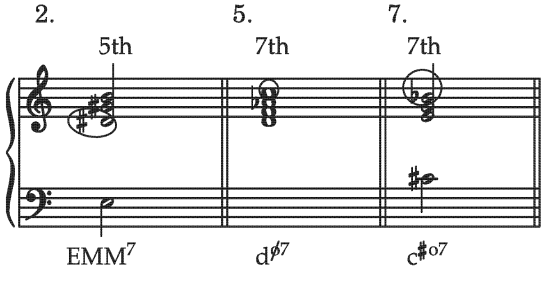
Exercise 1D.10

A.

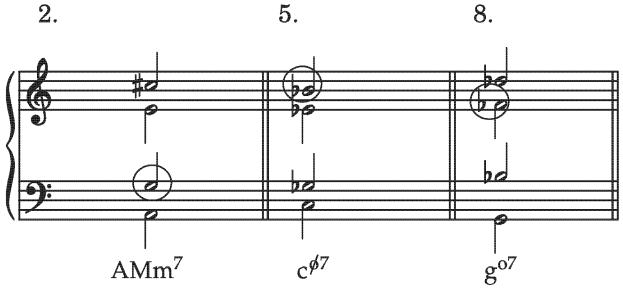


Exercise 1E.1

A.

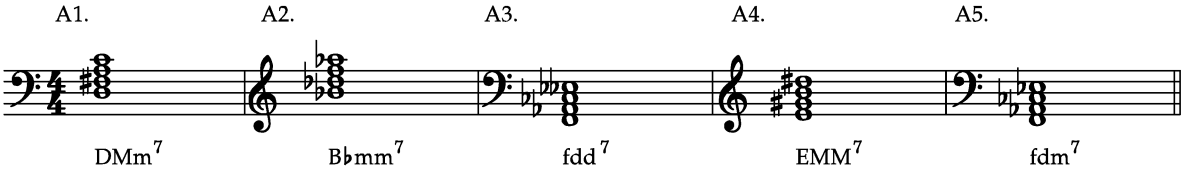


B.



Exercise 1E.2 The second example is shown.

A.



B2. D is the third of a Bdd7 chord, the fifth of a Gmm7 chord, and the seventh of an E♭MM7 chord.

Exercise 1E.3

	Root	*Third*	*Fifth*	*Seventh*
C. dd:	D	F	A♭	C♭
E. MM:	F♯	A♯	C♯	E♯
H. Mm:	A♭	C	E♭	G♭
J. mm:	B	D	F♯	A

Exercise 1E.4

B1. B–D–F♯–**A**

B2. F♯–**A**–C–E♭

B3. D–F♯–**A**–C

B4. B♭–D–F–**A**

B5. D♯–F♯–**A**–C♯

Exercise 1E.5

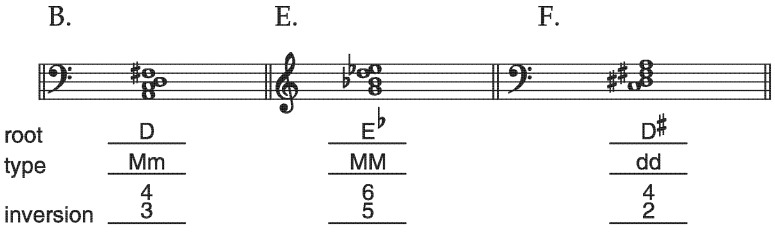
B1. F–A♭–C♭–D♭

B2. F–A–C–E

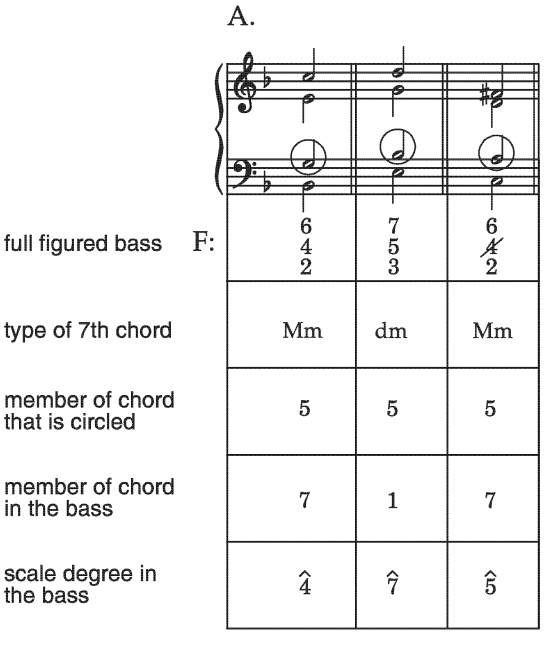
B3. F–A♭–B♭–D♭

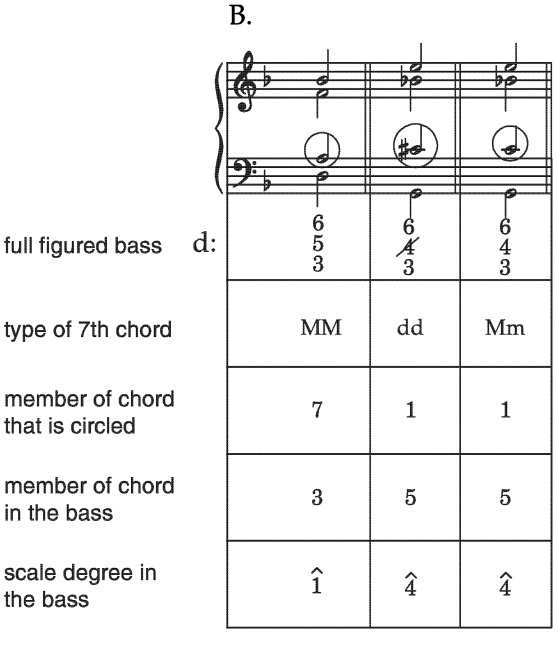
B4. F–G–B♭–D

Exercise 1E.6



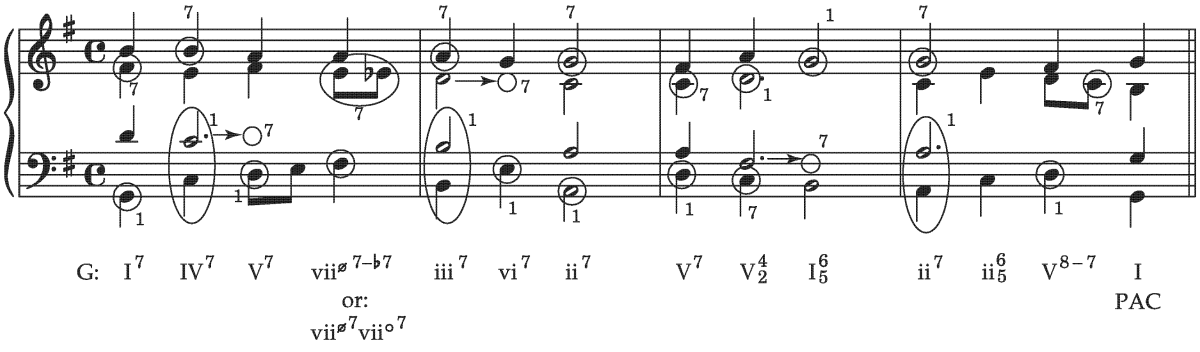
Exercise 1E.7



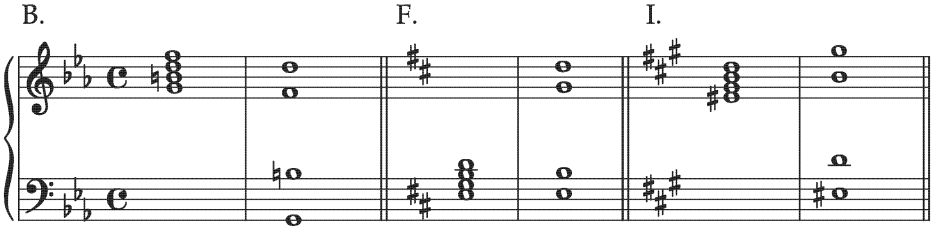


Exercise 1E.8

B.



Exercise 1E.9



Index of Terms and Concepts

Accent, 2, 23, 96, 703
  metrical (temporal), 26–31, 703
  accented vs. unaccented, 23
  types
    durational, rhythmic (agogic), 3, 26
    harmonic change (rhythm), 27
    musical patterning, 23
    nontemporal, 26–29
    articulative, (phenomenal, including: textural, dynamic, contour, registral, pitch), 28–31
Accented dissonances. See tones of figuration (accented)
Accented six-four chords. See six-four chords: cadential
Accidentals, 684–685. See also chromatic alterations
Active scale degrees, 84–86
Agogic. See accent
Alberti bass, 75
Alla breve, 709
Altered dominant seventh chord. See dominant seventh chord
Ambiguity, tonal. See tonal ambiguity
Ambitus, 111
Amen cadence. See plagal cadence
Anacrusis (upbeat), 26
Analysis of
  compound melody, 99–100, 804
  descriptive versus interpretive, 120–128, 249, 277–279, 440–441, 510–514, 550–580, 656–676
  harmonic, 738–739
    applied chords, 349–350
    chromatic modulation, 437–439
    seventh chords, 133
  implied harmonies, 766–767
  models of, 87–89, 96, 123–128, 135–136, 202–203, 277–279, 406–413, 446–449, 598–601, 618–620
  tonicizations and modulation, 378–379
  See also Gestalt psychology
Analyze
  ambiguity, 586–593
  applied chords, 352
  dense texture, 75–78
  implied harmony and incomplete chords, 766–767
  intervallic cells, 656–676
  modal mixture, 420–429
  modulations, 378
diatonic, 378–379
diminished sevenths, 598–601
  periods, 305–307
  semitonal voice leading, 589–592
  sonata form, 539–543
  text-music relations, 449–457
Antecedent. See period and phrase
Anticipation, 219–220
Apparent harmonies, 249–250, 278–279
Applied dominant chords (secondary dominants, applied chords), 348–355
  hearing, 352
  to prolong non-tonic harmonies, 350–351
  in sequences, 362–367
Appoggiatura, 213. See also tones of figuration and neighbor, incomplete
Arch. See melody
Arcs, in period diagrams, 302–304
Arpeggiation, 87. See also root motions
Ascending second. See root motions
Ascending second sequence. See sequences, ascending second sequence
Asymmetrical, 20
Attwood, Thomas, 47–48
Augmentation (as rhythmic transformation), 782
Augmented second, 260–261, 285–286, 500
Augmented sixth chords, 472–476, 479–489
  in chromatic sequences, 634–635
derivation from Phrygian cadence, 473
  elided resolution, 476
  following (♭)VI, 479
  German diminished-third chord, 482–483
as part of (chromatic) voice exchange, 481–482
as part of pre-dominant expansion, 480–484
  types, 474–475
  writing, 475–476
  V^7 and +6, 485–488, 592–594
  See also, French augmented sixth, German augmented sixth, Italian augmented sixth, doubly augmented sixth chord (Swiss)
Augmented triad, 609–613
Authentic cadence. See cadence
Auxiliary tone. See neighbor

Back-relating dominant, 291–293
Balanced binary form. See binary form
Bar lines, 2, 703
Bass as melody, 156
Bass arpeggiations (melodic and harmonic) using
  I-IV^6-I^6, 153–155
  vi, 268–269
  iii, 286–287
  mixture chords, 421–422
Beams (rhythmic notation), 21–22
Beat, 19–20, 699
Binary form, 389–395
  digression, 391
  interruption, 392
  thematic design, 390
  types, 390–395
Borrowed divisions, 23
Brahms, Johannes, 756
Bridging section. See transition

Cadence (half, imperfect authentic, perfect authentic), 106–108
  back-relating dominant and half cadence, 291–293
  contrapuntal, 108, 254–255
  deceptive motion v. cadence, 271–272
  embedded phrase model (EPM), 251–253
  evaded, 165
  melodic, 43, 54
  phrygian, 192
  plagal, 239
  versus caesura, 259
Cadential extension, 234–235
Cadential six-four chord. See six-four chords: accented
Cadenza, 801
Caesura, 259
Cantus firmus (pl. cantus firmi), 48
Cell. See intervallic cell
Chaconne, 401–405
Change of interval (in motivic repetitions), 778
Character piece, 509–513
Chorale style. See, score, formats
Chord, 64
Chordal dissonance
  inversions of V^7, 160–166
  in V^7, 131–134
  in vii^7, 172–177
  in pre-dominants, 246–249
Chordal leap, skip (consonant leap, skip), 57
  in bass, 142–143
Chordal seventh. See chordal dissonance

Chromatic
alterations (accidentals), 6–7, 348–349, 732–733
contrary motion, 638–642
scale, 685
system, 685
tonicization and modulation, 437–441
pivot chords, 437–438
prepared, 438
unprepared, 443–444
writing, 441
Circle of fifths, 9
in harmonic progressions, See root motion
major keys, 9
minor keys, 9
Clef, 681
Climax, melodic, 41–44
Clocks, intervallic, 610–611, 673
Close position. See spacing
Close and open position (in four part writing), 115
Closely related keys. See tonicization/modulation
Closing section (in sonata), 542
Coda, 528, 543
Codetta, 543
Collections (scales), 609
Common practice music, common practice period, 2
Common time, 709
Common tones, in part writing, 116–117
Common-tone harmonies, 615–618
Common-tone modulation, 443–449
Common-practice period, 2
Complete v. incomplete chords, 134
writing V^7, 133–135
Composite form, 494, 533. See also rondo form and ternary form
Composite phrases, 261–263
Compound form, 501–528
Compound interval, 13
Compound melody, 57–58, 99, 762–767
Compound meter. See meter
Conducting gestures. See anacrusis and downbeat
Conjunct and disjunct motion, 43–44
Consequent. See phrase
Consonance, 50. See also dissonance
Consonant leap, consonant skip, 57, 87
See also chordal leap and chordal skip
Consonant six-four chord. See six-four chords: unaccented
Continuous binary form. See binary
Continuous motions (harmonic) in period. See period
Continuous period. See period
Continuous ternary form. See ternary form.
Continuous variations. See variations
Contour, 3, 98
contrapuntal motions, 99ff. See also counterpoint
contour inversion. See inversion
melodic, 43–45
See also motive
Contrapuntal cadence, 54, 254–255
Contrapuntal expansion (prolongation)
through invertible counterpoint, 754–757
metrical placement, 160
of dominant, using
chromatic contrary motion and omnibus, 640–641
V^6, 154
IV^6, 154–155
of pre-dominant, 255–257
of submediant, 277
summary, 177–179
of tonic, using
chromatic contrary motion, 638–642
common tone harmonies. See common tone harmonies
double neighbors, 155
embedded phrase model (EPM), 251–253
invertible counterpoint, 755–757
inversions of V^7, 160–166
paradigms, 142–148, 151–154
sequences, 328–334
six-four chords. See six-four chords
step-descent bass, 279–283
voice exchange, 142–145
I^6 (as chordal skip), 142–143
IV^6 (as arp), 153–154
vii^{o6} (as passing and neighboring), 151–153
V and V^6 (as neighbors and incomplete neighbors), 146–148, 160–166
vii^{o7} and vii^{o7}, 172–175
See also harmonic cells and paradigms
Contrapuntal framework, 120–123
Contrapuntal motions
in species counterpoint 51, 57. See counterpoint, contrapuntal motions
Contrapuntal reduction, 154, 179–182, 568–569, 578, 634
Contrasting period. See period
Contrary motions. See counterpoint: contrapuntal motions
Contrasting period/phrases
Counterpoint, 46
cadence, 54–55
contour, 52
contrapuntal motions (similar, parallel, contrary, oblique), 51–52, 57
defined, 46–47
dissonance, 51, 58–59
hidden (direct, similar) intervals, 52–53, 59–60
invertible, 754–758
perfect consonances, 50, 52, 59
parallel, 51, 57
passing tone: consonant and dissonant (unaccented), 57–58
species, 48ff
first species (note-against-note-counterpoint), 48
rules and guidelines, 54–55
second species, 48
5–6 motion, 58–60
leaps, skips, steps, 57–58
perfect consonances, 50, 59
rules and guidelines, 60–61
weak-beat consonance and dissonance, 57–58
structural (in four-voice harmony), 121–124
Cross relation, 353–354
Crossing, voice (in four part writing), 113
Cut time (alla breve), 709
Cycles, intervallic, in l9th century music, 607–609

Da capo form, da capo aria, 501–507
minuet-trio form, 507–509
ritornello, 503
See also ternary form
Deceptive (evaded) cadence. See cadence
Deceptive motion, 271–272
versus cadence, 277
Dependent versus independent transitions in sonata form, 542
Descending fifth progressions. See root motion
Descending fifth sequence. See sequence: descending second
Descending 5–6 sequence. See descending third sequence
Descriptive v. interpretive analysis, 148
Development (in sonata form), 538
Diagram
binary form, 394–395
periods, 302–304
rondo, 528
sentences, 311–315
sonata, 543
ternary, 503
Diatonic, 6–7, 686
Sequences. See sequences, diatonic
Dies irae, 661
Digression, 391
Dimensions, music occupies, 159, 356, 364
Diminished seventh chord (vii^{o7}), 172–177
as applied chords, 355
used enharmonically to modulate, 598–601
Diminution
as pitch embellishments
rhythmic, 782
See also Contrapuntal Expansion, Counterpoint, Tones of Figuration
Direct step-descent bass (see also indirect step-descent bass), 280–282
Dissonance
in counterpoint. See counterpoint
in harmony. See also V^7
intervallic, 15–16
in invertible counterpoint, 785–786
preparation and resolution, 107–108, 162–163, 214–216
in sequences with sevenths, 337–340
versus consonance, 84–86
Dissonant prolongation, 639–642
Dominant
chromatically altered, 807–819
dominant seventh (Mm7) chord, 131–136
FrV V, 613–615, 672–675
prolonged by contrary motion (omnibus), 640–642
minor dominant, 291
non-structural. See back relating dominant, minor dominant, step-descent bass
scale degree, 7, 687
substitutes
vii^{o6}, 152
vii^{o7}, 172–175
See also seventh chords
Dot (rhythmic notation), 701–702
Double counterpoint. See invertible counterpoint
Double neighbor. See neighbor tone
Double period, 317–318. See also period
Double tonality, 602–603. See also off-tonic beginning
Doubling
in four-part writing, 114–115
in triads, 727–728
in vii^{o7}, 260–261
Doubly augmented sixth chord, 476
Downbeat, 3, 26
Duple, 19–20, 704
Duplet (and other tuplets), 23–24
Duration, 699–702
durational symbols (notehead, stem, flag, dots, ties), 699–701
Dyad, 713

Echappée, 94 (see also incomplete neighbor)
Elision (within phrase), 235–236
Embedded phrase model (EPM), 251–253

Embellishing chord, 238
Embellishing tones
  accented, 206–219
  chromatic, 209–210, 211–212
  consonant and dissonant, 303
  unaccented, 100–107
  summary, 221–222
  See also specific type (eg, passing tone, appoggiatura)
Embellishment (elaboration) and reduction, 77–78, 92–94, 95, 179–184, 667–676
  motivic, 369ff
Enharmonic, enharmonicism
  in chromatic sequences, 628–629
  in chromatic tonicizations, 446–447
  enharmonic equivalence, 686
  in the Neapolitan, 466–467
  in the omnibus, 844–846
  pitches, 5, 15, 614–615
  V^7 versus augmented sixth, 485–487
  vii^{o7}, 801–805
  used motivically, 592–594
Episode. See rondo.
Equal divisions of the octave.
  chromatic sequences, 624–636
  non-sequential progressions, 653
  sequential progressions, 648–652
  See also interval cycles
Escher, M.C., 326–327
Evaded cadence, 165, 271–272
Expansions (contrapuntal). See contrapuntal expansions
Expectation, 25–32. See also Gestalt
Extended tonicizations, 371–374
Extending the phrase, 251–253

False recapitulation (in sonata), 545–546
Figuration
  metrical, 126
  submetrical, 126
  supermetrical, 136
Figured bass (thoroughbass)
  realization, 65–68
  in suspensions, 214–216
  symbols and abbreviations, 65–68, 731–734
Figured bass v. roman numerals, 68–69
First inversion chords. See six three chords
First tonal area (FTA), second tonal area (STA) in sonata form, 538
First species. See counterpoint
V^7, 131–134
Five-six motion (5–6)
  in common-tone chords, 615–617
  in mixture, 620
  in sequences, 330–332
  in species counterpoint, 57–58
  in step-descent bass, 439–444
  in IV-ii complex, 199, 278–279
  5–6 technique, 57
  with vi, 278–279
  with iii, 287
  See also semitonal voice leading
Flag (notation), 699
Formal diagrams
  period, 302–304
  rondo, 528
  sentence, 311–315
  sonata, 543
  ternary, 503
IV-ii complex, 199
Fragmentation (motivic), 784–785
French augmented sixth chord, 474–475, 613–615
Frequency (pitch), 5
Full score. See score, formats
Full sectional (ternary). See ternary form
Functions, harmonic. See tonic, dominant, pre-dominant
Fux, Johann, Gradus ad Parnassum, 46

Gap-fill. See Gestalt psychology
German Lied. See Lied
German six-five chord, 474–475
Gestalt psychology, 3, 95–98
  ambiguity, 95–96
  balance, 96
  expectation and realization/fulfillment, 99–100
  gap-fill, 97
  good continuation, 99
  See also motive
Gesture, 3
Gradus ad Parnassum, Fux, 46–47
Grand staff, 682
Graphic notation, 93–94
Gravity, tonal, 3–4, 608–609
Ground bass. 282, 399–405. See also chaccone and passacaglia

Half cadence. See cadence, see also interruption
Half step, 7, 683
  diatonic and chromatic, 685
Harmonic arpeggiation. See root motion
Harmonic arch, 606
Harmonic function, summary, 293–295, 607–608
Harmonic minor. See scales, minor
Harmonic mixture, 422
Harmonic paradigms. See paradigms, harmonic
Harmonic progression, 293–295, 607–608
Harmonic progression v. succession, 853–856
Harmonic rhythm, 26–27, 75–78, 106–107, 120–128, 312
  acceleration, 312
  in florid melodies, 136–139, 241–242
  in periods, 298–302
  in sentences, 310–313
  See also metrical figuration, contrapuntal expansion (metrical placement)
Harmonic sequences. See sequences
Harmonize
  chorale melodies
florid melodies, 136–139, 241–242
Harmony, 64
  implied. See compound melody, seventh chords (incomplete) and triads (incomplete)
  in periods, 298ff
  structural versus subordinate, 155–156
    See also contrapuntal expansion
Helping chords. See voice leading chords
Hemiola, 34–35
Hidden (direct) intervals, 52
Hidden motivic repetitions. See motivic parallelism
Hierarchy, 4, 6, 57, 84–86
    illustrated in analysis, 2–4, 121–128
  in diatonic harmony, 120–127
  in embedded phrase models, 251–253
  metric, 57
  pitch, 84–94
  See also nested relations and motive
Hollywood cadence, 430
Horizontal v. vertical domains, 50
Horn fifths, 52–53
Hypermeter, 606

Imitation, in motivic repetitions, 772–777
Implied harmony. See compound melody
Implied resolution. See resolution
Improvisation, 179–184
Incomplete chords. See triads and seventh chords
Indirect step descent bass (see also direct step descent bass), 280–283
Instincts. See Gestalt psychology
Interaction of harmony, melody, meter, and rhythm, 120–123
Interpolation, 784
  motivic, 784–785
Interpretive analysis. See analysis, second level
Interruption, 392
Intervallic cell, 656–676. See also motive
Intervallic sums, 14, 15
Interval, 13
  augmented and diminished, 13–14, 718–720
  cycles, 607–608
    as equal division of octave, 648–650
  compound, 13, 714
  consonant and dissonant, 16
  diatonic, 713
  diminished seventh, resolution, 173–174
  enharmonic, 15
  fourth: in counterpoint, 50–51, 85
    in harmony, 163
  generic, 13, 713
  generating all intervals, 14
  half and whole steps, 7–9, 683
  harmonic, 714
  imperfect consonance versus perfect consonance, 16
  in species counterpoint, 50–55, 57–61
  inversion, 13–14, 720–721
  major and minor, 13–14
  melodic, 714
  odd numbered/even numbered, 715
  perfect and imperfect, 13, 716
  quality, 13, 716
  simple, 13, 714
  specific, 13–14, 716–720, 722–724
  tritone, 76–77
Introduction (slow) in sonata form, 544–555
Inversion
  chordal
    first inversion and second inversion, 64–65, 143, 728–729
    seventh chord, 71–72, 747
  triad, 64–65, 728–729
  contour (mirror), 778–779
  intervallic, 14
  used to smooth progressions 144
  See also six three chords, six-four chords, seventh chords
Invertible counterpoint (at the octave), 507, 754–758
  below the surface, 757–758
Irregular divisions (of beat), 24
Italian augmented sixth chord, 474–475

Joachim, Joseph, 756
Josquin Despres, 333

Key, 2–3, 8
Keyboard, 5, 684
Keyboard style, 69, 110–111
Key signature
  major, 8–9, 689
  minor, 693–694

Lament bass. See step descent bass
Laws. See also Gestalt
  melodic fluency, 95–98

recovery, 44
Leading tone
chords
vii^7, 172–177
applied, 355–356
in harmonic progressions, 172–177
scale degree, 7, 687
Ledger lines, 682
Leitmotiv (pl: Leitmotiven), 668
Lied (pl. Lieder), 449–457
Linkage (motivic). See Motive

Major-minor keys in the 19th century, 606–608
Marked for consciousness, 25
Measure (m., plural, mm.), 2, 703
Mediant
scale degree, 7, 687
harmonic functions, 286–289
in modal mixture, 424–425
voice leading, 287
Medial caesura (in sonata form), 542
Melodic fluency, 95–98
Melodic minor scales. See scales, minor
Melodic mixture, 420–421
See also modal mixture
Melody
arch, 43–44, 92
cadence, 44
characteristics, 41–44
climax, 44
melodic fluency. See melodic fluency
in periods, 298–302
see also, motive
Meter, 19–23, 699
accent, 19
asymmetrical, 20–21
duple, triple, quadruple, 19–20, 704–710
signature, 20, 708–710
simple and compound, 20, 21–22
Metrical passing tone. See embellishment
Minor
mode, 7–8, 687
dominant (v), 280
parallel and relative, 8, 694
in sequences, 329
Minuet, 507. See also binary form and ternary form
Minuet-trio form, 507–509
Mixture. See modal mixture
Modal mixture (mixture), 418–425
analysis: roman numerals and figured bass, 418–425
and chromatic scale, 420
chromatic step descent, 428–429
harmonic, 422
importance in the 19th century, 418
melodic, 420–421
mixture v. applied chords, 431–433
plagal motions, 429–431
voice leading, 425
♭VI, 421–422
destabilization using augmented sixth, 685–686
♭III, 424–425
Mode (major and minor), 687
Model and copy. See sequence
Modulation. See tonicization
Monophonic, monophony. See texture
Monothematic sonata form, 544
Monteverdi, Claudio, 279
Motive, 768–801
analysis of, 441
importance of, 768–769
intersection and intermovement repetitions, 786–797
linkage, 791–793
motive versus figure, 771
nesting, 798
saturation, 796
single interval, 793–797
types: strict, modified, developmental, 769ff
See also intervallic cell
Motivic parallelism (hidden repetitions), 797–802

Natural minor. See scales, minor
Neapolitan sixth chord, 460–462, 465–468
common contexts, 461
as pivot, 467–468
in sequence, 467
tonicization, 465–467
writing, 462
Neighbor tone (auxiliary tone)
accented, 127, 210–211
chromatic, 211–212
consonant and dissonant, 86
double, 86–87
incomplete 94, 212–213
See also appoggiatura
neighboring (and incomplete neighboring) chords, 146–148
unaccented upper and lower, 86
V^6 and vii^{o6}, 230–232, 235–237
V^7 inversions, 246–252
Nested relation. See hierarchy, motivic parallelism, sentences structures
Neutral position (voicing), 233
Non-chord tones, See also embellishing tones, 86–89
Non-dominant seventh chords. See pre-dominant
Non-harmonic tones. See tones of figuration
Nontemporal accents, 26–32
Notation
pitch, 5–6, 682–685
rhythmic, 700–701
Note-against-note counterpoint. See counterpoint, first species
Notehead, note values, 699–701

Octave, 5–6
displacement (in motivic repetitions), 795–796
equal subdivision of, 844–847
labeling, 21–23, 684
octave sign, 682
Off-tonic beginning, 601–602
Omnibus, 641–642
Open (and close) position. See spacing
Open score. See score, formats
Ostinato, 400–406
in continuous variations, 399–405
Outer voices, importance, 46, 64
Overlap (in four-part writing), 113

Paradigms
contrapuntal, 142–143, 146, 152
harmonic, 167–168
Parallel major and minor keys, 9, 696
in modal mixture. See modal mixture
in variation sets, 406ff
Parallel motion;
acceptable and unacceptable, 113–116
See also counterpoint
Parallel (phrase in period structures). See period
Parallel six-three chords
derivation of D2 sequence, 805–807
as sequences, 805
Part exchange, 166. See also voice exchange and invertible counterpoint
Part writing, 109ff. See also voice leading
Passacaglia, 401–405
Passing chords V^6 and vii^{o6}, 151–155
vii^{o6}, 151
inversions of V^7, 162–163
vii^{o7}, 172–177, 259–263
six-four chord. See, six-four chords
See also contrapuntal expansion
Passing dissonance. See counterpoint: passing tone
Passing tone,
accented, 208–209
chromatic, 209–210
consonant, 57
harmonized, 151–153
See also figuration, supermetrical
unaccented, 58
Pastorale, 709
Patterning (see also accent, Gestalt), 703–705
Pedal (pedal point), 220
Pedal six-four chord. See six-four chords
Period, 297–307
with applied chords, 356–359
asymmetrical, 320–321
continuous, 300
diagramming, 302–304
double, 317–318
harmonic rhythm, 298
interrupted, 300
parallel/contrasting, 299
progressive, 302
sample analyses, 305–306
sectional, 301
Phrase, 92
antecedent/consequent, 298
composite, 261–263
elision and extension, 236–237
markings, slurs, 35–36
phrase group, 319
subphrase, 259–261
Phrase model, 200–203
using applied chords, 356–359
Phrasing slur, 701
Phrygian cadence, 192
as model for augmented sixth chords, 473
Picardy third 109
as part of reciprocal process, 586–587
Pitch, 683
pitch and pitch class, 5, 683
Pitch prominence, 2–5
Pivot (chord)
in chromatic tonicization, 487
in diatonic tonicization/modulation, 378
Pivot area, 381–382
Plagal cadence, 239
Plagal relations/plagal motion, 429–431, 586–588
See also reciprocal process
Polyphony. See counterpoint; polyphonic, and texture
Position. See inversion
Pre-dominant, 190–195
diatonic sevenths, 246–250
in embedded phrase models (EPMs), 251–253
expansion of, 198–199, 255–257
in mixture progressions, 420–421
part writing, 195–196
stepwise ascending bass, 195
IV-ii complex, 199
Prepared chromatic tonicization, 437–441
Preparation-resolution
of chromaticism in applied chords, 353–354
of sevenths, 131–132
in sequences, 337–340
of suspensions, 214–215

Progression
harmonic, summary, 293–295
harmonic v. contrapuntal, 148
See also contrapuntal expansion
Progressive harmonic motion (in periods). See period
Progressive tonality, 601–602
Prolongation. See contrapuntal expansion
Prolongational v. transitional sequences. See sequence
Psychology, Gestalt. See Gestalt psychology
Pulse, beat, 19, 699, 703–704
Puns (enharmonic), 598–601

Quadruple meter, 19, 704
Quality, (intervallic) 13

Range (vocal), 111
Recapitulation, 538
Reciprocal process, 587–588
Reduction. See embellishment and reduction
Refrain (in rondos), 521
Register, 683, 111
Reharmonization, in motivic repetitions, 772–773
Relative major and minor keys, 9, 694–695
Resolution, 163ff, 131–132
of tones of figuration, 207ff
implied, 764
transferred, 764
Rest (rhythmic notation), 699
Retardation. See suspension: upward resolving
Retransition. See transition
Retrograde (motivic transformation), 779–780
Retrogression, 291
Revoicing (chords), 116
Rhetoric and music, 297ff
Rhythm, 681, 699
Rhythmic crescendo (in variation sets), 406
Ritornello (in da capo form), 503
Roman numerals, 738
Rondeau, 521–523
Rondo, 521–533
episode, 521
five part, 523–528
seven part, 530–533
seven part v. ternary, 531
Rounded binary form. See binary form
Root motion
in phrases, 268
descending fifth motion, 239
with pre-dominants, 192–194
mediant, 286–288
as substitute for I^6, 286
in sequences, 328ff
in submediant, 268–271
Root, root position (triads and seventh chords), 64–65, 728
Rules and guidelines
for counterpoint, 54–55, 57–58
for four-part writing, 116–117
for first-inversion triads, 149

Scales, 6, 685, 687–693
labeling members, 7
major, 688–689
minor, 691–693
harmonic, melodic, natural, 692
octatonic, 609
parallel and relative (major and minor), 8, 694
scale degrees, scale degree numbers and names, 6, 687
types (chromatic, diatonic), 6–7, 685
whole tone, 609
Scherzo, 389, 507. See also minuet-trio form
Schumann, Clara, 756
Score, 681
formats: full, open, short, chorale style, keyboard style, 69, 110–111
Second-level analysis (interpretive analysis); 123, 126–128, 148
in tonicization, 563–566
See also descriptive v. interpretive analysis
Secondary dominant. See applied chords
Second species. See counterpoint
Sectional binary. See binary
Sectional harmonic period. See period
Sectional ternary. See ternary form
Sectional variation. See variation
Semitonal voice leading, 589–594
Sentence structure, 310–314
Sequence
in compound melody, 804
harmonic, 325–342
melodic, 94
in motivic repetitions, 776
model and copy, 328
prolongational v. transitional, 808–809
suspension chain. See suspension, harmonic
in tonicization and modulation, 381–384
types
applied chord, 362–367
ascending second (A2), 332–334
chromatic, 624–632
comparison with diatonic, 624–626, 628–629, 630–632
types, 328–334, 337–339
step descent basses, 279–283
descending second (D2), 328–330
derivation from parallel six three chords, 805–807
descending third (D3) (descending 5–6), 330–332
with applied chords, 364–365
diatonic sevenths, 337–339
diminished seventh chords, 634
inversions
six-three chords, 330, 332, 334
of seventh chords, 339
writing, 340
Sequential progression (versus harmonic sequence), 648–653, 807
Seventh. See chordal dissonance
Seventh chords, 71ff, 726, 744–748
analysis of, 71–72, 131
characteristics, 745
dominant seventh chord, 131–137
doublings, 71–72
figured bass, 748–749
harmonic analysis, 748–749
incomplete, 76
inversions of, 747–748
pre-dominant function, 246–250
in sequences. See sequences
types (Mm, MM, mm, dm, dd), 71–72
Short score. See, score, formats
Simple meter. See meter
Similar motion. See counterpoint: contrapuntal motions
Simple binary form. See binary form
Six-four chords
accented six four chords (cadential), 231–237
in evaded cadences (elision and extension), 234–236
as part of half and authentic cadences, 233–234
within a phrase, 234
preceding V^7, 233
in triple meter, 236–237
consonant versus dissonant, 227ff
unaccented (pedal, passing, arpeggiating [waltz]), 227–231
writing, 237–238
Six-three chords
parallel in suspension chains, 218–219
as sequences, 805–807
with sevenths, 807
voice leading, 149
Slur, phrasing, 701
Sonata form, 537–580
binary model, 538–539
closing, 542
development, 542–543
false recapitulation, 545–546
FTA, STA, 538
historical context, 537
labeling, 538
monothematic, 544
recapitulation, 538
slow introduction, 544–545
sonata rondo, 550–561
subdominant, return, 547
third-related STA, 548
three-key exposition, 547–548
transition (dependent versus independent), 542
Sonata principle, 538
Spacing (voicing), 114–115, 727–728
Species. See counterpoint
Stable v. unstable, 3, 15
Staff, (pl. staves), 681
Stem (notation), 700
Step, 683–684. See also interval and counterpoint
Step descent bass (lament bass), 279–283
chromatic: with mixture. See mixture
with augmented 6^{th}, 634–635
sequential, 632–636
direct and indirect, 280–282
Stretto, 778
Structure, 95
Subdominant
harmonic function, 191–193
as part of tonic and dominant expansions, 238–239
modal mixture, 420–421
scale degree, 7, 687
return (in sonata), 547
Subject (fugue), 778
Submediant
scale degree, 7, 687
harmonic functions, 268–273
modal mixture, 421–422
Submetrical/supermetrical. See figuration
Subphrase, 259–261
Substitute chords. See dominant substitute, submediant (harmonic functions) and mediant (harmonic functions)
Subtonic, 7–8
VII(7) as V(7)/III in minor, 288–289
Succession versus progression: harmonic, 589
Summaries of
binary form, 394–395
contrapuntal expansions/harmonic paradigms, 177–179, 240–241, 293–294
modal mixture, 433
part writing and voice leading, 116–117
periods, 303–304
sequences, 341–342, 367–370
six-four chords, 237–238

sonata, 538
third relations, 433
tonal strategies in eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, 607–608
tones of figuration, 221–222
Supertonic, 7
Suspension, 213–219
and apparent harmonies, 216
chains, 218
change of bass, 218
double, triple, 218
embellished, 218
labeling, 216
metrical placement, 214
restruck, 218
stages, 214
upward resolving (retardation), 218
7–6 in chromatic six threes, 632–633
writing, 216–217
Swiss augmented sixth chord, 476
Symbols
figured bass, 65–68, 731–734
pitch, 2–8, 681–687
rhythmic, 699–703
Symmetrical scales, 609
Symmetrically constructed harmonies, 598–601
Symmetrical tonal motions, 606–609
Syncopation, 32–33

Tempo, 33, 699
Temporary tonic, see tonicization and applied chords
Tendency tones, 32, 44, 85–86, 103, 116–117, 160
in applied chords, 348–351
in voice leading, 160
Ternary form, 494–514
comparison with binary form, 494
as compound form, 501–503
continuous, sectional, full sectional, 498
diagramming, 503
See also da capo form
Tessitura, 43, 111
Tetrachord, 279–283
Text-music relations (samples), 618–620
Texture
textural accent, 29–30
types, 72–78, 109–111
Thematic design in binary form, 389ff
Theme in variation, 399–413
Third relations, summarized, 433
Three-key exposition, 547–548
Tie (rhythmic notation), 700–701
tie v. phrase slur, 701
Time signature. See meter signature
Tonal ambiguity, 586–594, 608–615
See also augmented sixth chords and diminished seventh chords, modal mixture, reciprocal process, and semitonal voice leading
Tonal paths, 607–608
Tonality, tonal music, 2
Tonic 2. See also scale degrees, contrapuntal expansion, phrase model, description versus interpretation
Tonic and dominant as harmonic foundation, 103–106
Tonicization and Modulation, 371–374, 376–381
analysis of extended tonicizations and modulation, 376–377
using applied chords, 348–351
chromatic tonicization (modulation), 437–441
common chord, 437–439
common tone, 443–444
prepared, 437–441
semitonal voice leading, 589–594
closely related keys, 377–378
enharmonic using
augmented sixth/ V^7, 485–488
diminished 7^{th}, 598–601
larger musical context, 380–381
pivot chord, 378
tonicization versus modulation, 377–378
tonicized half cadence, 351–352
Transferred resolution. See resolution
Transition and retransition
in rondo, 528
in sonata (dependent and independent), 542
in ternary form, 499–501
Transposition, 98, 688, 775
Triads, 64ff, 726ff
augmented, 64
consonant and dissonant, 64
incomplete, 114–115
interchangeability, 227
quality (type), 64, 726–727
stability of, 64, 726
Trio. See minuet-trio form
Triple, 19–20
Triplet (and other tuplets), 23–24
Tristan chord, 665–669
Tritone, 14
approach to
in vii$^{\circ 6}$, 151–153
in vii$^{\circ 7}$, 173–174
in V^7, 134–135
symmetrical properties, 669–670
in unequal fifths, 134
Two against three, 24
Two-reprise form. See binary form

Unequal fifths, 134
Unity versus diversity, 405–406
Unprepared chromatic tonicization, 443–446
Upbeat. See anacrusis

Variation form (variation set), 399–413
continuous, 399–405
sectional, 405–413
Voice (or part), 109ff
names (soprano, alto, tenor, bass), 111
See also ambitus, range, and tessitura
Voice exchange, 116, 144
chromatic, 428–429
in pre-dominant expansion, 198
in augmented sixth chord, 481–483
See also part exchange
Voice leading, 109–117
applied chords, 353–354
augmented sixth chords, 475–476
crossing, 113
doubling, 114–115
first-inversion triads, 153
V^7, 131–136, 162–165
vii$^{\circ 6}$, 151–153
vii$^{\circ 7}$, 173–174
incomplete chords, 114
mediant, 289
open and close positions, 115–116
overlap, 113
pre-dominant chords, 195
revoicing chords, 116
tendency tones, 115
texture and register (ambitus, range, and tessitura), 109–111
tritone, 132–134, 153, 173–174
See also tendency tones
Voice leading chords, 198–199, 329
Voicing. See spacing and doubling

Waltz six-four chords. See six-four chords: unaccented: arpeggiating
Whole tone as equal divider of octave (whole-tone scale), 648
Whole-tone track, 672–674
Write (voice lead; compose)
applied chords, 353
within phrases and periods, 355–358
sequences, 367
augmented sixth chords, 475–476
diminished-seventh chords (vii$^{\circ 7}$), 173–174
modulations
chromatic, 441
diatonic, 379–380
Neapolitan, 462
non-dominant seventh chords, 248
periods, 306–307
phrases, 200–203
sequences in a phrase
with applied chords, 367
chromatic, 636
diatonic, 340
with diatonic seventh chords, 519–521
six-four chords, 237–238
six-three chords, 149
in parallel motion, 805–806
submediant in progressions, 273–274
suspensions, 216
voice lead (general), 112–117

Index of Musical Examples and Exercises

(Exercises are identified with "*" to distinguish them from Examples)

Arlen, Harold (1904–1986)
"It's Only a Paper Moon," 33
"Over the Rainbow," 42

Bach, C.P.E. (1714–1788)
Sonata for Flute in G major, no. 6, Wq 134, *Allegro*, 482
Bach, Johann Jacob (1682–1732)
*Sonata for Flute in C minor, *Allegro*, 157
Bach, Johann Sebastian (1685–1750)
"Bereite dich, Zion," *Christmas Oratorio*, 42
*"Beschränkt ihr weisen," *Geistliches Lied*, 284
*"Christus, der ist mein Leben," 427
*"Des heil'gen geistes reiche gnad," 258
*Erbarme dich mein Gott," *St. Matthew Passion*, BWV 244, 37
Flute Sonata no. 1 in B minor, BWV 1030, **Largo*, 444
Flute Sonata no. 2 in E♭ major, BWV 1031, *Siciliano*, 706
French Suite in B minor, *Menuet*, 708, *Sarabande, 12
Gigue, 708
*French Suite in G major, Gavotte, 333
Fugue in C minor, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, 220-221, 771
Fugue in G minor, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, 73, 778
"Gerne will ich mich bequemen," *St. Matthew Passion*, 256
"Ich will Dir mein Herze schenken," *St. Matthew Passion*, 503-507
*"In allen meinen Taten," 258
Invention in B♭ major, 786
Invention in C minor, 49
Invention in D minor, 772
*Invention in E major, 759
*"Kommt her zu mir, spricht Gottes Sohn," 70, 736
*"Nun lasst uns Got dem Herren," 71
"Nun ruhen alle Wälder," *St. Matthew Passion*, 110, *253
*"O Haupt voll Blut und Wunden," 74, 258
*"O World, I Now Must Leave Thee," ("O Welt, ich muss dich lassen"), 253
Partita in B minor for violin solo, BWV 1002, *Corrente* (and *Double*), 764-766
Partita in D minor for violin solo, BWV 1004, Chaconne, 402
*Giga, 91
Partita in E major for violin solo, BWV 1006, *Prelude*, 3-5
*Prelude in A minor, Six Little Preludes, BWV 865, 37
*Prelude in E minor, Six Little Preludes, BWV 938, 36
Prelude in C major, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, 771
Prelude in C minor, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 1, 29-30
Prelude in E♭ major, *The Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book 2, 291-292
*"Qui sedes ad destram Patris," Mass in B minor, 724
*Schwing' dich auf zu deinem Gott," 71
Sonata in C major for violin solo, BWV 1005, *Allemande*, 99
Sonata in G minor for violin solo, *Presto*, 88
"Wo soll ich fliehen hin," Cantata no. 5, BWV 5, 193
Beethoven, Ludwig van (1770–1827)
*"Andante in F major," WoO 57, 490
Bagatelle, in C major, op. 119, 612
*Bagatelle in A minor, op. 119, 798, 463
Bagatelle in C major, op. 126, 798
"Lustig-Traurig" in C major, WoO 54, 311
"Moderato," from *Klavierstück*, WoO, 82, 306
*Piano Concerto no. 1 in C major, op. 15, 102
*Piano Concerto no. 2 in B♭ major, *Rondo*, 315
Piano Concerto no. 4 in G major, op. 58, *Allegro moderato*, 196, 255-256
Piano Sonata in F minor, op. 2, no 1, *Allegro*, 311-312
**Adagio*, 245
Menuetto-Trio: *Allegretto*, 507-509
Piano Sonata in C major, op. 2, no. 3, Trio, 229
**Adagio*, 458
Piano Sonata in D major, op. 10, no. 3, *Presto*, 694-695
Piano Sonata in C minor, op. 13, "Pathetique," 600-601
Rondo, 318-319
*Piano Sonata in G major, op. 14, no. 2, *Andante*, 195
Piano Sonata in B♭ major, op. 22, *Menuetto*, 298-299
Piano Sonata in A♭ major, op. 26, *Andante*, 317
Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 27, no. 1, *Andante*, 372-373
Allegro vivace, 480
Piano Sonata in C♯ minor, op. 27, no. 2, "Moonlight," Trio, 363-364, *463
Piano Sonata in D major, op. 28, "Pastorale," *Andante*, 302, 694
Rondo, 709
Piano Sonata in G major, op. 31, no. 1, **Allegro*, 24, 548-549
Piano Sonata in D minor, op. 31, no. 2, "Tempest," *Largo/Allegro*, 229-230
Allegretto, 124-125, 135
Allegro molto, 28-29,
*Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 31, no. 3, **Menuetto*, 224
*Trio, 245
Piano Sonata in G minor, op. 49, no. 1, *Andante*, 538-543
Piano Sonata in C major, op. 53, "Waldstein," 42, 549-550
*Piano Sonata in F minor, op. 57, "Appassionata," *Allegro assai*, 670
Piano Sonata in E♭ major, op. 81A, "Les Adieux," *Adagio*, 53
Piano Sonata in E minor, op. 90, 791-792
Nicht zu geschwind und sehr singbar vorzutragen, 439-440
Piano Sonata in E major, op. 109, *Gesangvoll, mit innigster empfindung*, variation 3, 760
Piano Sonata in A♭ major, op. 110, *Moderato cantabile molto espressivo*, 800-802
Allegro ma non troppo (fugue), 793-794
Piano Trio in E♭ major, op. 1, no. 2, *Largo con espressione*, 97-98
Presto, 351-352
Piano Trio in C minor, op. 1, no. 3, 76
*Piano Trio in D major, op. 70, no. 1, "Ghost," 435
"Rage Over a Lost Penny," op. 129, 486-487
String Quartet in F major, op. 18, no. 1, *Allegro con brio*, 769-770
String Quartet in E minor, op. 59, no. 2, *Allegro*, 465-466
String Quartet in F major, op. 59, no. 3, *Andante con moto*, 701-702
Menuetto grazioso, 355-356
String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 127, *Scherzando vivace*, 779
*String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 130, *Alla danza tedesca*, 276
Symphony no. 1 in C major, op. 21, 47, 223
Adagio molto/Allegro con brio, 545
Symphony no. 3 in E♭ major, op. 55, "Eroica," **Allegro con brio*, 637, 775-776
Marcia Funebre, 12
Allegro vivace: Trio, 231, 297-298
Finale, 104-105
Symphony no. 4 in B♭ major, op. 60, *Adagio/Allegro vivace*, 131
Adagio, 590-592
Symphony no. 5 in C minor, op. 67, *Allegro*, 106, 166
Symphony no. 6 in F major, op. 68, "Pastorale," *Allegro ma non troppo*, 106, 770-771
Symphony no. 7 in A major, op. 92, *Allegretto*, 147, 708
Assai meno presto, 162

Symphony no. 9 in D minor, op. 125, *Adagio molto*, 111
Theme and Variations in G major, WoO 77, 611
Thirty-two Variations on an Original Theme, in C minor, WoO 80, 402-403
Variations on "Nel cor piu non mi sento," WoO 70, 405-413
*Violin Concerto in D major, op. 61, *Rondo, Allegro*, 315
Violin Sonata in A major, op. 12, no. 2 *Allegro piacevole*, 376-377
Violin Sonata in E♭ major, op. 12, no. 3, *Adagio con molto espressione*, 76-77, *169
Violin Sonata in A major, op. 23, *Allegro molto*, 49
Violin Sonata in F major, op. 24, "Spring," *Allegro*, 270, *678
*Violin Sonata in G major, op. 30, no. 3, *Allegro assai*, *308
Minuet, 158
Violin Sonata in G major, op. 96, *Scherzo*, 56
Berlioz, Hector (1803–1869)
"Recitative of the Father," *L'Enfance du Christ*, 22
Bernstein, Leonard (1918–1990)
"America," from *West Side Story*, 781
Brahms, Johannes (1833–1897)
"An den Mond," 707
*"Beim ritt auf dem Knie," *Volks und Kinderlieder*, WoO 31, no. 8, 290
*"Dämmrung senkte sich von oben," op. 59, no. 1, 594
"Der Gang zum Liebchen," op. 48, no. 1, 807
*"Es hing der Reif," op. 106, no. 3, 595-596
"Es wohnet ein Fiedler," from *German Folk Songs*, vol. 6, 739
"Gunhilde," from *German Folk Songs*, vol. 1, 739
"Heimweh III," op. 64, no. 9, 617
*Horn Trio, *Andante*, 170
*"Immer leiser wird mein Schlummer," op. 105, no. 2, 654-655
Intermezzo in A minor, op. 76, no. 7, 756-757
*Intermezzo in A minor, op. 116, no. 2, 322
Intermezzo in A minor, op. 118, no. 1, 656-657
"Mein wundes Herz," op. 59, no. 7, 782-784
"Parole," op. 7, no. 2, 592-593
"Romanze," op. 118, no. 5, 499-501
*Symphony no. 1 in C minor, op. 68, *Allegro*, 596-597
Symphony no. 3 in F major, op. 90, *Andante*, 430-431
Allegro con brio, 431, *621
Symphony no. 4 in E minor, op. 98, I and IV, 797
Allegro energico e passionato, 403-404, 614-615
**Allegro giocoso*, 291
*"Unbewegte laue Luft," op. 57, no. 8, 621
*"Und doch bin ich neu geboren," 63
"Unüberwindlich," op. 94, no. 5, 50
"Von ewiger Liebe," op. 43, no. 1, 29
"Vom verwundeten Knaben," op. 14, no. 2, 143-144
*Waltz in E major, op. 39, no. 5, 258
*Waltz in A♭ major, op. 39, no. 15, 308
Byzantine Chant, 86

Chopin, Frederick (1810–1849)
Etude in F major, op. 10, no. 8, BI 42, 167-168
Etude in C minor, op. 10, no. 12, "Revolutionary," 586-587
Etude in A♭ major, op. 25, no. 1, 75
Etude in A♭ major, op. posth., 25, 98
Fantasie Impromptu, op. 66, 787-788
Impromptu in A♭ major, op. 29, 167-168, 633-634
Mazurka in A minor, op. 17, no. 4, BI 77, 511-513
Mazurka in B major, op. 56, no. 1, BI 153, 488-489
Mazurka in A minor, op. 59, no. 1, BI 157, 629-630
*Mazurka in F minor, op. 63, no. 2, 464
Mazurka in F minor, op. 68, no. 4, BI 168, 513-514
Nocturne in B♭ minor, op. 9, no. 2, BI 54, 466-467
Nocturne in B major, op. 9, no. 3, 24
Nocturne in F major, op. 15, no. 1, 97
Nocturne in G minor, op. 15, no. 3, 97
*Nocturne in A♭ major, op. 32, no. 2, 620
Nocturne in G major, op. 37, no. 2, BI 127, *375, 652-653
Nocturne in C minor, op. 48, no. 1, BI 142, *435, *469-470
Nocturne in D♭ major, op. 48, no. 2, BI, 195
Nocturne in F minor, op. 55, no. 1, 97, *316
Nocturne in B major, op. 62, no. 1, BI, 247
Nocturne in E minor, op. posth. 72, no. 1, 97
Prelude in C minor, op. 28, 47, 794
Prelude in A minor, op. 28, no. 2, 658-661
Prelude in A♭ major, op. 28, 634-635
Prelude in E♭ minor, op. 28, 795
Prelude in E minor, op. 28, 795
Prelude in F♯ minor, op. 28, 795
Scherzo no. 2, op. 31, 272-273
Waltz in A minor, BI 150, 26-28
Waltz in A♭ major, op. 42, 25
*Waltz in B minor, op. posth, 69, no. 2, 37
*Waltz in D♭ major, op. 64, no. 1, 38
*Waltz in E minor, BI 56, 38
Clementi, Muzio (1752–1832)
*Prelude in A minor, 375
Sonatina in C major, op. 36, no. 3, 523-528
Sonata in F minor, op. 13, no. 6, 795-796
Coltrane, John, "Giant Steps," 649-650
Corelli, Arcangelo (1653–1713)
Church Sonata in A minor, op. 1, no. 4, *Presto/Adagio*, 192-193
Church Sonata in D minor, op. 1, no. 11, 220
*Church Sonata in C major, op. 2, no. 3
*Preludio, *Largo*, *253, 458
Church Sonata in E minor, op. 2, no. 4, Preludio, 207
Church Sonata in F major, op. 2, no. 7, *Allegro*, 156
Allemande, *Corrente*, Prelude, Gigue, 789-791
Church Sonata in E♭ major, op. 2, no. 11, Giga, 206
Concerto Grosso in D major, op. 6, no. 7, *Allegro*, 184
*Concerto Grosso in G minor, op. 6, no. 8, *Allegro*, 80, 148
Violin Sonata in F major, op. 5, no. 4, *Grave*, 156
Violin Sonata in D minor, op. 5, no. 7, *Sarabande*, 100
*Corrett, Michel (1709–1795)
Sarabanda in E minor for Flute and Continuo, 254
Costeley, Guillaume (1531–1606)
"Alon gay, gay," 41
Couperin, Francois (1668–1733)
"La Francoise," "*Les nations*," 336
Les gouts-reunis, Concert no. 8, "Air tendre," 521-523

Donizetti, Gaetano (1797–1848)
Lucrezia Borgia, act 1, no. 3, 96, 165-166
Dufay, Guillaume (1397(?)–1474)
Missa Sancti Jacobi, Communion, 49
Dvorak, Antonin (1841–1904)
*Symphony no. 9 ("New World"), *Largo*, 594
Dykes, John (1823–1876)
"Holy, Holy, Holy," 239

Faure, Pavane, op. 50, 280-282
Foster, Steven (1826–1864)
"Beautiful Dreamer," 191

Gaultier, Denis (1603–1672)
"Piece for Lute," 42
Geminiani, Francesco (1687–1762)
"The Art of Playing on the Violin, op. 9, no. 8, 428
*Giardini, Felize, (1716–1796)
**Minuetto*, 759
Six Duos for Violin and Cello, op. 14, no. 2, *223
Gluck, Christoph Willibald (1714–1787)
*"Bettet den Vater," from *Alceste*, act 1, 490
Orfeo, act 1, no. 1, 172
Grieg, Edvard (1843–1907)
Erotiken, Lyric Pieces, op. 43, no. 5, 773
"Hjemve" (Homesickness), *Lyric Pieces*, op. 57, no. 6, 495-498
"Illusion," *Lyric Pieces*, op. 57, 612-613
"Morning," from *Peer Gynt Suite*, op. 46, no. 1, 431-432
Gruber, Franz (1786–1863)
"Stille Nacht," 227-228, 319-320

Handel, George Friedrich (1685–1759)
*"And He Came to His Disciples," *Messiah*, 19
"Comfort Ye," *Messiah*, 153-154
Concerto in B♭ major for Harp, op. 6, no. 6, *Larghetto*, 329
*Concerto Grosso in B♭ major, op. 3, no. 2, **Largo*, 386-387
*Concerto Grosso in F major, op. 3, no. 4, *Allegro*, 398-399
*Concerto Grosso in F major, op. 6, no. 9, *Largo*, 204
Prelude in G major, 380-381
"Since by Man Came Death," *Messiah*, 472-473
*Sonata for Flute in E minor, HWV 359b, *Allegro*, 760
Adagio, 804
Sonata for Flute in B minor, HWV 367b, 152
Suite III in D minor, "Air and Variations," 763
*Suite VII in G minor, Passacaglia, 341, 404-405, 759
Suite IX in G minor, *Gigue*, 806
Suite XIII in B♭ major, *Allemande*, 806
*Trio Sonata in G minor, op. 3, no. 5, 336
**Water Music*, Minuet, 62
Haydn, Franz Joseph (1732–1809)
Divertimento in G major, Hob. XVI.11, *Presto*, 501-503
*Piano Sonata no. 6 in C major, Hob. XVI.10, Menuet and trio, 515
*Piano Sonata no. 9 in D major, Hob. XVI: 4, *Menuetto*, 223
*Piano Sonata no. 12 in A major, Hob. XVI.12, Trio, 397-398
*Piano Sonata no. 29 in E♭ major, Hob. XVI: 45, *Moderato*, 265
Piano Sonata no. 30 in D major, Hob. XVI.19, *Moderato*, 262-263
Piano Sonata no. 32 in G minor, Hob. XVI.44, *Allegretto*, 234, 252
Piano Sonata no. 37 in E major, Hob. XVI.22, *Allegro moderato*, 218-219
Piano Sonata no. 38 in F major, Hob. XVI.23, *Adagio*, 312-313
Piano Sonata no. 41 in A major, Hob. XVI.27, Menuet al rovescio, 779-780

Haydn, Franz Joseph *(cont.)*
Piano Sonata no. 48 in C major, Hob. XVI.35, *Allegro con brio*, *244, 562-570
Finale; *Allegro*, 474, *534-536
*Piano Sonata no. 50 in D major, Hob. XVI.37, *Presto ma non troppo*, 395
Piano Sonata no. 53 in E minor, Hob. XVl.34, *Vivace molto*, 376-377
"St. Anthony Chorale," 237-238, 798
Sonatina no. 4 in F major, Hob. XVI.9, *Scherzo*, 391-392
*String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 20, no. 1, **Allegro*, 360
Allegretto, 190
**Finale*, 361
String Quartet in F minor, op. 20, no. 5, *Allegro moderato*, 194
String Quartet in B minor, op. 33, no. 1, 545-547
String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 33, no. 2, *Scherzo*, 785
String Quartet in B♭, op. 33, no. 4, *Allegretto*, 100
*String Quartet in G major, op. 33, no. 5, *Largo cantabile*, 205
**Allegro*, 225
String Quartet in D major, op. 33, no. 6, *Finale*, 531-533
*String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 50, no. 1, **Allegro*, 361
*String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 50, no. 3, *Allegro con brio*, 101
*String Quartet in F minor, op. 50, no. 4, *Andante*, 81
String Quartet in D major, "The Frog," op. 50, no. 6, *Menuetto*, 200
String Quartet in C major, op. 54, no. 2, Hob. III.58, *Allegro*, 443-444
String Quartet in A major, op. 55, no. 1, *Allegro*, 544
Menuetto, 484-485
*String Quartet in F minor, op. 55, no. 2, 360
*String Quartet in B minor, op. 64, no. 2, *Adagio ma non troppo*, 198, 774, 779
String Quartet in B♭ major, op. 64, no. 3, **Allegro*, 360
Menuetto, 262
*String Quartet in G minor, op. 74, no. 3 **Largo assai*, 186
String Quartet in D minor, "Quinten," op. 76, no. 2, *Andante o piu tosto allegretto*, *157, 271-272
**Adagio*, 315
String Quartet in C major, "Emperor," op. 76, no. 3, Minuet-Trio, 510-511
Poco adagio; cantabile, 42, 320-321
String Quartet in E♭ major, op. 76, no. 6, Trio, 138
Symphony no. 91 in F major, *Allegro assai*, 756
Symphony no. 100 in G major, "Military," *Allegretto*, 259-260
Symphony no. 101 in D major, "Clock," 154
Hummel, Johann Nepomuk (1778–1837)
Bagatelle in C major, 389-390

Joel, Billy (1949–)
"Piano Man," 88
Josquin des Pres (1450–1521)
Missa Pange Lingua, Kyrie, 49

Lamm, Robert (1944–)
*"Saturday in the Park," 605
Leclair, Jean Marie (1697–1764)
Sonata in C major for Flute and Continuo, op. 1, no. 2, *Corrente*, 363
Sonata in G minor for Two Violins and Basso Continuo, op. 4, no. 5, *Andante*, 175
Trio Sonata in D major, op. 2, no. 8, *Allegro*, 338
Liszt, Franz (1811–1886)
"Aux cypres de la Villa d'Este I: Threnodie," from *Annees de Pelerinage*, Year 3, 627-628
"Nuages gris," 613
"Sursum corda," from *Annees de Pelerinage*, Year 3, 682
Loeillet, Jean-Baptiste (1680–1730)
*Sonata in G minor, op. 2, no. 2, 475
Sonata for Oboe in A minor, op. 5, no. 2, 772

Mahler, Gustav (1860–1911)
Symphony no. 2, "Resurrection," "Urlicht," 287-288
Symphony no. 5, *Adagietto*, 782
*Marcello, Benedetto (1686–1739)
"Lament" in G minor for Cello and Continuo, 637-638
*Sonata in A minor, no. 8, *Presto*, 290
*Mascagni, Pietro (1863–1945)
"A casa amici," *Cavalleria rusticana*, scene 9, 418-420
Mendelssohn, Felix (1809–1847)
**Elijah*, opening of Part 2, 284
*"Weh mir!," Ariette, no. 18, 490
*Etude in F minor, 638
Midsummer Night's Dream, Overture, 47
"Song Without Words," op. 19, no. 5, 202
op. 30, no. 8, 202-203
*op. 53, 254
*op. 102, 259
Meyerbeer, Giacomo (1791–1864)
"Se non ti moro allato," *Sei canzonette italiane*, no. 5, 190-191
Monteverdi, Claudio (1567–1643)
"Lamento della ninfa," *Madrigali guerrieri, et amorosi*, 400
Montrose, Percy (1851-1893)
Clementine, 92-93
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756–1791)
*"Adagio" in C major, 489
Bassoon Concerto in B♭ major, K. 191, *Rondo*, 236-237
Clarinet Quintet in A major, K. 581, 1, 272
*Cosi fan tutte, 140
*"Don Ottavio! Son morta!" from *Don Giovanni*, act 1, no. 10, 676-677
"Madamina," *Don Giovanni*, act 1, no. 4, 77-78
Eine kleine Nachtmusik, K. 525
"*Menuetto*," 34-35, *594
Trio, 136
Finale, Act. I, Magic Flute, 305
Horn Concerto in E♭ major, K. 447, 233
"Hm! Hm! Hm!" *The Magic Flute*, Act. 1, 234-236
*"In diesen Heiligen Hallen," *The Magic Flute*, 243, 740
*Menuet in D major, K. 94, 62, 422-423
*Piano Concerto in G major, K. 453, *Allegretto*, 385-386
Piano Concerto in D minor, K. 466, *Allegro*, 32-33
Andante, 298-299
Piano Concerto in D minor, K. 466, *Andante*, 463–465
Piano Concerto in C major, K. 467, *Andante*, 74
*Piano Concerto in E♭ major, K. 482, *Allegro*, 760
Piano Concerto in A major, K. 488, *Andante*, 763-764
Piano Fantasy in D minor, K. 397, *Adagio*, 799-800
Piano Sonata in F major, K. 280, *Adagio*, 777
Presto, 166
Piano Sonata in Bb Major, K. 281, *Allegro*, 300-301
Rondeau: Allegro, 313-314
Piano Sonata in E♭ major, K. 282, *Allegro*, 161
Piano Sonata in G major, K. 283, *Allegro*, 754-755
*Piano Sonata in D major, K. 284, *Andante*, 198, *321, 378-379, 393-394
Polonaise en Rondeau, 14, 693, 762
Piano Sonata in A minor, K. 310, *Allegro maestoso*, 8, 32
Presto, 44-45
Piano Sonata in D major, K. 311, Rondeau, 551-561
Piano Sonata in A major, K. 331, Andante grazioso, 201
Piano Sonata in F major, K. 332, *Allegro*, 31-32, 792-793
Piano Sonata in B♭ Major, K. 333, *Allegro*, *204, 381–382, *284, 571-580, 787
Allegretto grazioso, 307
Piano Sonata in C minor, K. 475, *Allegro*, 49, 704
Piano Sonata in C major, K. 545, *Allegro*, 7-8, *11, 74, 164, 695
Piano Sonata in B♭ major, K. 570, *Allegretto*, 209-210
Piano Sonata in D major, K. 576, *Allegro*, 257, 292-293, 776
**Allegretto*, 322
*Piano Trio in G major, K. 496, *Allegretto*, 396-397
Piano Trio in E♭ major, K. 498, *Andante*, 429
Rondo in C major, K. 144, 106-107
*Serenade in D major, K. 204, 284
*String Quartet in C major, K. 157, *Andante*, 150
String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 159, *Andante*, 278
Rondo, 162
*String Quartet in B♭ major, K. 172, *Adagio*, 223
**Allegro assai*, 169
*String Quartet in D minor, K. 173, *Menuetto*, 150
*Trio, 244
String Quartet in C major, "Dissonant," K. 465, *Adagio*, 589
*String Quartet in F major, K. 590, *Andante*, 149
Symphony in G major, K. 97, Trio, 177
Symphony in A major, K. 114, *Allegro moderato*, 234-235
*Trio, 347
*Symphony in G major, K. 124, *Allegro*, 344
Symphony in E♭ major, K. 132, *Andante*, 176
Symphony in G minor, K. 183, *Allegro con brio*, 32
*Trio, 776
Symphony in C major, K. 200, *Allegro*, 180-181
Symphony in A major, K. 201, *Allegro moderato*, 777
Symphony in D major, "Haffner," K. 385, *Menuetto*, 199, 228
*Symphony in C major, "Linz," K. 425, *Poco adagio*, 259
*Symphony in D major, K. 504, "Prague," *Presto*, 375-376
Symphony in E♭ major, K. 543, *Allegretto*, 239, *307
Symphony in C major, "Jupiter," *Andante cantabile*, 98
Viennese Sonatina in C, from Five Divertimenti, K. Anh. 229, *Allegro*, 529-531
Violin Sonata in C major, K. 14, *Menuetto secondo en Carillon*, 312-313
*Violin Sonata in B♭ major, K. 372, *Allegro*, 334
*Violin Sonata in G major, K. 379, *Andantino Cantabile*, 342

Adagio, 275
*"Wer ein Liebchen hat gefunden," *Die Entführung aus dem serail* (*Abduction from the Seraglio*), *477

Pachelbel, Johann (1653–1706)
Canon in D major, 329-330, 405
Paganini, Niccolo (1782–1840)
Caprice for violin, op. 1, no. 4, 53
*Caprice for violin, op. 1, no. 11, 478
*Caprice for violin, op. 1, no. 20, 519
Pergolesi, Battista, Giovanni, (1710–1736)
*"Il Nocchier nella tempesta," *Salustia*, act 2, scene 9, 342
Pinkard, Maceo (1897–1962)
"Sweet Georgia Brown," 602
Platti, Giovanni Benedetto (1692–1763)
*Sonata in C major, *Six Sonatas for Harpsichord*, op. 4, no. 4, 581-583
Purcell, Henry (1649–1695)
"Ground in G," theme and variations, 401

*Quantz, Johann Joachim (1697–1773)
Duet no. 4, from Six Duets for Two Flutes, op. 5, no. 4, 55

Rachmaninoff, Sergei (1873–1943)
Prelude in G minor, op. 23, no. 5, 280-281
*Prelude in G♯ minor, op. 32, no. 12, 671
*"Vocalise," 464
*Rameau, Jean Philippe (1663–1733)
*Rondino, 101
Roman, Johann Helmich (1694–1758)
*Flute Sonata in B minor, op. 1, no. 6, *Grave*, 186, *285
Rossini, Gioachino (1792–1868)
**Barber of Seville*, Overture, 781

Scarlatti, Domenico (1685–1757)
*Sonata in G minor, K. 64, 385
Sonata in D major, K. 96, 53
Schubert, Franz (1797–1828)
*"Am Frühling," 290
"Am Meer," from *Schwanengesang*, D. 957, no. 12, 617-618
"Der Atlas" from *Schwanengesang*, D. 957, no. 8, 611
"Aufenthalt," from *Schwanengesang*, D. 957, 781-782
"Die böse Farbe," from *Die schöne Müllerin*, 451-452
"Der Flug der Zeit," D. 515, 448-449
*"Des Müllers Blumen," from Die schönen Müllerin, 163, 260
*"Du bist die Ruh, op. 39, no. 3, 428
"Erlkönig," D. 328, 598
"Frühlingstraum," from *Winterreise*, 270-271
"Gute Nacht," from *Winterreise*, 687-688
Impromptu in B♭ major, Thema, D. 935, 211
Thema and variations, 211-213
Impromptu in A♭ major, from *Four Impromptus*, D. 935, 446-447, 757-758
"Die Krähe," *Winterreise*, 255
"Lachen und Weinen," D. 777, 449-450
Ländler, D. 336, 230-231
"Die liebe Farbe," *Die schöne Müllerin*, 451-452
"Der Lindenbaum," *Winterreise*, 30-31, 88-89, *474
*"Meeres stille," D. 216, 644-645
*Minuet in A minor, *20 Minuets*, D. 41, no. 8, Trio, 140
Minuet in D major, D. 41, 227-228
*"Morgengruss," *Die schöne Müllerin*, 169
"Der Müller und der Bach," *Die schöne Müllerin*, 460-461
"Die Nebensonnen," *Winterreise*, 772-773
*Piano Sonata in E♭ major, D. 568, 361
Piano Sonata in A minor, D. 845, *Rondo*, 766-767
Piano Sonata in A major, D. 959, *Andantino*, 147
*Trio, 315
Piano Sonata in B♭ major, D. 960, *Molto moderato*, 445-446
"Schwanengesang," op. 23, no. 3, D. 744, 423-424
Sonata in G minor for Violin, D. 408, *Andante*, 201-202
Sonatina in D major for Violin, D. 384, *Allegro molto*, 485
"Ständchen," *Schwanengesang*, 467–468
String Quartet in B♭ major, D. 36, 444
String Quartet in C minor, "Quartettsatz," D. 703, 466-467
String Quartet in A minor, D. 804, I, 600-601
String Quartet in G major, D. 887, *Allegro molto moderato*, 626-627, 651-652
*String Quintet in C major, D. 956, *Adagio*, 335
Symphony no. 4 in C minor, "Tragic," *Andante*, 260-261
Symphony No. 9 in C major, *Andante*, 42, 73,
**Scherzo*, 264
Waltz in D major, *34 Valses sentimentales*, D. 779, no. 12, 616
*Waltz in D major, *Belle Viennoises*, 245
Waltz in G minor, *Die letzte Waltze*, D. 146, 472
*Waltz in B major, *36 Original Dances*, D. 365, no. 24, 138
Waltz in F major, *36 Original Dances*, D. 365, no. 33, 440-441
Waltz in C major, *Valses sentimentales*, D. 779, no. 16, 479
Waltz in A minor, from *12 Grazer Walzer*, D. 924, no. 9, 231
"Wasserfluth," *Winterreise*, 132-133, 163-164
Schumann, Clara (1819–1896)
"Andante expressivo," *Quatre pieces fugitives*, op. 15, no. 3, 373-374
*"Les Ballet des revenants", *Quatre pieces caracteristique*, op. 5, 109
Schumann, Robert (1810–1856)
"Am leuchtenden Sommermorgen," *Dichterliebe*, op. 48, 208-209
*"Armes Waisenkind," *Album for the Young*," op. 68, no. 6, 291
"Auf einer Burg," *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 7, 587-588
"Ich grolle nicht," *Dichterliebe*, op. 48, no. 7, 431
*"Ihre Stimme," op. 96, no. 3, 13
"In der Fremde," *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 8, 588
*"Kind im einschlummern," *Kinderszenen*, op. 15, no. 12, 316
**Kreisleriana*, op. 16, no. 2, 316
*no. 5, 343-344
"Mit Myrthen und Rosen," *Liederkreis*, op. 24, no. 9, 374
"Sängers Trost," *Fünf Lieder und Gesänge*, op. 127, No. 1, 373
"Schlummerlied," *Albumblätter*, op. 124, 24
"Talismane," Myrten, 371-372
*Symphony no. 2 in C major, op. 61, *Scherzo*, Trio 1, 458-459
**Allegro vivace*, 604
*"Das verlassene Mägdlein," op. 64, no. 2, 11
"Waldesgesprach," *Liederkreis*, op. 39, no. 3, 53, 452-457
*"Wichtige Begenbenheit" *Kinderscenen*, op. 15, 56
*"Widmung," Myrthen, op. 25, 516-518
"Winterzeit," *Kinderscenen*, op. 15, 249
"***", *Kinderscenen*, op. 15, 250
Schütz, Heinrich (1585–1672)
"Nacket bin ich von Mutterleibe kommen," *Musicalischen Exequien*, 280
Scriabin, Alexander (1872–1915),
Etude in C♯ minor, op. 2, no. 1, 42
Prelude in D major, op. 39, no. 2, 670-676
Sherwin, William F. (1826-1888)
*"Day is Dying in the West," 36, 37
Smetana, Bedrich (1824–1884)
"Moldau," from *My Country*, 95
Somis, Giovanni Battista (1686-1763)
*Twelve Sonatas for two Cellos, No. 9, in A major, 224
Strauss, Richard (1864–1949)
*"Ach Lieb, Ich mus nun scheiden," 185

Tchaikovsky, Peter (1840–1893)
"At the window, in the shadow," 283
*"La Fee des Lilas," *Sleeping Beauty*, 604
Pas de six, "Violente," from *Sleeping Beauty*, 487-488
Scene 1, from *Sleeping Beauty*, 483-484
*"Sweet Reverie," *Children's Pieces*, op. 39, no. 21, 322-323
*Symphony no. 5 in E minor, op. 64, *Allegro con anima*, 643-644
Telemann, Georg Philipp (1681–1767)
"Domenica," from *Scherzi Melodichi, Vivace*, 145-146
Sonata for Flute in B♭ major, *dolce*, 155
Thomas, Ambroise (1811–1896)
Gavotte, from *Mignon*, 170
Traditional
"Adeste Fideles," 707
"Erie Canal," 280-281
"Flow Gently Sweet Afton," 707, *342
"God Save the King," 93-94
"My Gentle Harp" ("Danny Boy"), 241-242
"Oh, Susanna," 706
"Simple Gifts," 136-138
*Türk, Daniel Gottlob (1750–1813)
Serenade, 244

Verdi, Giuseppe (1813–1901)
Overture to *La forza del destino*, 191
*"Se m'an ancor," *Il trovatore* 477-478
*"Se, la stanchezza m'opprime, o figlio," *Il trovatore*, 478
*Victoria, Thomas Luis (1548–1611)
Kyrie, 55
Vivaldi, Antonio (1678–1741)
Concerto Grosso in C minor, F.1, no. 2, "Il Sospetto," *Allegro*, 325
Sonata in C minor for Oboe and Basso Continuo, *Allegro*, 87-88, *90
Trio Sonata in C minor, *Allegro*, 381-383
*Violin Sonata in F major, *Allegro*, 109

Wagner, Richard (1813–1883)
"Liebestod" ("Transfiguration"), *Tristan und Isolde*, 661-669
"Mögst du mein Kind" *Flying Dutchman*, 278-279
"*Prelude*," *Das Rheingold*, 103-104
*Scene 1, *Das Rheingold*, 186
*"Wotan's Farewell," *Die Walküre*, 276
Weber, Carl Maria von (1786–1826)
Ecossaise #1, J. 29, 390-391
Wipo of Burgundy (995? –1048?)
"Victimae paschali laudes," 41
Willaert, Adrian (1490–1562)
"And if out of jealousy you are making me such company," 62
Wolf, Hugo (1860–1903)
"Man sagt mir, deine Mutter woll' es nicht," *Italienisches Liederbuch*, no. 21, 619-620

Yarrow, Peter (1938–)
"Puff the Magic Dragon," 287